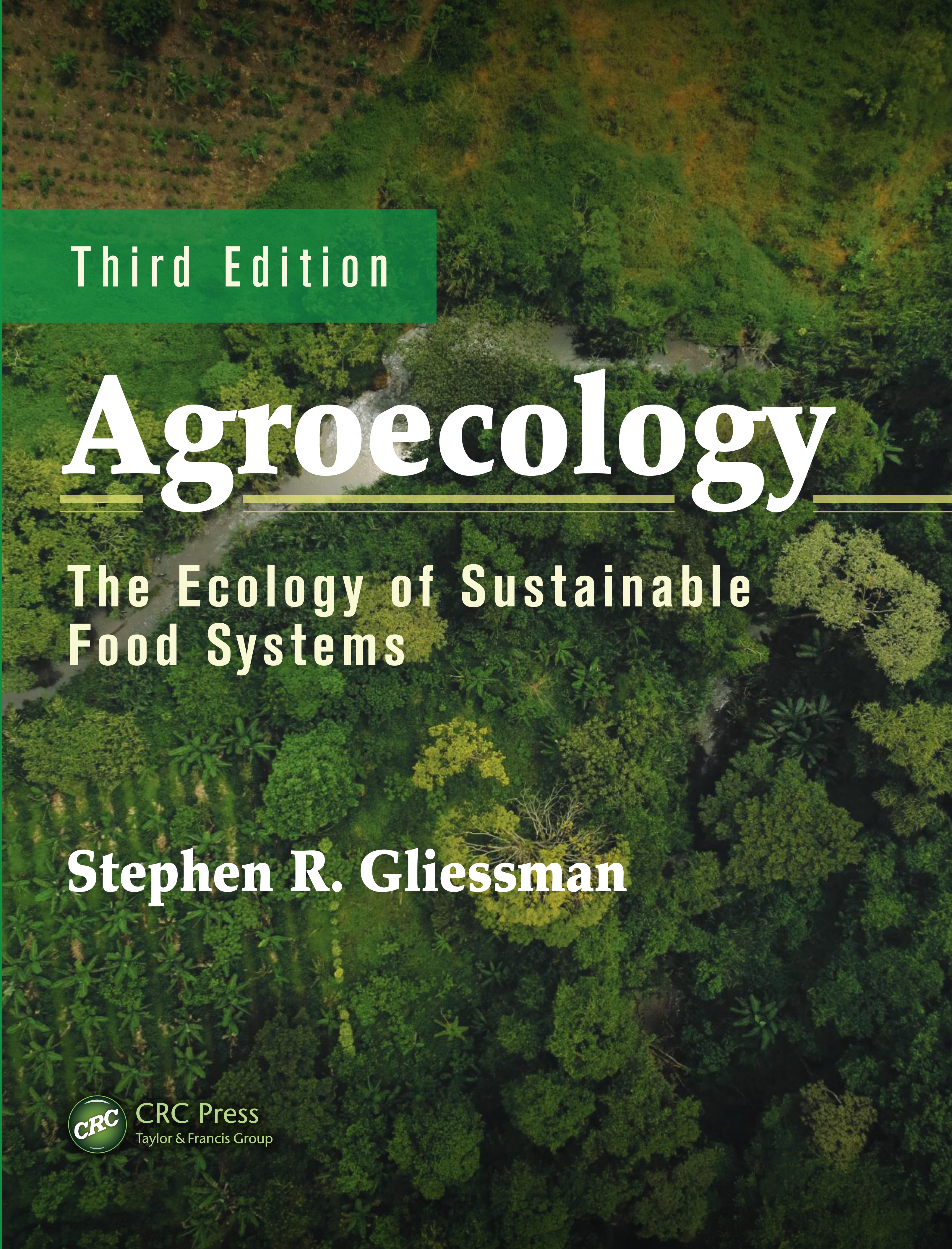


Third Edition

Agroecology

The Ecology of Sustainable Food Systems

Stephen R. Gliessman

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Third Edition

Agroecology

The Ecology of Sustainable Food Systems

Third Edition

Agroecology

The Ecology of Sustainable Food Systems

Stephen R. Gliessman
Professor Emeritus of Agroecology
University of California
Santa Cruz

With **Eric W. Engles, PhD**
Technical editing by Eric W. Engles

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

Cover photo: An aerial photo of the Jimenez Family farm near AguaBuena, Coto Brus, Costa Rica, showing the integration of agriculture into a tropical forest landscape. The photo was taken during an autonomous Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) remote sensing scan. Dana Nadwodny was operating the UAV and Jonathan Dandois was assisting. They were working out of Dr. Erle Ellis' Laboratory for Anthropogenic Landscape Ecology at the University of Maryland, Baltimore, on his NSF funded Ecosynth project. The photo is one of more than 1300 frames taken to create a composite scan of the landscape in which the farm is located, and was taken on July/08/13. Photo copyright Dana Nadwodny. Used with permission. All rights reserved.

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300
Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

© 2015 by Taylor & Francis Group, LLC
CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, an Informa business

No claim to original U.S. Government works
Version Date: 20141125

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-1-4987-2846-1 (eBook - PDF)

This book contains information obtained from authentic and highly regarded sources. Reasonable efforts have been made to publish reliable data and information, but the author and publisher cannot assume responsibility for the validity of all materials or the consequences of their use. The authors and publishers have attempted to trace the copyright holders of all material reproduced in this publication and apologize to copyright holders if permission to publish in this form has not been obtained. If any copyright material has not been acknowledged please write and let us know so we may rectify in any future reprint.

Except as permitted under U.S. Copyright Law, no part of this book may be reprinted, reproduced, transmitted, or utilized in any form by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying, microfilming, and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without written permission from the publishers.

For permission to photocopy or use material electronically from this work, please access www.copyright.com (http://www.copyright.com/) or contact the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc. (CCC), 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400. CCC is a not-for-profit organization that provides licenses and registration for a variety of users. For organizations that have been granted a photocopy license by the CCC, a separate system of payment has been arranged.

Trademark Notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

Visit the Taylor & Francis Web site at
http://www.taylorandfrancis.com

and the CRC Press Web site at
http://www.crcpress.com

This book is dedicated to Alf and Ruth Heller, for believing in agroecology, encouraging community, and fostering positive change at every opportunity

Contents

SECTION I Introduction to Agroecology

SECTION II Plants and Abiotic Factors of the Environment

SECTION III A More Complete Autecological Perspective

SECTION IV System-Level Interactions

SECTION V The Transition to Sustainability

SECTION VI Bringing about a Sustainable World Food System

Foreword

Do not mistake this for just a textbook. You hold in your hands the key to making a difference. If life is about understanding the times in which you live and therefore what you should do with your life, then this trove of accumulated scientific insight and social wisdom from Stephen Gliessman is sure to be a key stepping stone. The reason is that Steve methodically lays out the cumulus of four decades of his experience and reflections, connecting science to purpose, action, and meaning.

With few exceptions, treatments of agriculture are about methods (how you do something) and not about the substantive questions of all human activity: what and why we do something. Tractors, fertilizers, and modified seeds are examples of some of the ways we perform agriculture. Hunger, power, and inequity are examples of attributes of agriculture and food systems and therefore why it is important to fully understand context before launching unquestioningly into methods and practices.

We are all part of a human culture (including our food system) that has settled on a predominant view of life as domination over nature and other people. Examples of the negative impacts of this domination are most obvious in the unjust conditions faced by too many people in the food system workforce, from the fields, to processing and packing plants, to shipping and stocking shelves at markets, to the food service sector. Instead of living wages, safe and healthy working conditions, and fair immigration laws that create opportunity while getting work done, we have an industrial, capital-intensive system that too often exploits both people as well as the land. We need a food system that fosters the important indicators of sustainability such as equity, fairness, and satisfaction for all, rather than domination that benefits a few. Agricultural curricula must focus beyond the narrowness of specialization, reductionism, and methodologies that primarily emphasize high yields and maximizing profits for those in power.

Are there alternatives to the current industrial food and agriculture system? That is what this book is about. If you are interested in agricultural and food systems that are managed for the long term, are more inclusive, pursue wiser purposes, and thereby converge on different methods, this book will prove an invaluable guide. It leads you through a succinct case for an alternative *understanding* of agricultural and food systems as opposed to formulaic methodologies. A farm field is not an outdoor factory, with inputs and outputs that are allegedly understood and calculated precisely on one end and maximized on the other end, scored by how much money can be squeezed from the proposition. Instead, you'll understand a farm as a cross section of many processes to be understood and integrated, where there are multiple goals, and where perpetual resilience is the key attribute because that is the way that all components do best over the long term. This includes ourselves, since, after all, humans cannot exist without supportive ecosystems.

And I should stress that this synthesis involves rigorous science, which you will enjoy immensely. One of the delights of agroecology is that it provides an answer to the very logical question for all thoughtful explorers of human knowledge: "Why should I learn this?" Here, you'll find the payoff for the basic studies you've undertaken. Physics, biochemistry, and mathematics are joined seamlessly with economics, sociology, and political science to render clearer the things that we all care about. As one example, consider a fundamental question to put to all human endeavors: "How long can we keep doing things this way?" This is the *sustainability question*, and it can be confronted competently only by combining insights from many fields of human knowledge and experience. You'll see this throughout this book, but particularly around such topics as whether we have an impending phosphorus shortage (a nonrecyclable and limited nutrient), the notion of multifunctionality and integrated landscapes, and the contextualization of the food justice movement. Gliessman is one of the world's masters of this integrated approach, and one of the best embodiments of the expertise that Robert Rodale called *metasystematics*, the discernment of how systems in perpetual motion relate with and affect one another.

This is a skill that may be unique now, but one that humanity will require in greater measure in our crowded future. As an advocate for more resilient food systems based on the principles of agroecology, I earnestly recommend that you invest yourself in developing depth and proficiency in this essential science. As with Gliessman, your credibility and effectiveness will be the more potent for your indisputable command of what Bertrand Russell called a knowledge more important than the understanding of facts, that being the connections among facts. By the time you work through this deft exposition, you will understand why agriculture must be fundamentally transformed, how ecological science can be applied to that end, and how social movements are as essential to that transformation as is the understanding of trophic interactions.

Finally, this book is a declaration of purpose: the intent to apply knowledge to improve and sustain the dignity of life for all, human and otherwise. As a book, this is an ambitious inquiry and a survey for the brave and forward-looking, from a brave and forward-looking scholar. But as an intellectual and moral challenge, this is nothing short of a call for epochal culture shift. It is time to move our knowledge about sustainable food systems beyond the safe spaces of seminar rooms and scholarly publications. We need an *open-access* system that turns knowledge into practice, rather than into proprietary technologies owned by a few and for sale to the rest. We must understand the dynamics of economic and political power and its ability to limit, shape, and control the food system. Turning knowledge into social action on behalf of greater human well-being is the ultimate responsibility of the learned, which is to share the insights that the generosity of others has allowed one to derive, in a perpetual chain of meaning and moral action. Einstein stated, "Humanity has every reason to place the proclaimers of high moral standards and values above the discoverers of objective truth." Steve Gliessman is both a discoverer and practitioner of objective truth and a proclaimer of high moral standards. Tellingly, it is not only his many accomplished former students who can attest to this, but scores of farmers whose livelihoods have markedly improved because Gliessman is about science, purpose, and moral action. Here, he has painstakingly, joyously, fully, and generously laid out his understanding from a lifetime of effort on these fronts.

Flip the page. It is now your turn to take this on.

Ricardo J. Salvador
Director and Senior Scientist
Food and Environment Program
Union of Concerned Scientists
Washington, DC

Preface

In the late 1970s, when I and a small group of students and professors at a school of tropical agriculture in Cárdenas, Tabasco, Mexico, discussed *agroecología*—a term we thought we had invented—little did we know that agroecology would become a core part of a movement for food-system change. Much has happened in the field of agroecology since those early days, and much of that is reflected in this third edition of *Agroecology*, first published in 1996.

Agroecology has become known for being a science, a practice, and part of a social movement focused on transforming food systems to sustainability. It has also become clear how important it is that all three of these elements be integrated in a transdisciplinary, participatory, and action-oriented way in order to be most effective in bringing about the changes that are urgently needed. We now have the opportunity to move beyond the thinking of the agronomists and technologists who say that by merely increasing yields and profits we will be able to meet the food needs of the world's growing population. We were being told this when I was teaching at the Colegio Superior de Agricultura Tropical in southern Mexico in the late 1970s and the first Green Revolution was being touted as the technological miracle for agriculture. When we applied our newly emerging ecological focus to the study of these high-yield, high-input systems, it quickly became obvious that they suffered from the same problems that surround industrial agriculture today, with its focus on large-scale monocultures, huge inputs of synthetic chemical fertilizers and pesticides, and a top-down research and extension program designed to "tell farmers what to do."

Fortunately, around the college and outside the large development projects in southeastern Mexico, there was another agriculture—small-scale, traditional Maya agriculture, with 5000 years of cultural memory. For centuries, the people of the region had developed, tested, and refined practices that continue to evolve today. Featuring the traditional corn–beans–squash intercrop, whole-field *milpa* agroecosystems, the integration of crops and small livestock, complex crop associations and rotations, agroforestry, and remarkable tropical home garden systems, this traditional agriculture has fed people well for a very long time and appeared to be able to do so indefinitely. Working alongside the *campesino* farmers who managed these systems, we studied their ecological foundations, and in the process the principles of agroecology were born. At the same time, we begin to solidify our resistance to the Green Revolution model.

When I moved to UC Santa Cruz in 1981 and started the Agroecology Program, another alternative agriculture—organic farming—was just beginning to take off. Organic farming not only embodied the ecological approach we had developed in Mexico, it also served as a good foundation from which to continue developing resistance to the dominant agricultural paradigm. In the early 1980s, innovative growers were changing their farming systems to organic management, but in most cases they were doing so without much backup research to help them through the three-year transition process required for organic certification, much less help them design and manage organic crops for the long term. Through several years of collaborative farmer-based trials on their farms, we carried out transition studies in crops such as strawberries, apples, cotton, and artichokes, each with its own unique set of issues and challenges. From this experience, we adapted a system developed by Stuart Hill for redesigning food systems for sustainability as a protocol for the agroecological study of such transitional systems. We began with the first three *levels of conversion* that are described in Chapter 22. We were very successful at the outset with Level 2, where we substituted inputs and practices used in industrial systems with organically accepted ones. But as the limits of a purely substitutive approach were reached—especially when growers wanted to maintain the monoculture design they had worked with before transition—we came to the realization that a total redesign was needed to resist the problems, such as diseases, weeds, and pest insects, that came up at both Level 1 and Level 2. This became the essence for the agroecosystem redesign process that constitutes Level 3 of conversion, which was presented in the first edition of this book and is retained in this new edition.

In the years that followed the release of the first edition of *Agroecology*, it quickly became obvious that for the conversion process to reach sustainability, three levels were not enough. With only these three levels, all of the responsibility was on the farmers and all the effort was concentrated at the farm scale. We also began to observe the cooptation of organic production and markets by large growers and corporations, using their scale and market control to intensify production at Level 2. They rarely considered moving to Level 3. Organic, which in its early years was as much a philosophy as it was a way of growing crops, was being captured by the industrial food system.

I think a key milestone in our thinking in agroecology occurred with the publication in 2003 of an article entitled "Agroecology: The ecology of food systems" in the *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture.* Our team of coauthors, led by Chuck Francis, was particularly concerned with the takeover of organic agriculture, and as a response we had decided to add a Level 4 to the conversion process. This level focused on reuniting the two most important parts of the food system—those who grow the food and those who eat it. These two parts had become so isolated from one another that there was no shared knowledge among consumers about how food was grown, by whom, or where, nor knowledge among farmers about where food went, how it was marketed, and how it was consumed. In describing this level of conversion, we were aware that alternative food networks had developed enough to become a movement resisting the dominance of the industrial food system model, with people beginning to take back their right to food system knowledge, and as my friend Rich Merrill said long ago, to put some *culture* back into agri*culture*. When the second edition of *Agroecology* appeared in 2007, the food system was a central concept, and the reconnection of growers and eaters became Level 4 in the transition process. A chapter was devoted to the alternative food system movement.

Since 2007, agroecology and our knowledge of the complexity of food system issues have grown dramatically. The global food price spikes and food riots that took place around the world in 2008 highlighted the lack of food security and access for many people in the world, which became central issues in a growing food justice movement. At the same, the rapid expansion of genetic engineering in agriculture had many extolling the promises of a "second green revolution," as corporate control of the food system became evident in everything from the seed to the market. Countering these developments, movements for food sovereignty, local and slow food, smallholder and family farms, and farmer-to-farmer organizations arose and strengthened. It became obvious to me as an agroecologist that we needed to expand the scope of the field beyond the growing and eating of food. We needed to find a political voice, align closely with social movements, and focus on developing a grassroots and community-based alternative food system that could grow outward and eventually make the industrial food system obsolete.

This commitment to social change gelled at about the same time that agroecology began finding new allies and sources of support. Important publications, such as *Agriculture at a Crossroads* (published by IAASTD in 2009) and *Agroecology and the Right to Food* (published by the United Nations Special Rapporteur in 2011), proposed agroecology as an alternative approach for resolving the interrelated global problems of hunger, rural poverty, and sustainable development. New agroecology degree programs appeared around the world: at Florida International University in Miami; Universidad de Córdoba in Andalusia, Spain; Universidad de Antioquia in Medellín, Colombia; at several universities in Brazil; and elsewhere—most with a focus that crosses the normal boundaries between natural and social sciences. Farmer organizations such as Via Campesina put forward agroecology as a primary means of creating food sovereignty, opportunity, and justice in farming communities. The science of agroecology found new outlets for its research when the journal publisher agreed to change the name of the *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture* to *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* beginning in 2013. It was clear to me that we were witnessing the beginning of a paradigm shift with the potential to move the entire food system to a sustainable basis. This would entail fundamental changes in our social, cultural, and economic systems and institutions—which would go beyond what we had described for Level 4. A fifth level of conversion was needed to complete the transformation of food systems to sustainability, and thus Level 5 features prominently in the final section of this third edition.

As I look back on the 40-plus-year journey I have had in agroecology, I find two personal projects that illustrate how the creation of Level 5 came about. The first began as a group effort among some of my graduate students (listed below), my wife Robbie Jaffe, and me through our work in the coffee-growing communities of Mexico and Central America, which at the time were undergoing the worst price crash in the history of coffee as a commodity crop. We formed the nonprofit network Community Agroecology Network (CAN; described in more detail in Chapter 25), and began working with the growers at Levels 3 and 4 simultaneously. As the network grew to include non-coffee-growing communities, we quickly jumped to Level 5 with programs in food security, food sovereignty, health and nutrition, and youth leadership. Social change became linked with sustainable farming.

The other project was applying the practice of agroecology on our own farm, Condor's Hope Ranch. By combining agroecology with the traditional dry-farming practice, described in Chapter 6, for wine grapes and olives, our family developed a farming operation that we hope to someday pass on to our children, nieces, nephews, and grandchildren. In the 20 years since beginning the farm, we have dealt with multiple farming practice challenges, but the bigger issues are how a small family operation can compete in the highly corporatized industries of wine and olive oil and how we can encourage our future generations to carry on with the same passion and opportunity that Robbie and I have had. These are Level 5 issues.

Agroecology has matured as a science, is recognized as an important practice, and has aligned with a growing social movement for food system change. Our goal is to develop food systems that meet local and regional food, feed, and fiber needs, conserve and protect natural resources, provide essential environmental services, ensure food security and sovereignty, make food justice a reality, and create the opportunity for present and future generations to enjoy healthy and satisfying lives.

That may sound like a lot for the field of agroecology to take on. But I think you will see how this can happen as you make your way through the book. It begins with a strong ecological foundation for farming practices and ends with all of us thinking about the critical importance of transitioning to a new paradigm for food and agriculture, and what this means for our future.

I conclude this preface by acknowledging and thanking the innumerable people who have helped me form my agroecological vision over these many years. Among those that I value as colleagues are Itziar Aguirre, Miguel Altieri, Francisco Roberto Caporal, José Antonio Costabeber, Joao Carlos Costa Gomes, Bruce Fergeson, Chuck Francis, Roberto Garcia Espinosa, Alba Gonzalez Jácome, Manuel Gonzalez de Molina, Gloria Guzmán, Juan José Jimenez Osornio, Avaz Koocheki, Helda Morales, Jaime Morales, Clara Nichols, Ron Nigh, Ivette Perfecto, Paolo Peterson, Francisco Rosado May, Eduardo Sevilla Guzmán, Vivan Vadakan, John Vandermeer, Graham Woodgate, and the faculty and staff of Environmental Studies at UCSC. I realize there are many others who should appear on this list, and I apologize for any omissions.

I deeply appreciate all that I have learned from a very special group of graduate students who have all truly earned the title of agroecologist: Jan Allison, Nick Babin, Marcus Buchanan, Rose Cohen, Wes Colvin, Ariane de Bremond, Francisco Espinosa, Michelle Glowa, Carlos Guadarrama, Kathy Hilimire, Eric Holt-Gimenez, Robbie Jaffe, Rob Kluson, Leslie Linn, Hillary Melcarek, V. Ernesto Méndez, Carlo Moreno, Joanna Ory, Jim Paulus, Francisco Rosado May, Martha Rosemeyer, Devon Sampson, and Laura Trujillo. Over the years, I have been able to collaborate with a remarkably diverse group of postdoctoral researchers: Gianumberto Accinelli, Belén Cotes, Erle Ellis, Manolis Kabourakis, Rie Mayaura, Eleonora Morganti, Joji Muramoto, Sunita Rao, Jesus Juan Rosales, Anastasia Scotto, Tatiana Sevilla, Koos Steyn, and Roberto Tinoco. I am also deeply indebted to what seems like a multitude of undergraduate students who were the initial stimulus for this textbook. Their passion for food system change and hope for the future helped transform this book into what it has become.

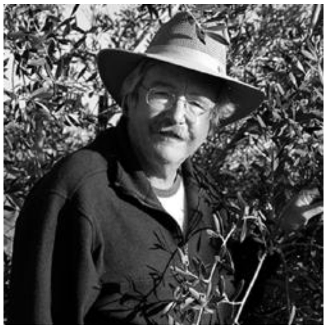
Much appreciation goes to Mike Amato and Catherine Van Sciver at Taylor & Francis Group, and the entire board of editors of *Agroecology and Sustainable Food System*s, for making the journal the transdisciplinary voice for the science of agroecology. To Ruth and Alf Heller, to whom I dedicate this book, I owe the deepest gratitude for their unending support for agroecology and heartfelt vision for future food systems. I am honored to have my *compadre en la lucha*, Ricardo Salvador, prepare the foreword for this edition of *Agroecology*. He has been a model for me of how to integrate education, action, and a willingness to work at the top in the change process. A very special thanks goes to John Sulzycki, senior editor at CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, without whose belief in agroecology and deadlines this edition would have been almost impossible to complete. It wasn't as simple as he thought it would be!

Without a doubt, the person I owe the most for bringing this edition into existence is master editor Eric Engles. The *with* before his name on the title page has a remarkable story behind it. His capacity for keeping track of details, editing my writing, and shaping ideas, and his insistence that the full story of power and concentration be told, made this book what it is and helped greatly in adding Level 5 to the transformation process that needs to happen for the future of food, agriculture, and our planet.

Finally, I have an accumulated debt of gratitude that I owe my *compañera* Robbie Jaffe, who has supported this book project from its initial inception in the mid-1990s. Over the past year, while this edition has taken shape, she has patiently (and sometimes not so patiently) given me the space and time I needed. Be it as a skilled environmental educator, as founding executive director of CAN, or as co-farmer at Condor's Hope, her own commitment to food system change is unsurpassed. As she has shared agroecology with me, we both continue today to share agroecology with our mutual families of four generations, from which our heritage comes and to whom we pass it on.

Steve Gliessman
Condor's Hope Ranch
New Cuyama, California

Author



Stephen R. Gliessman earned graduate degrees in botany, biology, and plant ecology from the University of California, Santa Barbara, and has accumulated more than 40 years of teaching, research, and production experience in the field of agroecology. His international experiences in tropical and temperate agriculture, small-farm and large-farm systems, traditional and conventional farm management, hands-on and academic activities, nonprofit and business employment, and organic and synthetic chemical farming approaches have provided a unique combination of experiences and perspectives to incorporate into this book. He was the founding director of the University of California, Santa Cruz, Agroecology Program, one of the first formal agroecology programs in the world, and was the Alfred and Ruth Heller Professor of Agroecology in the Department of Environmental Studies at UCSC until his retirement in 2012. He is the cofounder of the nonprofit Community Agroecology Network (CAN) and is currently the president of its board of directors. He is the editor of the international journal *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems*. He dry-farms organic wine grapes and olives with his wife Robbie, son Erin, and daughter-in-law Oriana in northern Santa Barbara County, California.

Recommendations for Using This Textbook

Reflecting agroecology's origins in both the pure-science field of ecology and the applied field of agronomy, this text has a dual identity: In one sense, it is designed to teach ecology in the context of agriculture; in another sense, it teaches about agriculture from an ecological perspective.

Despite its attention to the practice of growing food, however, this is not a book on how to farm. Farming is an activity that must be adapted to the particular conditions of each region of the world, and this text's mission is to create an understanding of concepts that are of universal applicability.

The text has been written to accommodate a range of experience and knowledge levels in both ecology and agriculture. Sections I, II, and III assume only a basic knowledge of ecology and biology, and even those students with minimal college-level science training should have little difficulty comprehending the material if they are diligent. Intensive study of Chapters 1 through 13 will prepare any student for the more complex chapters of Sections IV, V, and VI.

Readers with extensive background in ecology will benefit most from the three latter sections. They may want to skim Chapter 2 for review, and then read Chapters 3 through 13 selectively before turning their attention to the next three sections. Readers with advanced training in both ecology and agriculture, including advanced undergraduates, may want to pursue this strategy as well, supplementing the text with additional materials that provide more extensive literature review and reports on research findings.

The text can be used in either a one-quarter or one-semester course, but the rate at which material is covered will depend greatly on the instructor, the students, and the curriculum. Ideally, a laboratory section will complement the lecture section of any course using this textbook, allowing the testing of ecological concepts in agriculture, and the demonstration of how the tools of ecology can be applied to the study of agroecosystems. The accompanying lab manual, *Field and Laboratory Investigations in Agroecology*, is designed to fill this role. Its investigations are keyed to the chapters in this text, and the two work together to create an integrated course.

Suggested readings and a list of Internet resources at the end of each chapter provide further materials for the curious reader. The questions following each chapter are open ended, designed to encourage the reader to consider the ideas and concepts presented in the broader context of sustainability.

The concepts and principles in this text can be applied to agroecosystems anywhere in the world. Just as a farmer must adjust to local and changing conditions, readers of this book are challenged to make the necessary adaptations to apply its contents to their own situations—finding appropriate examples and case studies in the research literature and working with local farmers to connect principles to actual practices.

Section I

Introduction to Agroecology

As the science of connections among living things, ecology affords a way of looking at agriculture that immediately expands its scope well beyond tilling, sowing, cultivating, harvesting, and marketing. In *agroecology*, we move from a narrow concern with farming practices to the whole universe of interactions among crop plants, soil, soil organisms, insects, insect enemies, environmental conditions, and management actions and beyond that to the effects of farming systems on surrounding natural ecosystems. Expanding this to a global scale, we see agriculture as the most land-intensive human activity on the earth, which leads us to consider the overall effects of farming on the ability of the earth to support its populations of humans and other living things. Examining human beings as a particular population, the ecological perspective then encourages us to look into the social world, at such topics as human food consumption patterns, the proportion of farmers to consumers, and the unequal distribution of food.

Casting the net of relevance this broadly leads, we hope, to an integrated perspective in which agriculture can be seen as a key factor—perhaps *the* key factor—in an intensifying crisis confronting humankind. Agriculture is not only a major cause of this crisis; it is also an arena full of potential solutions. The most basic goal of this section is to introduce readers to this greatly expanded way of thinking about agriculture.

Chapter 1 describes the many harms to people, soil, resources, and ecosystems brought about by the way we produce food today and discusses how applying ecological concepts and principles to the design and management of systems of food production—the essence of agroecology—can help us produce food more sustainably. In this way, the chapter constructs an overall context for everything we will consider in this text. Chapter 2 then outlines the fundamental concepts, theories, and perspectives that make up the framework of agroecology—thus establishing the foundation of the approach to growing food that we present in Chapter 1 as the alternative to the unsustainable system we have now. With an understanding of the stakes involved in how we humans grow our food and knowledge of the agroecosystem concept, the reader is prepared to explore the many layers of understanding that make up agroecology.

FIGURE S.1 An intensive vegetable-based agroecosystem on the urban fringe of Shanghai, China. In systems such as this, food is produced for local markets without much of the fertilizer, pesticides, and machinery characteristic of large-scale, single-crop agroecosystems.

1 Case for Fundamental Change in Agriculture

According to a variety of measures, agriculture, considered on a global scale, posted a long streak of extraordinary successes beginning shortly after World War II. During the latter half of the twentieth century, yields per hectare of staple crops such as wheat and rice increased dramatically, food prices declined, the rate of increase in food production generally exceeded the rate of population growth, and chronic hunger diminished. This boost in food production was due mainly to scientific advances and technological innovations, including the development of new plant varieties, the use of fertilizers and pesticides, and the growth of extensive infrastructures for irrigation, all of which contributed to the development of what we will call *industrial agriculture*.

Although agriculture on a global scale has more recently struggled to maintain the ever-improving trends for yield increases, food price reductions, and hunger diminishment that it achieved in the twentieth century, it remains extraordinarily productive, providing abundant food for a large proportion of the world's people. Because industrial agricultural has done a superb job of "delivering the goods," many people in the developed and developing worlds have come to take food for granted. When supermarket shelves are always stocked with a cornucopia of edible products, people tend not to devote a great deal of thought to what it takes to get the food onto the shelves. In historical perspective, this is really an unprecedented situation. Ever since *Homo sapiens* arose some hundreds of thousands of years ago, most humans have had to put the source of their next meals at the top of their list of concerns. But while having a relative abundance of food is a good thing compared to its opposite, it has tended to desensitize us to food issues, to make those of us with good access to food uncritical about how food comes to be.

Ironically, this is precisely the time in our species' history when we need to be taking stock of our food system with a more critical eye than ever before. Just because industrial agriculture is able to create food abundance in the present does not mean it will be able to do so over the long term. Indeed, it is time we came to the realization that industrial agriculture's productivity comes at a steep price and that the bill is eventually going to come due. To create the food productivity that we take for granted today, the industrial system of food production is sacrificing the basic foundations of agriculture—fertile soil, available moisture, amenable climate, nutrient recycling, genetic diversity, and the ecosystem services of natural systems. These prerequisites of food production can take only so much abuse before they begin to fail, putting at risk the food supply of tomorrow.

Another way of describing the situation is that the industrial agriculture model that dominates agriculture today is at the core of a fundamental contradiction: the techniques, innovations, practices, and policies that constitute industrial agriculture, and which have played the largest role in increasing agricultural productivity, have also undermined the basis for that productivity. They have overdrawn and degraded the natural resources upon which agriculture depends. They have created a dependence on nonrenewable, increasingly costly fossil fuels, the use of which exacerbates climate change. And they have helped to forge a system that concentrates ownership of food-system infrastructure in the hands of a few while taking it away from farmers and farmworkers, those who are in the best position to be stewards of agricultural land. In short, the contradictions inherent in our industrial agriculture-dominated system of food production make it unsustainable—it cannot continue to produce enough food for the growing global population over the long term because it deteriorates the conditions that make agriculture possible.

At the same time, our world food system faces threats not entirely of its own making, most notably the emergence of new agricultural diseases, rising costs for all the physical factors of production (land, water, energy, inputs), and climate change. As currently configured, the global food system is terribly ill equipped to face these threats. Increasingly, experts are raising red flags about the ability of agriculture worldwide to adapt to an earth on which droughts, heat waves, and extreme weather events become commonplace and the entire biosphere undergoes major shifts with potentially severe consequences for the growing of food.

Although how we feed ourselves is among humankind's weightiest issues, there is a conspicuous lack of consensus on the current status of the world food system and its future sustainability. A large number of experts—policy analysts, economists, scientists, researchers, and even some business leaders—agree with the rough outlines of the view just presented (e.g., IAASTD 2009; IFAD 2013). They believe that the industrial methods that dominate the world food system today are causing great harm to people and to earth's life-support systems and cannot (and should not) be sustained. But as numerous and authoritative as they are, these voices of concern are drowned out by those who predict productivity increases into the distant future and advocate for intensification and further dissemination of the very same methods and technologies singled out by critics of industrial agriculture as being most harmful.

The causes of this crucial difference of opinion will be addressed in the final section of this book (Section VI).

In the meantime, we encourage readers to entertain the critical perspective with which this chapter began and be open to the possibility that the world food system, as productive as it is, does in fact undermine the foundations of food production and needs to be replaced by something fundamentally different.

The first step in this direction is to take a broad and critical look at the practices of present-day agriculture—that is, to examine the largely hidden costs associated with the remarkable yields we have been extracting from the world's agricultural lands.

PRACTICES OF INDUSTRIAL AGRICULTURE

Present-day agriculture is built around two related goals: the maximization of production and the maximization of profit. These goals give agriculture a striking resemblance to the manufacturing processes that occur in factories. In both cases, elements of production are reduced to their simplest forms, processes are mechanized so that they can brought under the full control of human operators, and efficiency of output in relation to input crowds out any other goals. Although this form of agriculture is often called *conventional* to distinguish it from so-called *organic* agriculture, its factory-like nature suggests the more descriptive term used in the introduction to this chapter: *industrial agriculture*.

In pursuit of maximum production and profit, a host of practices have been developed in industrial agriculture without regard for their direct social and environmental costs or their unintended, long-term consequences. Seven basic practices—intensive tillage, monoculture, irrigation, application of inorganic fertilizer, chemical pest control, genetic manipulation of domesticated plants and animals, and "factory farming" of animals—form the backbone of modern industrial agriculture. Each is used for its individual contribution to productivity, but as a whole the practices form a system in which each depends on the others and reinforces the necessity of using all in concert.

INTENSIVE TILLAGE

Industrial agriculture has long been based on the practice of cultivating the soil completely, deeply, and regularly. The purpose of this intensive cultivation is to loosen the soil structure to allow better drainage, faster root growth, aeration, incorporation of crop residues, and easier sowing of seed. Cultivation is also used to control weeds. Under typical practices—that is, when intensive tillage is combined with short rotations—fields are plowed or cultivated several times during the year, and in many cases this leaves the soil free of any cover for extended periods. It also means that heavy machinery makes regular and frequent passes over fields.

Ironically, intensive cultivation tends to degrade soil quality in a variety of ways. Soil organic matter is reduced as a result of accelerated decomposition and the lack of cover, and the soil is compacted by the recurring traffic of machinery. The loss of organic matter reduces soil fertility and degrades soil structure, increasing the likelihood of further compaction and making cultivation and its temporary improvements even more necessary. Intensive cultivation also greatly increases rates of soil erosion by water and wind.

In recent years, some farmers have turned to reduced-tillage or so-called no-tillage practices. No-till systems have reduced some of the negative impacts of intensive tillage, but as currently practiced they depend on herbicides for weed control. Since herbicide application has its own set of negative consequences (see Chemical Pest and Weed Control below) and because no-till systems reduce the input of organic material into the soil, this system is really just trading one set of problems for another.

MONOCULTURE

Over the last century, agriculture all over the world has moved relentlessly toward specialization. Farming once meant growing a diversity of crops and raising livestock, but now farmers are far more likely to specialize, growing corn for livestock feed, for example, or raising hogs. In crop agriculture, specialization means monoculture—growing only one crop in a field, often on a very extensive scale. Monoculture allows more efficient use of farm machinery for cultivation, sowing, weed control, and harvest, and can create economies of scale with regard to purchase of seeds, fertilizer, and pesticides. Monoculture is a natural outgrowth of an industrial approach to agriculture, where labor inputs are minimized and technology-based inputs are maximized in order to increase productive efficiency. Monoculture techniques mesh well with the other practices of modern agriculture: monoculture tends to favor intensive cultivation, application of inorganic fertilizer, irrigation, chemical control of pests and weeds, and specialized plant varieties. The link with chemical pesticides is particularly strong; vast fields of the same plant are more susceptible to devastating attack by specific pests and diseases and require protection by pesticides. Many of the same problems occur when farmers plant large areas to organic monocultures.

APPLICATION OF SYNTHETIC FERTILIZER

The spectacular increases in yields of the last half of the twentieth century were due in large part to the widespread and intensive use of synthetic chemical fertilizers. In the United States, the amount of fertilizer applied to fields each year increased rapidly after World War II, from 9 million tons in 1940 to more than 47 million tons in 1980. Although worldwide use of fertilizer increased most rapidly between 1950 and 1992, continuing increases in use since that period brought total world consumption of synthetic fertilizer beyond the 170-million-metric-ton mark in 2007 (FAOSTAT 2012).

Produced in large quantities at relatively low cost using fossil fuels, atmospheric nitrogen (N_2), and mined mineral deposits containing phosphorus (P), fertilizers can be applied easily and uniformly to crops to supply them with ample amounts of the most essential plant nutrients. Because they meet plants' nutrient needs for the short term, fertilizers have allowed farmers to ignore long-term soil fertility and the processes by which it is maintained.

The mineral components of synthetic fertilizers, however, are easily leached out of the soil. In irrigated systems, the leaching problem may be particularly acute; a large amount of the fertilizer applied to fields actually ends up in streams, lakes, and rivers, where it causes **eutrophication** (excessive growth of oxygen-depleting plant and algal life). Fertilizer can also be leached into groundwater used for drinking, where it poses a significant health hazard. Use of nitrogen-based fertilizer is furthermore a problem for the atmosphere: it stimulates soil microbes to produce more nitrous oxide (N_2O), which acts as a greenhouse gas and depletes stratospheric ozone (Park et al. 2012). Finally, the cost of fertilizer is a variable over which farmers have no control since it rises with increases in the cost of petroleum.

IRRIGATION

An adequate supply of water is the limiting factor for food production in many parts of the world. Thus supplying water to fields from underground aquifers, reservoirs, and diverted rivers has been key to increasing overall yield and the amount of land that can be farmed. Although only 20% of the world's cropland is irrigated, this land produces 40% of the world's food (FAO 2011).

All sectors of society have placed rapidly increasing demands on freshwater supplies over the past half century, but agricultural purposes account for the lion's share of the demand—about 70% of water use worldwide (UN Water 2012). A clean, fresh, and sufficient supply of water has become a major issue on the immediate horizon not just for agriculture, but for all of human society (Pearce 2006). Unfortunately, agriculture is such a prodigious user of water that in many areas where land is irrigated for farming, irrigation has a significant effect on regional hydrology. The greatest problem is that groundwater is often pumped faster than it is renewed by rainfall. This overdraft can cause land subsidence, and near the coast it can lead to saltwater intrusion (Figure 1.1). In addition, overdrafting groundwater is essentially borrowing water from the future. Where water for irrigation is drawn from rivers, agriculture is often competing for water with water-dependent wildlife and urban areas. Dams built to hold water supplies have dramatic effects downstream on the ecology of rivers and block the spawning of anadromous fish. Irrigation has another type of impact as well: it increases the likelihood that fertilizers will be leached from fields and into local streams and rivers, and it can greatly increase the rate of soil erosion.

FIGURE 1.1 Furrow irrigation with gated pipe in coastal central California. Overdraft of the underground aquifers from which the irrigation water is pumped has caused saltwater intrusion, threatening the sustainability of agriculture in the region.

CHEMICAL PEST AND WEED CONTROL

After World War II, chemical pesticides were widely touted as the new, scientific weapon in humankind's war against plant pests and pathogens. These chemical agents had the appeal of offering farmers a way to rid their fields once and for all of organisms that continually threatened their crops and literally ate up their profits. But this promise has proven to be false. Pesticides (i.e., insecticides, fungicides, and herbicides) can dramatically lower pest populations in the short term, but because they also kill pests' natural enemies, pest populations can often quickly rebound and reach even greater numbers than before. The farmer is then forced to use even more of the chemical agents. The dependence on pesticide use that results has been called the "pesticide treadmill." Augmenting the dependence problem is the phenomenon of increased resistance: pest populations continually exposed to pesticides are subjected to intense natural selection for pesticide resistance. When resistance among the pests increases, farmers are forced to apply larger amounts of pesticide or to use different pesticides, further contributing to the conditions that promote even greater resistance.

The metaphor of the "treadmill" is particularly apt because once a farmer gets on it, he or she finds it difficult to get off. With natural enemies eliminated from the system, ceasing to use pesticides is asking for serious crop damage. This is one reason why many farmers—especially those in developing nations—do not use other options, even though the problem of pesticide dependence is widely recognized. Even in the United States, the amount of pesticides applied to major field crops, fruits, and vegetables each year remains above 500,000 metric tons per year, more than twice the level it was in 1962, when Rachel Carson published *Silent Spring* (US EPA 2012). Pesticide resistance, the spread of insect pests and plant pathogens to regions where they had not previously existed, and the extensive use of genetically modified

FIGURE 1.2 Broadcast spraying to control codling moth in an apple orchard in the Pajaro Valley, CA.

(GM) crops *designed* to be grown in concert with intensive application of herbicides (see the next section) are all factors driving the worldwide increase in the use of chemical pest and disease controls. Ironically, total crop losses to pests have stayed fairly constant for the past 40–50 years despite increasing pesticide use (Pimentel 2005; Oerke 2006).

Besides costing farmers a great deal of money, pesticides can have a profound effect on the environment and on human health. Worldwide, millions of people every year experience symptoms of direct pesticide poisoning, and the ubiquitous presence of pesticides in water, soil, and food is implicated in increased incidence of cancer, reproductive and developmental disorders, and other maladies. Pesticides applied to fields kill beneficial insects and those essential to natural system food webs, and they are easily washed and leached into surface water and groundwater, where they enter the food chain, affecting animal populations at every level and often persisting for decades.

MANIPULATION OF PLANT AND ANIMAL GENOMES

Humans have selected for specific characteristics among crop plants and domesticated animals for thousands of years; indeed, human management of wild species was one of the foundations of the beginning of agriculture. In recent decades, however, technological advances have brought about a revolution in the manipulation of genes. First, advances in breeding techniques allowed for the production of hybrid seeds, which combine the characters of two or more plant strains. Hybrid plant varieties can be much more productive than similar nonhybrid varieties and have thus been one of the primary factors behind the yield increases achieved during the so-called "green revolution." The hybrid varieties, however, often require optimal conditions—including intensive application of inorganic fertilizer—in order to realize their productive potential, and many require pesticide application to protect them from extensive pest damage because they lack the pest resistance of their nonhybrid cousins. In addition, hybrid plants cannot produce seeds with the same genome as their parents, making farmers dependent on commercial seed producers.

More recently, geneticists have developed techniques that allow them to splice genes from a variety of organisms into target genomes to create "customized" plant and animal varieties. These organisms are referred to as **transgenic**, GM, or **genetically engineered** (GE).

Only a few animal species used for food have been genetically engineered as yet—these include pigs with spinach genes that produce lower-fat bacon, cows that produce milk with higher casein levels, and salmon that grow at twice the rate of their wild kin—but transgenic crop plants have become widespread and very important in agricultural production. Between 1996 and 2012, the area planted to GE crops worldwide increased 100-fold, from 1.7 million hectares to over 170 million hectares, making "biotech" crops "the fastest adopted crop technology in the history of modern agriculture" (James 2012). Although developed countries have long been the leaders in production of biotech crops—69.5 million hectares were planted in the United States in 2012, for example—developing countries are now adopting the crops at a faster rate. The area planted to biotech crops in developing countries surpassed that in developed countries in 2012.

Two types of GM crops have become particularly prevalent: those engineered to be tolerant of herbicides and those containing genes directing the plants to produce the same insecticidal toxins produced by the bacterium *Bacillus thuringiensis* ("Bt crops"). Herbicide-tolerant crops are designed to be treated with herbicides—usually glyphosate—to kill weeds but not the crop plants; Bt crops protect themselves from herbivory, reducing the need for insecticides. Together, these crops account for about 95% of the acres planted to cotton and soybean in the United States and about 85% of the acres planted to corn (Benbrook 2012).

Although GE organisms hold many promises—reducing the use of pesticides and irrigation, allowing agriculture on soils too saline for normal crops, and increasing the nutritional value of some crops—there are many concerns about the spread of this and related biotechnologies. One main source of concern is the potential for the migration of modified genes into other populations, both wild and domestic. This could result, for example, in more aggressive weeds or the introduction of toxins into crop plants. In the case of the modified salmon mentioned earlier, the fish could easily escape and cross with wild salmon, possibly upsetting ocean food chains. Increased use of transgenic crops may also diminish agrobiodiversity, as traditional cultivars are abandoned, and increase the dependence of farmers on the transnational corporations owning the patents on the new organisms.

The rapid rise to dominance of herbicide-tolerant and Bt crops in US agriculture has revealed what may be one of the most serious drawbacks of GM food organisms: in both cases, the target pests—weeds for herbicide-tolerant crops and insects for Bt crops—become resistant, creating yet another version of the pesticide treadmill. Many weed species have quickly become resistant to glyphosate, forcing farmers planting herbicide-resistant crops to increase application of glyphosate, spray it more often, and add in other herbicides that have a different mode of action (and are often more toxic to humans). Because of this "super weed" phenomenon, herbicide use in the United States increased exponentially between 1996 and 2011; US farmers now use 527 million more pounds of herbicide than they did in 1996 (Benbrook 2012). Although Bt crops have, during the same period, reduced insecticide use moderately, insect pests have become increasingly resistant to Bt toxins, causing farmers to bring back the insecticides they used in the past in order to preserve the efficacy of Bt technology. Moreover, the large amounts of Bt toxin produced by Bt crops cause the toxin to appear in ever-higher amounts in animal feed, human food, and the environment.

Factory Farming of Animals

If you live in a developed country, a large portion of the meat, eggs, and milk that you eat probably comes from large-scale, industrialized operations driven by the goal of bringing these food products to market at the lowest possible unit cost. The animals in these "confined animal feeding operations" (CAFOs) are typically crowded so tightly they can barely move, given antibiotics to prevent the spread of disease, and fed highly processed soy- and corn-based feed supplemented with hormones and vitamins. Even though they are completely dependent on crop agriculture for the production of feed, CAFOs are disconnected—spatially and functionally—from the fields in which the feed grains are grown (Figure 1.3).

Factory-farm livestock production is another manifestation of the specialization trend in agriculture. In many ways, factory farming is for pigs, cattle, and poultry while monoculture is for corn, wheat, and tomatoes. The livestock in CAFOs are more susceptible to disease, just as monocropped corn plants are to pest damage, and both require chemical inputs (pharmaceuticals for livestock and pesticides for crops) to compensate. Both factory farming and monoculture encourage the use of organisms bred or engineered for productive efficiency and dependent on the artificial conditions of the industrial process.

FIGURE 1.3 A CAFO in California's Central Valley.

Factory farming is criticized by animal rights groups as cruel and inhumane. Laying hens and broiler chickens are routinely debeaked to keep them from pecking each other; hogs are often kept in pens so small they cannot turn around; beef cattle commonly suffer slow and painful deaths at the slaughterhouse.

There are many other reasons to be critical of the industrial approach to raising livestock. CAFOs, for example, have serious impacts on the environment. Disposal of the massive amounts of manure and urine generated by the confined animals is a huge problem, usually dealt with by treating the wastes in large anaerobic lagoons that leak nitrates into surface streams and groundwater and allow ammonia to escape into the atmosphere. This problem arises because CAFOs by their very nature cannot recycle nitrogen within the system, as is the case on smaller traditional farms where animals and crop plants are raised together. Thus nitrogen becomes a problematic waste product instead of a valuable plant nutrient.

The rise in factory farming is coupled with a worldwide trend toward diets higher in meat and animal products. As demand for meat increases, industrialized methods of animal food production become more profitable and more widespread, replacing more sustainable pastoral and mixed crop–livestock systems.

WHY INDUSTRIAL AGRICULTURE IS NOT SUSTAINABLE

The practices of industrial agriculture all tend to compromise future productivity in favor of high productivity in the present. The ways in which industrial agriculture puts future productivity at risk are many. Agricultural resources such as soil, water, and genetic diversity are overdrawn and degraded, global ecological processes on which agriculture ultimately depends are altered, human health suffers, and the social conditions conducive to resource conservation are weakened and dismantled. In economic terms, these adverse impacts are called **externalized costs**. Because their consequences can be temporarily ignored or absorbed by society in general, they are excluded from the cost–benefit calculus that allows industrial agricultural operations to continue to make economic sense.

An important feature of industrial agriculture's externalized costs is that they have serious consequences both for the future and the present. These "unsustainable" aspects of industrial agriculture are not problematic just because they are unsustainable—because they will one day cause the system to collapse—but because they are causing, in the present, real human suffering and irreparable damage to the ecological systems on which we rely. They are also problematic because when they do begin to pull industrial agriculture into a state of crisis, agriculture would not be the only part of human society that will be impacted.

SOIL DEGRADATION

Every year, according to the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) of the United Nations (UN), between five and seven million hectares of valuable agricultural land are lost to soil degradation. Other estimates run as high as 10 million hectares per year (e.g., World Congress on Conservation Agriculture 2005). In 2011, the FAO estimated that 33% of the earth's land is highly or moderately degraded, with the majority of this land in areas with high poverty rates (FAO 2011). Degradation of soil can involve salting, waterlogging, compaction, contamination by pesticides, decline in the quality of soil structure, loss of fertility, and erosion by wind and water.

Although all these forms of soil degradation are severe problems, erosion is the most widespread. Under optimal conditions, soil is created at the rate of about 1 ton/ha/year, but worldwide soil is being eroded from industrially farmed land at a rate one to two orders of magnitude greater (Montgomery 2007). This means that in just a short period, humans have wasted soil resources that took thousands of years to be built up (Figure 1.4).

The cause–effect relationship between industrial agriculture and soil erosion is direct and unambiguous. Intensive tillage, combined with monoculture and short rotations, leaves the soil exposed to the erosive effects of wind and rain. The soil lost through this process is rich in organic matter, the most valuable soil component. Similarly, irrigation is a direct cause of much water erosion of agricultural soil.

Combined, soil erosion and the other forms of soil degradation render much of the agricultural soil of the world increasingly less fertile. Some land—severely eroded or too salty from evaporated irrigation water—is lost from production altogether. The land that can still produce is kept productive by the artificial means of adding synthetic fertilizers. Although fertilizers can temporarily replace lost nutrients, they cannot rebuild soil fertility and restore soil health; moreover, their use has a number of negative consequences, as discussed earlier.

FIGURE 1.4 Severe soil erosion on a sloping hillside following intense winter rains. In this strawberry-growing region in the Elkhorn Slough watershed of central California, soil losses exceed 150 tons/acre in some years.

Since the supply of agricultural soil is finite, and because natural processes cannot come close to renewing or restoring soil as fast as it is degraded, agriculture cannot be sustainable until it can reverse the process of soil degradation. Current agricultural practices must undergo a vast change if the precious soil resources we have remaining are to be conserved for the future.

OVERUSE OF WATER AND DAMAGE TO HYDROLOGICAL SYSTEMS

Freshwater is becoming increasingly scarce in many parts of the world as industry, expanding cities, and agriculture compete for limited supplies. Some countries have too little water for any additional agricultural or industrial development to occur. To meet demands for water in many other places, water is being drawn from underground aquifers much faster than it can be replenished by rainfall, and rivers are being drained of their water to the detriment of aquatic and riparian ecosystems and their dependent wildlife. Many of the world's major rivers—including the Colorado, Ganges, and Yellow—now run dry for part of the year as a result.

Agriculture accounts for more than 70% of global water use. Most of this water is used to irrigate crops. For the most part, irrigation is employed not to make land productive, but to make it *more* productive. The 20% of agricultural land worldwide that is irrigated produces about 40% of the world's food supply (FAO 2011). To generate this considerable increase in yield beyond what would otherwise be the case, irrigated agriculture uses tremendous volumes of water.

Irrigated agriculture uses so much water in part because it uses water wastefully. More than half of the water applied to crops is never taken up by the plants it is intended for (Van Tuijl 1993). Instead, this water either evaporates from the soil surface or drains out of fields. Some wastage of water is inevitable, but a great deal of waste could be eliminated if agricultural practices were oriented toward conservation of water rather than maximization of production. For example, crop plants could be watered with drip irrigation systems, and production of water-intensive crops such as rice could be shifted away from regions with limited water supplies.

The increasing importance of meat in human diets worldwide is another factor in agriculture's rising demand for water, as is the trend toward concentrated grain feeding of livestock. Animal factories use a great deal of water for cooling the animals and flushing their wastes, and many animals drink large amounts of water. Hogs, for example, can consume up to 8 gal/animal/day (Marks and Knuffke 1998). And these are just the direct uses of water for raising livestock. Factoring in the water needed to grow the biomass fed to animals, animal-derived food requires at least twice as much water to produce as plant-derived food, and usually much more. The difference between the amount of water needed to grow calorie-equivalent amounts of plant food and animal food can be extreme. For example, it takes only 89 L of water to grow 500 cal of potatoes, but an astonishing *fifty-five times* more, or 4902 L, to raise 500 cal of grain-fed beef (Postel and Vickers 2004). If we look at protein alone, the ratio is even more skewed: on average, producing 1 kg of animal protein requires about 100 times as much water as producing 1 kg of grain protein (Pimentel and Pimentel 2003).

In addition to using a large share of the world's freshwater, industrial agriculture has an impact on regional and global hydrological patterns and the aquatic, riparian, and marine ecosystems dependent on them. First, by drawing such large quantities of water from natural reservoirs on land, agriculture has caused a massive transfer of water from the continents to the oceans. A 2012 study concluded that an observed sea level rise of 0.77 mm/year between 1961 and 2003, about 42% of the total rise, was due to the transfer of water from on-land storage basins to the sea. Most of this transfer is due to the use of underground aquifers for irrigation (Pokhrel et al. 2012). Moreover, the amount of water that agriculture causes to be moved from the land to the oceans is only increasing as more land is brought under irrigation. Second, where irrigation is practiced on a large scale, agriculture brings about changes in hydrology and microclimate. Water is transferred from natural watercourses to fields and the soil below them, and increased evaporation changes humidity levels and may affect rainfall patterns. These changes in turn significantly impact natural ecosystems and wildlife. Third, the dams, aqueducts, and other infrastructure created to make irrigation possible have dramatically altered many of the world's rivers, causing enormous ecological damage. Rivers that once provided valuable ecosystem services to human society cannot do so anymore—their wetland, aquatic, and floodplain ecosystems can no longer absorb and filter out pollutants or provide habitat for fish and waterfowl, and they can no longer deposit the rich sediment so important for restoring the fertility of agricultural soils in floodplain areas (Figure 1.5).

Agriculture's large and growing use of water will only grow more serious as a fundamental issue facing humankind. As the demand for water increases, the guarantee of an adequate supply becomes less and less assured because climate change is reducing mountain snowfall, melting high-altitude glaciers, increasing the frequency of droughts, causing salinization of groundwater in coastal areas, and degrading the ecosystem processes that help purify water. If industrial agriculture continues to use water in the same ways, our rivers will become increasingly crippled and regional water crises will become increasingly common, either shortchanging the environment, marginalized peoples, and future generations or limiting irrigation-dependent food production.

FIGURE 1.5 The San Luis Dam in California. Built in part to hold irrigation water for farms on the west side of the San Joaquin Valley, it is one of an estimated 800,000 dams in the world that trap life-giving silt, destroy riverine and riparian ecosystems, and completely alter natural hydrological functioning.

POLLUTION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

More water pollution comes from agriculture than from any other single source. Agricultural pollutants include pesticides, herbicides, other agrochemicals, fertilizer, animal wastes, and salts.

Pesticides and herbicides—applied in large quantities on a regular basis, often from aircraft—are easily spread beyond their targets, killing beneficial insects and wildlife directly and poisoning farmers and farmworkers. The pesticides that make their way into streams, rivers, and lakes—and eventually the ocean—can have serious deleterious effects on aquatic ecosystems. They can also affect other ecosystems indirectly. Fish-eating raptors, for example, may eat pesticide-laden fish, reducing their reproductive capacity and thereby impacting terrestrial ecosystems. Although persistent organochloride pesticides such as DDT—known for their ability to remain in ecosystems for many decades—are being used less in many parts of the world, their less-persistent replacements are often much more acutely toxic.

Pesticides also pose a significant human health hazard. They spread throughout the environment by hydrological, meteorological, and biological means, and so it is impossible for humans to avoid exposure. In its 2003 edition of *Human Exposure to Environmental Chemicals*, the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) reported that all of the 9282 people they tested had pesticides and their breakdown products in their bodies, and the average person had detectable amounts of 13 different pesticides (Schafer et al. 2004). Similar incidences of exposure and detection were reported in the CDC's 2013 report (CDC 2013). Pesticides enter our bodies through our food and our drinking water. In one study (Gilliom and Hamilton 2006), pesticide contamination was detected in 97% of streams tested in agricultural and urban areas, in 94% of streams tested in areas with mixed land use, and in 65% of streams tested in undeveloped areas. Pesticides were found in 61% of groundwater samples in agricultural areas and 55% of samples in urban areas. Another study (Wu et al. 2010) found that the herbicide atrazine, which is used very commonly for corn production, was present in 75% of all watersheds and 40% of the drinking water wells in corn-producing regions of the United States, and estimates that over 33 million people in the United States have been exposed to atrazine in their drinking water. If all the drinking water sources in the United States at risk for pesticide contamination were properly monitored for the presence of harmful agents, the cost would be well over $15 billion (Pimentel 2005).

Fertilizer leached from fields is less directly toxic than pesticides, but its effects can be equally damaging ecologically. In aquatic and marine ecosystems it promotes the overgrowth of algae, causing eutrophication and the death of many types of organisms. Nitrates from fertilizers and livestock manure are also a major contaminant of drinking water in many areas. When nitrates enter aquifers they are not easily removed, and frequently alternative drinking water sources are not available. As a result, many people in agricultural regions are exposed to nitrate levels in excess of established safe thresholds and have an increased risk of cancer and reproductive disorders. Rounding out the list of pollutants from croplands are salts and sediments, which in many locales have degraded streams, helped destroy fisheries, and rendered wetlands unfit for bird life.

Where factory farming has become the dominant form of meat, milk, and egg production, animal waste has become a huge pollution problem. Farm animals in the United States produce far more waste than do humans. The large size of feedlot and other factory farming operations poses challenges for the treatment of these wastes. As noted in the previous text, the wastes are typically treated in large anaerobic lagoons not well suited to protection of the environment. Some of the nitrogen from the wastes leaks out of the lagoons and into underlying aquifers, adding large quantities of nitrates to the groundwater and eventually to rivers. Even more nitrogen from the wastes converts to ammonia and enters the atmosphere, where it combines with water droplets to form ammonium ions. As a result, the rainwater downwind of livestock feeding operations often has extremely high concentrations of ammonium ions. Although most treated animal waste is ultimately applied to fields as fertilizer, the phosphorus and nitrogen it contains are beyond useful levels for most crops. Furthermore, factory farms often have so much waste to get rid of that they apply more treated waste to fields than the soil can accommodate, and do so year-round, even at times in the crop cycle when fields and crops are unable to absorb it. The excess nitrogen and phosphorus find their way into streams, rivers, and the local drinking water supply.

Through all these various avenues, tons of nitrogen and phosphorus from animal waste and inorganic fertilizer make their way into waterways and then into the oceans, creating large "dead zones" near river mouths. More than 50 of these dead zones exist seasonally around the world, with some of the largest—in the Chesapeake Bay, Puget Sound, and Gulf of Mexico—off the coast of the United States. In the summer of 2013, the dead zone in the Gulf of Mexico reached a record-breaking size of more than 8000 square miles.

Destruction of Natural Habitat

Farming entails the conversion of native vegetation—the habitat for native species of insects, birds, mammals, and other animals—into land intensively managed by humans. That is the nature of agriculture and the price of supporting large populations of human beings on the earth. But different forms of agriculture have vastly different impacts on native vegetation and natural habitat. As will be discussed in Chapter 23, land managed by humans for food production can support healthy populations of beneficial insects, birds, and other vertebrates and invertebrates, serving in this regard as a reasonable substitute for the natural habitats that once existed on the land. For a variety of reasons, industrial agriculture has proven remarkably effective at not only eliminating vast expanses of native vegetation but also at essentially sterilizing agricultural land and reducing its habitat value to essentially zero.

Industrial agriculture supports a drive to convert as much natural habitat as possible to farmland because more land in production means more profit. More often than not, farmers expand their areas of production not to grow more food for people, but to grow more corn and other agricultural commodities for biofuel production and animal feed. In the United States, conversion of additional land to corn production has been directly linked to a rise in the price of corn, which is a product of federal subsidies for biofuel production.

All the practices of industrial agriculture described earlier combine to make the large bulk of cropland in many areas essentially worthless as wildlife habitat. Intensively tilled monocultures of genetically uniform crops fertilized with inorganic fertilizers can serve as a habitat for very few animals except insect pests, and in attempting to control these pests with pesticides, industrially oriented farmers insure that other insects are eliminated as well. More recently, the development of herbicide-resistant crop varieties has allowed farmers to escalate their war against weeds to a new level, creating vast stretches of agricultural landscape with no refuges for beneficial insects and no food plants for migrating populations of butterflies.

The effects of eliminating natural vegetation and reducing the habitat value of agricultural land may be slow to accumulate, but there is little doubt that they may become severe. Some of the effects will be felt directly by agroecosystems, as pollinators such as European and native bees become scarce and reductions in populations of natural enemies of insect pests make farmers more dependent on pesticides. But even more worrisome are the larger-scale effects, which include precipitous declines in biological diversity and deterioration of ecosystems that provide farmers and other humans with critical ecosystem services (such as water purification, buffering of floods, groundwater recharge, and erosion control).

FIGURE 1.6 Pine forest habitat on the Florida Piedmont being bulldozed to make way for irrigated corn and pasture for cattle production. The white sandy soil exposed by forest clearing is low in organic matter and nutrients and requires significant external inputs to support agricultural production. The agroecosystems put in place here will have a fraction of the diversity of the undisturbed forest.

FIGURE 1.7 Equipment yard of a large industrial vegetable farm in the Salinas Valley, CA. High levels of external inputs are needed to level, rip, and cultivate soil, plant seeds or transplant seedlings, apply fertilizers, spray pesticides, irrigate, and harvest crops such as the monoculture broccoli seen in the foreground.

Dependence on External Inputs and Nonrenewable Resources

Industrial agriculture has achieved its high yields mainly by increasing agricultural inputs. These inputs comprise physical factors of production such as irrigation water, fertilizer, pesticides, and processed feed and antibiotics; the energy used to manufacture these substances, to run farm machinery and irrigation pumps, and to climate-control animal factories; technology in the form of hybrid and transgenic seeds, new farm machinery, and new agrochemicals; and knowledge in the form of the expertise needed to use and manage these inputs. These inputs all come from outside the agroecosystem itself; their extensive use has consequences for farmers' profits, use of nonrenewable resources, and the locus of control of agricultural production (Figure 1.7).

The longer industrial practices are used on farmland, the more the system becomes dependent on external inputs. As intensive tillage and monoculture degrade the soil, continued fertility depends more and more on the input of fossil-fuel-derived nitrogen fertilizer and other nutrients. And using reduced-tillage systems to limit the problems caused by intensive tillage does nothing to break this dependency because it usually requires that intensive herbicide use take the place of tillage as a weed control method.

Agriculture cannot be sustained as long as this dependence on external inputs remains. First, the natural resources from which many of the inputs are derived are nonrenewable and their supplies finite. Second, dependence on external inputs leaves farmers, regions, and whole countries vulnerable to supply shortages, market fluctuations, and price increases. In addition, excessive use of inputs has multiple negative off-farm and downstream impacts, as noted earlier.

The most notable of external inputs in industrial agriculture is fossil fuels. The dependence of industrial agriculture on fossil fuels has become so extreme—they are critical for everything from manufacture of nitrogen fertilizer to transport of food from one side of the globe to the other—that food prices have become correlated directly with energy prices. Although agriculture's dependence on an input that will eventually be used up is a cause for concern, a continued flow of fossil fuels has been guaranteed for the medium term by the development of new extractive technologies such as "fracking" and the exploitation of deeper offshore oil fields. The same thing cannot be said, however, for another critical external input: phosphorus. Mined deposits of phosphorus-rich minerals—the sole source of this important macronutrient in synthetic fertilizer—may be mostly used up within the next four decades.

Production of Greenhouse Gases and Loss of Carbon Sinks

As an economic sector, agriculture is the third largest contributor to greenhouse gas emissions worldwide, behind transportation and the burning of fossil fuels for power and heat. Although it is impossible to grow, process, and distribute food without releasing carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases into the atmosphere, our present food system makes a much larger contribution to climate change than it would if organized according to agroecological principles. The geographic and economic separation between farmers and consumers insures the burning of large quantities of fossil fuels to distribute and transport food; input-intensive monoculture requires that fossil fuels be used to produce and distribute inorganic fertilizers, pesticides, and other inputs and that farmers be dependent on fossil-fuel-consuming field equipment. Further, industrial agriculture's primary focus on the maximization of yield and profit gives farmers little motivation to use fossil-fuel energy and the inputs derived from it efficiently. It is common, for example, for farmers to apply excess nitrogen fertilizer, much of which ends up as the greenhouse gas nitrous oxide.

The food system's focus on production of meat and dairy products is a major reason why agriculture produces so much greenhouse gas. Approximately 37% of agriculture's total greenhouse gas emissions—in the form of the potent greenhouse gas methane—come from the digestive systems of the world's livestock. Livestock are also responsible for much of agriculture's emission of carbon dioxide and nitrous oxide. The nitrous oxide comes from bacterial processing of the nitrogen in livestock manure; the carbon dioxide comes from the rapid decomposition of crop residue in the tilled fields used to produce livestock feed.

In addition to producing greenhouse gases, industrial agriculture exacerbates climate change by reducing the ability of the biosphere to hold carbon in a fixed, organic form. At any particular moment, a significant portion of the carbon in circulation—that is, not locked away in geologic structures below the surface—is not in gaseous form in the atmosphere, but present as dissolved CO_2 in the oceans and in organic or mineral form in earth's terrestrial ecosystems. This latter "sink" of carbon is largely made up of vegetative biomass and the microbial biomass, humus, and organic and mineral carbon of the soil. Industrial agriculture involves practices (described in Practices of Industrial Agriculture section) that reduce the storage capacity of both of these terrestrial carbon sinks. Much of this occurs in the clearing of large tracts of woody vegetation—much of it tropical rainforest—for pasture land and for growing livestock feed, palm oil, and biofuel feedstock. Additionally, intensive tillage, application of inorganic fertilizer, and a strong reliance on annual crops dramatically reduce the ability of agricultural soils to sequester and store carbon because they reduce the soil's biological activity and expose its organic matter to depletion by erosion, chemical degradation, and bacterial respiration.

In these many ways, industrial agriculture makes a significant contribution to climate change, thereby playing a role in making much of the earth less hospitable to agriculture in any form.

Loss of Genetic Diversity

Throughout most of the history of agriculture, humans have increased the genetic diversity of crop plants and livestock worldwide. We have been able to do this both by selecting for a variety of specific and often locally adapted traits through selective breeding, and by continually recruiting wild species and their genes into the pool of domesticated organisms. In the last 100 years or so, however, the overall genetic diversity of domesticated plants and animals has declined. Many varieties of plants and breeds of animals have become extinct, and a great many others are heading in that direction. About 75% of the genetic diversity that existed in crop plants in 1900 had been lost 100 years later (Nierenberg and Halweil 2004). The UN FAO reported in 2010 that even though modern breeding programs are continually releasing new varieties for use in production, the observed trend is for farmers (and especially traditional farmers in developing countries) to abandon their locally adapted varieties (FAO 2010). The UN FAO estimated in 1998 that as many as two domesticated animal breeds were being lost each week worldwide (FAO 1998), and noted again in 2007 that a similar rate of loss continued as more farmers shifted to market-oriented confinement production systems, putting at least 20% of known animal breeds in danger of extinction (FAO 2007).

In the meantime, the genetic bases of most major crops and livestock species have become increasingly uniform. At the end of the last century, only six varieties of corn, for example, accounted for more than 70% of the world's corn crop, and 99% of the turkeys raised in the United States belonged to a single breed (FAO 1998).

The loss of genetic diversity has occurred mainly because of industrial agriculture's emphasis on short-term productivity gains. When highly productive varieties and breeds are developed, they tend to be adopted in favor of others, even when the varieties they displace have many desirable and potentially desirable traits. Genetic homogeneity among crops and livestock is also consistent with the maximization of productive efficiency because it allows standardization of management practices.

For crop plants, a major problem with increasing genetic uniformity is that it leaves each crop as a whole more vulnerable to attack by pests and pathogens that acquire resistance to pesticides and to the plants' own defensive compounds; it also makes crops more vulnerable to changes in climate and other environmental factors. These are not insignificant or hypothetical threats. Every year, crop pests and pathogens destroy an estimated 30%–40% of potential yield. Plant pathogens can evolve rapidly to overcome crop's defenses, and global commerce and genetically uniform farm fields allow these new virulent strains to spread rapidly from field to field and continent to continent. In a report on crop diversity and disease threats released in 2005, researchers identified four diseases with the potential to devastate the US corn crop, five that could threaten potatoes, and three with the potential to harm US-grown wheat (Qualset and Shands 2005). In late 2004, a new soybean rust (a type of fungus) appeared in the southern United States and began to attack the soybean crop. By 2009, soybean rust had spread to 16 states and more than 576 counties in the United States and at least 3 states in Mexico. By 2012, the US Department of Agriculture (USDA) had reported its appearance in Texas and Florida. None of the commercial soybean varieties planted in the United States are yet resistant to the rust fungus, and scientists are concerned about the potential impact on the multibillion US dollar soybean harvest as the rust continues to spread.

Throughout the history of agriculture, farmers—and more recently, plant scientists—have responded to outbreaks of disease by finding and planting resistant varieties of the affected crop. But as the size of each crop's genetic reservoir declines, there are fewer and fewer varieties from which to draw resistant or adaptive genes. The importance of having a large genetic reservoir can be illustrated by example. In 1968, greenbugs attacked the US sorghum crop, causing an estimated $100 million in damage. The next year, insecticides were used to control the greenbugs at a cost of about $50 million. Soon thereafter, however, researchers discovered a sorghum variety that carried resistance to the greenbugs. No one had known of the greenbug resistance, but it was there nonetheless. This variety was used to create a hybrid that was grown extensively and not eaten by greenbugs, making the use of pesticides unnecessary. Such pest resistance is common in domesticated plants, “hiding” in the genome but waiting to be used by plant breeders. As varieties are lost, however, the valuable genetic reservoir of traits is reduced in size, and certain traits potentially invaluable for future breeding are lost forever. There may very well be a soybean variety somewhere in the world resistant to the new soybean rust, but will plant scientists locate it before it goes extinct? A broader issue is that agricultural systems with narrowed genetic bases are less effective in integrating with and supporting the function of natural systems and thereby helping to create multifunctional landscapes (see Chapter 23).

Increasing vulnerability to disease is also a serious concern for domesticated animal species as they lose their genetic diversity, but perhaps more serious is increased dependence on methods of industrial food production. Livestock breeds that are not adapted to local conditions require climate-controlled environments, doses of antibiotics, and large amounts of high-protein feed.

Loss of Local Control over Agricultural Production

Accompanying the concentration of agriculture into large-scale monocultural systems and factory farms has been a dramatic decline in the number of farms and farmers, especially in developed countries where mechanization and high levels of external inputs are the norm. From 1920 to the turn of the century, the number of farms in the United States dropped from more than 6.5 million to just over 2 million, and the percentage of the population that lived and worked on farms dropped below 2%. Data from the 2000 US census showed that only 0.4% of the employed civilians in the United States listed their occupation as “farmer or rancher” (US Census Bureau 2005). Although the 2007 agricultural census showed the first increase in the number of farms in more than 30 years, the increase was primarily in large- and small-scale operations. Midsize farms have continued to decline in the United States at much the same rate as seen during the last century (Gliessman 2009).

In developing countries as well, rural people who work primarily in agriculture continue to abandon the land to move to urban and industrial areas, which will hold an estimated 60% of the world’s population by 2030, and perhaps 70% by 2050. China is now carrying out a long-term plan to move 250 *million* rural people—most of them small-scale farmers—into newly built towns and cities. The country’s leaders hope that expanding the number of urban dwellers will greatly increase consumption and thus economic growth, but they have not directly addressed the issue of how those in the cities will be fed, or what the effects will be of leaving responsibility for food production in the hands of fewer and fewer people. As shown in Figure 1.8, there are now far more people in the world whose livelihoods are non-agricultural than there are people who grow food, and this gap continues to widen over time.

Besides encouraging an exodus from rural areas, large-scale commodity-oriented farming tends to wrest control of food production from rural communities. This trend is disturbing because local control and place-based knowledge and connection are crucial to the kind of management required

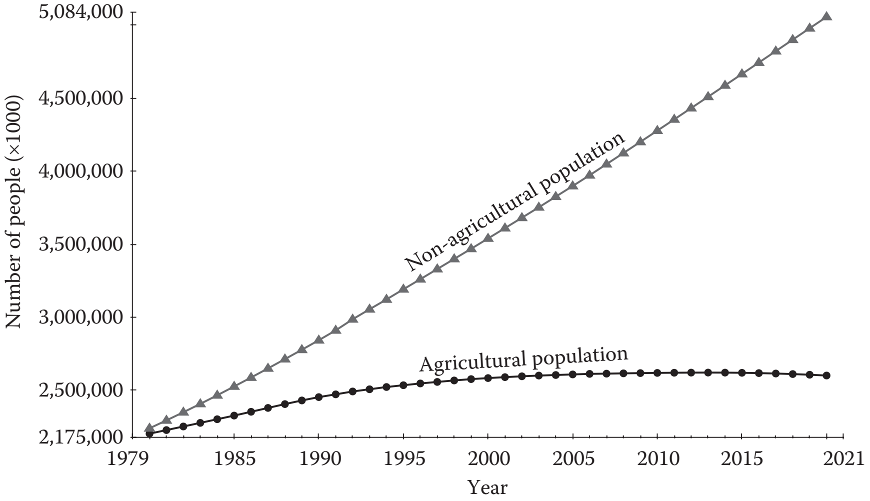


FIGURE 1.8 Number of people worldwide involved in agriculture and not involved in agriculture. (Data from FAOSTAT, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Statistics database, 2013, http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html, Dates of access range from January 1, 2013 to December 31, 2013). Figures for 2011 and beyond are projections.

for sustainable production. Food production carried out according to the dictates of the global market, and through technologies developed elsewhere, inevitably severs the connection to ecological principles. Experience-based management skill is replaced by purchased inputs requiring more capital, energy, and use of nonrenewable resources. Farmers become mere instruments of technology application, rather than independent decision makers and managers.

Smaller-scale farmers seem to have little power against the advancement of industrial agriculture. Smaller farms cannot afford the cost of upgrading their farm equipment and technologies in order to compete successfully with the large farm operations. Moreover, the increase in the share of the food dollar going to distributors and marketers, coupled with cheap food policies that have kept farm prices relatively stable, has left many farmers in a tightening squeeze between production costs and marketing costs. As the industrial food system has expanded in the United States over the last century, increasing the physical and economic distance between farmers and consumers, US farmers' share of the consumer food dollar has continued to shrink, and now stands below $0.16 according to the USDA (Economic Research Service 2014).

Faced with such economic uncertainty, there is less incentive for farmers to stay on the land. One trend is for larger farmers to buy out their smaller neighbors. But when agricultural land is adjacent to rapidly expanding urban centers, such as in California, the incentive instead is to sell farmland at the inflated value it has as urban land. Because of this dynamic, the agriculturally rich Great Central Valley of California has seen the loss of hundreds of thousands of hectares of farmland to development since 1950, and the rate of loss of agricultural land in the state as a whole averaged 49,700 acres annually from 1988 to 1998 (Kuminoff et al. 2001). Of the 538,000 acres of agricultural land in California urbanized since the Gold Rush, one-sixth has been lost to farming in the few decades since 1990 (Thompson 2009). At present, agricultural land is lost to urbanization at the rate of more than 40,000 acres annually (American Farmland Trust 2007).

In less-developed countries, the growth of large-scale export agriculture has an even more ominous effect. Elites in these countries have, for a long time, gained control of land through various and often illegal means to increase production of export crops. More recently, however, the growing value of agricultural land in less-developed countries has attracted international investors, who have been buying it up at a rapid pace. In the decade between 2000 and 2010, more than 203 million hectares of land in less-developed countries were the object of sale or lease negotiations (Anseeuw et al. 2012). The majority of these land deals were made for the express purpose of growing export crops—biofuels in particular—and will contribute nothing to the food supplies of the countries in which they are located. In nearly all cases, realizing investors' plans means removing the people living on and farming the land, often violently and usually without consultation or compensation (Geary 2012).

As a result of these and other trends, rural people—once able to feed themselves adequately *and* sell surplus food to city dwellers—now make up the most food-insecure group worldwide. It is estimated that 80% of the world's hungry live in rural areas (Mikhail 2012). And as more and more rural smallholders are pushed off the land, they migrate to cities, where they become dependent on others for their food. Since more of the food produced in the countryside is destined for export, increasing amounts of food for the expanding urban areas must be imported. In 2009, 111 developing countries in the world, most of them with low average incomes, were classified as "net food importers" (Valdéz and Foster 2012). This imbalance threatens the food security of less-developed countries and makes their people extremely vulnerable to spikes in the prices of globally traded food staples.

INCREASING VULNERABILITY AND RISK

The size, scale, integration, and technological sophistication of the world food system tends to give the impression that it can easily resist the environmental vagaries—droughts, floods, cold snaps, pest infestations—that have plagued farmers since humans took up agriculture thousands of years ago. But this impression is a false one: industrial agriculture has actually made itself extraordinarily vulnerable to extreme weather events, climatic shifts, and pests and diseases (Figure 1.9).

A central cause of this vulnerability is the practice of monoculture, especially when it is combined with its usual concomitant of increasing the genetic uniformity of the crop. Planting the same variety of a single crop across a wide geographic area virtually assures that when nature serves up conditions hostile to that crop's development—a late spring frost, a severe drought, an extreme weather event—the damage will be widespread. When the damage is caused by drought, the effects are intensified by the dependence on

FIGURE 1.9 A dried-up, drought-affected soybean field in northern Iowa. The extreme drought of 2012, one of the most severe on record, caused significant crop losses in the Midwest of the United States. (Photo courtesy of Laura Jackson.)

synthetic fertilizer, because years of providing crop nutrition solely through chemical means have dramatically lowered the soil's moisture-holding capacity through depletion of its organic matter. As noted earlier, monoculture and genetic uniformity also dramatically increase vulnerability to pests and disease. A virtual sea of host organisms, all with their natural resistance bred out of them, is the perfect opportunity for a fungus, virus, or insect to vastly improve its reproductive success in a very short time span. Further exacerbating the problem is the inherent risk of depending on only three crops—corn, rice, and wheat—for more than half of the world's food.

Climate change assures that industrial agriculture's vulnerability (or, put the other way, its lack of resilience) will increasingly become a matter of serious concern. Climate change is likely to increase the frequency and severity of droughts and floods, to increase the incidence of extreme cold and heat, to reduce the mountain snowfall on which many regions rely for irrigation water, and to allow pests and diseases to move to regions where they were formerly excluded by winter cold. An earth beset by a changing climate needs exceptionally resilient agroecosystems, not the opposite.

Because of its interconnected nature, the world food system is also vulnerable to social, political, and economic factors that have no direct connection to climate, weather, or the environment. Increases in the price of oil, trade agreements, unilateral governmental actions, and disruptions in the world economy are among the many factors that may have important effects on food prices and food supplies. In this realm, however, it is necessary to clarify who bears the brunt of the "vulnerability." Industrial agriculture has become so deeply integrated into the world economic system, which is controlled by a relative handful of elites, that it is not industrial agriculture itself that is vulnerable so much as it is the world's food consumers and smallholder farmers. The world's food staples, like corn, soybeans, wheat, and rice, are increasingly treated as commodities for wealth production, not as food. Long bought and sold in the international commodity markets, they are now subject to speculation, just like home mortgages, currency, and gold. Such speculation now drives food prices more strongly than any other single factor (Holt-Gimenez and Patel 2009).

Global Inequality

Despite increases in productivity and yields, hunger persists all over the globe. More than 1 billion people around the world are chronically hungry and more than 870 million are chronically undernourished (CGIAR 2013). With increasing frequency, events such as the spike in global food prices that occurred in 2008 and the major droughts of 2005, 2010, and 2012 create even more hungry people (Bailey 2011). There are also huge disparities in calorie intake and food security between people in developed nations and those in developing nations. At the beginning of the twenty-first century, the world reached a dubious milestone: the number of overweight people (about 1.1 billion) grew roughly equal to the number of underweight people (Gardner and Halweil 2000). This statistic indicates that the unequal distribution of food—which is both a cause and a consequence of global inequality—is at least as serious a problem as the threats to global food production.

Since hunger, poverty, and inequality existed before the rise of industrial agriculture in the latter half of the 1900s, it is tempting to argue that global inequality is unrelated to industrial agriculture—that it has separate causes. While some causes are indeed separate, it is also true that industrial agriculture perpetuates and accentuates existing relationships of inequality. It does this because it is designed to generate profits for the owners of agribusiness concerns and because this process of wealth generation depends on increasing its control of land, farmers, resources, markets, and distribution networks. The inevitable result is the enrichment of some groups and some countries at the expense of others.

Developing nations too often grow food mainly for export to developed nations, using external inputs purchased from the developed nations. While the profits from the sale of the export crops enrich small numbers of elite landowners, many people in the developing nations go hungry. In addition, those with any land are often displaced as the privileged seek more land on which to grow export crops.

Besides causing unnecessary human suffering, relationships of inequality tend to promote agricultural policies and farmer practices that are driven more by economic considerations than by ecological wisdom and long-term thinking. For example, subsistence farmers in developing nations, displaced by large landowners increasing production for export, are often forced to farm marginal lands. The results are deforestation, severe erosion, and serious social and ecological harm. As long as industrial agriculture is based on technology originating in the developed world and on external inputs accessible to so few, the practice of agriculture will perpetuate inequality, and inequality will remain a barrier to sustainability.

PATH TOWARD SUSTAINABILITY

What is the alternative to industrial agriculture? Despite being dedicated to developing forms of sustainable agriculture, the field of agroecology cannot answer this question as directly as the reader might wish. Agroecology consists of principles, concepts, and strategies that must form the foundation of any system of food production that can make a legitimate claim to being a more sustainable successor to industrial agriculture. These principles, concepts, and strategies are more oriented toward offering a design framework for sustainable agroecosystems than they are prescriptions or blueprints for the construction or management of actual agroecosystems, and they do not dictate the specifics of an entire world food system.

Nonetheless, agroecological principles do suggest the general elements of a sustainable food system, and describing these elements will help the reader visualize some of the goals toward which the agroecological approach points.

WHAT IS SUSTAINABILITY ANYWAY?

Before describing the elements of a future food system that operates on a more sustainable basis than the industrial agriculture-based system of today, it is helpful to explore what is meant by the term *sustainability*.

As scientists, analysts, activists, and others point with increasing frequency to the *un*sustainability of human society's current systems and practices—everything from fossil-fuel use and industrial agriculture to an economic system dependent on constant growth—it has become ever more common to adopt the label "sustainable." Everyone wants his or her product, industry, alternative method, or proposal to be considered "sustainable." As a result, the term *sustainability* has become increasingly vague, ambiguous, and confusing.

In addition, as a framework for critical analysis of industrial agriculture and for development of alternatives, the concept of sustainability has a key weakness because it depends entirely on an inferred or hypothesized future. Condemning a practice or system as *un*sustainable is essentially to claim that it is bad because it will not last. This sidesteps the possibility that it is causing serious negative consequences right now, in the present. Conversely, arguing for the desirability of a system or practice because it is "sustainable" is really to say that its major benefit would be its durability over time—that we could expect it to still exist at some time in the future. This by itself does not ensure that the system or practice mitigates or reverses harms to people or natural systems. And underlying these drawbacks is a very real practical problem with the concept of sustainability: because sustainability *per se* can never be demonstrated in the present, its proof always remains in the future, out of reach. Thus it is almost impossible to know for sure if a particular practice is in fact sustainable or if a particular set of practices constitutes sustainability.

Despite the drawbacks of the term *sustainability*, however, this text has not abandoned it in favor of another term. In part, that is because there is no good alternative term. Moreover, used precisely and in accordance with its original meaning, *sustainability* really does convey the essence of what we hope to create as an alternative to industrial agriculture—a system of food production, distribution, and consumption that will endure indefinitely because it does not sow the seeds of its own demise. But there is much more to sustainability than mere endurance. As used in this text, *sustainability* refers also to the many characteristics of an ostensibly sustainable practice or system that are responsible for endowing that practice or system with the self-sufficiency, resilience, and balance that *allow it* to endure over time.

If we are going to use the term *sustainable* to indicate the essential feature of what we hope to create as an alternative to industrial agriculture, we should be quite precise about what is entailed in our use of the term. Based on our present knowledge, we can suggest that a "sustainable" food system would, at the very least,

- Have minimal negative effects on the environment and release insignificant amounts of toxic or damaging substances into the atmosphere, surface water, or groundwater;
- Minimize the production of greenhouse gases, work to mitigate climate change by increasing the ability of managed systems to store fixed carbon, and facilitate human adaptation to a warming climate;
- Preserve and rebuild soil fertility, prevent soil erosion, and maintain the soil's ecological health;
- Use water in a way that allows aquifers to be recharged and the water needs of the environment and people to be met;
- Rely mainly on resources within the agroecosystem, including nearby communities, by replacing external inputs with nutrient cycling, better conservation, and an expanded base of ecological knowledge;
- Work to value and conserve biological diversity, both in the wild and in domesticated landscapes;
- Guarantee equality of access to appropriate agricultural practices, knowledge, and technologies and enable local control of agricultural resources;
- Eliminate hunger, ensure food security in culturally appropriate ways, and guarantee every human being a right to adequate food;
- Remove social, economic, and political injustices from food systems.

Each of these features of a sustainable system can be demonstrated in the present, and each one involves undeniable benefits to people and the ecological and social systems on which people depend.

ELEMENTS OF A SUSTAINABLE FOOD SYSTEM

Using this list of characteristics of sustainability as a guide, we can envision what food systems of the future might look like—if humankind as a whole begins to follow "the path toward sustainability." Many elements of these systems are already beginning to appear in rough form, alongside industrial food systems, as agroecology grows and spreads.

- The sustainable food system of the future will be made up, in large part, of innumerable small- to medium-scale agroecosystems, each relatively self-contained, adapted to local conditions, and focused primarily on satisfying the food needs of a local population. Only after they satisfy local needs will these agroecosystems attend to the needs of more distant communities.
- Food networks will replace food chains as all players in the food system (from the farm to the table) are reconnected and have a say in what is produced, how it is produced, and how it is exchanged and distributed.
- Traditional, peasant-managed agroecosystems, despite being beleaguered by the encroachment of

FIGURE 1.10 A diverse agroforestry system in the village of Cantagallo, Las Segovias, Nicaragua. A shade-grown organic coffee cash crop below a diverse cover of native and introduced trees, along with other associate crops, provides income, food, firewood, and environmental services such as biodiversity conservation, healthy soil, watershed protection, and carbon sequestration. Food security and more diverse livelihood opportunities provide strong elements of sustainability.

industrial-based systems, still provide more than two-thirds of the world's food. Already embodying many of the key attributes of sustainability, these systems will remain a fundamental basis of food production for much of the world, as their productivity and efficiency are improved through agroecological research.

- Cities—which will continue to provide homes for a large number of the world's people—will be supplied with food less by global markets and more by agroecosystems in the surrounding region and in the cities themselves.
- Agricultural knowledge will exist primarily in the public domain, where it will be widely dispersed and embodied more in farmers' practices than in technological products and systems.
- Farmers will be rewarded for the environmental services that their farms provide beyond the production of food. Protecting biodiversity, producing clean water, stopping soil erosion, sequestering carbon, and promoting the presence of living landscapes will be valued and rewarded.
- Because sustainability in agriculture is not just about growing and raising food, but about how that food is used, distributed, and consumed, a sustainable food system will distribute food more equitably, reduce food overconsumption and waste, and insure that our precious agricultural land is used to feed people rather than automobiles and livestock.
- Food justice will be a common goal in sustainable food systems as food security, food sovereignty, and the right to food become guiding social principles.

It is not an exaggeration to say that the sustainable food system of the future, considered as a whole, will represent a paradigm shift. Like traditional and indigenous agroecosystems, it will conserve resources and minimize exogenous inputs. Like industrial agriculture, it will be very productive. And unlike any system of food production that has heretofore existed on the planet, it will combine these attributes while distributing its benefits equitably among human beings and societies and refraining from displacing its costs onto natural ecosystems increasingly pushed to the brink of collapse. In order for this paradigm shift to come about, agroecology must become a force for change that integrates research, practice, and social change in all parts of our food systems.

Can an Alternative Food System Feed Everyone?

Advocates for industrial agriculture argue that the only way to satisfy the food needs of the expanding world population is to continue to develop new agricultural technologies—particularly GM crop varieties—that will increase yields, reduce insect damage, and eliminate competition from weeds. They dismiss alternative, sustainable, and ecologically based systems as inadequate to the task of growing the needed amount of food. This view is mistaken on at least two accounts.

First, this view exaggerates the need for increasing yields. Globally, the food system currently produces more than enough food calories to adequately feed every single living human being and more (Cassidy et al. 2013). One problem is that 9% of these calories are diverted to make biofuels or other industrial products and another 36% are used for animal feed (less than 10% of which is recovered in the form of animal-based food calories), leaving only 55% to be eaten directly by humans. Another problem is that an estimated *one-third* of the food produced globally is lost to spoilage, spillage, and other problems along the supply chain or simply wasted at the household level (FAO 2013a). In the United States, the amount of food wasted and lost equates to 1249 cal/person/day, which is more than half of what an average person needs (Buzby et al. 2014). Further, the calories that are eaten by humans directly and not lost as waste are distributed very unevenly, with much of them going to expand the waistlines of affluent populations. Thus, the need for more food is driven not as much by the increase in population as it is by wasteful patterns of food use and a shift toward richer diets—*both of which are social choices.* If people ate less animal-based food on average and food was used and distributed more equitably and efficiently, as noted in the previous section, more than enough extra food production capacity would be freed up to feed everyone adequately, leaving a buffer for feeding an expanding population.

Second, this view ignores a growing body of research showing that small-scale, ecologically based, organic, and even traditional peasant systems can approach, match, and even exceed the productivity of industrial systems when measured by the number of people fed per unit of land or the food biomass produced per unit area. These agroecosystems are usually the kinds of diverse, multilayered and integrated systems

FIGURE 1.11 High diversity of production is possible even in the winter on an alternative farm. This farmers' market stand is a direct market option for a 40-acre certified organic family farm located in Santa Cruz County, CA. They grow over 45 varieties of fruits and vegetables, including dry farm tomatoes, shelling beans, and strawberries, and sell their produce to customers and restaurants at 10 farmers' markets in Santa Cruz, Berkeley, and San Francisco.

that will be discussed in Sections IV and V of this text, with a focus on meeting local needs, providing food for the larger communities in which they participate, and maintaining the productive capacity of the soil for the long term. The emphasis of these systems is definitely not on monoculture yield maximization nor the market. A comprehensive 2011 report, presented before the UN Human Rights Council and based on an extensive review of recent scientific literature, showed that agroecologically guided restructuring of agroecosystems has the capability of doubling food production in entire regions within 10 years, while mitigating climate change and alleviating rural poverty (De Schutter 2011).

ROLE OF AGROECOLOGY

Many scientists, researchers, and educators in the field of agroecology, and their colleagues in disciplines like agronomy, have long believed that their role is to come up with agricultural methods and systems that are more sustainable, more environmentally friendly, less input dependent, and less technology intensive than those of industrial agriculture. The assumption is that these methods and systems will then be adopted because they are superior when judged by any of various sets of criteria. Unfortunately, the experience of the last couple of decades has exposed the limitations of this view. Although we have accumulated a great deal of knowledge about the ecological relationships underlying sustainable food production, that knowledge has seen relatively little application, and industrial agriculture has meanwhile strengthened its dominance of the world food system.

Transforming agriculture in a fundamental way—putting it on a sustainable path—is going to be a tremendous challenge. A basic assumption of this textbook is that agroecologists can hope to meet this challenge only if we approach it on three different fronts simultaneously.

First, we require more and better knowledge of the ecological relationships among domesticated agricultural species, among these species and the physical environment, and among these species and those of natural systems. This need is satisfied by the **science aspect of agroecology**, which draws on modern ecological knowledge and methods to derive the principles that can be used to design and manage sustainable agroecosystems.

Second, we require effective and innovative agricultural practices, on-the-ground systems that work in the present to satisfy our food needs while laying the groundwork for the more sustainable systems of the future. Satisfying this need is the **practical aspect of agroecology**, which values the local, empirical knowledge of farmers and the sharing of this knowledge, and which undercuts the distinction between the production of knowledge and its application.

Finally, circumstances demand fundamental changes in the ways that humans relate to food, the economic and social systems that determine the distribution of food, and the ways in which food mediates the relationships of power among populations, classes, and countries. Serving this need is the **social-change aspect of agroecology**, which not only advocates for the changes that will lead to food security for all, but also seeks knowledge of the means by which these changes can be activated and sustained.

Although each of these aspects of agroecology is critical, the bulk of this book is dedicated to the science of agroecology. In presenting this material, the book highlights the practical aspect by giving examples of how the science can be successfully applied. The social-change aspect of agroecology is not introduced until Section VI, after the reader has absorbed the full suite of ecological principles and practices that form the foundation of sustainable food systems. The placement of this aspect of agroecology at the end of the book is not an indication of its secondary importance. If agroecologists and others seeking to put agriculture on a more sustainable basis fail to consider the ideas discussed in Section VI, their efforts are likely to be for naught.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. How does the holistic approach of agroecology allow for the integration of the three most important components of sustainability: ecological soundness, economic viability, and social justice?
2. Why has it been so difficult for humans to see that much of the environmental degradation caused by industrial agriculture is a consequence of the lack of an ecological approach to agriculture?
3. What common ground is there between agronomy and ecology with respect to sustainable agriculture?
4. What are the issues of greatest importance that threaten the sustainability of agriculture in the town or region in which you live?
5. What is the meaning of the concept that people "have a right to food"?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Agroecology
www.agroecology.org
A primary site for information, concepts, and case studies in the field of agroecology.

Agroecology in Action
www.agroeco.org
Led by agroecologist Miguel Altieri, Agroecology in Action promotes the integration of agroecological knowledge and technologies into practice while building a deeper understanding of the complex long-term interactions among resources, people, and their environment.

Earth Policy Institute
www.earth-policy.org
Led by the well-known eco-economist Lester Brown, this organization is dedicated to providing a vision of an eco-economy and a roadmap on how to get there. The website provides information on major milestones and setbacks in building a sustainable society.

Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations
www.fao.org

Food First: Institute for Food and Development Policy
www.foodfirst.org
Food First is a nonprofit think tank and "education-for-action center" focused on revealing and changing the root causes of hunger and poverty around the world.

Sustainable Table
www.sustainabletable.org
Sustainable Table is a consumer campaign developed by the Global Resource Action Center for the Environment.

Union of Concerned Scientists
www.ucsusa.org
UCS combines independent scientific research and citizen action to develop innovative, practical solutions and to secure responsible changes in government policy, corporate practices, and consumer choices. Its food and agriculture program focuses on the science behind sustainable agriculture as the direction for the future.

Worldwatch Institute
www.worldwatch.org
A nonprofit public policy research organization dedicated to informing policy makers and the public about emerging global problems and trends, and the complex links between the world economy and its environmental support systems. Food and farming are key support systems they monitor.

RECOMMENDED READING

Altieri, M. A. 1995. *Agroecology: The Science of Sustainable Agriculture*, 3rd edn. Westview Press: Boulder, CO.
An important pioneering work on the need for sustainability and a review of the kinds of agroecosystems that will help lead us toward it.

Berry, W. 2009. *Bringing It to the Table: On Farming and Food*. Counterpoint Press: Berkeley, CA.
An eloquent collection of essays by a master farmer and writer that clearly outlines the ethics and culture of human connections to the land and agriculture.

Bohlen, P. J. and G. House (eds.). 2009. *Sustainable Agroecosystem Management: Integrating Ecology, Economics, and Society*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.
Through a variety of case studies, this book shows how the agroecosystem concept can be used for developing an interdisciplinary focus for sustainable food system management.

Douglass, G. K. (ed.). 1984. *Agricultural Sustainability in a Changing World Order*. Westview Press: Boulder, CO.
Proceedings of a landmark symposium that helped define the trajectory for future work on the interdisciplinary nature of agricultural sustainability.

Funes-Monzote, F. R. 2008. *Farming Like We're Here to Stay: The Mixed Farming Alternative for Cuba*. Wageningen University: Wageningen, the Netherlands.
A motivational account of the remarkable effort to develop food self-sufficiency as a response to economic crisis in Cuba, and the grounding of this response in the concepts of agroecology.

Gliessman, S. R. and M. E. Rosemeyer. 2010. *The Conversion to Sustainable Agriculture: Principles, Processes, and Practices*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.
The framework for the conversion of food systems to sustainability.

Goodman, D., M. DuPuis, and M. K. Goodman. 2011. *Alternative Food Networks: Knowledge, Place and Politics*. Routledge: London, U.K.
A critical review of the growth of alternative food networks and their struggle to defend their ethical and aesthetic values against the standardizing pressures of the corporate mainstream with its "placeless and nameless" global supply networks.

Guzmán-Casado, G., M. Gonzáz de Molina, and E. Sevilla-Guzmán. 1999. *Introducción a la Agroecología como Desarrollo Rural Sostenible.* Ediciones Mundi-Prensa: Madrid, Spain. (In Spanish).
A pioneering description of agroecology as a social movement focused on sustainable rural development, with a strong emphasis on the European model.

Halweil, B. 2004. *Eat Here: Reclaiming Homegrown Pleasures in a Global Supermarket*. Worldwatch Institute: Washington, DC.
An engaging analysis of the current crisis in farm and food systems, accompanied by a convincing argument for reconnecting what we eat with how and where food is grown.

International Assessment of Agricultural Knowledge, Science and Technology for Development. 2009. Agriculture at a crossroads. Global report by the International Assessment of Agricultural Knowledge, Science and Technology for Development (IAASTD). Island Press: Washington, DC.
The final report of a broad consortium of international agencies and experts that presents an alternative and promising approach for resolving the interrelated global problems of hunger, rural poverty, and sustainable development.

Jackson, W., W. Berry, and B. Colman (eds.). 1986. *Meeting the Expectation of the Land*. Northpoint Press: Berkeley, CA.
A collection of contributions from a diverse set of experts, designed to inform the general public of the people- and culture-based elements that are needed to make the transition to a sustainable agriculture.

Kimbrell, A. (ed.). 2002. *The Fatal Harvest Reader: The Tragedy of Industrial Agriculture*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

An important collection of essays that vividly portray the devastating impacts of the current industrial agricultural system on the environment, human health, and farm communities, and present a compelling vision for a healthy, humane, and sustainable agriculture for the future.

Mendez, V. E., C. M. Bacon, and R. Cohen (eds.). 2013. Agroecology and the transformation of agri-food systems: Transdisciplinary and participatory perspectives. *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* (special issue) 37: 1–146.

The inaugural issue of the first English-language journal with the term *agroecology* in its name, defining the agroecological approach to sustainability as a transdisciplinary, participatory, and transformational set of actions.

Perfecto, I., J. Vandermeer, and A. Wright. 2009. *Nature's Matrix: Linking Agriculture, Conservation and Food Sovereignty*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

By linking landscape ecology with diversity theory, this book shows the incredible value of sustainable peasant agriculture as a positive force for biodiversity conservation and food sovereignty.

Vandermeer, J. H. 2011. *The Ecology of Agroecosystems*. Jones & Bartlett Publishers: Sudbury, MA.

An excellent source of information on the application of ecological concepts and principles in the scientific study of agroecosystem design and management.

Wezel, A., S. Bellon, T. Dore, C. Francis, D. Vallod, and C. David. 2009. Agroecology as a science, a movement and a practice: A review. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development* 29: 503–515.

Defines the three areas of focus for agroecology, with historical background on the development and application of each area.

2 Agroecology and the Agroecosystem Concept

The entire field of agroecology derives from one central concept—that of the agroecosystem. An **agroecosystem** is a site or integrated region of agricultural production—a farm, for example—understood as an ecosystem. The agroecosystem concept provides a framework with which to analyze food production systems as wholes, including their complex sets of inputs and outputs and the interconnections of their component parts. Extended even further, agroecostemic thinking incorporates social systems—as the structures within which humans as food consumers organize food distribution through markets and other means.

Because the concept of the agroecosystem is based on ecological principles and our understanding of natural ecosystems, the first topic of discussion in this chapter is the ecosystem. We examine the structural aspects of ecosystems—their parts and the relationships among the parts— and then turn to their functional aspects—how ecosystems work. Agroecosystems are then described in terms of how they compare, structurally and functionally, with natural ecosystems.

The principles and terms presented in this chapter will be applicable to our discussion of agroecosystems throughout this book.

STRUCTURE OF NATURAL ECOSYSTEMS

An **ecosystem** can be defined as a functional system of complementary relations between living organisms and their environment, delimited by arbitrarily chosen boundaries, which in space and time appear to maintain a steady yet dynamic equilibrium. An ecosystem thus has physical parts with particular relationships—the *structure* of the system—that together take part in dynamic processes—the *function* of the system.

The most basic structural components of ecosystems are **biotic factors**, living organisms that interact in the environment, and **abiotic factors**, nonliving physical and chemical components of the environment such as soil, light, moisture, and temperature.

Levels of Organization

Ecosystems can be examined in terms of a hierarchy of organization of their component parts, just as the human body can be examined at the level of molecules, cells, tissues, organs, or organ systems. At the simplest level is the individual **organism**. The study of this level of organization is called autecology or physiological ecology. It is concerned with how a single individual of a species performs in response to the factors of the environment and how the organism's particular degree of tolerance to stresses in the environment determine where it will live. The adaptations of the banana plant, for example, restrict it to humid, tropical environments with a particular set of conditions, whereas a strawberry plant is adapted to a much more temperate environment.

At the next level of organization are groups of individuals of the same species. Such a group is known as a **population**. The study of populations is called population ecology. An understanding of population ecology becomes important in determining the factors that control population size and growth, especially in relation to the capacity of the environment to support a particular population over time. Agronomists have applied the principles of population ecology in the experimentation that has led to the highest-yielding density and arrangement of individual crop species.

Populations of different species always occur together in mixtures, creating the next level of organization, the **community**. A community is an assemblage of various species living together in a particular place and interacting with each other. An important aspect of this level is how the interactions of organisms affect the distribution and abundance of the different species that make up a particular community. Competition between plants in a cropping system and the predation of aphids by lady beetles are examples of interactions at this level in an agroecosystem. The study of the community level of organization is known as community ecology.

The most inclusive level of organization of an ecosystem is the ecosystem itself, which includes all of the abiotic factors of the environment in addition to the communities of organisms that occur in a specific area. An intricate web of interactions goes on within the structure of the ecosystem.

These four levels can be directly applied to agroecosystems, as shown in Figure 2.1. Throughout this text, reference will be made to these levels: individual crop plants (the organism level), populations of crop species or other organisms, farm field communities, and whole agroecosystems.

An important characteristic of ecosystems is that at each level of organization properties emerge that were not present at the level below. These **emergent properties** are the result of the interaction of the component "parts" of that level of ecosystem organization. A population, for example, is much more than a collection of individuals of the same species, and has characteristics that cannot be understood in terms of individual organisms alone. In an agroecosystem context, this principle means in essence that the farm is greater than

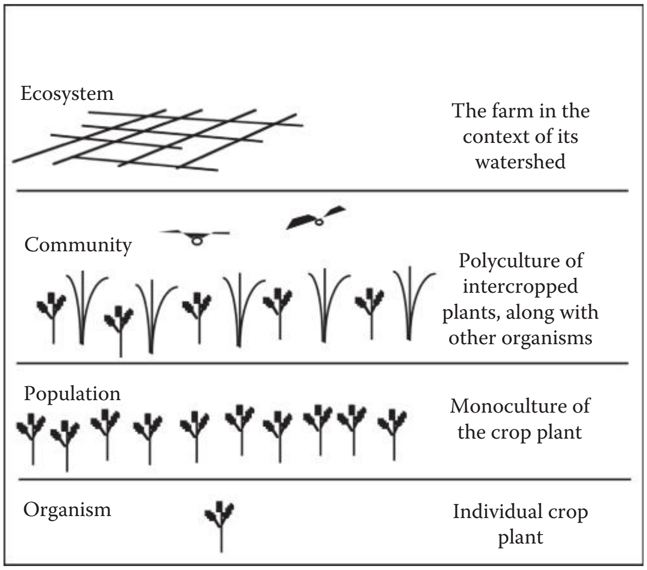


FIGURE 2.1 Levels of ecosystem organization applied to an agroecosystem. The diagram could be extended in the upward direction to include regional, national, and global levels of organization, which would involve such things as markets, farm policy, and even global climate change. In the downward direction, the diagram could include the cellular, chemical, and atomic levels of organization.

the sum of its individual crop plants. Sustainability can be considered the ultimate emergent quality of an ecosystem approach to agriculture.

Structural Properties of Communities

A community comes about on the one hand as a result of the adaptations of its component species to the gradients of abiotic factors that occur in the environment, and, on the other hand, as a result of interactions between populations of these species. Since the structure of the community plays such an important role in determining the dynamics and stability of the ecosystem, it is valuable to examine in more detail several properties of communities that arise as a result of interactions at this level.

Species Diversity

Understood in its simplest sense, species **diversity** is the number of species that occur in a community. Some communities, such as that of a freshwater pond, are exceedingly diverse; others are made up of very few species.

Dominance and Relative Abundance

In any community, some species may be relatively abundant and others less abundant. The species with the greatest impact on both the biotic and abiotic components of the community is referred to as the **dominant species**. Dominance can be a result of an organism's relative abundance, its physical size, its ecological role, or any of these factors in combination. For example, since a few large trees in a garden can dramatically alter the light environment for all the other species in the garden, the tree species is dominant in the garden community even though it may not be the most abundant species. Natural ecosystems are often named for their dominant species. The redwood forest community of coastal California is a good example.

Vegetative Structure

Terrestrial communities are often characterized by the structure of their vegetation. This is determined mostly by the form of the dominant plant species, but also by the form and abundance of other plant species and their spacing. Thus vegetative structure has a vertical component (a profile with different layers) and a horizontal component (groupings or patterns of association), and we learn to recognize how different species occupy different places in this structure. When the species that make up vegetative structure take on similar growth forms, more general names are given to these assemblages (e.g., grassland, forest, shrubland).

Trophic Structure

Every species in a community has nutritive needs. How these needs are met in relation to other species determines a structure of feeding relationships. This structure is called the community's **trophic structure**. Plants are the foundation of every terrestrial community's trophic structure because of their ability to capture solar energy and convert it, through photosynthesis, into stored chemical energy in the form of **biomass**, which can then serve as food for other species. Because of this trophic role, plants are known as **producers**. Physiologically, plants are classified as **autotrophs** because they satisfy their energy needs without preying upon other organisms.

The biomass produced by plants becomes available for use by the **consumers** of the community. Consumers include **herbivores**, who convert plant biomass into animal biomass, **predators** and **parasites**, who prey on herbivores and other predators, and **parasitoids**, who prey on predators and parasites. All consumers are classified as **heterotrophs** because their nutritive needs are met by consuming other organisms.

Each level of consumption is considered to be a different **trophic level** (Table 2.1). The trophic relationships among a community's species can be described as a food chain or a food web, depending on their complexity. As we will see later, trophic relationships can become quite complex and are of considerable importance in agroecosystem processes such as pest and disease management.

Resistance and Resilience

Over time, the species diversity, dominance structure, vegetative structure, and trophic structure of a community generally does not undergo major changes, even though individual organisms die and leave the area and the relative sizes of populations shift. In other words, if you were to visit and observe a natural community and then visit it again 20 years later, it would probably appear relatively unchanged in its basic

TABLE 2.1
Trophic Levels and Roles in a Community

Type of Organism	Trophic Role	Trophic Level	Physiological Classification
Plants	Producers	First	Autotrophic
Herbivores	First-level consumers	Second	Heterotrophic
Predators and parasites	Second-level (and higher) consumers	Third and higher	Heterotrophic

aspects. Further, if some kind of **disturbance**—such as fire or flooding—killed off many members of many species in the community, the community would eventually recover, or return to something close to the original condition and species composition.

The observed tendency of communities to maintain their structure, organization, and general composition over time has two distinct components. Communities tend to *resist* change in general and they are *resilient* in response to disturbance. Thus, communities are often said to possess the dual properties of **resistance** and **resilience**. The degree to which a community can successfully resist change or be resilient enough to recover from disturbance depends greatly on the type of community and the nature of the disturbances to which it is subjected. In general, the more complex and species-diverse a community is, the stronger its resistance and resilience.

FUNCTIONING OF NATURAL ECOSYSTEMS

Ecosystem function refers to the dynamic processes occurring within ecosystems: the movement of matter and energy and the interactions and relationships of the organisms and materials in the system. It is important to understand these processes in order to address the concepts of ecosystem dynamics, efficiency, productivity, and development, especially in agroecosystems where function can determine the difference between the success and failure of a particular crop or management practice.

The two most fundamental processes in any ecosystem are the flow of energy among its parts and the cycling of nutrients.

ENERGY FLOW

Each individual organism in an ecosystem is constantly using energy to carry out its physiological processes, and its sources of energy must be regularly replenished. Thus energy in an ecosystem is like electricity in a home: it is constantly flowing into the system from outside sources, fueling its basic functioning. The energy flow in an ecosystem is directly related to its trophic structure. By examining energy flow, however, we are focusing on the sources of the energy and its movement within the structure, rather than on the structure itself.

Energy flows into an ecosystem as a result of the capture of solar energy by plants, the producers of the system. This energy is stored in the chemical bonds of the biomass that plants produce. Ecosystems vary in their ability to convert solar energy to biomass. We can measure the total amount of energy that plants have brought into the system at a point in time by determining the **standing crop** or biomass of the plants in the system. We can also measure the rate of the conversion of solar energy to biomass: this is called **gross primary productivity**, which is usually expressed in terms of kilocalories per square meter per year. When the energy plants use to maintain themselves is subtracted from gross primary productivity, a measure of the ecosystem's **net primary productivity** is attained.

Herbivores (primary consumers) consume plant biomass and convert it into animal biomass, and predators and parasites (secondary and higher-level consumers) who prey on herbivores or other consumers continue the biomass conversion process between trophic levels. Only a small percentage of the biomass at one trophic level, however, is converted into biomass at the next trophic level. This is because a large amount of energy is expended in maintaining the organisms at each level (as much as 90% of the consumed energy). In addition, a large amount of biomass at each level is never consumed (and some of what is consumed is not fully digested); this biomass (in the form of dead organisms and fecal matter) is eventually broken down by **detritivores** and **decomposers**. The decomposition process releases (in the form of heat) much of the energy that went into creating the biomass, and the remaining biomass is returned to the soil as organic matter.

In natural ecosystems, the energy that leaves the system is mostly in the form of heat, generated in part by the respiration of the organisms at the various trophic levels and in part by the decomposition of biomass. Other forms of energy output are quite small. The total energy output (or energy loss) of an ecosystem is usually balanced by the energy input that comes from plants capturing solar energy (Figure 2.2).

NUTRIENT CYCLING

In addition to energy, organisms require inputs of matter to maintain their life functions. This matter—in the form of nutrients containing a variety of crucial elements and compounds—is used to build cells and tissues and the complex organic molecules required for cell and body functioning.

The cycling of nutrients in ecosystems is obviously linked to the flow of energy: the biomass transferred between trophic levels contains both energy in chemical bonds and matter serving as nutrients. Energy, however, flows in one direction only through ecosystems—from the sun to producers to consumers to the environment. Nutrients, in contrast, move in cycles—through the biotic components of an ecosystem to the abiotic components, and back again to the biotic. Since both abiotic and biotic components of the ecosystem are involved in these cycles, they are referred to as **biogeochemical cycles**. As a whole, biogeochemical cycles

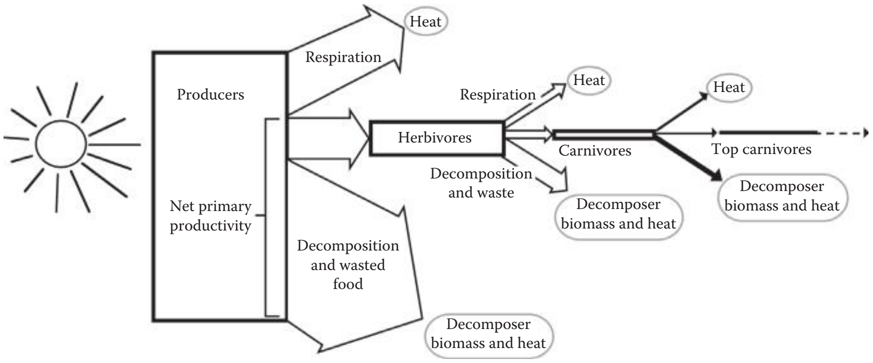


FIGURE 2.2 Ecosystem energy flow. The size of each box represents the relative amount of energy flowing through that trophic level. In the average ecosystem, only about 10% of the energy in a trophic level is transferred to the next trophic level. Nearly all the energy that enters an ecosystem is eventually dissipated as heat.

are complex and interconnected; in addition, many occur at a global level that transcends individual ecosystems.

Many nutrients are cycled through ecosystems. The most important are carbon (C), nitrogen (N), oxygen (O), phosphorus (P), sulfur (S), and water. With the exception of water, each of these is known as a **macronutrient**. Each nutrient has a specific route through the ecosystem depending on the type of element and the trophic structure of the ecosystem, but two main types of biogeochemical cycles are generally recognized. For carbon, oxygen, and nitrogen, the atmosphere functions as the primary abiotic reservoir, so we can visualize cycles that take on a global character. As an example, a molecule of carbon dioxide respired into the air by an organism in one location can be taken up by a plant halfway around the planet. Elements that are less mobile, such as phosphorus, sulfur, potassium, calcium, and most of the trace elements, cycle more locally, and the soil is their main abiotic reservoir. These nutrients are taken up by plant roots, stored for a period of time in biomass, and eventually returned to the soil within the same ecosystem by decomposers.

Some nutrients can exist in forms that are readily available to organisms. Carbon is a good example of such a material, easily moving between its abiotic form in the atmospheric reservoir to a biotic form in plant or animal matter as it cycles between the atmosphere as carbon dioxide and biomass as complex carbohydrates. Carbon spends varying lengths of time in living or dead organic matter, or even humus in the soil, but it returns to the atmospheric reservoir as carbon dioxide before it is recycled again. Figure 2.3 is a simplified depiction of the carbon cycle, focusing on terrestrial systems and leaving out the reservoir of carbon found in carbonate rocks.

Nutrients in the atmospheric reservoir can exist in forms much less readily available and must be converted to some other forms before they can be used. A good example is atmospheric nitrogen (N_2). The conversion of molecular nitrogen (N_2) to ammonia (NH_3) through biological fixation by microorganisms begins the process that makes nitrogen available to plants. Once incorporated into plant biomass, this "fixed" nitrogen can then become part of the soil reservoir and eventually be taken up again by plant roots as nitrate (NO_3). As long as this soil-cycled nitrogen is not reconverted back to gaseous N_2 or lost as volatile ammonia or gaseous oxides of nitrogen, it can be actively cycled within the ecosystem (Figure 2.4). The agroecological significance of the biotic interactions involved in this cycle is discussed in more detail in Chapter 16.

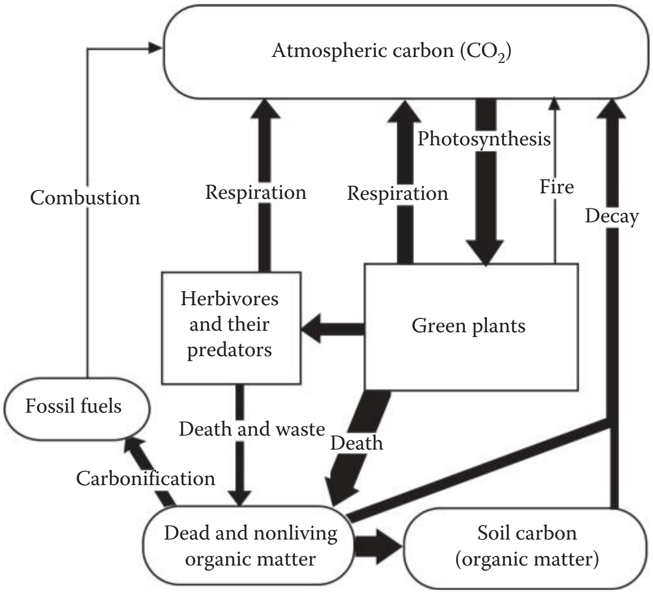


FIGURE 2.3 The carbon cycle.

Phosphorus, on the other hand, has no significant gaseous form. It is slowly added to the soil by the weathering of rock, and once there, it can be taken up by plants as phosphate and then form part of the standing crop, or be returned to the soil by excretion or decomposition. This cycling between organisms and soil tends to be very localized in ecosystems, with two major exceptions: (1) phosphates may leach out of ecosystems in ground water if they are not absorbed or bound, and (2) phosphates adhering to soil particles may be removed by erosion. In both of these cases, the phosphates leave the ecosystem and end up in the oceans. Once phosphorus is deposited into the sea, the time frame required for

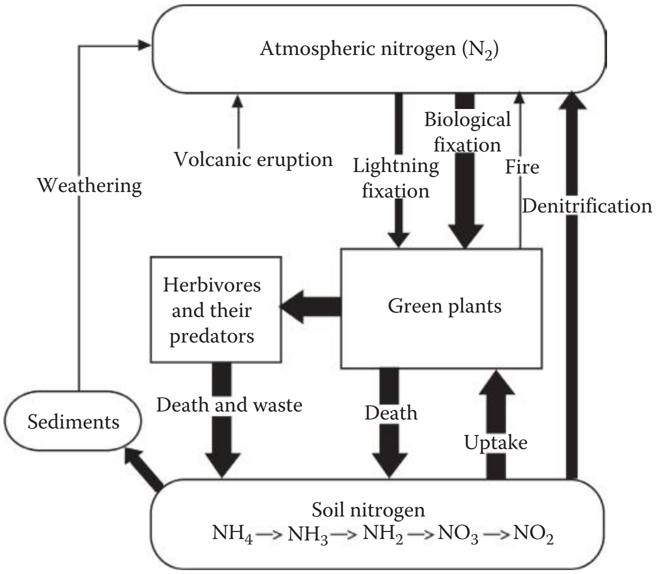


FIGURE 2.4 **The nitrogen cycle.**

it to cycle back into terrestrial systems enters the geological realm, hence the importance of the localized cycles that keep phosphorus in the ecosystem (Figure 2.5).

In addition to the macronutrients, a number of other chemical elements must be present and available in the ecosystem for plants to grow. Even though they are needed in very small quantities, they are still of great importance for living organisms. They include iron (Fe), magnesium (Mg), manganese (Mn), cobalt (Co), boron (B), zinc (Zn), and molybdenum (Mo). Each of these elements is known as a **micronutrient**.

Both types of nutrients are taken up by organisms and are stored in living or dead biomass or organic matter. If too much of a nutrient is lost or removed from a particular system, it can become limiting for further growth and development. Biological components of each system are very important in determining how efficiently nutrients move, ensuring that the minimum amount is lost and the maximum amount recycled. Productivity can become very closely linked to the rates at which nutrients are able to be recycled.

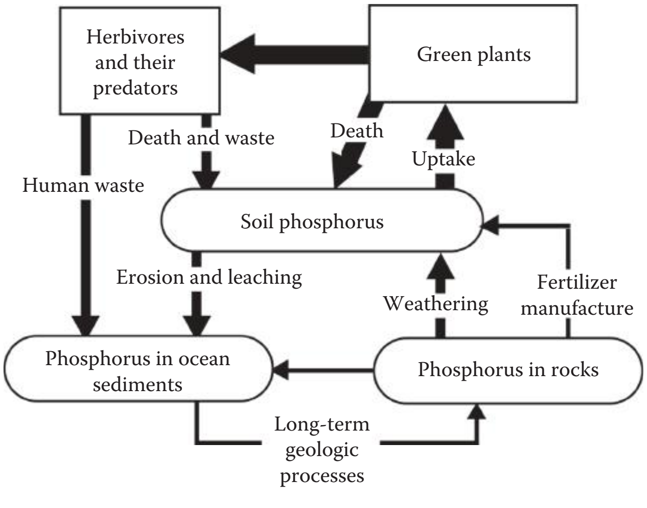


FIGURE 2.5 **The phosphorus cycle.**

REGULATION OF POPULATIONS

Populations are dynamic: their size and the individual organisms that make them up change over time. The demographics of each population are a function of that species' birth and death rates, rate of population increase or decrease, and the carrying capacity of the environment in which they live. The size of each population in relation to the other populations of the ecosystem is also determined by the interactions of that population with other populations and with the environment. A species with a broad set of tolerances of environmental conditions and a broad ability to interact with other species will be relatively common over a large area. In contrast, a species with a narrow set of tolerances and a very specialized role in the system will be common only locally.

Depending on the actual set of adaptive traits of each species, the outcome of its interaction with other species will vary. When the adaptations of two species are very similar, and resources are insufficient to maintain populations of both, **competition** can occur. One species can begin to dominate another through the removal of essential materials from the environment. In other cases, a species can add materials to the environment, modifying conditions that aid its own ability to be dominant to the detriment of others. Some species have developed ways of interacting with each other that can be of benefit to them both, leading to relationships of **mutualism**, where resources are shared or partitioned (the importance of mutualisms in agroecology is discussed in Chapter 16). In natural ecosystems, selection through time has tended to result in the most complex structure biologically possible within the limits set by the environment, permitting the establishment and maintenance of dynamic populations of organisms.

ECOSYSTEM CHANGE

Earlier, we noted that communities—and, by extension, ecosystems—tend to retain their basic structures over time because they resist external pressures and are resilient in the face of disturbance. Internally, however, ecosystems are in a constant state of dynamic change. Organisms are coming into existence and dying, matter is being cycled through the component parts of the system, populations are growing and shrinking, and the spatial arrangement of organisms is shifting.

Ecosystems also undergo change after they are subjected to disturbance. This type of change, called **succession**, is very different from the dynamism characterizing an ecosystem's function and individual components because it is unidirectional and involves progressive shifts in all of an ecosystem's aspects. The process of succession eventually allows the reestablishment of an ecosystem similar to that which occurred before the disturbance, even if the community of organisms that eventually regains dominance may be slightly different.

This "end point" of succession is called the **climax** state of the ecosystem. Succession results in a return to the climax state as long as disturbance is not too intense or frequent. The ability of a community or ecosystem to reestablish its basic structure and functioning after disturbance and succession is really what is captured in the concept of *resilience*.

Because ecosystems experience disturbance at many scales with some frequency, and because they possess considerable internal dynamism, ecosystems do not develop toward or enter into a steady state. Instead, they remain dynamic and flexible, resilient in the face of perturbing forces. Overall stability combined with dynamic change and resilience in response to disturbance is often captured in the concept of **dynamic equilibrium**. The dynamic equilibrium of ecosystems is of considerable importance in an agricultural setting. It permits the establishment of an ecological "balance," functioning on the basis of sustained resource use, which can be maintained indefinitely despite ongoing and regular change in the form of harvest, soil cultivation, and replanting.

AGROECOSYSTEMS

Human manipulation and alteration of ecosystems for the purpose of establishing agricultural production makes agroecosystems very different from natural ecosystems. At the same time, however, the processes, structures, and characteristics of natural ecosystems can be observed in agroecosystems.

Natural Ecosystems and Agroecosystems Compared

A natural ecosystem and an agroecosystem are diagrammed, respectively, in Figures 2.6 and 2.7. In both figures, flows of energy are shown as solid lines and movement of nutrients is shown with dashed lines.

A comparison of Figures 2.6 and 2.7 reveals that agroecosystems differ from natural ecosystems in several key respects.

1. **Energy flow:** Energy flow in agroecosystems is altered greatly by human interference. Inputs are derived from primarily human sources and are often not self-sustaining. Thus agroecosystems become open systems where considerable energy is directed out of the system at the time of each harvest, rather than stored in biomass, which could otherwise accumulate within the system.

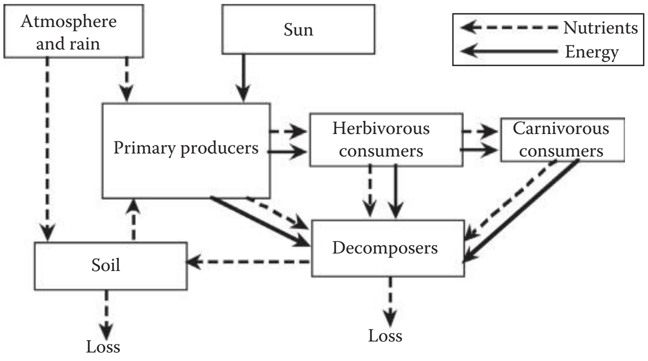


FIGURE 2.6 Functional components of a natural ecosystem. The components labeled "Atmosphere and Rain" and "Sun" are outside any specific system and provide essential natural inputs.

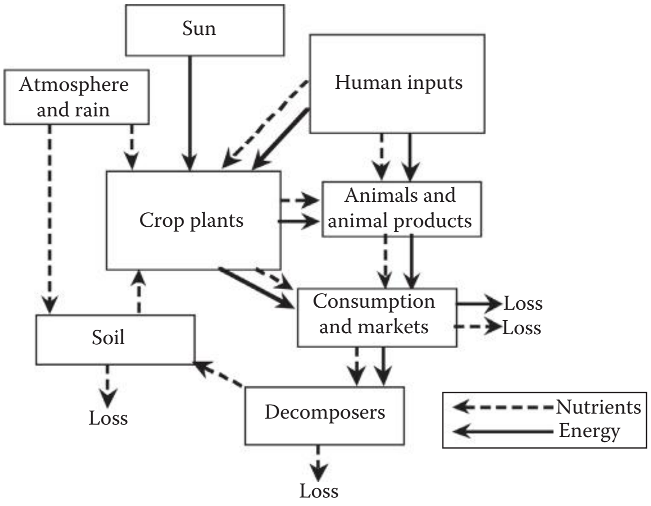


FIGURE 2.7 Functional components of an agroecosystem. In addition to the natural inputs provided by the atmosphere and the sun, an agroecosystem has a whole set of human inputs that come from outside the system. An agroecosystem also has a set of outputs, labeled here as "Consumption and Markets."

2. **Nutrient cycling:** Recycling of nutrients is minimal in most agroecosystems and considerable quantities are lost from the system with the harvest or as a result of leaching or erosion due to a great reduction in permanent biomass levels held within the system. The frequent exposure of bare soil between crop plants and, temporally, between cropping seasons, also creates "leaks" of nutrients from the system. Farmers have recently come to rely heavily upon petroleum-based nutrient inputs to replace these losses.
3. **Population-regulating mechanisms:** Due to the simplification of the environment and a reduction in trophic interactions, populations of crop plants or animals in agroecosystems are rarely self-reproducing or self-regulating. Human inputs in the form of seed or control agents, often dependent on large energy subsidies, determine population sizes. Biological diversity is reduced, trophic structures tend to become simplified, and many niches are left unoccupied. The danger of catastrophic pest or disease outbreak is high, despite the intensive human interference.
4. **Resilience:** Due to their reduced structural and functional diversity in relation to natural ecosystems, agroecosystems have much less resilience than natural ecosystems. A focus on harvest outputs upsets any equilibrium that is established, and the system can only be sustained if outside interference—in the form of human labor and external human inputs—is maintained.

TABLE 2.2
Important Structural and Functional Differences between Natural Ecosystems and Agroecosystems

	Natural Ecosystems	Agroecosystems
Net productivity	Medium	High
Trophic interactions	Complex	Simple, linear
Species diversity	High	Low
Genetic diversity	High	Low
Nutrient cycles	Closed	Open
Resilience	High	Low
Human control	Independent	Dependent
Temporal permanence	Long	Short
Habitat heterogeneity	Complex	Simple

Source: Adapted from Odum, E.P., *Science*, 164, 262, 1969.

The key ecological differences between natural ecosystems and agroecosystems are summarized in Table 2.2.

Although sharp contrasts have been drawn between natural ecosystems and agroecosystems, actual systems of both types exist on a continuum. On one side of the continuum, few "natural" ecosystems are truly natural in the sense of being completely independent of human influence; on the other side, agroecosystems can vary greatly in their need for human interference and inputs. Indeed, through application of the concepts presented in this text, agroecosystems can be designed that come close to resembling natural ecosystems in terms of such characteristics as species diversity, nutrient cycling, and habitat heterogeneity.

Agroecosystem as a Unit of Analysis

We have so far described agroecosystems conceptually; it remains to explain what they are physically. In other words, what is the thing we are talking about when we discuss the management of an agroecosystem? This is first of all an issue of spatial boundaries. The spatial limits of an agroecosystem in the abstract, like those of an ecosystem, are somewhat arbitrary. In practice, however, an "agroecosystem" is generally equivalent to an individual farm, although it could just as easily be a single farm field or a grouping of adjacent farms.

Another issue involves the relationship between an abstract or concrete agroecosystem and its relationship and connection to the surrounding social and natural worlds. By its very nature, an agroecosystem is enmeshed in both. A web of connections spreads out from every agroecosystem into human society and natural ecosystems. Coffee drinkers in Seattle are connected to coffee-producing agroecosystems in Costa Rica; the Siberian taiga may experience impacts from conventional corn production systems in the United States.

In practical terms, however, we must distinguish between what is external to an agroecosystem and what is internal. This distinction becomes necessary when analyzing agroecosystem inputs, since something can't be an input unless it comes from outside the system. The convention followed in this text is to use an agroecosystem's spatial boundary (explicit or implicit) as the dividing line between internal and external. In terms of inputs supplied by humans, therefore, any substance or energy source from outside the spatial boundaries of the system is an *external human input*. Even though the word *external* is redundant with *input*, it is retained in this phrase to emphasize off-the-farm origins. Typical external human inputs include pesticides, inorganic fertilizers, hybrid seed, fossil fuels used to run tractors, the tractors themselves, most kinds of irrigation water, and human labor supplied by nonfarm residents. There are also natural inputs, the most important of which are solar radiation, precipitation, wind, sediments deposited by flooding, and plant propagules.

Sustainable Agroecosystems

The challenge in creating sustainable agroecosystems is one of achieving natural ecosystem-like characteristics while maintaining a harvest output. Working toward sustainability, the manager of any particular agroecosystem strives as much as possible to use the ecosystem concept in his or her design and management. Energy flow can be designed to depend less on nonrenewable sources, and a better balance achieved between the energy used to maintain the internal processes of the system and that which is available for export as harvestable goods. The farmer can strive to develop and maintain nutrient cycles that are as "closed" as possible, to lower nutrient losses from the system, and to search for sustainable ways to return exported nutrients to the farm. Population regulation mechanisms can depend more on system-level resistance to pests, through an array of mechanisms that range from increasing habitat diversity to ensuring the presence of natural enemies and antagonists. Finally, an agroecosystem that incorporates the natural ecosystem qualities of resilience, productivity, and balance will better ensure the maintenance of the dynamic equilibrium necessary to establish an ecological basis for sustainability. As the use of external human inputs for control of agroecosystem processes is reduced, we can expect a shift from systems dependent on synthetic inputs to systems designed to make use of natural ecosystem processes and interactions and materials derived from within the system.

Agroecosystems and the Landscape

Agroecology finds its most immediate applications at the farm or agroecosystem level, where it can effectively deal with production, short-term enterprise economics, and environmental impacts in the immediate vicinity of the farm. But each farm or agroecosystem exists in a larger spatial and ecological context that is best denoted by the term *landscape*.

At the landscape level, agroecosystems and natural ecosystems are closely linked and can impact each other positively as well as negatively. In most parts of the world, interactions

SPECIAL TOPIC: HISTORY OF AGROECOLOGY

Although agroecology—defined broadly as the ecological analysis of agriculture—has roots that go back deep into the twentieth century, the field did not achieve broad recognition as a discipline until the 1990s. A major reason for its delayed entry into the mainstream is that it could not gain general acceptance until its two parents—the sciences of ecology and agronomy—agreed to settle some of their differences. Ecology had always been concerned primarily with the study of natural systems, whereas agronomy dealt with applying the methods of scientific investigation to the practice of agriculture. The boundary between pure science and nature on the one hand, and applied science and human endeavor on the other, kept the two disciplines relatively separate, with agriculture ceded to the domain of agronomy.

To fully understand agroecology as it exists today, it is helpful to examine the early efforts of a few researchers to bridge that wide gap between ecology and agronomy. The earliest agroecologist may have been Basil M. Bensin, a Russian agronomist who published research in the late 1920s and early 1930s. Bensin was concerned that farmers were being taken advantage of by the companies selling the seeds, fertilizers, and tractors that began to penetrate agriculture after World War I. Claims were being made that these industrial inputs had universal application, but farmers who purchased them were very often disappointed when they did not function well on their particular farms. Bensin (1930) called for researching the ecological conditions on each farm so that farmers could make decisions that were appropriate to the unique needs and conditions of their farms. Planting crops that were locally adapted to each farm locality would not only help farmers make better input decisions, it would also allow them to greatly restrict the need for these purchased inputs in the first place. In Bensin's published work, there appeared what may be the first uses of the term *agroecology*.

At about the same time that Bensin was publishing his pioneering work, there began to occur an important but short-lived bout of cross-fertilization between ecology and agronomy that resulted in the development of the field of crop ecology. Like Bensin, crop ecologists were concerned with where crops were grown and the ecological conditions under which they grew best, and they also began to use the term *agroecology* to refer to the applied ecology of agriculture, but unlike Bensin, they began to focus on how to increase yields by *altering* the ecological conditions in which crops grew through the use of inputs—an approach more consistent with the emergence of industrial agriculture than critical of it.

Following World War II, ecology moved in the direction of becoming more of a pure science, while agronomy became increasingly result oriented, reflecting the increasing emphasis in agriculture on mechanization, use of agricultural chemicals, and large-scale monoculture. Researchers in each field became less likely to see any commonalties between the disciplines and the gulf between them actually widened.

Countering this general trend in the late 1950s was a renewed interest in crop ecology, prompted in part by the maturing of the ecosystem concept. The ecosystem concept provided, for the first time, an overall framework for examining agriculture from an ecological perspective. The few researchers actually using the ecosystem concept in this way termed their field of work *agricultural ecology*.

The sciences of ecology and agronomy moved even further apart with the arrival of the green revolution in the 1960s and the ever-increasing focus on technological answers to all of agriculture's problems. But the 1960s also brought about an increase in environmental awareness among members of the public, and it was this increasing awareness—about pollution of the air and water and the effects of pesticide application—that would eventually become a major impetus for the emergence of agroecology in its modern form.

In the realm of ecology, interest in applying ecology to agriculture gradually gained momentum during the 1960s and 1970s with the intensification of community and population ecology research and the growing influence of systems-level approaches. An important sign of an interest in agriculture among ecologists at the international level occurred in 1974 at the first International Congress of Ecology, when a working group developed a report entitled *Analysis of Agroecosystems*. The agroecosystem concept gave ecologists a way of focusing their ecosystem thinking on agricultural ecosystems.

It was also during the 1970s that agroecology began to break out of the confines of academia. This occurred in Mexico, where small farmers, peasants, activists, and scientists, united in their opposition to the changes being wrought by the green revolution, began to use the agroecosystem concept as a way of insisting that the traditional, local, and indigenous systems of Mexico should not be just swept aside and replaced with the high-yielding but input-intensive technologies more appropriate for large-scale production systems. They believed that these traditional, balanced agroecosystems deserved attention as instances of coevolution between ecological, technological, and socioeconomic elements that had met the needs of millions of small farmers for centuries.

In particular, agroecology found its rebirth as a practical, whole-systems approach at a small college of tropical agriculture in southeastern Mexico, where the term *agroecologia* was applied to a program of related teaching, research, and community-based development projects (Gliessman 1978b). From its emergence here, agroecology acquired a social-movement aspect that it would never lose, as well as a focus on the ecological foundations of the traditional farming systems in developing countries (Gliessman 2013). Researchers from many disciplines began to recognize that traditional agriculture provided important examples of ecologically based agroecosystem management (Gliessman 1978a; Gliessman et al. 1981).

By the beginning of the 1980s, agroecology had emerged as a distinct methodology and conceptual framework for the study of all types of agroecosystems. Its influence growing during a time when the environmental and social costs of the green revolution were increasingly recognized, agroecology helped contribute to the development of the concept of sustainability in agriculture. While sustainability provided a goal for focusing agroecological research, agroecology's whole-systems approach and knowledge of dynamic equilibrium provided a sound theoretical and conceptual basis for the development of actual food production systems that could claim to be far more sustainable and less impactful on the environment than their conventional counterparts. In 1984, a variety of authors laid out the ecological basis of sustainability in the proceedings of a symposium (Douglass 1984); this publication played a major role in solidifying the connection between agroecological research and the promotion of sustainable agriculture as a practice.

During the 1990s, agroecology matured into a well-recognized approach for the conversion to sustainable agriculture. Agroecological research approaches emerged (Gliessman 1990), several textbooks were published (Altieri 1995b; Pretty 1995; Gliessman 1998), and academic research and education programs were put into motion. A number of organic farmers, and others growing food in more sustainable ways, began to think of what they were doing as agroecology. The establishment of an Agroecology Section for the Ecological Society of America in 1998 signaled a major change in how ecologists thought about agriculture, and the regular presentation of symposia, oral papers, and posters on agroecology at annual meetings of the American Society of Agronomy showed the embracing of the ecological approach.

A key development in agroecology took place in the early 2000s when its focus began to expand from the agroecosystem to the entire food system (Francis et al. 2003). No longer could agroecology concern itself solely with crops, animals, and farm fields. The entire food system, from the seed and soil all the way to the table, needed to be taken into account. It became generally accepted that farmers and eaters, and everyone in between, were part of an interconnected system.

Embracing this food-system approach, a parallel movement took place on the social science side of agroecology (Guzmán-Casado et al. 1999). Rural sociologists, anthropologists, ethnobotanists, and others operating in the agroecological framework emphasized the importance of addressing the growing injustices and inequities that had developed as a result of the commodification of food and the industrialization of agriculture. They pointed out that alleviating hunger and poverty and supporting smallholder farmers throughout the world was not only consistent with putting agriculture on a more sustainable basis ecologically but also a necessary part of achieving that goal (Sevilla-Guzmán 2006).

Today, agroecology is striving hard to link academics and farmers, to straddle established boundaries, and to move the entire food system in a more sustainable direction. Energized by the convergence of concerns around the sustainability of the human presence on the planet, agroecology is firmly established as a field that weaves together three components: the scientific study of ecological processes in agroecosystems, the promotion and support of farming practices rooted in the goal of sustainability, and the advancement of the complex social and ecological shifts that need to occur to move food systems to a truly sustainable basis (Méndez et al. 2013).

Important Works in the History of Agroecology

Year	Author(s)	Title
1928	K. Klages	Crop ecology and ecological crop geography in the agronomic curriculum
1930	B. Bensin	Possibilities for international cooperation in agroecological investigations
1938	J. Papadakis	*Compendium of Crop Ecology*
1939	H. Hanson	Ecology in agriculture
1942	K. Klages	*Ecological Crop Geography*
1956	G. Azzi	*Agricultural Ecology*
1962	C. P. Wilsie	*Crop Adaptation and Distribution*
1965	W. Tischler	*Agrarökologie*
1973	D. H. Janzen	Tropical agroecosystems
1974	J. Harper	The need for a focus on agro-ecosystems
1976	E. Hernandez Xolocotzi	*Los Agroecosistemas de Mexico*
1976	INTECOL	Report on an International Programme for Analysis of Agro-Ecosystems
1977	O. L. Loucks	Emergence of research on agro-ecosystems

(*Continued*)

Year	Author(s)	Title
1978b	S. Gliessman	*Memorias del Seminario Regional sobre la Agricultura Agricola Tradicional*
1979	R. D. Hart	*Agroecosistemas: Conceptos Basicos*
1979	G. Cox and M. Atkins	*Agricultural Ecology: An Analysis of World Food Production Systems*
1981	S. Gliessman, R. Garcia-Espinosa, and M. Amador	The ecological basis for the application of traditional agricultural technology in the management of tropical agroecosystems
1983	M. Altieri	*Agroecology*
1984	R. Lowrance, B. Stinner, and G. House	*Agricultural Ecosystems: Unifying Concepts*
1984	G. Douglass (ed.)	*Agricultural Sustainability in a Changing World Order*
1990	S. Gliessman (ed.)	*Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*
1995	M. Altieri	*Agroecology: The Science of Sustainable Agriculture* (3rd edn.)
1995	J. Pretty	*Regenerating Agriculture: Policies and Practice for Sustainability and Self-Reliance*
1998	S. Gliessman	*Agroecology: Ecological Processes in Sustainable Agriculture*
1999	G. Guzmán-Casado, M. González de Molina, and E. Sevilla-Guzmán	*Agroecología como Desarrollo Rural Sostenible*
2003	C. Francis et al.	*Agroecology: The Ecology of Food Systems*
2004	D. Rickerl and C. Francis (eds.)	*Agroecosystem Analysis*
2004	D. Clements and A. Shrestha (eds.)	*New Dimensions in Agroecology*
2006	K. Warner	*Agroecology in Action: Extending Alternative Agriculture Through Social Networks*
2006	E. Sevilla-Guzmán	*Desde la Sociología Rural a la Agroecología*
2007	S. Gliessman	*Agroecology: The Ecology of Sustainable Food Systems* (2nd edn.)
2009	A. Wezel et al.	"Agroecology as a science, a movement, and a practice: A review" (in *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*)
2009	J. Vandermeer	*Ecology of Agroecosystems*
2009	IAAKSTD	Agriculture at the Crossroads
2011	O. De Schutter	Agroecology and the right to food
2013	S. Gliessman	Agroecology: Growing the roots of resistance
2013	V. E. Mendez et al. (eds.)	*Agroecology and the Transformation of Agri-Food Systems*

between the two types of systems are so complex that it is difficult to separate one from the other. When we consider how humans can inhabit and use landscapes such that their agricultural components are sustainable and their natural components are preserved and protected, we become aware that all human-inhabited landscapes—that is, all *anthropogenic* landscapes—are in fact *multifunctional*. Natural ecosystem services blend with agroecosystem processes, and the two are pulled apart at the risk of harming both.

The concept of multifunctionality is not restricted to rural landscapes. The same principles that govern the sustainable interaction of the agricultural and the natural can be applied to urban areas when they are considered in the larger landscape context. Cities can support both small-scale agricultural production and natural communities within their boundaries, and the ways in which they interface with both the agricultural and natural systems surrounding them are crucial to consider in the pursuit of sustainability (Figure 2.8).

Looking at agroecosystems in the context of landscapes reveals that the agroecosystem concept is crucial for understanding how humans modify the surface of the earth and how the apparently distinct landscapes of wildlands, agricultural lands, and urban areas are in fact closely intertwined. In other words, the agroecosystem is a central concept in the ecology of human land use.

FIGURE 2.8 A multifunctional anthropogenic landscape in the northern part of Andalucia, Spain. Annual crops (e.g., melons, tomatoes, greens) are grown on the better valley soils, and olives and almonds on the hillsides and in hedgerows; at the same time, animals are grazed on the hillsides and forests maintained on the uplands.

AGROECOSYSTEMS IN CONTEXT: THE FOOD SYSTEM

Human-inhabited, or anthropogenic, landscapes understood and examined in a local or regional context are in turn part of much larger systems, networks of food production, distribution, and consumption called *food systems*. Food systems include farmers, farmworkers, consumers, food wholesalers, food retailers, food distributors, food brokers, importers, exporters, suppliers and manufacturers of agricultural inputs, transportation systems, government regulatory apparatuses, and the larger economic, sociocultural, and political structures within which food production and distribution occurs. Although more-or-less distinct food systems exist at the level of nations, world regions, and continents, their increasing interdependence joins them together in a single global food system. In this text, the global food system is the most relevant; we refer to it as simply *the* **food system**. The food system is sometimes referred to as the **global agrofood system**.

Sustainability in agriculture can only come from understanding the interaction of all components of the food system. Therefore, this text lays the groundwork for developing a food-system perspective from which to view all questions of agricultural sustainability. This perspective pays attention as much to the people in agroecosystems as it does to the ecological conditions on the farm. It takes into account the large amounts of energy and materials that are integral to the processing, transportation, and marketing that take place in the human "food chain." It pays attention to the equity issues of hunger, **food security**, and access to good nutrition and diet. It weighs the impacts of globalization in the marketplace and in farm communities, and sees producers and consumers as actively connected parts of a single system. These larger food-system issues—and the role that agroecology can play in meeting the challenges they pose—are explored in detail in the final chapters of this book.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What kinds of changes need to be made in the design and management of agriculture so that we can come closer to farming in "nature's image"?
2. For agriculture to become more sustainable, it has to solve the problem of how to return nutrients to the farms that they come from. What are some ways this might be done in your own community?
3. In agroecology we strive to create agroecosystems that are resilient in the sense that they retain a particular structure and set of functions despite being subjected to continual disturbance. How can the concept of resilience add to our understanding of sustainability?
4. As a consumer, how do your choices affect the global food system?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Agroecology
www.agroecology.org
The author's website. Serves as an excellent backup to the textbook. It provides useful resources for learning and applying what is presented, with an emphasis on training, research, and application of agroecological approaches to solving real-world food-system problems.

Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems
www.tandfonline.com/wjsa
The primary scientific journal dedicated to promoting research in agroecology and applications for food-system transformation.

Agroecology in Action
www.agroeco.org
A website dedicated to demonstrating the many and varied ways to apply agroecology, with special emphasis on issues in Latin America.

Center for Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems
www.ucsc.edu/casfs
The Center for Agroecology & Sustainable Food Systems is a research, education, and public service program at the University of California, Santa Cruz, dedicated to increasing ecological sustainability and social justice in the food and agriculture system.

Ecological Society of America—Agroecology Section
www.esa.org/agroecology/
The ESA section for agroecology works at the interface of agriculture and ecology to promote science-based strategies and disseminate information necessary for developing sustainable agricultural systems.

Ecology and Society
www.ecologyandsociety.org
A journal of integrative science for resilience and sustainability.

RECOMMENDED READING

Daubenmire, R. F. 1974. *Plants and Environment*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
The classic work in the area of autecology, emphasizing the relationship between an individual plant and the factors of the environment in which it must develop.

Golley, F. B. 1993. *A History of the Ecosystem Concept in Ecology.* Yale University Press: New Haven, CT.
The essential review of how the ecosystem concept was developed and how it has been applied as a central concept in ecology.

Gurevitch, J., S. M. Scheiner, and G. A. Fox. 2006. *The Ecology of Plants*, 2nd edn. Sinauer Associates, Inc.: Sunderland, MA.
A text focusing on the interactions between plants and their environments, over a range of scales.

Molles, M. C. 2012. *Ecology: Principles and Applications*, 6th edn. McGraw-Hill.
A good introductory ecology text.

Odum, E. P. and G. W. Barrett. 2005. *Fundamentals of Ecology*, 5th edn. Brooks/Cole: Stamford, CT.
An introductory text covering the principles of modern ecology from one of the founders of the field, with a special emphasis on the relevance of ecology for humankind.

Pretty, J. (ed.). 2005. The Earthscan Reader in Sustainable Agriculture. Earthscan: London.

Ricklefs, R. E. 2014. *The Economy of Nature*, 7th edn. W. H. Freeman and Company: New York.

A very complete textbook of ecology for the student committed to understanding the way nature works.

Smith, R. L. and T. M. Smith. 2012. *Elements of Ecology*, 8th edn. Pearson, Inc.: New York.

A commonly used textbook of ecology for the serious student in biology or environmental studies, with an emphasis on human impacts on ecosystems.

Vandermeer, J. H. 2011. *The Ecology of Agroecosystems*. Jones & Bartlett Publishers: Sudbury, MA.

A book that contemplates a more ecological and sustainable agricultural approach to food production while discussing the fundamental natural laws of ecosystems.

Section II

Plants and Abiotic Factors of the Environment

In the absence of photosynthesis, life on earth would probably consist of little more than colonies of one-celled chemotrophic bacteria. On land, the preeminent practitioners of photosynthesis are the higher (i.e., vascular) plants. As the producers upon which nearly all other life forms depend, vascular plants form the foundation of virtually all terrestrial ecosystems—and all the agroecosystems from which humans derive most of their food.

Although even the simplest of agroecosystems involve complex relationships among crop plants, noncrop plants, animals, and soil microorganisms and between each of these types of organisms and the physical environment, the most basic of relationships are those between individual photosynthesizing crop plants and their environment. Temperature, rainfall, exposure to sunlight, soil fertility, and other physical aspects of the environment are the central determinants of photosynthetic rate and plant growth—and thus production of edible biomass. Before attempting to understand agroecosystems at their full level of complexity, therefore, it is helpful to make a focused study of how individual crop plants respond to the conditions they encounter in the environment. This ecological approach, known as *physiological ecology* or *autecology*, provides a necessary starting point for our study of whole agroecosystems.

Autecological study of the plants that make up agroecosystems begins by breaking down the environment into individual *factors* and exploring how each factor affects the crop plant. Consistent with this approach, the core chapters in this section are each devoted to a single environmental factor of importance in agroecosystems. Each chapter describes how its factor functions in time and space and then gives examples of how farmers have learned either to accommodate their crops to this factor or to take advantage of it to improve the sustainability of the agroecosystem. These chapters are preceded by a chapter that reviews the basic structure and function of the plant itself, providing a basis for understanding its responses.

The interactions examined in these chapters are the foundation of the ecological thinking that is elaborated on in subsequent sections and that becomes the basis for understanding the interactions and relationships among the diverse social, political, economic, and ecological components of the food system.

FIGURE S.2 A young corn plant emerging through the organic debris left after the burning of fallow second-growth vegetation in Tabasco, Mexico. This plant will respond in different ways to the environmental conditions and factors it encounters during its life cycle.

3 The Plant

The design and management of sustainable agroecosystems has important foundations in our understanding of how individual plants grow, develop, and eventually become the plant matter we use, consume, or feed to our animals. This chapter reviews some of the more important plant physiological processes that allow a plant to live, convert sunlight into chemical energy, and store that energy in parts of the plant and in forms we can use. The chapter also reviews some of the principal nutritional needs of plants. Finally, by way of introduction to the rest of the chapters in Section II, the chapter reviews some of the most important concepts and terms used to describe the ways individual plants respond and adapt to the range of environmental factors we will be examining.

PLANT NUTRITION

Plants are autotrophic (self-nourishing) organisms by virtue of their ability to synthesize carbohydrates using only water, carbon dioxide, and energy from the sun. Photosynthesis, the process by which this energy capture takes place, is thus the foundation of plant nutrition. Yet manufacturing carbohydrates is just part of plant growth and development. An array of essential nutrients, along with water, are needed to form the complex carbohydrates, amino acids, and proteins that make up plant tissue and serve important functions in plants' life processes.

PHOTOSYNTHESIS

Through the process of photosynthesis, plants convert solar energy into chemical energy stored in the chemical bonds of sugar molecules. Since this energy-trapping process is so important for plant growth and survival, and is what makes plants useful to humans as crops, it is important to understand how photosynthesis works.

The descriptions of the processes of photosynthesis that follow are very simplified. For our purposes, it is more important to understand the agroecological consequences of the different types of photosynthesis than to know their actual chemical pathways. However, if a more detailed explanation is desired, the reader is advised to consult a plant physiology text.

As a whole, the process of photosynthesis is the solar-energy-driven production of glucose from water and carbon dioxide, as summarized in this simple equation:

$$6CO_2 + 12H_2O + \text{light energy} \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 + 6H_2O$$

Photosynthesis is actually made up of two distinct processes, each with multiple steps. These two processes, or stages, are called the **light reactions** and the **dark reactions** (Figure 3.1).

The light reactions function to convert light energy into chemical energy in the form of ATP and a compound called NADPH. These reactions use water and give off oxygen. The dark reactions (which take place independently of light) take carbon atoms from carbon dioxide in the atmosphere and use them to form organic compounds; this process is called **carbon fixation** and is driven by the ATP and NADPH produced by the light reactions. The direct end product of photosynthesis, often called **photosynthate**, is made up mainly of the simple sugar glucose. Glucose serves as an energy source for growth and metabolism in both plants and animals, because it is readily converted back to chemical energy (ATP) and carbon dioxide by the process of respiration. Glucose is also the building block for many other organic compounds in plants. These compounds include cellulose, the plant's main structural material, and starch, a storage form of glucose.

From an agroecological perspective, it is important to understand how photosynthesis can be limited. Temperature and water availability are two important factors. If temperatures are too high or moisture stress too great during the day, the openings in the leaf surface through which carbon dioxide passes begin to close. As a result of the closing of these openings—called **stomata**—carbon dioxide becomes limiting, slowing down the photosynthetic process. When the internal concentration of CO_2 in the leaf goes below a critical limiting concentration, the plant reaches the so-called **CO_2 compensation point**, where photosynthesis equals respiration, yielding no net energy gain by the plant. To make matters worse, the closing of the stomatas under water or heat stress also eliminates the leaf's evaporative cooling process and increases leaf O_2 concentration. These conditions stimulate the energetically wasteful process of **photorespiration**, in which O_2 is substituted for CO_2 in the dark reactions of photosynthesis, producing useless products that require further energy to metabolize.

Some kinds of plants have evolved different ways of fixing carbon that reduce photorespiration. Their alternate forms of carbon fixation constitute distinct photosynthetic pathways. Altogether, three types of photosynthesis are known to exist. Each has advantages under certain conditions and disadvantages in others.

C3 Photosynthesis

The most widespread type of photosynthesis is known as C3 photosynthesis. The name comes from the fact that the

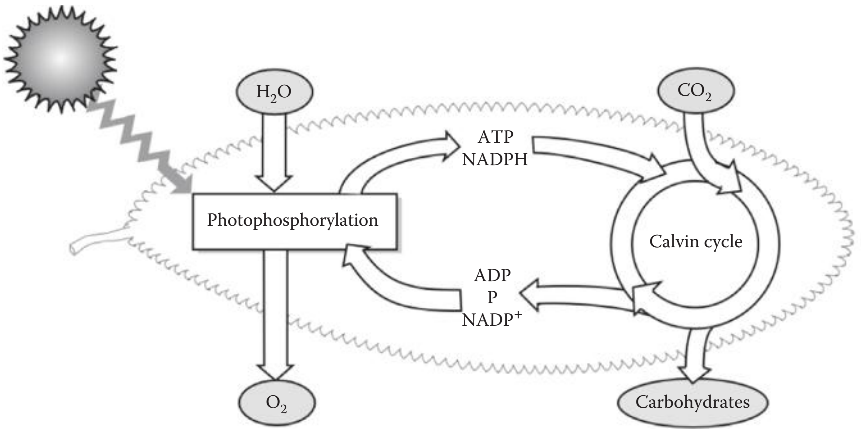


FIGURE 3.1 Basic processes of photosynthesis. Photophosphorylation is another name for what occurs during the light reactions; the Calvin cycle is the basis of the dark reactions.

first stable compound formed in the dark reactions is a three-carbon compound. In plants that use this pathway, carbon dioxide is taken in during the day through open stomata and used in the dark reactions to form glucose.

C3 photosynthesis plants do well under relatively cool conditions, since their optimum temperature for photosynthesis is relatively low (see Table 3.1). However, because their stomata must be open during the day to take in carbon dioxide, C3 plants are subject to photosynthetic limitation during times of heat or drought stress: the closure of the stomata to prevent moisture loss also limits the intake of carbon dioxide and increases photorespiration. Common crops that use C3 photosynthesis are wheat, oats, beans, squash, and tomatoes.

TABLE 3.1
Comparison of the Three Photosynthetic Pathways

	C3	C4	CAM
Light saturation point (ft cd)	3,000–6,000	8,000–10,000	?
Optimum temperature (°C)	15–25	25–40	30–40
CO_2 compensation point (ppm of CO_2)	30–70	0–10	0–4
Maximum photosynthetic rate (mg CO_2/dm^2/h)	15–35	30–45	3–13
Maximum growth rate (g/dm^2/day)	1	4	0.02
Photorespiration	High	Low	Moderate
Stomata behavior	Open day, closed night	Open or closed day, closed night	Closed day, open night

Sources: Loomis, R.S. and Connor, D.J., *Crop Ecology: Productivity and Management in Agricultural Systems*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, U.K., 1992; Etherington, J.R., *Environment and Plant Ecology*, 3rd edn., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1995; Mauseth, J.D., *Botany: An Introduction to Plant Biology*, 5th edn., Jones & Bartlett Learning, Burlington, MA, 2013.

C4 Photosynthesis

A more recently evolved form of photosynthesis is known as the C4 type. In this system, CO_2 is incorporated into four-carbon compounds before it enters the dark reactions. The four-carbon compound is transported to special cells rich in chloroplasts known as bundle sheaths, clustered around veins in the leaves, where enzymes break loose the extra carbon as CO_2. The CO_2 is then used to form the three-carbon compounds used in the dark reactions, just as in C3 photosynthesis.

The C4 pathway allows carbon fixation to occur at much lower concentrations of CO_2 than does the C3 pathway. This enables photosynthesis to take place while the stomata are closed, with CO_2 liberated by internal respiration being captured rather than CO_2 from outside air. The C4 pathway also prevents photorespiration from occurring because it makes it much more difficult for O_2 to compete with CO_2 in the dark reactions. Thus, photosynthesis in C4 plants can occur under conditions of moisture and temperature stress, when photosynthesis in C3 plants would be limited. At the same time, C4 plants usually have a higher optimum temperature for photosynthesis.

C4 plants therefore use less moisture during times of high photosynthetic potential, and under warm and dry conditions have higher net photosynthesis and higher biomass accumulation than C3 plants. C4 photosynthesis involves an extra biochemical step, but under conditions of intense direct sunlight, warmer temperature, and moisture stress, it provides a distinct advantage.

Some well-known crops that use C4 photosynthesis are corn, sorghum, and sugarcane. A lesser-known C4 crop is amaranth. C4 plants are more common in tropical areas, especially the drier tropics. Plants that originated in drier desert regions or grassland communities of warm temperate and tropical climates are more likely to be C4 plants.

CAM Photosynthesis

A third type of photosynthesis is called crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM) photosynthesis. It is similar to C4 photosynthesis. During the night, while the stomata can be open without causing the loss of undue amounts of moisture, carbon dioxide is taken in and the four-carbon compound malate is formed and stored in cellular organelles called vacuoles. The stored malate then serves as a source of CO_2 during the day to supply the dark reactions. Plants using CAM photosynthesis can keep their stomata closed during the day, taking in all the CO_2 they need during the night. As would be expected, CAM plants are common in hot and dry environments, such as deserts; they include many succulents and cactus. Bromeliads that live as epiphytes (plants attached to other plants and not rooted in soil) are also CAM plants; their habitat in the canopy of rainforests is much drier than the rest of the rainforest community. An important crop plant using CAM photosynthesis is pineapple, a member of the Bromeliaceae.

Photosynthetic Pathways Compared

A comparison of the different photosynthetic pathways is presented in Table 3.1. The different arrangements of chloroplasts within the leaves of each type are correlated with different responses to light, temperature, and water. C3 plants tend to have their peak rate of photosynthesis at moderate light intensities and temperatures, while actually being inhibited by excess light exposure and high temperatures. C4 plants are better adapted to high light and temperature conditions, and with the ability to close stomata during daylight hours in response to high temperature and evaporative stress, they can use water more efficiently under these conditions. CAM plants can withstand the most consistently hot and dry conditions, keeping stomata closed during daylight hours, but they sacrifice growth and photosynthetic rates in exchange for tolerance of extreme conditions.

Despite the greater photosynthetic efficiency of C4 plants under warmer and drier conditions (Table 3.2), C3 plants such as rice and wheat are responsible for the great bulk of world food production. The superiority of C4 photosynthesis makes a difference only when the ability of the crop to convert light into biomass is the sole limiting factor, a situation that seldom occurs in the field.

TABLE 3.2
Comparison of Net Photosynthetic Rates among C3 and C4 Plants

Crop Type	Net Photosynthetic Rate ($mg\ CO_2/dm^2$ Leaf Area/h)[a]
C3 Plants	
Spinach	16
Tobacco	16–21
Wheat	17–31
Rice	12–30
Bean	12–17
C4 Plants	
Corn	46–63
Sugarcane	42–49
Sorghum	55
Bermuda grass	35–43
Pigweed (*Amaranthus*)	58

Sources: Zelitch, I., *Photosynthesis, Photorespiration, and Plant Productivity*, Academic Press, New York, 1971; Larcher, W., *Physiological Plant Ecology*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1980.

[a] Determined under high light intensity and warm temperatures (20°C–30°C).

CARBON PARTITIONING

The carbon compounds produced by photosynthesis play critical roles in plant growth and respiration because of their dual role as an energy source and as carbon skeletons for building other organic compounds. How a plant distributes the carbon compounds derived from photosynthesis and allocates them to different physiological processes and plant parts is described by the term **carbon partitioning**. Since we grow crops for their ability to produce harvestable biomass, carbon partitioning is of considerable agricultural interest.

Although photosynthesis has an efficiency of energy capture of about 20%, the process of converting photosynthate into biomass has an efficiency that rarely exceeds 2%. This efficiency is low mainly because internal respiration (oxidation of photosynthate for cell maintenance) uses up much of the photosynthate and because photorespiration limits photosynthetic output when photosynthetic potential is highest. Much research aimed at improving crop yield has focused on increasing the efficiency of photosynthetic carbon fixation, but this goal continues to elude researchers.

Since the ability of plants to create biomass is limited, how they partition the fixed carbon they do create is of paramount importance in agriculture. Humans select plants that shunt more photosynthate to the part of the crop that is to be harvested, at the expense of other plant parts. Thus, the primary basis for increasing crop yield through plant breeding, both traditional and modern, has been the enhancement of harvested biomass relative to total plant biomass.

The harvestable or harvested portion of most crop plants usually has limited photosynthetic capacity itself, hence yields depend a great deal on carbohydrate that is transported through phloem cells from photosynthetically active parts of the plants to the harvestable parts.

In ecological terms, we often refer to carbon partitioning as a “source, path, and sink” phenomena (Figure 3.2). The source is usually the leaf, the chloroplasts in particular. Much detailed research has been done on the physiology and biochemistry of the actual transfer of carbon out of the chloroplast and into transport paths. A complex set of chemical locators and enzymes are active in this process. Once in the phloem, carbon then moves through the stem to grain, flowers, fruits, tubers, or other parts, which are the sinks. At this point there is phloem “unloading” and sink uptake. The actual transfer from vascular strands to sink tissue is often based on a sugar concentration gradient.

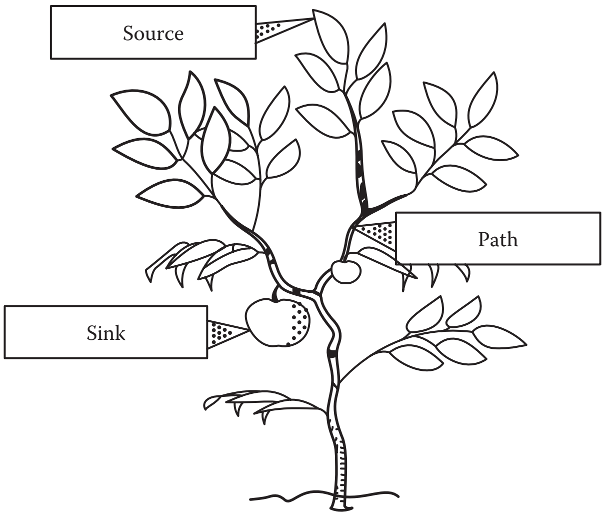


FIGURE 3.2 Carbon partitioning.

The products of photosynthesis are compounds of carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen that make up an average of 90% of plant dry matter. Therefore, there is a close relationship between whole-plant photosynthesis and whole-plant productivity. Overall photosynthetic rates are related to rates per unit leaf area, as well as to the production of new leaf area, but they are also dependent on the rate of transfer from source to sink. Carbon is kept in the area of leaf development while new leaves are forming; only after all leaves are formed can the transfer to other sinks take place. After the canopy closes, crop photosynthesis and growth depend mainly on net CO_2 fixation per unit leaf area.

Over the growing season, the various sinks of the plant compete with each other for the supply of fixed carbon produced by the leaves, with the result that some parts of the plant accumulate more biomass than others. The mechanisms regulating this partitioning of photosynthate within the plant are not well understood, though it is clear that the process is dynamic and related to both environmental conditions and the genetically determined developmental patterns of the plant. Ways of modifying carbon partitioning in crop plants are being explored by researchers; one example involves the development of perennial grain crops, where the challenge is to balance the partitioning of carbon between the vegetative body of the perennial plant (especially the roots and stems) and the grain.

NUTRITIONAL NEEDS

Photosynthesis provides a plant with a large portion of its nutritional needs—energy, and carbon and oxygen for building important structural and functional compounds. Together with hydrogen—derived from the water that enters plant roots as a result of transpiration—carbon and oxygen make up approximately 95% of the average plant's fresh weight.

The elements that make up the other 5% of living plant matter must come from somewhere else—namely the soil. These other elements are plants' essential nutrients. They are needed to form the structures of the plant, the nucleic acids directing various plant processes, and the enzymes and catalysts regulating plant metabolism. They also help maintain internal osmotic balance and have a role in the absorption of ions from the soil solution. If an essential nutrient is not available in adequate supply, the plant suffers and does not develop properly. In agriculture we have learned how to adjust the supply of these nutrients in the soil to meet the needs of our crops.

The three nutrients that are required in relatively large amounts, and have played such important roles as inorganic fertilizers in agriculture, are nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium. These are classified as macronutrients. Plants vary in the actual amounts of these nutrients they require. Since each plant variety has become adapted to different habitats with different environmental conditions, it makes sense for there to be such variation in nutrient requirements. A review of some of this nutritional variation can tell us a lot about proper crop selection and fertility management.

Nitrogen

Nitrogen is needed in large amounts by plants, but at the same time is the most universally deficient nutrient. It occurs in every amino acid, and as a result is a major component of proteins. Nitrogen is therefore involved in some way with up to 50% of dry plant biomass. It is required in enzyme synthesis, with a deficiency affecting almost every enzymatic reaction. Since nitrogen forms part of chlorophyll and is required in its synthesis, it is no wonder that nitrogen-deficient plants show the yellowing that is indicative of limiting amounts of this nutrient in the soil. Adequate supplies of nitrogen are also needed for normal flowering and fruit set in all plant species. Plants commonly have 1%–2% nitrogen as a proportion of dry weight, but contents above 5% are not unusual.

Except for nitrogen that is captured directly from the air by symbiotic microorganisms that live in the roots of most members of the Fabaceae and a few other plant families and passed on to the host plants in an available form, most plants obtain their nitrogen from ion exchange with the soil solution as NO_3^- or from NH_4^+ adsorbed to humus or clay minerals. Available forms of nitrogen in the soil are generally kept at low levels by rapid uptake of nitrogen when it is available coupled with nitrogen's high potential for leaching loss with rainfall or irrigation percolation.

Phosphorus

Phosphorus is an important component of nucleic acids, nucleoproteins, phytin, phospholipids, ATP, and several other types of phosphorylated compounds including some sugars. Phosphorus is built into the DNA of chromosomes and the RNA of the nucleus and ribosomes. Cell membranes depend on phospholipids for the regulation of movement of materials in and out of the cells and organelles. Phosphorus in the form of phosphates occurs in certain enzymes that catalyze metabolic reactions. Sugar metabolism in plants, for example, depends on phosphoglucomutase. Phosphorus also occurs in primary cell walls in the form of enzymes that affect cell wall permeability. The initial reactions of photosynthesis also involve phosphorus; it is found in the five-carbon sugar with which CO_2 initially reacts.

Phosphorus is absorbed as phosphates from the soil solution through plant roots. Phosphates in solution are readily available and taken up by plants, but except in soils that are derived from parent materials high in phosphorus or where phosphorus levels have built up over time in response to many years of fertilization, available phosphorus in most soils is quite low. Plants will opportunistically take up large amounts of this nutrient when it is available, accumulating about 0.25% of dry weight, but are quick to show signs of deficiency when it is lacking. Leaves take on a bluish cast or remain dark green, and purple pigments (anthocyanins) become prominent on the underside of the leaves and along the veins or near the leaf tip. Root and fruit development are severely restricted when phosphorus is limiting.

Potassium

Potassium is not a structural component of the plant, nor a component in enzymes or proteins. Its main role is to provide the appropriate ionic environment for metabolic processes that take place in the liquid contents of the plant cell, or the cytosol. In relation to this role, it has regulatory functions: it is involved, for example, in osmoregulation (stomatal movement) and as a cofactor for many enzyme systems. Most metabolic processes that have been studied are affected by potassium. In protein metabolism, for example, it appears that potassium activates certain enzymes that are responsible for peptide bond synthesis and the incorporation of amino acids into protein. Potassium needs to be present for the formation of starches and sugars, as well as for their later transport throughout the plant. This nutrient has been shown to be needed for cell division and growth, and is linked to cell permeability, proper turgidity, and hydration. Plants show better resistance to disease and environmental stress when potassium supplies are adequate.

Plants obtain potassium in the form of the cation K^+, taking it in through the roots as exchangeable ions from adsorption sites in the soil matrix or from a dissolved form in the soil solution. When potassium is deficient, plants primarily show disruptions in water balance; these include drying tips or curled leaf edges, and sometimes a higher predominance of root rot. Potassium is usually quite abundant in soils, with plant tissues being made up of 1%–2% potassium by dry weight under optimum conditions, but excessive removal through harvest or soil leaching can lead to potassium deficiency.

Other Macronutrients

Three other nutrients—calcium (Ca), magnesium (Mg), and sulfur (S)—are also considered to be macronutrients, but this classification is more a function of the relatively high levels in which they accumulate in plant tissue and less because of their importance in different plant structures or processes. This is not to say that they do not play valuable roles, because when any of these nutrients are deficient in the soil, plant development suffers and symptoms of deficiency show up quickly. Calcium and magnesium are readily absorbed by plant roots through cation exchange (as Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}), but sulfur is taken up sparingly as an anion (SO_4^{2-}) from organically bound sites in the soil or upon dissociation of sulfates of Ca, Mg, or Na.

Micronutrients

Iron (Fe), copper (Cu), zinc (Zn), manganese (Mn), molybdenum (Mo), boron (B), and chlorine (Cl) make up what are called the micronutrients or the trace elements. Each one plays some vital role in plants, but usually in extremely small quantities. In fact, most of these elements are toxic to plants when they occur in the soil in large quantities. All are taken up from the soil solution through ion exchange at the root surface.

The role that each of the micronutrients plays in plants' life processes is outlined in Table 3.3. As one would imagine, any of the important physiological processes listed could be inhibited or altered by a deficiency of the micronutrient concerned. Many inorganic fertilizers carry small quantities of these elements as contaminants, and mixtures of trace elements are now commonly added to soils that have undergone a long period of conventional management. Organic fertilizers, especially those made from composted plant material and manure, are rich in micronutrients.

TRANSPIRATION

All of a plant's life processes, including photosynthesis, carbon partitioning, and metabolism, are dependent on the

TABLE 3.3
Micronutrients and the Processes in Which They Are Involved

Nutrient	Processes
Boron (B)	Carbohydrate transport and metabolism, phenol metabolism, activation of growth regulators
Chlorine (Cl)	Cell hydration, activation of enzymes in photosynthesis
Copper (Cu)	Basal metabolism, nitrogen metabolism, secondary metabolism
Iron (Fe)	Chlorophyll synthesis, enzymes for electron transport
Manganese (Mn)	Basal metabolism, stabilization of chloroplast structure, nitrogen metabolism
Molybdenum (Mo)	Nitrogen fixation, phosphorus metabolism, iron absorption and translocation
Zinc (Zn)	Chlorophyll formation, enzyme activation, basal metabolism, protein breakdown, hormone biosynthesis

Source: Adapted from Treschow, M., *Environment and Plant Response*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1970.

continual flow of water from the soil to the atmosphere along a pathway that extends from the soil, into the roots, up the stem to the leaves, and out of the leaves through the stomata. This flow process is called **transpiration**.

Water loss from the leaves creates a concentration gradient, or a lower leaf water potential, that then through capillarity moves more water into the plant and to the leaves to replace the loss. The actual amount of water that is chemically bound in plant tissues or that is actively involved in processes such as photosynthesis is very small in proportion to the transpirational loss of water on a daily basis. Water movement through plants is very important in nutrient cycles and under conditions of limited water availability in the soil, as we will see in later chapters.

THE PLANT IN ITS INTERACTION WITH THE ENVIRONMENT

Each of the physiological processes described earlier allows the plant to respond to and survive in the environment in which it lives. An understanding of the ways individual plants and their physiology are impacted by different factors of the environment is an essential component in the design and management of sustainable cropping systems.

The ecological study of individual plant response to the diverse factors of the environment—termed autecology or physiological ecology in the pure sense and crop ecology in the applied sense—is therefore a foundation of agroecological understanding. Some of the conceptual basis of autecology is reviewed in the next section. Each factor of the environment and its effects on crop plants is then explored in a separate chapter in preparation for expanding our view to the agroecosystem level.

A Plant's Place in the Environment

Each species occupies a particular place in the ecosystem, known as the **habitat**, that is characterized by a particular set of environmental conditions that includes the interaction of the species with the other species in the habitat. Within its habitat, the species carries out a particular ecological role or function, known as the **ecological niche** of that species. For example, coast redwoods (*Sequoia sempervirens*) occupy a specific habitat on the north coast of California characterized by a moderating maritime climate and the occurrence of summer fog that compensates for a lack of rainfall during this time. At the same time, redwoods occupy the ecological niche of autotrophic producers capable of modifying the microclimate under their emergent canopies and being the dominant species in their community.

Responses to Factors of the Environment

Every plant during its lifespan goes through distinct stages of development, including germination of the seed, initial establishment, growth, flowering, and dispersal of seed. Each of these stages involves some kind of physiological change, or **response**, in the plant. Most plant responses are tied directly to environmental conditions.

Triggered Responses

Many plant responses are triggered by some external stimulus. They come about as a result of a certain condition, but that external condition does not have to be maintained in order for the response to continue. For example, tobacco seed requires exposure to light in order to germinate, but that exposure need only last for a fraction of a second. After a brief exposure to light, the seed will germinate even if it is planted in total darkness.

Dependent Responses

Some plant responses depend on the continued presence of a particular external condition. The response is both induced and maintained by the condition. The production of leaves on the spiny stems of ocotillo (*Fouquieria splendens*) in the Sonoran Desert is an example of this type of response. Within a day or two after significant rainfall, leaves appear on the stems; as long as moisture levels are sufficient in the soil, the leaves are retained, but immediately upon reaching the wilting point the leaves are dropped.

Independent Responses

Finally, certain responses in plants occur regardless of conditions in the immediate environment and are the result of some internally controlled, physiologically determined set of factors. For example, a corn plant begins to flower because a particular stage in growth and development has been achieved. External conditions may force later or earlier flowering by affecting growth, but the actual shift to flowering is internally controlled.

Limits and Tolerances

The ability of an individual species to occupy its particular habitat is the result of a set of adaptations that have evolved over time for that species. These adaptations allow the plant to cope with certain levels of moisture availability, temperature, light, wind, and other conditions. For each of the factors that delimit the habitat for the species, there is a maximum level of tolerance and a minimum level of tolerance beyond which that species cannot cope. Between these two extremes there is an optimum at which the species performs or functions the best. For example, the tropical plant banana has a mean monthly temperature optimum of 27°C; above 50°C banana trees suffer sunscorch and stop growing; below 21°C growth is checked by reduction in leaf production and delayed shooting of the bunches.

A particular species' range of tolerance limits and optimum for a factor of the environment is ultimately the result of how that factor affects each of the physiological processes of the plant (Figure 3.3). A species' tolerance of a range of temperatures, for example, is linked to how temperature affects photosynthesis, transpiration, and other physiological processes of the plant. When all of the abiotic and biotic factors of the environment are entered into the tolerance equation,

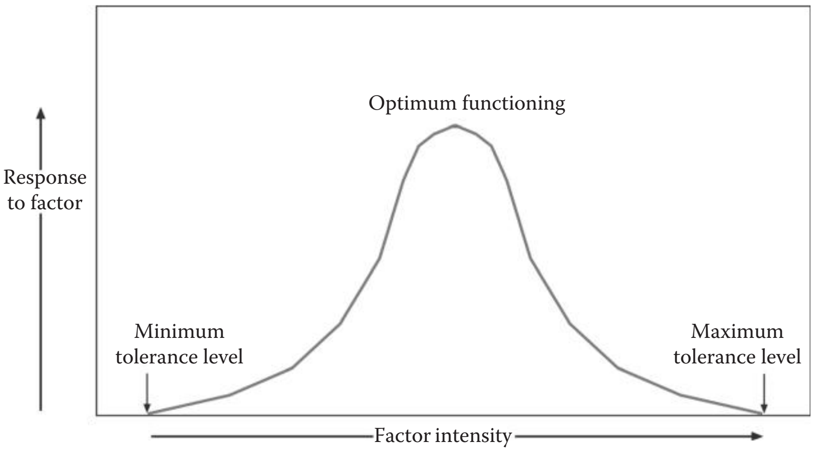


FIGURE 3.3 **A plant's range of tolerance for an environmental factor.**

the full range of a species' adaptability becomes apparent. An individual's habitat and niche become fully integrated.

A species with a broad set of tolerances of environmental conditions (known as a **generalist**) and a broad ability to interact with other species (often referred to as a species with a broad niche or the capability of considerable niche overlap) will be more common over a larger area. In contrast, a species with a narrow set of tolerances and a very specialized niche (a **specialist**), will be less common over larger areas and only seen as common at a very localized level. Redwood sorrel (*Oxalis oregana*), an ecological specialist, can form dense stands in which it is the locally dominant plant, but it is restricted to the specific conditions encountered in the partially shaded understory of a redwood forest. If the shade is too dense, photosynthetic activity is not great enough to meet the plant's respiratory needs, and if the sun is too intense, sorrel is unable to tolerate the desiccating effects of direct solar radiation. Redwood sorrel's optimum level of light is intermediate to these two extremes.

In summary, each individual plant species occurs in a particular habitat as a result of the development over time of a particular set of adaptive responses to the environment in which it lives. The species' limits of tolerance restrict individuals of that species to a particular habitat, within which interactions with other species occur. This is the case in both agroecosystems and natural ecosystems. How each plant in an agroecosystem performs will depend on how each factor of the environment impacts it. We will explore these factors in detail in the following chapters.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. How might the different forms of photosynthesis that occur in plants have come about? What specific conditions of the environment would select for each type and how might we use this knowledge in agriculture?
2. What would you consider to be "balanced plant nutrition" and how would you try to maintain it in an agroecosystem setting?
3. Why does a plant partition carbon to different parts of the plant structure?
4. How many factors need to be included to be able to thoroughly understand the full range of conditions that determine an individual plant's habitat?
5. How is plant nutrition affected by the shift from easily soluble synthetic fertilizers to more complex organic soil amendments, as commonly applied in organic farming systems?

INTERNET RESOURCES

The Botanical Society of America
www.botany.org
This site is a primary means by which the society promotes study and inquiry into the form, function, development, diversity, reproduction, evolution, and uses of plants and their interactions within the biosphere.

RECOMMENDED READING

Hall, A. E. 2001. *Crop Responses to Environment*. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.
Presents the principles, theories, and experimental observations concerning plant responses to the environment, with specific reference to crop cultivars and management.

Lambers, H., F. S. Chapin III, and T. L. Pons. 2008. *Plant Physiological Ecology*, 2nd edn. Springer-Verlag: New York.
An in-depth analysis of the mechanisms underlying plant physiological ecology, including biochemistry, biophysics, molecular biology and whole-plant physiology.

Loomis, R. S., D. J. Connor, and K. G. Cassman. 2011. *Crop Ecology: Productivity and Management in Agricultural Systems*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
A textbook that emphasizes physiological ecology and how to adjust the crop environment to meet the needs of the crop plant.

Marschner, P. 2011. *Mineral Nutrition of Higher Plants*. Academic Press: Waltham, MA.
A detailed work on the important field of plant nutrition. The authors trace the movement of nutrients from soil to roots and throughout the plant, providing details on physiology, metabolism, and the roles of each nutrient in plant function.

Mauseth, J. D. 2013. *Botany: An Introduction to Plant Biology*, 5th edn. Jones & Bartlett Learning: Burlington, MA.

A modern and comprehensive overview of the fundamentals of botany while retaining a focus on natural selection, analysis of botanical phenomena, and diversity.

Reece, J. B., L. A. Urry, M. L. Cain, S. A. Wasserman, P. V. Minorsky, and R. B. Jackson. 2013. *Campbell Biology*, 10th edn. Benjamin Cummings: Menlo Park, CA.

One of the most complete and best-respected textbooks on general biology.

Taiz, L. and E. Zeiger. 2010. *Plant Physiology*, 5th edn. Sinauer Associates: Sunderland, MA.

A very thorough review of the field of plant physiology; balances chemical and molecular specificity with the broader ecological applications.

Wilkinson, R. E. (ed.). 2013. *Plant–Environment Interaction*, 2nd edn. (revised). CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.

A comprehensive presentation of plant responses to changing environments, with a focus on how stress factors influence plant survival.

4 Light

Light from the sun is the primary source of energy for ecosystems. It is captured by plants through photosynthesis and its energy stored in the chemical bonds of organic compounds. Sunlight also drives the earth's weather: light energy transformed into heat affects rainfall patterns, surface temperature, wind, and humidity. The way these factors of the environment are distributed over the face of the earth determines climate and is of considerable importance in agriculture. All these light-related factors will be reviewed in more detail in subsequent chapters.

This chapter focuses on the light environment as it directly affects agroecosystems. The light environment includes that portion of the electromagnetic spectrum from the invisible ultraviolet (UV) through the visible light spectrum to the invisible infrared (IR). This chapter also discusses how the light environment can be managed to more efficiently channel this renewable source of energy through the system, use it to maintain the many and diverse functions of the system, and ultimately convert part of it into sustainable harvests.

SOLAR RADIATION

The energy the earth receives from the sun arrives in the form of electromagnetic waves varying in length from less than 0.001 nanometers (nm) to more than 1,000,000,000 nm. This energy makes up what is known as the electromagnetic spectrum. The portion of the electromagnetic spectrum between about 1 and 1,000,000 nm is considered to be light, although not all of it is visible. Light with a wavelength between 1 and 390 nm is UV light. Visible light is the next component, made up of light with wavelengths between 400 and 760 nm. Light with a wavelength longer than 760 nm and shorter than 1,000,000 nm is known as IR light, and like UV light is invisible to the eye; when the wavelength of IR light extends beyond 3000 nm, however, it is sensed as heat. Figure 4.1 shows how the electromagnetic spectrum is divided into types of energy.

ATMOSPHERE AS FILTER AND REFLECTOR

When light first arrives from the sun at the outer edge of the earth's atmosphere, it is comprised of approximately 10% UV light, 50% visible light, and 40% IR light or heat energy. As this light interacts with the earth's atmosphere, several things can happen to it, as shown in Figure 4.2.

Some light is *dispersed* or scattered—its path toward the surface is altered due to the interference from molecules in the atmosphere, but its wavelength is not changed in the process. Most dispersed light reaches the surface, but in the process gives the atmosphere its unique blue color. Some light is *reflected* off of the atmosphere back out into space; its wavelength is also unchanged in the process. Finally, some light is *absorbed* by water, dust, smoke, ozone, carbon dioxide, or other gases in the atmosphere. The absorbed energy is stored for a period of time, and then *reradiated* as longer-wave heat energy. Almost all UV light with a wavelength of 300 nm or less is absorbed by the earth's atmosphere before it strikes the surface. (UV light with a wavelength below 200 nm is potentially lethal to living organisms.) The light that is not reflected off the atmosphere or absorbed is *transmitted* and reaches the surface. This energy is mostly visible light, but also includes some UV light and IR light.

At the earth's surface, this transmitted light is absorbed by soil, water, or organisms. Some of the absorbed energy is reflected back into the atmosphere, and some is reradiated as heat.

Over the last several hundred years in particular, humans have added gases and tiny particles to the atmosphere that have changed the way in which the atmosphere reflects, disperses, and transmits light. These changes in atmospheric composition are at the root of climate change. Subsequent chapters will explore in more detail how changes in its composition affect the atmosphere's interaction with light from the sun and ultimately affect factors of crucial importance to plants—temperature, precipitation patterns, and wind. This chapter sets those issues aside so that it may focus on the ways in which sunlight considered as an ecological factor affects plant growth and functioning.

ECOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE OF LIGHT ON EARTH

All wavelengths of light that reach the earth's surface have significance for the living organisms that occupy the planet. Over evolutionary time, organisms have developed different adaptations for accommodating themselves to the various spectra. These adaptations vary from active energy capture to deliberate avoidance of solar energy exposure.

ULTRAVIOLET LIGHT

Only about 1% of the UV light entering the earth's outer atmosphere actually reaches the surface. The rest is absorbed by a layer of ozone gas high in the atmosphere. Despite this reduction in its intensity at the surface, UV light can be active in certain chemical reactions in plants. Together with the

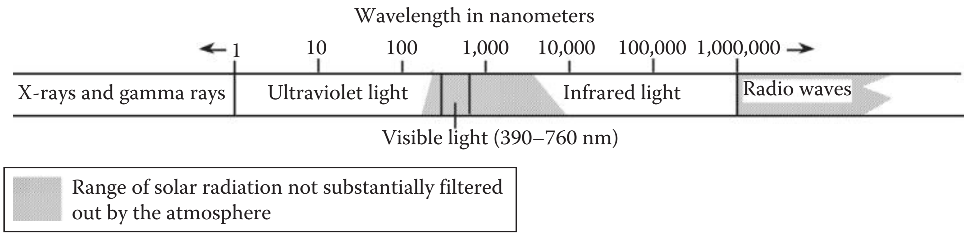


FIGURE 4.1 The electromagnetic spectrum. The sun emits the full spectrum of electromagnetic energy, but the atmosphere reflects and filters out most of the shortwave radiation, much of the IR, and the longest wavelength radio waves. A relatively narrow band of energy centered on the visible light spectrum reaches the earth's surface mostly unimpeded.

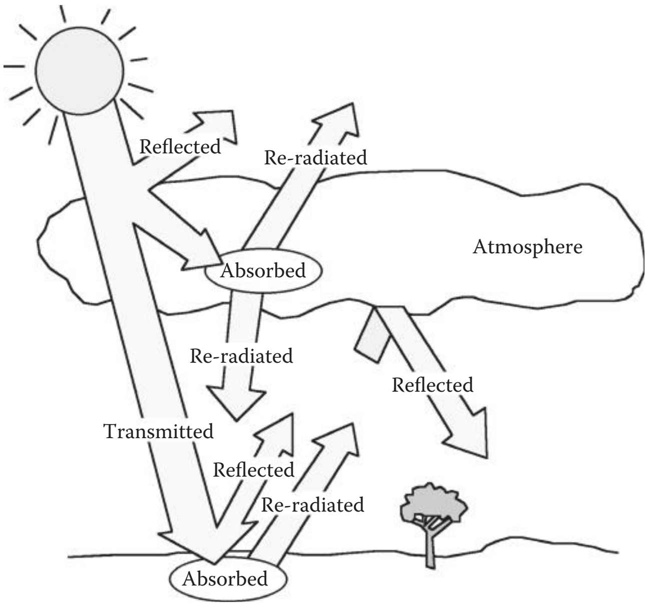


FIGURE 4.2 The fate of light upon reaching the earth. Transmitted light from the sun is mostly in the visible light range; reradiated energy is mostly in the IR range.

shorter wavelengths of visible light, UV tends to promote the formation of plant pigments known as anthocyanins, and can be involved in the inactivation of certain hormonal systems important for stem elongation and phototropism.

In general, however, UV radiation is harmful to plant tissues. Plants (as well as animals) are therefore very dependent on the screening effect of the ozone layer. Although the opaque epidermis of most plants reduces the amount of harmful UV entering sensitive tissue or cells, an increase in UV exposure beyond the amount for which plants have evolved adaptations can damage leaf cells, inhibit photosynthesis and growth, and promote mutations.

Since the middle of the last century, humans have been releasing compounds into the atmosphere that can make their way into the stratosphere and destroy ozone molecules. These compounds, which include chlorofluorocarbons used as coolants and propellants, and agricultural fumigants like methyl bromide, become highly effective ozone assassins when UV radiation tears off their chlorine or bromine atoms, turning these atoms into free radicals that react destructively with ozone. As these compounds, collectively known as halocarbons, accumulated in the upper atmosphere, they began to affect the ozone layer. By the 1980s, significant thinning of the ozone layer had been observed over the southern polar region and levels of UV irradiation at the surface had increased in many places. This caused so much worry that most of the countries of the world agreed in 1987 to phase out production and use of halocarbons.

This 1987 agreement, called the Montreal Protocol, has been effective at greatly reducing emissions of halocarbons, allowing the ozone layer to undergo some "healing" since the 1990s. However, many scientists are still very concerned about the long-term status of the ozone layer. One problem is that halocarbons still continue to be produced, particularly for use in air conditioners in unregulated markets in the developing world, and such use is likely to increase as the middle class expands in these countries and as increasing temperatures make air conditioning seem more necessary. Another cause for worry is accumulating evidence that climate change is helping to destroy ozone in the stratosphere through several different mechanisms. In one such mechanism, the highly energetic storms that are becoming more common as the earth warms are sending water vapor high enough into the atmosphere to interact with sulfate aerosols and in this form present the ozone layer with yet another serious antagonist. If the UV protection offered by the ozone layer does indeed decline as climate change progresses, the consequences for agriculture could be significant.

PHOTOSYNTHETICALLY ACTIVE RADIATION

The light energy in the visible spectrum is of greatest importance in agroecosystems. Depending on local climatic conditions, it forms 40%–60% of the total energy of solar radiation reaching the earth's surface. Also known as photosynthetically active radiation (PAR), this is the light with wavelengths between 400 and 760 nm. Green plants will not grow without a combination of most of the wavelengths of light in the visible spectrum.

Not all the light in this spectrum is of equal value in photosynthesis, however. The photoreceptors in chlorophyll are most absorptive of violet–blue and orange–red light; green and yellow light are not as useful. Since chlorophyll cannot absorb green light very well, most of it is reflected back, making plants appear green. Figure 4.3 shows how the absorbance of chlorophyll varies with wavelength.

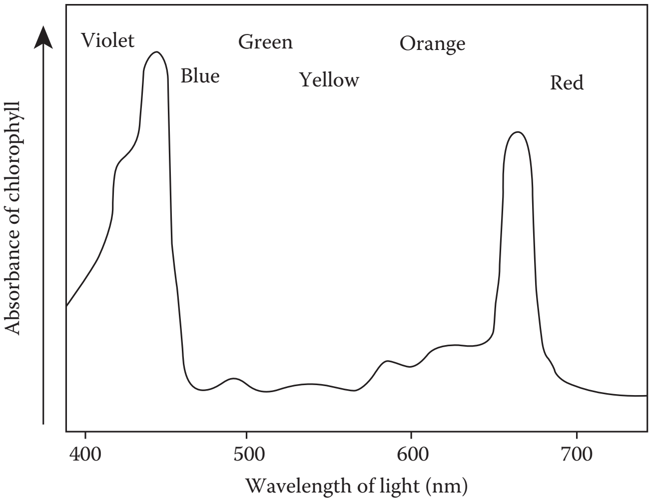


FIGURE 4.3 Absorbance of chlorophyll in relation to the wavelength of light. Chlorophyll absorbs mostly violet–blue and orange–red light; thus leaves reflect green and yellow light.

The wavelengths of light that chlorophyll absorbs best correspond roughly to the wavelengths at which photosynthesis is most efficient.

INFRARED LIGHT

IR light energy with a wavelength from 800 to 3000 nm—sometimes referred to as the near-IR range—has an important role in influencing the hormones involved in germination, a plant's response to changes to day length, and other plant processes. In the range beyond 3000 nm, IR light becomes heat, and different ecological impacts are evident. (Temperature as an ecological factor is discussed in Chapter 5.)

CHARACTERISTICS OF VISIBLE LIGHT EXPOSURE

Light energy in the visible or PAR range is converted by photosynthesis into chemical energy, and eventually into the biomass that drives the rest of the agroecosystem, including the part we harvest for our own use. To manage agroecosystems in a way that maximizes the efficiency of this process, it is important to understand how the light to which plants are exposed can vary.

QUALITY

Visible light can vary in the relative amounts of the colors that make it up—this is referred to as the light's quality. The largest proportion of direct sunlight at the earth's surface is at the center of the visible light spectrum, dropping off slightly at both the violet and red ends. The diffuse light from the sky—such as what occurs in the shade of a building—is relatively higher in blue and violet light. Since different portions of the visible light spectrum can be used for photosynthesis more efficiently than others, light quality can have an important effect on photosynthetic efficiency.

A number of factors can cause light quality to vary. In the interior of some cropping systems, for example, canopy species remove most of the red and blue light, leaving primarily transmitted green and far-red light. Light quality can therefore become a limiting factor for plants under the canopy, even though the total amount of light may appear to be adequate.

INTENSITY

The total energy content of all the light in the PAR range that reaches a leaf surface is the intensity of that light. Light intensity can be expressed in a variety of energy units, but the most common are the langley (cal/cm^2), the watt (J/s), and the einstein (6×10^{23} photons). All of these units of measure express the amount of energy falling on a surface over some time period. At very high light intensities, photosynthetic pigments become saturated, meaning that additional light does not effectively increase the rate of photosynthesis. This level of light intensity is called the **saturation point**. Excessive light can lead to degradation of chlorophyll pigments and even cause harm to plant tissue. At the other extreme, low levels of light can bring a plant to the **light compensation point**, or the level of light intensity where the amount of photosynthate produced is equal to the amount needed for respiration. When the light intensity goes below the compensation point, the energy balance for the plant is negative. If the negative balance is not offset by a time period of active photosynthesis and energy gain, the plant may die.

DURATION

The length of time that leaf surfaces are exposed to sunlight each day can impact photosynthetic rates as well as longer-term plant growth and development. Duration of light exposure is also an important variable in how light intensity or quality can affect a plant. Exposure to excessive levels of light for a short time, for example, can be tolerated, whereas a longer period of exposure can be damaging. Or a short period of intensive light, allowing the plant to produce an excess of photosynthate, can then allow for tolerance of a longer period below the light compensation point.

The total number of hours of daylight—the **photoperiod**—is also an important aspect of the duration of light exposure. A variety of plant responses, as will be discussed in detail in the following, have specific chemical triggers or control mechanisms that can be activated or deactivated depending on the number of hours of daylight, or in some cases, the number of dark hours without sunlight.

DETERMINANTS OF VARIATIONS IN THE LIGHT ENVIRONMENT

The quality and quantity of light received by a plant in a specific location and the duration of its exposure to light are a function of several important factors including seasonality, latitude, altitude, topography, air quality, and the structure of the vegetation canopy.

SEASONALITY

Except at the equator, daylight hours are longest during the summer and shortest in the winter, reaching their extremes at the corresponding solstice. Since the angle of the sun in relation to the surface is much lower toward the poles during the winter, the sunlight that is available has to pass through more atmospheres before it reaches the plant, making that sunlight much less intense. Therefore, both intensity and duration of light are affected by seasonality. Many plants have adapted to the seasonal variations in day length and light intensity through the selection of adaptations that either prepare the plant for the upcoming winter or get it ready to take advantage of more optimal conditions for growth and development as spring progresses into summer. The timing of many agricultural activities—such as planting and pruning—corresponds to the changing hours of daylight at specific times of the year.

LATITUDE

The closer to either of the poles, the greater the seasonal variation in day length. Above the arctic circle, 24 h periods of daylight in the summer are balanced by 24 h periods of night in the winter. Near the equator, the constancy of 12 h days throughout the year makes for a light environment that promotes year-round high net primary productivity and permits an agriculture that is characterized by either multiple plantings during the annual crop calendar or an abundance of perennial crops that provide a mixture or succession of harvests throughout the year.

ALTITUDE

As elevation increases, light intensity also increases because the thinner atmosphere absorbs and disperses less light. Plants growing at higher elevations, therefore, are more subject to conditions of light saturation and face greater danger of chlorophyll degradation than plants at sea level. Many high-elevation plants have evolved reflective coloration or protective hairs or scales on leaf cuticles to reduce the amount of light penetrating the leaves.

TOPOGRAPHY

The slope and direction of the soil surface can create localized variations in the intensity and duration of exposure to sunlight. Although the temperature effects of this variation may be of greater significance, steep slopes facing the poles can receive significantly lower direct insolation than other sites. Slope orientation usually becomes more important during the winter months, when a hillside or other topographic feature can cast a shadow over the vegetation. In farming systems, minor topographic variation can create subtle differences in microclimate that affect plant development, especially when plants are still very small (Figure 4.4).

FIGURE 4.4 Concentrated weed growth on the north-facing side of a furrow. Because this side of the furrow received less light than the south-facing side, it remained cooler and moister, favoring the development of these particular weeds.

AIR QUALITY

Suspended materials in the atmosphere can have a significant screening effect. Smoke, dust, and other pollutants, either natural or human produced, can greatly interfere with photosynthetic activity, either by reducing the amount of light energy that reaches the leaf or by coating the leaf and cutting down the amount of light that penetrates the cuticle. Such air quality problems are usually most common in and around urban or industrial regions (Figure 4.5), but poor air quality associated with agricultural activities such a burning and soil disturbance can also occur. Greenhouse horticulture is particularly affected by deposition of particulates from dirty air; even when glass is clean it reduces light passage by about 13%.

VEGETATION CANOPY STRUCTURE

The average leaf allows the transmission of about 10% of the light that strikes its surface. Depending on the structure of the canopy of the vegetation, leaves will overlap one another to a greater or lesser extent, adding to the density of the canopy and reducing both the quantity and quality of light that eventually reaches the soil surface. At the same time, however, considerable sunlight may pass between leaves or through the spaces that become available between leaves as wind moves the canopy and as the sun moves across the sky. Some of this additional light enters as diffused side lighting

FIGURE 4.5 Smog in the Valley of Mexico. The high level of air pollution in this mountain-ringed valley impacts light quality at ground level. One of the peaks of Volcán Ixtacihuatl extends above the smog.

(sky light), and other light enters directly from the sun and forms sunflecks (small, usually mobile spots of unobstructed light). From an agricultural perspective, it is important to understand how light varies inside of the vegetative canopy, especially when dealing with diverse intercropped systems, agroforestry systems, and even the management of noncrop plant species in the interior of a cropping system.

The **relative rate of light transmission** of a canopy is expressed as the average amount of light that is able to penetrate the canopy as a percentage of the total incident light available at the top of the canopy or on the surface of an adjacent area free of vegetation. Since we also know that the change in average light penetration depends on the density of the foliage and arrangement of leaves, another way of determining the potential for light absorption of a particular canopy is to measure **leaf area index** (LAI). This is done by calculating the total surface area of leaves above a certain area of ground; since the units for both are identical (m^2), LAI becomes a unitless measure of the amount of cover. If the LAI is determined to be 3.5, for example, the given area is covered by the equivalent of 3.5 layers of leaves in the canopy, implying that light will have to travel through that many layers before reaching the ground. The height of each layer, however, is an important determinant of the sequential reduction of light as it travels through the canopy.

Not only is the more obvious measure of total light intensity reduced as we enter deeper into the vegetative cover, but the quality of that light changes as well. The “light of shade” inside an agroecosystem (or forest) usually has a very low amount of red and blue light, and a relatively high amount of green and IR light. This effect is particularly pronounced under broad-leaved evergreen canopies. Conifer forests, on the other hand, have much more red and blue light at the forest floor because of the structure of the leaves (needles) and the fact that they are much more reflective rather than absorbing and transmitting of visible light.

Given the extreme variations in canopy structure among natural vegetations and cropping systems, light levels inside canopies are highly variable as well. They can range from only a few percent of full sunlight at soil level in a dense forest to nearly 100% of full sunlight in a cropping system in the early stages of crop development. The light intensity in a fully mature cotton crop is reduced to 30% of full sunlight at a point halfway between canopy top and soil surface, and is less than 5% of full sunlight at the soil surface. The ways in which a squash crop, a corn crop, and a corn/squash intercrop modify the light environment under their canopies are illustrated in Figure 4.6.

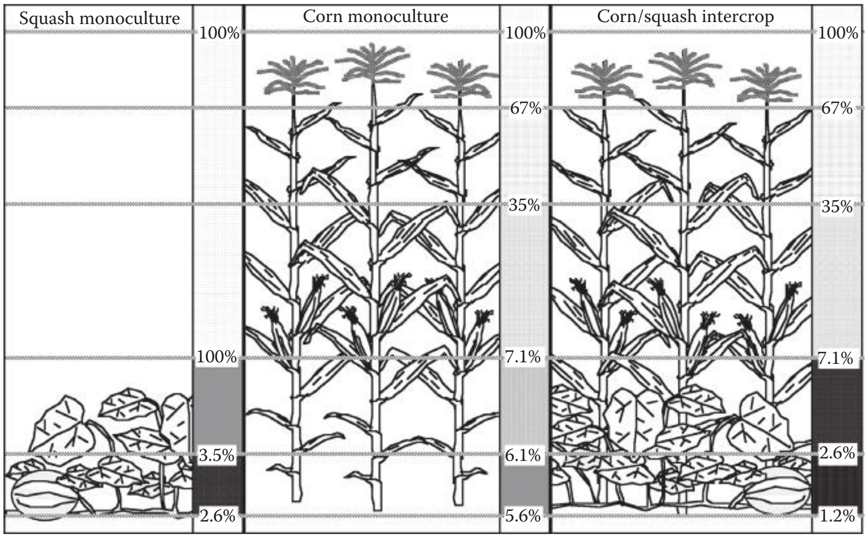


FIGURE 4.6 Light attenuation under the canopy of a squash monoculture, a corn monoculture, and a corn/squash intercrop. The data for each crop show the percentage of full sunlight remaining at each of six horizontal levels. (Data from Fujiyoshi, P., Ecological aspects of interference by squash in a corn/squash intercropping agroecosystem, Unpublished data from Ph.D. thesis in Biology. University of California, Santa Cruz, CA, 1997.)

PHOTOSYNTHETIC RATE

Once light is absorbed by the leaf and activates the processes in the chloroplast that eventually lead to the production of energy-rich sugars, differences in the actual rate of photosynthesis become important. Photosynthetic rate is primarily determined by three different sets of factors: (1) the plant's developmental stage (discussed in the next section), (2) the environmental conditions surrounding the plant, including the light environment, and (3) the type of photosynthetic pathway (C3, C4, or crassulacean acid metabolism [CAM]) used by the plant. It is important to know what determines variations in photosynthetic rate when managing the light environment in agroecosystems.

Photosynthetic Efficiency and Factors of the Environment

Like any plant response, photosynthesis is greatly affected by environmental conditions. These include temperature, light intensity, light quality, duration of light exposure, availability of carbon dioxide, availability of moisture, and wind. For each of these factors, a plant has maximum and minimum tolerances, as well as an optimum condition making photosynthesis most effective. The effects of these factors will be dealt with in more detail in later chapters.

In general it can be said that much of an individual plant's structure and function has evolved over time for photosynthetic efficiency. But despite a host of adaptations, from leaf structure to chemical pathways, only a small percentage of available solar energy is captured by the process. Most leaves reach saturation at only about 20% of full sunlight. Of the solar energy absorbed by leaves, only about 20% gets converted to chemical energy in sugar molecules. This gives photosynthesis a theoretical efficiency of about 4%, which can be lowered even more as carbon dioxide around the leaf is depleted. In addition, only part of the energy in photosynthate is actually converted to biomass, reducing the efficiency of the entire process to between 1% and 3%. Since we have yet to find ways of altering the photosynthetic process itself, it becomes most important to try to maintain environmental conditions as close to optimum as possible, as well as to select crop plants with the appropriate pathway and adaptations for a particular environment.

Differences in Photosynthetic Pathways

The research that has helped us understand the different types of photosynthetic pathways and their conditions of optimum functioning has also helped us refine our selection of crops for different locations. The higher photosynthetic rates, virtual lack of photorespiration, and morphological adaptations (bundle sheaths) in C4 plants combine to give these plants an advantage under conditions of high light intensity and warm temperatures. These two conditions often occur in moisture-limited situations as well. Therefore, even under moisture stress and accompanying stomatal closure, C4 plants can continue to photosynthesize through the scavenging of internally produced carbon dioxide because of an ability to maintain the process even at low compensation points for carbon dioxide. C4 plants, however, are somewhat restricted to these conditions of high light intensity and warmth. C3 plants have a much wider distribution and a better ability to function under conditions of lower temperatures, shading, and climatic variation. Researchers have recently shown that when C3 and C4 crops (e.g., corn and dry beans, or sweet sorghum and soybeans) are grown together in the same cropping system, the complementarity in light needs helps produce a yield advantage for the mixture (Tsubo et al. 2001; Arshad and Ranumukhaarachichi 2012). Rotations of C3 and C4 crops can also respond to changing light conditions that occur seasonally.

Measurement of Photosynthetic Rate

The measurement of photosynthetic rates in the field allows us to monitor the efficiency of energy capture in various crops. The most accurate measurement is of actual gas exchange by the plant. An individual leaf, plant part, or whole plant is enclosed in a transparent chamber where conditions are monitored and maintained as close to ambient conditions as possible. Air is passed through the chamber and into an IR gas analyzer (IRGA) so that changes in carbon dioxide content caused by the photosynthesis–respiration balance can be determined.

The other form of measurement is based on the weight gain in dry biomass by the whole plant or the determination of the correlation between weight gain of specific plant parts and the whole plant over time. For an annual plant that begins as a seed and completes its life cycle in a single season, net photosynthetic activity is directly related to the dry weight of the plant at harvest. For perennials, some part of the plant has to be harvested, and by using models of whole plant development and biomass distribution, approximate values of net photosynthetic activity can be determined. The LAI described earlier can also be used to estimate the potential leaf area available for photosynthesis in a crop system, and then based on our knowledge of approximate photosynthetic rates for individual plants or plant parts, estimates of the photosynthetic rate for the whole system can be made.

OTHER FORMS OF RESPONSE TO LIGHT

Plants respond to light in other ways besides using light to produce energy-rich sugars. Light has an influence on the plant from germination of the seed to its production of new seeds.

Germination

The seeds of many plants require light to germinate; when buried beneath the soil they do poorly. A single, brief exposure to light, however, such as during cultivation when a weed seed is brought to the surface but immediately buried again as the soil is turned, can be enough to induce germination. Other seeds need repeated exposure or even constant exposure to the light in order to germinate. Lettuce is perhaps one of the best known examples of such a crop species—without light exposure, germination is reduced by 70% or more. The seeds of other plants, such as those of many of the cucurbits, have the opposite requirement: the seed must be buried fully in order to germinate because light actually inhibits germination. In all of these cases, a light-sensitive hormone controls the response.

GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

Once a seed germinates, the newly emerged plant begins the process of growth and development. At any stage in the process, light intensity or duration of light exposure can control the plant's response, either as a stimulus for the response or as a limiting factor.

Establishment

Early seedling establishment can be very much affected by light levels, especially when seed germination or seedling establishment takes place under the canopy of already established plants. Some seedlings are less shade tolerant than others, and have more difficulty establishing when there is a lack of sufficient light to maintain further plant development. An example of the importance of differences in shade tolerance is seen in the comparison of seedlings of white pine and sugar maple in forests of the northeastern United States. White pine seedlings experience a photosynthetic deficit at 10% of full sunlight and sugar maple seedlings reach it at 3%. This difference in light compensation point means that sugar maple is more shade tolerant than white pine, so in a dense forest with light levels consistently below 10%, only sugar maple seedlings will reproduce. The greater shade tolerance of sugar maple can be an important factor in forest succession. After logging, pines establish first, but as the forest closes in and shade deepens, sugar maples begin to establish and eventually replace the pines. This successional process has been extremely important for maple syrup producers in the region. Without ever having to plant a sugar maple seedling, an entire industry has emerged.

Plant Growth

When a plant is surrounded by others, the amount of light reaching its leaves can become limiting and competition for light begins to occur. Competition for light is especially likely in same-species plant populations or in plant communities made up of very similar species with very similar light needs. Stem and leaf growth can be severely limited if competition reaches the point where a plant is completely shaded by its neighbors. If some part of the plant is able to emerge from the shade and reach full sunlight, photosynthesis in that part may be able to compensate for the shading occurring over the rest of the plant and permit adequate development.

Many plants develop anatomically different leaves depending on the level of shading or sun. Shade leaves are thinner and have larger surface per unit weight, a thinner epidermis, less photosynthetic pigment, spongier leaf structure, but more stomata than sun leaves. Interestingly, shade leaves often appear to be adapted to the lower light environment, being able to photosynthesize above the compensation point due in part to the larger surface area for light capture. But it is important that shade leaves be protected from the harmful effects of too much light.

Phototropism

Light can induce a plant to synthesize chlorophyll and anthocyanins, which stimulate growth in certain plant parts such as the leaf petiole or the flower peduncle, causing the phenomenon of growing toward or away from light. In some cases, this growth pattern is triggered by a hormone that is activated by blue light. Leaves can be oriented toward the sun to capture more light, or away from the sun in high-light environments. Sunflowers receive their name from the characteristic orientation of the disk of the inflorescence toward the morning sun.

Photoperiod

Because the earth is tilted on its axis, the relative proportion of daylight and nighttime hours varies from one time of year to another. Because of the correlation of hours of light or dark with other climatic factors, especially temperature, plants have developed adaptive responses to the changing light/dark regimes over time. Important processes such as flowering, seed germination, leaf drop, and pigmentation changes are examples. A pigment in plants known as phytochrome is the major photoreceptive agent responsible for regulating these responses.

The phytochrome pigment has two forms; one form has an absorption peak for red light with a wavelength of 660 nm, the other has an absorption peak for far-red light with a wavelength of 730 nm. In daylight, the red light form is rapidly converted to the far-red form, and in the dark, the far-red form slowly converts back to the red form. The far-red phytochrome is biologically active and responsible for the basic responses of plants to the number of hours of light or darkness.

In the morning, after only a few minutes of light exposure, the far-red phytochrome becomes the dominant form and remains so throughout the day. This dominance is maintained into the night as well, since the conversion back to red phytochrome during darkness is slow. Therefore, when the length of the night is relatively short, there is insufficient time for enough far-red phytochrome to convert to the red form, and the far-red form stays dominant. However, as the number of hours of darkness increases, a point is reached at which night is long enough to allow a shift of dominance to the red form. Even when this period of red dominance is short, changes occur in the plant's response.

In chrysanthemums, for example, the end of the far-red phytochrome's continual dominance in autumn triggers the growth of flowering buds. This type of response is known as a "short-day" response, even though the actual response is activated by the longer nighttime hours. The importance of the dark period is accentuated by the fact that even a short period of artificial light in the middle of the night for greenhouse-raised mums allows for the conversion of enough far-red phytochrome to suppress flowering.

Strawberries have the opposite type of response. In the spring, shorter nights allow the far-red phytochrome to regain continual dominance, causing a shift from vegetative production to flower production. Plants with this kind of response are called "long-day" plants, even though it is shorter nights that actually trigger the change. So-called day-neutral varieties of strawberries have been developed to extend flowering later into the summer and early fall when normal strawberries undergo the shift to vegetative growth characteristic of long-day plants.

Production of the Harvestable Portion of the Plant

The conditions of the light environment have a crucial role in the production of the part of the plant that we intend to harvest. In general, crop plants have been selected to shunt a great deal of photosynthate to the portions of the plant that are harvested. In other words, the harvested portions are major "sinks" in carbon partitioning. Nevertheless, the ability of the plant to produce the desired amount of biomass in its harvested parts is dependent on the conditions of its light environment. By understanding the complex relationships between plant response and light quantity, quality, and duration of exposure as discussed earlier, the light environment can be manipulated and plants selected in order to optimize output from the agroecosystem.

MANAGING THE LIGHT ENVIRONMENT IN AGROECOSYSTEMS

There are two main approaches to managing the light environment of an agroecosystem. Where light is generally not a limiting factor, management is oriented toward accommodating the system to the excess of light that can occur; where light is more likely to be a limiting factor, the focus is on how to make enough light available for all of the plants present in the system.

Regions where light is not a limiting factor are often dry regions. In these locations, the key issue in determining the structure of the vegetation and the organization of a cropping system is usually the availability of water, not light. Plants are usually more separated from each other, light relations are of less importance since there is usually an overabundance of solar energy, and many organisms must display adaptations for "avoidance" of light rather than capture. Leaves are often vertically oriented to avoid direct exposure to light, have less chlorophyll content so as to absorb less light energy and thus less heat, and contain higher proportions of red pigments so as to reflect the red light normally absorbed in photosynthesis.

Light is more likely to be a limiting factor in humid regions. Both natural vegetation and agroecosystems in humid areas are much more layered or stratified, with both light quantity and quality being altered as light passes through those layers on its way to the soil surface. In these regions, the management of light can be an important factor in optimizing the productivity of agroecosystems. The more stratified the vegetation structure, the greater the challenges for light management. In forestry and agroforestry systems, for example, the seedlings of the canopy species often do not germinate well in the shaded environment of the forest floor, a factor that must be taken into account in managing the diversity of the system.

Crop Selection

One aspect of managing the light environment is to match the availability of light in the system to the plants' response to light. The light requirements of plants, as well as their tolerances, are important factors in the crop selection process.

The type of photosynthetic pathway of the crop plants is the most basic determinant of light requirements. As discussed previously, plants with C4-type photosynthesis require high light intensity and long duration of light exposure to produce optimally, in addition to not being as well adapted to areas with cooler, moister conditions, especially cooler nighttime conditions. In contrast, many C3 plants will not grow well in the same light conditions favored by C4 plants.

In central coastal California, for example, where the adjacent cold ocean currents normally keep summer nighttime temperatures at low to moderate levels and produce regular morning fog, C4 crops such as sweet corn are very slow to develop and rarely obtain the yields or sweetness of the ears grown in plantings in the interior valleys of the state just 50 miles to the east. In contrast, many C3 crops such as lettuce grow very well in the coastal climate.

Sugar cane is a good example of a C4 crop requiring high light intensity. When planted in areas with adequate light and moisture, this C4 crop achieves one of the highest rates of photosynthetic efficiency known for crop plants. Variety selection, row arrangement, planting density, fertility management, and other factors have been combined with the 4% conversion rate of PAR to biomass to produce some of the highest net dry matter returns known for a cropping system (up to 78 tons dry matter/ha/year).

Even within crops of the same photosynthetic pathway, crop selections can be made. Different light compensation points, for example, could determine which crops to select for shadier environments.

Cropping Diversity and Canopy Structure

The light environment in the interior of a cropping system varies considerably. Cropping systems can be designed to create regions in the system where the light environment is most appropriate for a particular crop. In the tropics, for example, farmers make full use of the altered light environment under the canopy of trees to grow crops such as coffee, cacao, and vanilla. Cacao and vanilla plants do not tolerate direct sun for any appreciable amount of time, and often they need to have the shade-producing canopy in place before they can be planted. Only recently have varieties of coffee been developed that can be planted in direct sunlight.

In mixtures of annual crops, the light environment within the canopy of the system changes as the crop system matures, with LAI and light intensity at different levels undergoing considerable variation over time. Farmers have learned to take advantage of these changing conditions. A well-known example is the traditional corn–bean–squash intercrop of Mesoamerica. In a particular form of this multiple cropping system in southeastern Mexico, all three crops are planted at the same time, hence each encounters a very similar light environment when they first emerge. But the corn component of the system soon dominates the canopy structure, casting shade on the beans and squash below. As the corn canopy closes, beans occupy the lower half to two-thirds of the cornstalk by climbing up the cornstalk. The squash is confined to the darker understory, itself casting yet a deeper shade on the soil surface and aiding in weed control within the cropping system. Although both the beans and squash receive less-than-optimal light exposure, they both receive enough to produce adequately and do not interfere with the very high light needs of the corn. Corn is a C4 crop, and beans and squash are C3 crops. Such an agroecosystem is evidence that crops of different photosynthetic pathways can be combined in intercropping systems, and research aimed in this direction could certainly come up with more.

Diverse home garden agroforestry systems are perhaps the most complex examples of the management of the light environment in agroecosystems; they are discussed in much more detail in Chapter 18, *Disturbance, Succession, and Agroecosystem Management*. Their high LAI (3.5–5.0), diversity of distribution of the canopy layers, high light absorbance by the foliage (90%–95%), and patchy horizontal structure due to either successional development or intentional human intervention make for a highly diverse light environment that promotes one of the correspondingly highest plant species diversities known for an agroecosystem. Much needs to be known about the specific light requirements and tolerances of each component of such a system.

A study of the light environments of nine different agroecosystems in Mexico and Costa Rica provides some impression of the possible variation in the structure and characteristics of light environments. The data from this study are presented in Table 4.1.

In general, the polycultures in the study were more effective at intercepting light than the monocultures, although the sweet potato monoculture, with its broad leaves, intercepted light as effectively as the home garden and the shaded coffee system. These mixed results point out the difficulty of determining a system's efficiency of light use. Simply measuring vegetative cover, LAI, and the transmission of light to the surface does not by itself elucidate how light is used by the components of the system nor does it show how a well-designed system can create a light environment that meets the needs of a diversity of different plants at the same time.

TEMPORAL MANAGEMENT

Over time, the light environment in an agroecosystem changes. One type of change results from the growth of the plants in the system, and another from seasonal changes. Both kinds of changes can be taken advantage of, modified, or used as cues for initiating specific techniques.

One kind of temporal management that takes advantage of the changes in the light environment that occur as a crop matures is the "oversowing" of one crop into another. This is done, for example, to produce an oat/legume hay crop: instead of sowing the oats, harvesting the oats, and then planting the legume covercrop (such as clover or vetch), the seed of the legume can be sown when the oats reach a particular stage of development and the light environment is most conducive to the establishment of the legume. Specifically, the legume is planted just before the heads of oats begin to form, when light levels at 3 in. above the soil are about 40% of full sunlight. Clover seems to establish best around 50%

TABLE 4.1
Measures of the Light Environment in a Range of Agroecosystems and Natural Ecosystems in Costa Rica and Mexico

	Species	LAI	Cover (%)	Transmission (%)
2-month-old corn monoculture, conventionally managed	7	1.0	56	35
3.5-month-old corn monoculture, traditionally managed	20	2.6	88	12
Sweet potato, weeded and treated with insecticide	8	2.9	100	11
2.5-year-old intercrop of cacao, plantain, and the native timber tree *Cordia alliodora*	4	3.4	84	13
Old wooded home garden containing a diverse mixture of useful plants	18	3.9	100	10
Coffee plantation with an overstory of *Erythrina* trees	7	4.0	96	4
Plots planted with useful plants to mimic natural succession, 11 months after clearing	27	4.2	98	7
Gmelina plantation (trees grown for timber and pulp intercropped with beans and corn)	8	5.1	98	2
Plots undergoing natural succession, 11 months after clearing	35	5.1	96	<1

Source: Data from Ewel, J. et al., *Agro-Ecosystems*, 7, 305, 1982.

FIGURE 4.7 Oversown clover plants exposed at the early July harvesting of the overstory oat crop at the Rodale Research Farm, Kutztown, PA. The clover will be ready to harvest for forage or incorporated as a green manure crop in less than 2 months.

FIGURE 4.8 Pruned shade trees in a coffee plantation in Turrialba, Costa Rica. The common shade trees (*Erythrina poeppigiana*) are heavily pruned at the beginning of the wet season to open up the coffee plantation to better light penetration during the more cloudy and rainy time of the year.

of full sunlight, so overseeding that occurs just before heads start to form gets the legume off to a good start. After the oats are harvested, the light levels reaching the established clover plants approach once again those of full sunlight, promoting the rapid growth of this species as a nitrogen-fixing covercrop (Figure 4.7).

Management of seasonal variations in light is common in perennial and agroforestry systems. Coffee systems in Costa Rica—the subject of considerable applied shade management research—offer a good example of this form of temporal light management (Bellow and Nair 2003; Cerdán et al. 2012). As discussed previously, coffee is typically grown under the shade of trees, often species of the leguminous genus *Erythrina*. Although coffee is a very shade-tolerant plant, it suffers when shade becomes too dense. This is especially true during the wet-season time of the year, when relative humidity inside the coffee cropping system stays close to 100% most of the time, promoting fungal diseases that can cause coffee defoliation and fruit drop. Therefore, a common practice is to heavily prune the shade trees at the beginning of the wet season (during June) in order to allow more light into the interior, promoting drier conditions and hence a reduced chance of disease. The greater cloud cover during the wet season lessens the need for shade over the coffee. Close to the end of the wet season (usually November or December) another less intensive pruning occurs that opens up the canopy of the plantation again, possibly promoting the development of flower buds that open later in the dry season, but also stimulating the turnover of nitrogen-rich biomass that aids the more rapid growth of the coffee plants during this period (Figure 4.8).

CARBON PARTITIONING AND SUSTAINABILITY

As was discussed in Chapter 3, a relatively small percentage of the carbon that gets fixed by photosynthesis into carbohydrate form eventually gets transformed into biomass. For agriculture, it is the portion of that biomass that finds its "sink" in the form of harvestable, consumable, and/or marketable organic matter that is of greatest importance. All of the discussions of how the light environment can be managed to increase the size of this sink must also take into consideration what the long-term impacts might be of harvesting and removing this biomass from the agroecosystem.

The experience of corn farmers in Puebla, Mexico offers an interesting example of how increasing the proportion of carbon partitioned into harvestable material isn't necessarily positive. Many of the small traditional farmers of the region switched to higher-yielding "green revolution" corn varieties in the late 1960s and early 1970s. These varieties had been bred to produce more grain at the expense of biomass normally stored in other parts of the plant—especially the stems and leaves. After planting these varieties for a few years, the farmers went back to using their traditional varieties of corn. Since these farmers used animals so extensively in their farming systems (especially for cultivation and transport), and since corn stover was an important supplemental feed for the animals, the great reduction in stems and leaves from the new varieties did not allow the production of adequate animal feed. In this case, concentrating the carbon sink in grain did not take into account the sustainability of all parts of the agroecosystem.

The same process may be going on with other crops. Traditional rice varieties, for example, store over 90% of their carbon in leaves, stems, and roots, whereas new varieties have raised the portion of carbon stored in grain to well over 20% (Cassman 1994; Cassman et al. 2003). In cultures where rice straw plays important roles elsewhere in the agroecosystem, such as for building material, fuel, and feed for animals, human needs would dictate the need for care in transitioning to varieties that sacrifice some forms of biomass for rice grain. Within the agroecosystem itself, we must also understand the possible impacts of this "loss" of organic matter on such ecological components as soil organic matter maintenance, soil aggregate stability, biological activity in the soil, and nutrient inputs that are essential for the long-term sustainability of the agroecosystem.

Future Research

Much work needs to be done on managing the light environment in agroecosystems. We have recently learned a lot about photosynthetic pathways, carbon partitioning, and how to raise the yield of harvestable biomass from cropping systems. But we need also to understand that agroecosystem management requires that we return as much organic matter to the system, especially to the soil, as we remove from it. The energy that is captured from the sun must contribute as much to long-term agroecosystem sustainability as it does to short-term harvests. Research on how to balance these needs is key to developing the sustainable agroecosystems of the future.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What are the basic differences between too much light and too little light in terms of plant response? What are some of the ways of compensating for either extreme in the design of an agroecosystem?
2. Our understanding of the different types of photosynthetic pathways in plants has come mostly from basic laboratory research, but this knowledge has helped considerably in the management of the light environment in agroecosystems. What other basic research questions, greatly isolated from the field, might be of great potential significance for sustainability?
3. What are some of the most significant ways that humans and human activities are impacting the light environment? What might the consequences be for agriculture in the future?
4. Light energy is considered to be one of our most available and easily used sources of renewable energy. What are some of the factors that have slowed the development of better ways to take advantage of this energy source in agriculture?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Ozone Hole Watch
NASA Goddard Space Flight Center
ozonewatch.gsfc.nasa.gov

International Society of Photosynthesis Research
www.photosynthesisresearch.org

RECOMMENDED READING

Bainbridge, R., G. C. Evans, and O. Rackham. 1968. *Light as an Ecological Factor*. Blackwell Scientific: Oxford, U.K.

Proceedings of an international symposium that covers a wide range of topics related to light as an important factor in the environment.

Dubinsky, Z. (ed.). 2013. *Photosynthesis*. InTech. An open access book.

A collection of current knowledge on the role of photosynthesis in the maintenance of the biosphere.

Evans, G. C., R. Bainbridge, and O. Rackham. 1975. *Light as an Ecological Factor: II*. Blackwell Scientific: Oxford, U.K.

A follow-up to the symposium held in 1968, with a broader range of topics covered.

Hall, D. O. and K. K. Rao. 1999. *Photosynthesis*. Sixth edition. Cambridge University Press: New York.

An excellent introductory textbook on the photosynthetic process at both the macro- and molecular level, with a special focus on the role of photosynthesis as a source of food and fuel.

Lawlor, D. W. 2001. *Photosynthesis: Molecular, Physiological and Environmental Processes*. Third edition. BIOS Scientific Publishers/Springer-Verlag: New York.

This updated edition provides a comprehensive review of photosynthesis and an introduction to the existing scientific literature. It incorporates many recent research advances, especially in the areas of the molecular basis of photosynthesis and the effects of environmental change. It provides a good basis for those interested in the ecological and environmental factors related to photosynthesis.

5 Temperature

The effect of temperature on the growth and development of plants and animals is well known and easily demonstrated. Each organism has certain limits of tolerance for high and low temperatures, determined by its particular adaptations for temperature extremes. Each organism also has an optimum temperature range, which can vary depending on the stage of development. Because of their different reactions to temperature, papayas are not planted in the cool coastal temperate environment of the Monterey Bay of California, and apples would not do well if planted in the humid tropical lowlands of Tabasco, Mexico.

Thus the temperature range and degree of temperature fluctuation in an area can set limits on the crop species and cultivars that a farmer can grow, and can cause variations in quality and average yield for the crops that are grown. In selecting crops, it is necessary to consider the range of temperature conditions that might occur from day to day, between day and night, and from season to season. And one must be concerned with both aboveground temperatures and those belowground. Farmers need to consider also the many ways in which it is possible to modify the temperature environment in which crops grow. Putting all these variables together, it can be seen that agroecosystem management with respect to temperature involves potentially complex interactions among management actions, plants' responses to temperature, the potential range of temperatures in a region, and the actual temperatures to which crops are exposed.

The natural unpredictability of the weather makes the temperature-related management of agroecosystems difficult enough; as the climate changes in the coming decades, taking into account the temperature factor will become increasingly challenging—and increasingly vital.

SUN AS THE SOURCE OF HEAT ENERGY ON EARTH

When we measure the temperature of the air, soil, or water, we are measuring heat flow. In order to more fully understand temperature as a factor, it is useful to think of this heat flow as part of the energy budget of the ecosystem, the basis of which is solar energy.

The energy flowing from the sun is predominantly short-wave radiation, usually thought of as light energy made up of both visible and invisible spectra. Recall that the fate of this energy once it reaches the atmosphere of the earth was discussed in the previous chapter and diagrammed in Figure 4.1. To review, incoming solar radiation is either reflected, dispersed, or absorbed by the atmosphere and its contents. Reflected and dispersed energy is little changed, but absorbed energy is converted to a long-wave form of energy manifested as heat. Similarly, the short-wave energy that reaches the earth's surface is either reflected or absorbed. The absorption process at the surface, by which short-wave light energy is converted into long-wave heat energy, is known as **insolation**. Heat formed by insolation can be stored in the surface, or reradiated back into the atmosphere. Some of the heat reradiated into the atmosphere can also be reflected back to the surface.

As a result of these processes, heat energy is trapped at and near the earth's surface, and the temperature there remains relatively high compared to the extreme cold of the upper atmosphere and of outer space. Overall, this warming process is termed the greenhouse effect.

Temperatures at the earth's surface vary from place to place, from night to day, and from summer to winter; nevertheless, a rough overall equilibrium is maintained between the heat energy gained by the earth and its atmosphere, and the heat energy lost. This balance between heating and cooling is represented in the following equation:

$$S(1-\alpha) + L_d - L_u \pm H_{air} \pm H_{evap} \pm H_{soil} = 0$$

where

S is the solar gain

α is the albedo of the earth's surface (with a value between 0 and 1)

L_d is the flux of long-wave heat energy to the surface

L_u is the flux of long-wave heat energy away from the surface

H is the gain or loss of heat energy from air, soil, and water (evap)

This equilibrium is currently undergoing a shift in response to human-induced changes in the atmosphere—in particular, increases in carbon dioxide from the combustion of fossil fuels and increases in other "greenhouse gases" such as methane. As more greenhouse gases are added to the atmosphere, more heat is trapped between the atmosphere and the surface. The amount of heat gained by the earth needs to be only slightly greater than the amount lost for the overall temperature to rise. The major concern—not just for agriculture—is that solar gain is going to remain positive for a very long time, causing average temperatures to continue to increase. This is because the changes humans have made to the atmosphere are very long lasting and because we will continue to pump greenhouse gases into the atmosphere for the foreseeable future.

There is also the problem of positive feedback loops. In some of these loops, warming creates more warming. This is occurring in the arctic, for example, as highly reflective ice is replaced by highly absorptive open water and land. In other feedback loops, warmer temperatures cause more release of greenhouse gases, the underlying cause of warming. This, too, is occurring in the arctic, as warming temperatures melt permafrost, resulting in the release of carbon dioxide and the particularly potent greenhouse gas methane.

PATTERNS OF TEMPERATURE VARIATION ON THE EARTH'S SURFACE

There are several ecological aspects to temperature distribution that are useful for understanding the variation and dynamics of temperature conditions at the surface. We need to know this information, first of all, not only to make the proper selections of our crop types, but also to adapt agroecosystems to temperature conditions and to alter these conditions where possible.

Temperature variation occurs at the largest scale when we consider world climates, made up of the seasonal patterns of temperature, rainfall, wind, and relative humidity. At the other end of the scale, important variation also occurs at the micro level when we consider the temperature conditions inside a crop canopy or those just below the surface of the soil.

Latitudinal Variation

The amount of solar radiation actually absorbed by the surface over a particular period of time is affected greatly by latitude. At or near the equator, incoming radiation strikes the earth's surface at a vertical angle. At increasing distances from the equator, however, the sun's rays strike the surface at an increasingly shallow angle. As this angle becomes shallower, the same amount of incoming solar radiation is spread over a larger and larger area of the earth's surface, as shown in Figure 5.1. In addition, the sun's rays must pass through an increasingly thick atmospheric layer at higher latitudes, resulting in a loss of energy to reflection and scattering by materials in the atmosphere, such as water droplets and dust. The overall effect is a regular decline in the intensity of solar radiation per square unit of surface as one moves away from the equator. This latitudinal variation in solar gain is one of the major causes of latitudinal variations in temperature.

Altitudinal Variation

At any latitude, as altitude increases, temperature decreases. On the average, for each 100 m of elevation gain, ambient temperature drops approximately 0.5°C. In locations where increased cloud cover during the day is associated with this elevation gain, temperature differences can be even greater due to reduced solar gain. At the same time, the increasing thinness of the atmosphere at higher altitude results in a greater loss of heat from both the soil surface and the air just above it by reradiation at night. This phenomenon contributes significantly to lower nighttime temperatures at elevations much above sea level. In mountainous regions at high elevations in the tropics (above 3000 m) and at progressively lower elevations as one moves toward the poles, reradiation at night is so intense that wintertime temperature conditions are encountered almost every night the sky is clear.

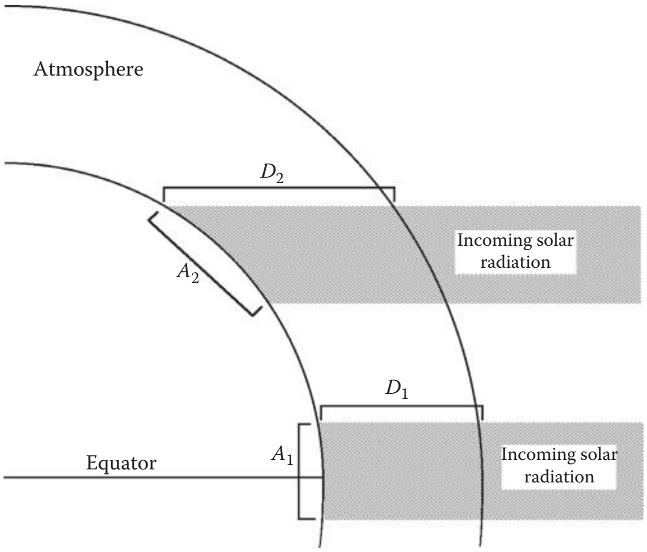


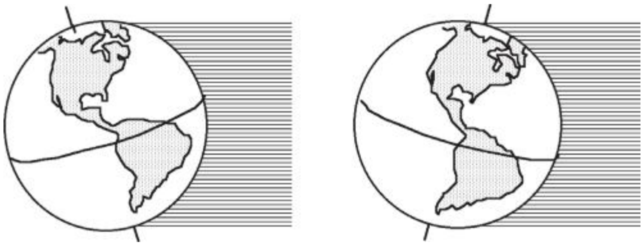
FIGURE 5.1 The effect of latitude on solar gain. The higher the latitude, the greater the distance that solar radiation must travel through the atmosphere ($D_2 > D_1$) and the greater the surface area over which a certain amount of solar radiation is spread ($A_2 > A_1$).

Seasonal Variation

Seasonal differences in temperatures over the surface of the earth are the result of changes in the orientation of the earth in relation to the sun as it revolves around the sun on its tilted axis. Through the course of the year, a belt of maximum solar gain or insolation moves back and forth across the equator in relation to the angle of incidence of the sun's rays and the length of the day. Longer days lead to more solar gain. This swing in insolation is the direct cause of a seasonal swing in temperature. The degree of seasonal variation in average temperatures increases with increasing distance from the equator (Figure 5.2).

Maritime vs. Continental Influence

Large bodies of water, especially the oceans, greatly affect the temperature of adjacent land masses. Because water reflects a larger proportion of insolation in relation to land, loses heat readily through surface evaporation, has a high specific heat, and readily mixes layers vertically, the temperature of large bodies of water is slower to change than that of land masses. Land heats up more during the summer because all the absorbed heat stays in the surface horizon



Northern Hemisphere winter
Southern Hemisphere summer

Northern Hemisphere summer
Southern Hemisphere winter

FIGURE 5.2 Seasonal variation in the sun's angle of incidence. The tilt toward the sun that occurs in summer increases both the length of the day and the intensity of solar radiation striking the ground.

FIGURE 5.3 Lettuce grown year-round in a temperate maritime climate. Cooling summer fog and the warming effect of the nearby ocean in the winter permit year-round vegetable and fruit production on the central coast of California.

and the atmosphere close to that surface, and it cools to a lower temperature during the winter because of reradiation and heat loss. Water masses are therefore moderators of broad fluctuation in temperature, tending to lower temperatures in the summer and to raise temperatures in the winter. This water- or marine-mediated effect on temperature is called a **maritime influence**, in contrast to the more widely fluctuating variations in temperature encountered at a distance from water under a **continental influence**. Maritime influences help create the unique Mediterranean climates of such places as coastal California and Chile, where nearby upwelling cold currents accentuate the moderating influences during the dry summer season (Figures 5.3 and 5.4).

Topographic Variation

Slope orientation and topography introduce variation in temperature as well, especially at the local level. For example, slopes that face toward the sun as a result of the inclination of the earth on its axis experience more solar gain, especially in the winter months. Hence, an equator-facing slope is significantly warmer than a pole-facing slope—all other factors being equal—and offers unique microclimates for crop management.

Valleys surrounded by mountain slopes create unique microclimates as well. In many parts of the world air that moves downslope due to winds or pressure differences can rapidly expand and heat up as it descends, a process known as katabatic warming. (The wind associated with this phenomenon will be discussed in Chapter 7.) As the air is warmed, its ability to hold moisture in vapor form (relative humidity) goes up, increasing the evaporative potential of the warmer air.

Valleys are subject to nighttime microclimate variation as well. On the higher elevation slopes above a valley, reradiation occurs more rapidly; since the cooled air that results is heavier than the warmer air below, the cooler air begins to flow downslope, a phenomenon called **cold air drainage**. Often this cooler air passes under warmer air, pushing the warmer air above it and forming an **inversion**, in which a

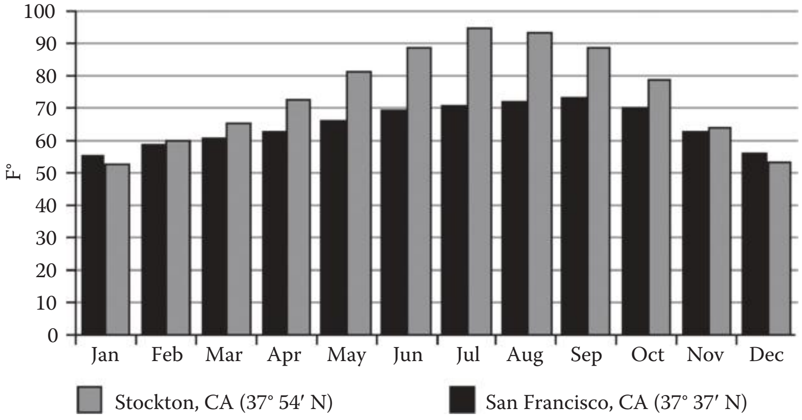


FIGURE 5.4 Monthly average daily high temperatures at San Francisco, CA and Stockton, CA. Both cities are at nearly the same latitude and elevation, but coastal San Francisco has a maritime climate, and Stockton, 100 km to the east, is under more of a continental influence. (Data from Conway, M. and Liston, L. (ed.), *The Weather Handbook*, Conway Data, Atlanta, GA, 1990.)

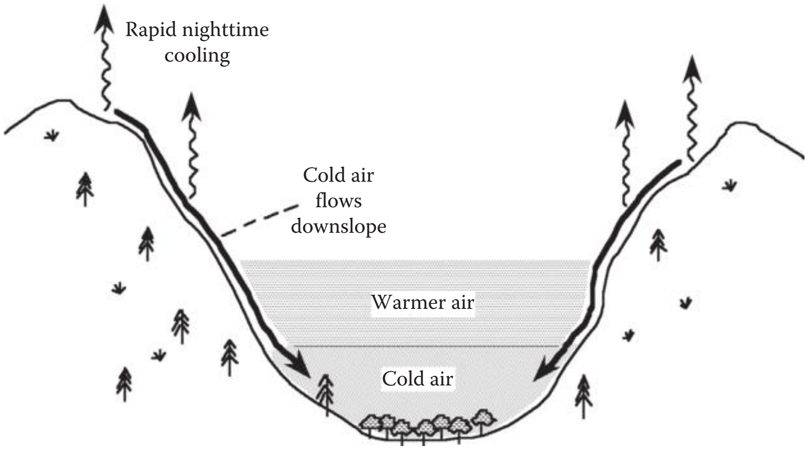


FIGURE 5.5 Cold air drainage and inversion layer. Cold air can drain into valley bottoms at night and pool beneath a layer of warmer air.

warmer layer of air becomes "sandwiched" between two layers of colder air. In some locations, the cold pocket of air can lead to frost formation and plant damage, whereas the warm air inversion just above it stays significantly warmer. This pattern of local temperature variation is illustrated in Figure 5.5. The planting of frost-sensitive citrus between 500 and 1000 ft elevation on the lower slopes of the foothills of the Sierra Nevada Mountains of the Central Valley of California is a good example of how farmers have learned to take advantage of a wintertime inversion layer of warmer air that is forced up by the drainage of colder air into a valley floor below.

Describing Temperature Variation

Holding constant the variable of geographic location, the temperature variations that occur in any particular location over time make up a major component of that place's climate (another major component, precipitation, is discussed in the following chapter). When temperature data are collected for a certain location over a long period of time, these data form a climatological record that shows how temperature has varied with the time of year at that place. The most useful patterns, in an agroecological sense, that can be drawn from such a record relate to extremes at both the high and low ends of the temperature scale and to various averages.

- **Lowest annual minimum.** Regardless of the date, what's the coldest possible temperature (or the coldest ever recorded) at a location on the earth? This aspect of the temperature factor, discussed below in terms of climate zones, is the most crucial for perennial crops in temperate zones because, exposed to temperatures below a certain level, some plants will suffer damage or die.
- **Highest annual maximum.** Regardless of the date, what's the hottest possible temperature (or the hottest ever recorded)? Although it is not a determinant of climate zone, this aspect of climate can be as important as lowest annual minimum because of the damaging effects of extreme heat on plant tissue, growth, and reproduction.
- **Highest daily maximum and lowest daily minimum.** What are the highest and lowest temperatures ever recorded at a location on a certain date? Because nearly all crops in temperate climates are grown on a seasonal cycle, the seasonal timing of extreme heat and cold can be important. For example, farmers may want to know the record lows for each date during spring to learn when they can safely plant a frost-sensitive crop.
- **Average daily maximum and minimum.** What are the typical high and low temperatures for a location on a certain date? Date-referenced averages tell farmers when to expect conditions that are most optimal for growth of a particular crop, which determines sowing time, choice of crop or variety, and sometimes harvest time.
- **Magnitude of difference between the average daily high and low.** Are nighttime lows and daytime highs not widely separated or are they very different? Some crops prefer one type of regime, others prefer the opposite. Zinfandel grapes, for example, do best with a wide daily temperature range—hot days for optimal plant development and cool nights for optimal fruit development.
- **Duration of extreme heat or cold.** For how many successive days may the temperature drop below a certain critical threshold at night? For how many successive days may it reach above a certain temperature? For many crop plants with some ability to withstand extreme heat or cold, what may matter most is the amount of time they spend outside the zone of tolerance.

The temperature patterns encoded in a climatological record tell a farmer what is likely to happen with regard to temperature and what kinds of extremes are possible. This information, as mentioned earlier, can be important in choosing crop types and planting dates. In addition, the climatological record provides a baseline against which deviations from "normal" can be measured, described, and understood. New record highs and record lows for particular dates, months, seasons, or all time make up one important category of temperature deviation. Another type of deviation is the magnitude of the difference between the climatological average maximum or maximum for a certain date and the actual observed temperature; adding the dimension of duration, we can begin to quantify such events as an "unusual hot spell."

Effects of Climate Change on Temperature

The general patterns of geographic and seasonal temperature variation discussed in the earlier text will continue to hold true as the earth gradually warms. Climate change, however, will add extra layers and degrees of variability and unpredictability as well as a general warming trend, both of which may have significant effects on agriculture. Some of the most important changes that can be expected are the following:

- Temperature in general will increase in many areas of the world. Broadly speaking, this will entail increases in the average high for each day of the year, the average low for each day, the overall average for longer periods of time like months and seasons, the annual minimum temperature, and the annual maximum temperature.
- Areas closer to the poles are likely to see larger increases in average and maximum temperatures than areas near the equator.
- In many areas with temperate climates, the number of frost-free days will increase.
- Weather and climate variability are likely to increase in most areas, which means that extreme temperatures will increase in both frequency and magnitude. While record-breaking heat will be the most common type of extreme that occurs, an overall increase in temperature variability means that extreme and unseasonable low temperatures will also be possible.
- Periods of extreme heat harmful to many types of crops will increase in frequency and in length. They may also begin to occur uncharacteristically early and late in seasonally anchored agricultural cycles.
- Other weather-related factors that interact with temperature and mediate temperature's effects on crop pants, such as humidity, rainfall, and wind, are likely to become more variable and less predictable along with temperature.

These changes in temperature patterns are all predicted by long-term climate models, which vary in their specifics but agree on the general patterns. Adding to the degree of certainty in these predictions is the fact that all of these changes are already happening; decades of weather data from much of the world show a general warming and a general increase in temperature variability.

Overall, the shifts in temperature patterns brought about by climate change are likely to be a mixed bag for agriculture. On the one hand, longer growing seasons and fewer frost-free days mean that some areas formerly too cold for agriculture (at both higher latitudes and higher altitudes) will be opened up to food production. And these same changes have the potential for making some temperate farming areas more productive and able to grow a wider variety of crops. However, the increasing likelihood of periods of extreme heat and extreme cold will increase the risk of crop failure and yield-reducing temperature damage, and some areas may actually become too hot for agriculture. Also, a general warming at the low end of the temperature spectrum will allow some crop pests and disease organisms to spread northward and southward toward the poles into areas where they were formerly excluded by freezing temperatures.

RESPONSES OF PLANTS TO TEMPERATURE

All physiological processes in plants—including germination, flowering, growth, photosynthesis, and respiration—have limits of tolerance for temperature extremes, and a relatively narrow temperature range at which functioning is optimized. Thus the temperature regime to which a plant is exposed is ultimately connected to its yield potential. For example, temperature conditions may allow a plant to establish and grow, but then a sudden change in the weather (e.g., a cold spell) might prevent it from flowering and setting fruit and producing seed.

Farmers must carefully adapt their practices to the local temperature regime, taking into account diurnal variations, seasonal variations, moderating influences, microclimate, other temperature-related factors, and the particular temperature responses of specific crops. In California, for example, farmers shift to cool-season varieties of crops such as broccoli for winter planting, plant covercrops during the wet and cool time of the year when many vegetable crops would not do well, plant avocado trees close to the coast in areas that are frost-free because of the maritime influence, and plant lettuce during the winter in the interior desert valleys of southern California. Other farming regions offer similar examples.

Because of its effect on plants, temperature can also be used as a tool to cause desired changes in plants. For example, farmers in central coastal California chill strawberry transplants for several weeks before planting in order to induce vegetative growth and good crown development.

Adaptations to Temperature Extremes

Natural ecosystems are made up of plants and animals that have been "screened" by natural selection. Periodic temperature extremes are some of the factors that have eliminated those species that are not tolerant of local conditions. Therefore, we can expect the temperature range tolerances of the species of local natural systems to give us an indication of the temperature extremes we might expect when we try to farm in an area. Recognizing these indicators, as well as selecting for adaptations to extremes in our crop species, can help in the development of farming systems that lower the risk associated with the natural variability in temperature extremes. As the climate changes over time, farmers may have to shift their practices appropriately.

Heat

The effects of high temperatures on crops are the result of a complex interaction between evaporative water loss, changes in internal water status, and changes in other physiological processes. Heat stress causes a decline in metabolic activity, which is thought to come about from the inactivation of enzymes and other proteins. Heat also raises the rate of respiration, which can eventually overtake the rate of photosynthesis, halting plant growth and ultimately killing plant tissue. Even when heat does not cause outright damage to crop plants, it can reduce the rate of growth and the crops' eventual yield.

Heat can also significantly impact crop plants' reproductive processes, which for grains, pulses, oilseeds, and many other seed and fruit crops is fundamental to yield. Many crops are particularly sensitive to heat during pollination or fruit set. If extreme heat occurs during the time that corn plants are silking, for example, it can have devastating effects. Heat slows the growth of silks, delaying the time they become receptive to pollen; if the delay is long enough, much of the pollen may already be shed. Heat also tends to dessicate the silks, greatly reducing their capacity to support pollen tube growth and thus seed fertilization. Heat also reduces pollen formation and greatly shortens the period of pollen viability.

Plants native to temperate areas generally have lower limits to temperature stress than plants of more tropical areas. In all cases, though, leaf functions become impaired at about 42°C (108°F), and lethal temperatures for active leaf tissue are reached in the range of 50°C–60°C.

Common morphological adaptations of plants to excess heat include

- A high CO_2 compensation point for the photosynthesis/respiration ratio, often aided by changes in leaf structure;
- White or gray leaves that reflect light and thus absorb less heat;
- Hairs (pubescence) on the leaves that insulate leaf tissue;
- Small leaves with less surface area exposed to sunlight;
- Leaves with a lower surface-to-volume ratio for gaining less heat;
- Vertical orientation of leaves to reduce heat gain;
- More extensive roots, or a greater root-to-shoot ratio, for absorbing more water to offset water loss from the leaves or to maintain more water intake relative to leaf area;
- Thick, corky or fibrous bark that insulates the cambium and phloem in the plant trunk;
- Lower moisture content of the protoplasm and higher osmotic concentration of the living tissue.

FIGURE 5.6 Artichokes near Castroville, CA, damaged by a very unusual late-season frost. Long-term upward shifts in average temperatures coupled with occasional low-temperature extremes can pose a potent threat to cold-sensitive crops.

These characters can be incorporated into farming systems where water availability is limited and temperatures are high, either through the use of crop plants with these characters, or through the breeding of varieties that show them.

Cold

When temperatures drop below the minimum required for growth, a plant can become dormant, even though metabolic activity may slowly continue. Chlorosis may occur, followed eventually by death of the tissue. Death at low temperature is due to protein precipitation (which can occur at temperatures above freezing), the drawing of water out of the protoplasm when intercellular water freezes, and the formation of damaging ice crystals inside the protoplasm itself (Figure 5.6).

Resistance to extremes of cold depends greatly on the degree and duration of the low temperature, how quickly the cold temperature comes about, and the complex of environmental conditions that the plant may have undergone before the cold event. Some specific structural adaptations provide resistance as well, such as coverings of wax or pubescence that allow leaves to endure extended cold without freezing the interior tissue, or the presence of smaller cells in the leaf that resist freezing.

Temporary cold hardiness can be induced in some plants by short-term exposure to temperatures a few degrees above freezing or withholding water for a few days. Such plants undergo **hardening**, giving them limited resistance to extreme cold when it occurs. Greenhouse-grown seedlings can be hardened to cold by exposing them to cooler temperatures in a shade house and cutting back on irrigation for a few days before transplanting to the field.

SPECIAL TOPIC: SHIFTING CLIMATE ZONES

One of the most basic elements of place-based agroecological knowledge is encapsulated in the following question, *What's the coldest temperature that's likely to occur here?* This factor is key because in temperate climates the average minimum temperature at a particular location limits what perennial plants can be grown there more than any other single environmental factor. If a plant experiences temperatures below its range of tolerance, it will be damaged or killed outright—something a farmer or horticulturalist clearly wants to avoid.

For a very long time, farmers and gardeners could consider the average minimum temperature of a place to be fixed, much like the hours of sunlight on the summer solstice. But a few decades ago, this aspect of climate began to change. The average minimum temperature began to slowly increase in many locations as winters became a little warmer.

In the United States, farmers and gardeners could see graphic evidence of the poleward retreat of cold winter temperatures when the US Department of Agriculture (USDA) released a new version of its much-used plant hardiness zone map in 2012. This map shows climate zones within which the average minimum temperature is within a 10°F range (along with subzones based on a 5°F range). Based on temperature data from 1976 to 2005, the zones on the new map are clearly different from those on the previous map from 1990, which were based on data collected from 1974 to 1986.

The new map shows that more than a third of the United States is now in a warmer subzone than it was in 1990, and about 20% has shifted a whole zone. Nebraska, for example, was mostly in USDA zone 4 in 1990 but now is almost entirely in zone 5. The general warming of winter temperatures in temperate zones around the world is expected to continue—and the pace of change to accelerate—in the coming years, with significant consequences for agriculture.

The 2012 USDA plant hardiness zone map can be viewed at http://planthardiness.ars.usda.gov/PHZMWeb/

Many plants are adapted to extreme cold through mechanisms that allow them to avoid cold. Deciduous perennial shrubs or trees that lose their leaves and go dormant during the cold period, bulbous plants that die back to the belowground plant parts, and annuals that complete their life cycle and produce seeds, are all examples of plants avoiding cold.

THERMOPERIOD IN PLANTS

Some plants need daily variation in temperature for optimal growth or development. In a classic paper in ecophysiology (Went 1944), it was demonstrated that tomato plants grown with equal day and night temperatures did not develop as well as tomato plants grown with normal day temperatures and lower night temperatures. This response occurs when the optimal temperature for growth—which takes place mostly at night—is substantially different from the optimal temperature for photosynthesis—which takes place during the day.

Diurnal variation in temperature is encountered by plants in many natural ecosystems and open-field agroecosystems, but in very controlled agroecosystems, such as greenhouses, the diurnal temperature variation is much less pronounced. In other situations, plants from climates with cool nights do not do as well in regions with relatively constant day and night temperatures, such as the humid tropics or in temperate continental regions during the summertime.

VERNALIZATION

Some plants need to undergo a period of cold, called **vernalization**, before certain developmental processes can take place. For example, in the California grasslands, many native herbaceous species will not germinate until after a cold spell of several days duration, even though rainfall may have already occurred. Since the timing of the first rain of the season in this area is highly variable and early rain is usually followed by a very dry spell before more consistent precipitation begins, if germination were to occur with the initial rainfall, most of the new seedlings would probably not survive. There is thus a selective advantage to delaying germination until after vernalization has occurred.

Many agricultural and horticultural plants respond to vernalization. Lily bulbs, for example, are treated with cold at the appropriate time before planting so that they can be blooming for Easter in north temperate areas. In other cases, seeds of crops are treated with cold before planting in order to ensure more uniform germination.

MICROCLIMATE AND AGRICULTURE

Temperature has thus far been discussed as a factor of climate. Climate is made up of the fairly predictable, but highly variable, patterns in atmospheric conditions that occur over the long term in a certain geographic area. Climatology, or the study of climatic patterns, can tell us what the average temperatures for any particular part of the earth might be, and the degree of variation from the average that can be expected. There is little chance in the near future that humans will be able to intentionally modify climate on any kind of large scale. This is especially true for temperature. The large-scale aspects of climate, such as cold fronts, wind storms, and rainfall patterns, are best dealt with by selecting crops adapted to the range of climatic conditions that are expected.

But at the level of the individual crop organism or crop field, there is an aspect of climate that can be managed—the **microclimate**. Microclimate is the localized conditions of temperature, humidity, and atmosphere in the immediate vicinity of an organism. According to some definitions, the microclimate is made up of the conditions in a zone four times the height of the organism being considered. Although microclimate includes factors other than temperature, farmers are most likely to be concerned with temperature when modifying microclimate or taking advantage of microclimatic variations.

MICROCLIMATIC PROFILE

Within a cropping system, the conditions of temperature, moisture, light, wind, and atmospheric quality vary with specific location. Conditions just above the canopy of the cropping system can be very different from those in the interior, at the soil surface, and below the soil into the root zone. The specific microclimatic conditions along a vertical transect within a cropping system form what is called the microclimatic profile of the system. Both the structure of the system and the activities of the component parts have impact on the microclimatic profile. The profile also changes as the component plant species develop.

Figure 5.7 shows the microclimatic profile of a corn, bean, and squash intercropping system in a schematic form, with each factor measured in relative terms through five layers of the canopy. In such a system, the microclimatic profile is very different at each stage of development, from early germination to full growth.

The belowground microclimate profile is also important; it extends from the soil surface to a small distance below the deepest roots of the crop plants. Under certain circumstances, the conditions to which a crop is subjected may be so different at different zones in the microhabitat as to cause problems for the crop. For example, warm wind currents when the soil is very cold can cause desiccation of the aboveground part of the plant since the roots are unable to absorb water fast enough to offset water loss.

MODIFYING THE TEMPERATURE MICROCLIMATE

Through appropriate design and management, the microclimate of a system can be modified. Such modification is especially important if the goal of the farmer is to create or maintain microclimatic conditions that favor the sustainability of the cropping system. If this is the case, each modification must be evaluated as much as for its contribution to short-term yield and market return as for its contribution to the longer-term sustainability of the system.

Although microclimate includes many factors, its modification is often focused specifically on temperature. Practices and techniques used to modify the temperature microclimate are described in the following. Although modification of temperature is the main purpose of these practices, they will also impact other factors of the microclimate, such as humidity and light.

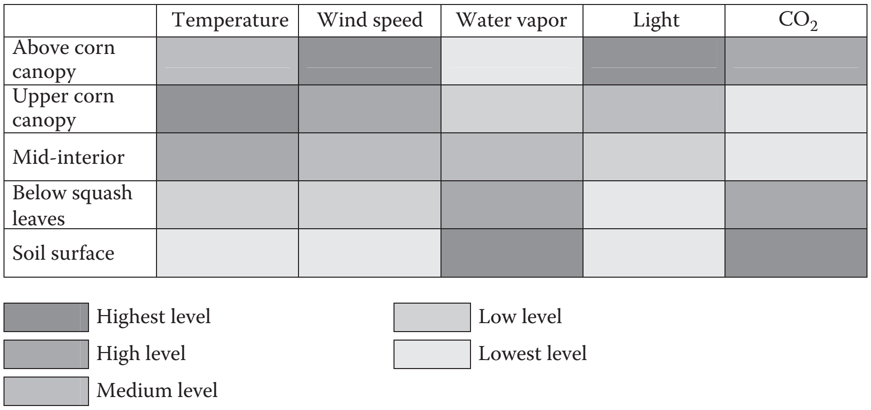
Canopy Vegetation

Trees or other tall plants that create a canopy over the other plants in a system can greatly modify the temperature conditions under the canopy. Shade from the canopy reduces solar gain at the surface of the soil, as well as helping the soil retain moisture. Agroforestry systems in the tropics are a good example of this kind of practice.

The data from a study in Tabasco, Mexico (Gliessman 1978c) clearly show the temperature-modifying effects of trees. In this study, the temperature microclimate of a tree-covered cacao orchard was compared with that of a nearby open grass pasture. As shown in Figure 5.8, temperature changes over a 24 h period at various levels in the cacao plantation were much more moderate than they were at the same levels in the pasture system. The pasture system became warmer during the day than the cacao system, and became colder aboveground during the night.

Nonliving Canopies

Other means of creating a canopy for a cropping system are possible as well. Floating row covers of nylon fiber, for example, have been used over organic strawberries in California during the early winter season in an attempt to allow more insolation of the soil surface below, yet provide a localized greenhouse effect for reradiated heat given off



	Temperature	Wind speed	Water vapor	Light	CO_2
Above corn canopy	▦	■	□	■	▩
Upper corn canopy	■	▩	▤	▦	□
Mid-interior	▩	▦	▦	▤	□
Below squash leaves	▤	▤	▩	□	▩
Soil surface	□	□	■	□	■

■	Highest level
▩	High level
▦	Medium level
▤	Low level
□	Lowest level

FIGURE 5.7 Schematic microclimatic profile of a mature corn–bean–squash intercrop system, showing relative levels of five factors at each layer in the canopy at midday. (Adapted in part from Monteith, J.L., *Principles of Environmental Physics*, Edward Arnold, Ltd., London, U.K., 1973.)

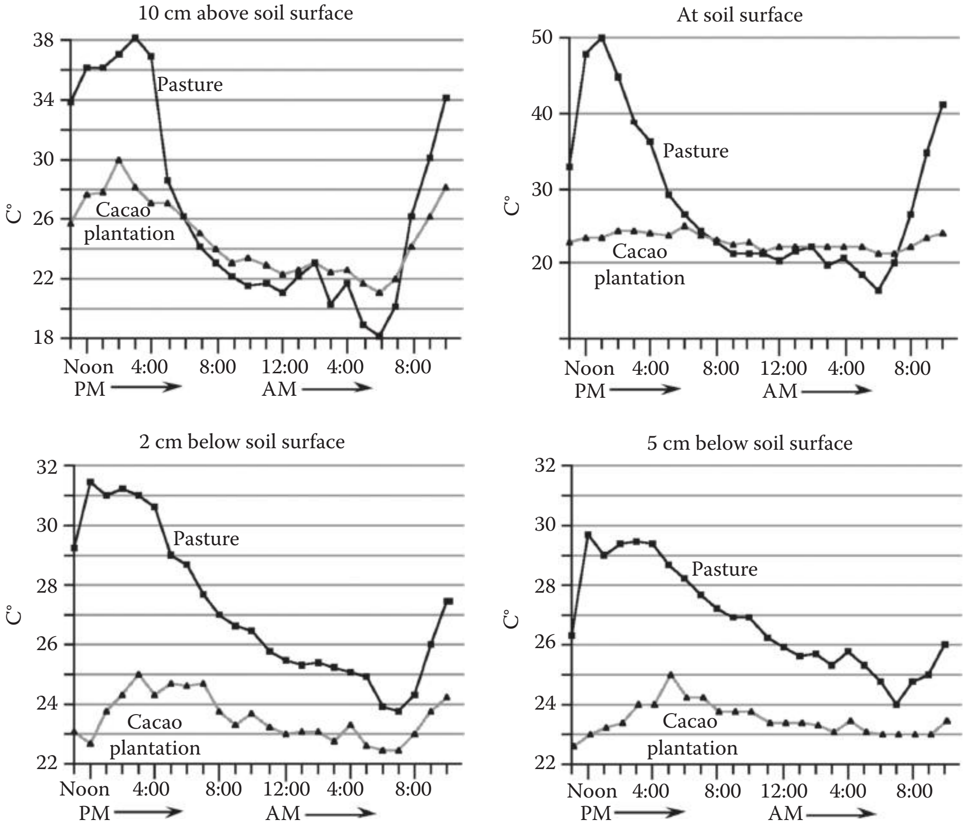


FIGURE 5.8 Temperature changes over a 24 h period at four different levels in an open pasture and in a tree-covered cacao plantation in Tabasco, Mexico. The presence of trees in the cacao system moderates temperature changes at all levels, keeps belowground temperatures lower than those in open pasture, and keeps aboveground temperatures higher at night. A similar pattern is shown for relative humidity: in the pasture system, humidity fluctuates more over a 24 h period than it does in the cacao system. Note that the scales on the vertical axes are not all identical. (Data from Gliessman, S.R., Unpublished research report, Colegio Superior de Agricultura Tropical, Tabasco, Mexico, 1978c.)

from the soil surface. Figure 5.9 shows the results of one study of this practice, in which temperatures in the upper 5 cm of the soil were significantly raised during the critical root and crown development period for the strawberry plant (Gliessman et al. 1996).

There has also been considerable research and practical experimentation in the use of "hoop houses" or plastic tunnels for vegetable production in California, Spain, and elsewhere (Illic 1989). Wire or plastic hoops are placed over planted beds in the field, and then covered with plastic or cloth. The localized greenhouse effect of these structures traps and holds additional heat during the day, and the covering reduces heat loss during the night. Hoop houses can allow for the earlier planting of warm-weather crops such as tomatoes or peppers, or the extension of the cropping season into the fall or early winter where light frost becomes possible. Due to their high cost, these structures are mostly restricted to use with higher-value crops (Figure 5.10).

Soil Surface Cover

Changes in the soil temperature microclimate can be induced by covering the surface of the soil. Growing a covercrop is one well-recognized method of modifying soil temperature. The covercrop shades the soil, hence lowering soil temperatures, and has additional positive impacts on soil organic matter content, weed seed germination, and moisture conservation. When a covercrop is planted in-between active crop plants, it is often called a living mulch. A living mulch can change the albedo of the soil surface, making it less reflective and raising the temperature of the air immediately above the crop. A living mulch can also have the opposite effect on temperature by increasing evaporation off of the vegetation.

Nonliving mulches, of either organic or inorganic materials, can change the temperature microclimate as well; their effect depends on the color, texture, and thickness of the material. Straw from crops such as wheat, oats, and barley is commonly used for a dry mulch, as are many other kinds of crop residues or grasses gathered from fallow fields, gardens, or nearby noncrop areas. Aquatic plants such as water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) or duckweed (*Lemna* spp.), usually considered a problem in waterways, especially in tropical areas, can be pulled from the water and applied as mulch. Plant-derived mulches eventually get incorporated into the soil, benefiting soil organic matter content. In recent times, some nonplant mulching materials have become popular; these include newspaper, cardboard, cloth, and plastic sheeting. Specialized

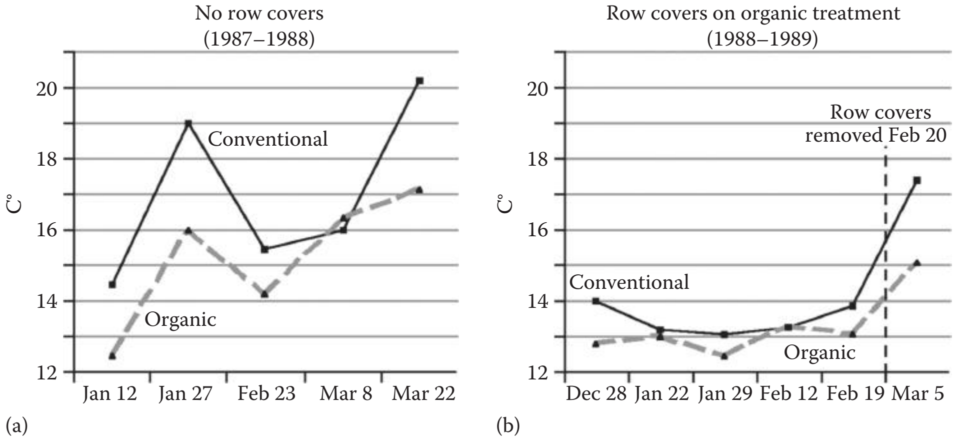


FIGURE 5.9 Effect of floating row covers on soil temperature in an organic strawberry system. When strawberries are grown under conventional methods, it is possible to use clear plastic as a soil-temperature-elevating soil covering during the winter, because weeds have been killed by prior soil fumigation. In organically grown strawberries, black plastic must be used instead to prevent weed growth. Black plastic, however, is less efficient than clear plastic in raising the soil temperature, as shown in (a). In an attempt to compensate for this difference, nylon floating row covers were placed over the organic strawberries during the second year of the study. As shown in (b), the row covers were successful in narrowing the soil temperature differences between the conventional and organic treatments during the period the covers remained on the beds. (Data from Gliessman, S.R. et al., *Calif. Agric.*, 50, 24, 1996.)

FIGURE 5.10 Hoop houses protecting frost-sensitive crops. The hoop house coverings, acting as a nonliving canopy, are put in place at the end of the day to trap heat and reduce nighttime heat loss; in the morning they are removed to allow light to reach the crop. Frost is still visible on the ground just outside the shadow of the center hoop house.

horticultural papers have been developed that biodegrade after a period of time and can be worked back into the soil.

A practice with effects similar to those of adding a mulch is to let a mulch accumulate naturally. This is accomplished through the use of a no-till system. Crop residues are left on the soil surface, forming a mulch that modifies the temperature of the soil and prevents moisture loss.

A final kind of practice is to change the color of the soil surface to alter its albedo and thus the amount of solar energy it absorbs. Burning crop residue is one way of doing this. Residue burned to carbon black will absorb a greater amount of heat, and residue burned to ash white will absorb less heat.

Greenhouses and Shade Houses

Shade houses and greenhouses are now common ways of modifying the temperature environment at the microclimatic level. Shade houses block a portion of incoming solar radiation, lowering solar gain and temperature.

Greenhouses, on the other hand, are more often used to conserve or trap heat. Light energy penetrates the glass or plastic cover on a greenhouse, and inside it is absorbed and reradiated as long-wave heat energy. The reradiated energy then becomes trapped inside the greenhouse. During extended cold or cloudy periods, growers can heat the interiors of their greenhouses from many different sources. Recirculating hot water is often used to heat the floors of greenhouses, or at least provide heat on benches in the houses for germination or early plant development.

At certain times of the year or in particular climate zones, excess heat can be trapped in a greenhouse, requiring venting and air cooling. Another way of reducing greenhouse temperatures is to block some of the incoming solar radiation with shade cloth or other materials. Sophisticated greenhouse management now employs computer technology and automation to achieve remarkable levels of microclimate control (Figure 5.11).

Methods of Preventing Frost Damage

In more temperate regions of the world, especially at higher elevations and latitudes, frost damage early or late in the growing season may be a constant danger. Mulching and row covers are important ways of providing some frost protection, but other means exist as well.

Raising soil moisture with irrigation when frost is expected may help raise temperatures close to the ground because evaporation of the moisture transfers heat from the soil to the evaporated water vapor, which then surrounds the

FIGURE 5.11 **Precise microclimate control in a greenhouse.** Hot water circulating in tubing below germination trays maintains warm soil temperatures for vegetable seedlings destined for early season transplanting.

crop plants. The increased atmospheric moisture itself also provides some protection for the plants.

In low-lying areas subject to cold air drainage at night, farmers have long employed relatively simple means of raising the temperature the few degrees necessary to avoid frost damage. One technique is smudging, in which some kind of fuel—such as diesel fuel, garbage, old tires, or plant material—is burned to generate heat-trapping smoke or to create enough air turbulence to keep cold air from settling in depressions during a calm night. Recent concerns about health hazards and air pollution have reduced the use of smudging, however, and prompted farmers to use large fans to keep the air moving in frost-prone areas. Obviously, such techniques work only under certain conditions and when a few degrees of temperature difference will matter.

TEMPERATURE AND SUSTAINABILITY

Designing and managing agroecosystems that are sustainable with regard to the temperature factor involve two interrelated challenges. The first challenge is to deal with the temperature factor in ways that are not overly reliant on external inputs or the use of fossil fuels, do not harm natural systems or diminish genetic diversity, and do not exacerbate inequality in the social sphere. This aspect of sustainability puts limits on the use of structures like shade houses, materials like plastic sheeting, and devices like fans and shifts the focus to efforts that provide microclimate modification as a feature of agroecosystems' basic design. In this latter category are agroforestry systems that create a diversity of microclimates in their interiors and work to moderate temperature extremes.

The second challenge is to create production systems that can withstand the rising temperatures, temperature extremes, and unseasonal temperature anomalies that will increasingly confront farmers over much of the world in the coming years. The keywords in this effort are adaptation and resilience. Adaptation involves an ability to change management strategies, crop types, seasonal timing, and agroecosystem design in response to changes and anticipated changes in the temperature regime. Resilience comes from designing systems that are inherently less vulnerable to temperature extremes and variability, able to recover from damage, and diverse enough to yield food no matter what kind of weather they are subjected to.

Ultimately, these two challenges come together. Agroecosystems that can survive climate change are also the ones that do the least harm to the ecological foundations of agriculture: they leverage diversity and natural processes and they are designed and managed based on knowledge of the environmental context—which includes very centrally the factor of temperature.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. Describe several examples of farmers being able to grow crops in an area subject to temperature extremes greater than the normal tolerance levels for the particular crop species. What is the ecological basis for success in such situations?
2. What are some examples of food crops you now consume during a time of the year when temperature regimes in your local region would normally not allow them to be grown?
3. How might climate change alter our patterns of food production and consumption?
4. How is it possible to modify the microclimate to extend the growing season for a crop? To allow planting earlier in the season? To allow planting at a higher elevation? To protect a crop from excessively high temperatures?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Center for Climate and Energy Solutions
www.c2es.org

Global Climate Change Research Reporter
www.exploratorium.edu/climate

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
www.ipcc.ch

NASA GISS Surface Temperature Analysis (GISTEMP)
data.giss.nasa.gov/gistemp

National Climatic Data Center (NOAA)
www.ncdc.noaa.gov

Western Regional Climate Center
www.wrcc.dri.edu

RECOMMENDED READING

Bonan, G. G. 2008. *Ecological Climatology: Concepts and Applications*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press.

This book integrates the perspectives of atmospheric science and ecology to describe and analyze climatic impacts on natural and managed ecosystems. In turn, it discusses the feedback mechanisms on climate from the use and management of land by people. The book includes detailed information on the science of climatology as well as specific chapters on the interactions between climate and terrestrial ecosystems, including agroecosystems and urban ecosystems.

Geiger, R. 1965. *The Climate Near the Ground*. Harvard University Press: Cambridge, MA.

The most thorough treatment of the field of micrometeorology, or the study of the microclimate within 2 m of the surface, where most crop organisms live.

Hellmers, H. and I. Warrington. 1982. Temperature and plant productivity. In M. Recheigl Jr. (ed.) *Handbook of Agricultural Productivity*. Vol. 1. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL. pp. 11–21.

A review of the complex relationships between temperature and plant growth and development, with a particular focus on crop plants.

Hidore, J. D., J. E. Oliver, M. Snow, and R. Snow. 2009. *Climatology: An Atmospheric Science*, 3rd edn. Prentice Hall.

A textbook on climate patterns, processes, and dynamics, with a major focus on the complex relationships between people, climate, and climate change.

Lobell, D. B. and M. Burke (eds.). 2010. *Climate Change and Food Security: Adapting Agriculture to a Warmer World*. Advances in Global Change Research. Vol. 37. Springer.

This book provides an in-depth analysis of the interactions between climate change and the food system, with emphasis on how food security is likely to be affected by climate change and what interventions will be needed to adapt.

Reddy, K. R. and H. F. Hodges (eds.). 2000. *Climate Change and Global Crop Productivity*. Oxford University Press.

An edited volume by leading international experts, which presents a comprehensive examination of the potential effects of climate change on agricultural systems around the world. It includes chapters focusing on specific crops, agroecosystems and agroecological processes, mitigation strategies, and socioeconomic impacts.

Wollenberg, E., A. Nihart, M.-L. Tapio-Biström, and M. Grieg-Gran (eds.). 2012. *Climate Change Mitigation and Agriculture*. Earthscan and Routledge with CCAFS: Abingdon and New York.

This book reviews the state of agricultural climate change mitigation globally, with a focus on indentifying the feasibility, opportunities, and challenges for achieving mitigation among smallholder farmers.

6 Humidity and Rainfall

A place's natural vegetation is usually a reliable indicator of its rainfall regime. Deserts, with their sparse, slow-growing vegetation, tell the observer that the local annual rainfall is minimal. The lush vegetative growth of tropical and temperate rainforests points to abundant rainfall through at least most of the year. Rainfall amounts and vegetation have this direct relationship because for most terrestrial ecosystems, water is the most important limiting factor.

Water is also a primary limiting factor in agroecosystems. Agriculture can be practiced only where there is adequate rainfall or where it is possible to overcome, through irrigation, the limits imposed by a dry climate. In this chapter we discuss water in three successive contexts: as it exists in the atmosphere, as it falls to earth in the form of precipitation and is cycled back into the atmosphere, and as it affects agroecosystems on the ground.

WATER IN THE ATMOSPHERE

Water can exist in the atmosphere in a gaseous form (as water vapor) or in a liquid form (as droplets). At constant pressure, the amount of water vapor that air can hold before it becomes saturated and its water vapor begins to condense and form droplets is dependent on temperature. As the temperature of the air goes down, the amount of water that can be held in vapor form goes down as well. Because of this dependence on temperature, humidity—the amount of moisture in the air—is usually measured in relative terms rather than according to the absolute amount of moisture in the air. **Relative humidity** is the ratio of the water vapor content of the air to the amount of water vapor the air can hold at that temperature. At a relative humidity of 50%, for example, the air is holding 50% of the water vapor it could hold at that temperature. When the relative humidity is 100%, the air is saturated with water vapor, and water vapor begins to condense to form mist, fog, and clouds.

Relative humidity can change as a result of either changes in the absolute amount of water vapor or changes in temperature. If the absolute amount of water vapor in the air is high, small variations in temperature can greatly influence relative humidity. A drop of a few degrees in temperature in the evening or morning hours, for example, can push the relative humidity to 100%. Once relative humidity reaches 100%, water vapor begins to condense into water droplets, and shows up as dew. The temperature at which this condensation begins to occur is called the **dew point**.

In natural systems, the interaction of temperature and the air's moisture content can be a very important factor in determining the structure of an ecosystem. The redwood forest community along the coast of California is a good example. Cold ocean currents condense the moisture-laden air over the ocean, forming fog. The occurrence of fog almost every night during the dry summer months compensates for the lack of rainfall and is believed to be the main reason redwoods still exist where they do. Some studies estimate that fog and dew add at least an extra 10% to the effective total of rainfall for redwood regions.

For similar reasons, humidity can affect agroecosystems. Crops grown in the redwood forest region, for example, may benefit from the extra moisture that fog and dew provide; farmers of crops such as Brussels sprouts, lettuce, and artichokes use less water as a result.

The reader should keep in mind that water in the atmosphere is only one aspect of a larger set of environmental factors affecting plants—those involving the atmosphere as a whole. Patterns of movement and change in the atmosphere influence not only rainfall patterns but also wind and variations in temperature. Combined, atmospheric factors make up climate (when we are referring to the annual average conditions) and weather (when we are referring to the climatic conditions at one moment in time).

PRECIPITATION

Although dew and fog can contribute significant quantities of moisture to some regions, the primary (natural) source of water for agroecosystems is precipitation, usually in the form of rain or snow. Precipitation contributes moisture to the soil directly, and in irrigated agroecosystems it does so indirectly by being the ultimate source of most irrigation water.

HYDROLOGICAL CYCLE

Precipitation is part of the **hydrological cycle**, a global process moving water from the earth's surface to the atmosphere and back to the earth. A diagram of the hydrological cycle is presented in Figure 6.1. The core of the hydrological cycle is made up of the two basic physical processes of evaporation and condensation. Evaporation occurs at the earth's surface, as water evaporates from soil, bodies of water, and other wet surfaces. Evaporation of water from inside the bodies of plants also occurs on the surface of leaves. This kind of evaporation, called transpiration, is part of the mechanism by which plants draw water from the soil into their roots (see Chapter 3). Evaporation from all these sources is collectively termed **evapotranspiration**.

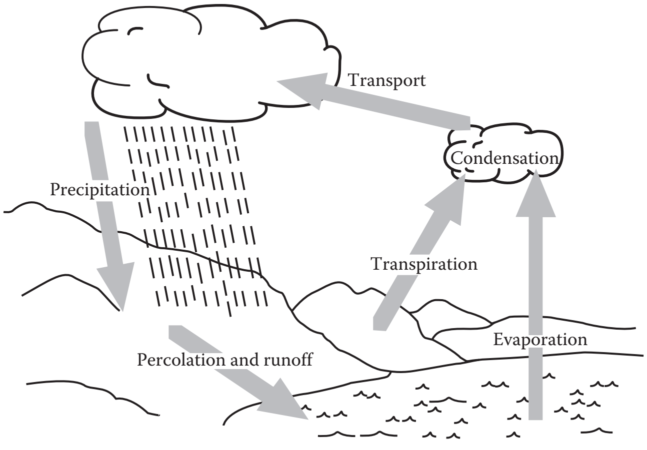


FIGURE 6.1 The hydrological cycle.

When the absolute amount of water vapor in the air is sufficient to approach or exceed 100% relative humidity, condensation begins to occur. Small water droplets form and aggregate to create clouds. Precipitation occurs when droplets of water in clouds become heavy enough to fall. This usually happens when the moisture-containing air rises (by being forced up a mountain by winds or rising on currents of warm air) and begins to cool. As the air cools, its ability to hold moisture in vapor form or as very small cloud droplets begins to decrease, resulting in more condensation and aggregation of droplets. This cooling and condensing process is called adiabatic cooling. The precipitation formed by adiabatic cooling falls to earth, enters watersheds or the ocean, and eventually returns to the atmosphere.

TYPES OF RAINFALL

The precipitation part of the hydrological cycle is highly variable. Masses of moisture-laden air are constantly being moved over the earth's surface by the complex movements of the atmosphere. Rainfall (and other forms of precipitation) occurs locally in different ways depending on latitude, season, temperature, topography, and the movement of the air masses. In general, however, rainfall can be classified into three types depending on the mechanism that produces the adiabatic cooling of the moist air mass.

Convective Rainfall

Convective rainfall occurs when high levels of solar gain heat the air close to the ground, causing it to rise rapidly, cool, and condense the moisture it contains. Often the rising air draws moisture-laden air in from some distant source, such as a lake, gulf, or ocean. The rain associated with summer thunder clouds is an example of convective rainfall. High winds, and even tornadoes, can accompany these storms, as can lightning and localized fires. In many regions, such as the American Midwest, agroecosystems are dependent on this type of rainfall, at least at certain times of the year. Traditional Hopi agriculture in the southwest of the United States is completely dependent on convective rainfall, with the torrent that often accompanies these storms being channeled down washes from the mountains and then spread out over planted fields at the mouths of the canyons.

Orographic Rainfall

Orographic rainfall occurs when a moisture-laden air mass meets a mountain range that forces it up into the cooler layers of the atmosphere. Such precipitation occurs on the western flanks of California's Sierra Nevada—as rain in the foothills and as snow at the higher elevations. This precipitation is an important replenisher of streams and aquifers, which later become sources of irrigation water downstream in drier locations. Agriculture in a region such as the Great Central Valley of California would not be possible without orographic precipitation in nearby mountains.

Cyclonic Rainfall

This type of rainfall is associated with areas of low atmospheric pressure that form over the ocean. Warm, moisture-laden air rises, creating a low-pressure area. As this air rises, it cools, forms precipitation, and then falls back toward the ocean surface where it can collect more moisture. In addition, the air currents of this self-perpetuating system begin to revolve counterclockwise around the low-pressure area, and the entire system begins to move. The revolving air currents form the characteristic cyclonic storms and frontal systems we can see on weather maps. When one of these cyclonic systems moves ashore, the moisture-laden air masses may be forced up against mountain masses, creating rainfall with both orographic and cyclonic causes (Figure 6.2).

DESCRIBING RAINFALL PATTERNS

Each region of the earth has its characteristic patterns of precipitation. The total amount of precipitation received in a

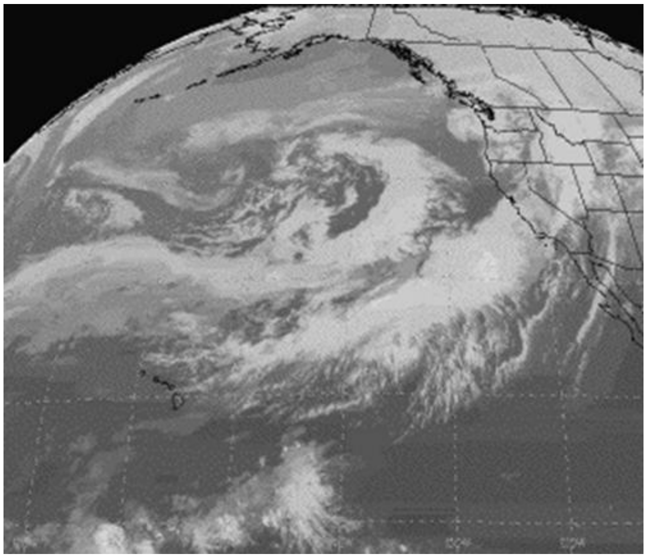


FIGURE 6.2 A cyclonic storm system over the eastern Pacific as seen by the NOAA's GOES West satellite on February 28, 2014. (Photo courtesy of NOAA.)

TABLE 6.1
Monthly and Seasonal Rainfall Totals in Inches at Cottonwood Canyon, Cuyama Valley, Santa Barbara County, CA

Season	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Total
1996–1997	0.0	2.3	2.12	4.31	5.6	0.37	0.0	0.0	0.0	14.7
1997–1998	0.2	0.1	3.65	4.93	6.75	12.66	3.76	1.78	1.82	35.65
1998–1999	1.43	0.18	0.87	0.93	0.23	3.4	2.29	0.85	0.0	10.18
1999–2000	0.0	0.0	0.9	0.04	1.91	2.99	4.85	2.6	0.18	13.46
2000–2001	0.0	1.06	0.02	0.17	5.32	5.05	5.6	2.35	0.0	19.52
2001–2002	0.5[a]	0.58	2.4	2.54	0.08	0.8	0.87	0.03	0.2	8.2
2002–2003	0.0	0.0	3.73	2.06	2.28	1.64	2.3	0.95	1.2	14.16
2003–2004	0.88[b]	0.45	0.44	1.88	0.42	1.98	2.90	0.1	0.0	9.05
2004–2005	0.0	4.25	0.06	4.32	7.06	2.25	2.30	0.66	0.75	21.65
2005–2006	0.0	1.25	0.09	2.24	3.84	0.56	6.21	5.06	0.40	19.65
2006–2007	1.0[c]	0.5	0.03	1.34	0.11	1.83	1.35	0.31	0.0	6.47
2007–2008	0.36	0.1	0.15	2.1	7.67	2.08	0.1	0.0	0.15	12.71
2008–2009	0.0	0.0	1.08	1.95	0.03	3.95	1.52	0.47	0.58	9.58
2009–2010	0.07	1.17	0.08	3.39	5.65	4.25	0.54	1.85	0.34	17.34
2010–2011	0.02	1.65	2.33	10.93	0.53	3.04	6.47	0.33	0.68	25.98
2011–2012	0.34	0.7	2.10	0.11	0.0	1.65	3.05	2.25	0.0	10.2
2012–2013	0.3	0.0	0.65	0.94	2.75	0.0	0.78	0.0	0.0	5.42
Averages	0.3	0.84	1.22	2.6	2.95	2.85	2.64	1.13	0.37	14.94

Rainfall from June to August is usually negligible.

[a] All from late July.

[b] All from late July/early August.

[c] All from July.

typical year, its distribution throughout the year, the intensity and duration of precipitation events, and the regularity and predictability of the precipitation patterns are all important determinants of the opportunities for, and constraints upon, agriculture in a particular region.

In the following, these facets of rainfall patterns are described using rainfall data collected by the author in the Cuyama Valley, CA. These data are shown in Table 6.1.

- **Average total annual rainfall.** The total amount of precipitation that falls in an area during an average year is a good indicator of the moistness of that area's climate. From an ecological perspective, however, it is also important to know how much variability there can be in this rainfall amount from 1 year to the next. Extremes at either end of the average can have significant negative impact on an agricultural system, even if that extreme only occurs rarely. Table 6.1 shows that in the Cuyama Valley the annual total is highly variable: during the 17-year data collection period there were 8 drought years, 3 years of near-normal precipitation, 4 wet years, and 2 excessively wet years (associated with El Niño patterns in the Pacific Ocean).
- **Distribution and periodicity.** This refers to how rainfall is spread out through the year, both on average and during a specific year. In many parts of the world, rainfall is distributed in such a way as to create predictable wet and dry periods; the Cuyama Valley, where precipitation is largely confined to the period from October to May, is a good example. Within this overall climatic distribution pattern, however, rainfall is often distributed differently each year: if the data for the Cuyama Valley were graphed, for example, the peaks and valleys for each year would not correspond, and some years, such as 2004–2005, would show much more evenly distributed rainfall than others.
- **Intensity and duration.** The absolute amount of rainfall in a long time period such as a month or even a day does not fully describe the ecological relevance of the rainfall. How intense the rainfall is, and for what length of time that rainfall occurs, are important aspects. Two inches of rainfall in less than an hour can have very different ecological impacts than a 2 in. rain spread over 24 h. For example, of the 12.66 in. of rainfall recorded during February 1998 in the Cuyama Valley, over 8 in. fell in one 3 h rainfall event, with associated excessive runoff and flooding.
- **Availability.** It is also important to know how much of the rainfall becomes available as soil moisture. Does it penetrate into the root zone? What were the

weather conditions immediately following the rainfall event? What was the temperature and what were the wind conditions? The dry year of 2011–2012 was accentuated by extremely hot temperatures in June and July. The 2012–2013 year was extremely difficult because rainfall occurred as 0.25–0.50 in. events that did not soak into the root zone and evaporated from the surface.

- **Predictability.** Every region has a characteristic degree of variability in its rainfall patterns. The higher the variability, the less predictable the rainfall for any particular time period. The rainfall data in Table 6.1 show that the Cuyama Valley has fairly high variability, for example. Based on these data, a farmer could not count on there being at least 1 in. of rain in April, even though the 17-year average for that month is 1.13 in. And even though the annual average is about 15 in., in most of the last 10 years rainfall totals were either much less or much greater. Such extremes rather than the average are typical of what climate change seems to be presenting.

Additional aspects of rainfall may be relevant from an agroecological perspective as well. For example, it may be important to know how much moisture was in the soil when rainfall occurred, as well as the stage of crop development. In the Paso Robles and Santa Maria regions of California, for example, two storms with total rainfall of about 1.5 in. occurred during the first 2 weeks of September in 1998. Since most grapes were still on the vine at this time, the rains damaged the crop (in most years, significant rainfall does not occur until early November, after the grapes have been harvested). The lack of any penetrating rainfall in the latter part of the 2012–2013 year, on the heels of a previous dry year, caused severe plant stress and significant yield drops.

RAINFED AGROECOSYSTEMS

Agriculture in most of the world is carried out using natural precipitation to meet the water needs of crops. These **rainfed agroecosystems** must adjust to the distribution, intensity, and variability of the rainfall that is characteristic of the local climate. The challenge is either to maintain a balance between precipitation (P) and potential evapotranspiration, (PET) by manipulating evapotranspiration or to somehow work around a water deficit ($P - PET < 0$) or a water surplus ($P - PET > 0$).

Several examples of how agroecosystems function within the constraints of local rainfall regimes are presented in the following, providing another way of examining the aspects of sustainability inherent in farming approaches that work with ecological conditions rather than striving for their alteration or control. These examples were chosen to cover the range from very wet to very dry rainfed agriculture. The aspects of managing moisture once it gets into the soil will be described in more detail in Chapter 9.

AGROECOSYSTEMS ADAPTED TO A LONG WET SEASON

In very humid regions with extended rainfall, farmers are concerned more with excess water than with water deficits. Frequent and heavy rainfall creates problems of waterlogging, root diseases, nutrient leaching, abundant weed growth, and complications for most farming operations. Even wetland-adapted crops such as rice or taro are difficult to manage in regions with a long wet season. Conventional approaches to excess precipitation most often look to some type of major habitat modification such as drainage projects and flood control. An agroecological approach to an extended wet season, in contrast, looks for ways to accommodate the system to the excess moisture.

A very interesting and productive use of land that is flooded for the entire wet season is seen in Tabasco, Mexico (Gliessman 1992a). This region receives more than 3000 mm of rainfall distributed over a long wet season that extends from May until February of the next year. The staple local crop of corn is planted on higher ground around wetlands that are shallowly flooded during most of the year. In March, however, the drop in rainfall permits the planting of another corn crop. Low-lying areas dry out enough for the soil surface to become exposed. Farmers follow the receding water line with this special corn planting, known locally as the March planting or *marceño.*

During much of the year constant rainfall keeps the low areas inundated to a depth that ranges from a few centimeters to as much as a meter. The marsh vegetation that densely covers these areas during the wet season is felled quickly with machetes as the water level recedes. A very dense, 10–20 cm mat of organic matter is produced by this process. Seed is planted into holes made with a pointed stick driven into the mat. About a week after the sowing, fire is used to burn part of the organic mat, as well as to kill back any weed seedlings or sprouts of the marsh plants. The burning must be timed so as to burn only the dry leaves on top of the mat and not the moist lower layers or the soil. The corn seed, planted 10–15 cm below the surface of the soil, is not harmed by the fire. Local short-cycle varieties of corn (2–3 months from planting to harvest) are most frequently used. The practice of using seed from the previous harvest for the subsequent planting favors the use of local varieties, rather than the purchase of hybrid or "improved" seed produced at distant locations. The name of one corn variety—*mejen*, from a Maya word meaning "precocious" or "early maturing"—shows the link to the past that this system may have (Figure 6.3).

The corn grows very quickly in this system, and when fire is not used excessively and flooding is allowed to occur every year, weeding is usually not necessary. After about 2½ months of growth the mature cornstalks are "doubled over" just below the corn ear, facilitating final drying of the grain for another 2–4 weeks before harvest. Yields of 4–5 tons/ha of dry grain are common, with some yields reaching 10 tons/ha. This is many times the average yield of 1–1.5 tons/ha for mechanized production on lands that have been cleared and drained in the same region. These greater yields are obtained

FIGURE 6.3 The local variety of corn called *mején* close to maturity 10 weeks following planting in Cárdenas, Tabasco, Mexico. This site is a wetland normally flooded for 8–9 months out of the year.

at a fraction of the input costs and labor invested in mechanized production systems (Amador 1980).

Following the harvest, all crop and noncrop residues end up on the soil surface. This contributes to a key element in the productivity of the system—maintenance of organic matter in the soil. Soil profiles demonstrate the presence of a thick, organic-rich soil to a depth of 30–40 cm below the surface. During the 9-month inundation, organic matter produced by the marsh plants or left by the previous cropping cycle is incorporated into the soil and conserved in the anoxic conditions under water. In addition, nutrient minerals that enter the system with surface drainage are captured by the highly productive aquatic sector of the ecosystem. These factors result in the formation of a soil that has organic matter levels over 30%, total nitrogen as high as 3%, and high levels of other important plant nutrients. The key element in the management of this system, then, is the way in which inundation during the wet season is taken advantage of. When the system is drained artificially in an attempt to extend the cropping season, the organic layer in the soil can be reduced to 5 cm in less than 2 years, and yields drop dramatically.

AGROECOSYSTEMS ADAPTED TO ALTERNATING WET–DRY SEASONS IN THE TROPICS

Many parts of the world have a monsoon-type climate in which average annual rainfall is relatively high, but nearly all the rain falls during a wet season of medium length. Farmers in these areas have to deal with excess rainfall at one time, and a lack of rainfall at another.

FIGURE 6.4 A camellón (raised field) near Ixtauixtla, Tlaxcala, Mexico. The field is planted with rotational strips of alfalfa and intercropped corn and beans; alder trees mark the edge of the canals dug to raise the field. The compost in the foreground is used as a fertilizer.

A very interesting and productive agroecosystem in such an alternating rainfall regime has been observed in the state of Tlaxcala, Mexico (Wilken 1969; González Jácome 1986; Anaya et al. 1987; Crews and Gliessman 1991). In an area known as the Puebla basin, a triangular floodplain of about 290 km^2 is formed where the Atoyac and Zahuapan rivers meet in the southern part of the state. Average annual rainfall is about 700 mm. A large part of the basin floor has a water table <3 ft below the surface during much of the year, with soils that are poorly drained and swampy. In order to make such land agriculturally productive, most present-day agronomists would probably recommend draining the region so that large-scale mechanized cropping practices could be introduced. But the local, traditional cropping systems provide an alternative that makes use of the high water table and rainfall distribution in the watershed (Figure 6.4).

Using a system that is prehispanic in origin, raised platforms (locally called *camellones*) have been constructed from soil excavated from their borders, creating a system of platforms and canals (called *zanjas*). Individual platforms are 15–30 m wide, 2–3 m high, and 150–300 m long. A diverse mixture of crops are grown on the platforms, including intercropped maize, beans, and squash, vegetables, alfalfa, and other annuals. Crop rotations with legumes such as alfalfa or fava beans help maintain soil fertility, and the crop mixtures themselves help in weed control. Soil fertility is also maintained with frequent applications of composted animal manures and crop residues. Much of the feed for the animals comes from alfalfa grown on the platforms, or from residues of other crops that cannot be directly consumed by humans (e.g., cornstalks). Supplemental feed for animals is derived from the noncrop vegetation (i.e., weeds) that is selectively removed from the crop area, or periodic harvests that are made of the ruderals and natives that grow either along the canals or directly in them as aquatic species. This latter source of feed can constitute a very significant component of livestock diets during the dry season.

A very important aspect of this traditional agroecosystem is the management of the complex set of canals. Besides originally serving as a primary source of soil for raising the platform surfaces, they also serve as a major reservoir of water during the dry season. Organic matter accumulates in the canals as aquatic plants die, leaves from trees along the canal borders fall into the water, and even weeds from the crop field are thrown into the canals. Soil from the surrounding hillsides and the platforms is also washed into the canals by the heavy wet-season rains. Every 2–3 years the canals are cleaned of the accumulated soil and muck, with the excavated materials being applied as a nutrient-rich top dressing on the platforms.

The canals thus play a very important role in the sustainability of this agroecosystem. They function as a nutrient "sink" for the farmer, and are managed in ways that permit the capture of as much organic material as possible. Supplemental irrigation water can be taken from them in the dry season, and the plants rely greatly on moisture that moves upward through the soil from the water table by capillarity. The raised platforms provide suitable planting surface even during the peak of the rains. Water levels in the canals are controlled by an intricate system of interconnected canals that eventually lead to the rivers of the basin, but flow in the canals is very limited. Farmers often block the flow of canals along their fields during the dry season in order to maintain a higher water table, and even in the wet season, water flow out of system is minimal. Only at times of excessive rainfall do appreciable quantities of water drain from the area. Rainfall is both an input and a tool in the management of the system, and permits year-round cropping.

AGROECOSYSTEMS ADAPTED TO SEASONAL RAINFALL

Outside of the wet tropics, a common rainfall regime is one in which one or more wet seasons are interspersed with relatively long dry seasons. In these areas, crops are often planted at the beginning of the rainy season, grow and develop while there is moisture in the soil, and become ready to harvest at the end of the wet season or the beginning of the dry season.

This kind of wet-season cropping takes many forms. In much of the midwestern heartland of the United States, for example, spring wheat, corn, and soybeans are planted in the late spring and depend on convective summer rainfall to develop. In Mediterranean climates around the world, the mild, wet winters and dry summers are appropriate for grain crops such as oats, barley, and rye grown in winter, with the land being left fallow or grazed during the summer unless irrigation can be provided.

A seasonally rainfed cropping system of considerable importance is the Mesoamerican corn/bean/squash polyculture system. Adapted to a wide range of rainfall intensities and amounts, this intercropping system is found throughout much of Latin America (Pinchinat et al. 1976; Laing et al. 1984; Davis et al. 1986). These three crops are planted in many different arrangements, sequences, and patterns, sometimes only two of them together, and at other times all three. But regardless of the combination, it is the arrival of the rainy season that determines planting.

If shifting cultivation practices are used, clearing and burning takes place during the dry season. Sometimes farmers wait to burn until after the first rains of the wet season dampen the lower layers of the slash. Since these first rains are most often interspersed with periods of sun, the upper layer of the slash is dried enough between rains to carry a fire, while the newly acquired moisture below prevents excessive heat from reaching the soil. Crop seed is then planted into a mulch made up of nutrient-rich ash and a protective layer of unburned organic matter. This practice achieves the dual goals of nutrient supply and soil erosion protection. Soil protection is important in many areas where this crop system is used, since the early rains of the season occur most often as intense, convective showers.

Once the rains begin, crop seeds germinate and develop quickly, covering the soil and protecting it against the continued rains. The amount of time it takes for the crop to mature (from 4 to 6 months) depends on the length of the wet season.

In areas such as the wet lowlands of Tabasco, Mexico, two corn crops can be planted because the wet season is longer and characterized by a bimodal distribution, with one rainfall peak in June/July and another in September/October. One crop is planted in May at the beginning of the wet season, with fire being used to clear the slash, and the crop (called *milpa de año*) being harvested in September. The second crop (called *tonalmil*) is planted just following the second rainfall peak in late October or November for harvest at the beginning of the dry season in late February. The second crop depends greatly on the presence of residual soil moisture extending into the dry season, and since the crop is planted during the wet season, any slash on the surface at planting is not burned. Different local varieties of corn are used in each planting system.

DRYLAND FARMING

In many parts of the world, rainfall during the cropping season does not meet the needs of the crop, either because the area does not receive enough rainfall to offset moisture lost through evapotranspiration, or because the cropping cycle does not coincide with the wet season. The type of agriculture developed in such climates—when irrigation is not an option—is termed dryland agriculture or **dry farming**.

Dryland agriculture is defined as crop production without irrigation in semiarid regions of the world where annual rainfall is mostly between 250 and 500 mm. But total rainfall is only one influence on dryland agriculture; annual and seasonal variations in temperature and the type and distribution of rainfall are key factors as well. The traditional agriculture in most dryland regions is pastoral in nature, with cultivated crops limited to small areas farmed by hand tools or animal power. Today, mechanization has added a new dimension to dry farming, but the types of tillage, seeding management, and harvest procedures remain much the same. In many countries hand labor still plays a major role.

The most important aspects of dry farming are (1) the use of some type of cultivation system that promotes the penetration of rainwater into the soil profile and its storage there, and (2) the frequent use of summer fallows or rest seasons to allow replenishment of water reserves depleted by cropping. Other practices can be important as well. Cultivation of the surface soil during the cropping cycle is used to control potential water-using weeds and to create a "dust mulch" of pulverized surface soil that reduces the proportion of large pores, breaks capillary connections, and therefore reduces evaporation (see Figures 6.5 and 6.6). Drought-resistant cultivars are often planted to reduce moisture use. Altogether, these practices allow a much higher proportion of the moisture from rainfall to be channeled through the crop rather than to pass from the soil to the atmosphere.

The most highly developed modern dryland agricultural systems, at least in terms of intensive management and technology, are in Australia, Canada, and the United States. In all of these regions, grain crops are the primary focus. In Australia, however, wheat in rotation with grazing, especially for sheep and wool production, has led to the development of unique systems where a grain crop is grown alternately with pasture. Pasture actually allows for the replenishment of moisture reserves necessary to produce a grain crop.

FIGURE 6.5 Dry-farmed tomatoes in Santa Cruz, CA. A cultivated soil mulch keeps moisture close to the surface and controls weeds during the rainless summer growing season.

A unique example of dry farming occurs in coastal central California, where several vegetable crops are planted, either from transplanted seedlings or direct seeding, at the beginning of the dry Mediterranean summer in May. Rarely does rainfall occur in summer in this climate, so these vegetable crops must rely solely on the moisture reserves stored in the

CASE STUDY: DRY-FARMED GRAPES AND OLIVES AT CONDOR'S HOPE RANCH, CUYAMA VALLEY, CA

Wine grapes and olives have been grown in the semiarid and arid regions around the Mediterranean Sea for several millennia, and except for very recent historic time were most likely grown without irrigation during the dry time of the year. Contemporary versions of this nonirrigated grape production system still exist today; in fact in some regions of southern Europe, it is illegal to irrigate out of concern for the changes that might be wrought in the quality of the wine produced. When immigrants from these regions came to California, they brought the culture of their dry farming systems with them, and many successful examples of the vineyards they planted are still producing in several well-known wine-growing regions of the state.

One example of the dry farming of both grapes and olives can be found at Condor's Hope Ranch in the Cuyama Valley of northern Santa Barbara County, CA. In a geographic location that receives an average annual rainfall of 12–15 in., this small family-owned and operated farm is considered to be on the margin for successful dry farming. But both grapes (first planted in 1994) and olives (planted in the year 2000) have been successfully grown and yield wine and oil of excellent quality. Despite the fact that some years have lower-than-average rainfall (see Table 6.1), the rain that does fall each winter maintains enough moisture in the soil so that the plants can withstand even dry years with little or no dry-season irrigation.

When new grapes are planted, very light and frequent waterings are applied during the first year using an underground drip system with a riser at each plant. During the second and third years, waterings are less frequent but of longer duration. This method trains the plants to keep going deeper for their water, helping them establish root systems that will be able to tap the large belowground soil moisture reserve. After the third year, the grapes are not irrigated at all—unless exceptionally dry conditions require it, and even then the water used (no more than 40 gal/plant) is very modest compared with conventional systems.

But dry farming is more than just the absence or limitation of irrigation. Plants must be spaced sufficiently to allow each plant to obtain the moisture it needs from the soil. On the cobbly alluvial sandy loam soil of the ranch, a 10 ft × 10 ft spacing is used for grapes and 20 ft × 20 ft for olives. This means that the plants are much less dense than in conventional plantings, leading to a much lower per-acre yield of fruit.

Cultivation is the key process for moisture conservation. Soil cultivation is done as soon as the rains stop at the end of the winter, and it is critical to do this while there is still moisture close to the surface and before evaporation causes much loss. The first step is to mow the vetch/oat covercrop and any vine prunings on the ground. The next step is to disk with a small conventional offset disk to incorporate the mowed organic matter. After letting the organic matter decompose for about 2 weeks, a center split disk is used to break up the soil clods and pull soil back to the center of the rows away from the plants where it was thrown by the first disking. (Interestingly, the few degrees of heat decomposition generates during this time can provide a bit of protection from light late frosts.) The final and most important step in cultivation is done with a harrow with three rows of implements: the first a set of spring sweeps, the second a row of spikes, and the third a roller chopper (see Figure 6.6). This harrow leaves a **dust mulch**, a uniform 3–4 in. thick moisture-trapping layer of dry soil. The word *dust* is really a misnomer, since a true dust is highly susceptible to wind erosion. Proper cultivation leaves a dry layer of soil with good crumb structure that resists the wind. The moisture conserving capacity of the dry layer comes from the breaking of capillarity of the water column in the soil at the contact between the dry layer on top of the moist soil below. If more rain occurs and capillarity is reestablished, the harrow is pulled through the vineyard again right after the rain. No weeding needs to be done during the growing season, since all weeds are removed by the spring cultivation.

Because the soil cultivation for moisture management requires cross cultivation in both directions along the plant rows, the grapes cannot be trained in the cordon style on wires between plants in a row. Instead, the grapes are "head trained" and free standing (Figure 6.6).

With rainfall variability, there is also yield variability. In a wet year, about 2 tons of grapes to the acre can be harvested. But in a very dry year, yields might only be a third of that. The quality of the wine produced from the grapes, though, is enhanced by dry farming. Grapes are not diluted by excess moisture so that full fruit flavors come forward. In dry years, grapes are smaller, leading to more contact between juice and skin during fermentation. And with the variability in rainfall from year to year, each vintage is a unique expression of the relationship between dry farming, rainfall, and the vineyard. Olive harvests seem to be much less impacted by dry years, since well-established olive trees have a much deeper and more extensive root system, and are hence more drought tolerant. As a means of compensating for lower and more variable yields, Condor's Hope sells the wine and olive oil produced from its small 5-acre planting directly to consumers at farmers' markets in Santa Cruz, CA, and through a wine club, where a fairer price is obtained for both the farmer and the buyer. Through these direct transactions, the grower can share the story of the dry farm system.

FIGURE 6.6 A special harrow used to create the dry-farm dust mulch. A uniform layer of dry soil on top of the moist soil below breaks capillarity and reduces evaporative moisture loss.

soil. Tomatoes seem to be a crop that is particularly well suited to this system. Tomato seedlings are planted deeply into moist soil in May, with no irrigation applied. Cultivation of the soil surface maintains a weed-free dust mulch, and because the soil surface is dry and no rain occurs during the growing season, the plants are not staked or tied, and fungal disease is a minor problem. Harvest begins in late August and continues until the first rains of the new wet season, usually in late October or early November. Tomatoes harvested from this system have a reputation for more concentrated flavor (Figure 6.5).

The sustainability of dry farming systems must be weighed against the potential loss of soil organic matter from the upper soil levels with the dust mulch system, the danger of soil erosion from wind and rain because of the low level of soil cover, and the unpredictability of soil moisture availability as a result of variable rainfall during the fallow period. But as a way of farming in areas with low and unpredictable rainfall, dry farming can be a low-external-input alternative.

Water Harvesting Systems in Arid Regions

In warm regions of the world with arid climates (less than 250 mm annual precipitation), lack of rainfall is a severe limiting factor for agriculture. In many such places, however, rainfall does occur with some regularity in the form of short, torrential showers, and it is possible to "harvest" this water by collecting and concentrating rainfall runoff.

In the Negev desert of Israel, once-abandoned systems of small catchment runoff farms have been reconstructed and made to produce crop yields equivalent to those of irrigated farms in the same region (Evenari 1982). The farm unit consists of catchment areas for rainfall on the slopes of the watershed surrounding flattened drainage channels where runoff is collected. Low rock walls channel rain runoff down into the small floodplain of the channels. This system can collect 20%–40% of the rainfall that occurs, and removing loose rock from the soil surface on the hillsides can increase runoff collection to as much as 60%. Small rock check dams in the larger channels at the bottom of the slopes concentrate runoff to a depth sufficient to allow water to penetrate to approximately 2 m into the soil, after which the soil dries and leaves a crust relatively impervious to evaporative water loss. As each check dam fills, it spills over into others below, watering a complex system of floodplain farm plots. Crop yields of grains such as barley and wheat, and fruits such as almonds, apricots, and grapes, are quite respectable for such an arid region. Rather than attempting to create large reservoirs of water that would mostly evaporate in such a climate (and accumulate nutrient-rich sediments), both water and nutrient-rich sediments are stored on-site in the water harvest system (Figure 6.7).

FIGURE 6.7 Fruit and olive trees in the Negev Desert near Avdat in Israel. Rainwater is harvested from the surrounding hillsides to provide soil moisture for the orchard.

A similar system still is used in the arid American Southwest, where native American groups such as the Hopi and Papago have been practicing a form of water harvesting for many centuries. The flow from heavy convective rainfall in the mountains during the summer is diverted over alluvial fans as a shallow sheet of runoff, rather than being allowed to concentrate in a stream channel. This sheet of water then "irrigates" annual crops of corn, beans, squash, and other local crops. The upper watershed is not manipulated as in the Negev system, but similar manipulation of runoff on the floodplain below takes place. The goals of both agroecosystems are to work within the constraints and limits of the natural rainfall regime.

Grazing Systems

In regions where rainfall is both limited and highly unpredictable, natural vegetation is made up of a mixture of water-seeking, drought-resistant shrubs and perennial grasses, as well as annual species that can germinate and complete their life cycles in the short period that water is available. The drought tolerance of the perennials is combined with the drought avoidance of the annuals to form a system that can produce biomass during most of the year. In many parts of the world, this type of ecosystem is associated with extensive populations of native grazing animals. When we consider the ability of grazing animals to move in search of adequate forage, such ecosystems reflect considerable adaptability and diversity.

Many managed grazing systems take advantage of the ability of pasture or range ecosystems to maintain production of biomass in the face of low and highly variable rainfall. In most cases, natural range is managed with specific stocking rates and timing to adjust to the natural dynamics of plant growth in response to rainfall. Animals are moved from one part of a range to another during the year as forage availability shifts. In other cases, such range is improved with the introduction of drought-tolerant forage species that are very successful under drier conditions.

In a world in which increasing consumption of animal products and ecologically inefficient and degrading methods of raising livestock represent some of the most serious threats to the integrity and long-term productivity of our food systems, many traditional and managed grazing systems in low-rainfall regions stand as good examples of sustainable animal-based food production. We will discuss grazing systems in more detail in this context and others in Chapter 19.

Coping with Increased Variability of Precipitation

Since the beginning of agriculture thousands of years ago, the managers of rainfed agroecosystems have had to cope with the vagaries of precipitation. Sometimes the rains are late, and sometimes they never come. Droughts can last years and even decades. Occasionally too much rain falls during a short period, flooding fields, damaging crops, and washing away the soil or making it unworkable. Climatologists and atmospheric scientists are predicting that climate change will almost certainly make these challenges even more difficult. Precipitation will become more variable and more unpredictable in the coming decades. The extremes of precipitation—droughts and high-rainfall events—are likely to become more frequent, and droughts will probably be deeper and longer lasting.

In a world in which drought is more common and rainfall less predictable, it might seem that in the more arid regions rainfed agroecosystems will be at greater risk than those that have exploited other sources of water through infrastructures of irrigation. This may be true on a short-term basis, but over the long term rainfed agroecosystems will prove more sustainable because their design rests on the assumption that rainfall can be fickle and that agroecosystems must accommodate themselves to this reality rather than the other way around. Many agroecosystems that are dependent on irrigation, in contrast, may find that the water they use is subject to increasing demand and competition from nonagricultural users while at the same time it becomes increasingly scarce and costly. The source of much of the world's irrigation water is snow, and the total mass of snow deposited in the world's mountain ranges each winter is predicted to shrink considerably in the coming decades. Similarly, the water stored underground in deep aquifers is generally being used much faster than it is replenished through recharge, and rates of groundwater recharge will in most areas of the world diminish over time as well. So, while adapting to increased variability of precipitation will be a challenge, the alternative—attempting to avoid the problem temporarily through irrigation—will only make matters worse in the long run.

Lessons from Sustainable Systems

Much of present-day agricultural development has approached the lack or excess of rainfall intent upon eliminating or altering conditions to fit the needs of the cropping systems being introduced. This usually involves high levels of external inputs of energy or materials. Irrigated systems, of course, are the preeminent example of this approach. As we will see in Chapter 9, the irrigation technologies that have been deployed all over the world to compensate for low rainfall and to increase production have a great many ecological consequences, including soil erosion, sedimentation, salinization, damage to watershed systems, and depletion of aquifers. At the other end of the precipitation spectrum, there are many examples of drainage projects—some of them massive—that have also attempted to alter existing ecological conditions and have achieved only limited or mixed success when evaluated in terms of crop productivity, economic viability, and social welfare (e.g., Candiani 2014).

What irrigated systems and drainage projects share in common is unsustainability. The extreme and large-scale manipulation of hydrological regimes entailed by both approaches is damaging to natural systems and requires both energy subsidies and large physical inputs. Moreover, many irrigation systems depend on using groundwater faster than it can be replenished, and some of the land "reclaimed" through drainage is threatened by the rise in sea levels that will occur through this century and beyond.

By examining the nature of humidity and rainfall as we have done in this chapter, and by learning from the examples of agroecosystems that work with local rainfall conditions rather than against them, we can better understand how to produce food without putting additional pressure on that most precious of natural resources—water. With population growth, increases in civic and industrial water consumption, reductions in mountain snowfall brought about by climate change, and the increasing likelihood of widespread and long-term drought in many parts of the world, the availability of freshwater is likely to be the premier challenge for human society in the decades ahead (Kumar 2013). We can ill afford, therefore, to keep so much of the world's food production dependent on using enormous quantities of water. We need to intensify the search for ways to accommodate agriculture to variable, unpredictable, and frequently limited rainfall. The examples of rainfed agriculture presented in this chapter are an excellent place to start.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What are some of the benefits and detrimental effects of irrigation as a means of overcoming limiting rainfall, from the point of view of sustainable agriculture?
2. How are rainfall patterns affected by topography? How has agriculture been adapted to the variation in rainfall patterns caused by topographic variation?
3. What are some of the possible ecological roles of a dry season for ecosystems?
4. What is the best way to prepare an agroecosystem for the unpredictable nature of precipitation?
5. What are some ways that farming systems of the future might adjust to the probable changes in rainfall patterns caused by global climate change?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Climate Rainfall Data Center (CRDC) at Colorado State University
rain.atmos.colostate.edu/CRDC

Global Change Data and Information System (GCDIS)
globalchange.gov
Comprehensive data sets on all aspects of global climate change, including precipitation.

Global Water Partnership
www.gwpforum.org/servlet/PSP

The World's Water: Information on the World's Freshwater Resources
www.worldwater.org

United States Geological Survey
bqs.usgs.gov/acidrain/
On-line data and reports on acid rain, atmospheric deposition, and precipitation chemistry.

RECOMMENDED READING

Barry, R. C. and J. Chorley. 2009. *Atmosphere, Weather, and Climate*, 9th edn. Routledge: London, U.K.
Discusses the ways in which the complex interactions between atmosphere and weather create world climates.

Bonan, G. G. 2008. *Ecological Climatology: Concepts and Applications*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
This book integrates the perspectives of atmospheric science and ecology to describe and analyze climatic impacts on natural and managed ecosystems. In turn, it discusses the feedback loop whereby the use and management of land by people affects climate. The book includes detailed information on the science of climatology as well as chapters on the interactions between climate and terrestrial ecosystems, including agroecosystems and urban ecosystems.

Garcia-Tejero, I. F., V. H. Durán-Zuazo, J. L. Muriel-Fernández, and C. R. Rodríguez-Pleguezuelo. 2011. *Water and Sustainable Agriculture.* Springer: Dordrecht, the Netherlands.
A good review of the benefits and risks of agricultural water use and potential strategies to improve agricultural sustainability through greater water use efficiency.

Glieck, P. 2011. *World's Water, 2010–2011: The Biennial Report on Freshwater Resources*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
The latest of a biennial series starting in 1998, this comprehensive volume discusses global freshwater resources and the political, economic, scientific, and technological issues associated with them.

Nabham, G. P. 1987. *The Desert Smells Like Rain: A Naturalist in Papago Indian Country*. North Point Press: San Francisco, CA.
A sensitive look at how water is the lifeblood of desert ecosystems and the humans who live there.

Oliver, J. E. and J. D. Hidore. 2009. *Climatology: An Atmospheric Science*, 3rd edn. Prentice Hall.
A systematic coverage of climate and climatology, as well as a thorough examination of the impact climate has on life and the basic processes of the atmosphere.

Postel, S. and B. Richter. 2003. *Rivers for Life: Managing Water for People and Nature*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
A realistic and positive focus on how to develop ways to ensure the sustainability of the world's vital water resources.

Reisner, M. 1986. *Cadillac Desert: The American West and Its Disappearing Water*. Island Press: Covelo, CA.
A perceptive political history of the capture and control of water for human development in the Western United States.

Shiva, V. 2002. *Water Wars: Privatization, Pollution and Profit*. South End Press: Cambridge, MA.
A critical analysis of the historical erosion of communal water rights, this book examines the international conflicts related to water, including trade, damming, mining, and aquafarming.

Whiteford, L. and S. Whiteford (eds.). 2005. *Globalization, Water, & Health: Resource Management in Times of Scarcity*. James Currey: Oxford, U.K.
This addresses global disparities in health and access to water as the two major threats to world stability, from a medical and ecological anthropology approach. It focused on deepening our understanding of the management, sale, and conceptualization of water as it affects human health.

Wilken, G. C. 1988. *Good Farmers: Traditional Agricultural Resource Management in Mexico and Central America*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.
An excellent study of the sustainability of traditional farming systems, with water management practices providing some of the best examples.

7 Wind

Wind is not always present as a factor of the environment, but it is nevertheless capable of having very significant impacts on agroecosystems. These impacts are a result of wind's ability to (1) exert a physical force on the plant body, (2) transport particles and materials—such as salt, pollen, soil, seeds, and fungal spores—into and out of agroecosystems, and (3) mix the atmosphere immediately surrounding plants, thus changing its composition, heat-dispersal properties, and effect on plant physiology.

When all these types of effects are taken into consideration, what may seem a relatively simple environmental factor becomes quite complex. Wind can simultaneously have both positive and negative impacts, or be desirable in some instances and undesirable in others. Wind is therefore a challenging factor to manage.

ATMOSPHERIC MOVEMENT

The earth's atmosphere is constantly in motion, circulating in ever-changing, complex, and locally variable patterns. This circulation is responsible for moving air masses and driving changes in weather. It is also responsible for creating the surface air movement we experience as wind.

The most basic process driving the atmosphere's movement is the differential heating and cooling of the earth's surface. In the equatorial regions, intense heating of the surface and the atmosphere just above it causes the air to expand and rise high into the atmosphere, creating a zone of low pressure. Cooler surface air further away from the equator moves in to take the place of the rising air mass, while high in the atmosphere the heated air moves poleward. In the polar regions, the opposite occurs. Air at the colder poles cools much more rapidly higher in the atmosphere, and descends to the surface, creating a high-pressure zone and the movement of surface air toward the equator.

As a result of the equatorial low-pressure zone and the polar high-pressure zones, large cells of circulation are created in each hemisphere, as shown in Figure 7.1. The flow of air in the equatorial cells and the polar cells creates an additional cell in the temperate region of each hemisphere. As a result, there is a zone of low pressure (rising air) at about 60°N latitude and 60°S latitude, and a zone of high pressure (descending air) at about 30°N and 30°S.

The rotation of the earth alters the flow of these large-scale circulation cells. Air currents are deflected to the right of the pressure gradient north of the equator and to the left in the south. This deflection is known as the **Coriolis effect**. At the surface, the end result is winds that tend to blow from the northeast and southwest in the Northern Hemisphere, and from the southeast and northwest in the Southern Hemisphere. These winds, typical of certain latitudinal bands, are known as the **prevailing winds**. They are shown in Figure 7.2.

Although they describe overall, macro patterns of atmospheric circulation at the surface, the prevailing winds are subject to a great deal of local and seasonal modification. This modification is the result of a number of factors, including the presence of mountain masses on the continents and the temperature gradients created by the differential heating and cooling rates of land and water.

All these factors together result in the formation of large, mobile high-pressure and low-pressure air masses that greatly influence local wind patterns as they move. In the Northern Hemisphere, air circulates around high-pressure cells in a clockwise direction and around low-pressure cells in a counterclockwise direction. In the Southern Hemisphere, the directions are reversed. In both hemispheres, air flows outward from areas of high pressure toward areas of low pressure.

LOCAL WINDS

Winds are also generated by local conditions that have to do with such factors as local topography and proximity to bodies of water. In certain areas these winds are relatively predictable.

In coastal areas in the summer, as well as around large bodies of water such as lakes or reservoirs, daytime winds (called sea or lake breezes) typically blow toward the land because the nearby land mass heats up faster than the body of water. The air above the land heats up, expands, and rises, and then the cooler air over the ocean flows inland to take the place of the rising air. At night the process can reverse as the land mass cools more rapidly than the water, and winds begin to move toward the water.

Slope winds are another form of local wind. In areas of mountainous topography, as the land radiates heat back to the atmosphere at night, the air close to the surface cools as well. Since cooler air is heavier, it begins to flow downslope. Such movement is very localized at first, but eventually winds moving down single canyons can join in an entire valley system to create a **mountain wind**. During the day, the opposite effect can occur, and a **valley wind** forms as heating of the valley floor causes warm air to rise upslope.

When large air masses are forced over a mountain range and down onto a plain or valley below, the falling air mass expands. As a result, it heats up and its relative humidity falls.

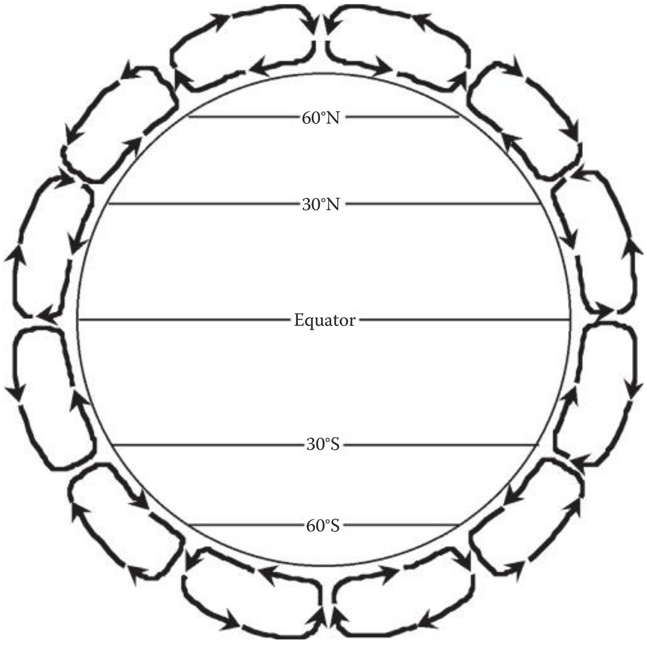


FIGURE 7.1 Latitudinal arrangement of atmospheric circulation cells.

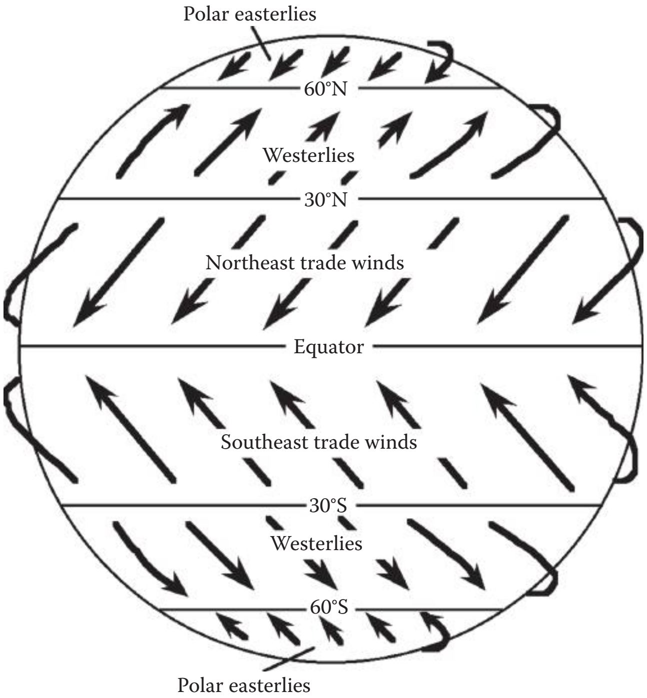


FIGURE 7.2 Pattern of prevailing winds.

This heating and drying process is called **katabatic warming** and is responsible for the familiar rain shadow effect. Winds caused by katabatic warming occur commonly in the winter along east-facing slopes of the Sierra Nevada and Rocky Mountain systems when a cyclonic storm system moves inland and pushes air ahead of itself, forcing the air over these mountain ranges. As the air descends down the eastern or lee side of the mountains, it creates warm winds known as chinooks that can be very gusty and cause rapid melting of snow on the surface. Since the ground usually stays frozen during these rather short-duration winds, plants can suffer considerable damage from desiccation.

A similar kind of wind occurs occasionally during the summer on the coastal slopes of southern California and central Chile. When high-pressure cells form inland, the falling air associated with these cells is pushed over the coastal range mountains and down to the coastal plains below. Called sundowners or Santa Anas, these warm winds can come up quickly at the end of the day, forcing temperatures to rise 10°C–15°C and relative humidity to plummet from near dew point to less than 20%, all in just a few minutes. This is a time of high fire danger, and crops can be damaged by the dry, gusting winds. A similar phenomenon can occur on the Isthmus of Tehuantepec in southern Mexico, where during the dry-season months, high-pressure systems on the western side of the country create hot and dry downslope winds on the eastern side. Called southers or *sures*, these winds accentuate the dryness of the dry-season months.

DIRECT EFFECTS OF WIND ON PLANTS

The physical effects of wind on organisms can be of considerable ecological importance. This is especially true in areas prone to more constant wind, such as flat plains, near the edge of the ocean, or in high mountain areas. In general, as with all factors of the environment, the magnitude of the wind's effect is dependent on its intensity, duration and timing.

DESICCATION

Each stomatal opening in the leaf of a plant leads to an air space in which gas exchange occurs at the surrounding cell wall membranes. This air space is saturated with humidity, and as long as the stomata are open, water vapor from inside the leaf flows out. When there is no air movement, the movement of saturated air outward from the stomata creates a **boundary layer** of saturated air around the leaf's surface. Air movement removes this boundary layer, increases transpiration, and increases overall water loss from the plant. The rate of desiccation increases proportionately with wind speed until a wind speed of about 10 km/h, where a maximum rate of loss is reached.

Normal water loss from the plant can be readily replaced by uptake from the roots and subsequent transport to the leaves. But if the rate of desiccation exceeds replacement, wilting can occur. Excessive wilting can seriously affect normal leaf function, especially photosynthesis, leading to slower growth of the entire plant and even death.

DWARFING

There is a direct correlation between wind and shortening of plant stature. The plants in alpine and coastal dune ecosystems are often short because of relatively constant high wind velocities. Crop plants that grow in areas with constant wind normally have shorter stature than the same crops planted in areas free of wind. Short stature is the result of constant desiccation causing smaller cells and a more compact plant. Where winds are more variable, and extensive periods of calm alternate with periods of high wind, plants tend not to be dwarfed.

Deformation

When winds are both relatively constant and mostly from the same direction, they can permanently alter the growth form of plants. Windbreaks that show bent or deformed plant development are good indicators of a constant prevailing wind. Deformation can take many forms, from a permanent lean away from the wind, to a flag shape or a prostrate habit. Windborne ice is especially effective in contributing to the deformation of vegetation.

Plant Damage and Uprooting

If excessive winds are relatively unusual events, and especially if they occur during heavy rain or snowfall, wind can cause damage to standing plants. Leaves can be shredded or removed, leaf surfaces can be abraded, branches can be broken off the trunk, tops can be removed, and whole plants can be uprooted. In areas where hurricanes, cyclones, or tornadoes occur, even mature plants that have been growing many years can suffer severe damage. Single tall trees left following selective logging are very prone to wind fall once they lose the protective environment of surrounding trees in a forest. This kind of damage demonstrates the importance of windbreaks (discussed later in this chapter).

In agroecosystems, wind damage occurs most frequently in annual crops nearing maturity, when the plants are top heavy with grain or fruit. This type of damage, where the crop stand is flattened to the ground, is called **lodging** (Figure 7.3). In fruit crops, such as apples or plums, wind can both diminish pollination at the flowering stage and knock fruits off the tree before picking can occur.

FIGURE 7.3 **Lodged corn knocked over by gusty, rain-laden winds near Cárdenas, Tabasco, Mexico.**

Changes in the Composition of Air Surrounding Plants

Apart from desiccation and the physical alteration of plant form, wind can also change the quality of air surrounding plants. The air immediately around an organism is important since it is through the atmospheric medium that gas exchange and heat exchange can take place. The atmosphere directly affects plants by providing the CO_2 used in photosynthesis and the oxygen used for respiration.

Normal air is composed of 78% nitrogen, 21% oxygen, and 0.03% CO_2. (The remaining less than 1% is a mixture of water vapor, dust, smoke, pollutants, and other gases.) In the immediate atmosphere surrounding plants, however, levels of oxygen and CO_2 vary considerably since plants produce oxygen and take in CO_2. During the day oxygen levels close to plants can rise dramatically, accompanied by a drop in CO_2 as a result of photosynthetic uptake. Plant growth can be slowed if the concentration of CO_2 goes too low, because photosynthesis is limited. Air movement, however, acts to mix the air around plants, disturbing the oxygen-rich boundary layer around leaves and accelerating the diffusion of CO_2 toward the stomata. In this way, wind can actually be beneficial to plants.

OTHER EFFECTS OF WIND

Wind impacts individual plants directly, as detailed earlier. But wind has agroecosystem-level effects as well because of its ability to transport materials.

Wind Erosion

In any region with low and variable rainfall (or the potential for drought), occasional or frequent high-velocity winds, and high evaporation losses from the soil surface, wind erosion of soil can be a problem. Under such conditions, a loose, dry, smooth, and finely granulated soil surface lacking or partially lacking vegetative cover is easily eroded by wind.

Loss of soil by wind erosion involves two processes: detachment of particles and transport of particles. Wind agitates loose soil particles and eventually lifts and detaches them from the soil aggregates they may have been part of. These particles are then transported in different ways depending on their size and the velocity of the wind. Small soil particles that bounce across the surface, staying within 30 cm of the surface, are transported by a process called **saltation**. Under most conditions, saltation accounts for 50%–70% of the wind movement of soil. The impact of saltating particles makes larger particles roll and slide along the surface, creating **soil creep**, which accounts for 5%–25% of soil movement. The most visible form of transport is when particles the size of fine sand or smaller are moved parallel to the surface and become airborne. Wind turbulence can carry clouds of these airborne particles several kilometers upward into the atmosphere and hundreds of kilometers away to eventually settle or be washed out of the air. Generally, such erosion is about 15% of the total, but in some cases has been known to surpass 40%.

When agriculture is practiced in regions of the world where unprotected soil is subject to wind erosion, great amounts of topsoil can be lost (Nordstrom and Hotta 2004; Smith and Leys 2009). Desertification in the Sahel of Africa was greatly intensified in the 1970s by wind erosion of the soil caused by drought, overgrazing, and intensive cultivation of soils on marginal lands. The giant clouds of windblown soil and dust generated during the great “dust bowl” of the 1930s in the United States are still one of the most graphic examples of the physical impact of wind on farming systems through soil loss.

Soil removal from one place and its deposition in others are dual sides to the wind erosion problem when it occurs. Reduced soil productivity and crop performance are the ultimate results unless appropriate precautions are taken when agriculture is practiced in locations subject to wind erosion.

TRANSPORT OF OCEAN SALT

At locations along seacoasts, the physical effect of wind can be combined with the injurious chemical effect of salt deposition. When waves break, bubbles and tiny droplets of salt water are formed and lifted into the air; in the presence of wind, they can be carried inland and the salt they contain deposited on leaf surfaces. Windblown salt and salt spray can burn the edges of leaves and even cause leaf drop (Figure 7.4).

Damage from wind-transported salt can occur many kilometers inland from the coast, but the most damaging effects of salt are seen close to the coastline. Wind storms without rain cause the most salt damage.

FIGURE 7.4 **A coastal shrub showing leaf burn and leaf drop caused by wind-deposited ocean salt near Paraiso, Tabasco, Mexico.** Note the accumulated pruning effect at the left on the part of the plant that is directly exposed to the wind.

The transport and deposition of salt by wind can have a major impact on the zonation of vegetation along the coast, and requires that only salt-tolerant crops be planted in areas subject to deposition. In some locations, natural topographic features along the coast, such as sand dunes, block windblown salt, allowing salt-sensitive crops to be planted on their leeward side. Avocado trees, for example, were once planted in such protected locations along the coast of California from Santa Barbara to San Diego (but more recently such protected areas have become much sought-after locations for residential home construction). Windbreaks may also be used to achieve the same effect.

TRANSPORT OF DISEASE AND PEST ORGANISMS

Wind serves as a means of transport for a range of organisms that are pests or diseases in agroecosystems. Bacteria and fungi depend on wind to transport spores from infected plants to new hosts, and many insect pest species take advantage of the wind to move long distances in the environment. Several aphids, for example, have a winged stage for dispersal and a wingless stage for development of sedentary pest populations on host plants. The wings of these aphids do not serve for much more than holding the insects aloft while the wind carries them where it may. Of course, if the landing site is an uninfested host plant, a pest problem can develop.

The females of many insect pests, such as the apple codling moth, release a sex pheromone and then depend on wind dispersal of the chemical in order to attract males for mating. The seeds of a large number of unwanted plants or weeds in agroecosystems are dispersed by wind as well. Since small propagules and even small organisms can be lifted hundreds of meters into the air on wind currents and then transported several hundred kilometers away, it is very difficult for farmers to escape the constant “rain” of potential problems. We will deal with the agroecological management of such dispersal problems in Chapter 17.

BENEFICIAL EFFECTS OF WIND

Some of the most important beneficial effects of wind take place at the microclimatic level. Internal to the agroecosystem, especially in the canopies of cropping systems, air movement is essential for mixing the atmosphere. Good air circulation maintains optimal gradients of CO_2, disperses excess humidity, and can even increase active gas exchange. Adequately mixed air lowers humidity levels at the leaf surface, thereby reducing the potential for many diseases. In warm climates, wind also has the important effect of enhancing convective and evaporative cooling in the direct sun.

Wind is also required for the production of grain crops such as corn, oats, and wheat. These crop plants are wind pollinated, and depend on wind to distribute pollen from the male structures of plants to the seed-producing female structures of other plants.

MODIFYING AND HARNESSING WIND IN AGROECOSYSTEMS

An understanding of the impacts that wind can have on agroecosystems, as well as the mechanisms of those impacts, gives farmers the opportunity to develop means of both mitigating the negative effects and taking advantage of positive effects. In addition, the energy of wind can be harnessed for an array of uses in agriculture.

Measuring Wind

Wind is usually measured with a device known as an anemometer. Cup anemometers consist of three or four horizontally rotating arms with small cups on the ends fixed to a vertical shaft that activates a dial or recorder as it turns. Such a device will record wind from any horizontal direction, and based on the total revolutions measured, average wind velocity over time can be determined. A fan anemometer can record lower wind speeds more accurately, but has to be pointed in the direction of the wind. Thermal anemometers, which operate on the basis of the relation between ventilation and heat transfer, are used for very low wind speeds that are not recorded well with fan or cup systems. Other types of equipment exist to record wind gusts and wind direction.

Measuring average wind speed and direction is only one part of gaining an understanding of patterns of air movement in an agroecosystem. It is also important to know how local wind patterns are reduced to microclimatic patterns as wind encounters barriers. The barriers can be individual plants, natural topographic variation, or intentionally placed barriers of some kind. Use of such barriers will depend on how they effect the wind we are trying to modify or take advantage of.

Techniques for Modifying Wind Patterns and Mitigating Wind Effects

There are many ways to manage the wind environment in cropping systems. Some are as simple as orienting the planting of rows of a crop in such a way as to funnel a prevailing wind through the crop; others are more dramatic, such as planting windbreaks or shelterbelts, or using intercropping systems that combine wind-sensitive crops with more tolerant ones.

Windbreaks

Windbreaks (also known as shelterbelts and hedgerows) are structures—usually made up of trees—that modify wind flow for the purpose of reducing soil erosion by wind, increasing crop yields, protecting the farmstead and other structures, or realizing any combination of these goals. Windbreaks are not meant to stop the wind, but rather to change its course and rate of flow. They are usually oriented perpendicularly to the prevailing wind (if their goal is modification of flow rate) or along the flow angle of the wind (if their goal is redirection). When trees are used to create permanent windbreaks in agroecosystems, the result is a form of agroforestry (Figure 7.5).

FIGURE 7.5 **Windbreak for improving the microclimate of an adjacent apple orchard near Lincoln, New Zealand.** This windbreak is made up of willow trees (*Salix* sp.).

Extensive research has been carried out on windbreak technology and the role of such structures in cropping systems all over the world (Brandle and Hintz 1988; Brandle et al. 2004; Stigter 2010; Zhao et al. 2013). Windbreaks have been shown to dramatically alter wind flow patterns and velocity, and as a result, to reduce many of the negative impacts of wind described earlier while taking advantage of some of the positive effects. Ultimately, crop plant and animal yields benefit (Figure 7.6).

The primary effect of a windbreak is reduction of wind velocity. A good windbreak can reduce wind velocity as much as 80% for a distance of up to 10 tree heights downwind from the windbreak, and often for a distance as long as 2 tree heights to the windward side. The area in the lee of the barrier is known as the "quiet zone", a wedge-shaped area of greatly reduced wind speed with moderate turbulence and small eddies. Above the quiet zone and for a distance of several tree heights more downwind, there is a "wake zone" of large eddies, more turbulence, and less reduction in wind speed (Figure 7.7).

FIGURE 7.6 Windbreaks in the arid region near Eilat, Israel. These windbreaks reduce evapotranspirational water loss for the irrigated annual crops grown between them.

Since a windbreak creates an obstacle to the wind, flow is actually deflected upward as it approaches the barrier. Near the top of the windbreak, flow is compressed and accelerated. Just downwind and behind the barrier, flow is reduced to close to zero with a solid windbreak, and to intermediate speeds with a porous barrier. There is a zone of strong velocity shear just above the top of the windbreak that widens and follows the flowline as the air moves downwind, eventually mixing with the air in the zone of turbulence until it returns once again to its normal speed at as much as 20–30 heights to the leeward.

The density and porosity of a windbreak have a significant effect on the distance over which the windbreak can alter wind flow. Denser barriers produce the largest velocity reductions directly to the leeward, but the largest wind shear between the retarded air behind the windbreak and the accelerated zone above. Denser barriers also create more turbulence, since kinetic energy loss from the original flow must be balanced by an increase in kinetic energy in the eddies. This leads to a quicker recovery of wind speed behind the barrier, and therefore a reduced protected area. A barrier with a porosity of 40% has been shown to reduce wind speed effectively for a distance of 30 heights downwind (Tibke 1988).

Besides reduction of soil erosion, the most tangible effect of windbreaks is enhancement of the final yield of the crop. Higher yield volume is the most obvious gain, but earlier harvest time and better harvest quality are important benefits as well. Less stress in the lee of the barrier allows crops to allocate more energy to vegetative or reproductive growth and less to maintenance. Less physical damage occurs, transpirational losses are minimized, and higher temperatures and humidity contribute to better quantity and quality of production.

In an extensive review of research on the benefits of windbreaks to field and forage crops around the world, Kort (1988) found that most of these crops show better yields when grown in fields with windbreaks, but that some benefit more than others. A broad-leafed forage crop such as alfalfa, with a high rate of transpirational water loss in the wind, appears to benefit most from a windbreak, and short-cycle grains such as spring wheat and oats benefit the least. Kort's findings are presented in Table 7.1.

In a review of the influence of windbreaks on vegetable and specialty crops, Baldwin (1988) reports that there is overwhelming evidence to support and illustrate the positive benefits of wind shelter. Yield increases range from 5% to 50% for a variety of crops including beans, sugar beets, tomatoes, potatoes, melons, tobacco, berries, cacao, coffee, cotton, rubber, and okra. Most benefits occur within 10 heights on the leeward side, with maximum benefits seen between 3 and 6 heights. Benefits are also seen within 0–3 heights to windward. An example of how the improved yield caused by a windbreak varies with distance from the windbreak is shown for soybeans in Figure 7.8. With this crop, peak benefit was seen at 4 heights to the leeward; interestingly, however, yields were reduced within a distance of

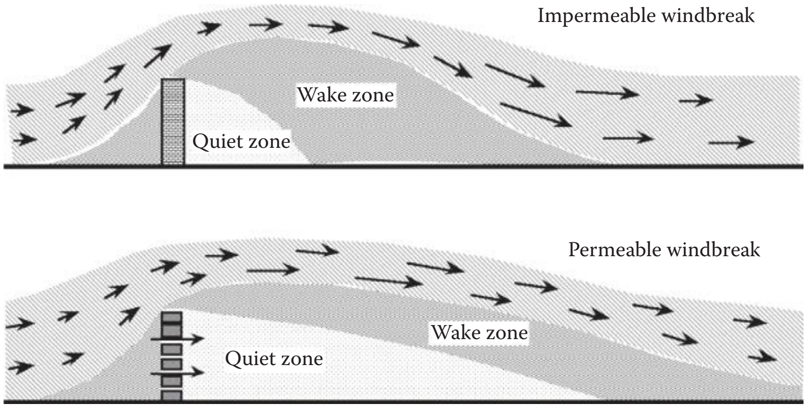


FIGURE 7.7 Wind profiles of a barrier windbreak and filter windbreak. A filter (permeable) windbreak reduces windspeed more effectively than a barrier (impermeable) windbreak and does so over a greater distance. (Adapted from McNaughton, K.G., *Agri. Ecosyst. Environ.*, 22/23, 17, 1988 and Guyot, G., Les effets aérodynamiques et microclimatiques des brise-vent et des amenagements régionaux, in: W.S. Reifsnyder and T.O. Darnhofer (Eds.), *Meteorology and Agroforestry*, ICRAF, Nairobi, Kenya, 1989, pp. 485–520.)

TABLE 7.1
Relative Impacts of Windbreaks on Yields of Various Grain and Forage Crops

Crop	Yield Increase, in Percent, Relative to Fields without Barriers
Alfalfa	99
Millet	44
Clover	25
Barley	25
Rice	24
Winter wheat	23
Rye	19
Mustard	13
Corn	12
Flax	11
Spring wheat	8
Oats	3

Source: Kort, J., *Agric. Ecosyst. Environ.*, 22/23, 165, 1988.

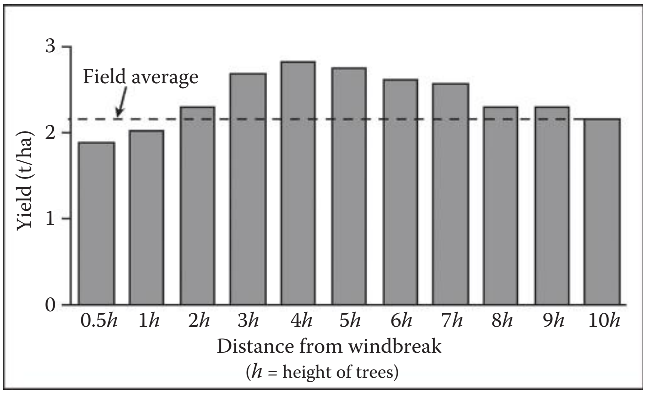


FIGURE 7.8 Influence of windbreak protection on soybean yield at varying distances from the windbreak. (Data from Baldwin, C.S. and E.F. Johnston, Windbreaks on the Farm, Report #527, Publications of the Ontario Ministry of Agriculture and Food Provision, Toronto, Ontario, Canada, 1984.)

1 height, presumably from either shading, root competition, or allelopathy.

With vegetable and specialty crops, crop quality improvement may be as important a benefit as increased yield. Crop quality can be improved in a variety of ways, including an increase in sugar content in crops such as sugar beets and strawberries, reduced abrasion by windblown sand on crops such as melons, and earlier ripening for most crops. Since vegetable and specialty crops are usually highly susceptible to wind damage and wind abrasion, improvements in crop quality are easily converted into better economic return, which adds to the gains from yield increases.

Windbreaks have also been shown to provide substantial benefits in the production of orchard and vineyard crops (Norton 1988). Year-round protection is critical to the survival and proper development of trees and vines. Orchard microclimate modification in the form of a windbreak can improve pollination and fruit set, in turn leading to greater yields. Mechanical damage is also reduced, improving fruit quality and economic gain. Proper windbreak design and management can also reduce evaporation, increase the flexibility of the application of pest management materials, and even assist in frost management. Wind-protected temperate fruits such as plums, pears, and grapes show yield increases from 10% to 37%, subtropical fruits such as kiwi, oranges, and lemons show yield increases up to 30% (as well as important gains in fruit quality), and tropical fruits such as bananas show yield gains of at least 15%, primarily due to a reduction in lodging of the mature stems.

Planting Techniques

An alternative to permanent windbreaks made up of trees or shrubs is the planting of annuals within the field that work to protect the main crop from wind. Corn (*Zea mays*), sunflowers (*Helianthus annuus*), and a range of grain crops such as sorghum (*Sorghum bicolor*) and pearl millet (*Pennisetum americanum*) are examples of annual plants used for this purpose. Such annual barriers have certain advantages over perennial woody shelterbelts in that they are easier, faster, and cheaper to establish, and may allow more flexibility in the farming operations. Like windbreaks, annual barrier plants reduce windspeed, thus improving moisture and temperature conditions for adjacent plants. They are usually planted at the same time as the main crop, often as individual rows interspersed in the main crop. Another technique is to plant the barrier plants (often rye) as a fall covercrop and then to reduce this crop to alternating strips in the spring by tilling when the main crop is planted. Research has shown that barrier porosity of 40%–50% has the best impact on crop yields, and that plants used to form the barrier need to be resistant to lodging, spaced according to the needs of the associated crop and the local wind conditions, and established early enough to give the necessary protection. Because the planting of annual windbreaks is incorporated into the process of planting the primary crop, this technique offers considerable flexibility to the farmer. Minimal time is lost and minimal space is occupied by the barrier.

Sunflowers are frequently used as annual wind barriers to improve crop conditions for tomatoes, broccoli, lettuce, and other annual crops in windy areas of the Salinas Valley of California, and corn is often used to protect strawberry crops from abrasion of the leaves, fruit damage, and reduction of the dispersal of pest mites in coastal areas of central California. Yields of annual crops such as snap beans and fresh market tomatoes have been shown to be improved by as much as 30% with the use of such barriers (Bilbro and Fryrear 1988).

Crop plants themselves can also be planted to make them more resistant to lodging and other forms of wind damage. For crops that are able to produce adventitious roots on the lower stem, deeper planting can help anchor the plant more firmly in the ground. Cruciferous crops such as Brussels sprouts, cabbage, and broccoli benefit greatly when

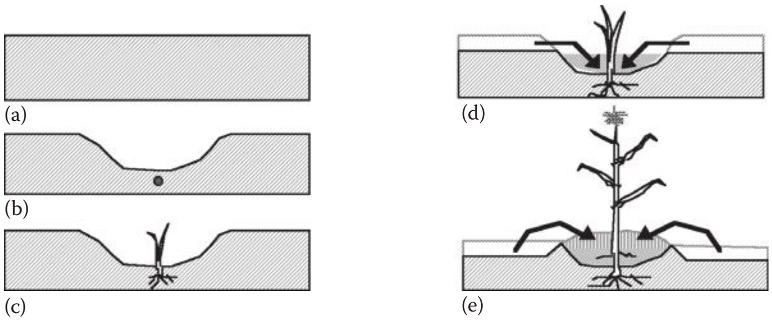


FIGURE 7.9 Soil mounding to reduce lodging in corn (a). Seeds are planted at the bottoms of furrows (b). After a period of growth (c), the furrows are filled in with soil from between the rows (d). Soil continues to be mounded around the corn plants as they grow (e), creating raised rows in which the corn is firmly anchored. The technique also has the advantages of collecting scarce rainfall for the seed (b) and allowing removal and burial of weeds when the soil between the rows is moved (d, e).

transplanted seedlings are buried deeply enough to cover most of the stem below the cotyledons, allowing the plant to form more roots as it develops. Otherwise, the small seedling with a few leaves can be whipped around like a kite on a string if it is too windy, eventually breaking off at ground level. In windy areas of Mexico, corn seed is often planted deeply in the base of a furrow, so that as the plant develops, soil can be built up around the base of the stem as a part of cultivation for weed control. By the time the crop is almost fully developed, the corn plants appear to be planted on the top of the rows, and as a result of their stronger anchoring in the soil are much more resistant to the lodging that can occur when convective thunderstorms create high-velocity winds (Figure 7.9).

Timing of Planting

Crop rotations can be used to adjust cropping systems to wind patterns. Crops prone to wind damage can be planted during less-windy seasons (assuming that other conditions are adequate) and followed by wind-tolerant crops. If wind erosion is more of an issue than wind damage to the crop, it might be advisable not to open up an entire field to the wind. Instead, a portion of the field can be planted earlier to one crop, which can then serve as a barrier for strips of crops planted at a later time. Another option for prevention of wind erosion is to grow low-residue crops in protected areas and high-residue crops in more exposed areas of the farm.

Genetic Varieties Resistant to Wind Effects

A useful way to prevent lodging in grain crops is to plant a genetic stock that is shorter in stature than usual. Local farmers on the Isthmus of Tehuantepec in southern Mexico, for example, where wind occurs throughout the growing season, have selected for corn with a short stature, thicker stem, and well-developed root system. These local varieties are highly resistant to lodging. One of these varieties, called *tuxpan*, was used as the genetic stock for breeding with improved green revolution varieties to develop shorter, lodging-resistant corn with a higher seed load, as well as to develop varieties more appropriate for harvesting by mechanized combines.

Harnessing Wind

We have primarily discussed ways that a farmer can manipulate wind in order to take advantage of its positive effects or to mitigate the negative impacts. But wind has other uses in farming systems that help contribute to the larger goal of sustainability. Harnessing the energy of wind can help reduce external-input and nonrenewable energy use, especially the burning of fossil fuels. This is becoming especially important for small farm systems and farmers in the developing world.

Many methods of harnessing or using the wind are quite simple. For example, the wind can be used to clean seeds of chaff and leaves (winnowing). The wind can also be used for drying. Harvested bean plants can be hung in preparation for thrashing, or fruit such as raisins or apricots can be laid out to be dried by the wind. A light breeze aids considerably in removing the boundary layer of moisture that can form around the plant or plant product.

Finally, windmills have been used to harness wind power for a large range of farming activities, from pumping water to generating electricity for use in farming operations or the farm homestead. Farms in isolated areas, especially in developing countries, where wind is a constant factor, are especially appropriate candidates for the use of wind power.

Wind and Sustainability

Wind is an important component of climate and weather all over the world. It is also a factor that often has disruptive or damaging impacts on agroecosystems. By learning how to design agroecosystems so they are capable of withstanding and even mitigating the negative aspects of wind, we take steps toward sustainability. But the most important steps will come with the development of design and management strategies that accentuate the very positive role that air in motion can play in agriculture. In some ways, these steps may involve a return to the use of old technologies, such as windbreaks and hedgerows. Nevertheless, there is a critical need to understand the ecological basis for using such practices or strategies. Only then can we develop another measurable component of sustainability, and as a result, help establish a more active role for windbreaks, wind turbines, and the management of daily wind patterns in sustainable farming systems.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. In certain cases, an ecological factor may be limiting in the absence of wind but not limiting when wind is present. What are some examples?
2. The most common argument for not using (or even removing) windbreaks and shelterbelts is that they take up valuable crop production land. What are the primary counterarguments for this "fencerow to fencerow" farming mentality?
3. Wind is one of those factors that can simultaneously have negative and positive effects. What are some possible examples of this situation? How would you manage the wind in these examples?
4. What are some of the primary barriers to the broader use of the free and renewable source of energy contained in wind?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Wind Erosion Research Unit of the US Department of Agriculture
www.weru.ksu.edu

Union of Concerned Scientists: Wind Power and Agriculture
www.ucsusa.org/clean_energy/smart-energy-solutions/increase-renewables/farming-the-wind-wind-power.html

Windbreaks Guide, Ohio Department of Natural Resources
www.dnr.state.oh.us/portals/18/landowner/pdf/windbreaks_guide.pdf
An extensive, well-illustrated guide to windbreak planting for Midwest farmers.

RECOMMENDED READING

Brandle, J. R., L. Hodges, and X. H. Zhou. 2004. Windbreaks in North American agricultural systems. *Agroforestry Systems* 61(1): 65–78.

Brandle, J. R. and D. L. Hintz (Eds.). 1988. Special issue: Windbreak technology. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 22/23: 1–598.
Proceedings of a symposium that brought together experts from all over the world on the design and use of windbreaks in agriculture. It continues to be a primary windbreak reference.

Burke, S. 2001. *Windbreaks*. Elsevier Science: New York.
This comprehensive book includes both theoretical and practical considerations for establishing and utilizing windbreaks. It is written in a way that will be useful to a wide audience, including students, researchers, and farmers.

Cleugh, H. A. 1998. Effects of windbreaks on airflow, microclimates and crop yields. *Agroforestry Systems* 41(1): 55–84.
The mechanisms by which a porous windbreak modifies airflow, microclimates, and hence crop yields are addressed, based upon recent wind tunnel experiments, field observations, and numerical modeling. This paper is thus an update to the excellent reviews in Brandle and Hintz (1988).

Coutts, M. P. and J. Grace. 1995. *Wind and Trees*. Cambridge University Press: New York.
A full review of the ecological and physiological impacts of wind on trees, and the adaptations trees have developed to withstand these impacts.

Geiger, R. 1965. *The Climate near the Ground*. Harvard University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
The definitive source of information on the formation of microclimates and how they impact living organisms.

Morgan, R. P. C. 2009. *Soil Erosion and Conservation*. 3rd edn., reprinted. Blackwell Publishing: Willingston, VT.
A complete review of the processes, control methods, and conservation programs related to soil erosion, including updated information on the mechanics of and responses to wind erosion.

Moss, A. E. 1940. Effect of wind-driven salt water. *Journal of Forestry* 38: 421–425.
A key research review on how wind and salt combine to form an important factor in the environment.

Nordstrom, K. F. and S. Hotta. 2004. Wind erosion from cropland in the USA: A review of problems, solutions, and prospects. *Geoderma* 121(3–4): 157–167.
An excellent review of the multiple strategies that can be employed to reduce or eliminate soil erosion caused by the wind.

Reifsnyner, W. S. and T. O. Darnhofer. 1989. *Meteorology and Agroforestry*. International Council for Research in Agroforestry: Nairobi, Kenya.
A general reference on wind energy and an excellent review of how trees in agriculture can play important roles in the modification of microclimatological factors and conditions.

Shao, Y. 2008. *Physics and Modeling of Wind Erosion*. 2nd edn. Springer: New York.
A summary of the recent developments in wind erosion research, providing a key resource for researchers and postgraduate students engaged in wind erosion studies. Topics range from global climate change to air quality and land conservation.

Stigter, K. (Ed.). 2010. *Applied Agrometeorology*. Springer: New York.
A comprehensive global review of the management of meteorological factors in agricultural systems, including wind, with examples of both research and application.

8 Soil

The word *soil*, in its broadest sense, refers to that portion of the earth's crust where plants are anchored; this includes everything from the deep soils of a river bottomland to a crevice in a rock with a bit of dust and plant debris. More specifically, the soil is that weathered superficial layer of the earth that is mixed with living organisms and the products of their metabolic activities and decay (Odum and Barrett 2005). Soil includes material derived from rocks, organic and inorganic substances derived from living organisms, and the air and water occupying the spaces between soil particles. As a distinct ecological and geophysical zone, the soil is often referred to as the **pedosphere** (*pedon* is the ancient Greek word for soil or earth).

Soil is a complex, living, changing, and dynamic component of the agroecosystem. It is subject to alteration, and can either be degraded or wisely managed. In much of present-day agriculture, with the availability of an array of mechanical and chemical technologies for rapid soil modification, soil is all too often viewed primarily as a growth medium, something from which to extract a harvest. Farmers often take the soil for granted, and pay little attention to the complex ecological processes that take place below the surface. The premise of this chapter, in contrast, is that a thorough understanding of the ecology of the soil system is a key part of comprehending the soil as an environmental factor affecting crop plants, and therefore in designing and managing sustainable agroecosystems.

As an ecosystem unto itself, soil is more complex than the other factors of the environment we have considered so far. This complexity requires that we step outside the boundaries of the autecological perspective to understand the interactions within the soil ecosystem and the ways in which farming practices affect this system. In this sense the soil is also far from being an *a*biotic factor like those we have examined up to this point. It is very much alive, as we will discuss in this chapter. Nevertheless, even as we consider all the interacting components of the soil ecosystem, including the biotic, we can still understand the soil as a totality, an environmental factor much like wind or temperature that has particular effects on crop plants and can be managed for the benefit of the agroecosystem.

PROCESSES OF SOIL FORMATION AND DEVELOPMENT

From an agricultural perspective, an "ideal" soil is made up of 45% minerals, 5% organic matter, and 50% space, with the space filled half with water and half with air. It is hard to find anything that we can call a typical soil, however, since each site or location has unique properties that ultimately determine the final outcome of the soil formation process.

Biological processes combine with physical and chemical processes in each particular climatic region and location to form soil. Once formed, soil changes and develops due to these and other biological, physical, and chemical processes. With variations in slope, climate, and type of vegetative cover, many different soils can form in close juxtaposition with one another, even though the parent material may be fairly similar.

Natural processes of soil formation and development take considerable time. For example, it is estimated that only about 0.5–1.5 tons of topsoil/acre is formed annually in areas of corn and wheat production in the central Midwest region of the United States (Daily 1995). In contrast, about 4–5 tons of soil/acre is estimated to erode from conventionally farmed land in these areas (NRCS 2010). Although this estimated rate of soil erosion in the US Midwest represents a reduction from previous years—an estimated 7 tons/acre in 1982, for example—it still overwhelms the ability of natural processes to compensate.

Formation of Regolith

As a whole, the layer of unconsolidated material between the soil surface and the solid bedrock of the earth below is called the **regolith**. The most basic element of the regolith is its mineral component, made up of soil particles formed from the breakdown of the bedrock or parent material. At any particular location, these soil particles may have been derived from the bedrock below, or they may have been transported from elsewhere. Where a soil's mineral particles have been formed in place from the bedrock below, the soil is a **residual soil**. Where the mineral particles have been carried from some other location by wind, water, gravity, or ice, the soil is a **transported soil**.

Physical Weathering

The weathering of rock and rock minerals is the original source of mineral soil particles, whether the particles remain in a location or are moved elsewhere. The combined forces of water, wind, temperature, and gravity slowly peel and flake rock away, accompanied by the gradual decomposition of the minerals themselves. Water can seep into cracks and crevices in rock, and with heating and cooling causing alternating swelling and contracting, rock begins to fragment. In addition, the carbon dioxide contained in the water that seeps into cracks can form carbonic acid, pulling elements such as calcium and magnesium from the minerals of the rock and forming carbonates, and in the process weakening the crystalline structure of the rock and making it more susceptible to further physical weathering. Finer particles mix with larger particles, promoted by the physical movement created by the combined forces of gravity, temperature change, and alternating wetting and drying. Even the abrasive forces of rocks against each other during this movement can form smaller particles. Eventually the unconsolidated regolith takes form.

Depending on local conditions and geological history, the regolith can be recently formed, lightly weathered, and made up of mostly primary minerals, or it may have been subjected to intensive weathering and be made up of more resistant materials such as quartz.

Transport

As rock is broken down into smaller and looser materials, it can remain in place and eventually form residual soils, but a more likely fate is for it to be carried some distance and deposited. The forces of wind, water movement, gravity, and glacial ice movement can all transport weathered soil particles. Transported soils have different classifications depending on the manner in which their particles were transported. Soil is called

- **Colluvium** where it has been transported by gravity;
- **Alluvium** where it has been transported by the movement of water;
- **Glacial soil** where it has been transported by the movement of glaciers;
- **Eolian soil** where it has been transported by wind.

CHEMICAL WEATHERING

Once physical weathering has produced regolith, chemical weathering can work on the soil as well. Chemical weathering includes natural chemical processes that aid in the breakdown of parent materials, the conversion of materials from one form to another in the soil, and the movement of materials within the soil. Four different chemical processes are of primary importance in soil formation and development: hydration, hydrolysis, solution, and oxidation.

Hydration is the addition of water molecules to a mineral's chemical structure. It is an important cause of crystal swelling and fracturing. **Hydrolysis** occurs when various cations of the original crystalline structure of silicate minerals are replaced by hydrogen ions, causing decomposition. In regolith with low pH, the greater concentration of H+ accelerates hydrolysis. The release of organic acids as a by-product of the metabolic activities of living organisms, or from the decomposition of dead organic matter, can add to this process as well. **Solution** occurs when parent materials with a high concentration of easily soluble minerals (such as nitrates or chlorides) go into solution in water. Limestone is particularly susceptible to solution in the presence of water high in carbonic acid; in extreme cases the solution of limestone leads to the formation of limestone caves in areas of underground water flow. Finally, **oxidation** is the conversion of elements such as iron from their original reduced form into an oxidized form in the presence of water or air. Softening of the crystalline structure usually accompanies this process.

Once minerals are released from the consolidated parent material, another chemical process that is of great importance is the formation of secondary minerals, the most important being clay minerals. Clay mineralogy is a very complex field of study, but it is important to understand some basic aspects of clay formation, since they have such dramatic impacts on plant growth and development.

Clay minerals are very small particles in the soil, but they affect everything from water retention to nutrient availability, as will be discussed elsewhere. They are formed by complex processes in which silicate minerals are chemically modified and reorganized. Depending on the combination of climatic conditions and parent material, the secondary minerals that are formed are of two basic types: **silicate clays** that are predominantly made up of microscopic aluminum silicate plates with different arrangements and the presence or absence of other elements such as iron and magnesium; and **hydroxide clays** that lack a definite crystalline structure and are made up of hydrated iron and aluminum oxides in which many of the silicon ions have been replaced.

Eventually, the clays found in any soil will be a mixture of many subtypes of these two basic types of secondary clay minerals, although one or a few subtypes may predominate. When silicate clays dominate, there are abundant sites for absorbing cations, giving the soil a relatively high productive potential. When hydroxide clays dominate—as in many humid tropical regions—fewer cation sites are available, making the soil more difficult to farm because of its poor ability to exchange nutrient cations.

Organic matter, from either plant residues or the activities of living organisms, has important impacts on all of these chemical weathering processes of parent material and greatly accelerates the formation of the regolith.

BIOTIC PROCESSES

Sooner or later, depending on the consistency of the regolith, plants establish themselves on the weathered material. They send roots down that draw nutrients from mineral matter, store them for a while in plant matter, but eventually return them to the soil surface. Deep roots further break down the regolith, capture nutrients that have leached from the upper surface, and add them to the soil surface in an organic form. Plant residue then serves as an important source of energy for the bacteria, fungi, earthworms, and other soil organisms that establish in the area. Once these living components of the soil become established, they play a primary role in controlling and accelerating further soil development, and then in regulating and carrying out the biological, chemical, and physical processes that are of such importance in maintaining soil fertility.

Biologically mediated soil development occurs as the living organisms in the soil break down plant residue and other organic matter and slowly reduce it to simpler forms and its most basic constituents. In the process of **decomposition**, freshly dead or excreted organic matter is broken down by arthropods, earthworms, nematodes, protozoans, fungi, and bacteria into ever smaller bits and simpler organic compounds as it passes through several trophic levels in the soil food web. Decomposed organic matter can then undergo the process of **humification**, in which it is transformed by soil microbes and other organisms into relatively stable organic compounds that are collectively termed **humus**. Humus plays a significant role in soil structure, nutrient availability, and other soil characteristics, as we will see in the succeeding text. In the process of **mineralization**, humus and other organic matter are broken down even further, mostly by fungi and bacteria, into inorganic (or "mineral") compounds such as CO_2, N_2, salts, and H_2O, some of which stays in the soil and some of which enters the atmosphere.

Even though humus is relatively stable, it does have a limited lifetime in the soil. Some of it is constantly being mineralized, but new humus is also being continually produced—as long as organic matter in some form is being added to the soil. In healthy soils, an equilibrium point is reached where the rate at which new humus forms is approximately equal to the rate at which it is removed from the soil by mineralization.

SOIL HORIZONS

Over time, the localized chemical, physical, and biological processes in the regolith lead to the development of observable layers in the soil, called **horizons**. Together, the horizons in a particular location give each soil a distinctive **soil profile**. Each horizon of the soil profile has a distinct combination of characteristics.

SOIL PROFILE

In general terms, a soil profile is made up of four major horizons: the organic, or O horizon, and three mineral horizons. The O horizon lies at the soil surface; immediately below it is the A horizon, where organic matter accumulates and where soil particle structure can be granular, crumblike, or platy. Under the A horizon is the B horizon, where materials leached from the A horizon can accumulate in the form of silicates, clay, iron, aluminum, or humus, and soil structure can be blocky, prismatic, or columnar. Finally there is the C horizon, made up of weathered parent material, derived either from the local parent material below or from material transported at some earlier time to that location. Some material leached or deposited from the A and B horizons can be found here, such as carbonates of calcium and magnesium, especially in areas of low rainfall. Depending on the depth of the upper four horizons, an R horizon made up of consolidated bedrock may also be included as part of the soil profile.

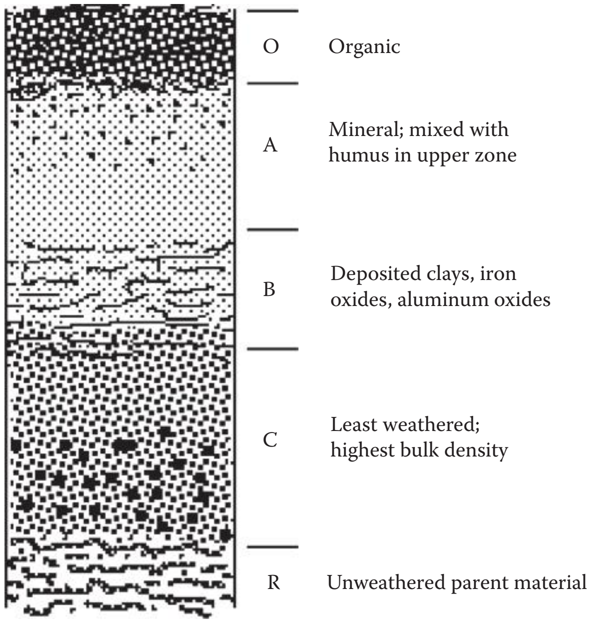


FIGURE 8.1 **Generalized soil profile.**

Since the separations between each horizon are rarely distinct, these horizons described actually form a continuum in the soil profile. A typical soil profile is presented in schematic form in Figure 8.1. The depth, characteristics, and differentiation of each horizon of each soil profile are the result of the combined impacts of the properties of the soil material (its color, organic matter content, and chemical and physical traits), the type of vegetative cover, and the climate.

The processes that differentiate soil horizons function in different ways depending on regional and local conditions. These differences result in four basic types of soil development, which are summarized in Table 8.1. The process of calcification is most characteristic of areas of grassland vegetation in subhumid-to-arid and temperate-to-tropical climates of the world. Podzolization is most characteristic of humid, temperate areas of the world where forests have been the dominant vegetative cover for a long time. Laterization takes place on older and heavily weathered soils of the humid subtropical and tropical forested regions of the world, and gleization is most common on soils where water stays at or near the surface for a good part of the year. But depending on localized conditions of slope, drainage, vegetation, depth to bedrock, etc., combinations of these processes can be found. On the whole, soil formation and development is a reciprocal process, where soil affects the vegetation, and the vegetation affects the soil.

IMPORTANCE OF THE ORGANIC HORIZON

In natural ecosystems, the O horizon is the most biologically active part of the profile and the most important ecologically. It plays a significant role in the life and distribution of plants and animals, the maintenance of soil fertility, and in many soil-development processes. Macro- and microorganisms responsible for decomposition are most active in this

TABLE 8.1
Four Types of Soil Development

Development Process	Moisture	Temperature	Typical Vegetation	Resulting Characteristics
Gleization	High	Cold	Tundra	Compact horizons; little biological activity
Podzolization	High	Cool to warm	Needle-leaf forest, deciduous forest	Light-colored A horizon; yellow-brown B horizon high in iron and aluminum
Laterization	High	Warm to hot	Rainforest	Weathered to great depth; indistinct horizons; low in plant nutrients
Calcification	Low	Cool to hot	Prairie, steppe, desert	Thick A horizon rich in calcium, nitrogen, and organic matter (except in deserts)

layer and in the upper part of the A horizon. Significantly, the O horizon is usually greatly reduced or even absent from cultivated soils.

The combination of local climate and vegetation type contributes to the conditions that promote activity in this layer; yet at the same time, the quality of the layer has profound influence on what kinds of organisms prosper. Bacteria, for example, favor nearly neutral or slightly alkaline conditions, whereas fungi favor more acid conditions. Soil-dwelling mites and collembola are more important under acid conditions, whereas earthworms and termites tend to predominate at or above neutrality.

The complex process of soil particle aggregation, which creates what is called the crumb structure of the soil, is greatly influenced by humus formed in the O horizon. In addition, many valuable soil fertility processes, discussed later in this chapter, are related closely to the ecological characteristics of this important layer.

SOIL CHARACTERISTICS

In order to develop and maintain a healthy soil system, as well as make sound judgments about particular soil management strategies, it is important to understand some of the most essential properties of soils as they affect crop response.

Texture

Soil texture is defined as the percentage, by weight, of the total mineral soil that falls into various particle size classes. These size classes are gravel, sand, silt, and clay (see Table 8.2). Particles greater than 2.0 mm in diameter are classified as gravel. Sand is easily visible by the naked eye, and feels gritty when rubbed between the fingers. Its low surface-to-volume ratio makes it porous to water and less able to adsorb and hold nutrient cations. Silt, although finer than sand, still is grainy in appearance and feel, but more actively holds water and nutrient ions. Clay particles are impossible to see separately with the naked eye, and look and feel like flour. Clay particles are colloidal in that they can form a suspension in water and are active sites for the adhesion of nutrient ions or water molecules. As a result, clay controls the most important soil properties, including plasticity and ion exchange between soil particles and water in the soil. A soil very high in clay content, however, can have problems with water drainage, and when dry can exhibit cracking.

TABLE 8.2
Soil Texture Classifications

Category	Diameter Range[a] (mm)
Very coarse sand	2.00–1.00
Coarse sand	1.00–0.50
Medium sand	0.50–0.25
Fine sand	0.25–0.10
Very fine sand	0.10–0.05
Silt	0.05–0.002
Clay	<0.002

[a] According to the U.S. Department of Agriculture system.

Most soils are a mixture of texture classes, and based on the percentage of each class, soils are named as shown in Figure 8.2. From an agricultural perspective, sand gives a soil good drainage and contributes to ease of cultivation, but a sandy soil also dries easily and loses nutrients to leaching. Clay, at the other extreme, tends not to drain well and can become easily compacted and difficult to work, yet is good at holding soil moisture and nutrients.

What soil texture is best depends on the crops grown in it. Potatoes, for example, do best in a sandy, well-drained soil, which helps prevent rotting of the tubers and makes harvest easier. Paddy rice does best on heavy soils high in clay content due to this crop's particular adaptations to the wet environment. A clay loam soil may be best overall in a drier environment, whereas a sandy loam might be better in a wet one. The addition of organic matter changes the relationships of the particles in mixtures, as we will see below.

Structure

In addition to the aspects of texture described earlier, soils possess a macrostructure formed by the ways individual particles are held together in clusters of different shapes and sizes called aggregates (see Figure 8.3). Soil aggregates tend to become larger with increasing depth in the soil. Soil texture is one important determinant of structure, but structure is usually more dependent on soil organic matter (SOM) content, the plants growing in the soil, the presence of soil

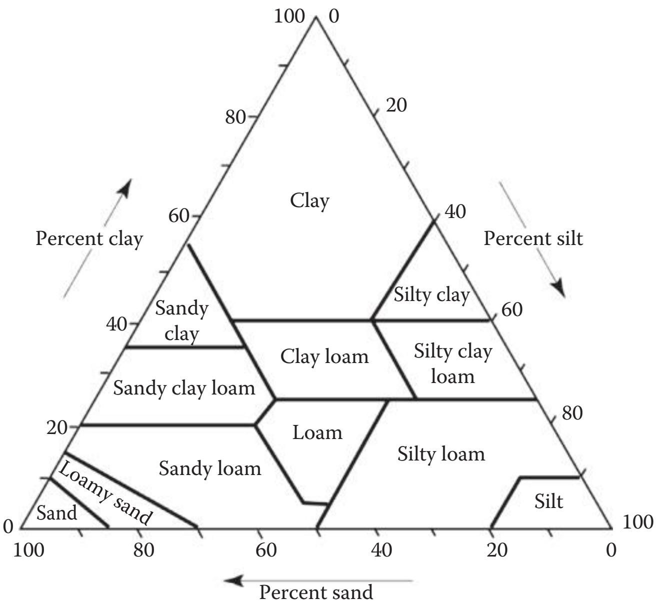


FIGURE 8.2 Soil textural names. The best type of soil is determined by the crop and local conditions; generally, however, soils containing relatively equal amounts of clay, sand, and silt—called loams—are best for agricultural purposes. (USDA diagram.)

organisms, and the soil's chemical status. The structure of the crumb or granular type is of the most benefit for agriculture, since good "crumb structure" improves soil porosity and ease of tillage, which together are known as **tilth**. When a lump of soil is crushed in the hand, and easily breaks into the crumb or granular structure noted in Figure 8.3, good crumb structure is present.

From an agroecological perspective, good crumb structure is of considerable significance. Soil particles that are bound together resist wind and water erosion, especially during any time of the year when vegetative cover is minimal. Good structure also helps maintain low **bulk density**, defined as the weight of solids per unit volume of soil. Soil with a low bulk density has a higher percentage of pore space (higher porosity), more aeration, better water percolation (permeability), and more water storage capacity. Obviously, such a soil is easier to till and allows plant roots to penetrate more easily. Excessive cultivation accelerates breakdown of SOM and increases the potential for compaction, causing bulk density to go up and many of the advantages of good crumb structure to be lost.

The formation of soil aggregates has essentially two components: the attraction between individual soil particles, the degree of which is very dependent on soil texture, and the cementing of these attracted groups of particles by organic matter. The first component cannot be very easily manipulated by the farmer, at least in any practical manner, but the second can be very much impacted by farming practices. Thus good crumb structure can be maintained, degraded, or improved.

For example, excessive tillage with heavy equipment while the soil is too wet can lead to the formation of large blocky clods of soil that can dry on the surface and later be broken apart only with great difficulty. Compaction, or the loss of pore spaces and a rise in bulk density, is an indication of the loss of crumb structure, and can be caused by the weight of farm machinery, by the loss of organic matter from excessive tillage, or by a combination of the two.

COLOR

Soil color plays its most important role in the identification of soil types, but at the same time it can tell us much about

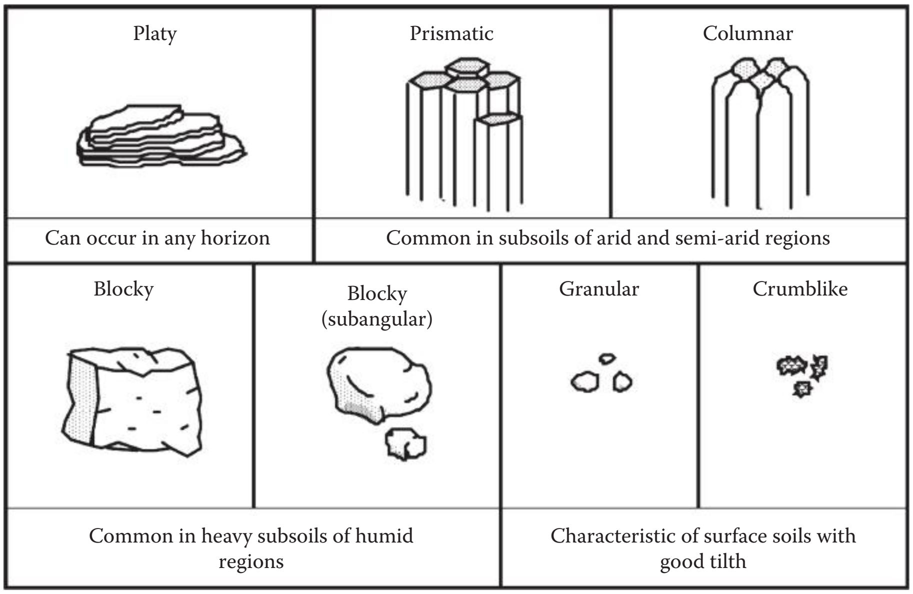


FIGURE 8.3 Patterns of soil aggregation. (Modified from Brady, N.C. and R.R. Weil, *The Nature and Properties of Soils*, 11th edn., Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ, 1996.)

the history of a soil's development and management. Dark-colored soils are generally an indication of high organic matter content, especially in temperate regions. Red and yellow soils generally indicate high levels of iron oxides, formed under conditions of good aeration and drainage, but these colors can also be derived directly from the parent material. Gray or yellow-brown colors can be indicators of poor drainage; these colors form when iron is reduced to a ferrous form rather than oxidized to the ferric form in the presence of abundant oxygen. Whitish light-colored soils often indicate the presence of quartz, carbonates, or gypsum. Standardized color charts are used to determine a soil's color.

Hence, a soil's color can be an indicator of certain kinds of soil conditions that a farmer might want to look for or avoid, depending on the kinds of crops or cropping systems that might be used. More specific analysis of soil structure and chemistry is necessary to complete the picture, but color is a good beginning. In addition, soil color can influence the interaction of the soil with other factors of the environment. For example, it may be an advantage to have a lighter-colored, sandy soil on the surface in some tropical farming systems in order to reflect the sun's rays and keep the soil cooler; conversely, a darker soil surface in areas with cold winters will help the soil temperature rise earlier in the spring, dry the soil sooner, and permit soil preparation for planting at an earlier date.

Cation Exchange Capacity

Plants obtain the mineral nutrients described in Chapters 2 and 3 from the soil in the form of dissolved ions, whose solubility is determined by their electrostatic attraction to molecules of water. Some important mineral nutrients, such as potassium and calcium, are in the form of positively charged ions; others, such as nitrate and phosphate, are in the form of negatively charged ions. If these dissolved ions are not taken up immediately through plant roots or fungi, they risk being leached out of the soil solution.

Clay and humus particles, separately or in aggregates that form platelike structures known as micelles, have negatively charged surfaces that hold the smaller, more mobile positively charged ions in the soil. The number of sites on the micelles available for binding positively charged ions (cations) determines what is called soil **cation exchange capacity** (CEC), which is measured in milliequivalents of cations per 100 g of dry soil. The higher the CEC the better the soil's ability to hold and exchange cations, prevent leaching of nutrients, and provide plants with adequate nutrition.

CEC varies from soil to soil, depending on the structure of the clay/humus complex, the type of micelle present, and the amount of organic matter incorporated into the soil. Multisided polyhedrons form lattices that vary in their sites of attraction and flexibility in relation to moisture content. Cations cling to the negatively charged outer surfaces of the micelles and humates with differing degrees of attraction. The most tenacious cations—such as hydrogen ions added by rain, positively charged acids from decomposing organic matter, and acids given off by root metabolism—can displace other important nutrient cations such as K^+ or Ca^{2+}. Organic matter in the form of humus is many times more effective than clay in increasing CEC since it has a much more extensive surface area-to-volume ratio (hence more adsorption sites) and because it is colloidal in nature. Farming practices that reduce SOM content can also reduce this important component of soil fertility maintenance.

Negative ions that are important for plant growth and development, such as nitrate, phosphate, and sulfate, are more commonly adsorbed to clay micelles by means of ion "bridges." Under acid conditions these bridges form by association of additional hydrogen ions with functional groups such as the hydroxyl group (OH). An important example is the binding of nitrate (NO_3^-) with OH_2^+ formed following the dissociation of water molecules under acid conditions. Because soil acidity influences electrical charge on micelle surfaces and controls whether other ions are displaced from soil micelles, it greatly affects the retention of ions in the soil and the short-term availability of nutrients, both of which are key components of soil fertility.

Soil Acidity and pH

Any experienced gardener or farmer is aware of the importance of a soil's pH, or acid–base balance. The typical pH range of soils is between very acid (a pH of 3) and strongly alkaline (a pH of 8). Any soil over a pH of 7 (neutral) is considered basic, and those less than pH 6.6 are considered acid. Few plants, especially agricultural crops, grow well outside the pH range of 5–8. Legumes are particularly sensitive to low pH due to the impacts acid soils have on the microbial symbiont in nitrogen fixation. Bacteria in general are negatively impacted by low pH. Soil acidity is well known for its effects on nutrient availability as well, but the effects are less due to direct toxicity on the plant than they are to the plant's impaired ability to absorb specific nutrients at either very low or very high pH. It becomes important, then, to find ways to maintain soil pH in the optimal range.

Many soils increase in acidity through natural processes. Soil acidification is a result of the loss of bases by leaching of water moving downward through the soil profile, the uptake of nutrient ions by plants and their removal through harvest or grazing, and the production of organic acids by plant roots and microorganisms. Soils that are poorly buffered against these input or removal processes will tend to increase in acidity.

Salinity and Alkalinity

It is common for the soils of arid and semiarid regions of the world to accumulate salts, in either a soluble or insoluble form. Salts released by the weathering of parent material, combined with those added in limited rainfall, are not removed by leaching. In areas of low rainfall and high evaporation rates, dissolved salts such as Na^+ and Cl^- are common, combined with others such as Ca^{2+}, Mg^{2+}, K^+, HCO_3^-, and NO_3^-. Irrigation can add even more salts to the soil, especially in areas with a high evaporation potential (see Chapter 9), where added salts migrate to the surface of the soil by capillary movement during evaporation. In addition, many inorganic fertilizers, such as ammonium nitrate, can increase salinity as well because they are in the form of salts.

Soils with a high concentration of neutral salt (e.g., NaCl or $NaSO_4$) are called saline. In cases where sodium is combined with weak anions (such as HCO_3^-), alkaline soils develop, which have a pH generally greater than 8.5. Soils with high levels of neutral salts are a problem for plants due to osmotic imbalances. Alkaline soils are a problem because of excess OH^- ions and difficulty in nutrient uptake and plant development. In some regions, saline–alkaline conditions occur when both forms of salt are present. Proper irrigation and soil water management become a key part of dealing with these conditions.

SOIL NUTRIENTS

Since plants obtain their nutrients from the soil, the supply of nutrients in the soil becomes a major determinant of an agroecosystem's productivity. Many nutrient analysis methodologies have been developed for determining the levels of various nutrients in the soil. When a particular nutrient is not present in sufficient quantity, it is called a **limiting nutrient** and must be added. Fertilization technologies have grown and evolved to meet this need. It must be kept in mind, however, that the presence of a nutrient does not necessarily mean it is *available* to plants. A variety of factors—including pH, CEC, and soil texture—determine the actual availability of nutrients.

Because of the loss or export of nutrients out of the soil due to harvest, leaching, or volatilization, fertilizers must continually be added in large amounts to most agroecosystems. But the cost of fertilizers as an input is increasing, and leached fertilizer pollutes ground and surface water supplies; therefore, an understanding of how nutrients can be cycled more efficiently in agroecosystems becomes essential for long-term sustainability.

As described in Chapter 2, the major plant nutrients are carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, potassium, and sulfur. Each of these nutrients is part of a different biogeochemical cycle and relates to management of soil in a unique way. The management of carbon will be discussed below in terms of organic matter; nitrogen in the soil will be included in a discussion of mutualisms and the ecological role of nitrogen-fixing bacteria and legumes in Chapter 17. Here, as an example of an important soil nutrient, we will examine the nutrient phosphorus. Because the efficient recycling of phosphorus depends principally on what happens in the soil, it can teach us a lot about sustainable nutrient management.

Unlike carbon and nitrogen, whose principal reservoirs are in the atmosphere, the principal reservoir of phosphorus is in the soil. It occurs naturally in the environment as a form of phosphate. Phosphates can occur in the soil solution as inorganic phosphate ions (especially as PO_4^{3-}) or as part of dissolved organic compounds. But the primary source of phosphate is the weathering of parent material; therefore, the input of phosphorus into the soil and the phosphorus cycle in agroecosystems is limited by the relatively slow rate of this geologic process.

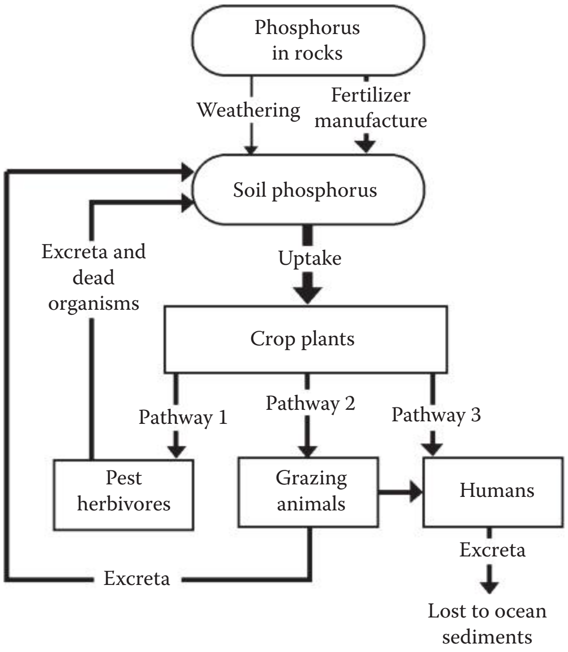


FIGURE 8.4 Pathways of phosphorus cycling in agroecosystems.

Inorganic soluble phosphate ions are absorbed by plant roots and incorporated into plant biomass. The phosphorus in this biomass can be sent along one of three different pathways, depending on how the biomass is consumed. As shown in Figure 8.4, consumption of plant biomass by pest herbivores, by grazing animals, or by humans who harvest the biomass comprises the three pathways. Phosphorus in the first pathway is returned to the soil as excreta, where it decomposes and enters the soil solution. Phosphorus in the second pathway can be recycled in the same way, but if the grazing animal goes to market, some phosphorus goes with it. In the third pathway, there is little chance of the phosphorus returning to the soil from which it was extracted (except in a few places such as parts of rural of China, where human excreta is used as fertilizer).

Much of the phosphorus consumed by humans in the form of plant biomass or the flesh of grazing animals is essentially lost from the system. An example of what may happen to phosphorus in the third (human consumption) pathway may serve to illustrate the problem: phosphate is mined from phosphate-rich marine deposits that have been geologically uplifted and exposed in Florida, processed into soluble fertilizer or crushed into rock powder, and shipped to farms in Iowa where it is applied to the soil for the production of soybeans. A part of the phosphorus, in the form of phosphates, is taken up by the plant and sequestered in the beans that are harvested and sent to California, where they are turned into tofu. Following consumption of the tofu, most of the liberated phosphate finds its way into local sewer systems, and eventually ends up returning to the sea 3000 miles from where it originated. Since the time necessary to build up sufficient sediments of phosphate-rich rock and to go through the geological process of uplifting is very much beyond the realm of the human time frame, and since the known easily available phosphate reserves are quite limited, current practices of phosphate fertilizer management in many modern agroecosystems can be said to be unsustainable.

For sustainable management of phosphorus to occur, phosphate needs to pass quickly through the soil component of the cycle and back to plants for it not to be fixed in sediments or washed to sea. Ways must be found to better keep phosphorus in an organic form, either in standing biomass or in SOM, and to ensure that as soon as phosphorus is liberated from this organic form, it is quickly reabsorbed by soil microorganisms or plant roots.

An additional component of sustainable management of soil phosphorus has to do with the formation of insoluble phosphorus compounds in the soil. Phosphates in the soil solution often react chemically (especially with iron and aluminum) to form insoluble compounds, or become trapped in clay micelles out of reach of most biological recovery. Low pH in the soil exacerbates the problem of phosphate fixation in an insoluble form. At the same time, however, these processes provide a strong mechanism for retaining phosphorus in the soils of the agroecosystem; phosphate fertilizers added to the soil are retained almost completely. Some agricultural soils in California show very high levels of total (though not easily available) phosphorus after several decades of

SPECIAL TOPIC: WILL WE RUN OUT OF PHOSPHORUS?

The spectacular increases in global food production and agricultural yields that began after World War II are usually credited to farmers' rapid adoption of "Green Revolution" technologies such as pesticides, hybrid varieties, and inorganic fertilizers. The fertilizer part of this story often singles out the nitrogen component, highlighting humankind's newfound ability to literally create out of thin air industrial quantities of what is generally the most limiting plant nutrient in soils worldwide.

Phosphorus gets less attention, but in most respects this element is equally responsible for the food production boom of the latter half of the twentieth century. Phosphorus is so critical to plant growth and generally limited enough in its concentration in the soil that adding it to fields, along with fixed nitrogen, was an easy way of boosting productivity. And once farming systems became enmeshed in the high-external-input regime and ended practices that recycled phosphorus, it was necessary to continue adding phosphorus, along with fixed nitrogen, to maintain high levels of productivity. As a result, much of agriculture worldwide is today absolutely dependent on their being relatively cheap, readily available sources of phosphorus for making fertilizer.

For the time being, phosphorus is indeed abundant and relatively inexpensive. Global production stands at about 160 billion metric tons/year, and no production shortfalls are forecast despite expected increases in demand. However, there is mounting concern about the longer-term future of phosphorus supplies. The core problem is that phosphorus is very different from nitrogen. As discussed in this chapter, while nitrogen exists in an enormous atmospheric reservoir, phosphorus exists only in mineral form. Phosphorus in any reasonably concentrated form can be obtained only by mining deposits of rock phosphate that were formed over the course of millions of years. In this sense, phosphorus is not a renewable resource. At some point in the future, humans will have used up the last adequately concentrated, accessible deposits of phosphorus.

Much debate, discussion, and research have focused on when the supplies of phosphorus will begin to run short. Despite all this attention, there is little agreement about the timing, with credible estimates running from before the middle of this century to some 300 years from now. From the standpoint of sustainability, however, the debate about "peak phosphorus" is beside the point and may only serve to divert attention away from a more fundamental issue: that the global food system, of which phosphate mining and inorganic fertilizer production are major parts, is unsustainable for a multitude of other reasons as well. If we hope to put food production on a sustainable footing, our reliance on mined rock phosphate must end well before shortages of rock phosphate become an issue.

The alternative approach to phosphorus management—using practices that return phosphorus to the soil and increase its available content in the soil by building up organic matter—is much more conducive to agroecosystem health and carries with it a host of other benefits, as noted in this chapter. Returning the phosphorus contained in human and animal excreta (and, to a lesser extent, in crop residue) to the soil has the added benefit of keeping phosphorus out of streams, lakes, and estuaries, where it causes eutrophication. Reducing inputs of mined phosphorus also prevents accumulation of cadmium (most rock phosphate contains some cadmium), reduces the consumption of fossil fuels required to extract, process, and ship the mined phosphate, and reduces the risk inherent in relying on only six countries in the world (Morocco, China, Algeria, Syria, South Africa, and Jordan) for the supply of an element critical for food production. Rather than thinking that we can keep up business as usual for at least a few more decades because phosphorus reserves are still large, we should be rethinking how we can begin managing this crucial nutrient more sensibly today.

farming. So leakage of phosphorus from agroecosystems can be quite small, but the unavailability of phosphorus from the soil component of the system once it is fixed requires further addition of available phosphorus in the form of fertilizer. Of course, biological means of liberating this "stored" phosphorus might contribute better to sustainability. These means have a lot to do with the management of SOM.

SOIL ORGANIC MATTER AND SOIL BIOTA

The texture of the soil, its vertical layering, its chemical and physical characteristics, and its nutrient content are all of great importance agriculturally. Ultimately, however, what matters most about soil is its ability to function as a living part of the agroecosystem as a whole. In this context, the word *living* is used quite literally. Soil is a living part of the agroecosystem when it contains and supports a diverse assortment of living organisms. These organisms, collectively called the **soil biota**, in turn depend on the organic matter in the soil as the basis of their nutrition.

Soil biota and SOM are important agriculturally for two main reasons. First, they are primary determinants of soil fertility, causing beneficial changes in soil structure and determining the availability of nutrients. Second, they are more readily manipulable—subject to improvement through management—than the inorganic components of the soil. If the soil in a field is a clayey loam high in calcium, it will likely always have those characteristics. But by properly managing the SOM—and through that the soil biota—the farmer can make the difference between a poor and fragile soil and a fertile, robust soil.

NONLIVING SOIL ORGANIC MATTER

Soil organic matter is comprised of diverse, heterogeneous components. It includes surface litter, dead roots, plant residue in various stages of decomposition, microbial metabolites, humic substances, and the excreta of animals living in or passing over the soil. In natural ecosystems, the organic matter content of the A horizon can range up to 15% or 20% or more, but in most soils it averages 1%–5%. In the absence of human intervention, organic matter content of the soil depends mostly on climate and vegetative cover; generally, more organic matter is found under the conditions of cool and moist climates. We also know that there is a very close correlation between the amount of organic matter in the soil and both carbon and nitrogen content. A close estimate of SOM content can be obtained by multiplying either total carbon content by 2 or total nitrogen content by 20.

During its life in the soil, organic matter plays many very important roles, all of which are of importance to sustainable agriculture (see reviews by Magdoff and Weil 2004; Uphoff et al. 2006; and Cheeke et al. 2012). Organic matter builds, promotes, protects, and maintains the soil ecosystem. As we have already discussed, SOM is a key component of good soil structure, increases water and nutrient retention, and provides important mechanical protection of the soil surface. Perhaps its most important function, however, is to serve as the food source—the base of the soil food pyramid—for soil biota.

In contrast to the undisturbed soil of seminatural ecosystems, intensively managed agricultural soil often has very little organic matter. The tendency of the practices of industrial agriculture to reduce SOM content over time may, indeed, be considered one of its most harmful consequences. Fortunately, it is possible to increase SOM—and even restore to healthy levels the organic matter in depleted soils—through a variety of practices.

SOIL BIOTA

The organisms that inhabit the soil range from the tiniest cyanobacteria to relatively large invertebrates. Because size is related to ecological role, members of the soil biota are often categorized by size. The macrofauna are arthropods like myriapods (centipedes and millipedes) and earthworms large enough to be measured in centimeters. The mesofauna are mostly tiny arthropods like collembola and mites that are measured in millimeters. The microfauna are made up of a wide variety of protozoans and nematodes measured in micrometers. Finally, there are the microflora, a diverse collection of bacteria and fungi, which obtain their nutrition not by ingesting other organisms but instead by breaking the chemical bonds in organic matter and harvesting the energy that is released. Plant roots are also part of the soil biota, and may be considered the soil's "macroflora".

The members of the soil biota—especially the microflora—are poorly known. Only a small percentage of the estimated millions of species have been described. Although their total mass in the soil is small compared to the mass of SOM, the number of individuals can be astounding. In healthy agricultural soil, there are as many as one billion bacteria and thousands of protozoa inhabiting a gram of soil—about a teaspoon. And if all the fungal hyphae in that same gram of soil were arranged in a single long strand, it would be several meters in length.

The many different organisms that make up the soil biota interact in a complex food web. The microflora feed on plant residues, obtaining energy by oxidizing the organic molecules that make up this once-living organic matter (which is another way of saying they accomplish the process of decomposition). The members of the microfauna feed on these microflora species, and are in turn preyed upon by the larger mesofauna. Some macrofauna are predators on the mesofauna; others, like earthworms, eat plant residues. Through the interactions in this food web, energy and matter are cycled and transformed.

ECOSYSTEM SERVICES PROVIDED BY SOIL ORGANIC MATTER AND SOIL BIOTA

Together, soil-dwelling organisms and SOM are responsible for much of what makes a soil fertile and able to support cropping systems that yield harvestable biomass year after year without large quantities of external inputs.

- By breaking down plant and animal residue into their most basic constituents, soil organisms are key linkages in the earth's biogeochemical cycles—those involving phosphorus, nitrogen, potassium, sulfur, carbon, and oxygen.
- In their own bodies and in the relatively stable humic substances they create, soil microbes sequester very large quantities of carbon.
- Plant debris and dead organisms contain large amounts of plant nutrients, such as nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur, but these nutrients are unavailable to plants until they are released from organic matter by the action of soil biota.
- As they feed on organic matter, soil microbes produce sticky, gumlike mucilages that hold together soil particles and thus contribute to the tilth, or crumb structure of the soil.
- Due to its colloidal nature, the humus produced by soil microbes greatly increases the CEC of the soil. Loosely bound to humic substances, nutrient ions are resistant to leaching by rainfall or irrigation, but nevertheless available to plant roots. Humus also greatly increases the water holding capacity of soil.
- Many soil organisms directly promote plant growth. One way they do this is by forming mutualistic associations with plant roots and providing the plants with nutrients (e.g., *Rhizobium* bacteria fix atmospheric nitrogen and make it available to plants, and mycorrhizae greatly increase nutrient take-up by root hairs). Some soil microbes may also release growth-promoting compounds into the soil.
- When they have large amounts of SOM on which to feed, some soil microbes can outcompete and directly suppress plant pathogens.
- Soil microbes degrade organic pollutants—including petroleum hydrocarbons, chlorinated solvents, and pharmaceuticals—reducing or eliminating their toxicity.

Clearly, it is in the interests of the farmer or agroecosystem manager to maximize SOM and to enhance the health and diversity of the soil biota. The next section discusses some of the means by which this can be accomplished.

SOIL MANAGEMENT

In present-day farming systems, soil is treated as if it were mainly a medium for holding the plant up. When soil is managed for sustainable production and emphasis is placed on the role of SOM and soil biota, however, the role of soil is greatly expanded.

Many farmers feel that if a high yield is obtained from the land, then this is evidence of a productive soil. However, if the perspective is agroecological and the goal is to maintain and promote all of the soil-forming and soil-protecting processes involving organic matter and soil biota, then a productive soil is not necessarily a fertile soil. The processes in the soil that enable us to produce a crop take on greater importance in sustainable agriculture. Fertilizers can be added to raise production, but only through an understanding of nutrient cycles and soil ecological processes—especially SOM and soil biota dynamics—can soil fertility be maintained or restored.

Many farmers striving for sustainability have focused their soil management on the goal of increasing or maintaining the organic matter content of their soil. To the extent that they consider the soil biota, they understand that keeping SOM at relatively high levels is beneficial to soil organisms. Increasing recognition of the importance of soil biota, however, argues for inverting this approach: make enhancement of the diversity, function, and abundance of the soil biota the primary goal, and think of increasing the inputs of organic matter as one of the primary means of realizing this goal.

In addition to increasing organic matter inputs, two other means of enhancing the soil biota have been shown to be effective: reducing the intensity of tillage and diversifying cropping systems (Stockdale and Watson 2012). All three strategies, especially when used together, have the effect of mitigating the potential negative impacts of agriculture on both the soil biota and SOM.

INCREASING ORGANIC MATTER INPUTS

Once a soil is put under cultivation, the original organic matter levels begin to decline unless specific steps are taken to maintain them. After an initial rapid decline, the decrease slows. Several kinds of changes occur in the soil as a consequence of the loss of organic matter. Crumb structure is lost, bulk density begins to rise, soil porosity suffers, and—because SOM is the basis of the soil food web—biological activity declines. Soil compaction and the development of a hardened soil layer at the average depth of cultivation, called a plow pan, can become problems as well.

The extent to which organic content declines in soil under cultivation is dependent on the crop and cropping practices. Some examples follow.

In one study, the organic matter contents of the upper 25 cm of soil in two agroecosystems used for intensive vegetable production in coastal central California were compared with each other and to an unfarmed grassland control. One system had been farmed for 25 years using organic farming practices and the other for 40 years under conventional practices. The study showed that the organic matter content had been reduced from 9.869 to 8.705 kg/m^3 in the organic system and to 9.088 kg/m^3 in the conventional system (Waldon 1994). Even with the higher inputs of organic matter in the form of composts and winter covercrops in the organic system, intensive cultivation and cropping significantly reduced SOM even more than in the conventional system.

In another study, in which corn and soybean production systems were compared side by side over a 30-year period at the Rodale Institute in Kutztown, PA, it was shown that organic management significantly improved important soil health indicators, especially in comparison to synthetic input-based conventional management. The soils of two different organic treatments had improved levels of SOM, more active soil biota, better water retention, darker color, and more stable soil aggregates, whereas the conventional soil actually suffered a loss of SOM during the 30 years of study (Rodale Institute 2012).

A study comparing soils after 75 years of organic and conventional wheat production in eastern Washington found that organic matter was not only maintained in the organic system, but actually increased over time, while production levels for the organic farmer were near equal to the conventional (Reganold et al. 1987). We can see from these three examples that crop type, input management, local environment, and cultivation practices all help determine the long-term impacts of farming on SOM. Organic management per se doesn't necessarily lead to increases in SOM; it is necessary to set as a specific goal the enhancement of SOM and to make management choices that help achieve this goal.

Since farming tends to deplete SOM, sources of new organic matter must be continually added—at least enough to replace that which is lost through harvest and decomposition. If the agroecosystem were more similar to a natural ecosystem, a diversity of plant species would be present in addition to the crop or crops being grown for harvest. Many agroforestry systems in tropical regions, for example (see Chapter 18) have a large number of plants, many of them noncrop species, whose primary role is biomass production and the return of organic matter to the soil. While farmers all over the world have much to learn from such systems, most are forced by practical and environmental reasons to manage systems that are significantly less diverse. They must therefore find ways of adding organic matter to their systems instead of counting on plants in the systems to do it themselves.

There are a variety of sources of organic matter inputs; some of the most common are discussed below. While the total volume of organic matter added to (or returned to) the soil is the primary consideration, another important factor is the nature of the organic matter itself. Organic matter inputs vary considerably in their carbon-to-nitrogen (C/N) ratios, in their decomposability, in their effect on soil pH, and in various other ways. Since different kinds of organic matter inputs may have different impacts on the soil biota, it may be advantageous to diversify the types of organic matter added to a cropping system.

Crop Residue

An important source of organic matter is crop residue. Many farmers are experimenting with better ways of returning to the soil the parts of the crop that are not destined for human or animal use. A major concern has been how to deal with potential pest or disease organisms that residue may harbor and pass on to a subsequent crop. Proper timing of incorporation of the residue into the soil, rotating crops, and composting the residue away from the field and then returning the finished compost are possible ways of overcoming this problem. Research on these and other management strategies are helping transform crop residue from a problematic by-product into a valuable part of SOM management (Unger 1994; Uphoff et al. 2006) (Figure 8.5).

FIGURE 8.5 Burning of crop residue in Taiwan. Burning is a common method of removing crop residue. Although it returns some nutrients to the soil and helps control pests and diseases, burning can cause significant air pollution and prevents crop residue from being incorporated into the soil as organic matter. When crop residue is seen as a valuable and useful resource for maintaining SOM, techniques for incorporating it into the soil can be developed as alternatives to burning.

Covercrops

Covercropping, where a plant cover is grown specifically to produce plant matter for incorporation as a "green manure" into the soil, is another important source of organic matter. Covercrop plants are usually grown in rotation with a crop or during a time of the year that the crop can't be grown. When legumes are used as covercrops, either alone or in combination with nonlegume species, the quality of the biomass can be greatly improved. The resultant biomass can be incorporated into the soil, or left on the surface as a protective mulch until it decomposes.

In a research done at the University of California (UC) Santa Cruz (Gliessman 1987), a local variety of fava bean called bellbean (*Vicia faba*) was grown as a covercrop in combination with either cereal rye or barley during the winter wet-season fallow period. It was shown that the total dry matter produced in the grass/legume mixtures was almost double that of the legume alone. After 3 years of covercrop use, organic matter levels in soils under mixed covers improved as much as 8.8%. Interestingly, soils under the legume-only cover actually dropped slightly in organic matter content after 3 years, probably because the lower C/N ratio of the incorporated organic matter caused more rapid microbial breakdown.

A more recent innovation in the covercropping approach is the use of a living mulch, where a noncrop species is planted between the rows of the crop during the cropping cycle. Living mulches have become especially popular in vineyard, orchard, and tree crop systems. Research has focused on ways of minimizing negative interactions between covercrop and crop species, especially living mulches in annual crops. Studies are also finding that living mulches can provide and conserve nitrogen for grain crops, reduce soil erosion, reduce weed pressure, and increase SOM content (Hartwig and Ammon 2002).

Manure

It is a long-standing practice, both in conventional and alternative farming systems, to add animal manures to the soil to improve organic matter content. The application of animal manure is an important tool for an integrated nutrient management strategy because applications can simultaneously increase SOM and supply nutrients for crop growth (Seiter and Horwath 2004; Organic Trade Association 2011). Dairies and feedlot operations produce large amounts of animal wastes that are converted to a useful resource when returned to fields, but as we have already noted in Chapter 1, there are many problems involved in containing, storing, transporting, and applying such large quantities of animal manures. Small, integrated farm operations can more easily use animal manures that accumulate in stables or pens for intensive vegetable production or use on other crops (see Chapter 19). The use of silkworm droppings in Chinese agriculture is yet another example of the use of animal manures.

At any scale, the direct application of animal manures can have many drawbacks, however. Smell and flies are often associated with direct manure application. Nitrogen loss through ammonification can be quite high. Runoff of nitrates and other soluble materials can be a problem. And once fresh manures are incorporated into the soil, there often is a waiting period for decomposition and stabilization before planting can take place. To avoid these problems, current organic certification standards in the United States require that fresh or raw animal manures be composted under specific conditions before they are applied (Organic Trade Association 2011) (Figure 8.6).

Composts

Compost amendment of soil is an attractive way to add organic matter for a variety of reasons. The particle size distribution of compost favors uniform field application; the ratio of carbon to nitrogen is optimal; compost is usually free of weed seeds; and soil diseases are often suppressed by compost addition (Chen et al. 2004; Hitchings 2009). Many different sources of organic materials, from manures to agricultural by-products to lawn clippings, are being converted into useful soil amendments through the composting process. Under controlled conditions, raw organic matter goes through the first stages of decomposition and humification, so that when it is added to the soil, it has stabilized considerably and can contribute more effectively to the soil fertility-building process. In this way, wastes—including materials that would otherwise go to already bulging landfills—are being converted into resources (Figure 8.7).

FIGURE 8.6 Manure spreader used on a dairy farm near Cody, Wyoming. Aged manure is returned to fields in which feed is grown for the farm's dairy cows.

TABLE 8.3
Organic Waste Materials Employed in the Production of Compost

Agricultural By-Products	Manures
Alfalfa leaf meal	Feedlot beef cattle manure
Apple and grape pomace	Dairy cattle manure
Blood meal	Broiler chicken litter
Bone meal	Laying chicken litter
Cottonseed meal	Turkey litter
Feather meal	Swine manure
Almond and walnut hulls	Horse manure
Coffee pulp	Sheep manure
Cacao pulp	Goat manure
Soybean cakes	
Rice hulls	
Green garden and yard wastes	

Vermicompost, or compost produced through the action of worms, is also becoming a popular source of SOM, especially for smaller-scale farm and garden systems. Fresh, wet organic matter, especially food waste, is consumed by worms specifically known for their composting ability (red worms such as *Eisenia fetida* are especially good), and systems have been developed where a small household vermicomposting chamber can produce up to 25 kg of worm castings a month. These castings are known for their high levels of phosphate, nitrogen, and other nutrients, and also contain polysaccharides that glue soil particles together and aid in SOM development. Cuban researchers have recently developed farm-scale vermicomposting systems that are designed to replace difficult-to-obtain imported fertilizers. Further development of larger-scale systems could aid greatly in improved soil management.

FIGURE 8.7 Farm wastes being turned into compost on a farm on the central coast of California. The breakdown of vegetative matter by microorganisms releases significant amounts of energy in the form of heat.

Other Soil Amendments

A range of other types of organic soil amendments can be used as well. Humates, kelp, fish meal, animal by-products, mined guano, and others are on the market. Each one has specific applications, advantages and disadvantages, and optimal scales of use. Each organic matter source needs to be examined for short-term crop response, but more importantly for possible long-term contributions to SOM development and maintenance.

Sewage

A final source of organic matter—underutilized except in a few parts of the world—is sewage. To complete nutrient cycles, nutrients that leave the farm should ultimately come back to the farm. If they can come back in an organic form, then they will also add to the soil-building process.

Solid material removed from wastewater during treatment, known as sewage sludge, has been spread on the land for decades. As a percentage of dry weight, sewage sludge can contain 6%–9% nitrogen, 3%–7% phosphorus, and up to 1% potassium. It can be applied as dried cake or granules, with a water content of 40%–70%, or as a liquid slurry that is 80%–90% water. Sewage sludge is widely used on turf grass, degraded range land, and even on the ground below fruit trees. The liquid portion of treated sewage, known as effluent, has been applied to land for a long time in Europe and selected sites in the United States. Some cities operate what are called sewage farms where effluent is used to produce crops, usually animal feeds and forages, that partially offset the cost of disposal, while in other cases it is used for irrigating golf courses, highway landscaping, and even forests.

There is much to learn, however, about how to treat sewage so that pathogens are dealt with properly. Collection, treatment, and transport all need to be examined with an eye toward the goal of linking waste management with sustainable agriculture. The fact that many sewage systems around the world do not separate human from industrial wastes, contaminating the resultant sludge with toxic amounts of heavy metals, complicates the process immensely.

Nevertheless, sewage will undoubtedly become a more important resource in the future as a source of organic matter, nutrients, and water for crop production. Many small-scale and traditional practices for turning sewage into a useful resource can serve as an important basis for future research on this important link to sustainability.

REDUCING TILLAGE INTENSITY

The conventional wisdom in agriculture is that soil must be cultivated to control weeds, incorporate organic matter, and allow root growth. Despite its potential benefits, however, cultivation can degrade soil structure, reduce organic matter content, disrupt soil biota, simplify the soil food web, and cause the soil to lose some of the elements of productivity. For these reasons, paying attention to how the soil is cultivated must be an integral part of managing soil biota and SOM.

Many different patterns of soil tillage exist, but the main pattern employed in conventional agriculture is a three-stage process involving a deep plowing that turns the soil, a secondary tilling for preparation of a seed bed, and finally post-planting cultivations (often combined with herbicide use) for controlling weeds. Soil erosion, loss of good soil structure, and nutrient leaching are well-known problems associated with this pattern of tillage. Despite these problems, most conventional farming systems, especially those producing annual grains and vegetables, are dependent on extensive and repeated tillage.

At the other extreme, there are many traditional farming systems in which no tillage is used at all. In swidden agriculture, traditional farmers clear land using slash and burn techniques and then poke the soil with a planting stick to sow seeds. Such systems, which have the longest history of sustained management, respect the need for a fallow period to control weedy vegetation and to allow natural soil-building processes to replace removed nutrients. Many agroforestry systems, such as coffee or cacao under shade, depend on the tree component of the system to provide soil cover and nutrient cycling, and only receive occasional surface weeding. Permanent pasture is rarely cultivated either.

Alternative tillage techniques, many of them borrowed from traditional farming practices, have been developed for and tested in conventional annual crop systems. These have demonstrated that annual crop systems do not have to remain dependent on extensive and repeated tillage and that reduced tillage can help improve soil quality and fertility (El Titi 2002; Magdoff and Van Es 2009).

Using the technique of **zero tillage**, soil cultivation is limited to the actual seedbed and is done at the time of seed planting. In some cases, special equipment is used that allows planting directly into the crop residue left from the previous crop. Other steps, such as fertilization and weed control, can be completed at the same time as planting. Unfortunately,

FIGURE 8.8 One of the custom-made tillers used for cultivation of the ridge-till systems on the Thompson Farm in Boone, Iowa. The tiller is completing the first cultivation pass after planting of the corn crop, in which soil on the shoulders of the ridges is cut away (killing weeds) and then pushed back. Dick Thompson pioneered the ridge-till system in the 1980s, after recognizing that even though conventional cultivation killed weeds, it also created the ideal disturbed environment for their regrowth. Over the years, thousands of farmers and researchers visited the Thompson Farm to learn from the acknowledged "expert" on ridge-till systems.

many zero tillage systems have developed a great dependence on herbicides, which may create other ecological problems.

In order to reduce or eliminate herbicide use, a number of **reduced-tillage** systems have been developed. One in particular that has been quite successful for the production of corn, soybean, and other crops is **ridge tillage** (see Figure 8.8). After an initial plowing in which the planting beds, or ridges, are formed, the only cultivation that occurs is focused on seed planting, weed management, incorporation of organic matter (crop residue, covercrops, manure) into the tilled surface soil, and movement of surface soil from ridgetop to valley or vice versa. The specially designed tillers used for the cultivation never penetrate deeply into the soil. Some ridge-till systems can go through many years of repeated planting without deep tillage, and the reduced soil disturbance helps preserve SOM and soil structure, enhancing the abundance and diversity of the soil biota. Further, in many systems, herbicides can be eliminated completely because every step in the process is focused on minimizing opportunities for weed germination and growth.

DIVERSIFYING CROPPING SYSTEMS

The diversity of the aboveground agroecosystem is directly linked to the diversity of the belowground ecosystem. When there are more types of crop plants, there is greater diversity in leaf litter, plant exudates, and rooting patterns; this diversity creates a greater number of habitats belowground, and a wider range of environmental conditions, which promote greater species richness in the soil biota. Conversely, the monocultures that characterize the industrial approach to agriculture have been shown to greatly reduce the abundance and diversity of soil organisms. Thus, the farmer seeking to enhance the health of the soil ecosystem would do well to consider diversifying his or her operations spatially (through polyculture, alley cropping, agroforestry, and other techniques) and temporally (through rotations). As we will see in Section IV, cropping system diversification has a variety of other benefits as well.

Agroecosystem diversity at a landscape level can also benefit soil biota. Field margins, hedgerows, riparian corridors, and patches of unfarmed land can serve as reservoirs of soil biota diversity. When these reservoirs are present on the landscape, it is more likely that species of soil biota extinguished from farmed land can recolonize fields when management practices are changed to make the fields more congenial to the full range of soil organisms present in a particular region.

SUSTAINABLE SOIL MANAGEMENT

When soil is understood to be a living, dynamic system—an ecosystem—management for sustainability becomes an integrated, whole-system process. Focusing on the processes that promote the maintenance of a healthy, dynamic, and productive system becomes paramount. Fertility management is based on our understanding of nutrient cycles, organic matter content, and the abundance and diversity of the soil biota. The application of our understanding of the ecological processes that maintain the structure and function of the soil ecosystem over time takes on the greatest importance. And since the soil ecosystem is a complex, dynamic, and ever-changing set of components and processes, our understanding of this complexity must increase.

Good soil management is an important part of attaining overall sustainability of agroecosystems. Many of the indicators of sustainability discussed in Chapter 22 relate directly to soil.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. Organic matter is considered to be one of the most important components of a healthy soil ecosystem, but most agricultural activities (i.e., plowing, burning, cultivation, harvest) remove, reduce, or degrade organic matter. What are some of the most practical ways of maintaining this valuable resource in the soil?
2. What are the key factors that determine how long a degraded soil will take to be restored to a condition similar to its previous healthy condition?
3. What is the difference between dirt and soil?
4. It has recently been proposed that we develop some indicators of "soil health" in order to determine the sustainability of different farming practices. What indicators do you think should be used to evaluate the health of the soil?
5. Why is it important for farmers to learn how to use the concept of the soil ecosystem?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Pedosphere.com
www.pedosphere.com
An online soil science magazine.

Natural Resources Conservation Service: Soil Quality
www.nrcs.usda.gov/wps/portal/nrcs/main/soils/health/
The Soil Quality portion of the NRCS Soils website, with information about soil management practices, soil biology, and soil quality assessment.

National Sustainable Agriculture Information Service: Soils and Compost
attra.ncat.org/soils.html
Lists publications about soils and soil management.

US Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service, Soils
www.nrcs.usda.gov/wps/portal/nrcs/site/soils/home/
The NRCS Soils website, providing extensive science-based soil information, including soil surveys from across the nation.

USDA Web Soil Survey
websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov/app/
Very extensive and updated soil data and information for most of the counties in the United States that can be used for general farm, local, and wider area planning.

RECOMMENDED READING

Bardgett, R. D. and D. A. Wardle. 2010. *Aboveground–Belowground Linkages: Biotic Interactions, Ecosystem Processes and Global Change*. Oxford University Press (Oxford Series in Ecology and Evolution): Oxford, U.K.
A synthetic volume that analyzes the interactions between biotic communities aboveground and belowground, focusing on their important roles in defining community structure and ecosystem functioning, and their responses to climate change.

Brady, N. C. and R. R. Weil. 2008. *The Nature and Properties of Soils*. 14th edn. Prentice Hall: Upper Saddle River, NJ.
One of the most complete reference books on soil as a natural resource; highlights the many interactions between soil and other components of the ecosystem. The recognized primer of soil science.

Cheeke, T. E., D. C. Coleman, and D. H. Wall. 2012. *Microbial Ecology in Sustainable Agroecosystems*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.
This book brings together soil ecologists, microbial ecologists, and agroecologists working globally to demonstrate how research in soil ecology can contribute to the long-term sustainability of agricultural systems.

Havlin, J. L., S. L. Tisdale, W. L. Nelson, and J. D. Beaton. 2013. *Soil Fertility and Fertilizers: An Introduction to Nutrient Management*. 8th edn. Prentice Hall: Upper Saddle River, NJ.
This book provides a thorough understanding of the biological, chemical, and physical properties affecting soil fertility and plant nutrition.

Jenny, H. 1994. *Factors of Soil Formation*. Reprint edition of the 1941 original. Dover Publications: Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
The classic textbook on soil and the soil formation process; emphasizes the soil as a complex system that changes through time.

Juo, A. S. R. and K. Franzluebbers. 2003. *Tropical Soils: Properties and Management for Sustainable Agriculture*. Oxford University Press USA: Cary, NC.
A text that uses an agroecological approach to describe the tropical soil environments of sub-Saharan Africa, Southeast Asia, and South and Central America, focusing on production and management systems unique to each region.

Logsdon, G. 2010. *Holy Shit: Managing Manure to Save Mankind*. Chelsea Green Publishing: White River Junction, VT.
A truly remarkable book about manure and how to turn a waste into a resource for the future sustainability of our food system.

Magdoff, F. and H. van Es. 2000. *Building Soils for Better Crops*. 2nd edn. Sustainable Agriculture Network Handbook Series. Sustainable Agriculture Publications: Burlington, VT.
Very farmer friendly and practical information that explains how ecological soil management boosts soil fertility and yields, while reducing pest pressures and environmental impacts.

Stevenson, F. J. and M. A. Cole. 1999. *Cycles of Soil Carbon, Nitrogen, Phosphorus, Sulfur, and Micronutrients*. 2nd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
An examination of the processes and mechanisms of cycling of both macro- and micronutrients in the soil.

9 Water in the Soil

Water is continually flowing through the body of a plant: leaving the stomata via transpiration and entering through the roots. For this reason, plants depend on having a certain amount of water available to their roots in the soil. Without adequate soil moisture, they quickly wilt and die. Thus maintaining sufficient moisture in the *rhizosphere*—the part of the soil infiltrated by plant roots—is a crucial part of agroecosystem management.

Yet soil moisture management is not simply a matter of there being adequate inputs of water into the soil from precipitation or irrigation. Soil moisture is part of the ecology of the soil and of the whole agroecosystem. Not only is water availability and retention affected by a myriad of factors, but water itself plays many roles. It carries soluble nutrients, affects soil aeration and temperature, and impacts soil biotic processes. Many members of the soil microfauna, such as nematodes and protozoa, are essentially aquatic and live within the thin film of water adhering to soil particles. Further, plants themselves affect the distribution and availability of soil moisture. A farmer, therefore, must be aware of how water acts in the soil, how water levels in the soil are affected by weather conditions and cropping practices, how inputs of water affect soil moisture, and what the water needs of the crop are.

Rarely is the moisture availability of a soil exactly optimum for a crop for a very long period of time. Water supply varies between deficiency and surplus from day to day and throughout the season. The actual optimum is hard to determine, since it is affected by a range of other factors, and conditions are constantly changing. But we do know a lot about the range of moisture conditions that promote the highest yields for most crops. The challenge is to manage water in the soil in ways that keep conditions within this range.

MOVEMENT OF WATER IN THE SOIL

In natural ecosystems, water enters the system as rainfall or snowmelt at the surface of the soil. In agroecosystems, water enters from the same sources, as described in Chapter 6, or is added as irrigation. Sustainable management of soil moisture depends greatly on understanding the fate of this applied water, with a goal of maximizing efficiency of water use by the system.

Infiltration

For the water falling on or applied to the soil surface to become available to plants, it must infiltrate into the soil. Infiltration is by no means a given: water can be lost to surface runoff or even evaporation if it cannot penetrate the soil surface easily. Infiltration is affected by soil type, slope, vegetative cover, and characteristics of the precipitation itself. Soils with greater porosity, such as sandy soils or those with high organic matter content, are more open to the easy infiltration of water. Flat terrain is more apt to allow better infiltration than sloping ground, and a smooth slope loses more water to runoff than one that is broken by microtopographic variation caused by rocks, soil clumps, slight depressions, or other obstructions on the surface. Vegetative cover, both alive and as litter on the surface, greatly aids initial water entry. In general, assuming optimal conditions, the greater the intensity of rainfall, the greater the infiltration rate until saturation is achieved. However, with excessively intense rainfall, increased runoff will occur.

Percolation

Once saturation of the upper layers of the soil occurs, gravitational forces begin to pull the excess water more deeply into the soil profile. This process, known as **percolation**, is shown in Figure 9.1. The rate of percolation is determined by soil structure, texture, and porosity. A soil with good crumb structure and aggregate stability will allow water to move freely between soil particles. Sandy textured soils have larger pore spaces and less soil particle surface area to hold water than more finely textured soils, and will therefore allow the most rapid movement of water. A soil that is very high in clay content may allow rapid percolation initially, but once the clay micelles swell with water, they may close the pore spaces and impede movement. Root channels and animal burrows, especially those of earthworms, are important pathways for percolation, but soil texture and structure are probably of greater importance, especially in frequently cultivated agroecosystems.

Evaporation

Once moisture enters the soil, it can be lost to the atmosphere through evaporation. The rate of evaporation from the soil surface depends on the moisture content and temperature of the atmosphere above the surface, as well as the temperature of the soil surface itself. Wind greatly accelerates the evaporation process, especially at higher temperatures.

Even though evaporation occurs at the surface, it can affect soil moisture deep into the soil profile. As evaporation creates a water deficit at the soil surface, the attractive forces

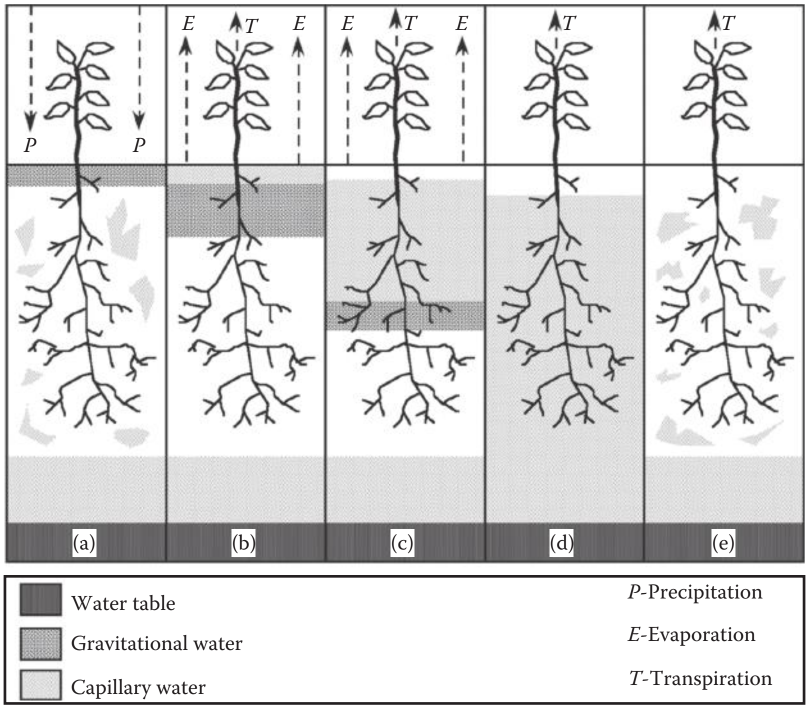


FIGURE 9.1 Movement of water in the soil of a cropping system. (a) Water infiltrates the surface after falling as precipitation. (b) Gravitational water percolates downward, leaving the soil above moistened to field capacity with capillary water. At the same time, evaporation and transpiration begin to remove water from the soil. (c) As gravitational water continues to percolate downward, the soil near the surface begins to dry out. (d) When the gravitational water reaches the water table, most of the soil profile is moistened close to field capacity. The exception is the upper layer of soil, which has dried out from evaporation. (e) Most of the soil above the capillary fringe, the region kept moist by the water table, has dried out, and the soil once more nears the wilting point. (Adapted from Daubenmire, R.F., *Plants and Environment*, 3rd edn., John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1974.)

between water molecules draw water from below through capillary action. This process continues until the saturated zone reaches too deep or the upper soil layer becomes so dry that capillarity is broken. Any kind of mulch or soil surface cover that slows the heat gain of the soil surface and presents a barrier between the soil and the atmosphere will slow the rate of evaporation.

TRANSPIRATION

As described in Chapter 3, plants lose water through the stomata in the leaves as transpired moisture, creating a water deficit in the plant that is balanced by uptake of water by the plant roots. This biotic removal of water from the soil, especially by roots that penetrate the soil layers below those affected by evaporation, constitutes a major avenue of water movement out of the soil ecosystem. If water is not added to replace this loss, plants either have to go dormant or are eliminated from the ecosystem.

HYDRAULIC REDISTRIBUTION

The same physical principles responsible for transpiration allow some plants to move water through their root tissues when their stomata are closed and thereby transport water from one part of the rhizosphere to another. This special ability is possessed by shrubs and trees with xylem pathways that run from their shallow lateral roots to their deeper taproots. When one part of the plant's root system lies in an area of very dry soil, water is drawn out of those roots by the high water potential, exerting a force, or pressure potential, analogous to that of transpirational pull. This pressure potential pulls water from roots located in wetter soil. The water moves through the plant's root system and exudes from the roots in the drier soil, effectively moistening that soil. This movement of water, called hydraulic (or hydrologic) redistribution, occurs mostly at night, when the plant's stomata are closed and transpiration is not competing for the water in the wetter parts of the rhizosphere.

In the form of hydraulic redistribution with greatest relevance for agriculture, called *hydraulic lifting*, water is drawn from the deep layers of the soil penetrated by the plant's long taproots and redistributed to the soil near the surface occupied by the lateral roots. Although hydraulic lifting is not known to occur in any of the annual plants from which humans derive most of their food, it does have relevance for agroecosystems (Liste and White 2008). In semiarid regions with alternating wet–dry seasons, crop plants can be grown in association with native trees or shrubs that exhibit hydraulic lifting. In such systems, the moisture brought to the surface by the shrubs or trees can greatly increase the yield of the crop plants or even spell the difference between crop success and failure.

SOIL MOISTURE AVAILABILITY

The attractive forces operating between water and individual soil particles play a key role in determining how soil moisture is retained, lost, and used by plants. Understanding these forces means looking at the physical and chemical properties of the **soil solution**, the liquid phase of the soil and its dissolved solutes that are separate from the soil particles themselves.

The percentage of moisture available for plant use in a soil has traditionally been determined by collecting a soil sample, measuring its weight, drying the soil at 105°C for 24 h, and then measuring its dry weight. The amount of moisture lost during drying is divided by the sample dry weight, giving a figure that is expressed as a percentage.

This procedure, however, is not adequate for measuring the amount of water actually available to plants in the soil because it does not take into account the important variable of water adhesion to soil particles. As both clay and organic matter content increase in a soil, water is attracted more tightly to soil particles and becomes more difficult for roots to take up. Lettuce may wilt, for example, in a clay soil with 15% moisture, whereas in a sandy soil, moisture may drop as low as 6% before the crop will wilt.

Because water is held more tightly in some kinds of soil compared to others, another measure besides just percent moisture content is needed that better reflects the attractive force between soil particles and moisture. This measure is achieved by expressing soil moisture in energy terms. The force of attraction of water molecules to soil particles, the soil water potential, is expressed as bars of suction, where 1 bar is equivalent to standard atmospheric pressure at sea level (760 mm Hg or 1020 cm of water). This method provides a means of measuring the availability of water in the soil solution and takes into account the varying forces of attraction determined by soil particle size and organic matter content.

A number of special terms are used to describe water moisture content and availability in terms of attractive forces. These are defined in the following and illustrated in Figure 9.2.

- **Gravitational water** is water that moves into, through, and out of the soil under the influence of gravity alone. Immediately following rain or irrigation this water begins to move downward into the soil, occupying all macropore spaces.
- **Capillary water** is the water that fills the micropores of the soil and is held to particles with a force between 0.3 and 31 bars of suction.
- **Hygroscopic water** is the water held most tightly to soil particles, usually with more than 31 bars of suction. After soil has been oven-dried, the remaining nonchemically bound water is hygroscopic water.
- **Water of hydration** is the water that is chemically bound with the soil particles.
- **Easily available water** is the portion of the water in the soil that is readily absorbed by plant roots—usually capillary water between 0.3 and 15 bars of suction.
- **Field capacity** is the moisture left in the soil after the downward pull of gravity has drained the macropores of gravitational water, leaving the micropores filled with capillary water held with at least 0.3 bars of suction to soil particles.
- **Permanent wilting point** is the moisture content of the soil at which a plant wilts and does not recover even when placed in a dark, humid environment. Permanent wilting point usually occurs when all the capillary water held at less than 15 bars of suction has been removed from the soil.

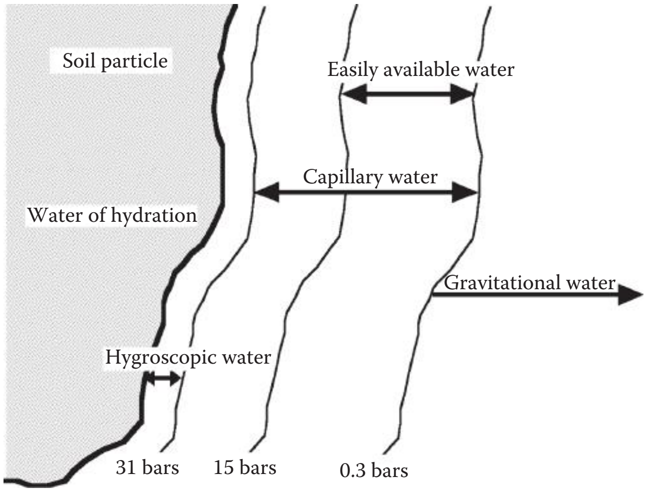


FIGURE 9.2 Soil moisture in relation to force of attraction to soil particles. Permanent wilting point is reached when easily available water has been depleted. Field capacity is the amount of water remaining after gravitational water has drained away.

Since every soil is a different mixture of particle sizes and is variable in organic matter content, and because these characteristics determine water retention ability, it is important to determine the soil type as a part of developing a water management plan. In most soils, optimum growth takes place when soil moisture content is kept just below field capacity. It is clear that the moisture needed for optimum growth does not extend over the complete range of soil moisture content.

PLANTS' UPTAKE OF SOIL MOISTURE

While they are transpiring, plants must continually replace the significant amount of water they lose through their stomata. At any one time, however, only a small proportion of available soil water is close enough to the root surfaces that actually absorb the water. Two processes compensate for this limitation. First, water is drawn passively through the soil to root surfaces through capillary movement of water, and second, plant roots actively grow into the soil toward areas with sufficient moisture for uptake.

CAPILLARY MOVEMENT OF WATER

As a plant takes in water through its roots to replace that which it loses through transpiration, the soil moisture content of the area immediately surrounding the root is reduced. This increases the energy of suction in that region, creating a gradient of lower water potential that tends to draw moisture in all directions from the surrounding soil. Typically, most water is drawn from deeper in the soil profile, especially when the water table is close to the surface. Capillary movement is due partly to the attraction of water molecules to soil particle surfaces, and partly to the attraction of water molecules to each other. The speed at which capillary movement occurs depends on the intensity of the water deficit and the type of soil. In most sandy soils, movement is fairly rapid because the larger-sized particles hold water less tightly. In soils with more clay, especially those with poor crumb structure, movement is much slower.

It has been shown that water can move only a few centimeters a day through capillary action. But due to the extensive volume of soil occupied by most root systems, movement of any greater distance is probably not needed. Plants can obtain a large proportion of their water needs through capillary movement even when transpiration rates are very high. The increased suction pressure created in the immediate root zone during the day is replaced by water movement through the soil from areas of lower suction during the night. It is at times when soil moisture content has been severely depleted and plant growth has slowed that such movement is of greatest significance. If inadequate moisture is present in the surrounding soil, the plant reaches the permanent wilting point.

EXTENSION OF ROOTS INTO THE SOIL

Plants are continually extending roots into the soil, ensuring that new sites of root contact with the soil are being established. Roots, rootlets, and root hairs all combine to produce an extensive network of soil–root interface. Despite continued root penetration and the large volume of the root network, however, the total amount of any particular soil volume that is in contact with a plant's roots at any one time is very small. According to most estimates, less than 1% of the total soil particle surface area within the volume of soil occupied by a plant's roots is actually in contact with root surfaces. This fact underlines the importance of capillary movement of water and the complementarity of water movement and root extension.

Most annual plants distribute most of their roots in the upper 25–30 cm of the soil, and as a result, absorb most of their water from that horizon. Many perennial plants, such as grapes and fruit trees, have roots that extend much more deeply and are able to pull moisture from deeper in the soil profile. But even these plants probably rely heavily on water that is absorbed by roots in the upper horizons when it is available—the usual situation during the cropping cycle. When water is not sufficient, even annual plants such as squash and corn will rely on their deeper roots in an attempt to replace transpirational losses.

The relationship between soil moisture and plants' water needs is the result of a complex interaction between soil conditions, rainfall or irrigation regimes, and the needs of the crop. Farmers try to maintain a balance between these components during the cropping season, but oftentimes events or conditions occur that shift the balance toward an excess of soil moisture or a deficiency.

EXCESS WATER IN THE SOIL

When excess water is present in an agroecosystem for an extended period of time, or movement of excess water out of the system is impeded, the condition known as waterlogging can occur. High rainfall, poor irrigation management, unfavorable topography, and poor surface drainage can bring about waterlogging and associated changes in the soil ecosystem. Waterlogged soils occur throughout the world, ranging from riverbank sediments to marshes, swamps, and peat bogs. Even well-drained soils can experience periods of waterlogging if they are subject to seasonal flooding (Figure 9.3).

Waterlogging occurs frequently and broadly enough that agricultural systems around the world have developed ways of dealing with excess water. More recently, this has involved the construction of costly draining and damming infrastructures. Simpler and traditional techniques, in contrast, have the goal of working with the condition of excess water rather than getting rid of it. In many wet areas of the world, for example, rice is cultivated as a crop ideally suited to wetland agriculture.

NEGATIVE EFFECTS OF EXCESS WATER

In a soil where air fills the pore spaces between soil particles, oxygen diffusion is rapid and there is rarely a deficiency of O_2 for ecological process (i.e., root metabolism and decomposer activity). But when the pores are filled or saturated with water, the diffusion rate of O_2 is greatly reduced.

FIGURE 9.3 Corn damaged by waterlogging in Tabasco, Mexico. Excess soil moisture creates conditions that can stunt or even kill a crop.

Oxygen movement in saturated soil can be one-thousandth or less of what it is in well-aerated soil. Lack of O_2 can severely limit the respiration of root cells, allow populations of anaerobic microorganisms to build up, and establish chemically reducing conditions.

The depressed rates of gas exchange in waterlogged soils also allow the buildup of CO_2 and other gases. CO_2 accumulates wherever respiration is occurring, such as in the area of the roots, displacing needed oxygen and limiting many metabolic processes. Other gases begin to accumulate under the same conditions; for example, methane and ethylene can increase to toxic levels as a result of anaerobic breakdown of organic matter. Phytotoxic water-soluble breakdown products of anaerobic organic matter decomposition also accumulate, a problem that has been noted even for rice production systems (Chou 1990).

Under conditions of limited O_2 supply, many soil microorganisms make use of electron acceptors other than oxygen for their respiratory oxidations. As a result, numerous compounds are converted into a state of chemical reduction, where oxygen is lost and hydrogen is gained. This in turn leads to imbalance in the oxidation–reduction (redox) potential of the soil, measured as the electrical potential of the soil to receive or supply electrons. Ferrous and manganous ions (rather than ferric or manganic) build up to toxic levels under reducing conditions.

Some anaerobic-tolerant microorganisms that can use nitrate as an oxygen source for respiration cause denitrification by liberating N_2 gas or toxic levels of nitrous oxide (N_2O). Ammonia, too, can build up after flooding, but this is due more to the anaerobic breakdown of organic matter. In addition, anaerobic activity reduces sulfates to phytotoxic soluble sulfides, producing the familiar rotten-egg hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) smell.

Each of the conditions described earlier can become limiting for plant development, either alone or in some combination. When a plant is weakened by these conditions it becomes more susceptible to diseases, especially in the root zone. The timing of flooding is also important. The susceptibility of a crop to negative effects from excess soil water conditions may depend on what stage of development the crop is in when the waterlogging occurs. The data in Figure 9.4 illustrate how waterlogging can affect crop growth, development, and yields in different ways depending on the timing of the waterlogging.

DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

Drainage systems have long been employed to make wetland areas more conducive to agriculture and simply to make cropping possible in the first place in areas with excess water or frequent flooding. Drainage systems involve constructing levees, canals, and ditch systems that either keep low-lying areas from being flooded (after the removal of water by pumping or evaporation) or permit the water table to be lowered so that the soil ecosystem can be kept aerobic.

Drainage systems are known to have been used by Roman and Chinese farmers more than 2000 years ago. Much of the Yangtze River Valley of China, the lowlands of the Netherlands, and the Delta region of California would not be farmable without complex drainage systems. More recently, stricter control of soil moisture has become possible with the development of subsurface drainage systems employing perforated plastic pipe that can be laid with special trenching machines.

But drainage systems are not without costs. Apart from the economic costs of installation and maintenance, drainage systems have ecological costs. The removed water carries

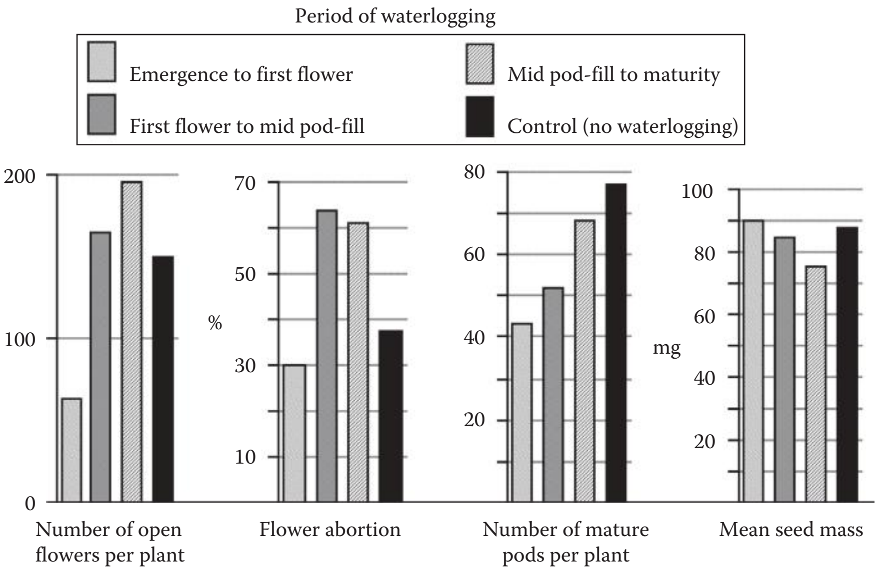


FIGURE 9.4 Effects of the timing of waterlogging on components of cowpea (Vigna unguiculata) yield. (Data from Minchin, F.R. et al., *J. Agric. Sci.*, 90, 355, 1978.)

with it nutrients and sediments that are lost to the system and must be replaced. In areas of variable rainfall, excess drainage can cause increased drought damage during a dry year. In some regions with high evapotranspiration (*ET*) during the growing season and where drains are used extensively, the disposal of the drainage water itself can be a problem, especially when it carries pesticide residues and high salt loads that can damage nearby natural ecosystems.

Wetland-Adapted Crops

Instead of treating flooding as a problem to be solved with drainage systems or other infrastructures, it can be viewed as an opportunity for growing crops with adaptations that allow them to tolerate waterlogging. Rice (*Oryza sativa*) is probably the most well-known example of such a crop. Originally an aquatic or swampland plant, rice has been cultivated as a crop that flourishes in wet habitats. Its adaptations include special air space tissue in the stems that allow air to diffuse to the roots, roots that can grow under conditions of low oxygen concentration, the ability to oxidize ferrous ions to reddish-brown ferric hydroxide in the rhizosphere and thus tolerate soils with high redox potential, and seeds that will germinate underwater due to their low oxygen requirement. Other crops are not completely wetland adapted, yet have adaptations that allow them to tolerate periodic flooding. Taro (*Colocasia esculenta*), for example, may be able to tolerate flooding because of its ability to store oxygen in the swollen corm-like base of the leaves.

Agroecosystem-Level Adaptation to Excess Soil Water

When an agroecological focus is applied to coping with excess water, an intermediate approach is often taken. Rather than trying to eliminate the water or restricting production to wet-adapted crops, topographic variation is created through various means to form beds, platforms, or fields with soils that lie above the water table or typical high water level.

In a traditional method employed in several regions around the world, soil is dug to build up raised beds, and in the process canals or ditches are formed (Figure 9.5). The canals serve to drain away excess water and to catch and retain erosional sediments and organic matter. In some cases, the canals also make possible fish production. If the system is installed in an area with an extended dry season, capillary movement of water upward from the water table can be sufficient to maintain crops, or irrigation water can be drawn from the nearby canal. Examples of such systems include the pond–dike systems of the Pearl River Delta of southern China and the canal–field systems of the Netherlands. Another example, the *camellone–zanja* system of Tlaxcala, Mexico, was discussed in some detail in Chapter 6 as an adaptation to a local regime of wet-season flooding. Many of these agroecosystems have a very long history of successful management.

Another strategy used to create farmable soil in wetlands is to build up platforms in shallow lakebeds using rocks, soil, and cribbing materials from nearby areas and mounding lakebed sediment and plant debris on top of these bases. An example of this type of system is the *chinampas* developed during the pre-Hispanic era in the shallow lakes of the Valley of Mexico.

FIGURE 9.5 Constructing a raised-field farming system in a wetland in Tabasco, Mexico. Soil dug from lateral ditches is being layered with waste sugarcane fiber to create a raised planting surface.

SOIL WATER DEFICIENCY

When the rate of moisture loss from a soil through *ET* is greater than the input from rainfall or irrigation, plants begin to suffer. Evaporation depletes the water supply in the upper 15–25 cm of the soil, and depending on the rooting characteristics and transpiration rates of the plants in the soil, depletion can extend to a greater depth as plants lose water to the atmosphere through transpiration. As moisture is depleted from the soil, soil temperatures near the surface begin to rise, increasing even more the rate of evaporation. When the easily available water held to soil particles is depleted through these processes, levels of soil moisture may decline to the point where plants wilt temporarily during the day.

If temporary wilting consistently occurs, leaves begin to yellow, and growth and development are generally retarded. Leaves expand more slowly, are smaller, and age sooner. Photosynthetic rates drop in a stressed leaf, and a larger amount of assimilated photosynthate is stored in the plant roots. From a crop production point of view, such responses are negative since they result in a reduction in harvestable product. Moreover, when soil moisture is low enough for drought stress responses to occur repeatedly, crop failure may be the eventual result.

From an ecological perspective, drought stress responses may provide some adaptive advantage to the plant. For example, the allocation of more carbon to the roots of a water-stressed plant may promote more root growth, allowing the plant to draw moisture from a broader area. Water stress may force earlier flowering, fruiting, and seed formation, helping to ensure the survival of the species. In some cases, farmers can actually take advantage of such drought responses, as

FIGURE 9.6 Dry-farmed olives in Andalucia, Spain. This deep-rooted perennial crop is well suited to regions with limited rainfall and difficult access to irrigation.

when water is withheld from cotton plants in late summer to force defoliation and avoid the need for chemical defoliants before harvest.

Many plants have specific structures or metabolic pathways that aid in survival under water-stressed conditions. Farmers in an area subject to periodic water stress would do well to look for crop species and varieties that demonstrate some of these adaptive traits. Some examples of drought-tolerant crops are certain cacti species, garbanzo beans, sesame, nut crops such as pistachio, and certain deep-rooted perennials such as olives and dates (Figure 9.6).

ECOLOGY OF IRRIGATION

In natural ecosystems, vegetation is adapted to the soil moisture regime set by climate and soil type. Agroecosystems, on the other hand, often introduce plants with water needs that exceed the ability of the natural ecosystem to supply those needs. When this is the case, irrigation is used to provide adequate soil moisture for crops.

Irrigation represents a major change in ecosystem function, and generates its own particular ecological problems. At the same time, water supply systems are costly in terms of both money and energy. Their use must balance ecological and economic costs if long-term sustainability is to be achieved.

Water harvesting, storage, and delivery systems can have major impacts on surface and subterranean water flow. Aquifers can be overdrafted, and the ecology of riverine, riparian, and wetland ecosystems can be severely damaged. Since maintaining healthy waterways and water supplies is as important as maintaining profitable crop production, the impacts of water supply systems on local and regional hydrology must be taken into account (Postel 2010).

SALT BUILDUP

Nearly all irrigation waters contain salts that can damage crops if allowed to accumulate. Since irrigation is used primarily in areas with high *ET* potential, the deposition of salts at the soil surface over time is inevitable. If uncontrolled, this buildup, called **salinization**, can reach levels unfavorable for crop production, especially when the salts contain toxic trace elements such as boron and selenium

CASE STUDY: INTERCROPPING WITH HYDRAULIC LIFT SHRUBS IN ARID WEST AFRICA

In parts of the Sahel region in Africa, where desertification and soil degradation threaten the ability of people to grow enough food, many farmers successfully grow crops of peanuts or millet in association with two native shrubs, *Guiera senegalensis* and *Piliostigma reticulatum*. These crops are generally more likely to survive drought periods during the growing season of the semiarid Sahel than the same crops grown without the shrubs.

A group of scientists from universities and research institutions in Senegal, France, and the United States are undertaking a multiyear, National Science Foundation–funded research project to determine what mechanisms and interactions are responsible for the positive effects of this shrub intercropping. Initial research has confirmed that the shrubs do indeed help the crop plants: optimized shrub–crop systems (in which the shrubs are at a higher density and are not managed through the traditional practice of burning) in many cases show higher yields for peanuts and millet than nonshrub systems.

Further research has established that the soil in the vicinity of the shrubs remains higher in soil carbon content, microbial diversity and activity, and moisture throughout the long 6- to 9-month dry season than soil outside of the shrub canopies. There is also strong evidence that both *G. senegalensis* and *P. reticulatum* are able to transfer water from deeper soil layers to the rhizosphere near the soil surface through the process of hydraulic lift (see Movement of Water in the Soil section).

Even though the amount of water that is hydraulically lifted is relatively small, the researchers hypothesize that it is nevertheless important in assisting crop plants through periods of drought stress. But the evidence they've collected indicates that the benefits that the crop plants receive from the hydraulically lifted water are not entirely direct—rather, they are mediated by soil microorganisms. The microorganisms thrive in the moist environments surrounding shrub roots—and not in the drier soil further away. The researchers hypothesize that these microorganisms produce plant-growth-promoting and pathogen-suppressing compounds that benefit the crop plants. It is also possible that mycorrhizal fungi present in the soil microbe community establish hyphal linkages between the roots of the shrubs and the roots of the crop plants and help transfer both water and nutrients to the crops.

The researchers are carrying out experiments and investigations to test their hypotheses and to obtain quantitative measurements of water transfer, microbial biomass, production of plant-growth-promoting compounds, the shrubs' contribution to reduction of crop–plant drought stress, and other important factors. Their findings and data could provide the basis for designing agroecosystems for the Sahel region that are resistant to drought, have reduced needs for external inputs like pesticides and fertilizers, and help conserve soil and water resources. The scientifically validated principles and practices developed for the Sahel might then be applied to the design of similar systems in other semiarid regions of the world, helping to address food security and ecological challenges (Figure 9.7).

FIGURE 9.7 One of the research plots in the study, showing a crop of peanuts growing with *Piliostigma* shrubs 40 days after sowing. The shrubs were cut at the ground surface the next day, and their leaves and stems cut up and spread over the soil. During the dry season, when the crop is not growing, the shrubs are not coppiced; their root systems remain intact and functioning throughout the cycle. (Photo courtesy of Nate Bogie.)

(Figure 9.8). Total salt content is measured as electrical conductivity in mhos. For each 1.0 mmho/cm of applied irrigation water, the salt content of the water increases by about 640 ppm. Careful monitoring of salt levels in irrigated soils, along with analysis of the salt content of incoming irrigation water, can help avoid excessive buildup.

Because of the inevitability of salt buildup in most irrigated systems, long-term sustainability is not possible without adequate natural or artificial drainage that removes the accumulated salts from the upper layers of the soil. Rainfall is the primary natural leaching agent. In the absence of sufficient rainfall, it is necessary to construct systems of drains, ditches, and canals as described earlier. Excess irrigation water is applied periodically to dissolve salts, and the salt-laden water either leaches below the productive root zone or is removed through surface drainage from the crop fields.

A natural consequence of farming in dry areas where *ET* is high and irrigation water carries appreciable salt loads is that the water leaving the agroecosystem will have a higher salt concentration than the water applied. Care needs to be taken, therefore, not to salinize the areas receiving the outflow, be they soils, the groundwater, or surface water systems.

Ecological Changes

The introduction of irrigation water into a farming region during a normally dry part of the year may have profound effects on natural ecological cycles and the life cycles of both beneficial and pest organisms. Under natural conditions, seasonal drought may have been a very important means of reducing the buildup of pests and diseases, acting much as frost or flooding does in other regions to disrupt the life

FIGURE 9.8 Land damaged by salt buildup near Kesterson in Central California. Irrigation water draining from surrounding farmland and then evaporating has left toxic salts in the soil. (Photo courtesy of Roberta Jaffe.)

cycles of these organisms. Loss of this natural control mechanism can have serious consequences in terms of outbreaks and increased resistance to artificial control strategies.

Another type of change that may result from introducing irrigation into naturally dry areas is local or regional climate change caused by the increased evaporation from surface water storage areas or from farm fields where water is applied. Elevated humidity in the atmosphere can be connected to increased pest and disease problems, and might also be associated with shifts in the distribution and quantity of precipitation. The off-farm effects of irrigation must be considered along with its on-farm effects when the larger context of sustainability is applied.

OPTIMIZING USE OF THE WATER RESOURCE

Soil moisture is managed optimally in agroecosystems designed to ensure that the primary route for water out of the soil is through the crop. The focus for management, therefore, is to reduce evaporation and increase the flow through transpiration. Farming practices that encourage this differential water movement are important components of sustainability, particularly as the availability of freshwater and its management become two of the most critical issues facing humankind.

Efficiency of Water Use

The biomass produced by a plant with a given amount of water can be used as a measure of the efficiency of the use of water applied to an agroecosystem. When this efficiency is expressed as dry matter produced per unit of water transpired it is called transpiration (*T*) efficiency, and when it is calculated on the basis of dry matter produced per unit of water lost through both evaporation from the soil surface and transpiration, it is called *ET* efficiency.

Transpiration Efficiency

Plants vary in their relative *T* efficiencies, although actual *T* efficiency depends on the conditions that exist where the crop is growing. Data suggest that crops such as corn, sorghum, and millet have relatively high *T* efficiencies, since they use less water to produce 1 kg of dry matter. In contrast, legumes such as alfalfa have low *T* efficiencies and depend on high moisture inputs for each kg of dry matter produced. Most cereal and vegetable crops are intermediate. Average *T* efficiencies for a number of important crop plants are shown in Figure 9.9.

It takes a large amount of water to bring a crop plant to maturity. For example, a representative crop of corn containing 10,000 kg/ha of dry matter and having a transpiration ratio of 350 would draw the equivalent of 35 cm of water per hectare from the soil. This moisture must be in the soil at the time the plants need it, or growth will suffer. Add evaporation losses to this figure, and it can be seen how moisture is often the most critical factor in production in moisture-limited regions.

Research focusing on breeding for increasing the *T* efficiency of crops has shown little success in significantly altering the *T* efficiency ratio (Sinclair 2012). Without other conditions being limiting, the amount of water needed to produce a unit of dry matter of a crop species or variety in a given climate is relatively constant. More intensive research is needed on

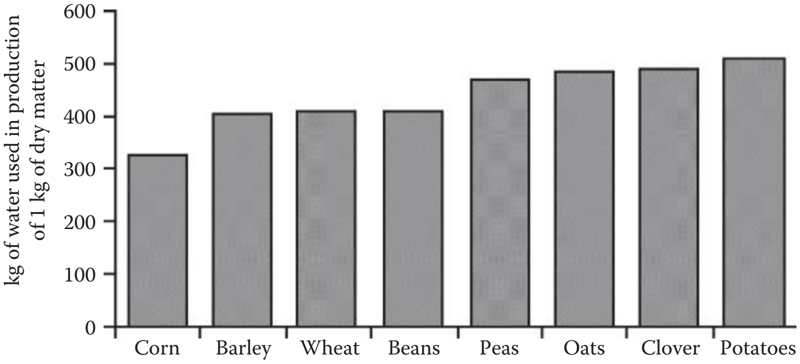


FIGURE 9.9 Average T efficiencies of various crop plants. The averages were computed from data compiled by Lyon et al. (1952) from various locations around the world.

more diverse physiological variables such as photosynthetic rates and limits to water flow inside the plant. But overall the lack of success in altering *T* efficiency would suggest that we need to continue focusing on managing environmental variables such as control of evaporation from the soil surface.

Evapotranspiration Efficiency

Since soil itself is quite variable, *ET* efficiency is also extremely variable. However, by changing soil and crop management practices that affect evaporation from the soil, as described in the following, desirable changes in *ET* efficiency can be readily obtained. Ideally, the ratio of transpirational water loss to evaporative water loss should be as high as possible. A higher *T* to *E* ratio indicates more movement of water through the plant, and hence, a higher potential for production of plant biomass per unit of water used. Sustainable water management places greatest emphasis, then, on reducing *E* so as to have more moisture for *T* and related plant growth and development processes.

MANAGING EVAPOTRANSPIRATION

Since transpiration is a plant process that is subject to only minor control if a plant is otherwise growing normally, it is best to focus on reducing evaporative loss by managing the way the plants are grown.

Crop Choice and Agroecosystem Design

The choice of plant species and the timing of cropping can influence both *T* and *ET* efficiency. Choosing a crop with less intensive water needs, such as corn or sorghum, in an area with very high *ET* and limited water for irrigation is one good strategy for soil moisture management. It may also be useful to shift the growing of more water-intensive crops to a cooler time of the year when moisture loss potential is lower.

Greater vegetative cover can reduce evaporation dramatically. One way of gaining more cover is to use intercropping techniques. A forest plantation, for example, shades the soil surface, whereas an apple orchard with widely separated rows of trees has much more evaporative soil surface exposed. But an increase in plant cover (higher LAI) can also be a liability in drier regions, since lower evaporation rates can be offset by much higher transpiration rates, depleting soil moisture reserves more rapidly.

Fallow Cropping

In moisture-limited parts of the world such as the Great Plains of the United States and the southeastern wheat belt of Australia, farmers sometimes alternate between cropping 1 year and fallow the next to conserve soil moisture. The elimination of transpirational losses from a crop during the fallow year allows soil moisture to be stored for the planting year. Stubble from the previous crop is usually left on the soil surface during the fallow year to limit evaporative losses, and then some kind of soil cultivation or herbicide treatment is used during the fallow season to minimize transpiration losses from weeds. Alternatively, a pasture crop is sown toward the end of the cropping year and left as a grazed cover during the fallow year. Although low rainfall during the fallow year can cause lower crop yields during the cropping year, a crop planted following a year of fallow will generally have a higher yield than if planted without fallow. In fact, as long as sufficient rainfall for recharge is received during the fallow year, there is much less risk of crop failure if the crop season turns out to be a drought year (Figure 9.10).

FIGURE 9.10 Sheep-grazed fallow on an Australian wheat farm. The sheep control moisture-using herbs and serve as a cash crop during the fallow year. Soil moisture gained during the fallow year combines with rainfall during the following cropping year to permit a successful wheat harvest. Successive years of wheat production with no fallow are impossible, except when there is unusually high rainfall. (Photo courtesy of David Dumaresq.)

Managing Surface Evaporation

Evaporation directly from the soil surface normally returns to the atmosphere more than half the moisture gained from precipitation. This degree of evaporative loss occurs not only in dryland regions, but in irrigated arid and rainfed humid regions as well. Depending on other factors, plant growth may suffer as a result of the loss of moisture through surface evaporation. Any practice that covers the soil will aid in the reduction of evaporative losses.

Organic Mulches

A wide range of plant- and animal-derived materials can be used to cover the surface of the soil as mulch in order to reduce evaporation (and to reduce weed growth and transpirational losses from the weeds). Commonly used materials include sawdust, leaves, straw, composted agricultural wastes, manure, and crop residues. Mulches provide a very effective barrier to moisture loss, and have special application in intensive garden and small-farm systems, or with high-value crops such as strawberries, blackberries, and some other fruit crops. Mulches work best when the cropping system requires only infrequent cultivation or relies mostly on hand weeding.

Mulching provides a viable option for soil water management, but at the same time has many other beneficial effects. It protects the soil from erosion, returns organic matter and

FIGURE 9.11 Water hyacinth mulch between rows of chiles in Tabasco, Mexico.

FIGURE 9.12 Redwood bark mulch on the tops of strawberry beds near Aromas, CA.

nutrients to the soil, alters the surface reflectivity (albedo), increases the boundary layer for gaseous diffusion, and allows better infiltration of incoming rainfall. All of these factors interact (Figures 9.11 and 9.12).

Artificial Mulches

A range of specially manufactured papers and plastics are now available for use as mulches. Such materials can be easily spread out and firmly secured to the soil surface. When these "mulches" are spread directly over planted beds, slits or holes can be made for the crop plants. Moisture loss is greatly reduced and crop yields very often are increased. Some plastics provide a concentrated greenhouse effect as well, raising soil temperatures several degrees. This is a very important benefit for crops that are planted during the colder time of the year, such as strawberries in coastal California (Figure 9.13).

Crop Residues and Reduced Tillage

By leaving a high percentage of the residue from the cropping season on the surface of the soil, a protective barrier that lowers evaporation is created. The residue mulch protects the boundary layer at the surface of the soil, and provides a barrier against the capillary flow of water to the surface. The lower temperatures created by the mulch barrier probably help reduce evaporation as well.

FIGURE 9.13 Plastic mulch on strawberry beds in coastal California. The plastic is applied after the small strawberry plants are transplanted, and then slits are cut in the plastic for the plants to grow through.

Reduced-tillage and no-till techniques are often combined by using crop residues as mulch. A major goal of most reduced-tillage systems is to develop greater soil cover to reduce evaporative losses from the surface. In no-till systems, seeds are sown directly into the sod or under residues of the previous crop with no plowing or disking, allowing the plant material to remain as a barrier to evaporative loss. Stubble mulching is a common practice in subhumid and semiarid areas where enough biomass is produced by the previous crop to provide sufficient soil cover. The residue is chopped or mown and spread evenly over the surface, and then special tillage implements that can penetrate the mulch are used to plant the following crop. Despite their positive impact on soil moisture, reduced-tillage systems have potential drawbacks. These include increased dependence on herbicides for weed management, buildup of soil pathogens from crop residues, and the need for more complex and costly farming equipment.

Soil Mulch

A natural soil mulch, also called a dust mulch, made from a cultivated dry soil layer on the surface of the soil, can conserve moisture in regions with a distinct alternation between the wet and dry season. This dry layer breaks the capillary flow of water to the surface, and the process of its creation eliminates weeds that might tap moisture below the dry layer and increase transpirational losses. These benefits, however, must be weighed against potential negative impacts such as increased costs for cultivation, a greater threat of soil erosion from rain and wind, and the loss of organic matter from the dry layer.

FUTURE RESEARCH

When sustainability is the primary goal, moisture in the soil is managed so that it remains as close as possible to the optimum required to maintain the best growth and development of the crop. This means going beyond simply removing water when it is in excess and adding it when it is deficient. Sustainability requires an in-depth understanding of how water functions in the soil and at the plant–soil interface. Efficiency of uptake of water and its conversion to plant biomass can be one indicator of agroecosystem sustainability. Further development and testing of water management strategies are needed, especially those that view water in the context of the larger cycles and patterns that link the farm with the surrounding environments from which water comes and ultimately returns after passing through the farm.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. In rainfall-deficient regions, the lack of soil moisture for crop production can be dealt with in two ways: (1) developing crops or cropping systems that are adapted to the low levels of moisture or (2) introducing irrigation to overcome the water deficit. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each approach?
2. What are some of the reasons that farmers must be aware of the "downstream" effects of their use of irrigation?
3. A period without rainfall long enough to create moisture stress in the soil, or a period of waterlogging long enough to create limiting conditions of anaerobiosis in the soil ecosystem, can help control pest populations and diseases in the soil that might otherwise cause crop loss. When these natural events are removed from a particular soil system, what alternative pest and disease management strategies could be employed?
4. How is competition for water between urban regions and agroecosystems affecting natural ecosystems? How might the water needs of all three be better balanced? How will climate change affect the use of water in your local area?

INTERNET RESOURCES

AQUASTAT
www.fao.org/nr/aquastat
AQUASTAT is the global water information system of the United Nations' Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO).

Global Water Policy Project
www.globalwaterpolicy.org

International Water Management Institute
www.iwmi.cgiar.org

The Nature Conservancy Rivers and Lakes Initiative
www.nature.org/ourinitiatives/habitats/riverslakes/threatsimpacts/rivers-and-lakes-promoting-sustainable-agricultural-practices.xml
The TNC's site for programs linking the protection of lakes and rivers with the maintenance of agricultural productivity and sustainability.

RECOMMENDED READING

Ali, H. 2010. *Fundamentals of Irrigation and On-Farm Water Management*. Springer: New York.
A thorough technical approach for understanding irrigation systems, plant–soil water relationships, and agricultural water management.

Brady, N. C. and R. R. Weil. 2007. *The Nature and Properties of Soils*, 14th edn. Prentice Hall: Upper Saddle River, NJ.
The most recent edition of this comprehensive soils textbook, with an extensive section on how water functions in the soil ecosystem.

Ehlers, W. and M. Goss. 2003. *Water Dynamics in Plant Production*. CABI: Cambridge, MA.
Explains the basic principles of water transport, taking into account soil–plant–atmosphere interactions, and their use in soil and agricultural management.

Essington, M. E. 2003. *Soil and Water Chemistry: An Integrative Approac*h. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.
This book balances agricultural and environmental perspectives in its analysis of the chemical properties and processes that affect organic and inorganic substances in soil and soil water.

Kirkham, M. B. 2004. *Principles of Soil and Plant Water Relations*. Academic Press: London, U.K.
Explores the methods used to measure the status of water in soil and plants, including details on instruments and basic sampling methods.

Lal, R. and M. K. Shuk (eds.). 2004. *Principles of Soil Physics*. Taylor & Francis Group: New York.
This book analyzes the impact of the physical and hydrological properties and processes of soil on agricultural production, the environment, and sustainable use of natural resources.

Postel, S. 2008. The missing piece: A water ethic. The American Prospect, Special Report: The Global Freshwater Crisis, June 2008.
An in-depth look into the issues and challenges facing the United States as it tries to establish a sustainable water management policy.

Singer, M. J. and D. J. Munns. 2006. *Soils: An Introduction*, 6th edn. Prentice-Hall: Upper Saddle River, NJ.
A very useful introductory text on soils, with a very good treatment of the management of the soil–water interface.

Sparks, D. L. 2011. *Environmental Soil Chemistry*, 3rd edn. Academic Press: San Diego, CA.
This book illustrates fundamental principles of soil chemistry, and the interactions of soil with other important environmental factors and materials.

10 Fire

Fire is a major form of environmental change or disturbance. In natural ecosystems, it removes dominant plant species, displaces animals, returns nutrients to the soil, and burns accumulated litter on the forest floor. Nearly all the vegetation of the earth has been influenced in some way by fire. Periodic fires of varying frequencies and intensities are thought to occur in most ecosystems, especially in regions with pronounced dry seasons.

The most common fires are natural in origin, but anthropogenic (human-induced) fires have a considerable history as well. There are reports in the literature of charcoal deposits in tropical rain forest areas dating back as far as 6000 BP, many of which appear to be associated with human activity. Before the development of early agricultural tools, fire may have been the most important "tool" early humans had for vegetation management.

Some natural vegetation types that have evolved in areas where fire is relatively frequent are actually dependent on fire for their long-term stability; these include certain prairie, savanna, shrub, and forest types. The shrubby vegetation of ecosystems with a Mediterranean climate (called *chaparral*, *matorral*, or *caatinga*) is probably the best-known fire-dependent vegetation, often being described as a "fire climax" community (Figure 10.1).

In early ecological research, fire was not studied much, because it was seen only as a destructive force, and because it was hard to observe its actual effects. More recently, however, detailed studies of fire in ecosystems such as California chaparral have helped make fire an important topic of ecological investigation. Today, fire is seen as an integral part of many ecosystems, as witnessed by the rising use of controlled or prescribed burns in the management of parks and nature reserves. Fire plays very important roles in agroecosystems as well: it is an important part of the practice of shifting cultivation, and is used to manage crop residue, kill weeds, and clear slash following logging.

FIRE IN NATURAL ECOSYSTEMS

A fire can occur in an ecosystem when three conditions are met: an accumulation of sufficient fuel or organic matter, dry weather, and a source of ignition. For millions of years, lightning was the primary source of ignition. It is still important today, causing the fires responsible for more than 50% of the acreage consumed by wildfires in the Western United States (Pyne 2012). In very recent geologic time, humans have become another important "source of ignition." Humans have used fire since the Paleolithic, as long as 500,000 years ago. Fire was probably used first for the hunting or herding of animals, and then evolved into a vegetation management tool. Burning may have been used to provide better feed for animals, or even to promote the presence of certain plants that served as food or materials sources. Eventually, fire became a tool to prepare the ground for planting, with evidence thus far showing that early slash-and-burn agriculture began about 10,000 years ago.

From an ecological perspective there are primarily three types of fires:

- **Surface fire.** This is the most common type of fire. Fire temperatures are not too hot, with flames burning the trash, grass, or litter that has accumulated on the surface of the soil. Such a fire can move along under a forest canopy and not burn the trees. Changes that occur in soil conditions during a surface fire are usually short lived, although the understory vegetation can be greatly altered. Surface fires can be used to either control or promote the growth of weedy or invasive vegetation, depending on the circumstances.
- **Crown fire.** This type of fire can be very damaging for some types of vegetation, whereas it may be an integral part of rejuvenating other types. During crown fires, the canopy of the vegetation is consumed, and usually the mature plant species are killed. Crown fires are usually very fast moving and often combine with a surface fire to burn everything above the soil surface.
- **Ground or subsoil fire.** This type of fire is not very frequent, but when it does occur, it can be very destructive. It is characteristic of soils that are high in organic matter, especially peat or muck soils. Organic matter in the soil can be burned down to the mineral soil layer. These are usually slow fires, with more smoke than flame, that dry the soil as they burn. Roots and seeds in the soil are killed, and animal habitats are severely altered.

Any individual fire can combine aspects of all three fire types. In general, the intensity of a fire is very closely related to the frequency of fires in the area (Figure 10.2).

EFFECTS OF FIRE ON SOIL

Much of the ecological significance of fire revolves around its effects on the soil. Fire has very noticeable impacts on a range of abiotic and biotic components of the soil ecosystem,

FIGURE 10.1 Chaparral fire in the Santa Ynez mountains near Santa Barbara, CA. Periodic fires are part of the evolutionary history of chaparral; humans have only recently disrupted the natural pattern of burning.

and knowledge of these impacts is important in employing fire as a tool for agroecosystem management. It must be pointed out, however, that the effects of fire will vary widely depending on the type and stage of development of the vegetation, the type of soil, the season of burning, the prevailing weather conditions, the amount of time since the last fire, and other conditions.

ABIOTIC FACTORS

When a fire occurs, the temperature of the surface layers of the soil is raised. The actual heating rate and depth depends on the amount of moisture in the soil and the type of fire. Temperatures during a burn at the surface of the soil almost always exceed 100°C and can reach as high as 720°C for brief periods of time. Increases in temperature below the surface are usually restricted to the upper 3–4 cm of soil, where they rise 50°C–80°C above the temperature present before the fire, usually for only a few minutes (Raison 1979). These temperatures are high enough to modify the soil environment in ways that can be useful for agroecosystem management.

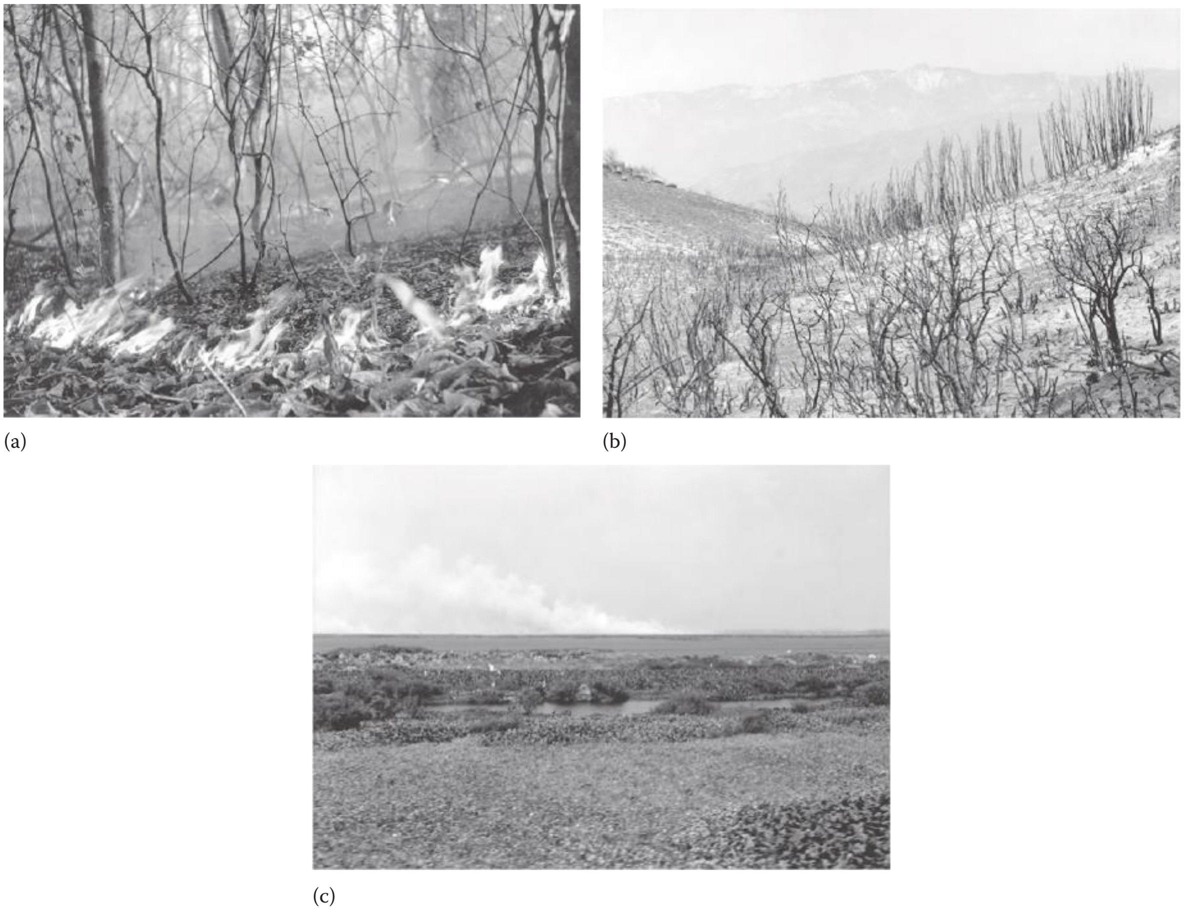


FIGURE 10.2 The three types of fires. A slow-moving, cool surface fire (a) burns litter in the understory of summer deciduous forest in northwestern Costa Rica. A fast-moving crown fire (b) in chaparral burned everything from the surface to the plant crowns near Santa Barbara, CA. A subsurface fire (c), visible in the distance, burns in a swamp near Coatzacoalcos, Veracruz, Mexico.

The complete burning of aboveground organic matter combusts most nitrogen and organic acid components, returning inorganic cations to the soil (mainly K^+ and Ca^{2+}) which then have an alkalizing effect. The strength of this effect depends on the intensity of the fire and the thoroughness of the combustion of plant biomass, but increases in soil pH during the first several days following fire, especially once the soil is moistened by precipitation, are commonly 3 or more pH units.

Following the fire, the blackened soil surface will tend to have more solar gain; however, if the standing biomass was considerable before the fire and burn temperatures were very high, enough white ash may be present at the surface to actually have the opposite effect for a short period of time. The higher albedo of the white surface will reflect solar energy and limit soil heating.

The hot temperatures caused by fire can greatly reduce the amount of organic matter in the upper layers of the soil. At a temperature of 200°C–300°C for 20–30 min there is an 85% reduction in organic matter, with an accompanying release of CO_2, a loss of nitrogen and sulfur in volatilized forms, and the deposition of minerals.

After fire there is usually a reduction in soil moisture-holding capacity, although with the removal of vegetative cover, actual moisture availability in the soil can increase because of reduced demand. Soil aggregate size is reduced, bulk density goes up, and permeability and water infiltration rates are reduced. Often there is also an increase in rainfall runoff and nutrient leaching, and the possibility of greater soil erosion until the soil is covered once again with vegetation. It is not uncommon just after a fire for the immediate surface of the soil to actually be water repellent, but this condition is usually overcome after some exposure to moisture.

Generally speaking, most of the abiotic effects listed above are of a rather short-term nature. Regeneration of the vegetation, coupled with replacement of soil organic matter, leaching rainfall, and plant modification of the burned conditions, rapidly begins the process of recovery. In the case of severe fire intensity following excessive fire suppression and abnormal fuel buildup, or in the case of a fire burning thick organic layers of peat or muck that reaccumulate at a very slow rate, abiotic conditions can be altered for longer periods of time. Unnaturally frequent fires, usually human induced, can also lead to more lasting change.

BIOTIC FACTORS

Obviously, any living plants or animals caught in the path of a fire are in peril. Plants that are not adapted to fire are easily killed, especially if the bark type does not protect the living cambium. If the fire is hot enough and other conditions are right, living plant matter can be killed, dried out, and ignited very rapidly, reducing all aboveground material to ash. Then, if the plants do not sprout from belowground structures, recovery will only begin with the germination of seeds. Seeds of some species of plants are killed by fire, whereas others are either stimulated by the breaking of specific dormancy factors or by the creation of soil conditions that favor germination and establishment (Figure 10.3).

FIGURE 10.3 Fire response by pines. Young lodgepole pines reestablish following devastating crown fires that killed the parent trees in Yellowstone, Wyoming.

Repeated fire can retard the vegetation recovery process to the point that another vegetation type, more tolerate of fire, can establish dominance. The conversion of shrubland to grassland is a good example of this process. On the other hand, some vegetation types are in a sense kept healthy by periodic fire, because the fire removes old and dying individuals, returns stored nutrients to the soil, and stimulates renovation by new or younger individuals.

Many larger animals can avoid fire by moving away from it, but even when they are killed by fire, their populations in the burned area can recover through recolonization from nearby unburned areas. Some animals actually seek out recently burned areas because of the concentration of new growth and forage for feed, or because the ash can aid in the removal of parasites such as ticks and fleas.

Following a fire there is an immediate reduction in the populations of nearly all soil-dwelling organisms, including fungus, nitrifying bacteria, spiders, millipedes, and earthworms. Many die as a result of the high temperatures, but some organisms are impacted by the changes in pH that follow the fire or by the flush of certain nutrients into the soil that comes from burned organic matter. After a fire, however, there is fairly rapid recolonization, especially by bacteria that are stimulated by the increase in pH.

On the whole, fire can have both negative and positive impacts on the environment, but regardless it must be remembered that the intensity, duration, and frequency of fires in natural ecosystems are incredibly variable. From 1 year to the next, conditions that favor fire are going to vary tremendously. And when a fire does occur, its effects will not be uniform. Some areas will be burned very thoroughly, whereas a short distance away the same type of ecosystem may be spared the impacts of fire completely.

PLANT ADAPTATIONS TO FIRE

In any location where fire has a long evolutionary history, most plants and at least a few of the animals have developed adaptations to fire. It is interesting that the adaptations that provide resistance to fire in plants are in many cases also traits that enable the plants to deal with excess light or drought stress.

Plants can be adapted to fire in three different ways.

1. **Fire resistance.** Plants with fire resistance have traits that help prevent the living parts from being burned in a fire. These traits include such characteristics as thick bark, fire-resistant foliage, or a litter mat that will support frequent but less damaging fires.
2. **Fire tolerance.** Fire-tolerant plants have traits that allow the plant to survive being burned in a fire. A common fire-tolerant trait is the ability to resprout from the crown following a fire.
3. **Fire dependence.** Fire-dependent plants actually require fire for reproduction or long-term survival. Some fire-dependent plants have seeds that need fire before they will germinate, or cones that will not open unless exposed to fire. Other fire-dependent plants will not flower until after a fire, or will become senescent unless exposed to periodic fires.

FIRE IN AGROECOSYSTEMS

Fire has a long history of use in agriculture. But from an agroecological perspective, there can be good fires and bad fires, overuse or underuse of fire, and careful or careless use of fire. The challenge is the appropriate application of the knowledge of the ecological impacts of fire.

SHIFTING CULTIVATION

The agroecosystem with the longest history of fire use is shifting cultivation, or slash-and-burn agriculture. Shifting cultivation with the use of fire continues today to be the most important form of subsistence agriculture in many parts of the world. Although thought to be practiced primarily in the tropics, fire-based shifting cultivation was used in early agriculture even in Europe, where wheat and barley were grown on a 10–25-year fallow cycle (Russell 1968). Although it might seem quite simple to clear, burn, and plant, good shifting cultivators have learned through experience that the timing of all activities, especially the fire, makes the difference between a sustainable system and a degrading system (Figure 10.4). Shifting cultivation works when the system is allowed enough time for natural successional processes to restore the soil fertility lost through disturbance and crop harvest (Figure 10.5).

Immediately following a fire, nutrient mobility in the system is quite high, often resulting in high leaching losses. This accentuates the need for a fallow period in order to recover the lost fertility. Crops in slash-and-burn systems need to quickly pick up the nutrients added to the soil from ash, or else leaching will remove them or invading noncrop plant species will begin to capture them. Depending on soil types, climatic regimes, and cropping practices, the rate of nutrient loss varies considerably. But studies have shown that the loss can be rapid and high, especially for nutrients such as calcium, potassium, and magnesium (Nye and Greenland 1960; Ewel et al. 1981; Jordan 1985). Repeated fires in short succession, as well as soil cultivation, can accelerate nutrient loss even more (Sanchez 1976) (Figure 10.4).

FIGURE 10.4 Managing fire in a slash-and-burn agroecosystem in Tabasco, Mexico. A small firebreak separates the fire from future slash and nearby crops.

FIGURE 10.5 Pattern of shifting cultivation in the mountains of Chiapas, Mexico. Fallow plots of various ages are clearly seen next to plots being farmed. Farmers say that a 15–20-year fallow period is required for the system to be sustainable over the long term. Pressures to shorten this fallow period are many.

Shifting cultivation systems are generally thought to be able to sustain relatively low human population levels. In well-managed shifting cultivation systems, most of the soil carbon and nitrogen remains following a fire, the root mat stays intact and alive, the soil surface is protected by some form of biomass cover, and even soil mycorrhizae survive.

As a result, nutrient loss and soil erosion are minimized, and the system is sustainable. But many of these systems have recently begun to move in an unsustainable direction, because an array of social, economic, and cultural factors create pressures that shorten the fallow period, remove fallen timber for firewood, introduce inappropriate crops, or overgraze animals, eventually promoting the invasion of noxious weedy species or leading to a breakdown of the processes that enhance the recovery of native species ground cover. Overuse of fire is often one cause of the breakdown in sustainability.

MODERN AGRICULTURAL SYSTEMS

In modern agricultural systems, fire plays many diverse roles. The examples presented in the following represent different levels of technology and have different levels of use depending on the agroecosystem type, part of the world, and cultures involved. They can be used at any time during the cropping cycle, from preplant to harvest, depending on the system and the purpose. The biggest challenge in the use of fire overall is to understand how to take advantage of the beneficial effects of fire while avoiding or minimizing the negative ones. Skill, experience, and knowledge are all required.

TABLE 10.1
Slash Loads Available for Burning as a Part of Land Clearing in a Range of Ecosystems

System	Location	Slash Load (kg/m^2)	Source
Napier grassland	Tabasco, Mexico	1.63	Gliessman (1982)
Two-year second growth	Tabasco, Mexico	1.18	Gliessman (1982)
Eight-year second growth	Turrialba, Costa Rica	3.85	Ewel et al. (1981)
Mature tropical dry forest	Jalisco, Mexico	1.18–1.35	Ellingson et al. (2000)
Upland rice and barley	Central Japan	0.34	Koizumi et al. (1992)
Upland rice	Tabasco, Mexico	0.51	Gliessman (1982)
Paddy rice	Central Valley, CA	0.7–0.9	Blank et al. (1993)
Douglas fir with red alder (9 years old)	Oregon, United States	0.986	Cromack et al. (1999)
Conifer forest	Pacific Northwest, United States	0.5–3.0	Dell and Ward (1971)
Annual pasture	Central Coast, CA	0.2–0.3	Gliessman (1992b)

Land Clearing

In many parts of the world today, fire continues to be the most accessible and affordable tool for clearing vegetation and plant biomass from the soil surface prior to preparing the land for planting, especially in present-day versions of shifting cultivation. The use of fire for land clearing is particularly important in many forestry systems, where the large slash load left after logging is burned to make replanting easier, as well as to reduce the chance of a wildfire moving through the dry slash and suppressing the establishment of seeded or transplanted tree seedlings.

The amount of dry matter that needs to be cleared will obviously have a great impact on the type and intensity of the fire. As shown in Table 10.1, these amounts, called slash loads, vary considerably depending on the system. Slash left on the soil in tropical shifting cultivation systems can easily exceed 4 kg/m^2, and if adequately dried and burned at an appropriate time, will carry a hot, uniform fire that will consume most all of the plant material except large-diameter branches and trunks (Ewel et al. 1981). Even young second growth produces 1–2 kg/m^2 of dry matter and can easily carry a fire (Gliessman 1982).

Logging of older forest systems invariably leaves the forest littered with logs, tops, and branches, which can become a fire hazard as they dry out. Such slash can also harbor pests and be detrimental to the recovery of tree seedlings. On the other hand, as the debris decomposes it improves soil structure and nutrient status while protecting the soil against erosion. All of these factors need to be taken into account in deciding if slash should be burned uniformly over the surface, piled so that impacts of burning can be localized, or left unburned as a mulch. In some traditional systems, when slash is limited in supply (usually less than 0.5 kg/m^2), it is piled, burned, and the ash is scattered uniformly over the cleared fields as a fertilizer (Figure 10.6).

A unique example of the use of fire for land clearing is a system for renovating old cacao plantations in Tabasco, Mexico that are no longer profitable. First, bananas are planted in the understory. The next year, all overstory shade trees and old cacao trees are cut, leaving a heavy slash load of more than 5 kg/m^2 that covers the corms of the bananas.

FIGURE 10.6 Burned slash piles in Chiapas, Mexico. When biomass production is limited by climate or short fallow, slash can be piled for burning and the ash spread.

Once adequately dried, the slash is burned. Immediately after the fire, a traditional corn/bean/squash intercrop is planted in the same way as in local shifting cultivation systems, allowing for a harvest within 6 months after cutting of the trees. While the annual crops are being planted and cared for, sprouting bananas and new shoots from the trunks of the leguminous shade trees are protected and allowed to develop. After the annual crop has completed its cycle, short-lived perennial crops such as yuca (cassava) or papaya are planted. By the time these crops are harvested, the bananas have formed a fairly continuous canopy, producing bananas (or plantain) for local use or sale. By the third year, the resprouted shade trees have also begun to become part of the shade-producing canopy. At this point, shade conditions at the soil surface have returned to the reduced levels appropriate for the replanting of new cacao seedlings. Bananas are harvested up to the time the new cacao plants come into production (5–7 years after planting), at which point the renovation cycle is complete. Local farmers claim that without the use of fire, it would be at least 10 years before cacao could begin to be replanted on such a site—a long time to wait for this valuable cash crop. Research is needed to tell us exactly how fire benefits this agroecosystem (Figure 10.7).

Nutrient Additions to the Soil

In many cropping systems in the world, the ash left after burning crop residues, noncrop slash, and even wood for cooking or heating is seen as a valuable nutrient source that should be returned to the soil. Ash is quickly carried into the soil with rainfall and the nutrients it contains are readily available as part of the soil solution. The loss of nitrogen and sulfur to volatilization during burning is more than offset by a gain in all other nutrients and by an increase in their availability to plants. Ash has been shown to contain as much as 2.6% potassium, and appreciable amounts of phosphorus, calcium, magnesium, and other mineral elements. Since ash can amount to between 0.4 and 0.67 kg/m^2, it has significant potential as a nutrient input to agroecosystems (Seubert et al. 1977; Ewel et al. 1981; Debano et al. 1998).

Of course, being so soluble, these nutrients can easily be washed out of the system, so effective plant cover and good root development should accompany the addition of nutrients from ash. Timing of ash application is very important. There must be active plant roots in the soil to rapidly take up the highly soluble nutrients. And knowledge of rainfall patterns is needed to avoid having heavy rains follow burning or ash application, so that nutrients are not leached below the root zone or washed off the surface. Research is needed that determines which crop systems or combinations can best take advantage of fire-released plant nutrients.

Crop Residue Management

Fire is often used as a tool for crop residue management. One of its main benefits is to make nitrogen from the residue more easily available to the following crop. When the residue is very high in carbon as compared to nitrogen (C/N 25–100), the nitrogen in the residue can be immobilized by incorporation into microbial biomass (and then more permanently into soil humus). Burning, however, makes the nitrogen readily available for uptake by plants. Even though most nitrogen is lost through volatilization during burning, the C-to-N ratio of the ash is lower relative to that of unburned residue, making the nitrogen that remains more readily available and reducing the need for external nitrogen amendments.

Another benefit of residue burning is reduction in the amount of tillage needed. Also, in many parts of the developing world, residue is burned not to eliminate the residue, but as fuel for home heating or cooking. Sometimes the ash is collected and returned to fields as a soil amendment.

Rice production is often associated with fire. In any part of the world where rice is grown, the straw and stubble left following harvest can amount to as much as 0.95–1.0 kg/m^2. Traditionally, this straw has been used as animal feed, fuel, or construction material, or as raw material for compost.

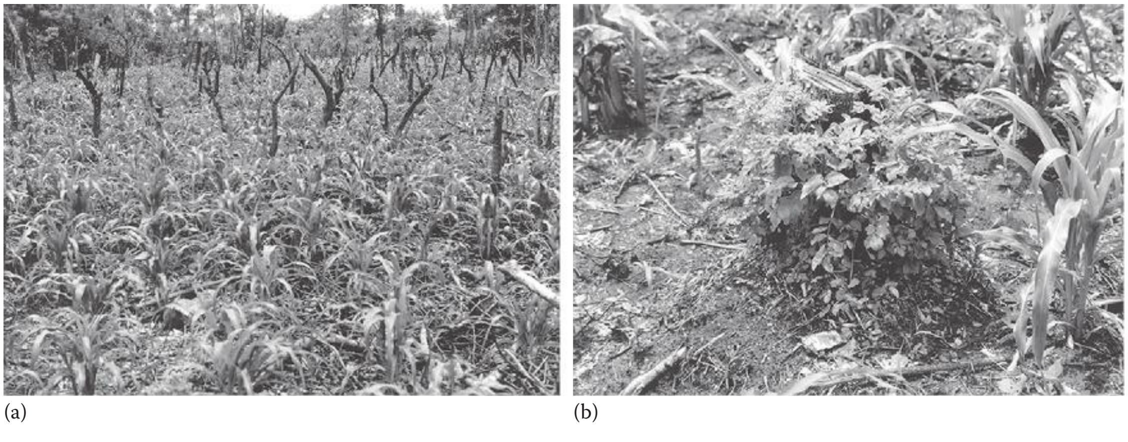


FIGURE 10.7 Using fire to renovate old cacao plantations in Tabasco, Mexico. An annual crop of corn, beans, and squash (a) grows through the ash left from burning old cacao plants (standing) and associated shade trees. A leguminous shade tree (b; *Pithecellobium saman*) begins to recover following the fire. It will be pruned to one or two stems and eventually provide shade for new cacao plants.

In many present-day rice systems, however, the increasing need to get another crop into the ground as soon as possible following the rice harvest has led to the use of fire to quickly reduce the straw to ash. Burning does reduce stubble-borne diseases and insects, and also reduces the potential of methane being produced during decay under flooded conditions in amounts that might become toxic to some following crops. But due to the perceived impact of the smoke on atmospheric quality, regulations increasingly limit burning and force farmers to deal with the reincorporation of the straw into the soil, or to find alternative uses for harvested straw (Kanokkanjana and Garivait 2013).

From the standpoint of sustainability, the many advantages of residue burning must be weighed against disadvantages that include loss of nutrients through volatilization or leaching, air pollution, exposure of soil surface, and loss of organic matter inputs to the soil. Because the drawbacks of using fire are not insignificant given the ways in which the agricultural context is changing, it is becoming increasingly important to research alternatives to traditional uses of fire for crop residue management; an example is using green-manure covercrops that substitute for the traditional fallow and fire for corn production in southern Mexico (Castillo-Caamal et al. 2010).

Weed Management

Fire is used for weed management most effectively and practically when the weeds are either in the litter or soil as seed, or shortly after the seeds have germinated. Seeds or seedlings in the litter are most likely to be killed by fire, since litter at the surface burns at high temperatures and down to the soil surface. For this reason, it is necessary to have some kind of mulch cover or crop residue to carry the fire. Slash-and-burn systems are very effective at destroying seed in the litter and on the immediate soil surface.

A more recently developed practice for weed control has been used in Europe for many years. A propane tank is connected to a hose and a nozzle so that a flame can be moved rapidly over the soil surface to destroy weed seedlings. Both backpack- and tractor-mounted flame weeders are available. Specially shaped nozzles and an assortment of deflectors and shields protect any crop seedlings while desiccating the weeds. Weed seedlings must be very small to be effectively controlled with this technology, or the seedlings of the crop must be at a stage of development that gives them greater resistance than the weeds to the heat. Under some field conditions, a crop such as corn in its first and second leaf stage has a structure and moisture content that will keep it from suffering damage while most surrounding weed seedlings are killed. The necessary equipment can be expensive to purchase and use, and depends greatly on the use of fossil fuel, but in some very weed-prone crops like carrots and onions, flame weeders are a very cost-effective means of weed control.

But fire must be used on weeds with care. Perennial weeds and those with fire-resistant roots, rhizomes, crowns, or other structures that resist burning may actually be stimulated by fire. Bracken (*Pteridium aquilinum*), for example, is a very aggressive plant that can act as a weed in deforested or pasture areas, and is favored by fire in two ways (Gliessman 1978d). Its deep underground rhizomes permit it to survive fire, and there is some evidence that removal of aboveground litter of bracken actually promotes more vigorous regrowth of the fern. At the same time, spores of the fern are favored by the soil conditions created by fire and ash, allowing for initial establishment of the fern where it didn't occur before and the potential for its aggressive vegetative growth from then on. In shifting cultivation systems, where fire is used to help clear the fallow, fire can begin to have negative effects if the fallow period is too short. These effects can include leaching of nutrients and invasion of fire-resistant weeds. In general, the use of fire for weed control requires careful consideration of its potential impacts, based on the unique characteristics of the system.

Management of Arthropods

Fire is a very effective means of eliminating damaging arthropods, such as insects and mites, from an agroecosystem. Heat, smoke, and loss of habitat all combine to either kill these organisms (as well as their eggs or larva) or drive them from the system. In some natural ecosystems, fire is probably as much a factor in the natural fluctuations of arthropod populations as climatic factors or trophic interactions. Fire suppression in forests may actually be upsetting the natural equilibrium, allowing outbreaks of such common pests as bark beetles, leaf miners, and lepidopterous leaf eaters such as tent caterpillars. In some ecosystems, however, fire may not impact arthropod populations. Joern (2005), for example, found that different burn frequencies had no effect on grasshopper species diversity or density in North American tall grass prairies. In other studies, it has been found that even though fire impacts arthropods, the effects are short term—generally the arthropod community largely recovers in just a few years (Pryke and Samways 2012). Since the ecological characteristics of each arthropod taxa are so different, much needs to be known about each species' life history and adaptations to fire in order to understand how fire may impact it.

In agroecosystems, especially with the growing popularity of reduced- and no-till agriculture, fire has once again begun to play a role in pest management. Many insect pests can pass the time between cropping seasons in some part of the plant left over from the previous season, either living or dead, and burning these insect refuges can be an effective way of controlling the pests. Bollworm problems in cotton, for example, are dramatically reduced if all plant residue is destroyed, and fire is one tool for achieving this end. Because stemborers in grain crops overwinter in straw remaining in the field after harvest, appropriate use of fire might aid in their management.

Fire has proven to be effective in control of the hessian fly in wheat production in the wheat belt of the United States. The fly became a significant problem in the 1990s

FIGURE 10.8 Using burned beetles to repel other beetles in Tabasco, Mexico. (a) The beetle pest *botijón* feeds on a bean plant. (b) The beetles are put in jars and heated just enough to kill them. (c) The open jars are then placed in the soil around the bean planting.

after reduced-tillage management was mandated for wheat in the mid-1980s. The overwintering pupae of the fly survived in the straw residue on the soil surface. Controlling the fly with pesticides proved very difficult and expensive, but burning the stubble in the fall was found to be very effective (Whitworth 2011).

For ground-dwelling arthropod pests, fire that penetrates the soil surface can be a useful method of pest management. Burning mulch or crop residues, and artificial flaming of the soil surface, are ways of introducing fire for this purpose.

A traditional practice that used fire to protect a crop from insect damage is known from Tabasco, Mexico. A large coleopteran beetle has a reputation for being able to invade a bean planting and defoliate the crop in a very short period of time. The beetles invade in large numbers and can be seen consuming the plant leaves in the early morning hours. Farmers report that an old practice was to come into the infested field in the morning, collect enough of the live beetles to place 25–50 of them in each of several fire-resistant containers. At the end of the day, each container was placed over a fire long enough to kill the insects but not to burn them. Shortly thereafter, the open containers were partly buried in the soil in the bean field, about 1 to every 400 m^2. By the next morning, farmers report, there were no signs of living or actively feeding beetles in the field. An alarm pheromone released by the dying beetles is suspected of alerting living beetles to danger so they leave the field, but further research is needed. Farmers have stopped using this practice since synthetic chemical pesticides have been introduced (Figure 10.8).

Pathogen Management

Because of fire's ability to elevate temperatures in the soil, especially close to the surface, fire should be expected to have a significant impact on plant pathogens living in the soil, such as fungi, bacteria, and nematodes. It is important to note, however, that the majority of soil biota is not pathogenic, and in fact plays beneficial roles in agroecosystems (see Chapter 8). Therefore, fire should only be used to manage specific disease problems or outbreaks.

Heat and desiccation probably have the greatest direct impact on pathogenic organisms. The high temperatures registered at the soil surface during a fire, and the penetration of heat down to several centimeters below the surface, can kill large numbers of living pathogens and their inoculum. In addition, the sudden increase in pH caused by the wetting of ash deposited on the soil after a fire can have an inhibitory affect on fungi since fungi prefer neutral to acid conditions for optimal development. Many bacteria, on the other hand, are actually stimulated by the higher pH, so any pathogenic bacteria present could become more of a problem after a fire.

The effect of burning aboveground plant material, especially crop residues, on potential plant pathogens is well documented. Since a well-managed fire can consume as much as 95% of the aboveground biomass and generate extreme heat, it can kill most pathogens present in the biomass. This effect of fire is the most common reason for burning crop residues, as described earlier.

The bulk of the literature about the effect of fire in relation to plant disease management is from several decades ago when the use of fire faced fewer prohibitions and people were less concerned about air pollution. In a review published in 1976, for example, Hardison found that fire could effectively reduce inoculum of diseases of various forest crops, fruits, ornamentals, cotton, potatoes, small grains, and grasses, and forages (Hardison 1976). It is interesting to note that the burning of grass fields, a practice that has become very important in fields used to produce commercial grass seed in the Pacific Northwest region of the United States, was started originally for the purpose of disease control in the late 1940s.

With the growing popularity of reduced-tillage systems, especially for grain crops, fire once again is being considered as a disease control strategy. In the development of perennial grain crops (see Chapter 14), where intensive cultivation is not possible due to the long-lived nature of perennial grains, fire must be contemplated as a disease management tool (Cox et al. 2004). Such fires occurred naturally in the perennial prairie ecosystems once present in most grain-growing regions, and as perennial grain systems are developed, it will be important for us to understand these natural fire regimes and the roles they played in the prairie ecosystem.

Preparing a Crop for Harvest

Fire can be used to prepare a crop for harvest. A common example is the burning of sugarcane fields a few days ahead of harvest of the canes. Cane cutters claim that fire is important for removing the leaves from the stems, facilitating the cutting process when done by hand, making access to the canes easier, and displacing bothersome animals such as rats and snakes. But ease of harvest in such a system has to be weighed against ecological impacts such as loss of organic matter, volatilization of certain nutrients, and nutrient leaching with heavy rainfall. For sugarcane in particular, another possible negative impact of fire may be to degrade the quality of the sugar extracted from overheated canes.

Another simple role for fire at harvest time is in the collection of pine nuts. Cones of several pinyon pine species are collected from trees before they open and disperse their seeds (called nuts). Usually the cones are coated by dense pitch. Fire is used to heat rocks that are then placed with the cones, melting away the pitch and opening the cones to release the seed. Fire can also be used to heat an oven into which the pitch-covered cones can be placed.

Pasture and Range Management

Despite the fact that in most grassland areas of the world, natural fire is frequent and an important aspect of the environment, the effective use of fire as a tool for managing grazing systems is not really that common. When fire is used in grazing systems, it is employed in the form of a controlled fire known as a **prescribed burn**. A prescribed burn in a grazing agroecosystem can play many roles. It can

- Burn off unpalatable growth from previous seasons that is not eaten by most animals and that would otherwise compete with more desirable species;
- Stimulate growth (in the form of fire-response sprouting of perennial plants) during times of the year when very little green growth would normally be available;
- Destroy parasites such as ticks and fleas that can carry stock disease;
- Control the spread of undesirable plants in pasture or range;
- Remove the fire hazard of accumulated old browse or grass;
- Establish fire breaks as a system of protection from wildfire;
- Prepare a seedbed for natural or artificial seeding of desired plant species;
- Stimulate some plants to produce seed;
- Encourage growth of native legumes for forage and soil improvement;
- Promote more rapid nutrient cycling and uptake.

All of these potential effects of fire can play important roles in determining the most appropriate regime of management using fire.

The relative importance of each of the impacts of burning varies with the type and intensity of grazing system, time since the last fire, season of the year, and the stage of development of the edible plants. In open grassland, for example, there is little tendency for woody species to invade; therefore fire is employed to remove the accumulation of inedible growth. In savanna regions, or areas where natural succession would favor shrub or tree vegetation, burning is of much greater importance for suppressing some plants while establishing or maintaining the pasture components.

When fire is withheld from a grazing area that normally burns with some regularity, grasses lose their dominance and can be replaced by nonedible or poorly consumed shrubs or tree species. For example, the rangeland in the Great Basin of the Western United States converts to sagebrush (*Artemisia tridentata*) with lack of fire, especially when combined with excessive grazing pressure. The open savanna areas of the parts of the southwest United States or northern Mexico, where grasses grow between mesquite and juniper, become

FIGURE 10.9 Chaparral species invading grassland, Santa Barbara County, CA. Fire is needed to periodically repress the shrubs and promote grass for grazing.

virtual forests of the tree species when fire is not incorporated into the management of the rangelands. In other areas, where grassland borders shrub or tree vegetation, lack of periodic fires can allow the gradual invasion of the grassland by the more aggressive woody species. Annual grasslands in the foothills of the coastal mountains of central and southern California are encroached upon by allelopathic chaparral shrubs when fire is withheld for more than a few years (Muller 1974) (Figure 10.9).

FUTURE RESEARCH

Probably one of the oldest tools used in agriculture, fire is still of considerable value in the present-day search for sustainable farming practices. But being able to use fire to benefit the system depends on having knowledge of the long-term impacts that fire will have on different components of agroecosystem structure and function. Research is needed that goes beyond thinking of fire as a destructive factor in the environment and helps us make use of its ability to release nutrients from organic matter, quickly alter agroecosystem structure, kill undesirable organisms, and emulate the disturbance regimes of natural systems.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What kind of knowledge and information is needed to convince farmers to use fire as a tool for contributing to sustainability?
2. Smoke in the atmosphere is often considered wholly undesirable, with new restrictions being placed on smoke-generating activities every day. How would we justify the use of fire in agriculture even though smoke may be one of the by-products?
3. Which do you consider to be of greater agroecological significance in management—the abiotic effects of fire or its biotic effects? Explain why.
4. Under what conditions might it be possible to effectively use fire in diverse, mixed-crop, perennial-species cropping systems?

INTERNET RESOURCES

The Association for Fire Ecology
www.fireecology.org
The Association for Fire Ecology (AFE) is an organization of professionals dedicated to improving the knowledge and use of fire in land management. They publish a peer-reviewed journal, *Fire Ecology*.

Forests and Rangelands
www.forestsandrangelands.gov/strategy/overview.shtml
The Wildlife Fire Leadership Council is a US governmental agency charged with developing a national strategy for fire management that stops fire where needed, use fire where allowable, and integrate human habitation with natural resource management.

US Fish and Wildlife Service
www.fws.gov/fire/
An agency within the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) that is charged with setting policy and running programs for fire management and control that benefit natural habitats and the plants and animals that depend on them.

RECOMMENDED READING

Courtwright, J. 2011. *Prairie Fire: A Great Plains History*. University Press of Kansas: Lawrence, KS.
A history of both natural and intentional fires in the Great Plains region of the United States, from Native American practices to the current use of controlled burns as an effective land management tool. The book provides a very human touch by sharing the personal accounts of people whose lives have been touched by fire.

Debano, L., D. G. Neary, and P. F. Folliott. 1998. *Fire Effects on Ecosystems*. John Wiley & Sons: Hoboken, NJ.
A broad exploration of the effects of fires on ecosystems, including forests and other landscape components, such as watersheds, plants and air.

Fowler, C. 2013. *Ignition Stories: Indigenous Fire Ecology in the Indo-Australian Monsoon Zone*. Carolina Academic Press: Durham, NC.
A compelling ethnographic narrative that explores the globally relevant topic of the risks and benefits of burning for both people and ecosystems, and captures the complexity of human–environment relations in fire-adapted landscapes.

Halsey, R. W. 2004. *Fire, Chaparral, and Survival in Southern California*. Sunbelt Publications: El Cajon, CA.
A weaving together of the crucial elements of fire behavior, land management, and knowledge of the natural environment in a vegetation seen as the classic fire-adapted ecosystem.

Neary, D. G., K. C. Ryan, and L. F. DeBano (eds.). 2005. (revised 2008). Wildland fire in ecosystems: Effects of fire on soils and water. General Technical Report: RMRS-GTR-42-Vol. 4. US Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Rocky Mountain Research Station: Ogden, UT.

This state-of-knowledge review about the effects of fire on soils and water is designed to provide land and fire managers with information on the physical, chemical, and biological effects of fire needed to successfully conduct ecosystem management.

Pyne, S. J. 2012. *Fire: Nature and Culture*. Reaktion Books: London, U.K.

A lavishly illustrated presentation about fire, covering its history, ecology, and connection to human culture—past, present, and future.

Spencer, J. E. 1966. *Shifting Cultivation in Southeast Asia.* University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.

The classic authority on an agricultural system that uses fire and has existed for many centuries.

West, O. 1965. *Fire in Vegetation and Its Use in Pasture Management.* Publication 1/1965. Commonwealth Agricultural Bureau: Berkshire, U.K.

Still one of the best reviews examining both the ecology and management of fire in grazing ecosystems.

Whelan, R. J. 1995. *The Ecology of Fire.* Cambridge Studies in Ecology. Cambridge University Press: New York.

An analysis of fire as an ecological factor in the environment, with a major emphasis on how individual plants and animal species are adapted to fire.

Section III

A More Complete Autecological Perspective

In the preceding chapters, we've restricted our attention to the ways in which individual factors of the environment affect individual crop plants. Although these interactions are the foundation of the autecological perspective, they do not make up the entire picture.

First, the environment surrounding a crop plant includes more than just physical factors like light, temperature, and moisture; it also comprises other organisms, which, like inadequate moisture or abundant sunlight, can inhibit or promote the crop plant's growth or even kill it outright. Other organisms as factors of the environment—that is, as *biotic* factors—are explored in Chapter 11.

Second, crop plants aren't affected by each factor of the environment independently—the different factors, both physical and biotic, interact with each other to create a whole environment that is dynamic and complex and cannot be reduced to its parts. Chapter 12 provides the basis for understanding how crop plants are affected by an environment understood in this way—as a complex of interacting factors.

Third, plants aren't the only types of organisms in agroecosystems—either as the sources of the biomass harvested as food or as the biotic factors in the environment. Various types of animals are raised for food, just as crop plants are, and both animals and other nonplants are often biotic factors of great concern to agroecosystem managers. Chapter 13 introduces the autecological roles these nonplants—collectively termed *heterotrophs*—play in agroecosystems.

FIGURE S.3 Beetles feeding on corn leaves in Oaxaca, Mexico. Herbivory by insects can inflict considerable damage on crop plants. Photo courtesy of Horatio Santiago and Rocio Albino.

11 Biotic Factors

Abiotic factors of the environment such as light, temperature, and mineral nutrients are not the only constituents of the environment that impact crop plants. Just as important are biotic factors—that is, living organisms and the conditions created and modified by them. An insect herbivore such as a locust, for example, can have an enormous impact on a crop plant, as can a neighboring plant that harbors nitrogen-fixing bacteria in its root nodules or conserves the soil moisture by shading the soil surface.

In Chapter 8, we discussed organisms in the environment (soil biota) that might affect crop plants. We did not, however, treat these soil organisms *as* biotic factors; instead we considered them among the multiple aspects of the soil that combine to make soil a separate factor of the environment. Here in this chapter, we lay the groundwork for treating these living organisms as biotic factors in their own right (although the primary focus will be on plants as biotic factors).

In agroecosystems, the farmer is in a sense the organism with the greatest impact on the environment in which crops are grown. The farmer alters and adjusts conditions of the physical as well as the biological environment to meet the needs of the crop or crops. To do so sustainably, the farmer must have an understanding of the biotic interactions of the agroecosystem—how each member of the community impacts the agricultural environment and alters conditions for its neighbors.

To conceptualize biotic factors in ecological terms, we must enter an area of overlap between autecology and synecology. Even though we begin from the perspective of the individual organism confronting an environment made up of various factors, we must deal with interactions between organisms when the factors we are concerned with are biotic. Despite their synecological origin, however, the concepts developed in this chapter to describe these interactions can be applied in an autecological way by considering interactions in terms of their impact on each individual organism in the agroecosystem.

There are two basic frameworks for conceptualizing the interactions between organisms in a community or ecosystem; each has its respective advantages. Traditionally in ecology, interactions have been understood in terms of the effects that two interacting organisms have on each other. This framework is the basis for such foundational concepts as competition and mutualism. In agroecology, however, it is often more helpful to view interactions as deriving from the impact that organisms have on their shared environment. Organisms remove substances from, alter, and even add substances to the areas they occupy, in the process changing the environmental conditions for themselves and other organisms. Thus each biotic factor that an individual organism faces can be understood as a modification of the environment created by another organism. Both of these frameworks, or perspectives, are explained in more detail in the succeeding text.

ORGANISM–ORGANISM PERSPECTIVE

A broadly accepted system for classifying interactions between organisms was developed by E. P. Odum (1971). This system has many useful applications and has served ecologists well in understanding the biotic environment. Interactions between two organisms of different species are seen as having either a negative effect (–), a positive effect (+), or a neutral effect (0) for each member in the interaction. For example, in the interaction classified as mutualism, both organisms are impacted positively (+ +). The degree to which the interaction is positive or negative for each organism depends on the level of interdependence and the level of intensity of the interaction.

In this scheme, there is an important distinction between situations in which both members of the mixture are present together and the interaction is actually taking place, and situations in which the two are separate, or together and not interacting. In Table 11.1, the "not interacting" column shows the results in this latter situation and gives an indication of the degree of dependence or need for interaction that each member may have developed over evolutionary time.

The interaction that has probably received the greatest attention, especially in the design of industrial agroecosystems, is **competition** (– –). Competition occurs in an environment where resources are in limited supply for both members of the relationship. Even though one member of the mixture may end up dominating the other, both do worse when they are interacting in this way than if there had been no interaction at all. The organisms interact by removing something from the environment that they both need. Two crop varieties of the same species, for example, are highly likely to compete in a resource-limited environment such as a crop field with low nitrogen levels in the soil.

When two organisms have become so dependent on each other that they suffer when not in interaction, then it can be said that the interaction is a **mutualism** (+ +). Both organisms depend upon the way in which the other modifies the environment for both. Some interactions between legumes and *Rhizobium* bacteria, for example, are thought

TABLE 11.1
Types of Two-Species Interactions as Defined by Odum

	Interacting		Not Interacting		
Interaction	**A**	**B**	**A**	**B**	**Nature of Interaction**
Neutralism	0	0	0	0	Neither organism affects the other
Competition	–	–	0	0	Both A and B affected negatively
Mutualism	+	+	–	–	Obligate interaction
Protocooperation	+	+	0	0	Not obligate
Commensalism	+	0	–	0	A obligate commensal; B host
Amensalism	–	0	0	0	A harmed by presence of B
Parasitism	+	–	–	0	A parasite, B host
Predation	+	–	–	0	A predator, B prey

+ organism growth increased
– organism growth decreased
0 organism growth not affected

to be mutualistic: neither organism does as well alone as they do together.

When an interaction benefits both members, but neither is negatively impacted in the absence of interaction, the interaction is termed **protocooperation** (+ +). Pollination can be an example of such an interaction: when there are several species of pollinating insects available and many species of nectar-producing plants, one species of pollinator and one species of plant benefit each other if they interact, but neither is harmed if they don't interact. Both mutualism and protocooperation are considered examples of **symbiosis**, a term formed from the Greek words for "living together".

When one organism maintains or provides a condition necessary for the welfare of another but does not affect its own well-being by doing so, the interaction (+ 0) is termed **commensalism**. The assisted organism suffers, though, when the organism creating the needed conditions is not present. A shade tree species in a cacao agroforestry system, for example, creates the reduction in light intensity needed by the obligate shade-loving cacao plants below, but the shade tree does equally as well with the cacao present or not.

When one species negatively affects another, but is not directly affected itself, then the interaction is termed an **amensalism** (– 0). An example of an amensal interaction is when a plant releases a chemical from its leaves in raindrip that can negatively impact other plants around it, but which does not impact the producer of the chemical. Such a process is a form of allelopathy, which will be discussed below in more detail. An example of this kind of amensalism is the relationship between the black walnut (*Juglans nigra*) and almost any plant that attempts to grow under the canopy of a black walnut. Chemicals leached from the husks, leaves, and root exudates of black walnut are toxic to most plants.

In the two remaining types of interactions, one organism is negatively impacted by the actions of the other (+ –). The perpetrator of the actions generally has an obligate relationship with the other, whereas the organism receiving the brunt of the negative impacts does better if left alone (i.e., the relationship becomes – 0). In **parasitism**, one organism (the parasite) feeds on another (the host), but the host is rarely killed outright. The parasite may live together with the host for a long period, with the host eventually surviving, but its fitness is reduced. Some parasites, known as parasitoids, cause the death of the host (e.g., parasitic wasps in the genus *Trichogramma*); we take advantage of such interactions for biological control in agroecosystems. **Predation** is a much more direct interaction, where one organism actually kills and consumes another. We depend greatly on predation by certain beneficial organisms for the management of pests in farming systems.

This classification scheme is very useful for distinguishing the types of interactions that are observed in most natural environments. But it focuses on the end result of each type of interaction, rather than on the mechanisms involved as the interaction takes place.

ORGANISM–ENVIRONMENT–ORGANISM PERSPECTIVE

Each of the interactions described above can be understood alternatively as the result of one organism modifying the environment in a way that impacts the other organism in the interaction. By focusing on how the environment mediates the effects that organisms have on each other, it is possible to understand the *mechanisms* through which the effects occur. With knowledge of the mechanisms, the agroecosystem manager is in a much better position to manipulate or take advantage of the interactions.

When an organism modifies the environment in some way that impacts another organism, that modification is termed an **interference**. Interferences can be divided into two types:

- In a **removal interference**, one organism removes something from the environment, reducing the availability of that resource for other organisms.
- In an **addition interference**, one organism adds something to the environment that can have a positive, negative, or neutral impact on other organisms.

Usually only one or the other of these interferences takes place in a particular interaction, but they can occur together in some interactions, as discussed in the following. When conceptualized with this framework, an interaction between two or more organisms is composed of an impact on the environment (an addition or a removal) perpetrated by one organism (and in some cases an additional impact created by the other organism), followed by a response on the part of both organisms to the resulting changes in the environment. Note that the "environment" is not necessarily external to

TABLE 11.2
Summary of Interference Interactions

	Creator of Interference (A)	Receiver(s) of Interference (B)	Type and Identity of Interference	Location of Interference	Effect on A[a]	Effect on B[a]
Competition	Roles interchangeable	Roles interchangeable	Removal of resources	Shared habitat	−	−
Parasitism	Parasite	Host	Removal of nutrients	Body of host	+	−
Herbivory	Herbivore	Consumee	Removal of biomass	Body of consumee; shared habitat	+	− or +
Epiphytism	Host	Epiphyte	Addition of habitat surface	Body of host	0	+
Protocooperation	Roles interchangeable	Roles interchangeable	Addition of material or structure	Shared habitat or body of A/B	+ (0)	+ (0)
Mutualism	Roles interchangeable	Roles interchangeable	Addition of material or structure	Shared habitat or body of A/B	+ (−)	+ (−)
Allelopathy	Allelopathic plant	Potential habitat associates	Addition of active compound	Habitat of organism A	+ or 0	+, −, or 0

[a] Symbols in parenthesis refer to effect when the organisms are not interacting.

the interacting organisms—it can include the tissues or body of either or both organisms. Types of removal and addition interferences are described in greater detail in the succeeding text and summarized in Table 11.2.

REMOVAL INTERFERENCES

When one organism removes something from the environment as part of its life activities or interaction with other organisms, it can affect other organisms. This type of interference is generally negative for one or more members of the interaction, but it can have positive effects as well. There are several types of removal interferences in agroecosystems.

Competition

Only a shift of emphasis is needed to understand competition as a removal interference. Competition occurs when two organisms are removing a resource from the environment—such as light, nitrogen, or water—that is not abundant enough to meet the needs of both. Many of the earlier chapters in this book have described the conditions under which resources may become limiting and thus set the stage for competition.

Viewing competition as a removal interference provides an alternative way of understanding what is commonly thought of as competition for space. Under this framework, "space" is seen as a complex mixture of resources that is impacted by the removal effects of the organisms that occupy that space; thus organisms are in competition over the resources of the space, not the space itself.

Competition between individuals of the same species—**intraspecific competition**—can be quite intense since the needs of the interacting individuals are so similar. Monoculture agriculture has invested much energy in determining how densely crops can be planted without competition between individual plants negatively affecting production.

Competition between individuals of different species, called **interspecific competition**, can also be important when levels of resources are not sufficient to meet the needs of both. The mechanisms of the interaction involve either removal of a resource or its direct protection or sequestration by an organism (e.g., when an animal defends a territory and its resources). In either case the resource is the primary focus of the interaction.

Competition is a very important concept in ecology, but it also has a history of controversy and discussion. On the one hand, interspecific competition is a cornerstone of evolutionary ecology. Competition is considered the engine of natural selection and a force with which all organisms must contend in their struggle to survive and leave offspring. Interestingly, however, ecologists also see that *avoiding* competition can actually be advantageous for a species, and that doing so has probably played a key role in the development of species diversity.

Without actually studying the mechanisms of interference that are involved in competition, and identifying the removal process from the environment that leads to it, we can only assume that competition occurs. Agroecosystem management requires a more detailed determination of competitive interactions; otherwise the farmer is left with no other option but to overload the system with excess resources.

Parasitism

As described earlier, parasitism is an interaction in which two organisms live together, with one (the parasite) deriving its nourishment from the tissues of the other (the host) without killing it. In interference terms, the environment from which removal takes place is the body of the host. Parasites are physiologically dependent on their hosts, live much shorter lives, and have a high reproductive potential.

The relationship between mistletoe and various species of trees is an example of this kind of removal interference.

FIGURE 11.1 Parasitic mistletoe on a guava tree, Monteverde, Costa Rica. The guava branch is so heavily infested by the parasite that only the red-orange flowers of the mistletoe are visible.

The mistletoe plant actually penetrates and taps into the vascular system of the host tree, drawing its water and nutrients from the host. If the parasite becomes too abundant on the host tree, the tree is stunted and often deformed, and can become subject to debilitating attacks from other pests (Figure 11.1). Farm and range animals are especially susceptible to parasites; these include ticks that attach externally to the host, screwworm flies that lay eggs in the flesh of the animal, and stomach parasites ranging from bacteria to worms.

Under natural conditions, parasitism probably represents something of a compromise between the host and the parasite. They have evolved together over time, with the host being tolerant of a constant low-grade infection, and the parasite depending on the continuity of the host's life for its own reproductive success. In agricultural situations, however—especially the human-maintained conditions of concentrated monocultures—heavy parasite loads become a serious form of disease that puts the entire crop or herd at risk of developing secondary diseases and dying.

Herbivory

The interference relationship between an herbivore and the plant it consumes—like that of parasite and host—is a very direct one, with plant tissue being the part of the environment that is removed. Beyond the scope of the individual plant, however, herbivory is a removal interference in an even broader sense in that biomass and its associated nutrients are removed from the environment. The consumption of plant material reduces the return of biomass to the soil, and if the removal is too intense and takes place over an extended time frame, it can lead to depletion of nutrients in the system.

From an agricultural perspective, herbivory can have three types of negative impacts. First, herbivory removes photosynthetic surface area that may be of importance in the development of the crop plant. Second, if the plant part that is consumed were going to return to the soil as crop residue, herbivory is reducing this input to the system. Third, if the herbivory damages a part of the crop that is intended to be harvested and sent to market, the product's sale value may be reduced.

The effects of herbivory, however, are not always negative. In some pasture or range situations, for example, grazing can be beneficial to the productivity of the forage species. Removal of excessive plant material can stimulate the production of new biomass, or even allow certain plant species that are suppressed by old or excessive plant cover to germinate or become more predominant in the pasture mixture. The evolutionary role of such removal interference has been well documented for the Serengeti plains in Africa (McNaughton 1985), where it has been shown that the highest productivity and species diversity of both plants and animals have developed under cyclical patterns of multispecies grazing. Good range managers know that periodic rotational grazing promotes the most production in pasture systems.

In natural systems as well, herbivory plays an important role in removing excess biomass, directing energy flow, and recycling nutrients. These processes have the potential for playing important and positive roles in agroecosystems, but humans have tended to view herbivory as wholly negative, a constant challenge to be overcome. Further research needs to be focused on how the pressure of this removal interference can be directed away from the economically valuable parts of the agroecosystem and concentrated in parts that stimulate other components of the system in ways that contribute to sustainability.

ADDITION INTERFERENCES

Many organisms in the course of their daily life processes add something to the environment that impacts associated organisms. These impacts can be negative, such as when the addition causes a reduction in growth or development for the associated organisms, or when it excludes them from the area entirely. In other cases, the impact of the addition interference can be positive for the associated organisms, as when they use the added substance or material to improve their own standing in the community, or when the exclusion of intolerant organisms from the habitat allows them to occupy it. Ultimately, associated organisms benefiting from the addition may develop a dependence on the organism making the addition, creating a relationship of coexistence or even of symbiosis.

Epiphytism

When one organism lives on the body of another without drawing any nutrition from it, an addition interference is occurring because the host is adding a physical structure to the environment that is providing another organism with a habitat. When the two organisms are plants and the habitat is a trunk or stem, the perched plant is called an **epiphyte**; when the habitat is a leaf, it is called an **epiphyll**. In Odum's terms, epiphytism is a form of commensalism.

Epiphytes and epiphylls do not obtain water or food from the supporting plant, nor do they have connections to the soil. Water is derived from precipitation, and nutrients from

FIGURE 11.2 A plantation of the epiphytic vanilla orchid in Tabasco, Mexico. The vanilla plants (*V. fragrans*) grow on the shade tree *Gliricidia sepium*.

wind-borne particles, the decay of the supporting plant's bark, and minerals and organic compounds dissolved in raindrip. Most epiphytic plants face frequent drought conditions in their aerial environment, even in the moist habitats where they are most common. Algae, lichens, mosses and a few ferns are the most common epiphytes in cold and wet environments; a wide variety of vascular plants have evolved the epiphytic lifestyle in warm and wet climates, especially ferns and species belonging to the families Bromeliaceae and Orchidaceae. A large number of species in these two families have taken on considerable economic importance in horticulture and floriculture, and are raised on artificial perches in greenhouses and lathhouses for commercial sale.

An epiphytic plant of considerable economic importance in agriculture in several tropical countries is vanilla (*Vanilla fragrans*). Vanilla produces long whitish aerial adventitious roots at each leaf that adhere firmly appressed to the trunk or branches of the host plant. Sometimes roots climb down the trunk to the ground, but only ramify in the humus or mulch layer. Capsule-like fruits up to 25 cm long (called beans in the trade) form on the aerial stems, and are dependent on hand pollination for successful formation in many parts of the world into which the crop has been introduced from its native Mesoamerica (Figure 11.2).

Symbioses

When two organisms make additions to the environment they share so as to benefit each other, they form a symbiotic relationship. If the relationship is nonobligatory and nonessential for the survival of either organism, the resulting relationship is called **protocooperation**. An example of protocooperation is the relationship between the European honeybee (*Apis mellifera*) and the plants it pollinates. The plant a bee visits is adding pollen and nectar to the environment, serving to attract the pollinator. The actual gathering of the nectar or honey by the bee is a removal interference, but then the pollen is added back into the environment when the bee deposits it onto the stigma of another flower—this is the point at which the positive effects of the interaction are realized. Honeybees visit a wide range of plant species, most of which are visited by other pollinators as well, making the relationship between the honeybee and any particular plant species nonobligatory. In many agricultural landscapes, however, the dramatic reduction in biotic diversity that has accompanied the expansion of monocultures, heavy use of pesticides, and fencerow-to-fencerow farming has created an artificial dependence on honey bees that are raised by beekeepers and transported in hives to the crop fields during pollination time.

When the organisms benefiting each other through addition interferences become dependent on each other for optimal performance and even survival, then the relationship is a **mutualism**. A good example of mutualism is the relationship between certain soil-dwelling fungi and their vascular-plant associates. The fungi are made up of **mycorrhizae**, special compound structures that can form connections with plant roots. The mycorrhizae allow the root to provide sugars for the fungus, and the fungus in return to provide water and minerals to the plant. There are two types of mycorrhizae: (a) *ectotrophic*, in which the fungal mycelium forms a dense mantle covering the surface of the root, with many hyphae that extend outward into the soil, and others that extend inward and force themselves between the cells of the epidermis and cortex of the root (very common in the Pinaceae); and (b) *endotrophic*, the most common type, in which there is no surface mantle but instead some of the hyphae actually inhabit the protoplasts of parenchymatous tissues and extend outward into the soil (common in most flowering plant families, especially important crop species such as corn, beans, apples, and strawberries).

Another important example of a mutualism is the relationship between legumes (plants in the Fabaceae family) and *Rhizobium* bacteria. The bacteria enter the root tissue of a legume plant, causing the tissue to form nodules in which the bacteria live and reproduce. The nodules, formed from root tissue, represent an addition interference on the part of the legume plant. The legume also provides the bacteria with sugars. The bacteria's addition interference comes in the form of fixed (useable) nitrogen, which the bacteria produce from atmospheric nitrogen. The legume would be greatly handicapped in its growth without the fixed nitrogen provided by the bacteria, and the bacteria require the root nodules for optimal growth and reproduction. The fixing of nitrogen by *Rhizobia* is one of the most important means by which nitrogen is moved from the vast atmospheric reservoir into soil and biomass (Figure 11.3).

As we will see in later chapters, such beneficial mutualisms, where two or more members of the relationship interact through addition interference, are of major importance in the design and management of many intercropping agroecosystems.

Allelopathy

A form of interference that has received considerable attention recently, especially in agriculture, is **allelopathy** (Gliessman 2002a; Ren Sen et al. 2008; Cheema et al. 2013).

FIGURE 11.3 Nodules on the roots of fava beans. The nodules are inhabited by nitrogen-fixing *Rhizobium* bacteria in mutualistic association with the legume.

Allelopathy is the production of a compound by a plant that when released into the environment has an inhibitory or stimulatory impact on other organisms. Allelopathic interactions have been shown to occur in a wide variety of natural ecosystems and agroecosystems.

Allelopathic compounds are natural products that may be direct metabolites, by-products of other metabolic pathways, or breakdown products of compounds or biomass. The compounds are often toxic to the plant that produces them if they are not stored in some nontoxic form or released before they build up internally to toxic levels. In some cases, even when the toxins are released from the plant, they may build up in the immediate environment and become toxic to the plant that produced them. Allelopathic compounds take many forms, from water soluble to volatile, simple to complex, and persistent to very short lived. The most common allelopathic compounds fall into such chemical groups as tannins, phenolic acids, terpenes, and alkaloids.

Allelopathic products are released from the plant in a variety of ways. They can be washed off of green leaves, leached out of dry leaves, volatilized from the leaves, exuded from roots, or released from shed plant material during decomposition. Even flowers, fruits, and seeds can be sources of allelopathic toxins. There are also cases in which products do not become toxic until they have been altered once they are in the environment, either by normal chemical degradation or through decomposition by microorganisms.

In natural ecosystems, allelopathy may help explain some important phenomena:

- The dominance of a single species or group of species over others;
- Successional change and species replacement, or the maintenance of a deflected stage in the successional process;
- Reduced ecosystem productivity;
- Unique patterning or distribution of plant species in the environment.

In agroecosystems, allelopathy may play important roles in biological control, the design of intercropping systems, and crop rotation management. Examples are presented in the following and in more detail in later chapters.

COMPARISON OF TYPES OF INTERFERENCE

Table 11.2 provides a brief summary of the most salient characteristics of each type of interference. Study of this table may reveal that the grouping of interferences into addition interferences and removal interferences does not exhaust they ways in which interferences can be classified. Mutualism, for example, shares with competition the property of involving symmetrical roles; that is, the organism creating the interference is simultaneously the organism receiving the interference created by the other interacting organism (note that this symmetry does not necessarily extend to the *results* of the interaction). As another example, parasitism and epiphytism both involve interferences that act directly on one organism's body rather than on the external, physical environment. These observations suggest that interferences may be grouped as either direct or indirect, and as either symmetrical or asymmetrical. Allelopathy, for example, is asymmetrical and indirect. Table 11.3 shows the typology resulting from such a classification. Most forms of interference occupy only one cell in the matrix, but protocooperation and mutualism can be either direct or indirect.

INTERFERENCES AT WORK IN AGROECOSYSTEMS

In most multiple-species interactions, plants are removing and adding things to the environment simultaneously. It is very difficult to separate removal and addition interactions, much less show how they may interact in ways that determine which species and how many individuals of each are able to coexist in a specific habitat. Ultimately, the combination of interference types is going to play an important role in determining the structure and function of the ecosystem.

It is easy to imagine how allelopathy and competition, for example, can both play a part in a polyculture cropping system. The members of the mixture are simultaneously adding materials to and removing resources from the environment, modifying the microclimatic conditions of that

TABLE 11.3
Types of Interference

	Direct (Occurs in or on the Body of One or Both Organisms)	Indirect (Occurs in the Shared Habitat of the Organisms)
Symmetrical (both organisms create interference)	Protocooperation Mutualism	Competition Protocooperation Mutualism
Asymmetrical (interference created by one organism)	Herbivory Parasitism Epiphytism	Allelopathy

environment at the same time, and interacting with each other in ways that permit coexistence or favor mutualistic interdependence. It is important, though, to understand the mechanisms of each interaction, beginning with the impacts of each species on the environment in which they all occur. The ability of farmers to successfully manage complex crop mixtures and rotations depends on the development of this understanding.

ALLELOPATHIC MODIFICATION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

Ecological research has placed the greatest emphasis on competitive interactions. This has been especially true in agronomy, where great efforts have been made to understand what the conditions of the environment are that limit optimal crop development, and what kinds of inputs or technologies are needed to correct the situation when something that the crop needs is missing or in short supply. Crop arrangements and densities have been researched and developed to avoid the effects of competition.

Allelopathy provides a different approach to applying our knowledge of ecological interactions to agriculture. The growing desire to replace synthetic chemical inputs to agroecosystems with naturally produced materials has spurred a burst in applied research on allelopathy, especially in Europe, India, and China (see e.g., Ren Sen 2008; Leicach et al. 2009). Allelopathy thus serves as an excellent example of how a research focus on the mechanisms of interference—particularly those based on plants adding compounds to the environment that can impact other plants—can have important applications in agroecology. Because allelopathy has such potential importance in agroecological research and for sustainability, the remainder of this chapter will be devoted to exploring it in greater detail.

There are many possible allelopathic effects of weed and crop species that need to be taken into account in agroecosystem management. The production and release of phytotoxic chemicals can originate from crops or weeds, and they can play very important roles in crop selection, weed management, crop rotations, the use of covercrops, and intercropping design. Many examples of such interactions have appeared in the international publication *Allelopathy Journal*.

Our purpose in this section is to gain more insight into the actual mechanisms of allelopathic interactions. The implications and applications of these interactions will be more fully explored in Chapter 14.

DEMONSTRATING ALLELOPATHY

In order for allelopathy to be fully implicated in an interference interaction, the following steps must be followed.

1. Determine the presence of a potential allelopathic compound in the suspected plant and plant part. A screening system that employs some type of bioassay is a common procedure for doing this test (Leather and Einhellig 1986). A positive bioassay can only be used to imply that there is a potentially allelopathically active chemical present in the plant.
2. Show that the compounds are released from the donor plant.
3. Determine that the compounds accumulate or concentrate to toxic levels in the environment.
4. Show that uptake or absorption of the compounds by the target organism takes place.
5. Demonstrate that inhibition (or stimulation) of the target species takes place in the field.
6. Identify the chemical compounds and determine the actual physiological basis for the response.
7. Finally, determine how the allelopathic compound interacts with other factors in the environment so as to either reduce or enhance its effect. (Rarely does an allelopathic compound kill another organism outright.)

Under ideal situations, all of these steps could be carried out before attempting to manage allelopathy in an agroecosystem setting. But most of the time, such intensity of research is not possible, and farmers are faced with the need to make decisions on their farms every day. Astute observation, coupled with research results, can make allelopathy one more tool for managing the farm environment for the benefit of the crop.

ALLELOPATHIC EFFECTS OF WEEDS

Weeds are responsible for the loss of crop production all over the world. The literature abounds with reports on the "competitive effects" of weeds, but only relatively recently has allelopathy been considered or even mentioned as one of the mechanisms by which weeds impact crops, pasture plants, or native species (Colvin and Gliessman 2011). Whenever weeds and crops are in the same planting together, many possible forms of interference are going to be working together or in sequence. The allelopathic potential of a large number of weed species has been known or suspected for some time (Putnam and Weston 1986), but more recent research on the invasive weed Eurasian spotted knapweed (*C. maculosa*) has provided a foundation for understanding in some detail the mechanisms of release of the potentially phytotoxic compounds into the environment by weeds, how they are taken up by associated plant species, how inhibition actually occurs, and how the negative impacts of the compounds might be ameliorated (Bais et al. 2003).

Allelopathic chemicals released by weeds can directly influence crop seed germination and emergence, crop growth and development, and the health of associated crop symbionts in the soil. Recent research on weed allelopathy has shown that many weeds use multiple mechanisms to inhibit crop growth and development, and such knowledge is an important component in developing alternative weed management strategies (Leicach et al. 2009).

SPECIAL TOPIC: HISTORY OF THE STUDY OF ALLELOPATHY

The effects of allelopathy have been observed since the times of the Greeks and Romans, when Theophrastus suggested that the "odors" of cabbage caused vine plants to "wilt and retreat" (Willis 1985). Japanese sources dating back to at least the 1600s independently document what we now know to be allelopathic interactions, and such knowledge may have developed earlier and independently in other areas.

In Europe, scientific observations of allelopathic plant interactions were not made until the seventeenth century, when A. P. de Candolle published an influential work describing his observations of the excretion of droplets of some sort from the roots of *Lolium temulentum*. De Candolle believed that plants used their roots as excretory organs and that these excretions contained chemicals that stayed in the soil and affected subsequent plant growth. His theory fell out of favor, however, when Justus von Liebig developed the theory of mineral nutrition, and the focus on plant interactions shifted to nutrient depletion and competition.

It was not until the late nineteenth century that careful experiments in the United States and England scientifically demonstrated that allelopathy was an important plant interaction. In England, certain grasses were found to negatively impact the growth of nearby trees, and the research indicated that the effects could not have been due to soil nutrient depletion. In fact, leachates of soil from pots planted with the grasses impacted the trees as much as the grass itself. In the United States, Schreiner and his associates published a series of papers between 1907 and 1911 documenting the "exhaustion" of soils planted continually in one crop and the extraction of the chemicals responsible for the exhaustion. This was the first time researchers demonstrated the ability of plant chemicals to inhibit germination and seedling growth of a plant species.

During the 1920s some important work focused on the black walnut. Cook documented the tree's ability to inhibit nearby plants, and Massey found that an extract of walnut bark in water caused tomato plants to wilt.

In 1937, the term *allelopathy* was coined by Molisch to describe any biochemical interaction between plants and microorganisms, positive or negative. Soon afterward, studies by Benedict, Bonner and Galston, Evenari, and McCalla and Duley again documented chemotrophic plant effects, and the term *allelopathy* came into common usage for the first time (Willis 1985).

Muller introduced the concept of interference in 1969 as a way of explaining both competition and allelopathy in a single theory. Ecologists began to realize that competitive or allelopathic effects may work in tandem in any given system, and that allelopathic interactions can be particularly important in cropping systems (Rice 1984; Gliessman 2002a). More recently, recognition of the importance of allelopathy in agriculture has led to research on ways phytotoxins can be involved in such practices as weed control, covercropping, pest management, and even soil biofumigation (Muramoto et al. 2014).

The difficulty of demonstrating how allelopathy actually works in the field has kept ecologists from attributing a significant role to chemical interference in overall vegetation process. But work by Bais et al. (2003) firmly placed allelopathy back on center stage. These researchers meticulously documented the displacement of native plant species by the Eurasian spotted knapweed (*Centaurea maculosa*) in the Western United States, and the role that allelopathy plays in the process. They identified the phytotoxin that this economically destructive plant invader produces, showed how it is released from the roots, and characterized the mechanisms that trigger the death of susceptible native plant neighbors. Such research clearly demonstrates how allelopathy must be reckoned with in plant species interactions, both in natural ecosystems and agroecosystems (Ren Sen et al. 2008).

An example of an allelopathic weed is bitter grass (*Paspalum conjugatum*), an aggressive weed in annual cropping systems in Tabasco, Mexico. Figure 11.4 illustrates the inhibitory effect of bitter grass when it is present in a corn crop. As the dominance of the grass increases, the stunting of the corn becomes more noticeable, reaching a point where the corn is not even able to establish.

Water extracts made from the dry grass that has not yet been leached by rains showed the ability to affect both germination and early growth of corn seed. Local farmers recognize the negative impacts of the grass on the soil, referring to a heating effect that can cause the stunting or yellowing of the crop. When researchers could find no temperature differences in the field with thermometers, allelopathy became suspect. Although the evidence is not sufficient to rule out competitive interference from the grass, the inhibitory effect exists even when farmers add recommended levels of chemical fertilizers to the crop and when rainfall is more than sufficient.

In a study in California, two common weeds—lamb's-quarters (*Chenopodium album*) and redroot pigweed (*Amaranthus retroflexus*)—were tested for allelopathic potential against green beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris*). Both weed species showed allelopathic potential in laboratory bioassays; in the field it was found that bean plants grown with pigweed were stunted but had normal numbers of nodules of symbiotic *Rhizobium* bacteria, and that beans grown with lamb's-quarters were both stunted and had greatly reduced numbers of nodules (Espinosa 1984). These results indicate that the chemicals released by the two different weeds were

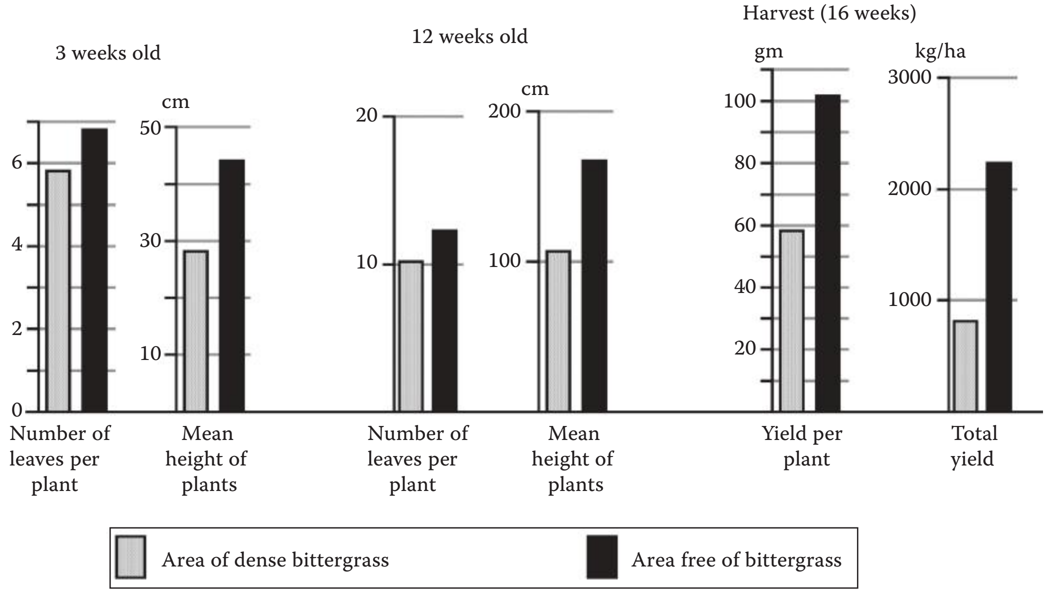


FIGURE 11.4 Allelopathic inhibition of corn by bitter grass (*P. conjugatum*), Tabasco, Mexico. Rain washes phytotoxins off of dead and living parts of the grass, and additional compounds are exuded from the roots. (Data from Gliessman, S.R., Allelopathy in crop/weed interactions in the humid tropics, in: A. Amador (ed.), *Memoirs of Seminar Series of Ecology*, Colegio Superior de Agricultura Tropical, Cardenas, Tabasco, Mexico, 1979, pp. 1–8.)

impacting the crop plants in different ways, with one affecting the growth of the beans directly and the other inhibiting the activity of N-fixing bacteria. Since the farm field was irrigated, had recently been fertilized, and crop spacing ensured that adequate light reached the beans, removal interference was probably minimal.

A weed species that has been studied in great detail in order to demonstrate its allelopathic mechanisms is quackgrass (*Agropyron repens*). The following findings are described in a review by Putnam and Weston (1986):

- Quackgrass inhibited several crop types (e.g., clover, alfalfa, and barley), and this inhibition could not be explained by removal interference (i.e., competition).
- Laboratory and greenhouse bioassays demonstrated the inhibitory potential of both quackgrass foliage and quackgrass rhizomes, although foliage residue was twice as toxic as rhizomatous material. Water extracts and incorporated residues were both phytotoxic.
- There is some evidence that greater inhibition is observed in the presence of soil fungi.
- Decaying quackgrass residues were shown to produce water-soluble inhibitors, explaining the inhibition that has been observed when quackgrass residues are a significant part of no-till systems.
- Inhibition of nodulation in legumes and reduction of root hair formation in other plants are suspected as being possible mechanisms of inhibition.
- Several compounds have been isolated and identified from water extracts and decomposition products, and include several phenolic acids, a glycoside, a compound known as agropyrene, and a flavone tricin and related compounds.
- Even when quackgrass is killed with herbicides, the plant residues and toxins in the soil must be allowed to degrade prior to successful establishment of the succeeding crop.

The case of quackgrass demonstrates that allelopathic interference can be very important, but it also suggests that different plant parts may play different roles, and that phytotoxic compounds can enter the environment through different mechanisms and have varying impacts on crops.

ALLELOPATHIC EFFECTS OF CROPS

Although much research has focused on the allelopathic potential of weeds in agroecosystems, many crop plants have been shown to release phytotoxins as well. Such mechanisms of interaction have important possibilities for farmers looking for alternative management practices.

Covercrops

Covercrops are usually grown during a fallow period in a crop field in order to protect the soil from erosion, contribute organic matter to the soil, improve soil conditions for water penetration and retention, and "smother" weeds. Covercrops of wheat, barley, oats, rye, grain sorghum, and Sudan grass (*Sorghum sudanense*) have been used effectively to suppress weeds, primarily annual broadleaf species. The weed suppression ability of many of these and other covercrops is due at least in part to allelopathy (Duke 2010).

Because the phytotoxic compounds released by covercrops typically break down relatively quickly in the environment, they generally have little effect on the subsequent crop. The compounds inhibit weeds during the time they are actively produced by the covercrop plants, but after the plants die or are killed through tillage, the compounds quickly degrade (Mamolos and Kalburtji 2001).

The allelopathic potential of winter rye (*Secale cereale*) has been particularly well studied (Barnes et al. 1986). Rye produces considerable biomass early in the growing season, and has found much success as a green manure crop in poor soils. But it is most notable for its ability to suppress weed growth while it is actively growing, as well as after rye residues are incorporated into the soil with tillage or left on the soil surface after cutting. Allelopathic effects are even seen from residues left on the soil after herbicide spraying has killed the cover. Extensive chemical analysis has identified two benzoxazolinones and associated breakdown products as the probable phytotoxic agents.

The covercrop called velvet bean (*Mucuna pruriens*), used extensively in rural Tabasco, Mexico, has been shown to inhibit weeds through allelopathy. This annual vining legume is planted into a corn crop near the end of the cropping cycle. It covers the open space between the corn plants, effectively suppressing weed growth, both before and after harvest. The weed suppression is due in part to shading, but release of allelopathic compounds is also at work. After the velvet bean plants complete their life cycle, they are left dead on the ground, covering the soil with a nitrogen-rich mulch into which the next corn crop will be planted. Large areas are managed in this manner without the use of fertilizers or herbicides (Gliessman and Garcia-Espinosa 1982).

As more information is generated on the mechanisms of phytotoxin release in covercrops, farmers will be better able to optimize the use of covercrops for weed control by maximizing the addition of the chemicals into the soil and improving the timing of incorporation. Since covercrop species will vary from region to region, an understanding is also needed of how local climates affect the mechanism of release of the toxins into the environment where they can impact weeds. Proper species selection and management will vary accordingly.

Organic Mulches Derived from Crops

Plant materials and crop residues can be brought to the field and spread over the soil, serving as organic mulch. Waste plant material from farm fields or the processing of farm products is particularly useful for this purpose. Such materials were already discussed for their value as soil amendments (Chapter 8), but an important benefit of many mulches that often gets overlooked is their potential for allelopathic weed control.

Like the phytotoxins produced by covercrops, the biologically active compounds found in organic mulches degrade relatively quickly, as a rule. However, breakdown rates do differ. For this reason, the timing of mulch application, as well as the amount and age of the mulch, must be carefully considered so as to maximize weed inhibition and limit the effect on crops.

FIGURE 11.5 Cacao pod hulls used as an allelopathic mulch, Tabasco, Mexico. The dark cacao hulls, seen between rows of zucchini, suppress weed growth.

An excellent example of an allelopathically active mulch is dried and crushed cacao pods, obtained in the cocoa production process after the seeds and pulp have been removed from the pods. Spread over the surface of the soil or between established crop plants, the crushed pods leach tannic substances that can inhibit the germination and establishment of weeds. Laboratory bioassays of water extracts of the pod material show considerable allelopathic potential. Other types of crop and processing residue with allelopathic potential include coffee chaff from the dried beans, almond hulls, rice hulls, apple pomace, and grape skins and seeds (Figure 11.5).

Crop Inhibition of Weeds

When a crop plant itself is able to inhibit weeds through allelopathy, farmers have a very important tool to add to their tool box. Several crops are known to be effective in suppressing weeds that grow near them (Ren Sen et al. 2008). The list includes beets (*Beta vulgaris*), lupine (*Lupinus* sp.), corn, wheat, oats, peas, rice, buckwheat (*Fagopyrum esculentum*), millet (*Panicum* sp.), barley, rye, and cucumber (*Cucumis sativa*). Allelopathy can be implicated in all cases, but research needs to thoroughly determine the role phytotoxins play in relation to other forms of interference. In some cases, the inhibition appears to occur from substances released by the living crop plants, but in others it appears that the effect is left over from decomposition products of crop residues incorporated into the soil at the end of the crop cycle. Care has to be taken to keep these inhibitory effects on weeds from affecting the crops that follow. Mixtures of these crops might express even greater allelopathic activity through complementary combining of phytotoxins.

Squash has been shown to be an especially effective allelopathic crop (Fujiyoshi et al. 2007). Rain leaches inhibitors out of the large, horizontally arranged leaves, and once in the soil, these compounds can suppress weeds. The shade

TABLE 11.4
Initial Root Elongation of the Germinating Seeds of Two Weeds and Two Crops in Laboratory Bioassays of Squash Leaf Extracts

Target Species	Distilled Water Control[a] (%)	2.5% Squash Leaf Extract[b] (%)	5.0% Squash Leaf Extract[b] (%)
Avena fatua	100	61.0	40.1
Brassica kaber	100	48.2	30.7
Raphanus sativus	100	112.1	57.1
Hordeum vulgare	100	122.0	57.8

Source: Data from Gliessman, S.R., Allelopathic effects of crops on weeds, unpublished manuscript, University of California, Santa Cruz, CA, 1988.

[a] Root elongation after 72 h at 25°C in distilled water defined as 100% growth.

[b] Air-dried intact squash leaves were soaked in distilled water for 2 h and the resulting solution filtered and used to irrigate seeds. Concentration based on ratio of grams of squash leaf to grams of water.

that the leaves cast probably enhances the effect, combining a removal interference with an addition interference. Bioassays show the allelopathic potential of water extracts of intact leaves on a range of species, with weeds often being inhibited to a greater extent than crop plants (see Table 11.4). When squash is added to an intercropped agroecosystem such as corn and beans, it takes on the important role of weed suppressor for the entire mixture.

Other research has shown that older varieties of some crops, especially the varieties most closely related to wild stock, show the greatest allelopathic potential (Batish et al. 2001; Shen et al. 2008). Crop breeding may have selected against allelopathic potential in exchange for higher crop yields. Screening for allelopathic types in germplasm collections of crops could lead to incorporation of greater allelopathic potential in current crop types through conventional crop breeding or the use of more recently developed genetic engineering technologies.

Considering the problems associated with currently used weed control strategies—possible environmental pollution, groundwater contamination, increased cost of developing and testing new herbicides, increased herbicide resistance by weeds, and the difficulties of registering new herbicides—allelopathic potential in crops will become a more attractive alternative. Connecting the plant's allelopathic potential with an understanding of the fate and activity of the phytotoxic compounds once they leave the plant will make these alternatives most useful.

Growth Stimulation

The emphasis in the foregoing discussion has been primarily on the inhibitory or negative impacts of chemicals added to the environment by plants. There are, however, limited reports of plants releasing compounds into the environment that have stimulatory effects on other plants around them. Such stimulatory addition interferences can be classified as allelopathy as well, since the term was originally coined to include them along with inhibitory effects.

In some cases, low concentrations of otherwise inhibitory chemicals may actually have a stimulatory effect. Bioassays for allelopathic potential often show increased root elongation in newly germinated seeds when plant extracts are at low concentrations. In other cases, plants produce compounds with wholly stimulatory effects. For example, an older study (Gajic and Nikocevic 1973) found that a weed known as corn cockle (*Agrostemma githago*) had an appreciable stimulatory effect on wheat yields when grown in mixed stands as compared to wheat grown alone. A stimulatory substance isolated from corn cockle was named agrostemmin, and when applied separately to wheat fields was shown to increase wheat yields in both fertilized and unfertilized areas. Rice (1984) reports on work where chopped alfalfa added to soil stimulated the growth of tobacco, cucumber, and lettuce, and a substance known as triacontanol was identified as the stimulant. Even some substances isolated from weeds have stimulatory effects at certain concentrations. Researchers are challenged to demonstrate ways that some of these effects can be practically incorporated into cropping system management, but the potential certainly exists once the full mechanisms of the interference are worked out.

IMPORTANCE OF INTERACTIONS AMONG ORGANISMS

Organisms can have positive and negative influence on each other depending on the nature of their interactions. These interactions have dynamic and potentially important impacts on the environment of agroecosystems. This chapter proposes a model for the study and understanding of such interactions that focuses on the mechanisms through which one organism adds to or removes from its immediate environment some resource or material that can have consequences for the other organisms living there.

As we will see in Section IV, finding effective ways of harnessing and managing the interactions among organisms is at the very heart of developing more sustainable practices in agriculture. The autecological perspectives on these interactions developed in this chapter will be a necessary basis for exploring their action and management at the level of crop populations, crop communities, whole agroecosystems, and the landscape in Chapters 14 through 21.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. Describe a situation where an organism appears to be competing for a specific space in the environment but actually is competing for limited or potentially limiting resources in that space.
2. Why is the organism–environment–organism model for understanding the mechanisms of biotic

interactions of such great potential importance for designing sustainable agroecosystems?

3. Describe a situation that you have seen in which allelopathy plays an important role in the development of an alternative strategy for weed management in an agroecosystem.
4. How do you differentiate between the influence of an abiotic factor on an organism and the influence of another organism on that organism?
5. What are some of the ways of avoiding competition in a crop ecosystem?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Allelopathy Journal
www.allelopathyjournal.org

RECOMMENDED READING

Booth, B. D., S. D. Murphy, and C. J. Swanton. 2003. *Weed Ecology in Natural and Agricultural Systems.* CABI Publishing: Oxfordshire, U.K.

A textbook discussing ecological principles within the context of weed ecology and management.

Combes, C. 2001. *Parasitism: The Ecology and Evolution of Intimate Interactions.* University of Chicago Press: Chicago, IL.

An exploration of the adaptations and interactions that have developed between parasites and their hosts.

Daubenmire, R. F. 1974. *Plants and Environment*, 2nd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

The classic textbook of autecology, with several chapters that emphasize the role of biotic interactions as factors in the environment.

Grace, J. B. and D. Tilman (eds.). 2003. *Perspectives on Plant Competition*. The Blackburn Press: Caldwell, NJ.

A compilation of research reports and reviews on the concept of competition in ecosystems.

Herrera, C. M. and O. Pellmyr (eds.). 2002. *Plant–Animal Interactions: An Evolutionary Approach.* Blackwell Science: Oxford, U.K.

A text covering the role of plant–animal interactions in the evolution and conservation of biodiversity.

Narwal, S. S. 2005. *Allelopathy in Crop Production*, 2nd edn. Scientific Publishers: Jodhpur, India.

A review of the importance and application of allelopathy in agroecosystems from the founder of the International Allelopathy Society.

Radosevich, S., J. Holt, and C. Ghersa. 2007. *Ecology of Weeds and Invasive Plants: Relationship to Agriculture and Natural Resource Management*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

A thorough examination of how plant ecology can be applied to developing sustainable weed and invasive plant management.

Ren Sen, Z., A. U. Mallik, and L. Shi Ming (eds.). 2008. *Allelopathy in Sustainable Agriculture and Forestry*. Springer-Verlag: New York.

A very comprehensive and up-to-date reference on the science, mechanisms, methodologies, and applications of allelopathy, especially in ways that enhance agricultural sustainability.

Rice, E. L. 1984. *Allelopathy*, 2nd edn. Academic Press: Orlando, FL.

The classic reference on the ecological significance of allelopathy in both natural and managed ecosystems.

Siddiqui, Z. A., M. S. Akhtar, and K. Futai (eds.). 2008. *Mycorrhizae: Sustainable Agriculture and Forestry*. Springer: New York.

A well-organized review of the biology and ecology of this important symbiotic relationship, with an emphasis on its role in agriculture and forestry.

Tow, P. G. and A. Lazenby. 2001. *Competition and Succession in Pastures.* CABI Publishing: Oxfordshire, U.K.

A volume describing competition and succession of plants in grasslands and grazed pastures of several continents.

Werner, D. and W. E. Newton. 2006. *Nitrogen Fixation in Agriculture, Forestry, Ecology, and the Environment*. Springer: New York.

The integration of basic and applied work in the important mutualism of biological nitrogen fixation, with an emphasis on sustainable natural resource management.

Wilmer, P. 2011. *Pollination and Floral Ecology*. Princeton University Press: Princeton, NJ.

This one-of-a-kind reference gives insights into the vital pollination services that animals provide to crops and native flora, and sets these issues in the context of today's global pollination crisis.

12 The Environmental Complex

The previous chapters have examined the separate influences of individual environmental factors on the crop plant. The chapters in Section II looked at the abiotic factors of the environment—light, temperature, precipitation, wind, soil, soil moisture, and fire—and then Chapter 11 added other organisms to the suite of factors we must be aware of when considering the effect of the environment on crop plants. Although it is important to understand the impact that each of these factors has by itself, rarely does any factor operate alone or in a consistent manner on the organism. Moreover, all of the factors that have been discussed as separate components of the environment also interact with and affect each other. Therefore, the environment in which an individual organism occurs needs to be understood as a dynamic, ever-changing composite of all the interacting environmental factors—that is, as an **environmental complex**.

When all of the factors that confront a crop plant are considered together, it is possible to examine characteristics of the environment that emerge only from the interaction of these factors. These characteristics—which include complexity, heterogeneity, and dynamic change—are the main topics of this chapter. Their examination in terms of their impact on the crop plant represents an important step in analyzing agroecosystems autecologically.

THE ENVIRONMENT AS A COMPLEX OF FACTORS

The environment in which a plant grows can be defined as the sum of all external forces and factors, both biotic and abiotic, that affect the growth, structure, and reproduction of that plant. In agroecosystems, it is vital to understand which factors in this environment—due to their condition or level at the time—might be limiting a plant, and to know what levels of certain factors are necessary for optimum performance. Agroecosystem design and management are based largely on such information. The foundations of this understanding have been presented in the earlier chapters of this book. Individual factors have been explored, and many agricultural options for their management have been reviewed. Since the environment is a complex of all of these factors, it becomes just as important to understand how each factor affects or is affected by others, singly or in complex combinations that vary in time and place. It is the complex interactions of factors that make up the total environment of the crop organism.

Factoring the Environment

The concept of an environmental complex is presented schematically in Figure 12.1. Although lines representing connections have not been drawn, the figure is intended to show that interactions occur between factors themselves, as well as between each factor and the crop organism. The component factors of the environment discussed in the previous chapters are all included, as well as several others. Since it is impossible to divide the entire environment neatly into components, or to include every possible factor, the factors shown in Figure 12.1 involve some simplification and overlap. Furthermore, each of the factors is not of equal importance at any particular time. For this reason, time is not listed as an independent factor, but should instead be considered as the background context within which the entire complex of factors is changing.

Because of the complexity of the environment, it is clear that its factors can combine to affect organisms in the environment in addition to doing so independently. Factors can work together simultaneously and synergistically to affect an organism, or they can make their effects felt through a cascade of changes in other factors. An example of such factor interaction is the lush weed growth on the north-facing side of the furrow illustrated in Figure 4.4. In this particular microclimatic site, lower temperatures, higher moisture, higher biological activity, and possibly higher nutrient availability were simultaneously associated with the small amount of shading that occurred, and this combination of factors effectively altered the conditions for plant growth. As another example, an allelopathic compound released from the roots of a crop can interact with shading, moisture stress, herbivory, susceptibility to disease, and other factors to either enhance or reduce the effectiveness of the phytotoxic compound in limiting weed growth in a cropping system. Because of such interactions, it is often a challenge to predict the consequences of any single modification of the agroecosystem.

One of the weaknesses of the conventional agronomic approach to managing agroecosystems is that it ignores factor interactions and environmental complexity. The needs of the crop are considered in terms of isolated, individual factors, and then each factor is managed separately to achieve maximum yield. Agroecological management, in contrast, begins with the farm system as a whole and designs interventions according to how they will impact the whole system,

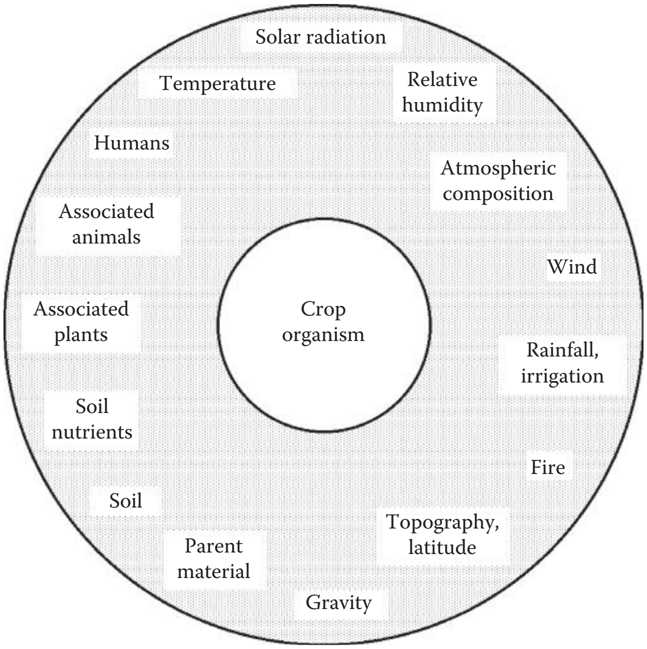


FIGURE 12.1 Representation of the environmental complex. The environment of an individual crop plant is made up of many interacting factors. Although the environment's level of complexity is high, most of the factors that make it up can be managed. Recognizing factor interactions and the overall complexity of the environment is the first step toward sustainable management. (Adapted from Billings, W.D., *Quart. Rev. Biol.*, 27, 251, 1952.)

not just crop yield. Interventions may be intended to modify single factors, but the potential impact on other factors is always considered as well.

Complexity of Interaction

The way in which a complex of factors interacts to impact a plant can be illustrated by seed germination and the **safe site** concept of Harper (1977). We know from ecophysiological studies that an individual seed germinates in response to a precise set of conditions it encounters in its immediate environment. The locality at the scale of the seed that provides these conditions has been termed the "safe site." A safe site provides the exact requirements of an individual seed for the breaking of dormancy, and for the processes of germination to take place. In addition, there must be freedom from hazards such as diseases, herbivory, or toxic substances. The conditions of the safe site must endure until the seedling becomes independent of the original seed reserves. The requirements of the seed during this time change, and so the limits of what constitutes a safe site must also change.

Figure 12.2 describes some of the environmental factors that influence the germination of a seed and make up the "safe site." Factors immediately surrounding the seed are what influence the seed most directly. Factors around the outside perimeter of the diagram are factors and variables that influence the effect, degree, or presence of the direct factors.

HETEROGENEITY OF THE ENVIRONMENT

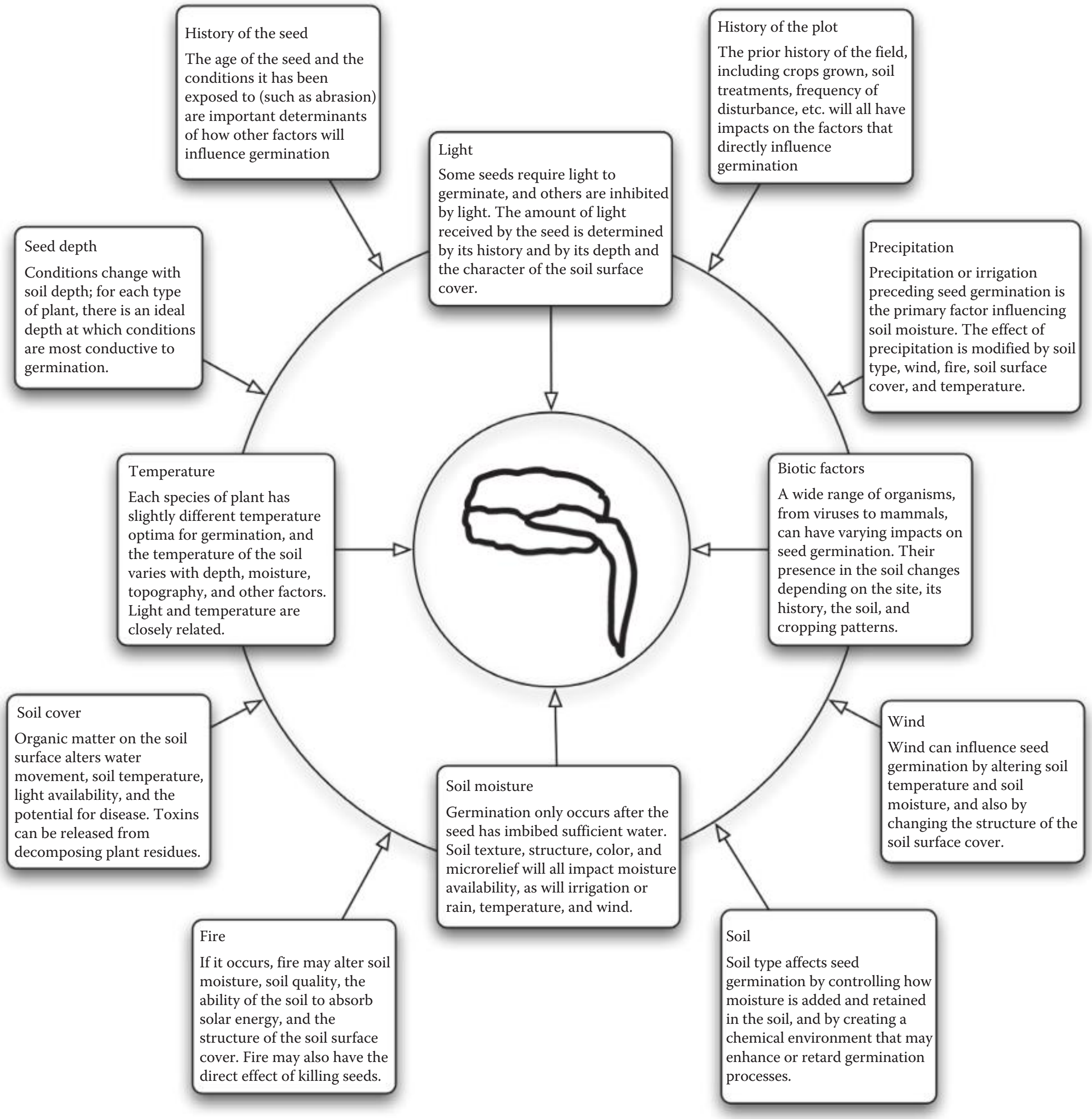
The environment of any individual plant varies not only in space but also in time. The intensity of each factor in Figure 12.1 shows variation from place to place through time, with an average for each factor setting the parameters of the habitat within which each plant is adapted. When variation in a factor exceeds the limits of tolerance of a plant, the effects can be very damaging. Farming systems that take this variation into account are much more likely to have a positive outcome for the farmer.

Spatial Heterogeneity

The habitat in which a plant occurs is the space characterized by particular combinations of factor intensities that vary both horizontally and vertically. Even in a field planted to a single variety of grain crop, for example, each plant will encounter slightly different conditions because of spatial variation in factors such as soil, moisture, temperature, and nutrient levels. The amount of variation in these factors will depend upon the extent to which the farmer tries to create uniformity in that field with equipment, irrigation, fertilizers, or other inputs. Regardless of these attempts, however, there will be slight variation in topography, exposure, soil cover, and so on that will create microenvironmental differences across the space of the field. Very small variations in microhabitat, in turn, can bring about shifts in crop response.

In a wet tropical lowland environment, for example, where soils are poorly drained and rainfall is high, slight topographic variation can make a big difference in soil moisture and drainage. In such an area, the lower-lying areas of a field may be subject to much more waterlogging than the rest of the field, and crop plants growing there may experience arrested root development and poorer performance, as illustrated in Figure 9.3. Some farmers in the region of Tabasco, Mexico, where the photograph in Figure 9.3 was taken, plant waterlogging-tolerant crops, such as rice or local varieties of taro (*Colocasia* spp. or *Xanthosoma* spp.), in the lower-lying areas of their farms as a way of making a better match between crop requirements and field conditions. Finding ways to take advantage of the spatial heterogeneity of conditions by adjusting crop types and arrangements is often more ecologically efficient than trying to enforce homogeneity or ignore heterogeneity.

In multiple cropping systems, variation in the vertical dimension must also be taken into account because one crop or canopy layer will generally create strata of varying conditions for other crops or canopy layers. This is especially true if a new crop is being planted into an already established canopy, such as into an agroforestry or tree-dominated home garden agroecosystem. To complicate matters even



History of the seed

The age of the seed and the conditions it has been exposed to (such as abrasion) are important determinants of how other factors will influence germination

History of the plot

The prior history of the field, including crops grown, soil treatments, frequency of disturbance, etc. will all have impacts on the factors that directly influence germination

Light

Some seeds require light to germinate, and others are inhibited by light. The amount of light received by the seed is determined by its history and by its depth and the character of the soil surface cover.

Seed depth

Conditions change with soil depth; for each type of plant, there is an ideal depth at which conditions are most conductive to germination.

Precipitation

Precipitation or irrigation preceding seed germination is the primary factor influencing soil moisture. The effect of precipitation is modified by soil type, wind, fire, soil surface cover, and temperature.

Temperature

Each species of plant has slightly different temperature optima for germination, and the temperature of the soil varies with depth, moisture, topography, and other factors. Light and temperature are closely related.

Biotic factors

A wide range of organisms, from viruses to mammals, can have varying impacts on seed germination. Their presence in the soil changes depending on the site, its history, the soil, and cropping patterns.

Soil cover

Organic matter on the soil surface alters water movement, soil temperature, light availability, and the potential for disease. Toxins can be released from decomposing plant residues.

Wind

Wind can influence seed germination by altering soil temperature and soil moisture, and also by changing the structure of the soil surface cover.

Soil moisture

Germination only occurs after the seed has imbibed sufficient water. Soil texture, structure, color, and microrelief will all impact moisture availability, as will irrigation or rain, temperature, and wind.

Fire

If it occurs, fire may alter soil moisture, soil quality, the ability of the soil to absorb solar energy, and the structure of the soil surface cover. Fire may also have the direct effect of killing seeds.

Soil

Soil type affects seed germination by controlling how moisture is added and retained in the soil, and by creating a chemical environment that may enhance or retard germination processes.

FIGURE 12.2 Environmental factors affecting seed germination. Factors immediately surrounding the seed affect it most directly; factors in the outer perimeter mostly affect the intensity, level, and presence of the direct factors. The importance of each factor will vary depending on the species of the seed.

more, a large mature plant member of such a system is occupying a range of microhabitats simultaneously. Which portion of the habitat and combination of microenvironmental conditions are affecting the organism the most?

Because of the difficulty involved in creating absolutely uniform conditions in farm fields, especially in resource-limited or small-scale traditional agroecosystems, farmers often plant multiple species or a variety of crop mixtures, with the idea that a diverse combination of crops with a range of adaptations will do better in a variable environment (Vandermeer 1992). It is a real challenge in experimental agronomic studies to adequately take such variability into account. High-standard deviations don't necessarily mean that something was wrong with the research methodology. It may just mean that the sample area was extremely variable!

Dynamic Change

Since the combination of factors in any environment is constantly changing through time, a farmer must also take into account temporal heterogeneity. Changes take place hourly, daily, seasonally, yearly, and even as part of longer-term climatic shifts. Some of this change is cumulative and some of it is cyclic. For any particular factor, there is a need to be aware of how rapidly its intensity can change over time, and how the changes can affect a particular crop organism, based on its length of exposure and its limits of tolerance. At the same time, each crop organism, as it goes through its life cycle, will undergo shifts both in the way it responds to different factor intensities and in its tolerance for those intensities.

A crop plant, for example, experiences a continually changing environment as it progresses through its life cycle. If a factor or combination of factors reaches some critical level at the same time the plant reaches some particularly sensitive stage in its life cycle, suppression of further development can occur and result in a crop failure. Germination, initial seedling growth, flowering, and fruiting are the stages during which extreme or unusual variation in environmental factors is most likely to impact crop performance. As was seen in Figure 9.4, for example, a period of waterlogging during the growth of cowpeas had a negative effect on yield, but the nature and extent of this effect depended on when the waterlogging occurred.

Because of dynamic change, interventions in the field often need to be carefully timed. For example, a farmer wanting to use a propane-fired burner (described in Chapter 10) to kill weed seedlings is limited to a small window of time in the early stages of development of the crop. If the crop is too small and delicate, flaming can kill the crop seedlings along with the weed seedlings. If the crop is too tall, it might be difficult to avoid damaging the plants with the flaming apparatus itself. The effective window for using flame weeders might be as short as 4 or 5 days in delicate crops such as carrots or onions, both of which have little ability to deal with interference from weeds on their own.

INTERACTION OF ENVIRONMENTAL FACTORS

Each of the many factors that make up the environmental complex has the potential to interact with other factors and thereby modify, accentuate, or mitigate their affects on organisms. The interaction of factors can have both positive and negative consequences in agroecosystems.

Compensating Factors

When one factor overcomes or eliminates the impact of another, then it is referred to as a **compensating factor**. When a crop is growing under conditions that would otherwise be limiting for its successful growth or development, one or more factors may be compensating for the limiting factor.

The effect of a compensating factor is commonly seen in fertilization trials, when a particular soil nutrient (e.g., nitrogen) is limiting as determined by the plant response. Reduced growth and lower yields are signs of the deficiency. But rather than simply adding more of the deficient nutrient, it is sometimes possible to alter some other factor of the environment that renders more of the "limited" nutrient available to plants. In the case of nitrogen deficiency, it may be that poor soil drainage is restricting nitrogen uptake by roots, so that once soil drainage is improved, the lack of nitrogen uptake is compensated for.

Another case of compensation for a limiting factor occurs when a farmer counters the negative impact of a leaf-eating herbivore by stimulating more luxurious or rapid growth of the affected crop through an intervention such as adding compost to the soil or applying a foliar fertilizer. The added biomass can allow the crop to carry the herbivore load and still produce a successful harvest. The added plant growth compensates for herbivory.

In coastal regions where fog is common during the dry summer season (e.g., the Mediterranean maritime region of coastal California), the fog can compensate for the lack of rainfall. This occurs through the reduction in transpirational water loss, and the lower evaporative stress due to less direct sunlight and lower temperatures. The leafy vegetable crops common in the lower Salinas and Pajaro Valleys of California could probably not be grown profitably during the middle of the summer without such compensation, because these crops are subject to considerable water loss through transpiration on hot days.

Multiplicity of Factors

When several factors are closely related, it may be particularly difficult to separate the effect of one factor from another. The factors can act as a functional unit, either simultaneously or in a chainlike manner. One factor influences or accentuates another, which then affects a third; but in terms of crop response, where one factor stops and another takes over is impossible to determine. The factors of temperature, light, and soil moisture often function in such a closely interrelated manner. For a corn crop in an open field, for example, increasing light levels during the morning increase temperature, and the higher temperature increases evaporation of water from the soil while transpiration also increases. Thus the intensity of each factor varies simultaneously with every change in the intensity of solar radiation, and the relative effect of each factor on the crop is practically inseparable from the multiplicity of effects they have together. As the climate warms and dries in many areas of the world, the particular forms of interaction among these three factors will be of increasing concern.

Factor Predisposition

A particular environmental factor may cause a crop response that renders the crop more susceptible to damage by another factor. In such cases, the first factor is said to predispose the plant to the effects of the second factor. Low light levels caused by shading, for example, can predispose a plant to fungal attack. The lower light levels usually mean higher relative humidity for the plant and cause it to develop thinner, larger leaves that then may be more susceptible to attack by a pathogenic fungus that occurs more commonly when excess moisture is present in the environment. Similarly, research has shown that some crop plants are more susceptible to herbivore damage when they have been given large amounts of nitrogenous fertilizer. The plant tissue is predisposed to the herbivory due to its higher nitrogen content—apparently the nitrogen serves as an attractant for the pest (Chen et al. 2008).

MANAGING COMPLEXITY

Sustainable agroecosystem management will require an understanding not only of how individual factors affect crop organisms but also of how all factors interact to form the environmental complex. Part of this understanding comes from knowing how factors interact with, compensate for, enhance, and even counteract each other. Another part comes from knowing the extent of variability present on the farm, from field to field and within each field. Conditions vary from one season to another, as well as from 1 year to the next. From climate to soils, from abiotic to biotic factors, and from plants to animals, factors interact and vary in dynamic and ever-changing patterns. An important component of sustainability is knowing not only the extent and form of factor interaction, but also the range of variability in interactions that can occur over time. Adapting the agroecosystem as much as possible to take advantage of complexity and variability where appropriate, and to compensate for both when not, is in many ways the challenge that will be addressed in the following chapters.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What factors may have impacted seed before a farmer buys it for planting? How may these influences affect the performance of the seed once it is planted?
2. What are some ways that a farmer can manage an agroecosystem in a highly variable environment other than trying to control or homogenize the conditions that create the heterogeneity?
3. What are some of the disadvantages for a farmer who chooses to deal with or adapt to (rather than overcome) spatial and temporal heterogeneity in the agroecosystem?
4. What are some ways that a farmer can successfully compensate for a limiting factor by altering or managing one or several other factors, and thus contribute to the sustainability of a farming system?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Ecophysiology Research Group in the Faculty of Agriculture at Dalhousie University

www.dal.ca/faculty/agriculture/research/centres-and-labs/ecophysiology-research-group.html

A good example of a research group with a focus on understanding the growth and the developmental, physiological, and metabolic responses of plants as individual organisms and in their communities.

Plant Ecophysiology Research Group at the University of Groningen

www.rug.nl/research/plant-ecophysiology/

This group's research focuses on the analysis of plant responses from the molecular level up to the level of the intact plant, allowing a fully integrated understanding of the plant–environment interaction.

RECOMMENDED READING

Daubenmire, R. F. 1974. *Plants and Environment*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

The book that established the foundation for an agroecological approach to plant–environment relationships.

Forman, R. T. T. and M. Gordon. 1986. *Landscape Ecology.* John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Essential reading in understanding the relationships between plant distribution and the temporal and spatial complexity of the physical landscape.

Harper, J. L. 1977. *Population Biology of Plants*. Academic Press: London, U.K.

The key reference for understanding the foundations for modern plant population biology, with many references to agricultural systems.

Larcher, W. 2003. *Physiological Plant Ecology*, 4th edn. Springer: New York.

A very complete text of ecophysiology, covering plant adaptation to the factors of the environmental complex.

Schmidt-Nielsen, K. 1997. *Animal Physiology: Adaptations and Environment*, 5th edn. Cambridge University Press: New York.

An important review of the physiological ecology of animals in the environment.

13 Heterotrophic Organisms

So far we've discussed agroecosystems as if they are based entirely on the growth of plants. Although plants are indeed the foundation for growing our food, we can't ignore the fact that animals—and other non-photosynthesizing organisms, like insects and fungi and some protists—are both absolutely essential elements of agroecosystems and factors that must be taken into account in managing these systems. In Chapter 2 we defined these organisms as *heterotrophs*, or all organisms that meet their nutritive and energetic needs by consuming other organisms.

Various types of heterotrophs were discussed as biotic factors of the environment in Chapter 11. In this context, we looked at the *interactions* between heterotrophs and other organisms, and our interest was in categorizing these interactions and distinguishing them by type, rather than in examining the heterotrophs themselves. In this chapter, we shift our frame of reference to the heterotrophic organisms, looking at these organisms directly rather than as special kinds of biotic factors. This results in two related but distinct discussions. In *Heterotrophs as Factors Affecting Crop Plants*, we focus on heterotrophs as factors of the environment but give attention to the organisms involved and the particular effects they have on crop plants. In *Animals as Resources in Agricultural Production*, we discuss animals as organisms from which humans derive food and which, like crop plants, confront an environment made up of separate factors.

HETEROTROPHS AS FACTORS AFFECTING CROP PLANTS

As described in Chapter 2, heterotrophic organisms play important roles in ecosystem structure and function. In their roles as consumers, either as primary consumers of plants or secondary consumers of other animals or animal products, they are essential elements in energy flow, nutrient cycling, and the regulation of the numbers of other organisms, especially plants. As primary consumers they are herbivores, parasites, or pollinators of plants. As secondary consumers they are parasites or predators of other animals. Because they fill all these many and varied roles in ecosystems and agroecosystems, heterotrophs have a variety of opportunities for presenting themselves as factors of the environment in relation to individual crop plants.

HERBIVORY BY INSECTS AND OTHER INVERTEBRATES

As discussed in Chapter 11, herbivory is a removal interference that represents a very direct impact on a plant, with plant tissue being removed by the consuming organism. The niche of herbivore has been exploited by nearly every group of terrestrial animals over evolutionary time, but in terms of numbers of species, insects have gone the furthest in taking advantage of plants as a ready food source. Of the more than one million insect species known, about 26% are phytophagous (plant eating). With their capacity for converting plant biomass to animal energy, the impact of these insects on food webs and food chains is quite dramatic (Price 1997; Vandermeer 2011). Several other invertebrate groups, such as mollusks (snails and slugs), are also herbivores, but since insects are the most important group in most agroecosystems, we will focus on them here.

Herbivorous insects have many specialized ways of finding, choosing, ingesting, and consuming plant matter. They have chemical, visual, and other ways of distinguishing between toxic and non-toxic plants, as well as between more or less nutritious material. Many insects have specialized mouth parts or digestive systems adapted for dealing with specific plant parts, species, or vegetation types. Some herbivorous insects are very specialized in what they consume, whereas others are considered generalists and consume a broad spectrum of plant matter. It is a pretty good bet that if there is plant matter present, some insect herbivore will be able to eat it!

Plants have the disadvantage in that they are unable to avoid being eaten by moving. To make up for being sedentary, plants have evolved a remarkable array of anti-herbivory strategies, from toxic compounds to protective structures such as spines and thorns. Many plants produce compounds that are distasteful or repellent, such as the terpenes of many of the mint family or the cyanogenic compounds of many of the Brassicaceae.

Crop plants, especially when they are planted in monocultures, face a formidable challenge from insects since eating plant biomass is what insects have evolved to do. Whatever the method that an insect herbivore uses to find its plant-based meal, the chemical and visual cues sent out by a large monoculture are very detectable or visible. Once the herbivore finds the crop, the *r*-selected colonization traits that will be described in Chapter 14 kick into play, and the insect quickly becomes a damaging crop pest. Because the defense compounds that plants have co-evolved as protection from herbivory have often been bred out of crop plants as a part of the domestication process, it is no surprise that insect herbivory is one of the greatest challenges facing agriculture.

FIGURE 13.1 A lepidopteran larvae feeding on the flowers of a legume. The consumption of plant biomass by the herbivore can have major impact on the future success of the plant.

FIGURE 13.2 An example of mixed pest heterotroph management in a Vineyard in Cuyama Valley, CA. Birds are kept away by the hanging predator eye balloons, the reflecting mylar tape seen on the plant in the foreground, and random bird distress calls from a solar powered system housed in the box center right. Rodent control is aided greatly by the barn owls nesting in the box seen behind the call system box, and rabbit damage on young vines is avoided by plastic grow tubes. The entire vineyard is fenced to keep out deer, rabbits, and the occasional cow or horse that belongs to the neighbors.

Herbivory by Grazing and Non-Grazing Vertebrates

From an agroecological perspective, we can divide herbivorous vertebrates into two groups: wild animals and domestic animals. Both groups have in common the fact that plant matter is the foundation of their diets, although specific plant species or parts consumed, digestion systems used, and dietary preferences vary immensely. The difference between an algal-feeding fish and a seed-eating bird is a good example. Wild vertebrates will be discussed first.

In an agroecosystem setting, wild vertebrates that enter into farming areas and consume crops are mostly considered to be pests. These include many species of birds, a number of rodents, and several larger types of mammals. Birds tend to eat mostly seeds or fruits, which in natural ecosystems is often beneficial to plants because it disperses the seeds or prepares them for germination. But when this feeding behavior is focused on a crop, damage can be quite extensive. The efforts of viticulturalists in California to protect ripe grapes from bird foraging can be seen in everything from automatic sound makers and reflectors to netting. Flocks of parakeets (*Aratinga* spp.) can quickly decimate rice crops in southern Mexico by consuming large amounts of grain just before harvest. Browsing black-tailed deer (*Odocoileus hemionus*) can cause significant damage to a range of crops, from tomatoes to grapes to Christmas trees. In any situation where natural ecosystems and agroecosystems form an integrated landscape, herbivory from wild animals is always a concern. Appropriate strategies for separating the crops from the animals must be taken (Figure 13.2).

Herbivorous animals that become food for humans, or supply us with other products, are a different story. These animals as elements of agricultural production will be covered in more detail in the second part of this chapter. Here we will focus on the actual impacts of their herbivory on plants.

Before domestication, grazing and browsing animals obtained their plant food from natural ecosystems. As domestication took place, animals came to depend on humans to provide for their food needs. This led to the development of various pasture-based systems that will be discussed in more detail in Chapter 19. People learned how to either manage animals for improved pasture performance or to plant grasses or legumes that provided the foundation for proper animal nutrition.

Pasture and range managers believe that grazing by livestock is good for plants. It removes accumulated biomass and stimulates new growth. Plant matter moves through the animal and is deposited on the soil as nutrient-rich manure. Interestingly, animals will selectively graze a pasture, removing the higher quality forage first and then come back to secondary forages later. Such selective grazing has impact on the species composition of pasture. Farmers have developed management plans that favor certain species of plants over others, depending on grazing pressure, animal nutritional needs, and local environmental conditions. Basically, however, herbivory determines the species composition and management strategies for range or pasture systems.

Parasitism and Mutualism by Fungi

Heterotrophic fungi are important components of any ecosystem, and in agroecosystems they can play very important roles. Rather than eat or ingest their food, fungi instead absorb nutrients from the environment around them. Many fungi do this by secreting powerful hydrolytic enzymes into their surroundings that break down complex molecules into smaller organic compounds that the fungi can absorb and use. Other fungi produce enzymes that allow for the penetration of plant cell walls, enabling the fungi to absorb nutrients from the cells. Since the different enzymes produced by the various fungal species are so diverse, fungi as a group can digest compounds from a wide range of organic materials, living and dead. Further, fungi are very good at gaining access to these materials because of their incredibly extensive root-like hyphae, which form an interwoven mass called a mycelium. Combined, enzymes and hyphae make fungi remarkably efficient at water and nutrient absorption. Although the role of fungi in digesting and absorbing nutrients from dead or decaying plant matter is of considerable ecological importance, our focus for the purpose of this chapter is on their role as heterotrophic consumers and their effects on plants. Fungi affect plants in two primary ways: as parasites and as mutualistic partners.

Fungi that are parasitic on plants absorb nutrients from the cells of living plants. About 30% of the more than 100,000 known fungal species make their living as parasites, most of which are disease-causing (or pathogenic) to plants (Figure 13.3). Between 10% and 50% of the world's fruit harvest is lost annually to fungal diseases, and grain crops can suffer major damage each year. Once infected, plants do not develop correctly, forming deformed or stunted parts. In addition, the compounds produced by the fungi—such as the aflotoxins produced by the ascomycete *Aspergillus* when it parasitizes peanuts or grain—can be toxic to humans.

Fungi that form mutualisms with plants, on the other hand, create benefits for both organisms. This symbiotic relationship was presented as an important biotic interaction affecting plants in Chapter 12; the importance of these mutualisms in the design and management of crop communities will be described in detail in Chapter 16.

FIGURE 13.3 Rice blast fungus (*Magnaporthe oryzae*) heavily affecting rice in Tabasco, Mexico. The fungus penetrates the leaves, causing small lesions that can quickly coalesce and kill the leaf and severely reduce grain yields. The affected areas appear darker in this photo (in life, they are reddish).

As described earlier, the hyphae of some fungi form a dense mycelial mat around the outside of the root (ectophytic mycorrhizae) and form a close relationship with the plant by penetrating the intercellular spaces of the plant roots where water and nutrient exchange can occur. Other fungi actually penetrate the cells of the plant tissue, then send their hyphae (endophytic mycorrhizae) through the intercellular spaces into the soil around the root. In both cases, the very extensive and fine network of hyphae, knitted together to form mycelia, provides benefit for the plant by expanding its capacity to absorb water and nutrients. In addition, the enzymes produced by the fungi can be antagonistic to other heterotrophic organisms in the soil ecosystem, such as pathogenic bacteria, nematodes, and other fungi, providing the plant partner protection from these pathogens. In exchange for this service, the fungus receives sugars produced by the photosynthetic activity of the plant, and both organisms prosper (Figure 13.4).

Most plants also have mutualistic fungi that live on the leaf surfaces of plants or just inside the leaf tissue without causing harm. Some of those that live inside the leaf, such as those of some grasses, make the plant matter toxic to herbivores and, in some cases, can increase the plant's tolerance to drought, heat, or even heavy metals. The case of cacao (*Theobroma cacao*) is a good example; seedlings inoculated with endophytic fungi show much lower disease levels than non-inoculated seedlings (Arnold et al. 2010).

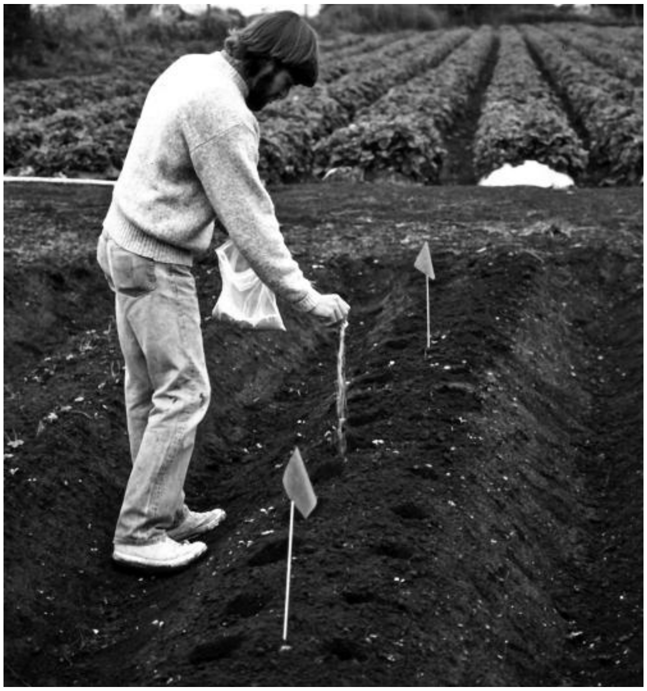


FIGURE 13.4 Experimental inoculation with spores of mycorrhizal fungi to enhance root colonization for strawberries. After a soil has been managed with industrial inputs and practices for a long time, beneficial organisms may have to be intentionally introduced as part of the restoration of ecological processes.

POLLINATION

As described in Chapter 11, heterotrophs play an important role in angiosperm pollination. This relationship often takes the form of a protocooperation, where multiple animal pollinators can visit many different species of plants, and a single plant species has no specific dependence on one pollinator. On the other hand, some pollination interactions have co-evolved to the point that a single pollinator species and a single plant become co-dependent, or form what is called an obligate mutualism. The plant has become completely dependent on the pollinator and vice versa (Figure 13.5). Some tropical orchids have evolved the ability to synthesize a compound that mimics exactly the sex pheromone of the female of a species of bee, enabling the plant to attract the male to the flower even though the pheromone is produced in micro quantities. Orchid flower morphology has also often co-evolved to take on the shape of a female bee's reproductive structures and to position the pollen sac in such a way that when the male bee enters the flower, thinking it is his female counterpart, the pollen sac is attached to the bee and carried to another flower where another structure is ready to receive and remove it from the male. This "lock and key" arrangement reflects the degree to which herbivores' need for plant food can influence plant morphology and evolution.

Approximately 80% of angiosperm species are pollinated by animals, and of these, most are pollinated by insects. Bees, in turn, are the most important insect pollinators, especially for many agricultural crops (Figure 13.6). There is great concern in North America and Europe about the current decline in honeybee populations, which is attributed to the phenomenon known as the "colony collapse disorder." In California, more than 1.6 million domesticated bee colonies are needed to effectively pollinate the massive almond crop during a narrow few-week window of flowering in the spring. Due to a dieback of 40%–50% of commercial colonies in the few months just before flowering in the spring of 2013, almond growers had to mount an immense effort to bring in bee colonies from all over the country in order to complete pollination. If the dieback continues, there will not be enough colonies to pollinate what has become the major export crop for California (Grossman 2013). Since wild bees do not occur in large enough numbers to pollinate such a large area in such a short time, domesticated colonies are the key to success. Other crops that co-evolved with honeybees in the Old World—such as cucumbers, melons, mustards, apples, and onions—are in a similar situation.

FIGURE 13.5 A bee caught in the flower of the stream orchid (*Epipactis gigantea*) in Wyman Canyon, CA. The orchid mimics the female bee with both its floral arrangement and the release of attractive pheromones.

FIGURE 13.6 Wild stingless-bee hives in the Yucatan, Mexico. Local people have a long tradition of raising these bees in sections of hollow tree trunks. These bees are also very important pollinators of local crops such as squash and chiles.

Butterflies, moths, and flies, among other insects, are also important flower pollinators, but their significance in this regard is overshadowed by their more prominent role—in their larval forms—as herbivorous pests. Some birds and bats are pollinators as well, but again their role in agriculture is rather limited. Hummingbirds are known to pollinate blueberries. Bats pollinate a range of plants, especially those that are night blooming—such as the epiphytic cactus that produces the newly popular "dragon fruit." Bats are also important pollinators of bananas, mangoes, dates, figs, peaches, cashews, guava, avocados, and agaves (upon which we depend for tequila and mezcal).

PREDATION AND PARASITISM OF HERBIVORES

Agroecosystems (particularly those under ecological management) also contain a relatively diverse assemblage of heterotrophs that don't impact crop plants directly, but which play an important role regulating the population levels of potential crop pests. These include both insects that parasitize herbivorous insects (such as *Trichogramma* wasps) and animals in a wide range of taxonomic groups that are predators on crop pests. Included in the latter category are predaceous insects, birds, bats, certain terrestrial mammals, and even reptiles and amphibians. Their role in natural or biological control is well known, and alternative farming systems like organic agriculture depend highly on the presence and effective activity of these organisms. The importance of these beneficial organisms will be discussed as elements of agroecosystems in Chapter 17.

Ecological Roles in the Soil

As discussed in some detail in Chapter 8, the below-ground environment of an agroecosystem is teeming with a diverse assortment of organisms, many of which are heterotrophic. Many of these organisms, such as protists, predatory nematodes, many invertebrates, and even some fungi play important roles in the control of plant-consuming soil organisms (such as herbivorous nematodes) or as antagonists against disease-causing bacteria and fungi. Their presence is important in establishing and maintaining a balanced "pathosystem" in the soil (Garcia-Espinosa 2010). The mycorrhizal fungi discussed earlier, which form mutualistic relationships with plant roots, can provide a living barrier to disease organisms in addition to improving the uptake efficiency of water and nutrients by the roots. Earthworms consume pathogenic fungal spores and bacteria as they graze through the soil, in addition to improving soil structure and adding organic matter in the form of their excrement. By playing their many and diverse roles in the soil, heterotrophic organisms help constitute the below-ground ecosystem that is such a fundamental aspect of the soil, which, when considered as a whole, is a primary factor of the environment in which crop plants grow.

ANIMALS AS RESOURCES IN AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION

Animals are obviously not restricted to the roles of herbivorous pests, parasites, pollinators, and predators in crop production systems. A large variety of domesticated (and semi-domesticated) animals also produce products that are of importance to their human managers (Figure 13.7). Similar to a crop plant, each type of heterotrophic animal that is an important source of products for human use and consumption has its particular set of adaptations and characteristics that determine where it grows best and under what conditions it is most successful in agricultural production.

Domesticated animals raised for food or fiber are dependent on plants for their nutrition, either directly or indirectly. This nutritional need can be met in a variety of ways, ranging from feeding them crop plants to allowing them to graze on lightly managed, unplanted pasture. Because of this dependence on plants, animals cannot be "grown" directly in the way that plants can. Plants are always part of the process, even if the plant food is grown off-farm, consists of unplanted, untilled pasture or natural vegetation, or passes first through an herbivorous intermediate (as is the case, e.g., when chickens eat insects that have fed on crop plants).

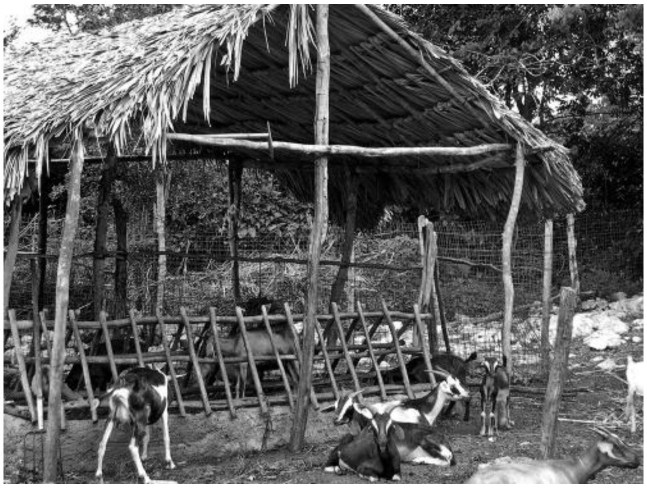


FIGURE 13.7 **A small-scale goat production system, Mani, Yucatan, Mexico.** Mostly local and renewable resources are used to produce a valuable source of protein.

With this broader perspective, agroecologists must focus their attention on helping farmers ensure that not only does the dependence of animals on plants for their nutrition take place in a balanced manner, but that all other environmental factors that impact animal life and production are within the limits of tolerance that were reviewed for plants in the previous chapters. Temperature, light, water, soil, and other factors must match the needs of the animals as well as those of the plants that feed them.

Physiology and Growth of Animals

Heterotrophic organisms are different from plants in many ways. Rather than capturing energy through photosynthesis, absorbing mineral nutrients from the soil, and taking in carbon from the air, heterotrophs must ingest their food and obtain their energy from already-existing organic matter, all of which has ultimately been produced by plants or other animals. Apart from obtaining food and energy from other organisms, animals are also much more self-regulating than plants. They are relatively homeostatic in that they are able to regulate their internal conditions, such as temperature or pH. When we think of larger animals, we think of the structures they possess that maintain this homeostasis, such as lungs, a circulatory system, a digestive system, a central nervous system, and outer coverings such as hair or feathers. And of course a key element of what makes many (but not all) heterotrophic organisms successful is that they are mobile. Whereas an established plant is restricted to the location where its roots are anchored, most animals can move to seek food and shelter and optimal conditions for growth and development, and they can avoid or flee detrimental conditions or danger.

The basic introduction to the processes of food consumption, growth, and development that follows is intended to provide a background for understanding how better to integrate animals into sustainable food systems. For more depth and detail, we encourage the reader to consult a basic biology or animal physiology text.

Production of Animal Biomass

Just as plants partition carbon from photosynthesis into different plant parts, heterotrophic animals distribute, accumulate, and store carbon from the plant food they consume in tissue, organs, bones, fat, and other parts such as hair or feathers. And like plants, animals also need other elements to produce the tissues that make up their bodies, as well as the substances (such as hormones and enzymes) that allow their bodies to function. These other elements include nitrogen, sulfur, oxygen, and a few others needed in relatively small amounts. Animals must obtain all of these elements from the food they ingest.

Before production of animal biomass can occur, the food that is consumed must pass through several stages of processing in order to break it down into its simpler molecular components. These components, which include fatty acids, amino acids, and simple sugars, can then be reassembled to produce the more complex molecules, and ultimately the tissues, that make up the animal's body. The energy for this reassembly process—and the animal's other physiological activities—comes from the further breakdown and oxidation of some of the organic matter the animal consumes.

The processing of food begins with ingestion, or the act of eating or feeding. This occurs in a variety of ways, directly related to the ecological niche the animal has evolved to fill. Some heterotrophs are substrate feeders, living in or on their food source. Other heterotrophs are fluid feeders, sucking nutrient-rich fluids from a living host. Ticks on cattle are a good example of a fluid-feeding animal that preys on other animals, and aphids are a good example of a fluid feeder that feeds on plants. Most animals, though, are bulk feeders. They eat relatively large pieces of food by biting or tearing, and then moving the pieces into a digestive system with specialized compartments for processing. Most of the animals involved in livestock production systems have this kind of feeding system, and are primarily plant feeders.

Once food has been ingested, it is passed through an extracellular digestion system (a system that is continuous with the environment outside the animal's body) that performs the functions of breaking down food into smaller parts, absorbing the food, and eliminating any undigested or unused matter. Each of these functions occurs in a specific compartment designed for the purpose. In vertebrates these different compartments are specialized segments of a tube that extends from the mouth to the anus known as the alimentary canal.

Ingested organic matter must be broken down into molecules small enough for the body to absorb. This occurs through both mechanical and chemical digestion. Chemical digestion must happen because animals cannot directly use the protein, carbohydrates, nucleic acids, fats, or phospholipids that come in their food. As noted earlier, breaking larger molecules down through enzymatic hydrolysis produces the smaller component parts needed to assemble the larger molecules that the animal needs, as well as the simple sugars that provide energy for metabolic activity.

Some mechanical digestion usually takes place in the mouth during the process of chewing, and this is accompanied by some chemical digestion as well. Saliva in the mouth contains the enzyme amylase, which hydrolyzes starch into smaller polysaccharides. Mechanical digestion is important for breaking the food into smaller pieces so that later chemical digestion will have more surface area to act upon.

Further mechanical digestion, as well as the bulk of chemical digestion, takes place in the stomach. The muscular walls of the stomach churn the food inside, and it releases both strong acids and enzymes to break apart the ingested organic matter into its constituents. The stomach empties partially digested food into the small intestine, where further digestion occurs and the next stage in the process—absorption of the smaller molecules like amino acids and simple sugars—begins.

Many animals used in agricultural production have specialized stomachs or additional organs that aid in mechanical and chemical digestion, breaking down hard-to-digest food before it enters the small intestine. Birds such as chickens, ducks, and turkeys pass food from the mouth to a crop where food can be stored while eating, and then into a stomach with two parts: a "true" stomach responsible primarily for chemical digestion and a gizzard that accomplishes both chemical and mechanical digestion. Animals known as ruminants (e.g., cattle, goats, and sheep) have stomachs with four chambers where mutualistic microorganisms enzymatically digest plant matter. A cow can regurgitate and re-chew some of the ingested grass it eats, breaking down the plant fibers further and making them more available for microbial action. A ruminant gets many of its nutrients by digesting the mutualistic organisms themselves that are mixed with the regurgitated grass but which reproduce rapidly enough to replace any that are lost.

Whatever the configuration of an animal's stomach, the food it processes passes next into the small intestine. In mammals, the first short segment of the small intestine is called the duodenum. It is here that the mixture from the stomach is mixed with digestive juices from the pancreas, liver, and gallbladder. Most enzymatic hydrolysis occurs in the small intestine, along with a major portion of the absorption of nutrients. Nutrients are absorbed through the feathery linings of the interior intestinal wall and enter the microscopic blood vessels, or capillaries, that are at the core of the lining, for transport to the rest of the metabolic system. The capillaries and vessels that carry nutrient-rich blood away from the lining all converge into a blood vessel that leads to the liver, then to the heart, and finally to the other tissues and organs. The liver provides two main functions: first, it regulates the distribution of nutrients to the rest of the body. The nutrient balance in the blood leaving the liver can be very different from that which entered. And second, the liver removes toxic substances before the blood circulates more widely.

The alimentary canal ends in the large intestine, which includes the colon, cecum, and rectum. The small intestine connects to the large intestine at a fork that goes one way to the colon—and then to the rectum and the anus for elimination of the final wastes of the digestive system—and the other way to the cecum. In animals that eat large amounts of plant matter, the cecum is important for fermenting ingested material so that it can be fully digested. The size of the cecum varies from animal to animal; in humans it is a vestigial organ called the appendix. The major function of the colon is to recover water that entered the alimentary canal and served as the solvent for the digestive juices. On the average, almost 90% of the fluid secreted into the digestive system is reabsorbed in the small intestine and colon.

In most herbivorous mammals, both the small intestine and the cecum are much more developed than they are in humans, and are usually occupied by mutualistic microorganisms that produce enzymes that help digest plant material, especially cellulose, into simple sugars and other compounds the animal can use. Horses, for example, have an extended cecum with such bacteria. In rabbits and some rodents, mutualistic bacteria live in both the cecum and the large intestine, but since most nutrients are absorbed in the small intestine, these animals will re-ingest feces the first time it is eliminated so that re-digestion can absorb the available nutrients that were created through bacterial activity after the food passed through the small intestine.

Nutritional Needs of Animals

As discussed earlier, animals must extract both nutrients and energy from the food they consume. An adequate diet must therefore contain three essential substances: (1) matter with large amounts of energy stored in its chemical bonds that can be harnessed to power cellular processes, (2) matter that contains the basic organic building blocks for macromolecules and tissues, and (3) substances that the animal cannot synthesize from smaller parts (Figure 13.8).

FIGURE 13.8 Cattle grazing on a diverse assortment of native and non-native plants growing in unplanted pasture, Huimanguillo, Tabasco, Mexico. As herbivorous ruminants, cattle are well adapted to grazing on such vegetation, which provides them with all the nutrients they require.

All of an animal's activities, from cellular processes to movement of the whole animal, depend on adequate sources of chemical energy in the diet. This energy is used to produce ATP, which powers processes from growth and development to moving and keeping warm. This continuous need for ATP is met by ingesting and digesting food made up of carbohydrates, protein, and lipids, any of which can be broken down to produce ATP.

As discussed in Chapter 2, there is ecological significance in the fact that heterotrophs (or consumers) must meet their energy and biomass-building needs entirely through the ingestion of organic matter created by other organisms. Since so much of the energy in the plant material consumed by animals is used for basic metabolism and maintenance, the overall efficiency of the conversion of plant biomass to animal biomass is quite low. At the most, about 10% of the energy stored in plant matter from photosynthesis is converted to animal biomass (see Figure 2.2). Conversion of the biomass of herbivorous animals to the biomass of carnivores is similarly inefficient. The consequences of this energy "loss" between trophic levels, and hence the energy footprint it creates, will be discussed in Chapter 19.

In addition to energy-containing compounds, an herbivore's diet must also contain all of the raw materials needed for biosynthesis. Two types of organic precursors are needed in large amounts to assemble the complex molecules an animal needs to grow, maintain itself, and reproduce: a source of organic carbon (such as sugar or carbohydrate) and a source of organic nitrogen (such as protein). These materials are the major building blocks for the great variety of organic molecules that make up animal biomass. Other elements are needed in smaller amounts: sulfur for the assembly of some amino acids, phosphorus for the production of nucleic acids, iron for making hemoglobin, and iodine for thyroid hormones.

All animals have limits to the kinds of macromolecules they can synthesize from organic carbon and nitrogen and other elements. For example, animals can only synthesize about half of the 20 amino acids that they need to make protein. The amino acids that animals cannot synthesize must be obtained from food; these are called the essential amino acids. Most animals require eight amino acids in their diet for proper nutrition. The protein in the food products produced by animals, such as meat, cheese, and eggs, contains all of the essential amino acids, and is therefore called "complete" protein. Plant protein usually lacks several of the essential amino acids and is therefore called "incomplete" protein. For example, corn is deficient in tryptophan and lysine, and beans are deficient in methionine. (Putting the two together is a way for an animal on a vegetarian diet to obtain all of the essential amino acids.)

Another class of organic molecule that animals are unable to synthesize is fatty acids. For this reason they are also classified as essential. Linoleic acid is a good example of a fatty acid that humans and other animals cannot make, but which is supplied by the seeds, grains, and vegetables that are part of a balanced diet. Vitamins are another important category of organic molecule that cannot be synthesized. Each vitamin, be it water soluble or fat soluble, has a different but important role, ranging from functioning as a coenzyme in various metabolic processes to allowing blood to clot. Animals vary in their need for vitamins in their diets, however, because there is variation in their synthetic abilities. For example, most animals can synthesize vitamin C, but it is an essential nutrient for humans, guinea pigs, and some birds, because these animals are unable to make it in their bodies.

Finally, animals require certain minerals—such as sodium and potassium—that are needed not for synthesis of macromolecules, but for their role in osmotic balance and the transmission of nerve impulses.

All of these essential nutrients—along with the water that functions as the essential solvent and without which life could not exist—form the foundation for developing proper diets for the animals upon which agriculture has come to depend.

Key Variations among Animals Used for Production of Food and Fiber

As can be seen from the foregoing discussion, the domesticated animals that humans use for production of food and fiber have widely varying physiological makeups. Based on the evolution and adaptation it underwent prior to domestication, each type of animal has a particular type of digestive system adapted to the eating of a particular kind of diet. Domestication and selective breeding have not greatly altered these fundamental physiological and anatomical aspects of the animals we use for production of meat, milk, eggs, fiber, and other products.

The "natural" diets of domesticated animals matter a great deal when it comes to using these animals for food and fiber production in agroecosystems. Just as agroecosystem managers need to take into account crop plants' different ranges of tolerance for various environmental conditions and their different nutritional needs, so too do they need to consider how animals' basic physiologies fit them to certain roles in production systems.

Ruminants such as cattle, sheep, and goats, with their multi-chambered stomachs and ability to harness bacterial enzymes in digestion, have the remarkable ability to digest the complex carbohydrate cellulose. They are adapted to grazing or browsing, both of which involve eating large volumes of plant matter composed largely of cellulose, which humans cannot digest. In this regard, ruminants perform a vital function from the human standpoint: they convert undigestible, non-nutritive biomass into biomass (meat and milk) that is not only edible, but also extraordinarily high in protein.

In industrial agriculture, however, this highly useful attribute of ruminant physiology is ignored in favor of a single-minded focus on the efficient production of the final product. In the confined animal feeding operations (CAFOs) discussed in Chapter 1, cattle are no longer fed plant matter that resembles what they ate naturally or even in improved pasture systems. Feed high in energy and protein, made up of corn grain and soybeans, takes the place of grass and legumes. This has several negative consequences including digestive disorders in the animals, high emissions of methane, and accumulation of large volumes of urine and manure. Further, the crop systems used to produce this feed are most often large-scale monocultures, with all of the problems of scale and ecological impacts that go along with them. The link between animal production and crop production is extremely close, but as we will see, an agroecological approach would be to return to integrated farming systems that better mix crops and animals in systems where both create a sustainable interdependence. Such systems will be discussed in Chapter 19.

Two of the domesticated animals most widely used for food—pigs and chickens—are omnivores. These animals are able to consume leaves, stems, fruit, and seeds, yet can take advantage of animal-based foods as the opportunity presents itself. This breadth of diet can have many advantages in agroecosystems. Pigs, for example, can be pasture-raised on diverse plantings of grasses and legumes, yet while they are grazing they are also rooting in the soil for insects, earthworms, and the occasional rodent they might encounter. Pigs can also be raised in forests, where they do very well eating leaves, fungus, grubs, roots, nuts, earthworms, and fruit. With similarly broad diets and foraging ability but less impactful digging behavior, chickens can be successfully integrated into a variety of small-scale agroecosystems, eating plant pests, leaving nitrogen- and phosphorus-rich manure, and providing either eggs or meat or both. They are used in this way, for example, in the home garden systems described in Chapter 18.

As they have for cattle, however, modern-day CAFOs for hogs have shifted the animals entirely to a plant-based diet, with issues and problems similar to those described for cattle. Chickens and turkeys are also raised in industrial-scale confinement systems on diets primarily made up of corn and soybean grain. Although selective breeding has produced poultry breeds able to withstand grain-based diets without ill effect, raising the birds in confinement systems ignores the ecological benefits of their omnivory.

Various other animals are used in agroecosystems, not just for their ability to produce food but also because of the important ecological roles they play. Fish, for example, have been used in traditional rice-paddy systems in Asia for millennia. They are harvested for food, but also play important roles in controlling pests and cycling nutrients. Even insects are integrated into agroecosystems to produce useful products and serve important functions—honeybees and silkworms are two good examples. We will look more closely at the ecology of integrated plant–animal agroecosystems in Chapter 19.

Table 13.1 summarizes some of the attributes of domesticated animals that should be considered in the design of sustainable animal production and integrated agroecosystems.

TABLE 13.1
Physiological Attributes of Animals Used in Agroecosystems

Animal	Trophic Role	Digestive System	Natural Diet	Products
Cattle	Herbivore	Ruminants; 4-chambered stomachs; can digest cellulose	Grazer: grass and other forbs	Meat, milk, leather
Sheep	Herbivore		Grazer/intermediate: grass, twigs, leaves	Meat, milk, wool
Goats	Herbivore		Browser/intermediate: leaves and stems of plants	Meat, milk
Pigs (hogs)	Omnivore	Simple stomach	Roots, fruits, leaves, nuts (acorns), earthworms, grubs, fungus, etc.	Meat, leather
Chickens, turkeys	Omnivore	Crop and gizzard in addition to stomach	Leaves, seeds, insects, fruit, earthworms, slugs, etc.	Meat, eggs
Fish	Varies with species	Varies	Varies; many eat algae or detritus	Meat, meal
Bees	Primary consumer	Digestive chambers or guts	Nectar and pollen	Honey, pollen, propolis
Silkworms	Herbivore	Digestive chamber	Mulberry leaves	Silk

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What are the agroecological differences between protein obtained from plant sources and protein from animal sources?
2. Today there is a lot of interest in producing beef on pasture grass, rather than in feedlots. Describe some of the benefits gained from doing this.
3. How can we design agroecosystems so that obligate mutualisms between heterotrophs and their plant partners can play an important role in food system sustainability?
4. How might one design an agroecosystem that would make it possible to raise wild animals for human consumption?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Honey Bees and Colony Collapse Disorder
www.ars.usda.gov/news/docs.htm?docid=15572
The US Department of Agriculture's website for information, data, and research on the honeybee colony collapse disorder, with annual reports of colony losses and research on possible explanations for the problem.

RECOMMENDED READING

Abrol, D. P. 2012. *Pollination Biology: Biodiversity Conservation and Agricultural Production*. Springer Verlag: Berlin, Germany.
A comprehensive examination of the processes and mechanisms of pollination, the role of pollinators in natural and agricultural environments, and the challenges presented by invasive species, genetic engineering, and loss of biodiversity. A special emphasis on bees and their role in food security and livelihoods for people.

Bronstein, J. L. 2009. Mutualism and symbiosis. In S. A. Levin (ed.) *Princeton Guide to Ecology*. Princeton University Press: Princeton NJ, pp. 233–238.
A useful entry in an encyclopedia of ecology, discussing the state of knowledge on ecological aspects of mutualism and symbiosis, and providing references to important background in the field.

Garcia-Espinosa, R. 2010. *Agroecología y Enfermedades de la Raiz en Cultivos Agrícolas*. Editorial del Colegio de Postgraduados: Montecillos, Mexico.
For those who read Spanish, this is the most complete treatment of how an agroecological approach is the key to managing pathogenic root fungi, and where heterotrophic fungi are considered as part of the larger agroecosystem.

Holecheck, J. L., R. D. Pieper, and C. H. Herbel. 2010. *Range Management: Principles and Practices*. 6th edn. Prentice Hall: Upper Saddle River, NJ.
The most up-to-date source of information on range management, with its strongest emphasis on the management of grazing itself. It also presents comprehensive information on highly relevant issues such as range animal behavior, economics, energy, and multiple use environments.

Ruechel, J. 2012. *Grass-Fed Cattle: How to Produce and Market Natural Beef*. Storey Publishing: North Adams, MA.
Covers every aspect of raising grass-fed cattle, from the selection and care of the animals to possible organic certification. A very important guide to getting off of feed-lot production systems.

Schaller, A. 2010. *Induced Resistance to Insect Herbivory*. Springer Verlag: New York.
A detailed look at how plants develop resistance to the multitude of herbivorous insects that exist in natural ecosystems.

Section IV

System-Level Interactions

With a grounding in the autecological knowledge developed in Sections II and III, we can now expand our perspective to the *synecological* level—the study of how groups of organisms interact in the cropping environment. This whole-system perspective stresses the need for understanding the emergent qualities of populations, communities, and ecosystems and how these qualities are put to use in designing and managing sustainable agroecosystems.

Chapters 14 and 15 begin at the population level, exploring the population ecology of mixtures of species in the crop environment and the management of genetic resources. Chapter 16 examines species interactions at the community level, explaining the benefits of complexity and the role of cooperation and mutualisms in sustainable agriculture. Chapters 17 and 18 cover a range of important ecological phenomena—including diversity, resilience, disturbance, and succession—that function at the ecosystem level, showing how these emergent qualities of whole systems are key aspects of agroecosystem design and management. Chapter 19 adds animals into the agroecosystem picture, looking at how livestock and other animals can play important ecological roles in sustainable food production. To conclude our exploration of system-level interactions, Chapter 20 examines whole-system function from the standpoint of energy use and flow and then Chapter 21 looks at how the core principle of diversity can be extended to agricultural landscapes.

FIGURE S.4 A diverse cropping community in Tabasco, Mexico, including cassava, papaya, pineapple, taro, bananas, and achiote. These crop plants interact in complex ways with each other, with other organisms, and with the physical environment.

14 Population Ecology of Agroecosystems

In agronomy and industrial agriculture, the center of attention is the population of organisms—whether crop plants or livestock—from which the product will be extracted. A farmer attempts to maximize the performance of this population by managing the various factors of the environmental complex. When sustainability of the entire agroecosystem becomes the primary concern, however, this narrow focus on the needs of one usually genetically homogenous population becomes wholly inadequate. The agroecosystem must be viewed as a collection of interacting populations of many kinds of organisms, including noncrop species, animals, and microorganisms.

Consideration of the agroecosystem as a collection of interacting populations involves several levels of study. First, we require the conceptual tools necessary to understand and compare how each population goes about surviving and reproducing itself in the environment of the agroecosystem. These tools and their application are the subject of this chapter. Second, we need to look at the genetic basis of crop populations and how the manipulation of this genetic potential by humans has affected crop plants' adaptability and range of tolerance. We will turn our attention to this topic in Chapter 15. Finally, we need to consider the community and ecosystem-level processes of interacting populations, which will be explored in Chapters 16 through 19.

PRINCIPLES OF POPULATION ECOLOGY AND PLANT DEMOGRAPHY

The single-species population has long been the main subject of agronomic research. Crop breeders adjust the genetic potential of crop populations, and production specialists develop management technologies that get the most out of that potential. This has led to a type of crop ecologist skilled at adjusting one factor of the system at a time or developing technologies that solve single problems, such as controlling a particular pest with a specific pesticide. But since the agroecosystem is made up of complex interactions between many populations of organisms, an agroecological approach requires a broader analysis. Studies of interactions between populations at the same trophic level must be carried out at the same time studies are going on that focus on the interactions between populations at different trophic levels. Integrated pest management, for example, requires a simultaneous analysis of the population ecology of each member of the specific crop–pest–natural enemy complex, as well as other populations of organisms with which the entire complex interacts. Ultimately, we must consider this complex of populations as the entire crop community, a level of ecological analysis we will turn to in Chapter 16. But first, several basic principles of population ecology that help us understand the dynamics of each population will be discussed.

POPULATION GROWTH

Ecologists view population growth as the net result of birth rates, death rates, and the movement of individuals into and out of a particular population. Population growth is thus described by the formula

$$r = (N + I) - (M + E)$$

where r is the intrinsic rate of population increase in a population over time, taking into account natality (N), immigration (I), mortality (M), and emigration (E). Any population changes over time are described by

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = rP$$

where P is the population under study over a specific time (t) period. If resources do not become limiting, and negative interactions between members of the population do not reach some critical level as the population increases, a population would increase exponentially. Since this very simple equation does not take into account the effect of abiotic and biotic factors of the environment on a population, nor the limits to growth that an environment can impose on a population, the following equation was developed to better model what happens in the real world:

$$\frac{dP}{dt} = rP\left(\frac{K - P}{K}\right) = rP\left(1 - \frac{P}{K}\right)$$

The rate of growth of the population is unaffected by interference when P approaches 0, and slows when P approaches K (the population size at the carrying capacity of the environment). This equation describes a logistic, sigmoidal, or S-shaped growth curve, as shown in Figure 14.1. The leveling off of the curve indicates that problems are eventually encountered in allocating resources to an expanding population. This curve could apply to a weed species in a crop field or a particular pest organism on the crop. Population increase is slow at first, begins to accelerate until it reaches a maximum rate of increase, and then slows as density increases.

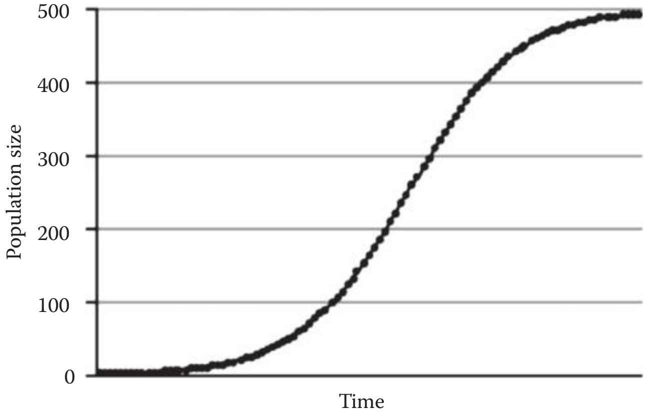


FIGURE 14.1 The population growth curve. This graph shows the theoretical rate of increase of a population over time. In this case, carrying capacity (*K*) is reached at a population size of 500.

When the carrying capacity of the environment is reached, the curve levels off, and in many cases, will begin to drop if impact on the environment has created conditions that affect the entire population.

In natural ecosystems, complex feedback mechanisms can slow population increase before carrying capacity is reached, buffering the species against population crashes. Sometimes these mechanisms are directly determined by the number of individuals already present—in which case they are **density dependent**. An example is competition for a limited resource. In other cases, the mechanism is due more to some external factor of the environment, such as a frost or flood, and is therefore **density independent**. In cropping systems, humans have devised different interventions and technologies that allow a crop population to increase in number or develop beyond the normal carrying capacity of that environment. Usually these interventions are associated with intensive habitat modification or inputs, and can include the control or elimination of other species (both plant and animal) and the use of fertilizers and irrigation.

COLONIZATION OF NEW AREAS

The study of population growth is concerned mainly with the potential of a population to increase in size over time. It is incomplete, however, without attention being paid to the potential of a population to increase in area—that is, to colonize new habitats. The process of colonizing new areas is especially important to the agroecologist, who is concerned with how organisms besides crop plants—both beneficial and not—invade a field and establish populations there.

Stages of Colonization

The manner in which a weed or animal pest colonizes a field is related to its life cycle. The initial invasion is accomplished as part of the species' reproduction and dispersal process; the establishment of the population is dependent on the requirements of its seeds and seedlings or eggs and juveniles; whether the population remains in the area over time is a function of how it grows, matures, and reproduces. Each of the stages in a species' life history offers specific opportunities for intervention on the part of the farmer—either to encourage the colonization of a desired species or to restrict that of an unwanted one. In the succeeding text, the colonization process is divided into four stages, based on the life stages of the colonizing organisms: dispersal, establishment, growth, and reproduction. For the sake of clarity, these stages are discussed mostly in terms of plants.

Dispersal

The dispersion of organisms is an important phenomenon in natural ecosystems, and has some interesting applications to agroecology. Dispersal allows progeny to "escape" the vicinity of the mother organism, lessening the potential for intraspecific interference from an overpopulation of ecologically very similar siblings. It also allows a species to reach new habitats.

In agriculture, dispersal is important because of the continual disturbance of fields. This disturbance—whether wholesale in the case of conventional tillage or piecemeal in the case of perennial/annual polycultures such as those in tropical home gardens—continually creates new habitats available for colonization. Although many organisms maintain resident populations in a field despite their disturbance and manipulation, many noncrop organisms—including beneficial and detrimental weeds, insects, other animals, diseases, and microorganisms—all arrive in the field through dispersal. In this context, ecological barriers to dispersal take on important significance. Barriers may be as simple as a weedy border around a field, or a border made up of a different crop plant. In general, a more in-depth understanding of the mechanisms of the dispersal of noncrop organisms, and how they are affected by barriers, can become important in the design and management of the agroecosystem.

How plants and animals get from one place to another during the dispersal stages of their life cycles depends on the mechanisms they each have for dispersing themselves. These mechanisms are quite variable, but most often involve wind, animals, water, or gravity. Research on the long-distance dispersal of plants and animals has given us much insight into what these mechanisms are and how they work.

One of the foundational works on dispersal is Carlquist's (1965) *Island Life*. He reviews the natural history of islands of the world, discussing how animals and plants reach islands that either have had a physical connection to an adjacent mainland colonizing source or that have never had such a link. Similarly, Van der Pijl's (1972) classic work on the *Principles of Dispersal in Higher Plants* goes into great detail on the incredible diversity of mechanisms that aid seeds in moving from one place to another. These mechanisms can move an organism only a short distance, or great distances across amazing barriers of ocean or desert. They can also get a weed seed to a new field.

An important aspect of dispersal mechanisms is how many of them seem to provide a selective advantage for "getting away" from the source of reproduction. This is illustrated by field studies done on the distribution of seedlings

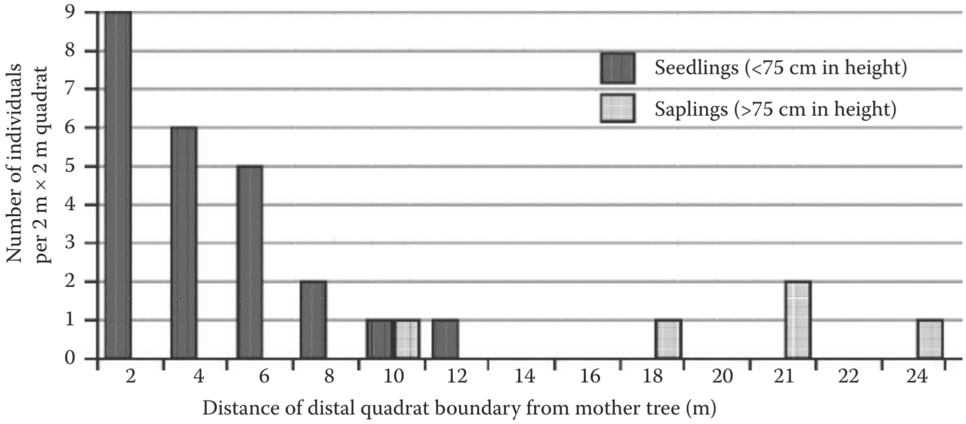


FIGURE 14.2 Distribution of seedlings and saplings of *Gavilan schizolobium* on a westerly strip transect away from the mother tree, Rincon de Osa, Costa Rica. (Data from Ewert, D. and Gliessman, S., Regeneration under a tree in the tropical wet forest, Osa Peninsula, Field problem report, Tropical Biology Course Book, Organization for Tropical Studies, 1972, pp. 306–310.)

around "mother trees" in the forests of Costa Rica. As shown in Figure 14.2, most of the newly germinated seeds and very young seedlings were concentrated close to the tree, but the older saplings (with potential for becoming adult, reproductive individuals) were found at a greater distance. Some intraspecific mechanism (e.g., competition, allelopathy) seems to eliminate seedlings from near the tree, and does not function at a greater distance. It is interesting to consider why there is advantage in establishing at some distance from the parent, especially in relation to resource availability, potential competition, and susceptibility to predation or disease.

Plant seeds are incorporated into the soil soon after they fall onto the soil surface, with the largest numbers found in the upper layers of soil. The population of each species of seed combines with others to form the **seed bank**. In cropping systems, the analysis of the weed seed bank can tell us a great deal about the prior history of management of a site and the potential problems that weeds may pose; this information can be important for designing appropriate management.

Since most crop organisms are dependent on humans for dispersal, their adaptations for dispersal have become irrelevant for the most part. Indeed, most crop species have lost the dispersal mechanisms they had as wild species. Their seeds have become too large or lost appendages that once facilitated dispersal, or their inflorescences no longer scatter seed. The loss of dispersal adaptations is seen particularly in annual crops, whose seed or grain is the portion of the crop that is harvested.

Establishment

There really is no bare area on the earth that propagules of plants and animals cannot get to. The incredible diversity of dispersal mechanisms mentioned earlier makes sure of that. But once a propagule arrives at a new location, it most certainly can have problems getting established. Restricting our attention to plants, a dispersing seed cannot determine where it will land, so it is the condition of the site that determines if the propagule can establish. Seeds fall into a very heterogeneous environment, and only a fraction of the sites encountered will meet the needs of the seed. Only those microsites that fulfill the needs of the seed—the "safe sites"—can support germination and establishment (see Chapter 12). The greater the number of a species' seeds that land in safe sites, the greater the chance of that species establishing a viable population in the new habitat.

The seedling stage is generally known to be the most sensitive period in the life cycle of the plant, and is therefore a critical stage in the establishment of a new population. This is true for crop species, weeds, and plants in natural ecosystems. A dormant seed can tolerate very difficult environmental conditions, but once it germinates, the newly emerged seedling must grow or die. Any one of the many extremes of environmental conditions the seedling might face can eliminate it, including drought, frost, herbivory, and cultivation. Human intervention can help ensure the successful and uniform establishment of crop seedlings, but the variability of the environmental complex still makes this the most sensitive phase for most crop plant populations. Early juvenile stages of most animals show the same sensitivity to environmental stress.

Growth and Maturation

Once a seedling has successfully established, its main "goal" is continued growth. The environment in which a seedling is located and its genetic potential, combine to determine just how quickly it will grow. In natural ecosystems, environmental factors such as drought or competition for light generally limit the growth process at some phase of plants' development. If these factors become too extreme, individuals in the population will die.

Plants generally grow fastest, as measured by net biomass accumulated over time, in the early stages of growth. Their rate of growth slows as maturation begins—more energy is allocated to maintenance and the production of reproductive organs than to the production of new plant tissue. Growth may also slow if the resources available for each member of the population become limiting.

The time period from germination to maturity can range from a matter of days for some annuals to several decades for some perennials. A species that matures quickly will colonize a new area differently than a species that matures slowly, and each will present different challenges for management.

Reproduction

Once the original colonizing individuals have reached maturity, they can reproduce. The extent to which they are successful determines whether the new population will remain in the area, how it will grow, and how it will affect populations of other species over the long run. Reproduction can take place asexually through vegetative reproduction or sexually through the production of seeds. Some species depend on the rapid early growth of the colonizing seed supply and strong early control of the environment to inhibit later colonizers, followed by abundant reproduction. Other species may allocate more resources to developing fewer but larger and more dominant individuals in the population, sacrificing the production of new seeds in the process but ensuring the success of the individuals that reach maturity.

Factors Affecting Success of Colonization

At any stage in the colonizing process described earlier, some event or condition can occur that may eliminate a certain percentage of the population. For an invading plant species, part of this elimination occurs when only a fraction of the seeds find an appropriate safe site for germination. Another large percentage of the population is lost shortly after germination, especially if weather conditions are not ideal. At any time during the development of the juvenile plants, more loss can occur. The final outcome is often a very reduced number of mature adults that begin to reproduce. The attrition can be even more pronounced in the presence of human management, which can in some cases threaten the survival of a whole population or species.

For some species, especially long-lived perennials, attrition of individuals at early stages of colonization may be so complete that environmental conditions may all come together in a sequence that permits survival of seedlings only one or a few years out of many. Several oak species (*Quercus* spp.) in California, for example, show clusters of equal-aged individuals in populations that are separated by 40–200 years, indicating that opportunities for establishment of new population clusters occur very infrequently.

LIFE HISTORY STRATEGIES

Each species that is successful in a particular environment has a unique set of adaptations that allow it to maintain a population in that environment over time. These adaptations can be thought of as comprising a "strategy" for organizing the life cycle to insure reproduction and the continuation of a viable population. Across species, life history strategies can be classified into general types.

Two important ways of classifying life history strategies are discussed in the succeeding text. They help provide an understanding of how the populations of specific organisms are able to grow in number or colonize new areas. They can also help explain the ecological role of each species in the agroecosystem, aiding greatly in the management of both crop and noncrop species.

r- and *K*-Selection Theory

Plants and animals have a limited amount of energy to "spend" on maintenance, growth, and reproduction. Allocation of more energy to reproduction reduces the amount available for growth, and vice versa. Ecologists have used observed differences in the allocation of energy to growth or to reproduction to develop a classification system that defines two basic types of life history strategies at opposite ends of a continuum: *r*-selection and *K*-selection. This system is known as *r*- and *K*-selection theory (MacArthur 1962; Pianka 1970, 1978).

At one extreme, we find species that live in harsh or variable environments in which mortality is mostly determined by limiting environmental factors rather than the density of the population, and where natural selection favors genotypes with a high intrinsic growth value. Members of the populations of these species allocate more energy to reproduction and less to growth and maintenance once they are established. Members of such species are called **r-strategists** because environmental factors keep the growth of such populations on the most rapidly increasing point of the logistic curve (see Figure 14.1). Their population sizes are limited more by physical factors than by biotic factors.

At the other extreme, we find species that live in stable or predictable environments where mortality is more a function of density-dependent factors such as interference with individuals of other populations and where natural selection favors genotypes with the ability to avoid or tolerate interference. These organisms allocate more resources to vegetative or nonreproductive activities. Members of such species are called **K-strategists** because they maintain the densest populations when the population size is close to the carrying capacity (K) of the environment. Their population sizes are limited more by biotic factors than by physical factors.

In general, *r*-strategists are opportunists; they have the ability to colonize temporary or disturbed habitats where interference is minimal, can rapidly take advantage of resources when they are available, are usually short lived, allocate a large proportion of their biomass to reproduction, and occupy open habitats or early successional systems. In the plant kingdom, *r*-strategists usually produce large numbers of easily dispersible seeds whereas *K*-strategists are usually long-lived tolerators with a prolonged vegetative or growth stage and occur in natural ecosystems in the later stages of succession.

The categories of *r*-selection and *K*-selection, however, are not clearly delineated. Most organisms are not purely *r*-selected or *K*-selected, but display a life history strategy making use of traits from both strategies. Some trees, for example, have very long life spans but produce extremely large numbers of small seeds. Therefore, *r*- and *K*-selection theory has to be applied with caution in the understanding of population dynamics and the evolution of adaptations.

For this reason, it has fallen out of favor among ecologists studying natural systems, replaced by models focusing on the age-specific mortality of species (Reznick et al. 2002).

Even so, the concepts of *r*- and *K*-selection can be very useful in understanding population dynamics in agroecosystems because most agroecosystems undergo such regular and extensive disturbance. Most weeds, pathogens, and pest insects in agroecosystems fit very well the model of *r*-selected species (Booth et al. 2010). They are opportunistic, easily dispersed, reproductively active organisms that can very rapidly find, occupy, and dominate habitats in the disturbed agricultural landscape. Interestingly, most of the crop plants that we depend upon today in the world for the production of most of our basic food materials can also be classified as *r*-selected species. The largest proportion of their biomass is in the reproductive portion of the plant. This is especially true of all of the annual grains we consume. It is thought that these crop plants were derived mainly from species that evolved in open, regularly disturbed habitats; their *r*-selected ability to grow rapidly is what made them good candidates for domestication.

One reason that *r*-selected weeds are a problem in cropping systems is that the crop plants themselves are also *r*-selected, and the open, disturbed conditions under which the crop plants thrive are the same as those under which the weeds grow best. Annual cropping systems, or perennial cropping systems with frequent disturbance, are in a sense selecting for the very problems farmers spend so much time, energy, and money trying to stop or eliminate. From this perspective, it can be seen that *K*-strategists might be able to play important roles in agroecosystems as crop species. Perennial crop systems place a premium on the health and development of the vegetative part of the plant, even in cases where it is the fruit that is harvested. Less disturbance is created in the process of farming, and fewer opportunities are created for weedy *r*-strategists.

SPECIAL TOPIC: DEVELOPING A PERENNIAL GRAIN CROP

The grain crops that form the cornerstone of the American diet—wheat, corn, and rice—can all be considered *r*-strategists. They are annuals that grow rapidly in the disturbed environment of a cultivated field and use a large portion of their energy producing reproductive structures. In the course of domestication, humans have if anything enhanced the *r*-selected nature of these plants, creating varieties of grains that are highly productive but dependent on extensive external inputs and human intervention.

Researchers at The Land Institute (TLI) are concerned about the erosion and degradation of the soil that goes along with the frequent tilling and application of pesticides and inorganic fertilizers necessary in annual grain production. They are also concerned about off-farm impacts of annual grain crops such as nitrogen leaching, carbon emissions, and climate change. They are working on interesting solutions to these problems: breeding perennial grain crops and developing perennial intercrop systems (Cox et al. 2010; Culman et al. 2010; Crews 2013; Van Tassel and DeHaan 2013).

Unfortunately, developing a perennial grain productive enough for agriculture is not easy. Perennial plant species that produce edible carbohydrate-rich seeds (as opposed to fruits) do exist in nature; the problem is that they are *K*-selected and devote a relatively small proportion of their energy to seed production. For example, the natural perennial cousins of our annual grain crops—wild prairie grasses—have large rhizomes in which the plant stores substantial food reserves. The rhizomes help the plant survive harsh winters and occasional droughts, and enable it to reproduce asexually as well. For these plants, reproduction by seed is not a high priority, energetically speaking. But researchers at TLI have found that these perennial grasses do have an advantage over annual grains that might be exploitable: the total biomass, or NPP, of the perennial grasses is substantially greater per individual plant than annual grains when grown under similar water and nutrient conditions. This appears to be due to a perennial's ability to capture more sunlight throughout the year.

TLI researchers are attempting to breed new grain crops that will maintain the rhizome and at the same time reallocate some of the extra photosynthate to seeds to make harvest worthwhile (Van Tassel et al. 2010). Although the biomass of the seeds would represent a smaller "slice" of the plant's biomass "pie" than is the case with annual grains, the fact that the pie is much larger means that the goal is biologically realistic. But understanding the genetics of seed production, biomass allocation, and ecological adaptations makes for a very complicated breeding challenge.

There would be many ecological benefits from growing such plants extensively. In particular, they would help prevent soil erosion, a critical problem for annual grain crops. The soil would not have to be tilled each season, and the plants' larger root systems would effectively hold soil in place. The larger root systems would also be more effective than those of annual grains in capturing nitrogen, reducing the need for fertilizer inputs each year and making it possible to meet the plants' needs for N entirely through biological fixation.

The researchers originally surveyed more than 4000 perennial species for their potential to produce a grain crop, and have focused their research on the most promising candidates for domestication. The main two lines being worked on at this time are "kernza" or intermediate wheatgrass (*Thinopyrum intermedium*) and several oilseed species in the sunflower family (*Silphium integrifolium*, *Helianthus maximiliani*, and *Helianthus rigidus*). Another avenue of research involves creating perennials through hybridization. TLI researchers are crossing annual wheat with several perennial cousins, including *T. intermedium*, and they are crossing annual sorghum with *Sorghum halepense* (Johnson grass).

There is also strong interest in polycultures at TLI, which can be designed to fix N, reduce the spread of insect and disease outbreaks, and use soil and light resources more efficiently (and thus reduce or eliminate weeds) (Figure 14.3).

Even if the breeding programs are successful, widespread use of the new crops would depend on changes in the ways farmers and consumers think. Consumers will need to be open about the possibility of cream of Kernza on the breakfast table, and grain farms will have to be redesigned to exploit the advantages of permanent cover.

Perennial grains, once they are developed, would likely be grown in relatively diverse agroecosystems very different from fields of monocropped annuals. These systems would more closely resemble natural prairies and provide many of the "environmental services" provided by prairies. Two huge examples are nitrogen retention (see Culman et al. 2013) and carbon sequestration. Loss of carbon and nitrogen are almost defining characteristics of the highly disturbed early successional ecosystem that we create to produce most of our food. Developing agroecosystems that function in a slightly later stage of succession (see Chapter 18) could dramatically improve carbon accumulation and the efficiency of soil resource use. It is not yet known how close a perennial agriculture can come to the original soil organic matter equilibrium of the prairie, but the reduced disturbance and greater belowground C inputs move the soil in the right direction.

In the foregoing paragraphs, *r*- and *K*-selection theory has been discussed in the context of crop plants and their herbivorous pests, but it also has relevance for livestock animals. As a general rule, what have proved most valuable to humans in livestock are *K*-selected traits, and this is reflected both in the animal species humans chose to domesticate and the traits selected for in the domestication process. The *K*-selected trait of large size was of obvious value to humans seeking both a food supply and animals that could do work and transport goods. In the case of cattle, goats, and sheep, the *K*-selected trait of milk production (a clear example of parental investment) was also valuable. Once species such as horses, oxen, cattle, sheep, goats, and hogs were domesticated, their *K*-selected characters became the basis for further human-directed selection in the "K" direction (e.g., large size and more milk production). This was not so much the case with avian livestock, such as chickens, where higher offspring numbers, more rapid growth rates, and greater mobility indicate some *r*-selected traits. However, even in poultry, human breeding has often introduced characteristics of *K*-selection, such as greatly increased body size. In nature, this might be considered to be a negative adaptive trait, but in an agroecosystem context, humans can step in to compensate for such disadvantages.

FIGURE 14.3 Experimental biculture of kernza and perennial alfalfa growing at TLI. TLI works closely with researchers from well over a dozen universities and institutions both in the United States and abroad to advance perennial agriculture. (Photo courtesy of Tim Crews.)

An interesting proposal is to combine the strengths and advantages of both strategies in a single crop population. The fast-growing, opportunistic, high reproductive effort of the *r*-strategist might be combined with the resistance, biomass accumulation, and stress tolerance of the *K*-strategist. An example of such an effort—the attempt to develop a perennial grain crop—is discussed in Developing a Perennial Grain Crop. In later chapters, when the ecosystem concepts of diversity and succession are presented, additional attention will be given to the use of *K*-strategists in agroecosystems.

Stress/Disturbance-Intensity Theory

As an alternative to the *r*- and *K*-selection theory, ecologists have developed a life history classification system for plants with three categories instead of two. It is based on the premise that there are two basic factors—stress and disturbance—that limit the amount of biomass a plant can produce in a given environment. Stress occurs through external conditions that limit production, such as shading, drought, nutrient deficiency, or low temperature. Disturbance occurs when there is partial or total disruption of plant biomass due to natural events such as grazing or fire or to human activities such as mowing or tillage. When habitats are described using both dimensions—as either high stress or low stress and either low disturbance or high disturbance—four types of habitats are defined. Each of these habitats is then associated with a particular life history strategy, as shown in Table 14.1. This scheme may have more direct application to agricultural environments than the *r*- and *K*-selection theory, and may be of particular use in weed management.

Since an environment characterized by both high stress and high disturbance cannot support much plant growth, there are three useful classifications in this system:

1. **Ruderals** (R), which are adapted to conditions of high disturbance and low stress;
2. **Stress tolerators** (R), which live in high-stress, low-disturbance environments;
3. **Competitors** (C), which live under conditions of low stress and low disturbance and have good competitive abilities.

Most annual cropping systems present conditions of high disturbance because of frequent cultivation and harvest, but have relatively low stress since conditions have been optimized through agricultural inputs and crop system design. Ruderals are highly favored under these conditions, where the characteristics of short life span, high seed production, and ability to colonize open environments have such advantage. Most plants that fall into the ruderal category—annual weeds, for example—can also be categorized as *r*-selected.

TABLE 14.1
Life History Strategies Based on Stress and Disturbance Levels in the Environment

	High Stress	Low Stress
High disturbance	Plant mortality	Ruderals (R)
Low disturbance	Stress tolerators (S)	Competitors (C)

Source: Adapted from Grime, J.P., *Am. Nat.*, 111, 1169, 1977.

Degraded agroecosystems, such as eroded hillsides in wet environments, or heavily cropped grain systems in dry-farmed areas that suffer periodic drought stress and wind erosion, favor the growth of stress tolerators. Noncrop species that are tolerant of these conditions may become the dominant feature of the landscape; examples are *Imperata* grasses in the wet tropics of Southeast Asia and cheatgrass (*Bromus tectorum*) in the Great Basin rangelands of the Western United States. Since stress tolerators have been selected to endure the environmental stress characteristic of highly degraded and altered environments, they can establish and maintain dominance even though the environment in which they occur is relatively unproductive.

Many natural ecosystems, as well as perennial cropping systems, support the competitor category of plants. These plants have developed characteristics that maximize the capture of resources under relatively undisturbed conditions, but are not tolerant of heavy biomass removal. Excessive disturbance through harvest would open the system up to the invasion of weedy ruderals, whereas increased intensity of stress, such as that which would accompany overextraction of soil nutrients or water, would open the system to invasion from stress-tolerating organisms. When a forest system made up primarily of competitor species is clear-cut and the soil ecosystem is left intact, recolonization by stress-tolerant early successional species is an initial problem, but tree species can usually reestablish and eventually recolonize the site and exclude them. But if fire periodically removes vegetative cover following tree harvest, the intensity of disturbance opens the system to invasion and dominance by shorter-lived and aggressive ruderals that greatly retard the recovery of the forest species.

Both *r*- and *K*-selection theory and stress/disturbance-intensity theory provide opportunities for combining our understanding of the environment with our understanding of the population dynamics of the organisms we are dealing with. By focusing this knowledge on both crop and noncrop species, we can plan our agricultural activities accordingly.

ECOLOGICAL NICHE

The concept of life history strategy helps us understand how a population maintains a place in an ecosystem over time. An additional conceptual framework is required for understanding what that place is and what the species' ecological specialization might be. This is the concept of **ecological niche**.

An organism's ecological niche is defined in terms of both its place and its function in the environment. Niche comprises the organism's physical location in the environment, its trophic role, its limits and tolerances for environmental conditions, and its relationship to other organisms. The concept of ecological niche establishes an important foundation for determining the potential impact that a population can have on an environment and the other organisms that are there. It can be of great value in managing the complex interactions between populations in an agroecosystem.

Conceptualizations of Niche

The niche concept was first introduced in the pioneering work of Grinnell (1924, 1928) and Elton (1927) as the place of an animal in the environment. By "place", they meant a species' maximum possible distribution, controlled only by its structural limits and instincts. Today, this aspect of niche is part of what is termed fundamental or **potential niche**. Potential niche is contrasted with **realized niche**, the actual area that a species is able to occupy, as determined by its interactions with other organisms in the environment (i.e., by the impacts of interference, positive and negative).

Both potential niche and realized niche are built on a conceptualization of niche that has two distinct facets. The "Grinnellian" focus is on the conditions of the habitat in which the organism occurs; the "Eltonian" focus is on what the organism does in that habitat—its ecological role. The latter facet can be understood as the organism's "profession," the way it "makes a living" in the habitat it lives in. An animal's profession, for example, can be flower feeder, leaf feeder, or insect feeder. A microorganism can be a decomposer or a parasite. Many levels of interaction are involved in defining this ecological specialization aspect of a species' niche.

An important contribution to the niche concept was made by Gause (1934), who developed a theory now known as Gause's law: two organisms cannot occupy the same ecological niche at the same time. If the niches of two organisms in the same habitat are too similar, and there are limited resources, one organism eventually excludes the other through "competitive exclusion." Competitive exclusion, however, is not always the cause of two populations with similar niches not occurring together. Other mechanisms may be at work.

The idea of the niche being an organism's profession is often not adequate. To develop a more complex way of understanding niche, ecologists have focused on defining the separate dimensions that make it up. A set of factor–response curves (discussed in Chapter 3) is determined for a particular organism. These are then layered over each other to form a matrix of factor responses. In a simple two-factor matrix, the area delineated by the overlapping regions of tolerance can be envisioned as the 2D area of resource space occupied by the organism. With the addition of more factor–response curves, this space takes on multidimensional form. This procedure is the basis for a conceptualization of niche as the "multidimensional hypervolume" that an organism can potentially occupy (Hutchinson 1957). By including biotic interactions in the factor matrix, the hypervolume formed by overlapping factor–response curves comes close to defining the actual niche that an organism occupies.

Niche Amplitude

When the niche is thought of as a multidimensional space, it becomes apparent that the size and shape of this space is different for each species. A measurement of one or more of its dimensions is termed **niche breadth** or **niche amplitude** (Levins 1968; Colwell and Futuyma 1971; Devictor et al. 2010), or niche width (Odum and Barrett 2005). Organisms with a narrow niche and very specialized habitat adaptations and activities are called specialists. Those that have a broader niche are referred to as generalists. Generalists are more adaptable than specialists, can adjust more readily to change in the environment, and use a range of resources. Specialists are much more specific in their distribution and activities, but have the advantage of being able to make better use of an abundant resource when it is available. In some cases, since a generalist is not that thorough in its use of resources in a habitat, it leaves niche space within its niche for specialists. In other words, there can be several specialist niches inside of a generalist niche.

Ecological Specialization and Niche Diversity

Natural ecosystems are often characterized by a high degree of species diversity. In such systems, many different species occupy what appear at first glance to be similar ecological niches. If we accept Gause's law—that two species cannot occupy the same niche at the same time without one excluding the other—then we must conclude that the niches of the similar organisms are in fact distinct in some way, or that some mechanism must be allowing coexistence to occur. Competitive exclusion appears to be a relatively uncommon phenomenon.

In cropping systems as well, ecologically similar organisms occupy simultaneously what appears to be the same niche. In fact, farmers have learned from accumulated experience and constant observation of their fields that there can often be advantages to managing a mixture of crop and noncrop organisms in a cropping system even when many of the constituents of the mixture have similar requirements. Competitive exclusion rarely occurs; therefore there must be some level of coexistence or avoidance of competition.

This coexistence of outwardly similar organisms in both natural ecosystems and agroecosystems is made possible by some kind of ecological divergence between the species involved. This divergence is referred to as **niche diversity** or diversification of the niche. Some examples include the following:

- Plants with different rooting depths. Variable crop architecture belowground permits different species to avoid direct interference for nutrients or water while occupying very similar components of the niche aboveground (Figure 14.4).

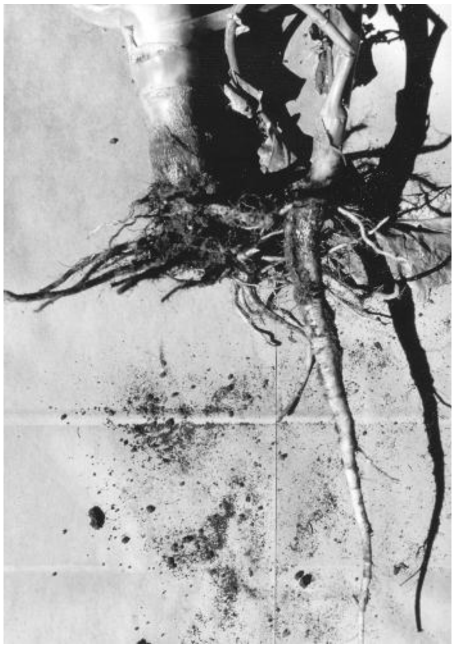


FIGURE 14.4 Different root architectures permitting niche overlap. The shallow root system of the transplanted broccoli (left) and the deeper tap root system of the direct-seeded wild mustard (right) take resources from different parts of the soil profile, allowing the plants to occupy the same habitat without negative interference.

- Plants with different photosynthetic pathways. When one crop uses the C4 pathway for photosynthesis and another uses C3, the first may thrive in full sunlight while the other tolerates the reduced-light environment created by the shade of the emergent species. The traditional corn/bean intercrop common in Mesoamerica is a well-known example.
- Insects with different prey preference. Two similar parasitic insects may co-occur in a cropping system, but they parasitize different hosts. Host–parasite specificity may be one way of diversifying the niche so as to allow for coexistence of adult insects elsewhere in the cropping system.
- Birds with different hunting or nesting behaviors. Several predatory birds may all feed on similar prey in an agroecosystem, but since they have different nesting habits and sites, or feed at different times of day, they can co-occur in the cropping system and help control pest organisms. Owls and hawks are a good example.
- Plants with different nutritional needs. Mixed populations of weeds can co-occur in the same habitat due in part to the differential nutritional needs that may have evolved over time in each species as a result of the selective advantage of avoiding competitive exclusion. A crop population may suffer less negative interference from a mixed population of weeds than from a population of a single dominant weed with niche characteristics similar to that of the crop.

It appears that natural selection acts to create niche differentiation by separating some portion of the niche of one population from that of another. Ecological specialization and niche differentiation allow partial overlap of niches to occur without exclusion.

The concept of niche, combined with knowledge of the niches of crop and noncrop species, can provide an important tool for agroecosystem management. A farmer can take advantage of niche diversity to exclude a species that is a detriment to the agroecosystem; similarly, he or she can use niche differentiation to allow a combination of species that is of benefit to the system (Figure 14.4).

APPLICATIONS OF NICHE THEORY TO AGRICULTURE

Farmers are constantly managing aspects of the ecological niches of the organisms that occupy the farming system, even though most never refer directly to the concept. Once it is understood as a useful tool of ecosystem management, however, it can be applied in a variety of ways, from ensuring maximum yield through an understanding of a main crop's niche to determining whether a noncrop species is likely to cause negative interference with the crop. Some specific examples follow.

Promoting or Inhibiting Establishment of Weedy Species

Any part of the soil surface not occupied by the crop population is subject to invasion by weedy noncrop species. Specialized for being successful in what can be termed productive environments (i.e., farm fields), weeds occupy a niche that favors *r*-selected or ruderal populations of annual herbs. In cropping systems with less disturbance, where total plant biomass undergoes less disruption or removal, competitive (but still *r*-selected) biennial or perennial weeds become common. In a sense, weediness is a relatively specialized niche characteristic.

The habitat facet of the niche concept can be used to help guide how the environmental conditions of a farm field are manipulated in order to promote or inhibit the establishment of weedy species. The type of modification will depend on the niche specificity of each species in relation to the crop. With knowledge of the niche characteristics of a weed species, we can begin by controlling the conditions of the "safe sites" to the disadvantage of the weed. Additionally, we can look for some critical or susceptible phase in the life cycle of the weed population in which a particular management practice could eliminate or reduce the population. It may also be possible to promote the growth of a weed population that will inhibit other weeds. For example, wild mustard (*Brassica* spp.) has little negative effect on crop plants but has the ability to displace, through interference, other weeds that may have a negative influence on the crop. A more detailed discussion of this phenomenon is provided in the case study *Broccoli and Lettuce Intercrop.*

It is important to remember that most weeds are colonizers and invaders and that crop fields that are disturbed annually are just the type of habitats they have been selected for. The challenge is to find a way to incorporate these ecological concepts into a management plan where planned activities, such as cultivation, are timed or controlled so that the weedy niche may be occupied by more desirable species.

Biological Control of Insect Pests

Classical **biological control** is an excellent example of the use of the niche concept. A beneficial organism is introduced into an agroecosystem for the purpose of having it occupy an empty niche. Most commonly, a predatory or parasitic species is brought into a crop system from which it was absent in order to put negative pressure on the population of a particular prey or host that has been able to reach pest or disease levels due to the absence of the beneficial organism.

It is hoped that once the beneficial organism is introduced into the cropping system it will be able to complete its entire life cycle and reproduce in large enough numbers to become a permanent resident of the agroecosystem. But often the conditions of the niche into which the beneficial species is introduced may not meet its requirements for long-term survival and reproduction, so reintroductions become necessary. This can be especially true in a constantly changing agricultural environment with high disturbance and regular alteration of the characteristics of the niche needed to maintain permanent populations of both the pest and the beneficial. Mitigating this problem is one of the advantages of maintaining high diversity at the landscape level (see Chapter 23).

Another potential use of the niche in biological control is the introduction of another organism that has a niche very similar to that of the pest, but which has a less negative impact on the crop. The introduced herbivore, for example, may feed on a part of the plant that is not of economic significance. If the introduced herbivore has a niche similar enough to the target pest, it might be able to displace it. There might be similar applications for weeds.

Design of Intercropping Systems

When two or more different crop populations are planted together to form an intercropped agroecosystem, and the resulting yields of the combined populations are greater than those of the crops planted separately, it is very likely that the yield increases are a result of complementarity of the niche characteristics of the member populations. For intercropping

CASE STUDY: BROCCOLI AND LETTUCE INTERCROP

An intercrop is successful when the potential competitive interferences between its component crop species are minimized. This is accomplished by mixing plants with complementary patterns of resource use or complementary life history strategies.

Two crops that have been shown to combine well in an intercrop are broccoli and lettuce. Studies at the University of California, Santa Cruz farm facility (Aoki et al. 1989) have demonstrated that a mixture of these crops will produce a higher yield than a monoculture of lettuce and a monoculture of broccoli grown on the same area of land. (This result, called overyielding, is explained in greater detail in Chapter 17.)

In the study, broccoli and lettuce were planted together at three different densities and the yields from each compared to yields from monocrops of each crop. The lowest intercrop density was a substitution intercrop, in which the overall planting density was similar to that of a standard monocrop. The highest density intercrop was an addition intercrop, in which broccoli plants were added between lettuce plants planted at a standard density. The monocrops were planted at standard commercial densities, which are designed to avoid intraspecific competition.

All three densities of intercrop produced higher total yields than the monocultures. The yield advantages ranged from a 10% greater yield to a 36% greater yield (for the substitution intercrop). The addition intercrop produced lettuce heads of a slightly lower mean weight than the monoculture lettuce, but the combined production still exceeded the total that was produced by a combination of monocrops on the same amount of land. The intercrops also retained more soil moisture than the monocrops, indicating that the physical arrangement of the two species in the field helps to conserve this resource.

These results indicate that interspecific competitive interference did not negatively impact the plants in the intercrops, even when their density was approximately twice that of either of the monocrops. For this avoidance of competition to have occurred, the broccoli and lettuce must each have been able to utilize resources that were not accessible to the other species.

An examination of the two species' life histories and niches illuminates the complementarity of their resource use patterns and suggests mechanisms for the observed overyielding. Lettuce matures rapidly, completing nearly all of its growth within 45 days of being transplanted into the field. It also has a relatively shallow root system. Broccoli matures much more slowly and its roots penetrate much deeper into the soil. Therefore, when the two are planted nearly simultaneously, lettuce receives all the resources it needs to complete its growth well before the broccoli grows very large; then after the lettuce is harvested, the broccoli can take full advantage of the available resources as it grows to maturity.

systems to be successful, each species must have a somewhat different niche. Therefore, full knowledge of the niche characteristics of each species is essential. In some intercrop cases, each species occupies a completely unrelated or otherwise unoccupied niche in the system, leading to niche complementarity. In most cases, however, the niches of the member species overlap, but interference at the interspecific level is less intense than interference at the intraspecific level.

Successful management of crop mixtures, then, depends on knowing each member's population dynamics, as well as its specific niche characteristics. Such knowledge then forms the basis for management of the intercrop as a community of populations, a level of agroecological management on which we will focus in Chapter 16.

POPULATION ECOLOGY: A CROP PERSPECTIVE

In this chapter, the focus has been on populations in the context of their environment. Important similarities and differences between populations of crop, noncrop, and natural species have been discussed. Some of these characteristics, along with additional relevant ones, are summarized in Table 14.2.

Knowledge of these characteristics becomes especially important when we are trying to find ecologically based management strategies for weedy noncrop species. Weedy species have maintained some of the characteristics of wild, natural ecosystem populations (e.g., dispersability, strong intra- and interspecific interference ability, dormancy), but through a range of adaptations (e.g., high seed viability, even-aged population structure, high reproduction allocation, narrower genetic diversity) have adapted to the conditions of disturbance and alteration of the environment common in agroecosystems, especially those systems that depend on annual crops. The ability of weeds to thrive in agroecosystems poses strong challenges for the agroecosystem manager.

Each species has certain strategies for ensuring that individuals of that species successfully complete their life cycles, thus enabling populations of that species to maintain a presence in a certain habitat over time. Principles of population ecology, applied agroecologically, help the farmer decide where and how to take advantage of each species' particular life history strategy to either promote or limit the population growth of the species, depending on its role in the agroecosystem. Agroecosystem managers and researchers need to build on population ecology concepts such as safe site, *r*- and *K*-strategies, and ecological niche to further develop techniques and principles for effective and sustainable management of crop and noncrop organisms.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What might permit coexistence of two very similar crop species that would otherwise be thought to competitively exclude each other if allowed to grow in the same resource space?
2. How might the concept of niche diversity be used to design an alternative management strategy for a particular herbivorous pest in a cropping system?
3. Identify the most sensitive steps in the life cycle of a weed species, and describe how this knowledge might be of value in managing populations of the weed in a sustainable fashion.
4. What aspect of plant demographics have agronomists been able to use successfully in their quest for improved crop yields, but which has sacrificed overall agroecosystem sustainability? What changes

TABLE 14.2
Population Characteristics of Crop, Noncrop, and Related Natural Species Populations

	Crop Population	Noncrop Population	Natural Population
Dispersal	Little or none	Very important	Important
In-migration	Propagule input decoupled from output	Immigration very important	Most propagules from local population
Seed viability	High	High	Variable
Seed rain	Controlled	Relatively homogeneous	Patchy
Soil environment	Homogeneous	Homogeneous	Heterogeneous
Seed dormancy	None; seed not part of seed bank	Variable; seed bank present	Common; seed bank present
Age relationships	Often even aged, synchronous	Mostly even aged, synchronous	Age variable, mostly asynchronous
Intraspecific interference	Reduced	Can be intense	Can be intense
Seed density	Low and controlled	Usually quite high	Variable
Density-dependent mortality	Little or none	Significant	Significant
Interspecific interference	Reduced	Very important	Important
Reproductive allocation	Very high	Very high	Low
Genetic diversity	Usually very uniform	Relatively uniform	Usually diverse
Life history strategies	Modified *r*-strategists	*r*-, C-, and R-strategists	*K*- and S-strategists

Source: Adapted from Weiner, J., Plant population ecology in agriculture, in: Carroll, C.R., Vandermeer, J.H., and Rossett, P.M. (eds.), *Agroecology*, McGraw Hill, New York, 1990, pp. 235–262.

would you make in the research agenda of agronomists in order to correct this problem?

5. What is your definition of a "good" weed?
6. Tropical environments seem to have more specialists, whereas temperate environments have more generalists. Where do agroecosystems fall in this spectrum?

INTERNET RESOURCES

The Land Institute
www.landinstitute.org
TLI is leading the effort to develop a perennial grain crop.

Plant Population Biology and Ecology Focus in the Department of Biology at Stanford University
biology.stanford.edu/about-us
A place to do research on broad aspects of plant population ecology, covering a range of pure and applied areas.

The Plant Population Biology Working Group of the Ecological Society of Germany, Austria, and Switzerland
www.gfoe.org/en/gfoe-specialist-groups/plant-population-biology.html
A forum for international exchange in plant population biology research.

RECOMMENDED READING

Booth, B. D., S. D. Murphy, and C. J. Swanton. 2010. *Invasive Plant Ecology in Natural and Agricultural Systems*. CABI: Oxfordshire, U.K.
The application of ecology and population biology to the management of invasive plant species.

Grime, J. R. 2002. *Plant Strategies, Vegetative Processes, and Ecosystem Properties*, 2nd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
A review of the relevance of the plant strategy concept in ecological and evolutionary theory.

Radosevich, S. R., J. S. Holt, and C. Ghersa. 2007. *Ecology of Weeds and Invasive Plants: Relationship to Agriculture and Natural Resource Management*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
A thorough review of how ecological knowledge of weeds and weed populations forms an essential basis for successful weed management in agricultural and natural systems.

Silvertown, J. W. and D. Charlesworth. 2001. *Introduction to Plant Population Ecology*, 4th edn. Blackwell Science: Vermont, U.K.
A good introduction to the field of plant population ecology, with many references to studies of agricultural populations.

Van der Pijl, L. 1972. *Principles of Dispersal in Higher Plants*, 2nd edn. Springer-Verlag: Berlin, Germany.
A review of the ecology of dispersal mechanisms in plants and their role in determining the success of different plant species in the environment.

15 Genetic Resources in Agroecosystems

Agriculture came about as early human cultures intensified their use and care of particular plants and animals that they found to be of value. During this process, humans inadvertently selected for specific traits and qualities in these useful organisms, altering their genetic makeup over time. Their ability to produce edible or useful biomass was enhanced, but their ability to survive without human intervention was reduced. Humans came to depend on these domesticated species for food, feed, and fiber, and most of them became dependent on us. This interdependence between humans and domesticated species is the essence of agriculture, and it was made possible by the indirect manipulation of organisms' genomes.

Throughout most of human history, humans manipulated the genetic makeup of crops and livestock without explicit knowledge of genetics. Farmers simply made the choice to plant seed or breed animals from the individuals or populations that demonstrated the most desirable characteristics, and this was enough to direct the evolution of domesticated species. Gradually, plant and animal breeding developed into a science as we learned more about the genetic basis of selection and began to direct it more specifically to our advantage. Today, the fields of biotechnology and genetic engineering are rapidly expanding the power that humans have over the genomes of domesticated species, making it possible to incorporate traits and characteristics into plants and animals in ways and at rates never before possible.

From the viewpoint of sustainability, however, the directions of crop and livestock breeding efforts of the past several decades—and the directions proposed for the future—are cause for deep concern. The genetic base of agriculture has narrowed to a dangerous point as human societies have become increasingly dependent on a few species of food-producing organisms and on a smaller number of the genes and genetic combinations found in those species. Crop plants have lost much of the genetic basis of their pest and disease resistance and their ability to tolerate adverse environmental conditions, leading to crop failures and increased dependence on human-derived inputs and technologies for the maintenance of optimum growth conditions. In addition, genetic resources beyond the crops themselves—wild crop relatives, weedy derivatives, and traditional cultivated varieties, genetic lines, and breeding stocks—have been greatly reduced.

The relationship between genetics and agriculture is a vast topic. This chapter explores a small part of it, focusing on the foundations needed for understanding the role of genetic diversity in moving toward sustainability in agriculture. We examine genetic change in nature and how it results in genetic diversity, outline the processes humans use to direct and manipulate genetic change in domesticated species (with a focus on crop plants), look at the ways in which agriculture is systematically reducing agrobiodiversity, and discuss how agrobiodiversity can be preserved through appropriate management of genetic resources.

GENETIC CHANGE IN NATURE AND THE PRODUCTION OF GENETIC DIVERSITY

From the perspective of geologic time, the earth's flora and fauna are constantly changing. The physical and behavioral characteristics of species change, new species appear, and other species go extinct. This change, called evolution, is made possible by the manner in which traits are passed from parent to offspring and are driven by changes in environmental conditions. As ice ages come and go, continents move, and mountains emerge and erode, living things respond. Through natural selection, the changing and varied environment acts on species' genomes, causing them to change—imperceptibly from generation to generation, but often dramatically when the changes accumulate over thousands and millions of years.

Natural selection has created the genetic diversity found in nature, the raw material that humans have worked with in domesticating plants and animals and creating agroecosystems. It is therefore important to understand how natural selection works and how it applies to human-directed genetic change and the maintenance of our agricultural genetic resources.

ADAPTATION

The concept of **adaptation** is a basis for understanding natural selection because it relates the environment to a species' traits. The term refers both to a process and a characteristic resulting from that process. In static terms, an adaptation is any aspect of an organism or its parts that is of value in allowing the organism to withstand conditions of the environment and reproduce. An adaptation may

- Enable an organism to better use resources;
- Provide protection from environmental stresses and pressures;
- Modify local environments to the benefit of the organism;
- Facilitate reproduction.

FIGURE 15.1 Diversity of beans for sale in Oaxaca City market, Mexico. Traditional varieties reflect local ecological and cultural diversity.

FIGURE 15.2 Squash fruit variability from a farmer's field in Tabasco, Mexico. Seeds from one fruit were used to plant the field.

Any organism existing in nature must have a great many adaptations in order for it to survive; in theory, nearly all an organism's behaviors and physical characteristics are adaptations. Another way of saying this is that at any point in time a naturally existing organism as a whole is always *adapted* to its environment.

The adaptations possessed by a particular species, however, do not necessarily remain the same over long periods of time, because the environment is always changing and organisms are continuously adapting. The process by which adaptations change over time is also called adaptation, and is understood in terms of natural selection.

Variation and Natural Selection

Individual members of sexually reproducing species are not identical to each other. The variation that exists among humans is mirrored in other species, even though we may not always be able to discern it. This natural variability exists both at the level of the **genotype**—the genetic information carried by an individual—and at the level of the **phenotype**—the physical and behavioral expression of the genotype.

An examination of a number of individuals of any population quickly demonstrates the existence of phenotypic variability (Figure 15.2). Any characteristic, from number of leaves on a plant to the length of the tail of an animal, shows a range of variability. An average value or mode for each characteristic occurs, and if variation in each trait were graphed as a frequency distribution, it would tend to follow a normal curve of probability (a bell-shaped curve). Some populations show a very narrow range of variation, while others show much more. Although phenotypic variation does not correlate directly with genotypic variation, it usually has a significant genotypic basis.

The genetic variability within a species is due mainly to the nature of DNA replication: DNA does not always replicate itself perfectly; errors of different types, called mutations, always occur at some frequency. Since DNA replication is a prerequisite to reproduction, new individuals are constantly coming into existence with mutations. Although some mutations are fatal, some detrimental, some neutral, and only a few advantageous, all mutations represent genetic difference and thus genetic variability. Most mutations are simply single changes in the nucleotide sequence of DNA molecules; by themselves they may have no significant effect, but added together over time they can result in fundamental changes, such as bigger fruit, resistance to frost, or the addition of tendrils for climbing.

Variability is also produced by sexual reproduction. When two individuals reproduce sexually, the genes of each are distributed differently into different gametes (sex cells), and the genetic material carried in the gametes is mixed in novel ways when the gametes combine during fertilization. Variation is also introduced during meiosis (the formation of gametes) when chromosomes are deleted or translocated, or when homologous chromosomes fail to separate at the first meiotic division.

This latter kind of "error" creates gametes that have two copies of each chromosome (diploid) instead of the usual one (haploid). If one of these diploid gametes fuses with a normal haploid gamete a zygote with three times the haploid number of chromosomes can result, and when one fuses with another unreduced diploid gamete a zygote with four times the haploid number can be formed. Such increases in the number of chromosomes represent another source of genetic variety, particularly important in plants. Plants with more than the diploid number of chromosomes, called **polyploid**, typically have different characteristics than their diploid forebears, and occur relatively commonly in nature.

Because of natural genetic variation, some individuals of a population will have traits not possessed by others, or will express a certain trait to a greater or lesser degree than others. These traits may give the individuals who possess them certain advantages in living. These individuals may grow more rapidly, survive in greater numbers, or have some reproductive advantage. Due to such factors, they may leave more offspring than other individuals, thus increasing the representation of their genetic material in the population as a whole. It is through such a process of differential reproductive success that a species undergoes genetic change over time.

The direction and manner of this change is determined by **natural selection**—the process by which environmental conditions determine which traits confer an advantage and therefore increase in frequency in the population. If the environment in which a population lived was totally optimal and never changed, genetic change would occur, but there would be no natural selection to direct it. However, since environmental conditions are always changing and never optimal for very long, natural selection is always occurring at some level. In addition to long-term changes in factors such as climate, natural selection is driven by such environmental changes as population growth of other species, the appearance of new species through migration, the evolution of predators and herbivores, and changes in microhabitats due to erosion, sedimentation, succession, and other processes.

Natural selection acts on populations, not whole species. If a population of a species becomes reproductively isolated from the rest of the species—that is, if physical barriers prevent its members from interbreeding with members of other populations—that population can undergo genetic change in a unique way. Because the environment is never homogenous over space and time, the isolated population will be subjected to somewhat different selective pressures than other populations of the species. The tendency, therefore, is for different populations to evolve somewhat differently if they are isolated genetically. Biogeographically, the species becomes a mosaic of populations, each of which has unique genetically based physiological and morphological characteristics. Each distinct population is referred to as an **ecotype**. Through evolutionary time, an ecotype can become distinct enough from other ecotypes of the species that it becomes a distinct species in its own right.

The evolutionary processes that cause the development of ecotypes and drive speciation are constantly diversifying the genetic basis of earth's biota. Although species go extinct, new species are always evolving, and the genomes of many existing species are becoming more varied over time. One of our great fears today, however, is that human activity, including agriculture, is fundamentally altering this process. Our destruction, alteration, and simplification of natural habitats has greatly increased rates of extinction and eliminated ecotypes, thus eroding natural genetic diversity and the potential for its renewal (Wilson 2002).

DIRECTED SELECTION AND DOMESTICATION

Genetic change in an agricultural context differs greatly from genetic change in naturally occurring populations. Humans construct and manipulate the environments in which agricultural species live, grow, and reproduce, thereby creating an entirely different set of selective pressures for them. Humans determine which traits are most desirable, and select for these traits in the way they cultivate and propagate the species. Because humans "direct" genetic change in agricultural populations, the process by which this genetic change occurs is called **directed selection**.

Today's agricultural species—both plants and animals—were domesticated by gradually shifting their context from natural systems dominated by natural selection to human-controlled systems in which directed selection operated. Some 10,000–12,000 years ago, humans did not create strictly controlled agricultural environments like farmers do today. In the case of plants, they cared for certain naturally occurring species by modifying their habitats, facilitating their reproduction, controlling their competitors, and occasionally moving them to more convenient places. In the case of animals, they followed herds of herbivores more closely, began to protect them from predators, and often provided them with feed. Natural selection still had an important role in such systems, because the human intervention was not sufficient to overcome the fact that the useful species still had to survive the rigors of the natural environment.

The process of **domestication** began as humans became better able to alter and control the environment in which useful plants and animals occurred, and to manage the reproduction of these species to such an extent that they began to unintentionally select for specific useful traits. As domestication progressed, selection became more intentional, with early agriculturalists choosing seed from the plants with higher and more predictable yields, and early pastoralists choosing, for example, to breed the goats that produced the most milk. Throughout the process of domestication, the screening effect of the natural environment became less important and directed selection took on a greater role. Eventually, crop and livestock species reached a point where their genetic makeup had been altered to such an extent that they could no longer survive outside of an agroecosystem.

A domesticated species is dependent on human intervention, and the human species is now dependent on domesticated plants and animals. In ecological terms, this interdependency can be considered an obligate mutualism. It has come about through a process of mutual change: human cultures have both caused changes in the genetic makeup of certain useful species and been transformed themselves as a result of those changes.

TRAITS SELECTED FOR IN CROP PLANTS AND LIVESTOCK ANIMALS

Today's crop plants and stock animals have been subjected to many selection pressures over thousands of years. In plants, humans have selected for optimized yield, appealing taste and appearance, and ease of harvest, and more recently for fast response to fertilizer and water application, ease of processing, resistance to shipping damage, longer shelf life, and genetic uniformity. In animals, we have selected for docility, more easily manageable reproductive cycles, and

SPECIAL TOPIC: ORIGINS OF AGRICULTURE

Between 10,000 and 4,000 years ago, agriculture arose independently in several different areas of the world, each with its own geography, climate, and indigenous flora and fauna. Six widely recognized centers of early agricultural development are shown on the map in Figure 15.3. The center in China is sometimes divided into two subcenters, the Yangtze River Valley in the south and the Yellow River Valley in the north. The Southeast Asia and South Pacific "center" is diffuse, spreading over a somewhat larger area than indicated. Some researchers add other centers to this list: one in the Ohio and Mississippi River Valleys of North America, and one on the Indian subcontinent.

What these regions had in common is high natural biological diversity, variable topography and climate, and human cultures ready to exploit the potential benefits of more intensive management of edible plant species. Since the local flora in each center was made up of a distinct assemblage of plant families and genera, the kinds of plants domesticated in each region varied greatly.

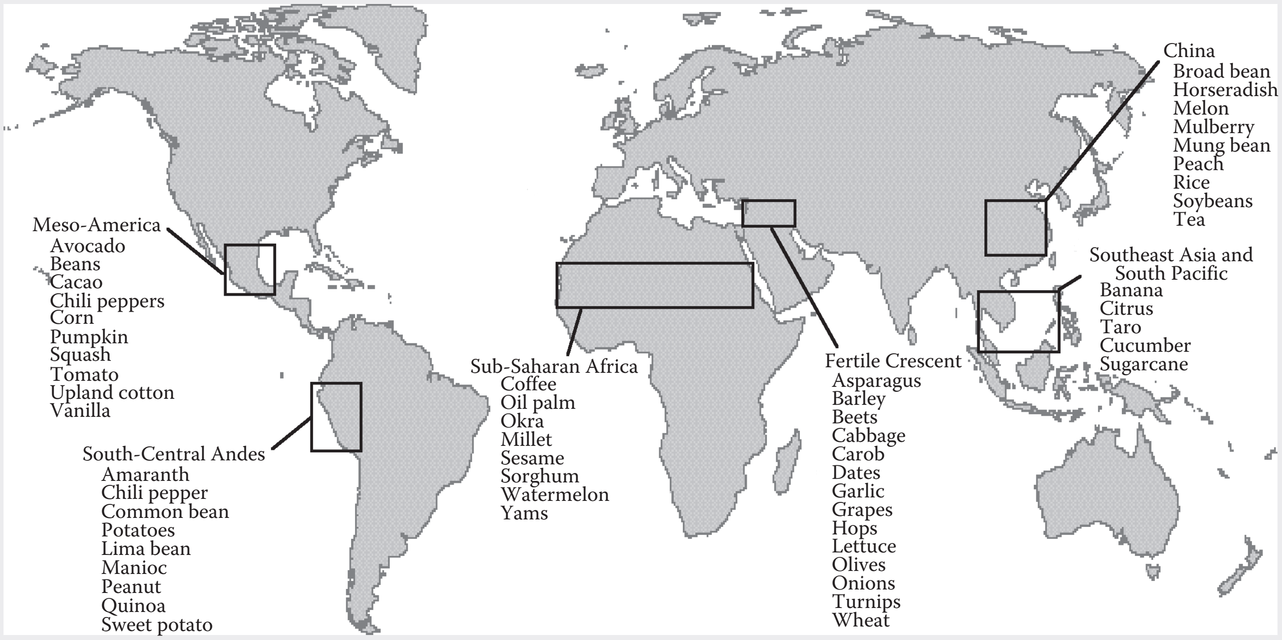


FIGURE 15.3 Centers of early agriculture and plant domestication.

rapid growth and maximal production of desired parts and products—better wool, larger and more numerous eggs, more liters of milk, or more muscle tissue.

This selection process has, among other things, greatly altered the physiologies and morphologies of the domesticated species. In domesticated plants, carbon partitioning operates very differently than carbon partitioning in wild species. Crop plants store a much greater proportion of their biomass in their edible or harvestable parts than do the natural species from which they were derived. As a consequence, less energy is partitioned for use in traits or behaviors that confer **environmental resistance**—the ability to withstand stresses, threats, or limiting factors in the environment. In addition, many traits that once conferred environmental resistance have been lost from the genotype altogether. An analogous change has occurred in domesticated animal species. Because of these fundamental changes in the genetic basis of their physiology and morphology, many domesticated species and varieties require completely artificial and optimum conditions. For plants, this means ideal soil moisture, nutrient availability, temperature, and sunlight, as well as the absence of pests, in order to perform well and express the high-yield traits for which they were selected. For animals, it often means controlled climatic conditions, antibiotics, and artificial insemination (the turkey breed that accounts for nearly all turkey production in the United States cannot reproduce without human assistance because body structure and extra meat limit animal movement).

Directed selection in agriculture has therefore led us into a difficult situation. Our major crop varieties require external inputs of inorganic fertilizers, pesticides, herbicides, and irrigation water to perform as designed, and many of our domesticated animals require hormones and antibiotics, highly controlled conditions, and highly processed feed. But such external inputs are the major cause of agriculture's negative effect on the environment and on human health, and the degradation of the soil resource. If steps are taken to restrict the use of many of the practices and materials that humans have developed to protect and promote the growth of our crops and stock animals, yields and production can suffer.

This problem is particularly troubling with regard to pesticide use on crop plants. Plants' natural abilities to withstand herbivory—through morphological adaptations, mutualistic interactions, the production of obnoxious compounds, and other methods—have been largely lost at the expense of the development of other traits. Agroecosystems become dependent on pesticide use to prevent loss of the crop through herbivory, but pesticide use becomes a selective pressure on the herbivore populations, resulting in their evolution toward pesticide resistance and requiring the application of more pesticide or the continual development of new pesticide types.

A fundamental problem is that traits of environmental resistance have been lost not just from the genetic makeup of individual species and varieties, but from the structure and organization of the entire agroecosystem (see Chapter 17). Attempts to reincorporate environmental resistance into domesticated species' genomes, therefore, must work at the agroecosystem level, not just at the level of individual species, breeds, and varieties.

METHODS OF DIRECTED SELECTION IN PLANTS

Farmers and crop breeders change the genetic makeup of crop species and varieties in a number of ways, ranging from indirect means that resemble natural selection to high-technology means that work directly on the plant genome. Since these latter methods are not selection per se and because they raise special concerns from the standpoint of sustainability they are discussed on their own in the next section of this chapter.

The methods of directed selection that can be used on a particular species depend on its manner of reproduction. Some plant species (more annuals than perennials) reproduce primarily by **self-pollination**—the female parts of a plant's flowers are fertilized by pollen from the same plant, and often from the same flower. Other plant species (more perennials than annuals) reproduce mainly by **cross-pollination**. Such plants typically have some kind of morphological, chemical, or behavioral adaptation to assure that an individual's female flower parts are fertilized only by pollen from other plants.

Mass Selection

Until relatively recently, the only method of directed selection was to collect seed from those individuals in a population that showed one or more desirable traits, such as high-yielding ability or disease resistance, and to use that seed for planting the next crop. This method, called **mass selection**, can produce a gradual shift in the relative frequency of a trait or traits in the population (Figure 15.4). Through mass selection methods, farmers all over the world have developed varieties called **landraces**. Landraces are adapted to local conditions, and although a landrace as a whole is genetically distinct, its members are genetically diverse (Figure 15.5).

Mass selection works similarly for both self-pollinated and cross-pollinated plants. When cross-pollinated plants are involved, mass selection allows **open pollination** to occur. Also known as outcrossing, this natural mixing of pollen among the members of a population results in high genotypic variability. With self-pollinated plants, mass selection also allows the maintenance of relatively high variability.

This older, more traditional method of directed selection involves the whole organism and field-based selection; despite being a relatively slow process and more variable in its results, it has the advantage of being more like natural selection in natural ecosystems. Traits involving adaptation to local conditions are retained along with the more directly desirable aspects of yield or performance, and genotypic variability is maintained as well. Such characteristics are very important especially for small farm systems with limited resources and more variability in production conditions. All other methods of directed selection tend to increase genetic uniformity, and most greatly reduce or eliminate the role of local environmental conditions in the selection process.

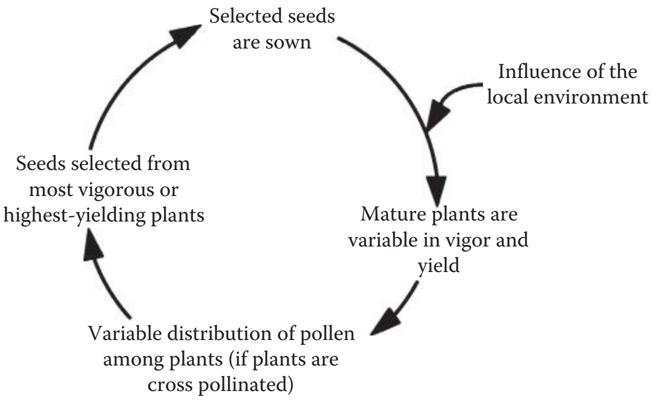


FIGURE 15.4 The mass selection process. This method of selecting for desirable characteristics maintains adaptations to local conditions and allows for maximum genetic variability.

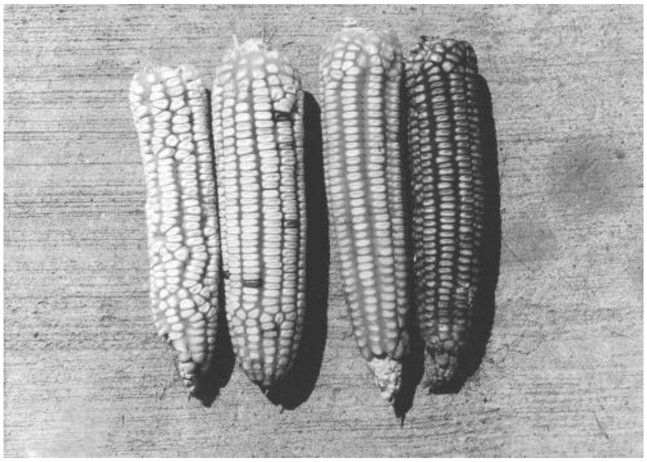


FIGURE 15.5 Four mass-selected, local landraces of corn from the lowlands of Tabasco, Mexico. Each landrace has a different name, planting time, and preferred location.

Pure Line Selection

In self-pollinating plants, a common method of selection is to choose several superior-appearing plants from a variable population and then subject the progeny of each to extensive testing over many generations. At the end of the testing period, any line sufficiently distinct from and superior to existing varieties is released as a new variety. Because the plants are self-pollinating, the selected genotype stays relatively stable over time.

The pure line selection process can be modified in a variety of ways. One is to transfer genes between existing pure lines through artificial cross-pollination in an effort to produce a new line with a new combination of characteristics. Sometimes this is accomplished by repeatedly backcrossing the progeny of an artificial cross with a parent having a specific desired characteristic.

Production of Synthetic Varieties

In cross-pollinated plants, an analog to a self-pollinated pure line, called a **synthetic variety** or synthetic cultivar, can be created through a variety of techniques. The underlying principle is to limit the parental genotypes to a few that are known to have superior characteristics and to cross well. In alfalfa, for example, this can be done by planting seed from only a few specific sources (such as two or three clonal lines) in an isolated field and allowing natural crossing to occur. Seed produced from this field is then distributed as a synthetic variety. Synthetic varieties have greater genetic variability than self-pollinated pure line varieties, but far less variability than mass-selected, open-pollinated varieties.

Hybridization

The primary method of directed selection today in many important crop plants—especially corn—is the production of hybrid varieties. A hybrid is a cross between two very different parents, each from a different pure-breeding line. The process of creating a hybrid variety involves two basic steps.

First, the two distinct pure-breeding lines are produced. (Pure breeding means that the genomes are largely homozygous at most gene loci.) In cross-pollinated plants (and self-pollinated plants that cross-pollinate frequently), this step involves artificial inbreeding, which is accomplished in a variety of ways.

Second, the two pure-breeding lines are crossed to produce the hybrid seed that is planted by farmers for production of the crop. Neither self-pollination nor cross-pollination between plants of the same line can occur in this step, necessitating the use of certain techniques. One technique, used in corn, is to plant the pollen-donor parental line and the seed-producing parental line in alternating rows or strips and to detassel the seed-producing plants before the tassels produce pollen (the tassels contain only male flowers). An alternative technique, used extensively in self-pollinated plants such as sorghum, is to introduce genetically controlled male sterility, called **cytosterility**, into one of the in-bred parental lines. This line is then used as the seed-producing parental line, because it can be pollinated only by pollen from the other, nonsterile parental line.

The hybrid offspring of two selectively in-bred parents are usually quite different from either parent. They are often larger and produce larger seeds or fruits, or have some other desirable characteristic not possessed by either parent. This response, known as **hybrid vigor** or **heterosis**, is one of the great advantages of a hybrid variety. Another desirable characteristic (from the standpoint of conventional agriculture) is genetic uniformity: all the hybrid seed of a particular cross will have the same genotype.

Hybrid varieties, however, have an inherent disadvantage (or advantage, from the perspective of seed companies). Seeds produced by hybrid plants—through either self- or cross-pollination—are usually undesirable for planting since sexual recombination will produce a variety of new gene combinations, most of which will not exhibit the hybrid vigor of the parents. Therefore, farmers must purchase hybrid seed each year from seed producers.

In crop types with tubers or other means of asexual reproduction, such as potatoes and asparagus, once a hybrid is produced with a suite of desirable traits, it is then propagated asexually as a **clone**. With advances in techniques of tissue culture, this method of propagating hybrids without seed has been applied more widely. Small amounts of tissue from different parts of important hybrid cultivars can be used to rapidly reproduce clones under strictly controlled conditions.

Induced Polyploidy

Many of today's important crop types, such as wheat, corn, coffee, and cotton, arose long ago as natural polyploids. Since polyploid plants are often more robust and have larger fruits or seeds than their normal diploid parents, people found them desirable when they occurred in early cropping systems, and they were selected for, even though farmers were not aware of what made them different.

When it was discovered by modern cytologists that many favorable traits in crop plants were the result of polyploidy, methods were developed to artificially induce it. Through the use of colchicine or other chemical stimulators during the first steps of meiosis, artificial multiplication of the number of chromosomes has become possible. Induced polyploidy has produced some of the most useful lines of wheat, for example, such as the hexaploid *Triticum aestivum*. Once produced, polyploids themselves can then be used to perpetuate pure lines or develop new hybrids.

TRANSGENIC MODIFICATION

Plant breeding using the techniques described earlier is tedious, time consuming, and dependent to some extent on luck. Genes occur in the company of many other thousands or millions of genes on chromosomes, and the plant breeder can't determine how a few genes of interest are distributed and recombined in each generation. Moreover, these techniques are restricted to breeding parents that are closely related—usually within the same species.

No such limitations exist for genetic engineers. Using various techniques developed during recent decades in the

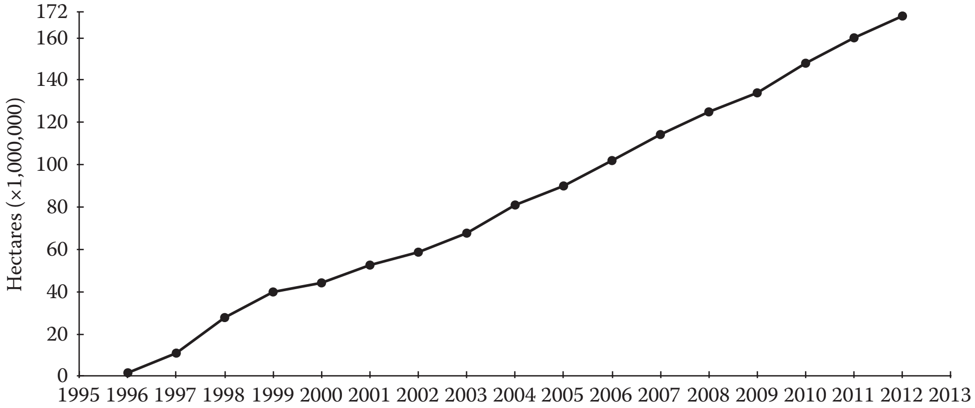


FIGURE 15.6 Global area planted to GM/GE crops, 1996–2012. (Data from FAOSTAT, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Statistics database, http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html. Dates of access range from January 1, 2014 to March 30, 2014.)

rapidly advancing field of **genomics**, they can transfer single genes from one organism—a bacteria, for example—to another completely unrelated organism, such as a higher plant. They can also create synthetic genes or genetic sequences and incorporate them into the genomes of target organisms. These forms of **genetic engineering** enable crop geneticists to introduce specific traits, such as resistance to freezing or herbivory, into a crop species, and to create customized organisms, each with its own unique suite of traits.

As noted in Chapter 1, the end results of genetic engineering are called transgenic, genetically modified (GM), or genetically engineered (GE) organisms. Transgenic crops being planted today on a commercial basis include strains of corn, soybeans, wheat, rice, cotton, canola seed, sugar beets, tomatoes, lettuce, squash, peanuts, cassava, papaya, and potatoes. The area planted to these and other GE crops has increased steadily every year since the mid-1990s; in 2012 they covered an estimated 420 million acres (170 million hectares; see Figure 15.6). Throughout this period of rapid growth in the planting of biotech crops, one company—Monsanto Corporation—has maintained an 80%–90% share of the market in the United States.

GE crops are created with a variety of goals in mind. Some are intended to be resistant to attack by a particular pest, some to create food with better nutritive value, and some to resist the application of herbicides. Because of these and other characteristics, genetic engineering has been touted as the technological answer to many of the challenges faced by agriculture: producing more food, producing better food, reducing the need for pesticides and herbicides, and growing crops on marginal land (Table 15.1).

Transgenic modification of crop organisms has been controversial ever since it began to be practiced on a commercial basis in the 1990s. Although some applications of GE technologies may be seen as beneficial or to have beneficial aspects, even from an agroecological perspective, growing GE crops in general poses a variety of potential problems and serious risks. As just one example, several researchers and farm organizations have recently expressed concern about the problems associated with the unrestricted planting of GE varieties of alfalfa, the fourth most planted crop in the United States after corn, wheat, and soybeans. Problems have begun to occur such as contamination of organic alfalfa plantings due to the ease of transfer of pollen by honeybees, contamination of honey by the wide foraging abilities of the bees, increased use of Roundup® herbicide and increased weed resistance, and contamination of hay crops used for organic animal feed (Hubbard 2008; Zerbe 2011).

Some of the potential drawbacks of growing transgenic crops are listed below. They are not all hypothetical; most have already been documented to occur.

- Unintended and hidden effects on the expression of the genome. Although geneticists can insert specific genes and create GE organisms that express desired traits, they have little control over the unpredictable interaction of inserted genes with the organism's own genes. A GE organism could, for example, exhibit resistance to a particular fungal disease but have a hidden vulnerability to a bacterial disease.
- Accelerated evolution of pesticide-resistant pests. When a pest species is confronted with an environment consisting entirely of a crop producing a specific deterrence compound, natural selection will favor the evolution of resistance to that compound. This has already occurred in the case of many of the insect pests targeted by *Bacillus thuringiensis* (Bt) crops, causing farmers to increase pesticide use.
- Evolution of weeds resistant to the herbicides used alongside herbicide-resistant GE crops. This has already occurred in many areas, as weeds evolve the capacity to tolerate herbicides, causing farmers to increase the amounts of the herbicides they apply.
- Creation of "superweeds" through movement of genes from crops to weeds. It may be possible for pest resistance, herbicide resistance, or improved-vigor genes to move from a GE crop species to a closely related noncrop species or variety, creating weeds even more resistant to human attempts to control them, or capable of disrupting natural ecosystems.

TABLE 15.1
Traits of Transgenically Modified Crops

Desired Trait	Claimed Benefits	Examples
Disease resistance	Higher yield due to reduced crop loss	Inserting an artificial bacterial chromosome into strains of potato to confer resistance to late blight
Pest resistance	Lower pesticide use; higher yield due to reduced crop loss	Introducing toxin-producing genes from the bacterium Bt into cotton, corn, and soybeans Using RNA interference technology to make corn resistant to western corn rootworm
Improved food quality	Less malnutrition in developing countries	Engineering the vitamin A production pathway in rice "golden rice"
Tolerance for abiotic stresses (e.g., drought, salinity)	Higher food yield on marginal land; less irrigation; reduced risk	Introducing genes allowing biosynthesis of citric acid in sugar beets, to increase tolerance of aluminum and uptake of phosphorus in acidic soil. Coffee plants with genes that transmit frost tolerance, allowing planting of coffee at higher elevations
Herbicide resistance	Higher yield due to reduced weed competition when crop treated with herbicide	Roundup Ready® soybeans, engineered to resist the herbicide glyphosate (farmers buy the GE seed and the herbicide from Monsanto). 2,4-D-resistant corn and soybeans to counter weeds' development of resistance to glyphosate
Production of a particular useful compound	Lower product cost	Plant-made pharmaceuticals, such as a drug for the treatment of cystic fibrosis produced by GE corn
Production of biofuels	More efficient production of ethanol	Corn modified to convert its starch to sugar
Bioremediation capabilities	Inexpensive cleanup of toxic compounds in the environment	Weed modified with a bacterial gene to metabolize military explosive compounds
Biomass production	More rapid production of useful biomass for lumber, paper, fuel, and cellulosic material	Inserting genes in various tree species to make them faster growing and able to grow in novel environments

- Introduction of toxic agents and allergens into the food supply. The compounds produced by genes imported into GE organisms may harm human consumers, in addition to deterring pests. Even if the genes are incorporated into varieties only meant for animal feed, they may find their way into the human food supply.
- Genetic pollution of the environment. Genes from GE crops may jump to related native species (or, in the case of GE animals such as farmed salmon, to wild populations of the same species) with unpredictable consequences for natural ecosystems.
- Harm to wildlife and beneficial species. Toxins produced by GE crops may kill beneficial insects, pollinators, birds, and other animals, in addition to the targeted pests. The herbicides used in concert with herbicide-resistant GE crops also have a negative effect on beneficials and wildlife species by reducing the number of noncrop plants (both introduced weeds and native species) available for food and cover.
- Consolidation of agribusiness control of genetic resources. GE organisms are protected by patents and intellectual property laws. Their increased use reduces agrobiodiversity, makes farmers more dependent on off-farm inputs, and perpetuates the economic divide between developed and developing countries. In the long run, this may prove to be the most serious drawback of GE technology because it tends to be self-perpetuating.

In addition to all these problems, a broader objection to transgenic engineering of crop plants (and livestock) is that it has all the pitfalls—potentially magnified—of other modern plant breeding techniques. These are discussed below.

FIGURE 15.7 GE cotton in California's Central Valley. A few transgenic varieties account for a large percentage of the state's crop.

CONSEQUENCES OF TRENDS IN THE USE OF GENETIC RESOURCES

Industrial agriculture, aided by advances in our knowledge of genetics, has marshaled the genetic resources of domesticated organisms to help create dramatic yield increases. But because the creation and deployment of new agricultural varieties and breeds has been directed primarily toward the goal of increasing the profits of agribusiness conglomerates, industrial agriculture has also threatened the foundation of the food system by tending to centralize the control over genetic resources, promote genetic uniformity, and narrow the diversity pool of our crop and livestock species. These trends undermine agriculture's long-term sustainability by reducing genetic diversity at many levels, making domesticated species more vulnerable to pests, diseases, and environmental changes, and increasing the dependence of cropping and livestock production systems on human intervention and external inputs.

Loss of Genetic Diversity

Genetic diversity in agriculture, or **agrobiodiversity**, matters in two ways: in the differences among organisms—what can be called diversity's "genetic" component—and in how these differences are arrayed spatially in actual on-the-ground use—what we can term the "geographic" component of diversity (Brookfield 2001). And for each component, diversity matters at three distinct scales. Geographically, diversity is important at a worldwide scale, a regional or national scale, and a farm scale. Genetically, we can focus on the diversity of food types, the diversity within a species, or the diversity that exists within a particular breed or variety. Since these components of diversity are independent, they combine to create nine different facets of agrobiodiversity, from food diversity worldwide to the genetic diversity of a crop variety on a particular farm. These facets of agrobiodiversity, somewhat simplified, are shown in Table 15.2.

As a result of the ways that conventional agriculture has been exploiting the genetic resources at its disposal over the last century or so, agrobiodiversity is being lost in all nine ways. These trends of loss are also shown in Table 15.2.

There is no shortage of evidence that agrobiodiversity is declining at every geographic scale and every genetic level. This decline is seen in two interrelated ways: Fewer and more uniform varieties and breeds are in widespread use, and more varieties and breeds are disappearing from use and being lost altogether. Here are a few telling facts:

- There are perhaps as many as 300,000 edible plant species on earth, but now more than 60% of the world's dietary energy comes from just four of these plant species—wheat, rice, corn, and potatoes (Nierenberg and Halweil 2004; Kotschi 2010).
- Seventy percentage of the US dairy herd is Holstein, and almost all chicken eggs sold (more than 90%) are laid by one breed, the white leghorn (Halweil 2004).
- Since 1900, more than 6000 known varieties of apples (86% of those ever recorded) have become extinct (Fowler and Mooney 1990), as have half of the domesticated animal breeds in Europe, and about 1000 breeds of poultry and cattle worldwide (Hall and Ruane 1993).
- In Iran, one of the cradles of agrobiodiversity, only about one-quarter of the total number of varieties of wheat, rice, and sorghum account for 70%–85% of the total area planted with these crops (Koocheki et al. 2006).
- Worldwide, at least 20% of animal breeds are in danger of extinction, and somewhere in the world at least one breed of traditional livestock dies out each month (FAO 2007).

TABLE 15.2
Facets of Agrobiodiversity, with Trends for Each

	Geographic Component		
Genetic Component	**World Food System**	**Region or Country**	**Farm or Field**
Food diversity: number of food types and species grown or raised for food	Fewer species are satisfying food needs globally. For example, about 60% of the world's dietary energy comes from four plant species—wheat, rice, corn, and potatoes.	Regions and countries are increasingly likely to specialize in a few crops or livestock types.	It is increasingly common for an individual farming operation to raise one type of livestock or one type of crop (monoculture).
Species diversity: number of breeds or varieties of each food species	Fewer varieties and breeds are being grown, and many of the others are going extinct. For example, three varieties of oranges make up 90% of Florida's orange crop; four varieties of potatoes produce over 70% of the world crop.		It is increasingly common for an individual farming operation to grow or raise one genetic line.
Variety or breed diversity: number of unique genomes in the plant variety, or degree of uniformity in the livestock breed	Pure line, synthetic, hybrid, and transgenic varieties—all highly uniform—make up an increasing percentage of crops grown worldwide.		It is increasingly common for an individual farming operation to plant a single genome. For example, a farm that grows a strain of hybrid or transgenic corn.

- About four-fifths of the maize varieties known in Mexico in 1930 have been lost.
- In the last century, about 75% of plant genetic diversity has been lost as farmers worldwide have abandoned their local varieties and landraces for genetically uniform, high-yielding varieties (HYVs) (Nierenberg and Halweil 2004; FAO 2007).

The loss of agrobiodiversity is a cause for concern because it represents the loss of potentially valuable information that can never be recovered. If the accumulated genetic resources of thousands of years of plant and livestock breeding and domestication can be likened to a library full of books, old and new, on a vast array of subjects, then the impact of trends in conventional agriculture can be compared to replacing that library with one that loans only the current best-selling paperbacks.

The genetic information we are losing has a variety of proven and potential values:

- Genetic diversity in general is the raw material for plant and animal breeding. Loss of this diversity will restrict opportunities for future breeding efforts.
- Genetic diversity in a crop or livestock species, as manifested by the existence of many local landraces and breeds, allows the use of genetic lines that are well adapted to the particular conditions of specific localities. Locally adapted genetic lines, both in crops and in livestock, require fewer external inputs and are therefore a basis for sustainable systems.
- Genetic diversity in a crop variety or livestock breed is an important component of environmental resistance in the field. The broader the genetic basis of a crop or breed, the greater the chance that some individuals will have innate resistance to disease, unusual variations in environmental conditions, or herbivore attack in the case of crops, preventing total crop loss or herd decimation if one of these events should occur.
- Genetic diversity is also a *reservoir* of potential environmental resistance. A few individuals in a genetically diverse crop variety or livestock breed may have genes or gene combinations that may confer resistance to future events or conditions, such as the spread of a new disease made possible by rising temperatures. These genes may be selected for in a population to provide it with resistance.
- Genetic diversity in crops ensures a reservoir of traits with potential value for satisfying (in developed countries) the growing consumer demand for organically grown foods with higher nutritive value. Varieties with innate disease and pest resistance are much easier to grow in more sustainable low-input organic systems.
- Genetic diversity gives a system overall long-term flexibility and resilience, the ability to adjust and adapt to changes in conditions from season to season and from decade to decade.

Some farmers, geneticists, plant breeders, and others saw several decades ago the dangers of losing genetic diversity in our food crops. One response was the establishment of “gene banks,” where the seeds of varieties and cultivars not in general use would be stored for possible later use. These gene banks serve an important purpose (see Qualset and Shands 2005), but are limited in what they can do to stem genetic erosion. First, the vast majority of current gene banks only maintain stocks of crops that have national and international research programs supporting them, and even then only a fraction of the genetic diversity of protected crops has been collected. Second, management and evaluation of genetic resources within gene banks is often lacking, so that deterioration of material occurs. Third, germplasm collections are really static, with no incorporation of the processes that maintain and create genetic diversity in the first place, including both environmental and cultural selection pressures. Unfortunately, we may never know how many varieties have already been lost, especially for the large number of minor crops that meet local needs around the world, but are not part of current germplasm preservation efforts.

FIGURE 15.8 An endangered variety of corn from rural Mexico. Many pressures have pushed farmers away from using their local varieties, and many of those that are left are being contaminated by genetic material from GE varieties.

GREATER GENETIC UNIFORMITY IN CROP VARIETIES

The erosion of diversity at the level of the variety or breed deserves a closer look. Therefore, we examine this subject in greater detail as it applies to crop plants.

All higher organisms have very complex genetic structures. A great many genes—a single plant can contain more than 10 million—all work together in complex ways to control the way the organism functions and interacts with its environment. Some genes act alone, but most appear to act in complex combinations with others. In nature, each species' genetic totality, or genome, is the product of a very long evolutionary process, as described earlier. The genome as a whole is typically very diverse because it is made up of many individual genotypes, many or all of them unique.

Traditional methods of mass selection, though changing the content of a species' genome, tend to preserve much of its genetically rich structure. Modern crop breeding, in contrast, tends to both alter and narrow a crop variety's genome by focusing on the optimization of one or a few genotypes of the variety. Although this process creates plants that perform exceedingly well in specific, highly altered modern agricultural environments, it also greatly restricts a variety's genetic basis. At the most uniform end of the scale, the genetic diversity of a crop variety is restricted to a single genome—that of the hybrid seed of that variety. At the most diverse end of the scale, the genetic diversity of a mass-selected, open-pollinated variety is the product of countless unique individual genomes. Figure 15.9 illustrates this contrast in the structure of genetic diversity.

Commercially produced, hybrid, HYVs, have captured the seed market and are now planted over large areas in genetically uniform fields. Their dominance is challenged only by equally uniform GE crops. This situation, along with the other types of loss of diversity, makes our crops increasingly vulnerable to the age-old enemies of agriculture—pests, diseases, and unusual weather.

GENETIC VULNERABILITY

This consequence of the loss of genetic diversity in crop plants and livestock deserves further discussion. **Genetic vulnerability** is the susceptibility of the narrowed genetic stock of plants and animals to attack by pests and diseases, or to losses caused by extremes in the weather. The basic problem is that when a crop variety or livestock breed is genetically uniform over a large area, the ideal conditions for the rapid outbreak of a pest or disease population are in place.

Pest and disease populations evolve at a relatively rapid rate, in part because of their short generation time. With this capacity for rapid genetic change, they can adapt quickly to changes in their hosts' defenses—or to factors (such as pesticides) introduced into the environment by humans. For this reason, pests and diseases in agriculture have been able to (and might always be able to) overcome just about everything agricultural science has thrown at them, from pesticides and antibiotics to GE crops designed to produce their own toxic compounds.

In traditional agroecosystems, where crop plants are subjected to both natural and human-imposed selection pressures and the system retains many of the characteristics of a natural ecosystem, crop plants have a fighting chance to stay one step ahead of pathogens and herbivores. But with

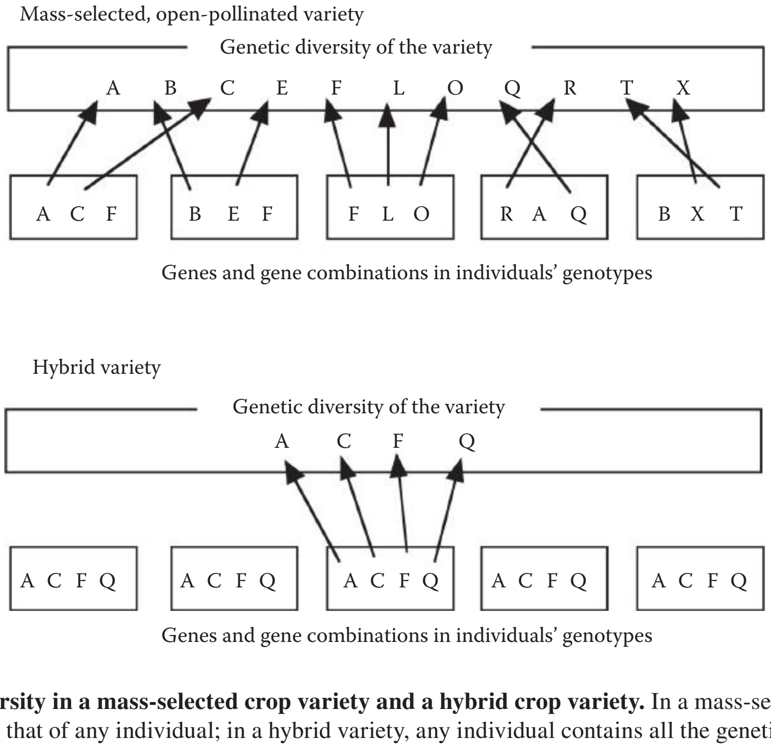


FIGURE 15.9 Genetic diversity in a mass-selected crop variety and a hybrid crop variety. In a mass-selected variety, overall genetic diversity is much greater than that of any individual; in a hybrid variety, any individual contains all the genetic diversity of the variety.

modern plant breeding, large-scale monocultures, and uniformity of farming practices, we have given pests and diseases the advantage. We strive to change both the genetic and environmental mechanisms of resistance by breeding crops for specific traits rather than general fitness, and by planting crops in large single-species populations at the same time in the same place. This creates an environment that is more uniform and predictable than it might otherwise be, setting the stage for outbreaks to occur.

Moreover, changes independent of agriculture are increasing the threat of serious outbreaks of disease and pests. The interconnections of global commerce give pathogens ever more vectors for expansion into new areas, and climate change threatens both to allow pathogens to move into areas where the climate formerly excluded them, and to put stresses on crop plants that make them more vulnerable to pest and pathogen attack.

The increasing uniformity of the genetic base in livestock production also makes poultry, cattle, swine, goats, and sheep more vulnerable to the spread of disease. In more traditional pastoral systems, livestock breeds vary regionally and are well adapted to local conditions, providing good resistance to disease. In contrast, modern confined animal feeding operations (CAFOs) pack large numbers of genetically similar animals together in an artificial context that is the perfect setting for the rapid spread of a pathogen.

One of the most well-known examples of the dangers of genetic uniformity is the Irish Potato Blight. In 1846 the late-blight fungus (*Phytophthora infestans*) destroyed half of Ireland's potato crop, causing widespread famine and forcing a quarter of the population to emigrate. The blight occurred because Irish potato farmers had developed a dependence on only two potato genotypes that had been brought to the country over 300 years before and then vegetatively propagated; the blight had such a profound impact because the country had become overly dependent on the carbohydrate-rich potato as a food source. The fungus was well adapted to the cool, moist conditions of the region, and once the disease arrived and got established, there was no stopping it. Interestingly, the same fungus is also found in the place of origin of the potato, the Andes of South America, but the great genetic diversity of potatoes there, combined with ongoing natural selection, ensures that a large proportion of the crop will be resistant.

Another well-known example is the 1970–1971 outbreak of southern corn leaf blight (*Helminthosporium maydis*), which destroyed almost the entire corn crop in areas of Illinois and Indiana and resulted in the loss of more than 15% of the corn crop in the United States as a whole (Ullstrup 1972). This outbreak was linked to the genetic factors for cytosterility bred into the lines of corn used to produce hybrid seed. These factors produced male sterility and eliminated the need for expensive hand detasseling, but they also increased the hybrid's susceptibility to southern corn leaf blight. When a new strain of the blight appeared, therefore, it spread quickly. Seed producers and crop breeders were able to respond quickly and altered the combination of susceptible factors by the 1972 season.

Similar problems have been encountered with wheat. Ninety percent of the wheat varieties grown worldwide are susceptible to infection by lineages of Race Ug99 of the fungus *Puccinia graminis tritici*, which causes stem or black rust disease on wheat. Ug99 was first detected in Uganda in 1998, and by 2011 seven races belonging to the Ug99 lineage had developed and were known to have spread to various wheat-growing countries in the eastern African highlands, as well as Zimbabwe, South Africa, Sudan, Yemen, and Iran. Because this fungus spreads readily and most wheat lacks resistance to it, the Ug99 group of races has been recognized as a major threat to wheat production and food security. Even if a dedicated program to developing and distributing new wheat varieties with broad and durable resistance is successful, wheat production in many parts of the world is at great risk (Singh et al. 2011).

The lesson is clear: as long as only a few varieties dominate, pests will be able to take advantage of the low genetic diversity of the crop and overcome its resistance. When failure occurs, farmers are totally dependent on the infrastructure that produces new resistant varieties (or provides chemical pesticides) since they no longer have access to the genetic variability that used to be present in their own fields (Eigenbrode 2011).

In many ways the overall success of agriculture in developed countries over the past three decades has masked the problem of genetic vulnerability. Surplus yields in some regions can compensate for failures elsewhere. But the regional failures are still happening, and the potential exists for failures on a larger scale (Qualset and Shands 2005).

Increased Dependence on Human Intervention

There is an important link between conventional agriculture's control of genetic resources and its dependence on external inputs, mechanization, and off-the-farm technological expertise. The dramatic reduction of the genetic diversity of our crops and livestock breeds has been closely paralleled by the dramatic increases in pesticide, herbicide, and fertilizer production, irrigation and water use, mechanization, and agricultural use of fossil fuels.

This link is very clear in the widespread use of hybrid crop seeds. A modern hybrid crop variety is virtually helpless outside the confines of the farm—it usually can't even reproduce itself from its own seed. At the greatest extreme, the crop can't succeed in a farming system without very specific kinds of intensive, technology-based human modification and control of the farm environment.

When a farmer abandons local crop varieties for hybrids, it is more than the hybrid seed that has to be purchased. Every hybrid has a "package" of inputs and practices that go along with the seed: soil cultivation equipment, irrigation systems, soil amendments and fertilizers, pest control materials, and other on-farm inputs. The package also includes changes in many other aspects of the farm organization and management as well. In order to recover the investment necessary to pay for these new inputs and equipment, farmers often must intensify the production of more profitable crops. This usually requires a concentration of production in fewer and fewer crops, a dependence on centralized market structures, a differently skilled labor force, and further intensification of inputs to reduce risk and the chance of crop failure. Technical advice is relied upon (and usually paid for) from sources outside the farm environment. The entire farm is forced to change.

These changes too often result in farmers losing the important local, traditional knowledge they have about crops, the farm, and the farming process and relying on genetic information that was developed under highly uniform, highly modified conditions. Cumulatively, the end result is the loss of the local genetic diversity and cultural experience that characterized farms before modernization.

GE crops make agriculture even more dependent on human intervention. Indeed, from the perspective of the agribusiness firms that develop GE products, that is often the point: every additional need for an input or manipulation is an opportunity to make more money. Herbicide-resistant varieties are a good example of this phenomenon because the seeds are designed to be used in concert with herbicides. And when weeds begin to become resistant to the herbicides, the ready solution to the problem is more inputs in the form of more herbicide application. Even when a GE product is marketed as something designed to reduce inputs—as is the case with Bt varieties reducing the need for pesticides—the eventual reality is often different because of the quick evolution of resistance in the target pests.

The link between the erosion of genetic diversity in livestock breeds and the input intensiveness of conventional livestock production, especially in CAFOs, has already been touched upon in Chapter 1. The whole rationale of large-scale livestock production—to produce large quantities of animal-derived food products at the lowest cost—depends on both the management efficiency gained through genetic uniformity and the tightly controlled, input-dependent environment in which the animals are raised.

Loss of Other Genetic Resources

Agriculture depends on more than just the genetic diversity of crop plants and domesticated animals. Also important is the genetic diversity of an array of other organisms: (1) organisms in the natural ecosystems surrounding agroecosystems, especially the wild relatives of crop plants; (2) crops and animal breeds of minor economic importance; and (3) beneficial noncrop organisms—such as parasitoids, allelopathic weeds, trees, and soil organisms.

Wild relatives of crops are an important source of new or novel variation in the directed selection process. They have been important sources of new or stronger genetic material, especially in the event of epidemics of the aforementioned type. However, wild relatives, such as the wild cotton in Figure 15.10, are disappearing rapidly in many parts of the world because of deforestation and other forms of habitat modification.

FIGURE 15.10 Wild perennial cotton (*Gossypium* sp.) in Tabasco, Mexico. Wild relatives of crops can still be found in situ in traditional farming systems.

A similar kind of organism with potential value is the natural cross between an escaped agricultural variety and its wild relative. Such crosses are endangered as well because the habitats where crops and wild relatives can exchange genetic material are becoming rarer, mainly due to the spread of hybrid seed into even the most remote agricultural parts of the world, the simplification of the farming environment that accompanies the use of improved varieties, and the increasing separation between agricultural and natural ecosystems.

Diverse agricultural habitats also contain many minor crop species that are of considerable importance for the entire system. Besides providing an array of harvestable useful products, these crops contribute to the ecological diversity of the system. They are part of the whole-system energy flow and nutrient cycling process. Minor crops of little or no current commercial value are preserved in many traditional cropping systems, especially in the developing world. They could have promising value for future use, but they too are disappearing as traditional systems give way to modernization.

Apart from crops and crop relatives, agroecosystems are also made up of a diversity of noncrop plants and animals, including predators and parasites of pests, allelopathic weeds, and beneficial soil organisms. Many of these can play very important roles in maintaining overall system diversity and resilience (see Chapter 17). Since their presence and genetic diversity depends to a great extent on the overall diversity of the system, they are threatened by the tendency toward agroecosystem uniformity.

More generally, attention needs to be paid to the overall genetic diversity of agroecosystems. A fully functioning crop and farm system preserves all of the genetic, ecological, and cultural processes that produce diversity in the first place. Biological control information, plant defenses, symbionts, and competitors are all actively interacting and preserving genetically based information that is of great agroecological value. And since only a fraction of all this information is in the germplasm of the key crop, loss of farming habitats can be even more devastating than narrowing of the crop gene pool itself.

PRESERVING AGROBIODIVERSITY

Sustainability requires a fundamental shift in how we manage and manipulate the genetic resources in agroecosystems. The key theme in this shift is genetic diversity. Sustainable agroecosystems are genetically diverse at every level, from the genome of the individual organisms to the system as a whole. And this diversity should be a product of coevolution—genetic changes should have occurred in an environment of interaction among the various populations. In this way, all of the component organisms—crop plants, animals, noncrop associates, beneficial organisms, and so on—are adapted to local conditions and the local variability of the environment, in addition to possessing traits that make them specifically useful to humans.

Traditional, indigenous, and local agroecosystems contain many of the genetic elements of sustainability, and we can learn from their example. In particular, they have higher genetic diversity within populations as well as in the cropping community as a whole. Intercropping is much more common, noncrop species and wild relatives occur within and around cropping fields, and opportunities for genetic diversification are abundant at the field level. In such systems, resistance to environmental stress and biotic pressures has a much broader genetic base, genetic vulnerability is lower, and while pests and diseases occur, catastrophic outbreak is rare. In essence, genetic change in such systems takes place much like it does in natural ecosystems.

BREEDING FOR DURABLE RESISTANCE IN CROP PLANTS

Agricultural plant breeding has focused mainly on creating resistance to limiting factors of the environment, be they physical factors such as drought, poor soils, and temperature extremes, or biological factors such as herbivory, disease, and competition from weeds. Remarkable gains in yield have been achieved as a result of these breeding programs, but as we have already noted, another result is increased vulnerability to crop failure and increasing reliance on nonrenewable inputs.

As each problem presents itself, crop breeders screen the genetic variability of a crop until they find a resistant genotype. This resistance is often provided by a single gene. The gene-transfer and backcrossing techniques described earlier are employed to incorporate the gene into a specific crop pedigree. The result is sometimes called vertical resistance. It has two weaknesses. First, the resistance will continue to function only as long as the limiting factor does not change. Unfortunately, in the case of pests, diseases, and weeds, the limiting factor is never static for very long because of continual natural selection. So, the problem organism eventually develops "resistance to the resistance," and an outbreak or epidemic occurs. This dynamic is the basis of the well-known crop breeders' treadmill. Second, in the process of breeding for vertical resistance, genes providing partial resistance to the wider spectrum of pathogens are lost.

FIGURE 15.11 Dr. Roberto García-Espinosa, distributing seeds of some of the horizontally resistant beans he bred. During his career at the Colegio de Postgraduados in Montecillos, Mexico, Dr. García-Espinosa ran a highly successful breeding program developing beans resistant to the broad range of pathogens present in the Mixteca bean-growing region of Mexico. (Photo courtesy of Dr. Don Lotter.)

A more durable type of resistance is needed that does not break down easily in the face of new strains of pests, diseases, or weeds. Rather than directing breeding programs toward the development of specific resistances, the idea is to manage the whole crop system. Selection for durable resistance requires the accumulation of many resistance characters using population-level breeding methods, and relies on an understanding of the simultaneous nature of the interaction between a crop, pests, the environment, and the human managers. Selection takes place at all levels at the same time, rather than for single specific characters. The more durable type of resistance that results is termed **horizontal resistance** (Robinson 1996; Garcia-Espinosa 2010) (Figure 15.11).

Breeding methods that provide the most durable resistance rely on the use of open-pollinated, locally adapted landraces. Open-pollinated crops are generally lower yielding when compared to hybrid varieties, but they are very responsive to local selection pressures because of their genetic diversity. They also have the best average performance in the face of the combination of all the local environmental factors, including pests, diseases, and weeds.

The importance of system-level resistance is accepted more easily by ecologists than by agricultural scientists. The study of selection in natural ecosystems has repeatedly demonstrated the ways a wild ecotype responds to either positive or negative selection pressures when it is introduced into an ecosystem different from the one in which it evolved. Selection operates simultaneously at the level of all of the factors, biotic and abiotic, that the organism encounters. Seen in this light, the problems associated with genetic uniformity in crops become more apparent.

OFF-SITE CONSERVATION OF PLANT GENETIC RESOURCES

The concern for the erosion and loss of genetic resources led to the establishment in 1974 of the International Board of Plant Genetic Resources (IBPGR). An international network of ex situ (off-site) crop germplasm repositories was established and genetic material from the major crop gene centers was collected in order to establish the IBPGR system of gene banks. Plant breeders have since relied heavily on these genetic resources for the conventional development of higher-yielding and resistant varieties, and the number of gene banks of all types has increased to an FAO-estimated 1460 worldwide, which together hold more than 5.4 million samples. In 2004, the FAO and the 15 Future Harvest Centers of the Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research (CGIAR) partnered to create the Crop Diversity Trust, an independent international organization charged with assuring the long-term security of our most important collections of crop diversity. In particular, the trust seeks to salvage collections that are at risk and to assist developing countries with managing their collections. In its evaluation of the state of plant genetic resources worldwide released in 2007, FAO reiterated its support for strengthening the network of ex situ gene banks, especially those that have a more local and regional focus within different countries (FAO 2010).

ON-SITE SELECTION AND CONSERVATION OF PLANT GENETIC RESOURCES

Although ex situ conservation is important, it cannot by itself stem the erosion of agricultural genetic diversity. Limited funding for gene banks has restricted the range of crops and regions from which material is collected, leaving much of the world's crop genetic diversity out of these reservoirs. Corn, wheat, beans, rice, and potatoes have received the most attention, excluding a very large number of much of the world's food crops. An added problem is that these ex situ genetic conservation efforts remove crops from their original cultural–ecological context, severing the adaptive tie between genome and environment (Nevo 1998; FAO 2010).

To achieve sustainability, conservation of genetic resources must also occur in situ or in the setting of the crop community, and farmers must be rewarded for doing so (Brush 2004; FAO 2014). In situ conservation involves ongoing selection and genetic change, rather than static preservation. It allows genetic screening to occur, maintaining and strengthening local landraces. It attempts to mimic all the conditions—location, timing, and cultivation techniques—under which future cultivation of the crop will occur. As a result, cultivars remain well adapted to (1) the conditions of the local environment, (2) the cultural conditions of the local environment (such as irrigation, cultivation, and fertilization), and (3) all the locally important biotic crop problems (such as pests, diseases, and weeds).

In situ conservation requires that farms be the repositories of genetic information and farmers the repositories of the cultural knowledge of how crops are cared for and managed. At one extreme, therefore, the principle of in situ conservation argues for each farm having its own breeding and preservation program. Indeed, farmers ought to be able to select and preserve their own locally adapted landraces where feasible. But a more practical approach focuses at the regional level. Because regional characteristics of a farming region establish important selection criteria, screening programs can be centralized to a certain extent for a particular geographically and ecologically defined region, as long as constant exchange of crop genetic material takes place among farmers of that region (Brush 1995; Cunningham 2001).

In situ conservation becomes particularly important in the context of climate change. The landraces and varieties growing in a given diverse agroecosystem will evolve in response to the selection pressures presented by directional environmental changes such as increasing aridity and increasing warmth. These crop plants will not only be better adapted to the unique manifestations of climate change in that region, but their adaptations may make them well suited for planting in other areas where conditions are changing in the same way. In addition, the genetically diverse populations conserved and selected for at in situ conservation sites will be crucial sources of the population- and agroecosystem-level resilience that climate change will demand of agroecosystems in the future.

Ultimately, in situ and ex situ genetic resource conservation efforts must be integrated. Already, partnerships between nonprofit groups and farmers show that the two kinds of programs can complement each other and promote more effective and equitable conservation. The organization Native Seeds/SEARCH in Tucson, AZ, for example, complements its ex situ seed collection and storage activities by encouraging farmers to grow local and traditional varieties of crops. The organization provides seeds for farmers who have lost varieties, and then purchases the farmers' excess production. The farmers' own fields, then, become the sites for both the retention of traditional genetic resources and the screening grounds for the varieties of the future. When these fields also use local knowledge, local resources, and limited industrial inputs, breeding for sustainability can take place (Tuxill and Nabhan 2001; Nabhan 2002).

PRESERVING MINOR CROPS AND NONCROP RESOURCES

Genetic resources in agroecosystems extend beyond the relatively few crop species that today provide the bulk of the food consumed by much of the human population. Locally important, minor, or underutilized crops, as well as a range of noncrop species with potential as new crops, all form part of the genetic resources available for breeding programs for sustainable agriculture. They also form part of the whole-system, horizontal resistance process that is essential for maintaining a genetic basis for sustainable agricultural systems. It is important, therefore, to extend genetic conservation efforts to include all these other types of crop, noncrop, and wild relative species. This goal is best achieved by preserving the traditional agroecosystems in which these species occur (Altieri and Nicholls 2004a).

VALUING GENETIC DIVERSITY IN LIVESTOCK

Genetic diversity in livestock is valuable for the same reasons as genetic diversity in crops: a diversity of breeds (and diversity within a breed) gives farmers the raw material for selecting stocks or developing new breeds in response to environmental changes, new disease threats, and changing market conditions or consumer preferences. Livestock breeds indigenous to particular locales often have valuable traits such as high fertility, good maternal instincts, disease resistance, ability to thrive on poor-quality feed, adaptation to harsh conditions, longevity, and unique product characteristics. All of these traits are desirable—and necessary—for low-input livestock production, and often missing in the widespread commercial breeds. Thus indigenous breeds of poultry, swine, cattle, and other livestock types are crucial for sustainable livestock production.

Despite the value of genetic diversity in livestock, however, it is at greater risk than the genetic diversity of our crop plants, in part because an animal's genome can't easily be stored in a gene bank. The FAO has estimated that as many as 43% of the livestock breeds in the world are threatened with extinction.

Recognizing the multiple roles that animals can play in sustainability offers a chance to reverse this trend. As we will see in Chapter 19, local and traditional breeds can play a critical role in the process of reintegrating livestock animals into crop production systems—a necessary step in the creation of sustainable food systems (Figure 15.12).

GENETICS AND SUSTAINABILITY

The agribusiness corporations that are the driving force in industrial agriculture seek to rationalize the processes of agriculture and to bring under their control as much as they can all the factors of production. Since crop plants and livestock are the primary factors of production, and because their genomes determine how they function in this regard, agribusiness has, sensibly enough, focused much attention on genetics. If agriculture in the industrial model is like a factory, then the ability to manipulate genomes is like gaining access to the factory's master control panel. Seen in this light, genomics has presented agrofood corporations with something akin to the key to the treasury.

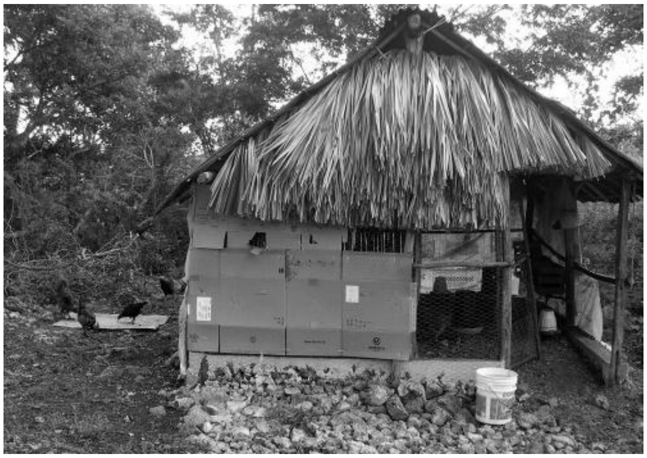


FIGURE 15.12 Chickens of an endangered locally adapted breed in Mexico's Yucatan Peninsula and their rustic chicken house. School children rear and promote the chickens as part of a school Forest Garden project in the town of Cepeda. Unlike high-yielding modern varieties, these chickens are free ranging, resistant to the hot Mayan lowlands, and able to subsist with minimal external inputs, while providing an excellent protein complement to local diets.

Aware of the importance of genetics in generating profits and centralizing control over production, agribusiness corporations have invested considerable resources in advancing the technologies that allow them to create hybrid seeds and to manipulate genomes, and they are active in applying this technological know-how to developing marketable products, packages, and services. The extraordinarily rapid and extensive adoption of GM/GE crops since 1996 is a clear indicator of how perfectly genomics fits in to the industrial model. It takes the strategy embodied in the development and marketing of hybrid seeds and moves it one step further.

All of the practices and approaches of industrial agriculture, of course, have consequences. Although some of these consequences—such as erosion of agrobiodiversity—have effects that are gradual enough for them to escape most people's notice for now, others generate problems that are difficult to ignore in the present. The widespread use of GE crops with herbicide resistance and Bt genes is in this latter category. Growing resistance in weeds to glyphosate and in insects to Bt toxins is a major headache for farmers today. Does this mean that agribusiness is recognizing that deployment of these "products" was a mistake? The response of Monsanto, which developed the glyphosate-resistant and Bt crops in the first place, indicates that this might be a hasty conclusion. Monsanto is developing a new product, based on new GE technology called RNA transfer, that is designed to overcome weeds' resistance to glyphosate. That it would attempt to solve a problem caused by GE technology with more GE technology is really no surprise, since that is the approach most consistent with the industrial model.

The growing power of agrofood corporations and their apparent ability to manage the problems generated by industrial agriculture highlights the challenges we face in preserving agrobiodiversity. Agrofood corporations are interested in the genetic diversity present in the world's crop varieties and livestock breeds only to the extent that they can appropriate it for their own purposes. At the same time, the logic of industrial agriculture promotes a drive toward genetic uniformity at all levels that means a continual loss of irrecoverable genetic information and an increase in genetic vulnerability that humankind can ill afford as the climate changes in unfavorable directions.

If industrial agriculture entails an ongoing loss of agrobiodiversity, the only real solution is fundamental change in the food system and the development of an alternative to the industrial agriculture model. In the meantime, efforts to stem the tide of agrobiodiversity erosion will have to rely on measures that exist outside the market—such as conservation projects funded by governments, NGOs, and farmer organizations—and on the preservation of traditional systems and the development of alternative systems that exist at the margins of the food system and preserve the agrobiodiversity that they have access to. Although these efforts will, for the foreseeable future, not receive a level of support anywhere near comparable to that of the profits generated by agribusiness, they are absolutely crucial because of the degree to which agriculture depends on its domesticated species in their full range of diversity.

The incredible diversity of crop varieties and livestock breeds developed by farmers and breeders over thousands of years, along with the wild relatives and noncrop beneficials that grow with them, are a resource and a legacy that belong to all human beings. They are a commons, like air, water, and soil, and, like these aspects of the environment, they are in danger of being appropriated and destroyed for the sake of private profit. Preventing further loss of this common heritage requires the same kind of ethic of stewardship, responsibility, and attention to the common good under which domesticated species were developed originally (Table 15.3).

TABLE 15.3
Genetic Resources and Processes of Importance in Sustainable Agriculture

Resource or Process	Advantage for Sustainability
Broad genetic base in the form of many landraces and developed varieties	Reduces genetic vulnerability; allows continued production of genetic variation
Variable gene frequency within and among landraces	Reduces genetic vulnerability
Gene flow within and between landraces, occasionally from wild relatives	Maintains variability, diversity, and environmental resistance
Selection for diversity of local adaptations	Maintains local flexibility in environmental resistance
Relatively small populations	Promotes diversity due to genetic drift
Open pollination breeding systems	Promotes outcrossing; maintains variability
Longer life cycles	Promotes outcrossing
Regional, patchy distribution	Promotes diversity
Presence of wild relatives	Can lead to spontaneous hybrids and variation
Local breeding	Promotes diversity and adaptability; maintains environmental resistance
Flexible and diverse environmental conditions on the farm (e.g., intercropping)	Provides microsites for retention of variable genetic lines
High overall diversity in the agroecosystem	Allows for interaction and development of more complex interdependencies and coevolution

Source: Adapted from Salick, J. and Merrick, L.C., Use and maintenance of genetic resources: Crops and their wild relatives, in: Carroll, C.R., Vandermeer, J.H., and Rosset, P.M. (eds.), *Agroecology*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1990, pp. 517–548.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What are the similarities and differences between an obligate mutualism in a natural ecosystem and the relationship between humans and their domesticated organisms?
2. What can we learn from traditional farming systems in developing countries about applying directed selection in a way that promotes sustainability?
3. What are the weaknesses of a germplasm preservation program that focuses only on the key crops and the storing of genetic material in large environmentally controlled germplasm banks isolated from the field situation?
4. How do your own personal choices at the market exert pressure on the selection of the genetic material used by farmers?
5. What is meant by "agroecosystem selection" in the directed selection process?
6. What are the advantages to "farmer to farmer" or participatory seed saving and exchange, and how can they be promoted and protected at a time when it is possible to obtain patents for genetic material?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Biological Diversity in Food and Agriculture
www.fao.org/biodiversity
The agrobiodiversity section of the United Nations' Food and Agriculture Organization site. A portal to a great deal of information and data about agrobiodiversity.

Center for Food Safety
www.centerforfoodsafety.org
This organization's site has a great deal of good information related to the hazards of GE crops.

The E. O. Wilson Biodiversity Foundation
www.eowilsonfoundation.org
A foundation with a mission to foster a knowing stewardship of our world through biodiversity research and educational initiatives that promote and inform worldwide preservation of our biological heritage.

The International Treaty on Plant Genetic Resources for Food and Agriculture
www.planttreaty.org
Access to the international treaty developed by the FAO of the United Nations to protect farmers' rights and abilities in the production and maintenance of vast genetic resources for agriculture.

Native Seeds/SEARCH
www.nativeseeds.org
This organization works to preserve the many locally adapted plant varieties used by indigenous groups in the Americas.

People and Plants International
www.peopleandplants.org
An organization devoted to sustainable resource management, and focused on the preservation of plant biodiversity and cultural diversity worldwide.

Union of Concerned Scientists, genetic engineering section
www.ucsusa.org/food_and_agriculture/our-failing-food-system/genetic-engineering/
A wealth of information and research on the risks of genetic engineering.

RECOMMENDED READING

Bellwood, P. 2004. *First Farmers: The Origins of Agricultural Societies*. Blackwell Science: London, U.K.
An archaeological perspective on the origins and history of agriculture and crop domestication.

Brookfield, H. 2001. *Exploring Agrodiversity*. Columbia University Press: New York.
An integrated overview of the concept of diversity in agriculture, focusing as much on the choice of crops as on the management of land, water, and biota as a whole.

Brush, S. 2004. *Farmer's Bounty: Locating Diversity in the Contemporary World*. Yale University Press: New Haven, CT.
A thorough assessment of the present state of crop diversity worldwide, written from the standpoint of an anthropologist but with a wide scope that includes the work of ecologists, geneticists, and ethnobotanists.

Doyle, J. 1985. *Altered Harvest: Agriculture, Genetics, and the Fate of the World's Food Supply*. Viking Penguin: New York.
A review of the social and economic factors that have switched the emphasis from genetic diversity to chemical inputs for increased production, while limiting access to seed for farmers of the world.

FAO. 2010. *The Second Report on the State of the World's Plant Genetic Resources for Food and Agriculture*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations: Rome, Italy.
A very comprehensive report on the state of conservation, both in situ and ex situ, and the programs and needs of conservation efforts around the world.

Fox, C. W., D. A. Roff, and D. J. Fairbairn (eds.). 2001. *Evolutionary Ecology: Concepts and Case Studies*. Oxford University Press: New York.
A synthetic view of the field of evolutionary ecology, viewed as an integration of ecology and evolutionary biology.

Gaston, K. J. and J. I. Spicer. 2004. *Biodiversity: An Introduction*, 2nd edn. Blackwell Science: Malden, MA.
An overview of what biodiversity is, its relevance to humanity and issues related to its conservation.

Lammerts van Bueren, E. T. and J. R. Myers. 2011. *Organic Crop Breeding*. John Wiley & Sons: Hoboken, NJ.
A thorough review of the latest efforts by crop breeders and geneticists to develop improved varieties for organic production.

Maxted, N. 2012. *Agrobiodiversity Conservation: Securing the Diversity of Crop Wild Relatives and Landraces*. CABI: London, U.K.
By focusing on agrobiodiversity conservation, this book considers the benefits of understanding and preserving crop wild relatives and landraces. It encompasses issues as wide ranging as habitat protection, ecosystem health and food security.

National Academy of Sciences. 1972. *Genetic Vulnerability of Major Crops*. National Academy Press: Washington, DC.
An early call for concern about the potential risks of narrowing the gene pool for our major crop varieties.

Ridley, M. 2009. *Evolution*, 3rd edn. Blackwell Science: Malden, MA.
A text that covers the history of evolutionary theory from its origins until present times.

Schurman, R. A. and D. D. T. Kelso (eds.). 2003. *Engineering Trouble: Biotechnology and Its Discontents*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.
With examples from agriculture, food, forestry, and pharmaceuticals, this book critically examines some of the most contested issues of GE organisms, including its social and political consequences.

Silvertown, J. and D. Charlesworth. 2001. *Introduction to Plant Population Ecology*, 4th edn. Blackwell Science: Oxford, U.K.
The fundamentals of plant genetics presented from a population ecology perspective.

Simpson, B. B. and M. C. Ogorzaly. 2001. *Economic Botany: Plants in Our World*, 3rd edn. McGraw-Hill, Inc.: New York.
A very complete and well-illustrated coverage of the useful plants of the world, including aspects of history, morphology, taxonomy, chemistry, and modern use.

16 Species Interactions in Crop Communities

In ecological terms, a cropping system is a *community* formed by a complex of interacting populations of crops, weeds, microorganisms, insects, and sometimes other animals. The interactions among the populations of the crop community, which arise from the different kinds of interference, give the community characteristics, called emergent qualities, which exist only at the community level. These emergent qualities cannot be fully explained in terms of the properties of populations or individuals. In both natural ecosystems and agroecosystems, community-level phenomena are of critical importance in a system's resilience, productivity, and dynamic functioning.

Agricultural researchers, however, normally focus their attention on the crop population of central importance in the farming system, rather than on the community of which it is a part. Because of this reductionist approach, they fail to understand cropping systems *as* communities, and thereby lose the ability to take advantage of community-level emergent qualities or to manipulate community interactions to the benefit of the cropping system.

To be sure, industrial agriculture has been greatly concerned with some species interactions—it has focused on the detrimental effects on crop yields arising from the impacts of noncrop organisms such as weeds, pest herbivores, and diseases on the crop environment. Research for many years has been directed toward eliminating these detrimental effects. Noncrop organisms are said to "compete" with the crop or have a yield-reducing effect; they must therefore be eliminated from the cropping system. At the same time, considerable research has been done to determine the optimum densities for each crop (usually planted as a monoculture) in order to minimize intraspecific competition for resources and thereby obtain maximum yields.

By striving to eliminate and minimize interactions, the industrial approach tends to simplify the crop community. In a sense, the ultimate goal is to reduce it to a single-crop population growing in an otherwise sterile abiotic environment.

In contrast, the agroecological approach to cropping system management is to understand species interactions in the context of the larger community. The agroecologist recognizes the existence of beneficial species interactions, understands how they arise from the impacts of interference, and knows that a certain level of complexity is desirable. By paying attention to the ecology of the crop community, it is possible to create beneficial interactions and emergent qualities that not only reduce the need for external inputs, but also increase overall yields.

INTERFERENCE AT THE COMMUNITY LEVEL

The basis for understanding species interactions in the context of community structure and function was developed in Chapter 11. There, we discussed how organism–organism interactions can be conceptualized as *interferences*, in which an organism has some kind of impact on its environment, and through this impact another organism is affected. We identified two types of interferences: removal interferences, in which the environmental impact consists of the removal of some resource by one or both of the interacting organisms, and addition interferences, in which one or both organisms add some substance or structure to the environment. Either kind of interference can have beneficial, detrimental, or neutral effects on neighboring organisms. As was discussed in Chapter 11, the advantage of the interference approach is that it allows a more complete understanding of the *mechanisms* of interaction.

At the level of the community, the existence of many populations means that many kinds of interferences may be going on at the same time. These many interferences may interact with and modify each other, creating complex relationships among the members of the community. Despite this complexity, however, we can understand both the individual types of interference that exist between populations and the overall effect of the complex of interferences on the community as a whole because the interference concept allows analysis of the mechanisms of interaction.

Some of the ways in which interferences may combine to affect the crop community are described in Figure 16.1. Direct removal of something from the environment leads to interactions such as competition or herbivory, whereas additions can lead to allelopathy or the production of food for beneficial organisms in the crop community. Both removal and addition interferences may go on simultaneously, leading to different types of interactions. Many mutualisms, for example, arise from combined addition/removal interferences. Examples are pollination (removal of nectar and addition of pollen) and biological nitrogen fixation (addition of fixed nitrogen by the bacteria and removal of nitrogen by the legume). Additionally, combined addition/removal interference between populations may modify the microclimate of a cropping system in ways that affect populations of other species. Shading, soil insulation, temperature and wind modification, and altered moisture relations are all potential consequences of addition and removal interferences that can combine to create a microclimate within the cropping

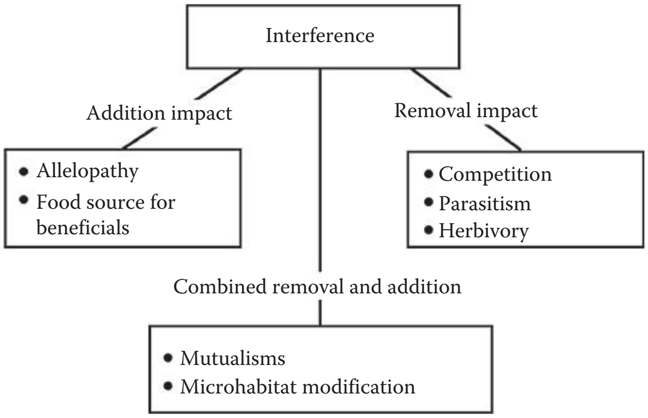


FIGURE 16.1 Modes of interference underlying species interactions in communities.

system that is conducive to the presence of organisms that are beneficial for the entire crop community.

Complexity of Interactions

The ways in which the various populations of a crop community influence the community as a whole through their interferences may be complex and difficult to discern. An example will help to illustrate this point.

Canopy development over time was studied in a grass and clover mixture. The data from this study are shown in Figure 16.2. When the interaction between grass and clover is considered without any nitrogen being added, it appears that competition for limited light under the canopy of the crop mixture takes place. Shading by the clover appears to inhibit the grass. We could conclude from these data that due to its mutualism with nitrogen-fixing bacteria, the clover is able to avoid nitrogen competition and establish dominance. But the data obtained from adding different amounts of nitrogen fertilizer to the mixture alter the picture of community dynamics. The effect of adding nitrogen is to shift the balance of species dominance: by the last sample date the mixture at low nitrogen levels is dominated by clover, but the mixture at high nitrogen levels is dominated by grass. The advantage of one crop over the other is altered by availability of nitrogen, with grass becoming more dominant as nitrogen supply is increased. These data lead to somewhat different conclusions: perhaps competition for light is the key factor, or perhaps some complex interaction of light, nitrogen availability, and some other factor (e.g., allelopathic chemicals added to the soil by the grass) is at work in the crop mixture.

These data raise other questions. For example, what would happen in a crop mixture where the two species involved had very similar nitrogen needs and procurement abilities? Under conditions of limited nitrogen supply, competition would probably result, and both species might suffer, but eventually one would begin to dominate the other. But another outcome is possible. The two different species could have complementary ways of using nitrogen when it is in limited supply: their timing of growth might be different, or their root systems might occupy different regions in the soil. They could thus avoid competition and coexist in the same system.

Coexistence

In complex natural communities, populations of ecologically similar organisms often share the same habitat without significant apparent competitive interference, even though their niches overlap to a considerable degree. Similarly, it is often the case in natural communities that more than one species share the role of dominant species. It would appear, then, that the principle of competitive exclusion, which implies that two species with similar needs cannot occupy the same niche or place in the environment, does not fully apply in many communities.

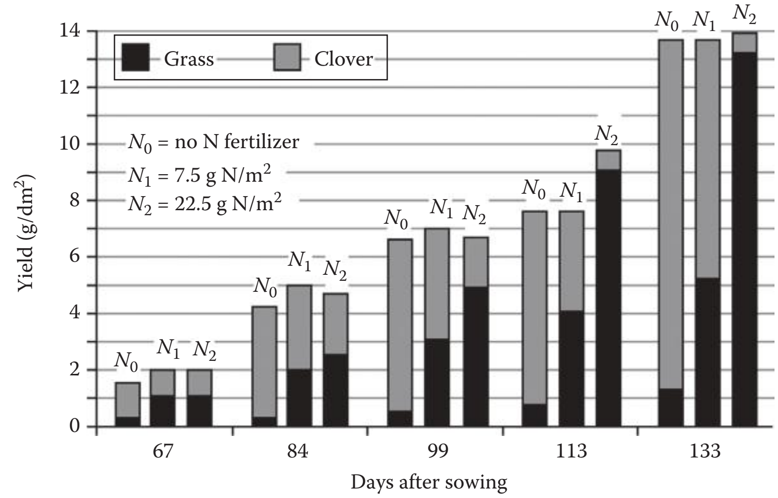


FIGURE 16.2 Relative dominance of grass (*Lolium rigidum*) and clover (*Trifolium subterraneum*) in relation to levels of nitrogen fertilizer. (Data from Stern, W.R. and Donald, C.M., *Aust. J. Agric. Res.,* 13, 599, 1961.)

The ability to "avoid" competition and instead coexist in mixed communities leads to advantages for all involved members of the community. Therefore, this ability may well provide significant selective advantage in an evolutionary sense. Although selection for competitive ability has undoubtedly been very important in evolution, ecologists who study evolutionary biology now more widely accept the idea that selection for coexistence may be more the rule than the exception, especially in more mature communities (Pianka 2000).

Recent thinking on this issue has generated the term *competitive neutrality* as a substitute for coexistence. Some ecologists take this a step further and argue that not only do different species often tolerate each other and coexist in the same environment, but they may also cocreate conditions through their interactions that facilitate each other's growth (Vandermeer 2011). The ability of multiple species to accommodate each other in a common environment in this way has been termed **facilitation**. Facilitation will be discussed in more detail in the Mutualisms section if this chapter.

It is possible, too, that many domesticated species have undergone directed selection for coexistence by being grown most commonly in polycultures for many thousands of years. In this context, the plants would have coevolved, each developing adaptations for coexistence. (The traditional corn–bean–squash polyculture discussed later in this chapter is a possible example.)

Mixed populations are able to coexist due to many different mechanisms, such as resource partitioning, niche diversification, or specific physiological, behavioral, or genetic changes that reduce direct competition and allow for its avoidance. Understanding the mechanisms of interference that make coexistence possible could form an important foundation for the design of multiple crop communities.

In agroecosystems, combining species with slightly different physiological characteristics or resource needs is an important way of allowing for the coexistence of species in a multiple cropping community. Such an approach to designing the cropping community has much greater potential than trying to maintain single-species dominance in a monocultural field where considerable human intervention is needed to keep out potentially competing noncrop weeds or herbivorous pest insects. Successful mixed crop communities around the world offer fruitful ground for research on how avoidance of competition, or coexistence, plays an important ecological role in cropping systems.

MUTUALISMS

Species with a mutualistic relationship are not only able to coexist, but they are dependent on each other for optimal development. Mutualisms are likely the result of coexisting species continuing in the same evolutionary direction, coevolving adaptations for achieving mutual benefit through some kind of close association. Ecologists now know that mutualistic relationships among organisms of different species are relatively common in complex natural communities, creating intricate interdependencies among community members. Their prevalence is another factor explaining the observed complexity and diversity of many communities and their food webs. The same coevolutionary process has undoubtedly also occurred during domestication in agriculture, either by deliberate human selection or coincidentally in the context of multiple cropping systems.

The types of mutualisms that are most commonly recognized include the following:

- **Inhabitational mutualisms.** One mutualist lives wholly or partly inside the other. A classic example is the relationship between *Rhizobium* bacteria and leguminous plants. The bacteria in this relationship are unable to fix nitrogen outside of the nodules formed on the plant roots, and they usually exist only as spores in the open soil, reproducing only while inside the nodule. This mutualism is the cornerstone of many of the most sustainable farming systems around the world.
- **Exhabitational mutualisms.** The organisms involved are relatively independent physically, but interact directly. An example is the relationship between a flowering plant and its pollinating insect. Many crop plants are unable to produce fertile seed without pollination from bees, and the bees depend on the crop plants for their main source of food in the form of nectar or pollen.
- **Indirect mutualisms.** The interactions among a set of species modify the environment in which they all live to the benefit of the mixture. An example is a polyculture agroecosystem. A tall crop species can modify conditions of the microclimate to the benefit of associated crop species, and the presence of several crops attracts a range of beneficial arthropods that facilitate the biological management of potential pests. Unlike the first two types of mutualisms, indirect mutualisms involve more than two species. Indirect mutualisms can also include both inhabitational and exhabitational mutualisms.

Some mutualisms are obligate for all involved members, while in others only one of the members may require the relationship. In other cases, called facultative mutualisms, all members of the mutualism may be able to survive quite well without the interaction, but definitely do better when in relationship. Often, the mutualism functions not so much because of some stimulus or direct benefit to the organisms involved, but because it helps the species avoid some negative impact or impacts.

The expansion of the theory of mutualism in ecology has begun to find ready application in the development of more diverse cropping communities in which mutualistic relationships can occur. Importantly, farmers are not limited to mutualistic relationships that evolved between two particular species; they can take advantage of the more generalized *capacity* for mutualism that exists between members of many taxonomic groups. For example, *Rhizobium* bacteria

SPECIAL TOPIC: HISTORY OF THE STUDY OF MUTUALISM

The idea that organisms may relate to each other in mutually beneficial ways has a very long history (Boucher 1985). The ancient Greeks and Romans recognized that nature was full of examples of plants and animals helping each other. In his *History*, for example, the historian Herodotus describes such a relationship between a plover and a crocodile. The bird helps the crocodile by picking and eating leeches from the crocodile's mouth, and the crocodile never harms the bird even though a simple snap of its jaws would provide it with lunch.

In the 1600s, the theory of natural theology promoted the view that plants and animals sometimes selflessly aided each other in concert with the natural order of things. Divine Providence, it was believed, gave each organism a specific role to play in the larger "society" of the natural world and that some organisms had the role of guardian or helper.

As the industrial revolution progressed during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, the idea that competition among organisms was the driving force in nature gained prominence in science. The publication of Charles Darwin's *Origin of Species* was pivotal in bringing emphasis to competition, because it posited that the "struggle for existence" was the primary selective pressure in the evolutionary process. Interpretations and popularizations of Darwin's work went even further in casting nature as "red in tooth and claw."

Soon after the publication of the *Origin of Species*, however, interest in the concept of mutualism was revived. The term itself was officially introduced in 1873 by Pierre Van Beneden in a lecture to the royal Academy of Belgium, and in 1877, Alfred Espinas' doctoral thesis documented multiple examples of mutualisms. Then, in an important 1893 paper, Roscoe Pound finally challenged the romantic notion of mutualism as help given freely and selflessly between organisms, explaining that each organism in a mutualism is simply acting in its own self interest. The plover, for example, is obtaining food, and the crocodile is being relieved of parasites. The fact that such an interaction is mutually beneficial makes it a mutualism; the individual organism's intent is irrelevant.

As ecology developed into a science in the twentieth century, interest in mutualisms remained at the fringes of the discipline, with most research on community-level interaction focusing on competition. Mutualism did not emerge as an important area of study until the 1970s. Today every ecology text includes extensive discussion and examples of the role of mutualisms in species interactions and community dynamics, helping further explain niche diversification and the coexistence of so many species in ecosystems. Competitive and mutualistic interactions are now seen as parallel components of such important concepts as dominance, coevolution, and diversity.

Mutualisms have historically been important to agriculture, which in itself can be viewed as an obligate mutualism between humans and the crop plants and livestock we have domesticated. Traditional agroecosystems developed around facilitating mutualisms such as the *Rhizobium*–legume relationship (described in the next chapter), and coordinating the influences of beneficial insects and noncrop species. Industrial agriculture tends to eliminate these beneficial interactions and replace them with human-derived inputs.

can form nodules on the roots of most plants in the Fabaceae (legume) family. Making such relationships an integral part of crop communities is key to establishing sustainable systems that require fewer external inputs and less human intervention.

By contributing beneficial interactions mutualisms in agroecosystems increase the resistance of the entire system to the negative impacts of pests, diseases, and weeds. At the same time, the efficiency of energy capture, nutrient uptake, and recycling in the system may be improved. Whenever mutualistic relationships can be incorporated into the organization of the cropping community, sustainability is much easier to achieve and maintain.

MUTUALLY BENEFICIAL INTERFERENCES AT WORK IN AGROECOSYSTEMS

Many sustainable traditional agroecosystems, upon analysis, reveal species interactions and modes of interference that benefit the community as a whole. Similar agroecosystems have been developed out of agroecological research and practical experimentation by farmers. These systems are based on the purposeful combining of various crop and noncrop species—including covercrops with crops, weeds with crops, and crops with other crops—in order to allow coexistence and take advantage of mutualistic relationships.

Beneficial Interferences of Covercrops

In a crop community, covercrops are plant species (usually grasses or legumes) grown in pure or mixed stands to cover the soil of the crop community for part or all of the year. They are often planted after the harvest of the primary crop to cover the soil during the fallow season, but they can also be planted in alternating years with the primary crop or grown in association with the primary crop. The covercrop plants may be incorporated into the soil by tillage in seasonal covercrop systems, or retained as live or dead plants on the soil surface for several seasons. When covercrops are tilled into the soil, the organic matter added to the soil is called **green manure**. When the covercrops are grown directly in association with other crops, they are called living mulch (Figure 16.3).

FIGURE 16.3 Covercrop of belbean (*V. faba*) and barley (*H. vulgare*), Watsonville, CA. This mixed covercrop inhibits weed growth, and when its biomass is returned to the soil, it adds organic matter and fixed nitrogen.

No matter how they are incorporated into the crop community, covercrops have important impacts on the environment, many of which can be highly beneficial. These impacts arise from the ability of covercrops to modify the soil–atmosphere interface, to offer physical protection of the soil from sunlight, wind, and rain, and to engage in a variety of addition and removal interferences. The benefits that accrue to the crop community—known to agriculture for a long time—include reduced soil erosion, improved soil structure, enhanced soil fertility, and suppression of weeds, insects and pathogens. Some covercrops can even be used for animal feed or grazing, with the animals adding manure that is reincorporated back into the soil along with any residual plant matter. When covercrops can fulfill these roles in the crop community, there is less need for human manipulation and external inputs. Table 16.1 lists many of the benefits of covercrops along with the interferences (environmental impacts) that make them possible.

Despite the proven benefit of covercrops in general, their use must be tailored to the individual agroecosystem. The farmer needs to know how a covercrop species will interact with other organisms in the crop system, as well as how it will impact the conditions of the environment in which they all live. In addition, it must be remembered that forms of interference between members of the crop community that may be of benefit at one time may be a liability at another. If resources in the crop system are limiting, the covercrop can create competitive interference. If allowed to become too dense, some covercrop species may be allelopathic to the crop. Residues or breakdown products of incorporated covercrops may produce growth-suppressing substances. Damaging herbivores or disease organisms may find the covercrop species to be an ideal alternate host, later moving onto the crop. Covercrop residue may also interfere

TABLE 16.1
Potential Benefits of Covercrops

	Interferences	Benefits to Crop Community
Impacts on soil structure	Enhanced root penetration in upper soil layers; shielding of soil surface from sunlight, wind, and the physical impact of raindrops; addition of organic matter to soil; enhanced biological activity in root zone	• Improved water infiltration • Reduced soil crust formation • Decreased runoff • Less soil erosion • More stable soil aggregates • Increased percentage of macropores • Decreased soil compaction • Decreased bulk density
Impacts on soil fertility	Creation of cooler, moister surface and subsurface habitat; fixation of nitrogen by *Rhizobium* bacteria; carbon fixation (greater biomass); capture of nutrients by roots	• Increased organic matter content • Retention of nutrients in system • Prevention of leaching loss • Increased nitrogen content • Greater diversity of beneficial biota in soil
Impacts on pest organisms	Addition of allelopathic compounds; removal of resources (light and nutrients) needed by weeds; creation of habitat for beneficial predators, parasites, and parasitoids; modification of microclimate	• Inhibition of weeds by allelopathy • Competitive suppression of weeds • Control of soil pathogens by allelochemicals • Increased presence of beneficial organisms • Suppression of pest organisms

Sources: Adapted from Lal, R. et al., Expectations of cover crops for sustainable agriculture, in: Hargrove, W.L. (ed.), *Cover Crops for Clean Water*, Soil and Water Conservation Society, Ankeny, IA, 1991, pp. 1–14; Altieri, M.A., Cover cropping and mulching, in: Altieri, M.A. (ed.), *Agroecology: The Science of Sustainable Agriculture*, 2nd edn., Westview Press, Boulder, CO, 1995a, pp. 219–232; Magdoff, F. and Weil, R.R., *Soil Organic Matter in Sustainable Agriculture*, Advances in Agroecology Series, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2004.

CASE STUDY: COVERCROPPING WITH RYE AND BELLBEANS

Multispecies covercrop systems often confer greater benefits to the agroecosystem than a covercrop of just one of the component species. These benefits arise from interactions between the species in the mixture.

One such system has been studied at the farm facility at the Center for Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems at the University of California, Santa Cruz (UCSC). A legume (bellbean) is mixed with a grass (cereal rye) as a winter covercrop for vegetable fields. This multispecies covercrop has been used by local farmers since the turn of the century. Farmers plant the grass–legume mixture following the harvest of the summer crop, before winter rains begin. It is allowed to grow through the cool, wet months of winter and is disked into the soil in March or early April. The summer vegetable crop is then planted toward the end of May. The UCSC study used cabbage as the vegetable crop (Table 16.2).

Rye produces significant amounts of biomass and limits weed growth in the plots, most likely through the release of allelopathic chemicals (Brooks 2008). Bellbeans bring nitrogen into the system through their symbiotic relationship with nitrogen-fixing bacteria, but they produce limited biomass and have only a minor effect on weed growth. When bellbeans and rye are planted together, the advantages of both are combined: the mixture suppresses weed growth, is highly productive, and adds nitrogen to the system. But that is not all. The mixed covercrop does a better job of increasing nitrogen levels in the soil than does a legume-only crop, even when the legume-only crop has a higher legume biomass. It is possible that the increased organic matter being disked in with the bellbeans slows decomposition, retaining more nitrogen in the soil.

The mixed covercrop also proves to be of benefit to the vegetable crop that follows it. Although cabbage yield was highest in the bellbean–only treatment, it was not statistically different from the high cabbage yield of the rye–bellbean treatment, and both yields were significantly higher than those for rye alone and the control. Because of the greater bulk of organic matter it adds to the soil, the mixed covercrop would probably show the greatest benefits over a period of many years.

TABLE 16.2
Impact of Bellbeans (*V. faba*) and Cereal Rye (*S. cereale*) on Various Factors of the Crop Environment

	Total Biomass, g/m²			Weed Biomass, g/m²		Cabbage Yield, kg/100 m²
Covercrop	**1985**	**1986**	**1987**	**1986**	**1987**	**1987**
Bellbeans	138	325	403	17.4	80.7	849.0
Rye	502	696	671	0.7	9.7	327.8
Rye/bellbeans	464	692	448	0.3	3.9	718.0
None (control)	n.d.	130	305	112.3	305.1	611.0

Source: Data from Gliessman, S.R., Allelopathy and agricultural sustainability, in: Chou, C.H. and Waller, G.R. (eds.), *Phytochemical Ecology: Allelochemicals, Mycotoxins and Insect Pheromones and Allomones*, Institute of Botany, Taipei, Taiwan, 1989, pp. 69–80.

with cultivation, weeding, harvesting, or other farming activities.

The case study Covercropping with Rye and Bellbeans describes a study that demonstrates the ability of covercrops, especially those that are made up of mixed species, to control weeds and increase the yield of the subsequent main crop.

BENEFICIAL INTERFERENCES OF WEEDS

Weeds in cropping systems are most often considered to be detrimental, competing with the crop species and thereby reducing yields. Although weeds do often have negative effects on crops, it has been clearly shown that in many circumstances weeds and other noncrop plants may benefit the crop community through their effects on the environment (Radosevich et al. 1997). The use potential of such “noncrop” species in traditional cultures has been known for a long time (Chacón and Gliessman 1982). Weeds exert their beneficial influences in much the same way as covercrops and often fill the same ecological roles; with proper management based on an understanding of the mechanisms of weeds’ interactions, farmers can take advantage of their positive effects.

Modification of the Cropping System Environment

Weeds can protect the soil surface from erosion through root and foliar cover, take up nutrients that might otherwise be leached from the system, add organic matter to the soil, and selectively inhibit the development of more noxious species through allelopathy. Most of these benefits of weeds

CASE STUDY: MUSTARD COVERCROP FOR FUJI APPLES

Using covercrops to suppress the growth of invasive weeds can help reduce the need for herbicides in an agroecosystem. To be useful, however, a covercrop must exclude other weeds without inhibiting the growth of the crop plant. Wild mustard (*Brassica kaber*) appears to be a covercrop that meets these requirements well when planted in fruit orchards (Figure 16.4).

In a study of the conversion from conventional to organic management of young Fuji semidwarf apple trees, James Paulus, a graduate student researcher at the UCSC, demonstrated the potential use of mustard as a covercrop species (Paulus 1994). He grew several different types of covercrops between the trees in different plots and examined their effectiveness at weed control. The covercrop treatments were compared to conventional management with herbicides and to an organic conversion plot using plastic tarp for weed control.

Mustard was the only covercrop tested that controlled weeds as effectively as conventional herbicides or plastic tarp. Forty-five days after mustard emerged it had displaced nearly all of the other weed plants in the plot and it accounted for 99% of the total weed biomass present. Other covercrops only achieved partial dominance, accounting for no more than 42% of the total weed biomass in their respective plots.

It appears that mustard achieves this level of dominance through allelopathic inhibition of other weeds. Many members of the genus *Brassica*, including mustard, have been observed to inhibit weed growth in the field, and research has shown they contain allelopathic chemicals called glucosinolates that inhibit seed germination (Gliessman 1987; Zukalová and Vašák 2002; Haramoto and Gallandt 2004). Seeds of monocot grasses—often a problem as weeds—are the most strongly inhibited.

Paulus found that the mustard not only inhibited weeds effectively, but actually helped increase apple production. Trees in the plots with a mustard covercrop produced more than three times as many apples per tree as trees in the conventional plots. And the trees grown with mustard increased in girth more rapidly, showing diameters as much as 50% larger than trees in the conventional plots after 2 years.

At least part of the yield advantage in the mustard-cover-cropped plots was due to improved nutrient cycling. Analysis showed that the weed cover took up significant amounts of nitrogen during the winter, lowering its concentrations in the soil. When the winter rains came, nitrogen in the bare soil treatments was leached out and lost from the system, whereas the nitrogen in the covercrop treatments was immobilized in the weed biomass. When the covercrop was cut down in the spring, the nitrogen was made available to the trees to use for spring and summer growth.

FIGURE 16.4 Wild mustard covercrop in an apple orchard. Wild mustard (*B. kaber*) adds an array of species interactions to an apple agroecosystem by attracting beneficial insects to its flowers and allelopathically inhibiting other weedy plants.

stem from the fact that ecologically weeds are *r*-selected pioneer species, invading open or disturbed habitats, and through their effects on the environment initiate the process of succession toward more complex communities. Most crop communities, especially those composed of predominantly annual species, are simplified, disturbed habitats. Weeds are especially well adapted to such conditions. When we gain an understanding of the ecological basis of the effects of weeds on the crop environment, we can utilize their interference in ways that reduce the need for inputs from outside the crop community.

Control of Insect Pests by Promotion of Beneficial Insects

Agriculture is usually concerned with keeping both weeds and insects out of the production system. This takes large amounts of external inputs to accomplish, and does not always provide the hoped-for results. When interactions between weeds and insects are examined from an ecological point of view, however, the possibility of retaining weeds in the system in order to control the unwanted insects emerges as an option. A body of literature is accumulating that supports the hypothesis that certain weeds should be regarded as important components of the crop community because of the positive effects they can have on populations of beneficial insects (Nichols and Altieri 2013). Depending on the type of beneficial insect, weeds can modify the microenvironment in ways that provide habitat for the insect, and they can provide alternative food sources such as pollen, nectar, foliage, or prey (Radosevich et al. 1997; Norris and Kogan 2005).

In a study where weed species were planted as narrow border strips (0.25 m wide) around 5 m × 5 m plots of cauliflower, it was found that certain pest insects were reduced as a result of the increase in predatory or parasitic beneficials (Ruiz-Rosado 1984). For example, with the weeds *Spergula arvensis* (corn spurry) and *Chenopodium album* (lamb's quarters) planted in pure borders around the crop, larvae and eggs of the common imported cabbage worm (*Pieris rapae*) and the cabbage looper (*Trichoplusia ni*) were much more heavily parasitized by beneficials such as the tachinid fly *Madremyia saundersii*. The adult tachinids are attracted to the food sources provided by the weeds and then search out prey on which to lay their eggs in the crop nearby (Figure 16.5).

A study of the fauna associated with various weeds monitored the insects associated with 80 plant species sown as monocultures in a total of 360 plots (Nentwig 1998). Sampling revealed that most weedy species had 100–300 arthropods/m^2; 500 or more arthropods were found per square meter on weedy poppy (*Papaver rhoeas*), tansy (*Tanacetum vulgare*), and the crops rape (*Brassica napus*) and buckwheat (*Fagopyrum esculentum*), which may grow adventitiously in areas previously sown to these plants. Considering the trophic structure of the arthropod communities, results were even more striking. Of all arthropods, phytophagous insects constituted about 65% of the species (most values between 45% and 80%) but the composition of the remaining arthropods was split among beneficial pollinators, predators, and parasitoids.

FIGURE 16.5 A border of corn spurry (*S. arvensis*) around a cauliflower crop. The weed's flowers attract beneficial insects.

As another example, significant reductions in aphid populations extended throughout the field when *Spergula* was a more evenly distributed member of the weed/insect/crop complex (Theunissen and van Duden 1980). Leaving weedy borders with grasses and legumes on the margins of corn and soybean fields in Michigan was shown to greatly increase the presence of predatory ground-dwelling carabid beetles in the crops (Landis et al. 2005).

INTERCROPPING

Whenever two or more crops are planted together in the same cropping system, the resulting interactions can have mutually beneficial effects and effectively reduce the need for external inputs. The body of information documenting these interactions has grown considerably in recent years (van Noordwijk et al. 2004; Mousavi and Eskandari 2011), and several authors have discussed how an ecological approach to multiple cropping research can provide an understanding of how the benefits of intercropping come about (Vandermeer 2011; Ong et al. 2004).

The most successful intercropping systems are known from the tropics, where a high percentage of agricultural production still is grown in mixtures. Because smaller-scale farmers in the tropics have limited access to purchased inputs, they have developed intercropping combinations that are adapted to low external input management (Joshi et al. 2004; Lithourgidis et al. 2011).

The traditional corn, bean, and squash polyculture cropping system of Central America and Mexico, with roots in the pre-Hispanic period, has been studied in some detail. Both removal and addition interferences occur in this system, leading to habitat modifications and mutualistic relationships of benefit to all three crops (Figure 16.6).

FIGURE 16.6 The traditional corn–bean–squash intercrop system from Mesoamerica. Complex species interactions are key to the success of this cropping system.

In a series of studies of the corn–bean–squash polyculture, done in Tabasco, Mexico, it was shown that corn yields could be stimulated as much as 50% beyond monoculture yields when planted with beans and squash using the techniques of local farmers and planting on land that had only been managed using local traditional practices (Amador and Gliessman 1990). There was significant yield reduction for the two associated crop species, but the total yields for the three crops together were higher than what would have been obtained in an equivalent area planted to monocultures of the three crops. As shown in Table 16.3, this comparison is made using the concept of *land equivalent ratio* (*LER*), explained in greater detail in Chapter 17. An LER greater than 1 indicates that an intercropping system is **overyielding** in relation to monocultures of its component crops.

Additional research has identified some of the ecological mechanisms of these yield increases:

- In a polyculture with corn, beans nodulate more and are potentially more active in biological fixation of nitrogen (Boucher and Espinosa 1982; Santalla et al. 2001; Cardoso 2007).
- Fixed nitrogen is made directly available to the corn through mycorrhizal fungi connections between root systems (Bethlenfalvay et al. 1991; Hauggaard-Nielsen and Jensen 2005).
- Net gains of nitrogen in the soil have been observed when the crops are associated, despite its removal with the harvest (Gliessman 1982; Maingi et al. 2001).
- The squash helps control weeds: the thick, broad, horizontal leaves block sunlight, preventing weed germination and growth, while leachates in rains washing the leaves contain allelopathic compounds that can inhibit weeds (Gliessman 1983; Fujiyoshi et al. 2002, 2007).
- Herbivorous insects are at a disadvantage in the intercrop system because food sources are less concentrated and more difficult to find in the mixture (Risch 1980; Verkerk et al. 1998; Altieri and Nicholls 2004b, Gurr et al. 2012).

TABLE 16.3

Yield of a Corn–Bean–Squash Polyculture Compared to Yields of the Same Crops Grown as Monocultures in Tabasco, Mexico

	Low-Density Monoculture[a]	High-Density Monoculture[a]	Polyculture
Corn density (plants/ha)	40,000	66,000	50,000
Corn yield (kg/ha)[b]	1,150	1,230	1,720
Bean density (plants/ha)	64,000	100,000	40,000
Bean yield (kg/ha)[b]	740	610	110
Squash density (plants/ha)	1,875	7,500	3,330
Squash yield (kg/ha)[b]	250	430	80
LER			1.97[c] 1.77[d]

Source: Data from Amador, M.F., *Comportamiento de tres especies (Maiz, Frijol, Calabaza) en policultivos en la Chontalpa, Tabasco, Mexico*, Tesis Profesional, CSAT, Cardenas, Tabasco, Mexico, 1980.

[a] The monoculture densities were designed to represent levels just above and below the normal monoculture planting densities.

[b] Yields for corn and beans are expressed as dried grains and squash as fresh fruits.

[c] Compared to low-density monoculture.

[d] Compared to high-density monoculture.

- The presence of beneficial insects is promoted due to such factors as the availability of more attractive microclimatic conditions and the presence of more diverse pollen and nectar sources (Letourneau 1986; Verkerk et al. 1998).

Interestingly, when the same varieties of corn, bean, and squash were simultaneously planted in the same way in a nearby soil that had at least 10 years of management history involving mechanical cultivation, synthetic chemical fertilizers, and modern pesticides, the yield advantages disappeared. Apparently the positive interactions that occurred in the traditional farm field were inhibited by the alteration of the soil ecosystem that occurred with conventional inputs and practices. This result points to an important link between cultural practices and ecological conditions.

The corn–bean–squash intercrop is only one of many crop combinations that either exist or could be developed. Our knowledge of the ecological mechanisms of interference that function in this crop community provides a tantalizing indication of what we can look for in mixtures anywhere farming occurs.

An enormous number of polycultures exist, reflecting the wide variety of crops and management practices that farmers around the world use to meet their requirements for food, fiber, feed, fuel, forage, cash, and other needs. Intercrop communities can include mixtures of annuals, annuals with perennials, or perennials with perennials. Legumes can be grown with an array of cereals, and vegetable crops may be grown in between rows of fruit trees. The patterns of planting such mixtures can range from alternating rows of two crops to complex assortments of annual herbs, shrubs, and trees, as found in home garden agroecosystems (see Chapter 18). Planting and harvesting in polycultures can be distributed in both time and space to provide advantage to the farmer throughout the year. The integration of animals helps form even more fully integrated mixed crop communities (see Chapter 19). Understanding the ecological foundation of the interactions that take place in these crop communities is the key to returning polyculture to prominence in agricultural practice.

USING SPECIES INTERACTIONS FOR SUSTAINABILITY

In natural ecosystems, organisms occur in communities of mixed species assemblages. Our ability to understand the complexity of interactions going on in such mixtures has benefited greatly from a growing body of ecological knowledge focused at each of the four levels of organization in ecosystems. The community ecology level discussed in this chapter is based on an understanding of the individual organism level and the population level. At the community level of organization, unique qualities begin to emerge as a result of multispecies interactions. These qualities have importance at the ecosystem level, as we will see in following chapters.

The challenge for agroecologists, then, is to put this ecological understanding into the context of sustainability. It is important that we combine the agronomists' extensive knowledge of the ecology and management of single-species populations of crops with the ecologists' extensive knowledge of species interactions and community processes. It is time to redirect a large portion of the resources that have generated all of the knowledge about single-species cropping systems toward the integration of both ecological and agronomic knowledge, and to do so with the broader goal of developing the ability to manage the entire community of interacting organisms, both crop and noncrop, and understand how each species contributes to the sustainability of the whole system. This is an extremely complex process, requiring a systems-level approach and the interaction of many disciplines, but the end result will be a better understanding of how effective change in agriculture can come about.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What are some of the primary impediments to convincing farmers of the potential advantages of managing complex, multispecies cropping systems?
2. Give an example of a complex cropping community where competition and mutualisms may play different but equally important roles in the success of the entire crop system.
3. Describe an example of how coexistence and mutualisms in a crop community can be essential to the success of a biological control mechanism for a particular crop pest.
4. A noncrop organism can have either positive or negative impacts on the rest of the crop community of which it is a member. Explain how this is possible.
5. Describe a complex cropping community of crop and noncrop populations that allows for a significant reduction in the use of nonrenewable synthetic agricultural chemicals. Be sure to explain the contribution made by each member of the crop community.
6. What are several "emergent qualities" of a crop community that are not evident at the population or single individual level in an agroecosystem?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Agroecology in Action
www.agroeco.org
The website of Professor Miguel Altieri, at the University of California, Berkeley, with extensive material on agroecological pest and habitat management.

Biodiversity International
www.bioversityinternational.org
A research-for-development organization that provides scientific evidence of the role that on-farm and wild agricultural and forest biodiversity can play in a more

nutritious, resilient, productive and adaptable food and agricultural system.

Department of Community Ecology, Center for Environmental Research (Germany)
www.ufz.de/index.php?en = 798
Focuses on the analysis and assessment of natural and anthropogenic structural changes in biological communities, and thus on the development of a scientific basis for understanding and managing biodiversity.

Natural Systems Agriculture Group, University of Manitoba
www.umanitoba.ca/outreach/naturalagriculture/articles/intercrop.html
This research group makes extensive use of intercropping in its approach to sustainable agriculture.

RECOMMENDED READING

Bardgett, R. D. and D. A. Wardle. 2010. *Aboveground–Belowground Linkages: Biotic Interactions, Ecosystem Processes and Global Change*. Oxford Series in Ecology and Evolution. Oxford University Press: London, U.K.
A thorough review of community ecology, focusing on the influence of interactions between above- and belowground components on ecosystem structure and function, and the importance of this understanding in the face of climate change.

Eilittä, M., J. Mureithi, and R. Derpsch (eds.). 2004. *Green Manure Cover Crop Systems of Smallholder Farmers: Experiences from Tropical and Subtropical Regions.* Springer: New York.
A volume providing 12 in-depth case studies of smallholder intercropping strategies, analyzed from an interdisciplinary perspective.

Francis, C. A. (ed.). 1986. *Multiple Cropping Systems.* Macmillan: New York.
One of the classic treatments of the agronomy and ecology of the great diversity of multiple cropping systems from around the world.

Francis, C. A. 1990. *Sustainable Agriculture in Temperate Zones*. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
An overview of sustainable agriculture for the developed world, with good examples of how multiple cropping may play a role.

Gurr, G. M., S. D. Wratten, and W. E. Snyder, with D. Read (eds.). 2012. *Biodiversity and Insect Pests: Key Issues for Sustainable Management*. Wiley-Blackwell: London, U.K.
This book brings together world leaders in theoretical, methodological, and applied aspects of our understanding of the importance of biodiversity in agroecosystems, and provides a comprehensive treatment of how biodiversity management and pest management converge.

Hajek, A. E. 2004. *Natural Enemies: An Introduction to Biological Control.* Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
An in-depth review of biological control of arthropods, vertebrates, weeds, and plant pathogens through use of natural enemies.

Huffaker, C. B. and P. S. Messenger. 1976. *Theory and Practice of Biological Control*. Academic Press: New York.
The classic reference on biological control, with emphasis on the management of crop communities as a foundation.

Innis, D. Q. 1997. *Intercropping and the Scientific Basis of Traditional Agriculture*. Intermediate Technology Development Group: London, U.K.
Compares the practice and science of intercropping in traditional agricultural systems of several developing countries.

Liebman, M., C. L. Mohler, and C. P. Staver. 2007. *Ecological Management of Agricultural Weeds*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
A very complete review of the principles and applications of ecological weed management in a range of temperate and tropical farming systems with several chapters that emphasize community ecology aspects.

Morin, P. J. 2011. *Community Ecology*, 2nd edn. Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
An introduction to community ecology, with examples of interactions between plants and animals in aquatic and terrestrial habitats.

Narwal, S. S., R. E. Hoagland, R. H. Dilday, and M. R. Roger. 2000. *Allelopathy in Ecological Agriculture and Forestry.* Springer: New York.
A review of allelopathy research, with case studies from several countries.

Rice, E. L. 1995. *Biological Control of Weeds and Plant Diseases: Advances in Applied Allelopathy.* University of Oklahoma Press: Norman, OK.
An excellent review of allelopathy as a means of managing weed and disease populations in crop or forest communities.

Vandermeer, J. H. 2011. *The Ecology of Agroecosystems*. Jones & Bartlett Publishers: Boston, MA.
A detailed exploration of the ecological theory and approaches to understanding the ecology of agroecosystems, with many references to intercropping systems.

van Noordwijk, M., G. Cadish, and C. K. Ong (eds.). 2004. *Below-Ground Interactions in Tropical Agroecosystems: Concepts and Models with Multiple Plant Components*. CABI Publishing: Cambridge, MA.
A synthesis of plant–soil–plant interactions in agroforestry and intercropping, with a focus on agroecological processes in multiple cropping systems.

17 Agroecosystem Diversity

Both agroecosystems and natural ecosystems are made up of organisms and the nonliving physical environment in which the organisms live. The three preceding chapters have been concerned primarily with the organismal, or biotic, components of these systems, at the level of populations and communities. In this chapter, we begin to add the abiotic components of ecosystems to the picture, thereby reaching the ecosystem level of study. At this level, we look at systems as wholes, gaining a more complete picture of their structure and functioning.

The complexity that characterizes whole systems is the basis for ecological interactions that are a crucial foundation for sustainable agroecosystem design. These interactions are largely a function of the *diversity* of a system.

Diversity is at once a product, a measure, and a foundation of a system's complexity and therefore, of its ability to support sustainable functioning. From one perspective, ecosystem diversity comes about as a result of the ways that the different living and nonliving components of the system are organized and interact. From another perspective, diversity—as manifested by the complex of biogeochemical cycles and the variety of living organisms—is what makes the organization and interactions of the system possible.

In this chapter, we first explore what it means to manage agroecosystems as whole systems, taking advantage of their emergent qualities. We then examine biodiversity in natural ecosystems, the value of diversity in an agroecosystem setting, how diversity is evaluated, and the possible role of island biogeography theory in managing diversity. Finally, we explore the connections between ecological diversity and sustainability in terms of developing a framework for agroecosystem design and management.

WHOLE-SYSTEM APPROACHES AND OPPORTUNITIES

In the previous chapter, we saw how the interactions among the populations of a crop community lead to emergent qualities that exist only at the community level. At the ecosystem level, another set of emergent qualities exist that make the agroecosystem much greater than the sum of its parts (or the farm much greater than the sum of the crop plants in its fields). Management that works at this level can take advantage of a huge array of beneficial interactions and processes.

MANAGING THE WHOLE SYSTEM

Agroecology emphasizes the need to study both the parts and the whole. Although the concept of the whole being greater than the sum of its parts is widely recognized, it has been ignored for a long time by modern agronomy and technology, which emphasize the detailed study of the individual crop plant or animal as a way of dealing with the complex issues of farm production and viability. We have learned a great deal from specialization and a narrow focus on the yield of the crop components of farming systems, but an understanding of the entire farm (and the whole food system) must also be developed to fully understand agricultural sustainability and implement sustainable management practices.

When agroecosystem management considers the opportunities presented by the emergent qualities of whole systems, the paradigm of *controlling* conditions and populations is replaced by the paradigm of *managing* them. Under the management paradigm, we are always striving to consider the effects on the whole system of any action or practice, and we deliberately design practices that build on whole-system functioning and emergent qualities.

Under the industrial approach, the attempt to rigidly control and homogenize all the conditions separately too often results in the elimination of beneficial relationships and interferences, leaving only negative interference and interactions. Industrial or conventional management practices work primarily at the individual or population level of the system, rather than at the community and ecosystem levels, where more complex interactions can take place.

The problems inherent in the population-level, control-oriented industrial approach are readily seen in the way it has been applied to pest, weed, and pathogen control during the past several decades. Based on the principle that the only good bug or weed is a dead one, an incredible array of technologies have been developed to remove or eliminate each target pest from the cropping system. These technologies have simplified agroecosystems in various ways—for example, by eliminating the predators of the target pests. In simplified agroecosystems, however, pest invasions become more common and pernicious, and the use of external inputs must increase to deal with the resulting problems.

BUILDING ON DIVERSITY

The central priority in whole-system management is creating a more complex, diverse agroecosystem, because

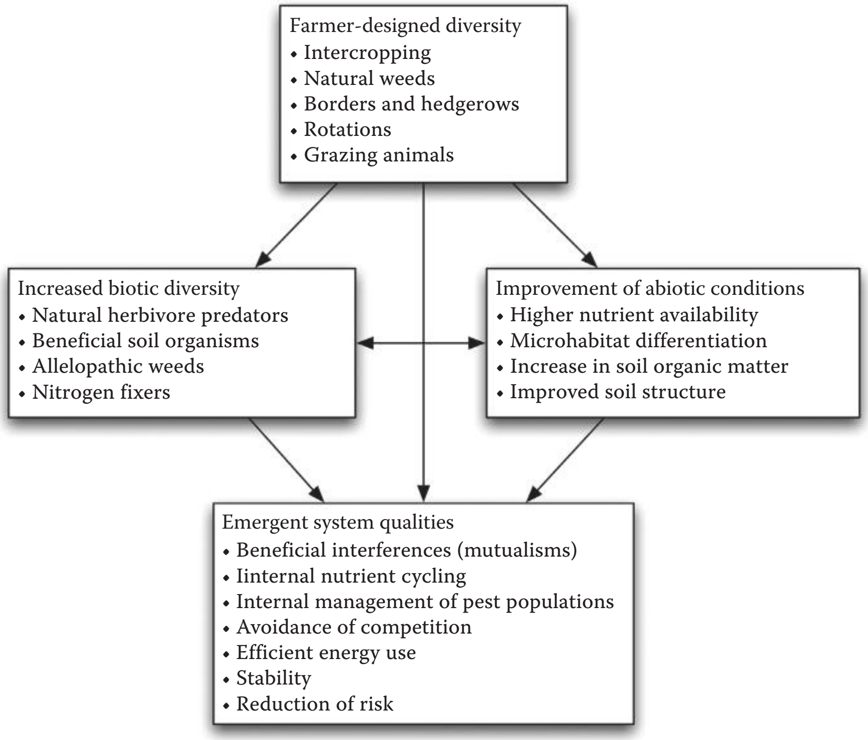


FIGURE 17.1 **System dynamics in diverse agroecosystems.**

only with high diversity is there a potential for beneficial interactions. The farmer begins by increasing the number of plant species in the system, through a variety of planting practices and principles that increase diversity as discussed in the rest of this chapter. Then livestock may be integrated with the crops, as discussed in Chapter 19. This diversification leads to positive changes in the abiotic conditions and attracts populations of beneficial arthropods and other animals. Emergent qualities develop that allow the system—with appropriate management of its specific components—to function in ways that maintain fertility and productivity and regulate pest populations. This very general conceptualization of the dynamics of managing a diverse agroecosystem is sketched out in Figure 17.1.

In a diverse and complex system, many if not all the challenges facing farmers can be met with appropriate management of system components and interactions, making the addition of external inputs largely unnecessary. In the area of pest management, for example, pest populations can be controlled by system interactions intentionally set up by the agroecosystem manager. In the area of nutrient cycling, as another example, animals can convert plant matter humans can't consume into manure for use on the farm.

The many methods of "alternative" pest management developed by organic farmers and agroecologists are a good example of diversity-based whole-system management. These methods rely on increasing agroecosystem diversity and complexity as a foundation for establishing beneficial interactions that keep pest populations in check. Descriptions of several of these methods, as applied in specific agroecosystems, are presented in Table 17.1.

ECOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

In ecology, the concept of diversity tends to be applied mainly at the community level: diversity is understood as the number of different species making up a community in a particular location. Ecosystems, however, have other kinds of variety and heterogeneity beyond that encompassed by the number of species. They have diversity in the spatial arrangement of their components, for example, as shown by the different canopy levels in a forest. They have diversity in their functional processes and diversity in the genomes of their biota. And since they change in various ways over time, both cyclically and directionally, they have what could be called temporal diversity.

Diversity, therefore, has a variety of different *dimensions*. When these dimensions are recognized and defined, the concept of diversity itself is broadened and complexified—it becomes what we will call **ecological diversity**.

Some of the possible dimensions of ecological diversity are listed in Table 17.2. Other dimensions may be recognized and defined, but these seven are the dimensions that will be used in this text. (The term *biodiversity* is commonly used to refer to a combination of species diversity and genetic diversity.) These different dimensions of ecological diversity are useful tools for fully understanding diversity in both natural ecosystems and agroecosystems.

TABLE 17.1
Representative Examples of Alternative Pest Management Based on System Interactions

Pest Problem	Alternative Management Practice	Mechanism(s) of Action
Flea beetle (*Phyllotreta cruciferae*) damage on broccoli	Intercropping weedy mustard (*Brassica* spp.)	Trap crop attracts the pest away from the crop
Grape leafhopper (*Erythroneura elegantula*) damage on grape vines	Border plantings of weedy blackberries (*Rubus* spp.)	Increases abundance of alternate hosts for parasitic wasp *A. epos*
Aphid (*Rhopalosiphum maidis*) damage on sugarcane	Border plantings of aggressive grassy weeds	Grassy weeds displace other plants that harbor the aphid
Corn earworm (*Heliothis zea*) damage	Allowing development of a natural weed complex in the corn	Enhances presence and effectiveness of predators of pest eggs and larvae
Fall armyworm (*Spodoptera frugiperda*) damage in corn	Intercropping with beans	Increases beneficial insect abundance and activity
Whitefly (*Aleurotrachelus socialis*) damage on cassava	Intercropping with cowpeas	Increases plant vigor and abundance of natural whitefly enemies
Webworm (*Antigastra* sp.) damage on sesame	Intercropping with corn or sorghum	Shading by the taller companion crops repels the pest
Diamondback moth (*Plutella xylostella*) damage on cabbage	Intercropping with tomato	Repels moth chemically, or masks presence of cabbage
Codling moth (*Cydia pomonella*) damage in apple orchards	Covercropping with specific plant species	Provides additional food and habitat for natural enemies of codling moths
Pacific mite (*Eotetranychus willamette*) damage in vineyards	Covercropping with grass	Promotes presence of predatory mites by providing winter habitat for alternative prey
Sugar beet cyst nematode (*Heterodera schachtii*) damage on sugar beet roots	Rotations with alfalfa	Provide "biological break" when no host plant is present
Western flower thrip (*Frankliniella occidentalis*) damage in flowering grapes	Flowering corridors	Provide a biological highway for predators to disperse into the center of the vineyard

Sources: Adapted from Altieri, M.A. and Nicholls, C.I., *Biodiversity and Pest Management in Agroecosystems*, 2nd edn., Howarth Press, Binghamton, New York, 2004b; Andow, D.A., *Annu. Rev. Entomol.*, 36, 561, 1991.

TABLE 17.2
Dimensions of Ecological Diversity in an Ecosystem

Dimension	Description
Species	Number of different species in the system
Genetic	Degree of variability of genetic information in the system (within each species and among different species)
Vertical	Number of distinct horizontal layers or levels in the system
Horizontal	Pattern of spatial distribution of organisms in the system
Structural	Number of "locations" (niches, trophic roles) in the system organization
Functional	Complexity of interaction, energy flow, and material cycling among system components
Temporal	Degree of heterogeneity of cyclical changes (daily, seasonal, etc.) in the system

DIVERSITY IN NATURAL ECOSYSTEMS

Diversity seems to be an inherent characteristic of most natural ecosystems. Although the degree of diversity among different ecosystems varies greatly, ecosystems in general tend to express as great a diversity as possible given the constraints of their abiotic environments.

Diversity is in part a function of evolutionary dynamics. As discussed in Chapter 15, mutation, genetic recombination, and natural selection combine to produce variability, innovation, and differentiation among earth's biota. Once diversity is generated, it tends to be self-reinforcing. Greater species diversity leads to greater differentiation of habitats and greater productivity, which in turn allow even greater species diversity.

Diversity has an important role in maintaining ecosystem structure and function. Ever since Tansley (1935) coined the term "ecosystem" to refer to the combination of plant and animal communities and their physical environment, ecologists have attempted to demonstrate the relationship between the diversity of a system and its stability. Natural ecosystems generally conform to the principle that greater diversity allows greater resistance to perturbation and disturbance. Ecosystems with high diversity tend to be more resilient—to be able to recover from disturbance and restore balance in their processes of material cycling and energy flow. In ecosystems with low diversity, disturbance can more easily cause permanent shifts in functioning, resulting in the loss of resources from the ecosystem and changes in its species makeup.

Scale of Diversity

The size of the area being considered has an impact on how diversity (species diversity in particular) is measured.

SPECIAL TOPIC: *RHIZOBIUM* BACTERIA, LEGUMES, AND THE NITROGEN CYCLE

One important way of taking advantage of ecological diversity is to introduce nitrogen-fixing legumes into the agroecosystem. As a result of the mutualistic relationship between the leguminous plants and bacteria of the genus *Rhizobium*, nitrogen derived from the atmosphere is made available to all the biotic members of the system. The ability of a system to supply its needs for nitrogen in this way is an emergent quality made possible by biotic diversity.

Rhizobium bacteria possess the ability to capture atmospheric nitrogen from the air in the soil and convert it to a form that is usable by the bacteria and also by plants. These bacteria can live freely in the soil; however, when legume plants are present, the bacteria infect the plants' root structure. A bacterium moves into an internal root cell, causing it to differentiate and form a nodule in which the bacterium can reproduce. The bacteria in a root nodule begin to receive all the sugars they need from the host plant, giving up their ability to live independently; they reciprocate by making the nitrogen they fix available to the host. The interaction provides an advantage to both organisms: the plant is able to obtain nitrogen that would otherwise not be available to it, and the bacteria are able to maintain a much higher population level than they can in the soil. A great deal is that more nitrogen fixation occurs with nodulated legumes, therefore, than with free-living *Rhizobium* alone. When the host plant dies, the bacteria can revert to an autotrophic lifestyle and reenter the soil community.

Because nitrogen is often a limiting nutrient, a legume's relationship with *Rhizobium* allows it to survive in soil that may contain too little nitrogen to support other plants. And if the legume is returned to the soil after it dies, the bacterially fixed nitrogen it incorporated into its biomass during its life becomes part of the soil, available for other plants to use.

This mutualism has been historically important in agriculture. The legume–*Rhizobium* symbiosis is the primary source of nitrogen addition in many traditional agroecosystems, and was one of the only methods used to incorporate environmental nitrogen into many crop systems before the development of nitrogen fertilizer. Legume crops have been intercropped with nonlegumes, as in the corn–bean–squash polyculture common in Latin America, and legumes are used as covercrops and green manure crops in the United States and other regions to improve soil quality and nitrogen content. Legumes have also been an important part of managed fallow systems. All of these systems take advantage of the legume–*Rhizobium* symbiosis, using biological nitrogen fixation to make usable nitrogen available to the entire plant community, and ultimately to humans.

The species diversity of a single location in a river valley forest is different from the species diversity across the river valley's different communities.

Species diversity in a single location is often called **alpha diversity**. This is simply the variety of species in a relatively small area of one community. Species diversity across communities or habitats—the variety of species from one location to another—is called **beta diversity**. On a still larger scale is **gamma diversity**, which is a measurement of the species diversity of a region such as a mountain range or river valley.

The difference between the three types of diversity can be illustrated with a hypothetical 5 km transect. It is possible to measure alpha diversity at any location along the transect by counting the number of species within, say, 10 m of a specified point. A measure of beta diversity, in contrast, includes at least two points along the transect in different but adjacent habitats. If the species makeup of these two locations is very different, beta diversity is high; if the species makeup changes little as one moves between the two habitats, beta diversity is low. A measure of gamma diversity is made along the entire length of the transect, taking into account both the total number of species and the variation in their distribution. In principle, the distinction between alpha, beta, and gamma diversities can be extended to other dimensions of ecological diversity, such as structural and functional diversity.

Alpha, beta, and gamma diversities are helpful conceptual distinctions because they allow us to describe how different ecosystems and landscapes vary in the structure of their diversity. For example, a highly diverse natural grassland that stretches for hundreds of kilometers in every direction is likely to have high alpha diversity, but since the same species in the same relative proportions are found at all locations over a wide area, the grassland's beta and gamma diversities are relatively low. As a contrasting example, consider a landscape made up of a complex mosaic of simple communities, such as nonnative grassland, a forest community dominated by a single species, and a scrub community growing on steep slopes. Alpha diversity is relatively low in each of the communities, but any transect across the area crosses a variety of species groupings, making beta and gamma diversities relatively high.

The alpha and beta scales of diversity in particular have useful application in agroecosystems. A cropping system with high beta diversity, for example, can often provide the same advantages as one with high alpha diversity while offering greater ease of management (Figure 17.2).

Successional Processes and Changes in Diversity

Studies of natural ecosystems in early stages of development or following disturbance have shown that all the dimensions of diversity tend to increase over time. This process takes place through niche diversification, habitat modification, competitive displacement, resource partitioning, and the development of coexistence, mutualisms, and other forms of interference. Variability and fluctuation in ecosystem

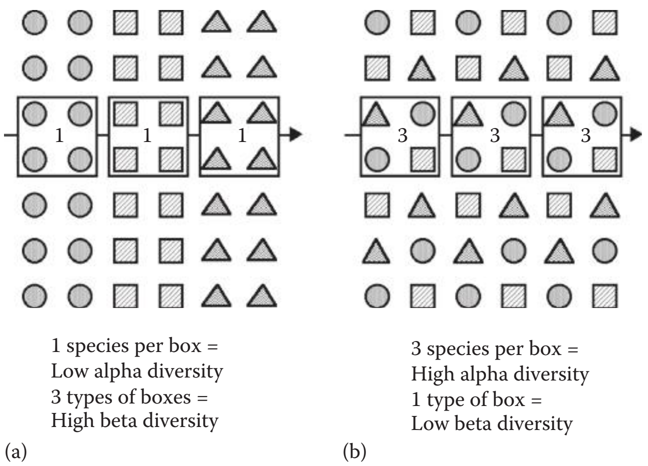


FIGURE 17.2 Alpha diversity vs. beta diversity in an agroecosystem context. For the sake of simplicity, each shape represents a crop plant and each box a locality. This scale is somewhat arbitrary in that a locality could comprise many more crop plants; the point of the diagram is to show the contrast between the two arrangements, which might represent (a) three crops planted in strips and (b) an intercrop of the three crops.

processes are damped by this diversification, giving the system the appearance of greater stability as diversity increases.

When an ecosystem is disturbed, each of the dimensions of its ecological diversity is simplified, or set back to an earlier stage of development. The number of species is reduced, vertical stratification decreases, and fewer interactions occur. Following the disturbance, the ecosystem begins the recovery process that is called secondary succession (see Chapter 18 for more detail). During this process, the system begins to restore the diversity of species, interactions, and processes that existed before disturbance.

Eventually the system reaches something called maturity, which might be defined as the successional condition in which the full potential for energy flow, nutrient cycling, and population dynamics in that physical environment can be realized. The structural and functional diversity of the ecosystem at maturity provides resistance to change in the face of further minor disturbance.

Even though diversity tends to increase through the stages of succession, recent research in ecology indicates that maturity may not represent the stage with the greatest diversity, at least in terms of species. Rather, the greatest diversity is achieved as a system approaches maturity, with diversity declining slightly thereafter as full maturity is attained. Biomass continues to increase at maturity, though at a slower rate (Figure 17.3).

Diversity, Stability, and Resilience

There has been considerable discussion in ecology about the relationship between diversity and "stability." There appears to be some correlation between the two—that is, the greater the diversity of an ecosystem, the more resistant it is to change, and the better able it is to recover from disturbance—but there is disagreement over the degree and strength of the correlation.

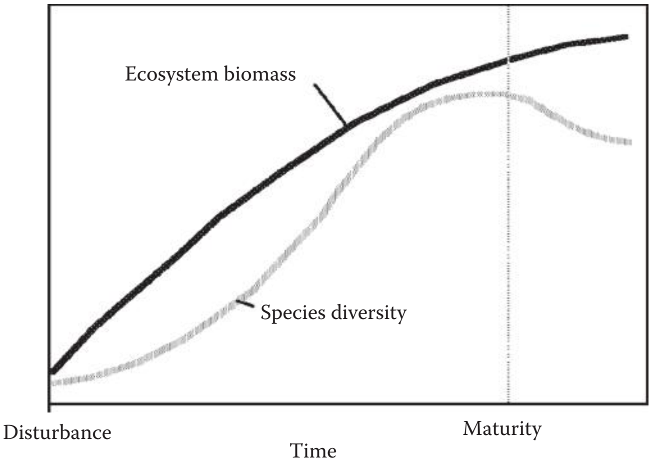


FIGURE 17.3 Changes in species diversity and biomass during secondary succession.

Much of the problem arises from the restricted nature of the accepted definition of stability. "Stability" usually refers to the relative absence of fluctuations in the populations of organisms in the system, implying a steady-state condition, or a lack of change. This notion of stability is inadequate, especially in relation to describing the ecological results of diversity. For this reason, the term *stability* has been largely replaced by the terms *resilience* and *resistance*, as reflected in the introductory discussion of ecosystem structure in Chapter 2. To review, resistance is the ability to resist change in general, and resilience is the ability to rebound from disturbance and return to a state similar to that which existed before the disturbance. In general, the diversity of a system is correlated highly with both resistance and resilience.

For some ecologists, resistance and resilience don't account for all the related qualities that result from diversity. They would like a concept that focuses on what might be called the *robustness* of an ecosystem, its ability to sustain complex levels of interaction and self-regulating processes of energy flow and material cycling. Such a concept would be helpful in particular for understanding the value and use of diversity in agroecosystems, for which farmers and agroecosystem managers seek something that goes beyond resistance and resilience.

To gain a better sense of what diversity generates in an ecosystem, we need more research into possible causal relationships among the different forms of ecological diversity and specific ecosystem processes and characteristics. Some important work in this area has already been done. It has been found, for example, that higher bird species diversity is correlated with more complex community structure, because it supports a greater variety of feeding and nesting behaviors. Similarly, predator–prey diversity and a more complex food web are correlated with both actual species numbers and habitat diversity.

ECOLOGICAL DIVERSITY IN AGROECOSYSTEMS

In most agroecosystems, disturbance occurs much more frequently, regularly, and with greater intensity than it does in natural ecosystems. Rarely can agroecosystems proceed very far in their successional development. As a result, diversity in an agroecosystem is difficult to maintain.

The loss of diversity greatly weakens the tight functional links between species that characterize natural ecosystems. Nutrient cycling rates and efficiency change, energy flow is altered, and dependence on human interference and inputs increases. For these reasons, agroecosystems are considered less resistant and less resilient than natural ecosystems.

Nevertheless, agroecosystems need not be as simplified and diversity poor as industrial agroecosystems typically are. Within the constraints imposed by the need for harvesting biomass, agroecosystems can approach the level of diversity exhibited by natural ecosystems, and enjoy the benefits of the increased resilience, resistance, and robustness allowed by greater diversity. Managing the complexity of interactions that are possible when more of the elements of diversity are present in the farm system is a key part of reducing the need for external inputs and moving toward sustainability.

Value of Agroecosystem Diversity

A key strategy in sustainable agriculture is to reincorporate diversity into the agricultural landscape and manage it more effectively. Increasing diversity is contrary to the focus of much of present-day industrial-style agriculture, which reaches its extreme form in large-scale monocultures. It would appear that diversity is seen more as a liability in such systems, especially when we consider all of the inputs and practices that have been developed to limit diversity and maintain uniformity.

Research on multiple cropping systems underscores the great importance of diversity in an agricultural setting (Francis 1986; Vandermeer 1992; Altieri 1995b; Innis 1997; Ong et al. 2004; Mohler and Stoner 2009; Volder and Franco 2013). Diversity is of value in agroecosystems for a variety of reasons:

- With higher diversity, there is greater microhabitat differentiation, allowing the component species of the system to become “habitat specialists.” Each crop can be grown in an environment ideally suited to its unique requirements.
- As diversity increases, so do opportunities for coexistence and beneficial interference between species that can enhance agroecosystem sustainability. The relationships between nitrogen-fixing legumes and associated crop plants discussed earlier are a prime example.
- In a diverse agroecosystem, the disturbed environments associated with agricultural situations can be better taken advantage of. Open habitats can be colonized by useful species that already occur in the system, rather than by weedy, noxious pioneer invaders from outside.
- High diversity makes possible various kinds of beneficial population dynamics among herbivores and their predators. For example, a diverse system may encourage the presence of several populations of herbivores, only some of which are pests, as well as the presence of a predator species that preys on all the herbivores. The predator enhances diversity among the herbivore species by keeping in check the populations of individual herbivore species. With greater herbivore diversity, the pest herbivore cannot become dominant and threaten any crop.
- Greater diversity often allows better resource-use efficiency in an agroecosystem. There is better system-level adaptation to habitat heterogeneity, leading to complementarity in crop species needs, diversification of the niche, overlap of species niches, and partitioning of resources. The traditional corn–bean–squash intercrop, for example, brings together three different but complementary crop types. When all three are planted in a heterogeneous field, soil conditions at any one site are likely to adequately meet the needs of at least one of the three crops. When planted in a uniform field, each crop will occupy a slightly different niche and make different demands on the soil’s nutrients.
- Diversity reduces risk for a farmer, especially in areas with more unpredictable environmental conditions. If one crop does not do well, income from others can compensate.
- When livestock animals are integrated into an agroecosystem, many opportunities arise for beneficial interactions. Grazing, for example, can allow better nutrient cycling, increase the numbers of the beneficial arthropods that occupy the microsites provided by perennial pasture plants, and shift the dominance of noncrop species. These and other interactions are discussed in more detail in Chapter 19.
- A diverse crop assemblage can create a diversity of microclimates within the cropping system that can be occupied by a range of noncrop organisms—including beneficial predators, parasites, and antagonists—that are of importance for the entire system, and who would not be attracted to a very uniform and simplified system.
- Diversity in the agricultural landscape can contribute to the conservation of biodiversity in surrounding natural ecosystems, an issue that will be discussed in Chapter 21.
- Diversity—especially that of the belowground part of the system—performs a variety of ecological services that have impacts both on and off the farm, such as nutrient recycling, regulation of local hydrological processes, and detoxification of noxious chemicals.

When our understanding of diversity extends beyond the crop species to include noncrop plants (commonly called weeds, but of potential ecological or human value), animals (especially beneficial enemies of pests and animals useful to humans), and microorganisms (belowground diversity of bacteria, protists, and fungi is essential for maintaining many agroecosystem processes), we then begin to see the range of ecological processes that are promoted by greater diversity.

Methods of Increasing Diversity in Agricultural Systems

A range of options and alternatives are available for adding the benefits of diversity discussed earlier to the agricultural landscape. These alternatives can involve (1) adding new species to existing cropping systems, (2) reorganizing or restructuring the species already present, (3) adding diversity-enhancing practices or inputs, and (4) eliminating diversity-reducing or diversity-restricting inputs or practices.

Intercropping

A primary and direct way of increasing the alpha diversity of an agroecosystem is to grow two or more crops together in mixtures that allow interaction between the individuals of the different crops. Intercropping is a common form of multiple cropping, which is defined as "the intensification and diversification of cropping in time and space dimensions" (Francis 1986). Intercropping can add temporal diversity through the sequential planting of different crops during the same season, and the presence of more than one crop adds horizontal, vertical, structural, and functional diversity. Best developed in traditional farming systems in rural or developing areas, especially in the tropics, intercropping or polyculture systems vary from relatively simple mixtures of two or three crop plants to the very complex mixtures of crops found in agroforestry or home garden agroecosystems (discussed in more detail in Chapter 18) (Figure 17.4).

Strip Cropping

Another form of multiple cropping is to plant different crops in adjacent strips, creating what may be called a polyculture of monocultures. This practice, which increases beta diversity instead of alpha diversity, can provide many of the diversity benefits of multiple cropping. For some crops and crop mixtures, it is a more practical method of increasing diversity because it presents fewer management and harvest challenges than multiple cropping.

Hedgerows and Buffer Vegetation

Trees or shrubs planted around the perimeter of fields, or blocks or strips of seminatural vegetation left in place, can have many useful functions. In practical terms, they can provide protection from wind, exclude (or enclose) animals, and produce an array of tree products (firewood, construction materials, fruit, etc.). Ecologically, hedgerows and buffer strips increase the beta diversity of the farm, and can serve to attract and provide habitat for beneficial organisms. When planted as wider strips, especially between farmland and adjacent natural ecosystems, they form buffer zones that can mitigate a range of potential impacts of one system on the other, as well as increase the overall biodiversity of the region (Figure 17.5).

Covercropping

A covercrop is a noncrop species planted in a field to provide soil cover, usually in-between cropping cycles. Covercrops range from annuals to perennials, and include many different taxonomic groups, although grasses and legumes are used predominantly. Increasing the diversity of a system

(a) (b)

FIGURE 17.4 Two examples of multiple cropping. (a) Carrots, beets, and onions are grown together in Witzenhausen, Germany; (b) annual and perennial crops are combined to form a diverse home garden in Riva de Garda, Italy.

FIGURE 17.5 A multiple-use hedgerow around a home garden in Tepeyanco, Tlaxcala, Mexico. Cactus form a barrier to animals, and chayote squash and apricot trees provide food.

by planting one or more covercrop species has a variety of important benefits. Covercropping enhances soil organic matter, stimulates soil biological activity and diversity of the soil biota, traps nutrients in the soil left over from previous crops, reduces soil erosion, contributes biologically fixed nitrogen (if one of the covercrop species is a legume), and provides alternate hosts for beneficial enemies of crop pests. In some systems, such as orchards, covercrops may serve the additional purpose of inhibiting weed development (Sullivan 2003).

Rotations

Growing crops in rotation is an important method of increasing the diversity of a system over the dimension of time. Rotations usually involve planting different crops in succession or in a recurring sequence. The greater the differences between the rotated crops in their ecological impacts on the soil, the greater the benefits of the method. Alternating crops can create what is known as a rotational effect, where a crop grown after another does better than when grown in continuous monoculture. By adding residues of different species of plants to the soil, rotations help maintain the biological diversity of soil microorganisms. Each residue type varies chemically and biologically, stimulating and/or inhibiting different soil organisms. In some cases, the residue from one crop is able to promote the activity of organisms that are antagonistic to pests or diseases for a subsequent crop. Rotations also tend to improve soil fertility and soil physical properties, reduce soil erosion, and add more organic matter. The well-known advantages of soybean/corn/legume–hay rotations in the Midwestern United States are based in part on the way that greater temporal diversity aids nutrient and disease management. Research on the impacts of rotations on the dimensions of diversity can improve the effectiveness of this important practice.

Fallows

A variation of the rotation practice is to allow a period in the cropping sequence where the land is simply left uncultivated, or fallow. The introduction of a fallow period allows the soil to "rest," a process that involves secondary succession and the recovery of diversity in many parts of the system, especially the soil. Shifting cultivation, discussed in Chapter 10, is probably the most well-known fallow system; the long rest period allows the reintroduction of native plant and animal diversity and the recovery of soil fertility. In some systems, the fallow principle is used to create a mosaic of plots in different stages of succession, from farmed fields to second growth native vegetation. In dry-farmed regions, fallow may occur in alternate years to allow rainfall to recharge soil moisture reserves, while at the same time promoting the recovery of diversity in the soil ecosystem during the uncultivated cycle. Another variation on the use of the fallow is to make it productive in addition to being protective: in swidden–fallow agroforestry, specific crop plants are introduced just before the fallow begins, or intentionally allowed to reestablish, so that harvestable products can be obtained during the fallow period (Denevan and Padoch 1987). Wherever a fallow period is incorporated into the cropping cycle, it is the lack of human-induced disturbance, not just the absence of a crop, that allows the diversity recovery process.

Reduced or Minimum Tillage

Since disturbance in an agroecosystem has a major role in limiting successional development and diversity, a practice that minimizes disturbance may help enhance diversity. Reducing the intensity of soil cultivation and leaving residues on the surface of the soil is a primary method of effecting reduced system disturbance. The many advantages to be gained from reducing both the frequency and intensity of tillage were discussed in Chapter 8. Compared to conventional tillage, no-till practices show increased earthworm abundance and activity, diversification of soil biota, and an accompanying improvement in soil structure, nutrient holding capacity, internal nutrient cycling, and organic matter content (Coleman et al. 2009). Even when the aboveground diversity of the cropping system remains low, the species diversity of the decomposer subsystem of the soil increases with reduced soil disturbance. Increasing plant diversity aboveground as well can only enhance this subsystem.

High–Organic Matter Inputs

High levels of organic matter are crucial for stimulating species diversification of the belowground subsystem, involving the same type of stimulation of structural and functional diversity noted earlier for reduced-tillage systems. Long seen as a key component of organic agriculture, high–organic matter inputs have an array of benefits that were reviewed in Chapter 8. The organic matter content of the soil can be increased by applying composts, incorporating crop residues into the soil, Covercropping, diversifying crops, and using other diversity-enhancing cropping practices.

Reduction in Use of Chemical Inputs

It has long been known that many agricultural pesticides either harm or kill many nontarget organisms in crop systems, or leave residues that can limit the abundance and diversity of many other organisms. Thus, eliminating or reducing the use of pesticides removes a major impediment to the rediversification of the agroecosystem. The recolonization process involved in this rediversification is discussed later in this chapter. It must be acknowledged, however, that removing pesticides from a system that has become dependent on them is a challenging task. The first response may be a dramatic increase in the pest population; only with time and the reestablishment of diversity can internal mechanisms develop for keeping the pest in check.

Integration of Livestock

Integrating animals back into the agricultural landscape increases the overall biodiversity of the agroecosystem. In addition, animal activity, such as grazing, crop residue consumption, and manure deposition can alter aspects of structural diversity, species dominance, and system function. Additional benefits accrue in the diversification of the farm enterprise itself. Livestock integration is discussed in more detail in Chapter 19.

Managing Diversification

Moving from a uniform, monoculture agroecosystem to a more diverse system supporting beneficial processes and interactions is a multistep process. Initially, all of the aforementioned ways of introducing diversity into the agricultural landscape help mitigate the negative impacts of agricultural activities. Then the introduction of more species, either as a direct or indirect effect, broadens the opportunities for integrated agroecosystem structure and function, allowing built-in buffers and system dynamics to dampen variability of system response. Finally, the kinds and forms of interference in the diversifying landscape make possible more types of interactions, ranging from competitive exclusion to symbiotic mutualisms (Table 17.3).

Managing diversity at the farm level is a big challenge. Compared to conventional management, it can involve more work, more risk, and more uncertainty. It also requires more knowledge. Ultimately, however, understanding the ecological basis for how diversity operates in agroecosystems, and taking advantage of complexity rather than striving to eliminate it, is the only strategy leading to sustainability.

EVALUATING AGROECOSYSTEM DIVERSITY AND ITS BENEFITS

To manage diversity most effectively, we need means of measuring diversity and evaluating how increases in diversity actually impact the performance and functioning of an agroecosystem. We need to be able to recognize the presence of diversity and the patterns of its distribution on the landscape, and we need to know if, and to what extent, the presence of that diversity is of benefit to the performance of the agroecosystem, especially from the farmer's point of view. Several approaches can be taken to analyze and research the presence and impacts of diversity.

TABLE 17.3
Methods of Increasing Ecological Diversity in an Agroecosystem

	Dimensions of Ecological Diversity Affected						
Method	**Species**	**Genetic**	**Vertical**	**Horizontal**	**Structural**	**Functional**	**Temporal**
Intercropping	•	o	•	•	•	•	o
Strip cropping	•	o	o	•	o	o	o
Hedgerows and buffers	•	o	•	•	o	o	•
Covercropping	•	o	•	•	•	•	o
Rotations	o	o			o	o	•
Fallows	o	o			o	o	•
Minimum tillage	•	o			o	•	o
High inputs of organic matter	•	o			o	•	
Reduction of chemical use	o	o			o	•	
Integration of livestock	•	o		o	o	•	o

• direct or primary effect
o indirect, secondary, or potential effect
Empty cells denote little or no effect

INDICES OF SPECIES DIVERSITY

It is obvious that any kind of intercrop is more diverse than a monoculture. Comparing the diversity of two different intercropping systems, however—varying in both species numbers and planting ratios—requires that we measure the diversity of each. To do so, we can borrow tools and concepts developed by ecologists for natural ecosystems.

Ecologists recognize that the diversity of an ecosystem or community is determined by more than just the number of species. A community made up of 50 redwood trees, 50 tanbark oaks, and 50 Douglas firs is more diverse than one made up of 130 redwood trees, 10 tanbark oaks, and 10 Douglas firs. Both have the same number of species and total individuals, but the individuals in the first community are distributed more evenly among the species than those in the second community, where redwood trees dominate.

This example demonstrates that there are two components of species diversity: the number of species, called **species richness**, and the evenness of the distribution of the individuals in the system among the different species, called **species evenness**. Both components must be considered in any comprehensive measurement of diversity, in both natural ecosystems and agroecosystems.

How these concepts can be applied in analyzing the diversity of agroecosystems is demonstrated in Table 17.4, where four different hypothetical systems, each with the same number of individual crop plants, are compared. Among these systems, the even polyculture of three crops is the most diverse, since it is the only one in which both species richness and species evenness are high in relation to the other systems.

Instead of using the number of individuals of each species as a basis for measuring a system's species diversity, it is possible to use some other species characteristic, such as biomass or productivity. This may be more appropriate, for example, when the biomass of a typical individual of one species is very different from the biomasses of the individuals of the other species. Number of individuals, biomass, and productivity are all examples of **importance values** for a particular species.

Ecology offers various ways of quantifying the species diversity of a system. The simplest method is to ignore species evenness, and to measure the number of species in terms of the number of individuals. Such a measure is provided by Margalef's index of diversity:

$$\text{Diversity} = \frac{s-1}{\log N}$$

where

s is the number species

N is the number of individuals

The usefulness of Margalef's index is limited because it cannot distinguish the varying diversity of systems with the same s and N, such as the even and uneven three-crop polycultures in Table 17.4.

There are two other diversity indices that do take species evenness into account, and are therefore more useful. The **Shannon index** is an application of information theory, based on the idea that greater diversity corresponds to greater uncertainty in picking at random an individual of a particular species. It is given by the following formula:

$$H = -\sum_{i=1}^{S}\left(\frac{n_i}{N}\right)\left(\log_e \frac{n_i}{N}\right)$$

where n_i is the number of individuals in the system (or sample) belonging to the ith species.

The **Simpson index** of diversity is the inverse of an index of community dominance with the same name. It is based on the principle that a system is most diverse when none of its component species can be considered any more dominant than any of the others. It is given by the following formula:

$$\text{Diversity} = \frac{N(N-1)}{\sum n_i\left(n_i-1\right)}$$

For the Simpson index, the minimum value is 1; for the Shannon index it is 0. Both minimums indicate the absence of diversity, the condition that exists in a monoculture. In theory, the maximum value for each index is limited only by the number of species and how evenly distributed they are

TABLE 17.4
Diversity Measures of Four Hypothetical Agroecosystems

	Monoculture	Even Polyculture of Two Crops	Even Polyculture of Three Crops	Uneven Polyculture of Three Crops
Corn plants	300	150	100	250
Squash plants	0	150	100	25
Bean plants	0	0	100	25
Number of species (s)	1	2	3	3
Number of individuals (N)	300	300	300	300
Relative species richness	Low	Medium	High	High
Relative species evenness	High	High	High	Low

TABLE 17.5
Diversity Index Values for the Four Hypothetical Agroecosystems in Table 17.4

	Monoculture	Even Polyculture of Two Crops	Even Polyculture of Three Crops	Uneven Polyculture of Three Crops
Margalef diversity	0	0.4	0.81	0.81
Shannon diversity	0	0.69	1.10	0.57
Simpson diversity	1.0	2.01	3.02	1.41

in the ecosystem. Relatively diverse natural ecosystems have Simpson indices of 5 or greater, and Shannon indices of 3–4.

Calculations of Margalef, Simpson, and Shannon index values for the hypothetical systems in Table 17.4 are given in Table 17.5. The Shannon and Simpson values both show that the even polyculture of two crops is more diverse than the uneven polyculture of three crops, underscoring the importance of species evenness in agroecosystem diversity.

More detailed descriptions of the Shannon and Simpson indices, including the theory on which they are based and the ways they can be applied, can be found in the ecology texts cited in Recommended Reading section.

ASSESSING THE BENEFITS OF INTERCROP DIVERSITY

On a farm, a way of measuring the value gained from greater diversity in the cropping system will be very useful in helping the farmer evaluate the advantages or disadvantages of different cropping arrangements. The diversity indices described earlier can quantify diversity, but they don't tell us how that diversity translates into performance, or what the ecological basis of any improved performance is. In cropping systems where two or more crop species are in close enough proximity to each other, various kinds of between-species interference are possible (as described in Chapters 11 and 16) that can provide clear benefits in improved yield, nutrient cycling, and so on.

Despite the fact that researchers have accumulated a great deal of evidence that intercropping can provide substantial yield advantages over monocropping, it is important to remember that there can also be disadvantages to intercropping. There may be practical difficulties in the management of the intercrop, and yield decreases may occur because of the effects of adverse interference. Such cases should not be used as arguments against intercropping, but rather as a means of determining where research needs to be focused to avoid such problems.

Land Equivalent Ratio

An important tool for the study and evaluation of intercropping systems is the land equivalent ratio (LER). LER provides an all-other-things-being-equal measure of the yield advantage obtained by growing two or more crops as an intercrop compared to growing the same crops as a collection of separate monocultures. LER thus allows us to go beyond a description of the pattern of diversity into an analysis of the advantages of intercropping.

The LER is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{LER} = \sum \frac{Yp_i}{Ym_i}$$

where

Yp is the yield of each crop in the intercrop or polyculture
Ym is the yield of each crop in the sole crop or monoculture

For each crop (i) a ratio is calculated to determine the partial LER for that crop, and then the partial LERs are summed to give the total LER for the intercrop. An example of how the LER is calculated is given in Table 17.6.

An LER value of 1.0 is the break-even point, indicating no difference in yield between the intercrop and the collection of monocultures. Any value greater than 1 indicates a yield advantage for the intercrop, a result called **overyielding**. The extent of overyielding is given directly by the LER value: an LER of 1.2, for example, indicates that the area planted to monocultures would need to be 20% greater than the area planted to the intercrop for the two to produce the same combined yields. An LER of 2.0 means that twice as much land would be required for the monocultures.

Application and Interpretation of the Land Equivalent Ratio

Since the partial and total LER values are ratios, and not actual crop yields, they are useful for comparing diverse crop mixtures. In a sense, the LER measures the level of intercrop interference going on in the cropping system.

Theoretically, if the agroecological characteristics of each crop in a mixture are exactly the same, planting them together should lead to the same total yield as planting them apart, with each crop member contributing an equal

TABLE 17.6
Representative Data for Calculation of LER

	Yield in Polyculture (*Yp*), kg/ha	Yield in Monoculture (*Ym*), kg/ha	Partial LER (Yp_i/Ym_j)
Crop A	1000	1200	0.83
Crop B	800	1000	0.80
			$\sum \frac{Yp_i}{Ym_i} = 1.63$

proportion to that total yield. For example, if two similar crops are planted together, the total LER should be 1.0 and the partial LERs should be 0.5 for each. In many mixtures, however, we obtain a total LER greater than 1.0, and partial LERs proportionately greater than what would theoretically be obtained if each crop were agroecologically the same as the others. A total LER higher than 1.0 indicates the presence of positive interferences among the crop components of the mixture, and may also mean that any negative interspecific interference that exists in the mixture is not as intensive as the intraspecific interference that exists in the monocultures. Avoidance of competition or partitioning of resources is probably occurring in the mixture.

When the total LER is greater than 1.5, or when the partial LER of at least one member of the mixture is greater than 1.0, there is strong evidence that negative interference is minimal in the intercrop interactions and that positive interferences allow at least one of the members of the crop mixture to do better in the intercrop than it does when planted in monoculture.

The traditional corn–bean–squash intercrop discussed in Chapter 16—with a total LER of 1.97—provides a good example of this situation (see Table 16.3). The corn component of the system expressed a partial LER of 1.50, meaning that it actually produced better in the mixture than when planted alone. The positive interference responsible for this result was a combination of enhanced N availability from biological fixation by *Rhizobium* bacteria in the roots of the beans, possible transfer of some of this N through the mutualistic mycorrhizal connections between the corn and beans, and habitat modification by the squash that enhanced the presence of beneficial insects and reduced pests (described in the previous chapter). Although partial LERs for beans and squash were very low (0.15 and 0.32 respectively), their presence obviously was important for the yield enhancement of the corn.

When the total LER is less than 1.0, negative interference has probably occurred, especially if the LERs of the component parts of the mixture are all lowered in a similar fashion. In this case the intercrop provides a yield disadvantage compared to monocropping.

When analyzing LERs and partial LERs, confusion can often arise about what constitutes an advantage and what the magnitude of the advantage is. Avoiding confusion requires the recognition that different circumstances call for different criteria for evaluating an intercrop's advantage. There are at least three basic situations (Willey 1981):

1. *When combined intercrop yield must exceed the yield of the higher-yielding sole crops.* This situation may exist when assessing mixtures of very similar crops, such as pasture forage mixes, or mixtures of genotypes within a crop, such as a multiline wheat crop. In such cases, partial LERs are not important in determining advantage as long as total LER is greater than 1.0, because the farmer's requirement is mostly for maximum yield, regardless of which part of the crop system it comes from. The quantitative advantage is the extent to which the combined intercrop yield is increased and total LER exceeds 1.0, as compared to the yield of the highest yielding sole crop.
2. *When intercropping must give full yield of a "main" crop plus some additional yield of a second crop.* This situation occurs when the primary requirement is for some essential food crop or some particularly valuable cash crop. For there to be an advantage to the intercrop, total LER must exceed 1.0 *and* the partial LER of the primary crop should be close to 1.0 or even higher. With the emphasis on a key crop, the associated plants must provide some positive intercrop interference. The corn–bean–squash intercrop mentioned earlier is a good example of this situation because the farmer is mainly interested in the corn yield. If some additional yield is obtained from the beans and squash, even if their partial LERs are very low, it is seen as an additional bonus beyond the yield advantage gained by corn. The quantitative advantage is the extent to which the main crop is stimulated beyond its performance in monoculture.
3. *When the combined intercrop yield must exceed a combined sole-crop yield.* This situation occurs when a farmer needs to grow both (or all) the component crops, especially when there is limited land for planting. For the intercrop to be advantageous, total LER must be greater than 1.0, but no member of the mixture can suffer a great reduction in its partial LER in the process. Negative interference definitely cannot be functioning for such a mixture to be beneficial. This situation can present problems in the use of the LER value since it is not always readily apparent what proportions of sole crops the total LER value should be based on. Comparison cannot be made only on sown proportions because interference in the intercrop situation can often produce yield values that are very different from the monocrop's proportions, leading to skewed partial LERs.

Recognizing these different situations is important for two reasons. First, it helps to ensure that research on a given combination is likely to be grounded in farming practice. Second, it should ensure that yield advantages are assessed in valid, quantitative terms that are appropriate to the situation being considered. Ultimately, the intercropping pattern that functions best is the one that meets the criteria of both the farmer and the researcher.

To put certain different crops on a more comparable basis, figures other than harvest yields can be used to calculate an LER (Andersen et al. 2004). These measurements include protein content, total biomass, energy content, digestible nutrient content, or monetary value. Such calculations allow the use of a similar indicator to evaluate different contributions the crop may make to the agroecosystem. For example, in a legume/grass mix for animal forage production, it was found that a 50:50 intercrop of the two gave a dry matter forage LER that averaged 1.36 over 2 years and an LER crude protein estimate of forage quality of 1.52 over the same period. These results indicate that not only was there more biomass produced in the mixture, but its quality was increased as well (Seyedeh et al. 2010).

COLONIZATION AND DIVERSITY

Up to this point we have explored how the farmer can directly increase diversity by planting more species, and how he or she can create the conditions that allow "natural" diversification to occur in an agroecosystem. We have ignored the question of how organisms not actually planted by the farmer enter the system and establish themselves there. This question concerns both the desirable organisms whose presence is encouraged—such as predators and parasites of herbivores, beneficial soil organisms, and helpful allelopathic weeds—and the undesirable ones, such as herbivores, that the farmer would like to exclude from the system.

To address this question of how an agroecosystem is colonized by organisms, it is helpful to think of a crop field as an "island" surrounded by an "ocean" that organisms have to cross in order to become part of the species diversity of the agroecosystem. In an ecological sense, any isolated ecosystem surrounded by distinctly different ecosystems is an island because the surrounding ecosystems set limits on the ability of organisms to reach and colonize the island. Building on our study of the dispersal and establishment process in Chapter 14, we will here explore how the study of the colonization of actual islands by organisms can be applied to understanding the colonization of agroecosystems and how this process is related to agroecosystem diversity.

ISLAND BIOGEOGRAPHY THEORY

The body of ecological theory concerning islands is known as island biogeography (MacArthur and Wilson 1967). It begins with the idea that island ecosystems are usually very isolated from other similar ecosystems. The sequence of events that allows an organism to reach an island sets in motion a set of responses that guide the development of the island ecosystem. A key characteristic of an island is that many of the interactions that eventually determine the actual niche of an organism after it reaches the island are very different from the conditions of the niche the organism left behind. This situation gives the organism an opportunity to occupy more of its potential niche, or even evolve characteristics that could allow it to expand into a new niche. This is especially true in the case of a newly formed island in the ocean—an environment very similar to that of a recently disturbed (e.g., plowed) farm field. The first pest to arrive in an "uncolonized" field has the opportunity to very rapidly fill its potential niche, especially if it is a specialist pest adapted to the conditions of the crop in that field.

Island biogeography theory offers methods of predicting the outcome of the species diversification process on an island. These methods take into account the size of the island, the effectiveness of the barriers limiting dispersal to the island, the variability of the habitats on the island, the distance of the island from sources of emigration, and the length of time the island has been isolated.

Experimental manipulation of island systems (Simberloff and Wilson 1969) and studies of island diversity have provided the basis for the following principles:

- The smaller the island, the longer it takes for organisms to find it.
- The further an island is from the source of colonists, the longer it takes for the colonists to find it.
- Smaller and more distant islands have smaller and more depauperate flora and fauna.
- Many niches on islands can be unoccupied.
- Many of the organisms that reach islands occupy a much broader niche than the same or similar organisms on the mainland.
- Early colonizers often arrive ahead of limiting predators and parasites, and can experience very rapid population growth at first.
- As colonization proceeds, changes occur in the niche structure of the island, and extinction of earlier colonists can take place.
- The earliest arrivals are mostly *r*-selected.

Ultimately, the theory should be able to predict the colonization and extinction rates that are possible for a particular island. Such a prediction should then make it possible to understand the relationship between ecological conditions and potential species diversity, and what factors control the establishment of an equilibrium between extinction and further colonization.

AGRICULTURAL APPLICATIONS

The parallels between islands and crop fields allow researchers to apply island biogeography theory to agriculture. Experiments can be designed where either one crop field is completely surrounded by a different crop, or small plots are marked out in a larger field of the same crop. An early example was a study by Price (1976) of the rates that pests and natural enemies colonize soybean fields. The study was carried out using small plots in a field of soybeans as the experimental islands; the plots were surrounded by an "ocean" of soybeans, with natural forest abutting one side, and more soybean fields on the other sides. Small plots in the soybean field located at different distances from the various sources of colonization were monitored for the full crop season, allowing the measurement of the arrival rates, abundance, and diversity of both pests and their beneficial control agents. The more easily dispersed pests were the first ones to reach the interior plots of the field, and were followed later by some of their predators and parasites. The equilibrium between species and individuals of both pests and natural enemies that was predicted by island biography theory was not reached,

FIGURE 17.6 Wild mustard (*Brassica campestris*) forming a barrier around "islands" of cauliflower. The mustard can attract beneficial insects and retard the movement of herbivorous insect pests to the crop.

probably due to the short life cycle of a soybean field. This study has encouraged other studies of a similar nature (see Altieri and Nicholls 2004b).

More recent research suggests that beneficial arthropods move more readily into a crop field from their refuges surrounding the field when they are provided with habitat highways—vegetated corridors providing food and refuge—that penetrate into the crop field (e.g., Nicholls et al. 2000). In terms of island biogeography theory, this is the equivalent of building land bridges from the continent to the island. A study examining how this principle operates in a vineyard is described in Using Flowering Plant Corridors to Increase Beneficial Insect Diversity in a Vineyard case study.

Denys and Tscharntke (2002) conducted a study focusing on insect species richness in different types of margin vegetation strips surrounding crop fields. Higher ratios of predatory to herbivorous insects were observed in larger strips, thus supporting the trophic-level hypothesis of island biogeography, which states that the role of predators and parasitoids tends to increase with area. Pisani Gareau and Shennan (2010) examined hedgerows of native perennial species around diverse vegetable crops on the central coast of California, and found that there were high numbers of beneficial insects in these border areas, and they moved as far as 100 m into the cropping system in search of prey, supporting the adaptation of the island biogeography theory that predicts that sources of colonization should play an important role in increasing biological pest management potential (Figure 17.6).

DIVERSITY, RESILIENCE, AND SUSTAINABILITY

Diversity in agroecosystems can take many forms, including the specific arrangement of crops in a field, the way that different fields are arranged, and the ways that different fields form part of the entire agricultural landscape of a farming region. With increased diversity, we can take advantage of the positive forms of interference that lead to interactions between the component parts of the agroecosystem, including both crop and noncrop elements. The challenge for the agroecologist is to demonstrate the advantages that can be gained from introducing diversity into farming systems, incorporating many of the components of ecosystem function that are important in nature, and managing such diversity for the long term.

In part, meeting this challenge means determining the relationships between the different kinds of diversity presented in this chapter and a system's resistance and resilience. Since each species in the agroecosystem brings something different to the processes that maintain resilience and resistance, an important part of agroecological research is focused on understanding the contribution each species makes and using this knowledge to integrate each species into the system in the optimal time and place. As this integration takes place, the emergent qualities of the system appear, allowing the ultimate emergent quality—sustainability—to develop.

The most sustainable agroecosystems might be those that have some kind of mosaic pattern of structure and development, in which the system is a patchwork of levels of diversity, mixing annuals, perennials, shrubs, trees, and animals. Or the most sustainable systems might be those with several stages of development occurring at the same time as a result of the type of management applied. Such systems might incorporate minimum tillage to allow a more mature soil subsystem to develop, even with a simpler aboveground plant system, or use strip cropping or hedgerows to create a mosaic of levels of development and diversity across the farm landscape. Once the parameters of diversity are established, the issue becomes one of the frequency and intensity of disturbance—which we will explore in the next chapter.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. Describe a pest management strategy that builds on the theory of island biogeography.
2. Explain a situation where lack of diversity in one component of an agroecosystem can be compensated for by greater diversity in some other components.
3. What is the connection between diversity and the avoidance of risk in agroecosystems? Give examples to support your viewpoint.
4. What are some possible mechanisms allowing a crop to produce a higher yield in an intercrop than when planted by itself in monoculture?
5. What are the main disincentives for farmers to shift into more diverse farming systems? What kinds of changes need to occur in order to provide the necessary incentives?
6. What are some of the forms of agroecosystem diversification that will best promote the successful use of integrated pest management (IPM)?
7. Why are intercropping and agroforestry agroecosystems more common in the tropics than in the temperate parts of the world?

CASE STUDY: USING FLOWERING PLANT CORRIDORS TO INCREASE BENEFICIAL INSECT DIVERSITY IN A VINEYARD

In many of the grape-growing regions of California, large-scale monoculture vineyards dominate the landscape. The numbers of natural insect predators and parasitoids that might otherwise exist in these landscapes are greatly reduced because of the relative lack of important food resources and overwintering sites offered by natural and noncrop vegetation.

In contrast, where viticulturalists have retained or created a more diverse landscape by keeping vineyards smaller and maintaining natural vegetation patches and riparian corridors at vineyard perimeters, they have encouraged the presence of natural predators and parasitoids. The positive effect of landscape diversification practices in increasing the diversity of beneficial insects has been demonstrated in a variety of agroecosystems (Coombes and Sotherton 1986; Thomas et al. 1991; Corbett and Plant 1993; Altieri 1994a).

In these more diverse viticultural areas, where strips and patches of natural and other noncrop vegetation are interspersed among monoculture vineyards, analysis of the dynamics of insect predator and herbivore populations is a good application of island biogeography theory. The grape monocultures in these landscapes are "islands" in the sense that beneficial insects don't live in them year-round but instead disperse into them from the adjacent noncrop vegetation when their prey and hosts are present.

A study by Nicholls et al. (2000) has shown that where noncrop vegetation already exists adjacent to a vineyard, its positive effect on beneficial insect biodiversity can be greatly enhanced by a relatively simple practice: penetrate the vineyard with corridors of flowering plants contiguous with the adjacent natural vegetation. The corridors serve beneficials both as a habitat and a "biological highway," allowing them to move from their refugia in nonagricultural areas deep into the vineyard (Figure 17.7).

The researchers compared two adjacent vineyard blocks that differed in only one respect: Block A was bisected by a 600 m long corridor of noncrop vegetation contiguous with a bordering riparian forest; block B had the bordering forest but no analogous corridor. The corridor in block A supported 65 species of locally adapted flowering plants, including fennel (*Foeniculum vulgare*), yarrow (*Achillea millefolium*), daisy fleabane (*Erigeron annuus*) and butterfly bush (*Buddleia* spp.). Most of these plants were nonnative but not particularly weedy (an exception is fennel; care should be taken in using it for such corridors).

Various sampling methods allowed the researchers to observe the following patterns:

- The corridor supported a healthy diversity of arthropod predators including green lacewings, minute pirate bugs, big-eyed bugs, damsel bugs, and several species of hoverflies, ladybugs, tumbling flower beetles, and spiders.

FIGURE 17.7 Corridor of flowering plants penetrating the interior of a vineyard in California. The corridor facilitates the movement of beneficial insects into the vineyard from their refugia in the riparian forest (in the background).

- Diversity of generalist predators overall was higher in the vineyard block with the plant corridor.
- In the vineyard block with the corridor, the numbers of the two major grape herbivores present (western grape leafhoppers and western flower thrips) were lowest near the plant corridor and highest in the central areas. In the other vineyard block, these herbivores were distributed evenly throughout the block.
- Most generalist predators showed a density gradient in the block with the corridor, reaching their greatest numbers near the plant corridor. In the other block, these generalist predators were more evenly distributed.
- The rate of parasitization of leafhopper eggs by *Anagrus epos* wasps was roughly the same throughout both vineyard blocks.

These results showed that the positive effect of the adjacent riparian forest on the biodiversity of beneficials was—with the exception of *A. epos*—amplified by the flowering plant corridor in block A. For ladybugs and lacewings, the corridor provided food in the form of aphids and other homoptera; for hoverflies it supplied nectar and pollen; for predatory insects such as minute pirate bugs it offered neutral insect prey. By providing these food resources, the corridor allowed beneficials to move more deeply into the vineyard. In island biogeography terms, the corridor effectively reduced the size of the monoculture "islands," facilitating their "colonization" by beneficials.

In addition to demonstrating the applications of island biogeography theory and the value of diversity, this study highlights the importance of looking at diversity and ecological processes at the scale of the landscape. Agricultural practices that allow, create, or retain a more diverse agricultural landscape that includes remnants of natural vegetation and noncrop areas are to be encouraged for a variety of reasons, a concept we will explore in more detail in Chapter 23.

Using the concepts developed in the theory of island biogeography, it should be possible to manipulate "islandness" in cropping systems in such ways as to either slow the arrival of pests or facilitate the movement of beneficials into the system. Such an approach has potential for working with insects, weeds, and disease organisms. Ideally, we want to reach a point where we can predict population structure and, as a result, use such information to determine the best size of crop fields, their arrangement in the landscape, the distance between like crop fields, the amount of time the separation is effective, and how this is all affected by the kind of crops or other vegetation in the areas between the target crops. Again, we are dealing with a very complex set of factors, but the potential for using island theory in an agroecological context is great (Table 17.7).

TABLE 17.7
Research Questions Related to Colonization and Island Biogeography Theory

Type of Organism	Source	Barrier Variables	Island Variables	Research Question
Herbivore pest	Surrounding crop fields	Type of barrier		What are effective barriers against the dispersal of the pest into the crop field?
Herbivore pest	Surrounding crop fields	Size of barrier		What distance between fields of similar crops can best control the spread of the pest from one field to another?
Undesirable weed	Surrounding crop fields	Type, size, and nature of barrier (e.g., windbreak)		What are effective barriers against dispersal of the weed into the crop field?
Predator on herbivores	Anywhere outside the system		Habitat for alternate host	How can colonization by the predator be encouraged?
Disease organism	Surrounding crop fields		Size of island	Is a small crop island more difficult for a disease organism to find or reach?
Undesirable weed	Surrounding crop fields		Occupation of niches	Can an occupied niche resist the invasion of new colonizers?
Beneficial insects	Anywhere outside the system	Strip crops around the crop field	Corridors within the crop field	Can the area between crops be diversified in ways that attract and retain beneficials?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Agroecology in Action
www.agroeco.org
The website of Professor Miguel Altieri, at the University of California, Berkeley, with extensive material on agroecological pest and habitat management.

Cedar Creek Ecosystem Science Reserve
www.cbs.umn.edu/explore/cedarcreek
An important long-term ecological research site at which scientists carry out long-term vegetation diversity experiments and studies in prairie ecosystems.

Kellogg Biological Station, Long Term Ecological Research Site
www.lter.kbs.msu.edu
One in a network of long-term ecosystem study sites (LTER) where research aims to understand the ecology of Midwest cropping systems and agricultural landscapes. They study interactions among plants, microbes, insects, management, and the environment to learn how agriculture can provide both high yields and environmental outcomes that benefit society.

The Land Institute
www.landinstitute.org
A well-known research and training center in Salina, KS, which has focused on agroecosystem diversity management through its natural system agriculture approach.

RECOMMENDED READING

Altieri, M. A. and C. Nicholls. 2004. *Biodiversity and Pest Management in Agroecosystems*, 2nd edn. Howarth Press: Binghamton, New York.
A review of the role of vegetational diversity in insect pest management, combining an analysis of ecological mechanisms and design principles for sustainable agriculture.

Carlquist, S. 1974. *Island Biology*. Columbia University Press: New York.
An excellent overview of the biological and evolutionary processes characteristic of island ecosystems.

Gaston, K. J. and J. I. Spicer. 2009. *Biodiversity: An Introduction.* Wiley Publishers: Hoboken, NJ.
An overview of what biodiversity is, its relevance to humanity and issues related to its conservation.

Golley, F. B. 1994. *A History of the Ecosystem Concept in Ecology*. Yale University Press: New Haven, CT.
A full review of the development and importance of the ecosystem concept.

Loreau, M. 2010. *From Populations to Ecosystems: Theoretical Foundations for a New Ecological Synthesis*. Princeton University Press: Princeton, NJ.
A comprehensive and critical overview of recent empirical and theoretical research on the need for and value of an integrated ecological approach for understanding the important links between biodiversity and ecosystem function.

Ricklefs, R. E. 2008. *The Economy of Nature*, 6th edn. W. H. Freeman and Company: New York.
A very balanced review of the field of ecology that links basic principles with an understanding of environmental problems.

Smith, R. L. and T. M. Smith. 2012. *Elements of Ecology*, 8th edn. Prentice-Hall: New York.
A text of general ecology that provides an overview of the discipline with an excellent focus on applications in the field.

18 Disturbance, Succession, and Agroecosystem Management

The ecological concepts of disturbance and recovery through succession have important application in agroecology. Agroecosystems are constantly undergoing disturbance in the form of cultivation, soil preparation, sowing, planting, irrigation, fertilizer application, pest management, pruning, harvesting, and burning. When disturbance is frequent, widespread, and intense—as it is in industrial agriculture—agroecosystems are limited to the earliest stages of succession. This condition enables high productivity but requires large inputs of fertilizer and pesticides, and tends to degrade the soil resource over time.

More sustainable food production can be achieved by moving away from dependency on continual and excessive disturbance and allowing successional processes to progress further and generate greater ecological complexity. Based on our understanding of disturbance and succession in natural ecosystems, we can enhance the ability of agroecosystems to maintain both fertility and productivity through appropriate management of disturbance and recovery.

DISTURBANCE AND RECOVERY IN NATURAL ECOSYSTEMS

A long-standing tenet of ecology is that following a disturbance, an ecosystem immediately begins a process of recovery from that disturbance. Recovery takes place through the relatively orderly process of succession, which was introduced in Chapter 2. In the broadest sense, ecological succession is the process of ecosystem development, whereby distinct changes in community structure and function occur over time.

Ecologists distinguish two basic types of succession. **Primary succession** is ecosystem development on sites (such as bare rock, glaciated surfaces, or recently formed volcanic islands) that were not previously occupied by living organisms or subject to the changes that the biotic components can bring to bear on the abiotic components. **Secondary succession** is ecosystem development on sites that were previously occupied by living organisms, but had some or all of those organisms removed by fire, flooding, severe wind, intense grazing, or some other event. Depending on the intensity, frequency, and duration of the disturbance, the impact on the structure and function of the ecosystem will vary, as will the time required for recovery from the disturbance. Since the disturbance and recovery process that occur in agriculture usually take place in sites that formerly had other biotic components, we will focus our attention here on the secondary succession process.

The Nature of Disturbance

Although natural ecosystems give the impression of being stable and unchanging, they are constantly being altered on some scale by events such as fire, wind storms, floods, extremes of temperature, epidemic outbreaks, falling trees, mudslides, and erosion. These events disturb ecosystems by killing organisms, destroying and modifying habitats, and changing abiotic conditions. Any of these impacts can change the structure of a natural ecosystem and cause changes in the population levels of the organisms present and the biomass they store.

Disturbance can vary in three dimensions:

1. *Intensity of disturbance* can be measured by the amount of biomass removed or the number of individuals killed. The three types of fire described in Chapter 10 provide good examples of variation in disturbance intensity: surface fires usually create low-intensity disturbance, whereas crown fires cause high-intensity disturbance.
2. *Frequency of disturbance* is the average amount of time between each disturbance event. The longer the time span between disturbances, the greater the ability of the ecosystem to fully recover after each disturbance.
3. *Scale of disturbance* is the spatial scope of the disturbance, which can vary from a small, localized patch to the entire landscape. The small gap in the forest canopy created by an individual tree falling is a small-scale disturbance, whereas the massive destruction of a powerful hurricane is very large scale.

All three characteristics of disturbance are often intertwined in complex ways. Fire, for example, may occur with varying frequency; it may be distributed over the landscape in a patchy manner; and where it does occur it may burn some areas very intensely and others hardly at all.

Recovery Process

Any change or alteration of the ecosystem by a disturbance is followed by a recovery process. Recovery occurs through the combined action of several ecosystem dynamics: (1) the biotic community as a whole modifies the physical environment through the many forms of interference described in previous chapters; (2) competition and coexistence between

TABLE 18.1
Changes That Occur in Ecosystem Structure and Function during the Course of Secondary Succession Following a Major Disturbance

	Changes during Successional Process[a]		
Ecosystem Characteristic	**Early Stages**	**Middle Stages**	**Maturity**
Species composition	Rapid replacement of species	Slower replacement of species	Little change
Species diversity	Low, with rapid increase	Medium, with rapid increase	High, with possible slight decline
Total biomass	Low, with rapid increase	Medium, with moderate increase	High, with slow rate of increase
Mass of nonliving organic matter	Low, with rapid increase	Medium, with moderate increase	High, with slow rate of increase
Gross primary productivity	Increases rapidly	Declines slightly	
NPP	Increases rapidly	Declines slightly	
System respiration	Increases		Increases slowly
Food chains/webs	Become increasingly complex		Remain complex
Species interactions	Become increasingly complex		Remain complex
Efficiency of overall nutrient and energy use	Increases		Remains efficient
Cycling of nutrients	Flow through; open cycles	→	Internal cycling; closed cycles
Retention of nutrients	Low retention, short turnover time	→	High retention, long turnover time
Growth form	*r*-selected, rapidly growing species	→	Long-lived *K*-selected species
Niche breadth	Generalists	→	Specialists
Life cycles	Annuals	→	Perennials
Interference	Mostly competitive	→	More mutualistic

Source: Adapted from Odum, E.P., *Ecology and Our Endangered Life-Support Systems*, Sinauer Associates Incorporated, Sunderland, MA, 1993.

[a] Although some changes are presented in stepwise form, all occur as gradual transitions.

individual organisms and populations cause changes in the diversity and abundance of species; and (3) energy flow shifts from production to respiration as more and more energy in the system is needed to support the growing amount of standing biomass. The interaction of these processes directs a recovering ecosystem through a number of stages of development (originally called seral stages) that eventually lead to a structure and level of ecosystem complexity similar to what existed before the disturbance occurred.

During the recovery process, many important changes in ecosystem structure and function occur. These are most distinct following a relatively severe and extensive disturbance. A summary of some of the more important characteristics of the successional process that follows a major disturbance is presented in Table 18.1. The early or pioneer stages of succession are dominated by *r*-selected, easily dispersed weedy species, but as these early invaders either alter the conditions of the environment or are displaced by interference from later arrivals, *K*-selected species begin to dominate. The replacement of earlier species of plants and animals by others over time has been commonly observed during the recovery process (e.g., Bazzaz 1996; Finegan 1996; Walker et al. 2007).

Most of the components of ecological diversity (described in the previous chapter) increase during succession, especially in the early stages, often reaching their highest levels prior to full recovery. Of particular agroecological importance is the fact that gross photosynthesis during the early stages of succession normally greatly exceeds total respiration, resulting in high net primary productivity (NPP) and high harvest potential. As the standing crop increases with successional development, however, a greater proportion of productivity is used for maintenance, creating the impression of greater stability.

Another aspect of successional development that has important agroecological implications is the increase in biomass and the standing crop of organic matter with time, especially in the early stages of succession. Since biomass is eventually converted to detritus and humus as it passes through the decomposers, this increase in biomass results indirectly in an increase in soil organic matter.

During the early stages of recovery, nutrient availability is usually high and nutrient conservation relatively inefficient. Fast-growing, ruderal plant species quickly become dominant, and population interaction is limited to the few species present. As succession progresses, nutrient retention improves, colonizing species begin to occupy a greater diversity of niches in the system, population interaction intensifies (especially interactions that involve resource partitioning and mutualistic interference), and the structure of the ecosystem becomes more complex and interconnected.

If enough time is allowed to pass after a disturbance, an ecosystem eventually reaches a point (formerly referred to as the climax stage) at which most of the characteristics presented in Table 18.1 cease to change significantly in rate or character. In terms of species diversity, for example, new colonizing species equal the number of emigrating species or those going extinct. Nutrient losses from the system are balanced by inputs from outside. The population levels of species fluctuate seasonally, but do so around a fairly constant mean number. At this stage, the system is once again in a tenuous equilibrium with the regional climate and local conditions of soil, topography, and moisture availability. Change still occurs, but it is no longer directional, developmental change, but change oriented around an equilibrium point. In Chapter 2, we described such a condition as one of *dynamic equilibrium*, a concept that takes into account the fact that all environments are constantly changing and evolving, with new disturbances occurring frequently on at least a small scale.

In the typical mature ecosystem, then, localized sites may be undergoing disturbance on a regular basis, but the characteristics listed in Table 18.1 are developed sufficiently enough for energy and nutrient utilization to be highly efficient, food webs complex, and mutualistic relationships prevalent. The system is able to resist change and to be resilient when disturbance occurs. Thus, the disturbance events that do occur do not result in drastic change, but neither do they allow a steady-state condition.

INTERMEDIATE DISTURBANCE

In some ecosystems, the frequency, intensity, and scale of disturbance are such that the system never reaches full maturity, but is nevertheless able to maintain the species diversity, resilience, and energy use efficiency characteristic of a mature ecosystem. Where hurricanes occur, for example, these high-intensity disturbance events—as long as they are low in frequency—tend to generate forest systems with both high species diversity and high biomass (Vandermeer et al. 2000; Mascaro et al. 2005). Ecologists studying these systems have posited the **intermediate disturbance hypothesis**, which states that in natural ecosystems where environmental disturbances are neither too frequent nor too seldom (at some intermediate frequency) both diversity and productivity can be high (Connell and Slayter 1977; Connell 1978). The disturbance in these systems retains the early successional characteristic of high productivity, while the system's overall stability allows the high species diversity more characteristic of mature ecosystems.

Some natural ecosystems for which the intermediate disturbance hypothesis may apply are presented in Table 18.2. An examination of these systems reveals that intermediate disturbance can come about through a great variety of different combinations of disturbance frequency, disturbance intensity, and disturbance scale. At an ecosystem level, relatively intense and frequent disturbance on a small scale, for example, can have an effect similar to that of low-intensity, low-frequency disturbance on a larger scale.

TABLE 18.2
Some Examples of Intermediate Disturbance in Natural Ecosystems

Frequency	Scale	Intensity	Nature of Disturbance
High	Small	Low	Natural windfalling of trees in forests
Low	Large	High	Hurricane damage to coral reef or coastal tropical forest
High	Medium	Low	Removal of aboveground biomass by grazing herbivores in grasslands
Medium	Medium	Medium	Ice and sleet damage to trees in temperate forests
Medium	Medium	Low	Surface fires in dry summer tropical forests

In many intermediate disturbance situations, disturbance distributed irregularly over the landscape in time and space creates what is known as a **patchy landscape**, in which numerous stages of succession occur in a relatively small area. The variation in developmental stage from patch to patch contributes to the maintenance of considerable diversity at the ecosystem level. Successional **patchiness** can therefore be seen as an important aspect of the ecological dynamics of ecosystems. Patch size, variation in patch development, and the nature of the interfaces between patches all become important variables, and ecologists have invested considerable study attempting to understand their role in natural ecosystems (Pickett and White 1985; Groom et al. 2006). The inherent patchiness of many agricultural landscapes points out the potential application of intermediate disturbance and patchiness to agroecosystem management (Bruun 2000). As we will see in more detail in Chapter 21, the concept of patchiness has become especially important in approaches that seek to conserve biodiversity and ecosystem services in agricultural landscapes (Swift et al. 2004; Groom et al. 2006).

APPLICATIONS TO AGROECOSYSTEM MANAGEMENT

Modern agriculture has developed practices, technologies, and inputs that allow farmers to ignore most successional processes. In place of natural recovery, farmers use inputs and materials that replace what is removed at harvest or altered with cultivation. Constant disturbance keeps the agroecosystem at the early stages of succession, where a greater proportion of gross productivity is available as net productivity or harvestable biomass. But in order to develop more resilient systems that are much less dependent on human interventions and polluting, nonrenewable inputs, we must do much more to take advantage of natural ecosystem recovery processes. Our knowledge of the successional process in natural ecosystems can be used both to aid agroecosystems in their recovery from the impacts of human-induced disturbance and to introduce disturbances in a planned manner.

TABLE 18.3
Desirable Ecological Characteristics of Agroecosystems in Relation to Successional Development

	Successional Stage of Greatest Development			
Characteristic	**Early**	**Middle**	**Late**	**Benefit to Agroecosystem**
High species diversity		░	▓	Reduced risk of catastrophic crop loss
High total biomass			▓	Larger source of soil organic matter
High NPP	▓			Greater potential for production of harvestable biomass
Complexity of species interactions		░	▓	Greater potential for biological control
Efficient nutrient cycling		░	▓	Diminished need for external nutrient inputs
Mutualistic interference			▓	Greater stability; diminished need for external inputs

Simply stated, the task is to design agroecosystems that on the one hand take advantage of some of the beneficial attributes of the early stages of succession, yet on the other hand incorporate some of the advantages gained by allowing the system to reach the later stages of succession. As shown in Table 18.3, only one desirable ecological characteristic of agroecosystems—high NPP—occurs in the early stages of successional development; all the others do not become manifest until the later stages of development.

The challenge for research, then, is to develop ways of integrating disturbance and development so as to take best advantage of both extremes. This involves learning how to use successional processes for installing and developing an agroecosystem, as well as for reintroducing disturbance and recovery at appropriate times in the life of the system.

Allowing Successional Development

Agriculture has long taken advantage of disturbance to keep farming systems in the earlier stages of succession. This is especially true for annual cropping systems, where no part of the ecosystem is allowed to progress beyond the early pioneer stage of development. In this stage, the system can produce large amounts of harvestable material, but keeping an agroecosystem at this high output level takes its toll on other developmental processes and thereby limits the advantages they might otherwise provide.

Another approach to agroecosystem management is to "mimic nature" by installing a farming system that uses as a model the successional processes that go on naturally in that location (Ewel 1999; Jackson 2011). Through such an approach—sometimes called the "analog model" or "natural systems agriculture"—we can establish agroecosystems that are both resilient and productive.

Under a scheme of managed succession, natural successional stages are mimicked by intentionally introducing plants, animals, practices, and inputs that promote the development of interactions and connections between component parts of the agroecosystem. Plant species (both crop and noncrop) are planted that capture and retain nutrients in the system and promote good soil development. These plants include legumes, with their nitrogen-fixing bacteria, and plants with phosphorus-trapping mycorrhizae. As the system develops, increasing diversity, food web complexity, and level of mutualistic interactions all lead to more effective feedback mechanisms for pest and disease management. The emphasis during the development process is on building a complex and integrated agroecosystem.

Such a strategy may require more intensive human management, but because processes and interactions are internalized within the agroecosystem, it should lead to less dependence on human-derived inputs from outside of the system and greater stability.

There are many ways that a farmer, beginning with a recently cultivated field of bare soil, can allow successional development to proceed beyond the early stages. One general model, beginning with an annual monoculture and progressing to a perennial tree crop system, is illustrated in Figure 18.3 and described in the following:

1–2. The farmer begins by planting a single annual crop that grows rapidly, captures soil nutrients, gives an early yield, and acts as a pioneer species in the developmental process. The farmer could also choose to introduce other less aggressive annuals into the initial planting, mimicking the early successional process.

3. As a next step (or instead of the previous one), the farmer can plant a polyculture of annuals that represent different components of the pioneer stage. The species would differ in their nutrient needs, attract different insects, have different rooting depths, and return a different proportion of their biomass to the soil. One might be a nitrogen-fixing legume. Small livestock such as ducks or geese might be allowed to graze on weeds or feed on snails that might be common colonizers. All of these early species would contribute to the initiation of the recovery process, and they would modify the environment so that noncrop plants and animals—especially the macro- and microorganisms necessary for developing the soil ecosystem—can also begin to colonize.
4. Following the initial stage of development (toward the end of the first season or at the beginning of the second or third season), short-lived perennial crops might begin to be introduced. Taking advantage of

FIGURE 18.1 The short-lived perennial yuca (*M. esculenta*) growing in an annual corn crop, Turrialba, Costa Rica. The yuca is introduced after the corn is established.

FIGURE 18.2 Seedlings of the tree *Gmelina arborea* intercropped into a corn–squash planting in southern Campeche, Mexico. The practice of initiating a tree crop system in an annual system is called *taungya*.

the soil cover created by the pioneer crops, these species can diversify the agroecosystem in important ecological aspects. Deeper root systems, more organic matter stored in standing biomass, and greater habitat microclimate diversity all combine to advance the successional development of the agroecosystem (Figure 18.1).

5. Once soil conditions improve sufficiently, the ground is prepared for planting longer-lived perennials, especially orchard or tree crops, with annual and short-lived perennial crops maintained in the areas between them. While the trees are in their early growth, they have limited impact on the environment around them. At the same time, they benefit from having annual crops around them, because in the early stages of growth they are often more susceptible to interference from the more aggressive weedy *r*-selected noncrop species that would otherwise occupy the area (Figure 18.2).
6. As the tree crops develop, the space in between them can continue to be managed with annuals and short-lived perennials, using the agroforestry approach described below. Larger livestock can be introduced at this point for vegetation management, enterprise diversification, and better nutrient cycling (see Chapter 19).
7. Eventually, once the trees reach full development, the end point in the developmental process is achieved. This end point could be modeled after the structure of natural ecosystems of the region. Once it has been achieved, the farmer has the choice of maintaining it (possibly as an integrated system with livestock) or introducing controlled disturbance in ways that return the agroecosystem, or selected parts of it, to earlier stages of succession.

It is useful to examine how NPP and standing biomass change over time when an agroecosystem is allowed to progress through the stages described in Figure 18.3. These changes will be similar to those that occur in a natural ecosystem as it undergoes succession after disturbance; a general model for these changes over time is presented in Figure 18.4. NPP increases rapidly during the earliest stages of agroecosystem development, with most of that increase being available as harvestable products. A time interval in the early stages of successional development (e.g., Stages 2 and 3 in Figure 18.3) will show the most rapid increase in NPP available during the developmental process, and provide the greatest amount of harvestable material in the shortest time. This could also be the point at which the most biomass is available for grazing animals. In the later stages of development (e.g., Stage 7 in Figure 18.3), when the rate of NPP begins to decrease, standing biomass (in the form of accumulated perennial biomass) is relatively high, but the actual amount of new harvestable material produced in each time interval begins to drop.

The changing relationship between NPP and biomass over time determines what management and production strategies can be used at each stage of agroecosystem development. The trade-offs and constraints change. In the early stages of development, for example, constant removal of NPP restricts the accumulation of biomass, whereas restricted harvest of NPP forces a farmer to wait several years for harvest. Grazing animals can help accelerate biomass turnover as long as their manures are kept in the system. At the intermediate stages of development, NPP is high enough for part of it to be harvested as fruit or nuts and part allowed to accumulate as biomass. By the later stages (e.g., Stage 7 in Figure 18.3), NPP declines to a low enough level that a workable strategy is to allow all new NPPs to accumulate as biomass, and to harvest the biomass selectively for fuel, timber, forage, paper pulp, or even food.

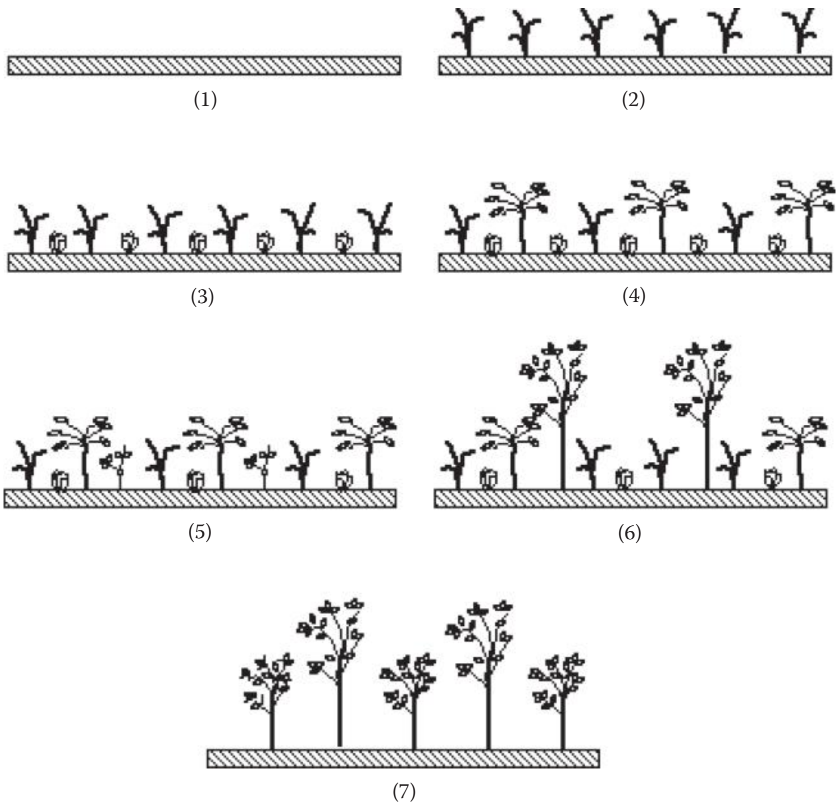


FIGURE 18.3 Steps in the successional development of an agroecosystem. At any stage in the process, disturbance can be introduced to bring all or part of the system back to an earlier stage of development. (1) Bare soil, (2) annual monoculture, (3) annual polyculture, (4) polyculture of mixed annuals and short-lived perennials, (5) annual/perennial polyculture with tree seedlings, (6) agroforestry, and (7) tree crop agrosystem.

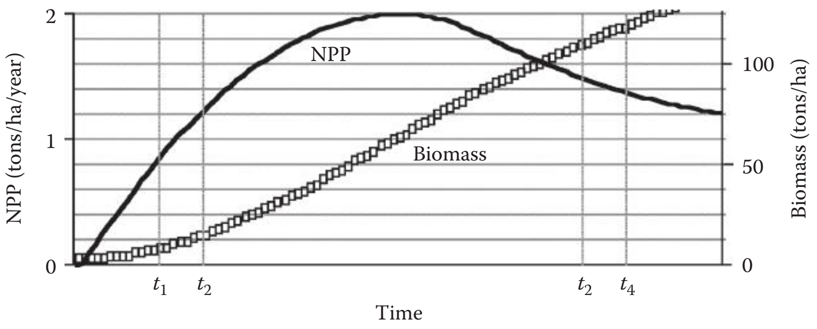


FIGURE 18.4 Change over time in the relationship between annual NPP and accumulated living and dead biomass in a representative successionally developing ecosystem. A time interval (e.g., one season) in the early stages of succession (such as t_2–t_1) will witness a rapid increase in NPP, whereas NPP will decline slightly during a time interval of similar length (such as t_4–t_3) during the latter stages of succession. (Modified from Whittaker, R.H., *Communities and Ecosystems*, 2nd edn., MacMillan, New York, 1975; Odum, E.P., *Ecology and Our Endangered Life-Support Systems*, Sinauer Associates Incorporated, Sunderland, MA, 1993.)

MANAGING SUCCESSIONALLY DEVELOPED AGROECOSYSTEMS

Once a successionally developed agroecosystem has been created, the problem becomes one of how to manage it. The farmer has three basic options:

1. Return the entire system to the initial stages of succession by introducing a major disturbance, such as clear-cutting the trees in the perennial system. Many of the ecological advantages that have been achieved will be lost and the process must begin anew.
2. Maintain the system as a perennial or tree crop agroecosystem, with or without livestock.
3. Reintroduce disturbance into the agroecosystem in a controlled and localized manner, taking advantage of the intermediate disturbance hypothesis and the dynamics that such patchiness introduces into an


(a) (b)

FIGURE 18.5 Variations in the mixture of annuals and perennials in successionally developed agroecosystems. Corn and beans grown for the local market are surrounded by persimmon trees in the urban fringe around Beijing, China (a). At a greater distance from any markets, a rural farm in southern Costa Rica (b) concentrates on perennial shrub and tree crops.

> ecosystem. Small areas in the system can be cleared, returning those areas to earlier stages in succession, and allowing a return to the planting of annual or short-lived crops. If care is taken in the disturbance process, the belowground ecosystem can be kept at a later stage of development, whereas the aboveground system can be made up of highly productive species that are available for harvest removal. Such a mixture of early and later stages of development leads to the formation of a **successional mosaic**. This mosaic can be adjusted and managed according to the ecological conditions of the area, as well as the needs of the farmer and changes in market conditions. It can also incorporate livestock.

The latter option provides the most advantages and offers the greatest flexibility to the farmer. Within the constraints imposed by the ecological limits of the cropping region, the final mixture of annual and perennial plants and grazing animals can be tailored to the needs of the farmer and farm community and adjusted to fit market demand, the distance to market, the ability to enter into the market, and the farmer's ability to purchase and transport inputs. The closer the farm is to inputs, labor, and markets, the heavier the emphasis can be on the annual component.

The biggest challenge in managing a successionally developed system is to learn how to introduce disturbance in ways that stimulate system productivity on the one hand, and provide resistance to change and variation within the ecosystem on the other. This can be done in many different ways depending on local environmental conditions, the structure of mature natural ecosystems normally present, and the feasibility of maintaining modifications of those conditions over the long term.

For example, in the prairie region of the United States, where a large percentage of the country's annual grain production currently takes place, the use of a successional model for designing a treeless perennial grain system (discussed in Chapter 14) might be the focus. Another example applies to the rice-growing regions of the Yangtze River valley of China, where the long-term maintenance of paddy systems is based on knowledge of wetland ecosystems, periodic flooding, and human alteration of paddy soil. A successionally developed paddy rice agroecosystem could incorporate a perennial component by using trees that tolerate wet, flooded conditions, such as willows, bald cypress, and other riparian or wetland species, and by adding an animal component consisting of waterfowl and fish.

AGROFORESTRY SYSTEMS

Although the perennial components of a successionally developed agroecosystem do not have to be trees, systems with trees provide some of the best examples of how successional development can be managed. The term **agroforestry** has been given to practices that intentionally retain or plant trees on land used for crop production or grazing (Wiersum 1981; Nair 1983). Such systems combine elements of crop or animal agriculture with elements of forestry, either at the same time or in sequence, building on the unique productive and protective value of trees. There are many variations in practices that fall into the category of agroforestry: in agrosilviculture, trees are combined with crops; in silvopastoral systems, trees are combined with animal production; and in agrosilvopastoral systems, the farmer manages a complex mixture of trees, crops, and animals. All agroforestry systems are good examples of taking advantage of diversity and successional development for production of food and other farm products.

Incorporating trees into agroecosystems is a practice with a long history. This is especially true in the tropical and subtropical regions of the world, where farmers have long planted trees along with other agricultural crops and animals to help provide for the basic needs of food, wood products, and fodder, and to help conserve and protect their often limited resources (Nair 1983). Agroforestry systems in temperate regions of the world are also well known (Gordon and Newman 1997).

The objective of most agroforestry systems is to optimize the beneficial effects of the interactions that occur among the woody components and the crop or animal components in order to obtain more diversity of products, lessen the need for outside inputs, and lower the negative environmental impacts of farming practices. In many respects, agroforestry systems create the same ecological benefits as multiple cropping systems, and the research methods used

CASE STUDY: SLASH MULCH SYSTEM OF THE NEOTROPICS: MIMICKING RAINFOREST PROCESS

In tropical soils, nutrients such as phosphorus are often “fixed” into unavailable forms through chemical reactions with soil minerals or interaction with volcanic clay parent materials. In many humid tropical rainforests, therefore, most available nutrients are found in the plant biomass itself—both in the live standing biomass of plants and in the deep layer of litter on the forest floor (Chapin et al. 1986). Tropical trees and other plants deal with this situation by sending their roots into the decomposing plant litter, where they can take up nutrients before they are released into the soil, and by interacting with mycorrhizal and other fungi that break down the organic matter in the litter layer.

In high-rainfall parts of Latin America, farmers grow dry beans using a traditional (and likely pre-Hispanic) system known as slash mulch, or *frijol tapado*, that mimics the nutrient cycling of the surrounding (or former) tropical rainforest ecosystem. That is, the bean plants grow primarily in a layer of mulch rather than in the soil.

The production system starts by selecting a suitable section of second-growth vegetation and cutting pathways several meters apart using machetes. Then bean seeds are thrown into the vegetation on either side of the path at a seeding density appropriate to the area and known through experience. Then the vegetation is cut down and spread to form an even mulch layer that may be as deep as 20 cm. The beans then germinate, sending roots into the mulch layer and expanding the hypocotyl (the stem between the root and the cotyledons) through the mulch. Each bean plant develops most of its root system (75%–85% in the mulch layer, allowing the aboveground portion of flowers and fruits to produce the dried seed that is harvested (Rosemeyer et al. 2000) (Figure 18.6).

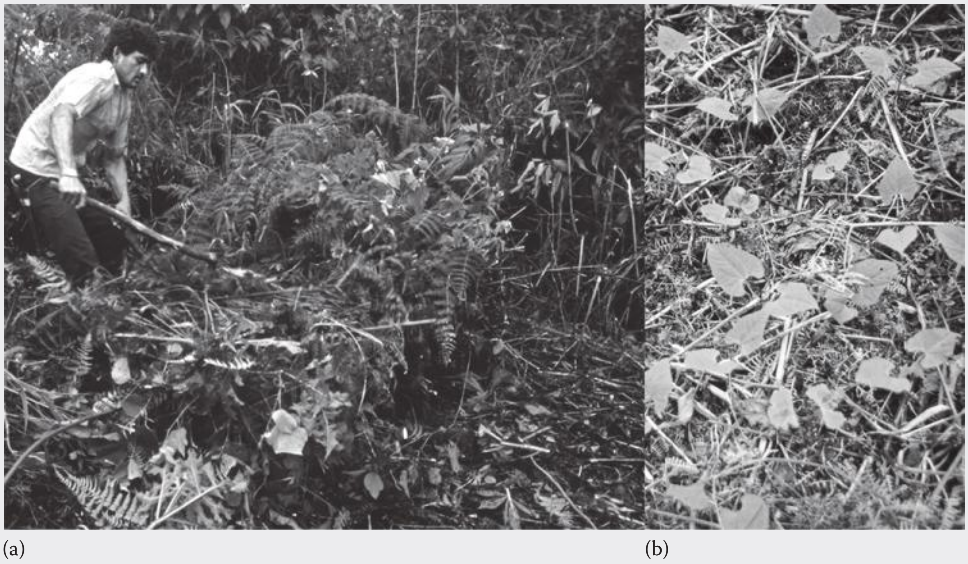


FIGURE 18.6 A farmer cuts the second growth on top of the bean seeds, which have already been scattered into the vegetation (a). The bean seedlings emerge through the mulch (b). The soil has complete cover, and there are no weeds or other vegetation to compete with the beans.

Because the mulch layer inhibits the germination of weed seeds, but doesn't affect the large and nutrient-rich beans, the bean plants have little competition from weeds growing from seed. The thick mulch layer maintains a moist environment for the roots and prevents soil erosion. As small farmers are pushed up the hillsides into marginal lands by export production, this latter feature of the system becomes especially important.

By ramifying their root systems through the litter or mulch layers, the bean plants have ready access to nutrients, and they also avoid many soilborne pathogens. In experiments that took place in Costa Rica, bean plants grown in a slash mulch system showed a lower incidence of Anthracnose root lesions (*Colletotrichum lindemuthianum*), root-knot nematode galls (*Meloidogyne* sp.), and Fusarium root rot than bean plants grown in soil, although it was also true that hypocotyl infection with *Rhizoctonia* increased. Nodulation by nitrogen-fixing bacteria and mycorrhizae was also higher in the mulch-grown plants as compared with those grown in the soil without fertilization (Rosemeyer et al. 2000). Additional preliminary experiments have shown that diversity of both nematodes and insects was greater in mulched than in unmulched systems.

With increasing pressure on the land base, the fallow periods traditionally used with this system have tended to decrease, reducing the amount of biomass that accumulates and can be made into mulch. This threatens the viability of the system, but it has also prompted innovation. Experiments with alley cropping show that trees are able to provide a sustainable mulch layer through annual pruning. The nitrogen-fixing, early succession agroforestry trees *Calliandra* and *Inga*, with rapid and slow leaf decomposition respectively, can provide significantly greater mulch volume and subsequent bean yields than the traditional slash mulch system (Kettler 1996).

By maintaining the mulch layer and using the valuable organic matter produced as part of secondary growth, the slash mulch system manages succession in a way that limits the disturbance of the soil. Fire is not used and bare soil is not exposed. In other words, disturbance returns the system to an earlier stage of succession, but not completely to the beginning. In this sense, the system is much more sustainable. Similar ways of limiting the intensity of disturbance might be developed for other agroecosystems where periodic land clearing is a management tool.

to analyze multiple cropping systems apply equally well to agroforestry systems.

ECOLOGICAL ROLE OF TREES IN AGROFORESTRY

Trees are capable of altering dramatically the conditions of the ecosystem of which they are part (Reifsnyder and Darnhofer 1989; Farrell 1990). The sustainable productivity of agroforestry systems is due in large part to this capability of trees (Figure 18.7).

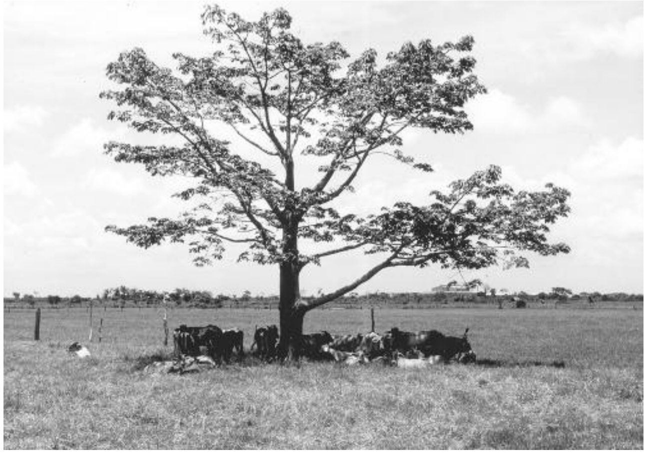


FIGURE 18.7 Cows crowding into the shade of a lone *Ceiba pentandra* left in a tropical lowland pasture in Tabasco, Mexico. Trees can provide a number of benefits to pasture and grazing systems.

Belowground, a tree's roots penetrate deeper than those of annual crops, affecting soil structure, nutrient cycling, and soil moisture relations. Aboveground, a tree alters the light environment by shading, which in turn affects humidity and evapotranspiration. Its branches and leaves provide habitats for an array of animal life and modify the local effects of wind. Shed leaves provide soil cover and modify the soil environment; as they decay they become an important source of organic matter. These and other ecological effects of trees are summarized in Figure 18.8.

Because of these effects, trees in agroecosystems are a good foundation for developing the emergent qualities of more complex ecosystems. They allow more efficient capture of solar energy; enhance nutrient uptake, retention, and cycling; and maintain the system in dynamic equilibrium. By providing permanent microsites and resources, they make possible a more stable population of both pests and their predators. In an agroforestry system, all of these factor interactions can be managed to the benefit of the associated crop plant and animals, while at the same time lessening the dependence of the system on outside inputs.

Design and Management of Agroforestry Systems

In an agroforestry system, farmers have the choice of how many trees to include, how frequently and in what patterns to remove them, and what kind of pattern of successional mosaic to maintain. These management decisions depend on the local environment and culture, as well as the nature and proximity of markets.

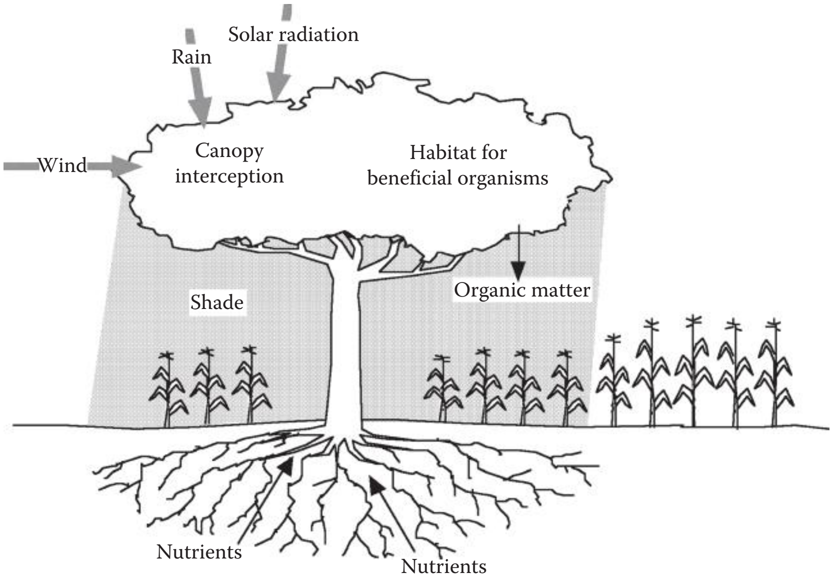


FIGURE 18.8 **Effects of a tree on the surrounding agroecosystem.** Because of its size, root depth, and perennial nature, a tree has significant effects on the abiotic conditions of an agroecosystem and takes part in many biotic interactions. In addition to the effects and interactions shown, a tree can limit wind and water erosion, provide shade and browse for animals, form mycorrhizal associations, moderate soil temperature, and reduce evapotranspiration. Leguminous trees can contribute nitrogen to the system through their association with nitrogen-fixing bacteria. (Adapted from Nair, P.K.R., *Soil Productivity Aspects of Agroforestry: Science and Practice in Agroforestry*, International Council for Research in Agroforestry (ICRAF), Nairobi, Kenya, 1984; Farrell, J., The influence of trees in selected agroecosystems in Mexico, in: Gliessman, S.R. (ed.), *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1990, pp. 169–183.)

CASE STUDY: EFFECT OF TREES ON SOIL IN TLAXCALA, MEXICO

Trees affect the environment of an agroforestry system in a variety of ways. The specific effects vary from system to system, depending on factors such as altitude, annual rainfall, wind patterns, geography, soil type, and, of course, the species of tree. To effectively use trees in an agroecosystem, it is important to consider all of these factors, as well as the farmer's needs.

In the low-lying areas of Tlaxcala, Mexico, farmers typically maintain some combination of five different types of trees, either scattered in their fields or arranged as borders. Researcher John Farrell chose to study the two trees that are most commonly associated with agricultural fields in Tlaxcala, *Prunus capuli* and *Juniperus deppeana* (Farrell 1990). For each species, he or she studied the conditions directly under the crown of the tree, in the shade zone of the tree, in the zone affected by the tree root system, and in the zone outside of the direct influence of the tree.

Farrell found that soil conditions were consistently improved by the presence of the trees. Carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorus content of the soil was significantly higher in the zone of influence of the trees; other beneficial effects included a higher soil pH, increased moisture content and lower soil temperature. All of these effects decreased with distance from the tree.

On the negative side, harvest yields were reduced directly under the canopy of the tree; corn planted in this area was shorter and produced approximately half as much grain as corn outside the zone. However, corn in the partially shaded areas within the zone of root influence produced just as well as corn grown outside the influence of the tree. Farrell concluded that the lower yield of the shaded corn was due solely to shading and not to competition for nutrients.

The shading of crop plants under a tree's canopy demonstrates that using trees in agroecosystems always involves trade-offs. However, with proper management, farmers can maximize the substantial benefits of trees while minimizing their negative impacts on harvest yield.

Optimizing Positive Impacts of Trees

Knowledge of both the positive and negative impacts of trees on the rest of the agroecosystem is essential to fully and effectively integrate trees into the system. The positive impacts discussed earlier need to be balanced with the possible negative impacts of trees. These include competitive or allelopathic interference between trees and other crops, microclimate modification that creates conditions favoring disease or pest outbreak, and damage to crop quality caused by branches or fruits falling from mature trees.

These negative effects of trees can usually be avoided or mitigated by appropriate spatial arrangement of the trees, choice of tree species, choice of annual species, timing of planting, and pruning. Integration of trees takes extensive knowledge of the full range of ecological interactions that can occur.

Managing Interdependency

As our knowledge of the ecological processes taking place in complex agroforestry systems becomes more complete, we can begin to see how the different components of such systems become interdependent. An annual cropping component can become dependent on the trees for habitat modification, nutrient capture from deeper depths in the soil, and harboring of beneficial insects. The presence of the cropping component in the system can displace invasive noncrop plants that might interfere with the growth of the trees. Animals benefit from the high NPP of the annual or short-lived crop or forage part of the system, and return nutrients to the soil in the form of urine and manures (for further discussion of the role of animals in agroforestry systems, see Chapter 19). Management of agroforestry systems should focus on maximizing the benefits of these complex sets of ecological interdependencies.

We must also remember that ecological interdependencies are only part of the picture. Humans are dependent on trees in agroecosystems for such items as firewood, construction material, browse for animals, fruits and nuts, spice, and medicinals. Agroforestry systems can be designed and managed with these needs in mind, so that the trees serve important roles both ecologically and economically. When this occurs, an interdependency can develop between the farming community and its farms.

Spatial Arrangement of Trees

Trees can be arranged in an agroforestry system in a variety of ways. The pattern used will depend on the needs of the farmer, the nature of the agroecosystem, and the local environmental and economic conditions. As an example, Figure 18.9 shows six different ways that the same percentage of ground in an agroecosystem can be covered by trees.

If the primary emphasis of the farmer is on silvopastoral activities, with trees intended to provide living fences, windbreaks, occasional forage from prunings, and harvestable products such as firewood or fruit, then a boundary planting of trees around areas of pasture (a) may be the best design. If, in another case, wind is a problem, but the focus is on crop production, a shelterbelt or windbreak system (b) may be best. When the tree component is intended to provide mulch from leaf fall or prunings to enhance crop production, shelterbelts can be narrow tree rows between alleys used for agriculture (c). When the trees also have agricultural value, they may be dispersed among the cropping system or pasture, either uniformly (d) or more randomly (e). Finally, if soil conditions are so poor that permanent cropping or grazing is not feasible, a rotational design (f) can be employed where the successional period during tree development is determined by a range of factors similar to those used to determine the length of fallow needed in shifting cultivation. A thorough understanding of the interaction, integration, and interdependency of all components of the system will ultimately help in determining trees' spatial arrangement and how it may change over time.

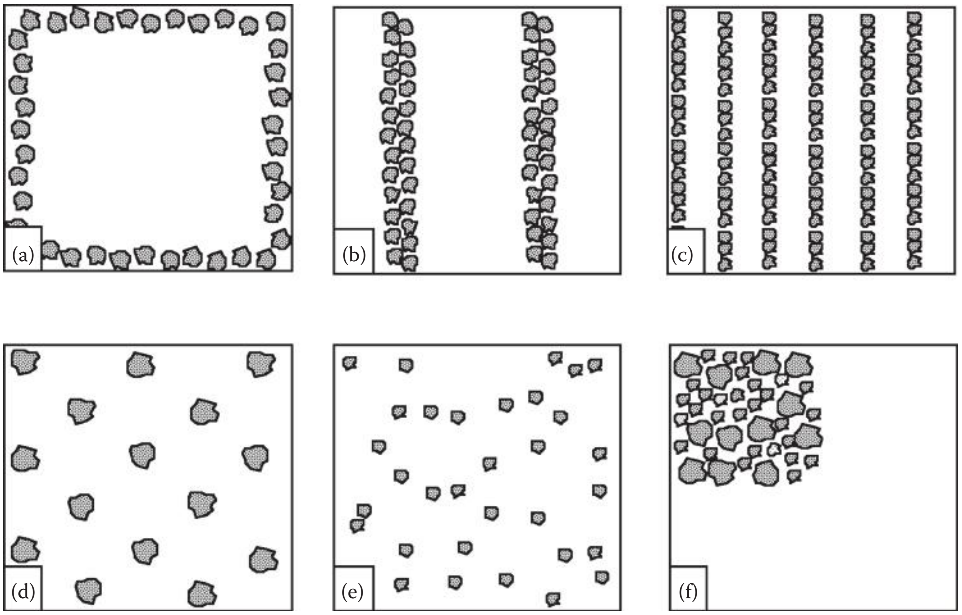


FIGURE 18.9 Models for the arrangement of trees in agroforestry systems. (a) Boundary planting, (b) shelterbelts, (c) alley cropping, (d) trees in fields, (e) trees in fields, and (f) rotational fallow. (Adapted from Young, A., The environmental basis of agroforestry, in: Reifsnyder, W.S. and Darnhofer, T.O. (eds.), *Meteorology and Agroforestry*, International Council for Research in Agroforestry, Nairobi, Kenya, 1989, pp. 29–48.)

TROPICAL HOME GARDENS

An agroforestry system with great complexity and diversity, as well as opportunities for maintaining a mosaic of stages of succession, is the tropical home garden system. It is probably one of the most complex and interesting types of agroecosystems, and one we have much to learn from regarding resource management for a sustainable agriculture (Méndez 2000; Nair 2001; Kumar and Nair 2004) (Figure 18.10).

The home garden is an integrated ecosystem of humans, plants, animals, soils, and water, with trees playing key ecological roles. It usually occupies a well-defined area, between 0.5 and 2.0 ha in size, in close proximity to a dwelling. Rich in plant species, home gardens are usually dominated by woody perennials; a mixture of annuals and perennials of different heights forms layers of vegetation resembling a natural forest structure. The high diversity of species permits year-round harvesting of food products and a wide range of other useful products, such as firewood, medicinal plants, spices, and ornamentals. Tropical home gardens also provide good opportunities for incorporating domestic animals such as chickens (Méndez et al. 2001; Del Angel-Perez and Mendoza 2004; Kehlenbeck and Maass 2005).

High Diversity

The ecological diversity of home gardens—including diversity of species, structure, function, and vertical and horizontal arrangement—is remarkably high. Two examples serve as illustrations.

In a study of home gardens in both upland and lowland sites in Mexico, it was found that in quite small areas (between 0.3 and 0.7 ha) high diversity permitted the maintenance of gardens that in many aspects were similar to the local natural ecosystems (Allison 1983). The gardens studied had relatively high indices of diversity for cropping systems (see Table 18.4), and had leaf area indices and cover levels that approximated the much more complex natural ecosystems of the surrounding regions.

TABLE 18.4
Characteristics of Home Garden Systems at Two Sites in Mexico

Characteristics	Lowland Site (Cupilco, $N=3$)	Upland Site (Tepeyanco, $N=4$)
Garden size (ha)	0.70	0.34
Useful species per garden	55	33
Diversity (Shannon index)	3.84	2.43
Leaf area index	4.5	3.2
% cover	96.7	85.3
% light transmission	21.5	30.5
Perennial species (%)	52.3	24.5
Tree species (%)	30.7	12.3
Ornamental plants (%)	7.0	9.0
Medicinal plants (%)	2.0	2.8

Source: Data from Allison, J., An ecological analysis of home gardens (*huertos familiares*) in two Mexican villages, M.A. thesis, University of California, Santa Cruz, CA, 1983.

In another study (Ewel et al. 1982), in which nine different tropical ecosystems were analyzed for a series of ecosystem characteristics, a 40-year-old home garden was found to have the most evenly distributed canopy—one that was fairly uniformly stratified from ground level to more than 14 m in height. Its leaf area index was 3.9 and its percent cover 100%, and the leaf biomass per square meter (307 g/m^2) was the next to highest among all of the ecosystems examined. Total root biomass per square meter down to a depth of 25 cm was identical to leaf biomass. Perhaps most importantly, of the nine systems tested, the first 25 cm of the home garden's soil had the highest small-diameter (<5 cm) root surface area per area of ground surface. These traits are indicative of an ecologically efficient system, especially in its ability to capture light, garner nutrients in the upper layers of the soil, store nutrients in the aboveground biomass, and reduce the impact of rain and sun on the soil.

The trees in a home garden—and the way in which they are managed by their human caretakers—make possible much of the garden's diversity, complexity, and efficient functioning. Carbon dioxide trapped between canopy layers might be able to stimulate photosynthetic activity, and the layers themselves may increase habitat diversity for birds and insects useful for maintaining biological control in the system. The trees' roots prevent nutrients from leaching out of the system, and the trees' leaf litter recycles nutrients back into the rest of the system.

FIGURE 18.10 A traditional tropical home garden in Cupilco, Tabasco, Mexico. A diverse mixture of useful herbs, shrubs, and trees is associated with the area close to the dwelling.

Multiple Uses and Functions

An important characteristic of home gardens is their multifaceted usefulness. The trees can produce food, such as coconuts, that can serve as either subsistence food or a cash crop. The woody parts of trees can be used for both firewood and construction material. The diversity of food types from both plants and animals provides a varied diet balanced in carbohydrates, protein, vitamins, and minerals (Dewey 1979; Dharmasena and Wijeratne 1996). Due to the mixture of species and their variability in flowering time and fruit maturity, there is always something ready to be harvested, ensuring sources of food or income throughout the entire year (Gliessman 1990).

The home garden can have such social or aesthetic functions as serving as an indication of the social status of the owner or beautifying or improving the environment directly associated with the house. At the same time, the gardens have an important economic function for rural families. In studies in Java it was found that between 20% and 30% of the annual income of many households was obtained from their home gardens (Hisyam et al. 1979). Production in local gardens fell considerably during the rice harvest when labor was concentrated on this essential food and cash crop, but during the rest of the year, activity in the gardens was quite high.

A case study in Nicaragua found that agroforestry home gardens were important to household livelihoods for both income generation and products for consumption (Méndez 2000; Méndez et al. 2001). On average, households derived 34% of their income from sales of home garden products, and in 3 cases out of the 20 studied, it was the only source of income. In addition, families reported obtaining at least 40 different types of plant products from their gardens, including firewood, fruit, timber, and medicinal plants. The authors found a relationship between the level of dependence on the home gardens for products and income and the number of plant species and management zones. Although dependence on home gardens varied, they represent a reliable and flexible resource that is held in high esteem by the families that maintain them.

Dynamic Change

The few long-term studies of home gardens that have been carried out have shown that the gardens are dynamic and changing. In a study in Costa Rica, a home garden near Puerto Viejo was shown to be in the process of change due to a need for cash income, as well as the limited availability of both land and labor (Flietner 1985). The tree stratum in approximately half of the 3264 m^2 garden was in the process of being replaced with coconuts planted in evenly spaced rows, and the understory had been planted to pure stands of yuca (*Manihot esculenta*) and pineapple (*Ananas comosus*). With the construction of an all-weather road to the region, trucks had become much more available for hauling produce to distant urban markets, creating a demand for crops such as coconut and pineapple that a few years before did not exist. Farmers were adjusting their agroecosystems to meet this demand. Also, the farmer of the study garden had recently taken a job off the farm and was much less able to meet the management needs that a more diverse home garden would require.

As the coconuts mature and generate a much shadier environment on the ground below them, the farmer will have to decide what shifts will be necessary in the understory plants. He or she may shift to the malanga (*Colocasia esculenta*), common already in the shadier parts of the garden. He or she may also decide to clear out part of the tree crop in order to reintegrate more of the annual crops and short-lived perennials that were common earlier in the development of the system (Figure 18.11).

FIGURE 18.11 A home garden near Puerto Viejo, Costa Rica, undergoing a transition to market crops. A new road opened up market opportunities and prompted the changes in the species mix of the garden.

TABLE 18.5
Comparison of Plant Species in a 1240 m^2 Home Garden over 2 Years in Cañas, Guanacaste, Costa Rica

	1985	1986
Species	71	83
Individuals	940	1870
Tree species	17	16
Food species	21	18
Ornamental species	23	31
Medicinal species	7	9
Firewood species	3	5
Spice species	0	4

Source: Data from Gliessman, S.R. (ed.), *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1990.

In a home garden system studied in Cañas, Guanacaste, Costa Rica, interesting shifts in diversity and organization of the garden were observed to take place from 1 year to the next (Gliessman 1990), as can be seen from the data in Table 18.5. The total number of species in the garden increased by 12, but more impressive is the major increase in total number of individual plants. A large part of this increase came primarily from the greater predominance of ornamental species the second year, along with more medicinal and spice species.

Some of the food species that had been very common the year before, such as squash, were not present in 1986 due to a drought that had eliminated seedlings planted earlier.

Some of the changes in the garden can be traced to changes in the household's economic situation. In 1986, the woman of the household had less time to care for the garden since she and her daughters had begun a small-scale baking business making bread for sale in the local community. If the baking business fails, food crops will probably once again receive greater emphasis.

Even though socioeconomic factors account for part of the change in the garden, some of it occurs for ecological reasons. Change in home gardens is ongoing and sometimes quite rapid because of the shifting dynamics of the disturbance–recovery process.

Links with the Social System

As indicated by the studies described earlier, social and economic factors can have significant impacts on home garden systems and the way they are managed. A long-term study of traditional agriculture in Tlaxcala, Mexico (González-Jácome 1985) found that changes took place in home garden diversity, structure, and management in response to industrialization and population increase. In general, farmers reduced the number of species in their home gardens, used more orderly and easily managed cropping patterns, and planted species that could more easily enter the cash economy. However, because Tlaxcala has gone through several "boom and bust" cycles over a longer time period, where off-farm employment has been alternately available and then limited, farmers have a certain mistrust of job security off the farm. As a result, relatively diverse agroecosystems have been maintained even in times of off-farm employment as insurance against the probable loss of the outside income.

Regional population growth has had a mixed impact on home garden structure. Since Tlaxcala is close to the large and expanding urban-industrial centers of Puebla and Mexico City, there is considerable demand and market for a large variety of agricultural products, from basic corn and beans to cut flowers. This demand is a stimulus to diversify the local cropping systems, but it also puts pressure on farmers to emphasize cash crops and abandon many subsistence species. Those families that see an advantage in combining both cash and subsistence crops maintain the most diverse home gardens, while others shift to mostly cash crops.

Although regional economic change has a clear impact on home gardens, the link between the two can go in the other direction as well. Where they exist, home gardens tend to stabilize the local economy and social structure by giving families a means of economic survival. They act as a bridge between the traditional local economy and the modern industrial economy, helping to buffer the forces that encourage migration to industrial centers and abandonment of traditional social ties. By offering the possibility of local autonomy, economic equity, and ecological sustainability, they provide important examples that can be adapted and applied around the world (Méndez et al. 2001; Major et al. 2005).

DISTURBANCE, RECOVERY, AND SUSTAINABILITY

Agroforestry and home garden agroecosystems have been examined in this chapter because of their usefulness as models of sustainable agriculture. They incorporate a range of desirable characteristics applicable and adaptable to any agroecosystem. Manageable and productive, they have the ability to respond to different factors or conditions in the environment, to meet the needs of the inhabitants for a great diversity of products and materials, and to respond to external socioeconomic demands. At the same time, they are not dependent on expensive imported agricultural inputs, and have very limited negative environmental impacts.

More information on existing types of successionally developed systems, especially those with perennial shrubs and trees, is desperately needed. Urbanization and the rapid move toward agroecosystem simplification and cash cropping are threatening the existence of these systems, especially in developing countries. We need to locate, describe, and monitor existing systems that incorporate traditional knowledge of the management of succession and disturbance with selected agroecologically based improvements. Moreover, studies of such systems (e.g., Berkes et al. 2000; Altieri 2002) require more institutional support.

Perhaps the greatest value of agroforestry systems is that they offer principles that can be applied to agroecosystems with few trees or none at all. By viewing all agroecosystems as successional systems in which we incorporate perennial species, appropriately introduce disturbance, and promote recovery from disturbance, we can make important steps toward sustainable food production. The limits are set only by the kind of mature ecosystems that would naturally occur in a region, and the human component in the design and management of sustainable alternatives that build upon such ecosystem models. Regardless of whether they are grain systems or home gardens, they must be dynamic, diverse, and flexible, incorporating the important ecosystem characteristics of resilience and resistance to disturbance, and the ability to constantly be renewed and regenerated by the recovery process of succession.

The more widespread implementation of practices based on disturbance and recovery will involve considerable research. But it can lead to the development of an agricultural landscape that is a mosaic of agroecosystems. The need for high harvestable yields could come from annual and short-lived perennial crops, grown in polycultures of several species that are ecologically complementary and interdependent. In such systems, animals could once again play important roles in nutrient cycling. Field structure and organization could change over time as succession leads to a gradual conversion to long-lived perennials. And incorporated into the disturbance cycle could be a patchwork of rotations in which areas are allowed to develop to maturity and their perennial or tree vegetation harvested or recycled to open up parts of the agroecosystem once again for annual cropping. In the end, a sustainable mosaic could be achieved.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. How similar or different are the ecological impacts of human-induced disturbances in agroecosystems to those of disturbances in natural ecosystems?
2. Describe how the "analog model" for agroecosystem design and management might be applied in your own farming region. Be sure to clearly indicate the successional stages your system would need to go through and how they mirror what happens in the natural ecosystems that exist (or once existed) around your farm.
3. Give some examples of how agroforestry system design can be informed by the knowledge about the ecological impact of trees on the environment, and how it can be shaped by the farmer's need for particular products.
4. How would you integrate both ecological balance and harvestability in the design of a home garden agroforestry system specifically suited to the location in which you live? Be sure to describe both the ecological and cultural backgrounds that affect your design determinations.
5. Why have trees disappeared from so many agricultural landscapes over the past several decades, especially in developed countries?
6. From an agroecological perspective, what are some of the most important relationships between diversity and disturbance in sustainable agriculture?
7. Describe how an agricultural landscape made up of a mosaic of successional patches might be described as a "polyculture of monocultures."

INTERNET RESOURCES

Agroforestry Net
www.agroforestry.net
An organization based in Hawaii and focused on the Pacific Islands.

Association for Temperate Agroforestry
www.aftaweb.org
An excellent source of information on agroforestry systems suitable for more temperate regions of the world.

Edible Forest Gardens
www.edibleforestgardens.com
An organization dedicated to developing the vision, design, ecology, and stewardship of perennial polycultures of multipurpose plants in small-scale settings.

Holistic Management International
www.holisticmanagement.org
A natural resource approach that uses ecological processes, including succession, for pasture and agroecosystem management.

The Overstory
www.agroforestry.net/overstory
An agroforestry "ejournal," focused on home gardens.

Society for Ecological Restoration
www.ser.org
An international society, with an academic journal, dedicated to reversing ecosystem degradation and restoring the earth's ecological balance for the benefit of humans and nature.

World Agroforestry Centre
www.worldagroforestry.org
Considerable information about research and development partnerships in the area of agroforestry in the tropics, directed toward reducing poverty and environmental impacts.

RECOMMENDED READING

Atanga, A., D. Khasa, S. Chang, and A. Degrande. 2014. *Tropical Agroforestry*. Springer: Berlin, Germany.
An up-to-date review of the principles and experiences of agroforestry in tropical regions of the world.

Bazzaz, F. A. 1996. *Plants in Changing Environments: Linking Physiological, Population, and Community Ecology*. Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
A foundational overview of the interactions between plants and different organisms as they participate in succession and ecosystem recovery.

Clewell, A. F. and J. Aronson. 2013. *Ecological Restoration: Principles, Values, and Structure of an Emerging Profession*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
An engaging review of the principles and practice of the profession of restoration ecology and the human needs and values that motivate practitioners.

Howell, E. A., J. A. Harrington, and S. B. Glass. 2011. *Introduction to Restoration Ecology*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
An interdisciplinary examination of the field of restoration ecology, from the ecological science to the policy decisions.

Jackson, W. 2011. *Nature as Measure: The Selected Essays of Wes Jackson*. Counterpoint: Berkeley, CA.
Essays from the founder of the Land Institute that focus on using nature as the model for designing agroecosystems as an alternative to industrial agriculture.

Nair, P. K. R. and D. Garrity (eds.). 2012. *Agroforestry: The Future of Global Land Use*. Springer: Berlin, Germany.
A comprehensive coverage of the concepts and experiences of agroforestry in both developing countries and industrialized temperate regions.

Odum, E. P. 1969. The strategy of ecosystem development. *Science* 164: 262–270.
A key paper for understanding the relationship between succession and ecosystem development.

Ronnenberg, K. L., G. A. Bradshaw, and P. A. Marquet (eds.). 2003. *How Landscapes Change: Human Disturbance and Ecosystem Fragmentation in the Americas*. Ecological Studies 162. Springer: Berlin, Germany.

A multidisciplinary overview of the interactions between humans and ecosystem processes, and how they have affected the landscapes of North and South America.

Schelhas, J. and R. Greenberg. 1996. *Forest Patches in Tropical Landscapes*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

An assessment of the ecological and social value of tropical forest remnants, and the issues surrounding their management and conservation.

Schroth, G., G. A. B. da Foseca, C. A. Harvey, C. Gascon, H. L. Vasconcelos, and A. M. N. Izac (eds.). 2004. *Agroforestry and Biodiversity Conservation in Tropical Landscapes*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

Rich in case studies, this edited volume critically analyzes the biodiversity conservation potential of tropical agroforestry systems at the landscape scale.

Walker, L. R., J. Walker, and R. J. Hobbs (eds.). 2007. *Linking Restoration and Ecological Succession*. Springer: New York.

A comprehensive discussion of how plants, animals, and microorganisms develop and interact following disturbances, and how this knowledge can be used in restoration.

Watt, A. S. 1947. Pattern and process in the plant community. *Journal of Ecology* 35: 1–22.

A classic paper on the way succession works in plant communities.

19 Animals in Agroecosystems

Livestock animals figure prominently among the many reasons given in Chapter 1 for the unsustainability of industrial agriculture. Confined animal feeding operations (CAFOs) pollute the air and water, turning manure into a problem instead of a resource; the meat industry stands as a prime example of economic concentration, vertical integration, and enemy of family farming; production of soybeans and corn for animal feed takes up too high a percentage of the world's arable land; concentrated production of meat and animal products for human consumption is energetically inefficient and ecologically harmful; factory farming of meat tends to undermine the economic base of rural farmers in developing countries who rely on small-scale livestock production; diets trending toward more meat consumption accentuate income disparities between rich and poor; and diseases of livestock such a mad cow and avian flu threaten the human population. Combined with the risks to human health presented by antibiotic- and hormone-laden meat and diets too high in animal fat, these problems put livestock animals in a bad light, making them a target for criticism among many critics of industrial agriculture, advocates for sustainability, and consumer activists, as well as vegetarians, animal rights activists, and the like.

Certainly some of the criticism is well deserved. But the problems lie not so much with the animals themselves or their use as food as they do with the ways the animals are incorporated into today's agroecosystems and food systems. Animals can play many beneficial roles in agroecosystems, and therefore make strong contributions to sustainability. Indeed, as we will see in this chapter, the inclusion of animals in an agroecosystem can often make the difference in realizing ecological sustainability and economic viability.

Relatively recently in agricultural history—around the turn of the century in the United States—farms included both livestock animals and crops as a matter of course. To use the central concept in this chapter: crops and livestock were integrated. The separation between crops and livestock that has occurred since then represents a literal disintegration of agriculture. This disintegration not only threatens the ecological foundations of our food system, it has also fundamentally altered the terms of the millennia-long mutualistic relationship we have developed with our domesticated animals.

Sustainability today depends in part on reintegrating animals and crops (Figure 19.1). It demands not the rejection of animal protein in our food system, but a more sensible and integrated approach to raising livestock for food that uses agroecological concepts and principles to adapt the best aspects of pre–industrial agriculture into the post–industrial age. In this chapter we will explore the ways this reintegration can take place. The focus is not on how to do animal husbandry sustainably, but rather on the synergisms that derive from mixing crops and animals and their role in moving us toward sustainability.

ROLE OF ANIMALS IN ECOSYSTEMS

Animals—defined broadly as heterotrophs—are essential components of all ecosystems on earth. They consume autotrophs (plants), transforming their biomass into animal biomass, which is eventually cycled back to autotrophs in the form of nutrient-rich waste and once-living organic matter. Since agroecosystems are modified natural ecosystems, managed for the purpose of harvesting biomass, they too require animals. Of course, as the ultimate consumers of the biomass harvested from agroecosystems, humans fill the animal role in all agroecosystems. But there are many reasons why we shouldn't be the only species in that role. As natural ecosystems demonstrate, there is plenty of room in an agroecosystem for a variety of animal species.

As we explore the ways in which reintegrating nonhuman animals into crop-based agroecosystems can help us achieve more sustainable food production systems, we need to begin, as always, with natural ecosystems. They show us how animals can enhance ecological integrity and stability, rather than disrupting or degrading it.

The role that animals play in the structure and function of natural ecosystems was discussed in some detail in Chapter 2. In Chapter 13, we discussed the many ways that animals may act as factors of the environment confronting crop plants (e.g., as pollinators and herbivores), and we covered the basic physiological processes and nutritional needs of the animals commonly used for food and fiber production in agroecosystems. Here, we review and expand on some of the concepts presented in those chapters, with a view toward applying that knowledge to the design and management of agroecosystems that incorporate livestock animals.

SHAPING VEGETATION

As heterotrophic organisms in the trophic structure of an ecosystem, herbivorous animals consume the biomass produced by plants, and this feeding behavior impacts the abundance, distribution, and diversity of the plant species, which in a terrestrial ecosystem are collectively termed the vegetation.

FIGURE 19.1 An integrated farming system with organic walnuts and chickens near Tres Pinos, CA. The mobile chicken houses are relocated daily so chickens can feed, help in weed management, and add manure to the soil. The walnut trees provide shade in the hot summer. The chickens are marketed directly to consumers, who come to the ranch to pick up their freshly slaughtered orders. Walnuts are harvested in the fall. A covercrop is grown during the winter.

Herbivorous animals are therefore key components—and determinants—of the structural makeup of most terrestrial ecosystems.

Because of the tight association between herbivores and the plants they consume, many ecosystems show a strong correlation between herbivore diversity and floral diversity. For example, multispecies grazing by a diverse ungulate fauna in the Serengeti of east Africa is intimately connected to a striking richness in both predatory animals and plants (McNaughton 1985, 1990; Murray and Illius 1996). Ten or more species of grazing ungulate may be found in close proximity, with several species occurring together in mixed groups. These herbivores eat different plant species, different parts of plants (leaves, stems, flowers), and plants in different life stages (green or dry); in addition, because of migration cycles, they put their herbivorous pressure on plants at different times of the year. These variations in the dietary specialization of each herbivore species coevolved with the vegetation, the components of which followed diverse strategies for coping with herbivory and for using it to minimize interspecific competition with other plants. The resulting structural diversity of the system allowed niche overlap, coexistence, and mutualisms to evolve as well and contribute to further diversity.

The perennial grass prairie ecosystem of the North American Great Plains—in its aboriginal form—was another example of herbivore diversity coupled with floral diversity (Figure 19.2). Bison, elk, antelope, and other grazers selectively consumed different plant species and, different plant parts, at different times in the season, coevolving with a prairie vegetation comprised of shortgrass, midgrass, and tallgrass species. The prairie ecosystem also demonstrated the direct influence of herbivores on ecosystem structure. The proportion of shortgrass, midgrass, and tallgrass species was determined primarily by grazing behavior and fire, with shifts in one direction or the other due to abiotic factors such as soil type and rainfall (Briske 1996). Following the severe reduction in wild herds of the prairie herbivores, species composition of the native plants changed as well.

FIGURE 19.2 Bison grazing at Konza Prairie Biological Station, near Manhattan, KS. Bison have been a key element in shaping the prairie ecosystems of much of the Midwestern United States. (Photo courtesy of Catherine Burns.)

Recent restoration programs for native prairie ecosystems face the challenge of how to restore this native grazing pressure, or face the alternative of having to simulate the natural grazing with fire, mowing, or the use of domestic animals. At the Tallgrass Prairie Reserve in Oklahoma, The Nature Conservancy is using herds of 2500 plus bison and a “patch-burn” management tool of prescribed burning to restore the prairie ecosystem and promote its original native plant and animal diversity. In another case, the World Wildlife Fund (WWF) has a goal of restoring 17–27 million acres of the Northern Great Plains ecoregion, a scale of restoration large enough to allow the ecoregion to support bison herds of at least 10,000 animals each, as well as much of the accompanying plant and animal biodiversity characteristic of these systems. In 2006, the WWF released the first 200 bison on its American Prairie Reserve, and in 2010, prairie dogs were moved from surrounding ranches and released into the center of the reserve, where their burrows can also serve as homes for the endangered black-footed ferret. The reserves are made up of a unique mosaic of public, private, and tribal lands that together provide the size necessary for these animal communities to thrive.

ENABLING ENERGY FLOW

When herbivores eat plants, and are in turn eaten by carnivorous animals, energy is flowing from one trophic level to another. You will recall that the energy flow between trophic levels is inefficient. A relatively small percentage of the solar energy fixed by photosynthesis and stored in plant biomass is preserved when that biomass is converted into animal biomass at the next trophic level. The vast majority of the energy (up to 90%) moving from one trophic level to another is given off as metabolic heat by the animals or deposited as manures back into the soil (Odum and Barrett 2005). The energy contained in the manures of animals is not lost, however, because it is an essential driver of soil organism activity.

The loss of energy at each jump in trophic level means that the biomass at each higher level must be progressively smaller—thus the shape of the familiar "energy pyramid" in basic ecology texts. Since plants can occupy only the bottom level in the energy pyramid, the energy stored in animal biomass at any level is essential to the secondary consumers at each higher trophic level. Thus animal diversity in an ecosystem is a primary determinant of the number of trophic levels through which energy can be transferred—that is, the height of the energy pyramid and the diversity of the fauna generally. Returning to the example of the Serengeti the diversity of herbivores is what makes possible the relatively high diversity of predators and other secondary consumers, including cheetah, lions, hyenas, aardwolves, leopards, wild dogs, jackals, eagles, vultures, crocodiles, and a variety of smaller carnivores and omnivores.

Cycling Nutrients

In all natural ecosystems, herbivorous animals play an essential role in the dynamic process by which matter is cycled through the system. The emergent properties of efficiency, productivity, and stability are all related to this fundamental ecosystem process.

Ecosystems are dependent on animals, decomposers, and detritivores to release nutrients from their storage in plant material. Animals are therefore an important part of the nitrogen cycle, the carbon cycle, and the phosphorous cycle (all discussed in Chapter 2). Whether the nutrients are released back into geologic or atmospheric reservoirs, the initial step is consumption of plant tissue, followed by digestion, excretion, and decomposition (Figure 19.3).

FIGURE 19.3 Bison and bison manure. The consumption of plant biomass by animals contributes to the recycling of nutrients in most natural ecosystems in the world. (Photo courtesy of Catherine Burns.)

Influencing Community Dynamics

As discussed earlier, herbivory has a direct effect on the vegetation of an ecosystem. This was noted in a structural sense, but it can also be understood in a functional sense, as a factor affecting interspecific interactions and ecosystem complexity. Grazing or foraging by herbivores involves selective removal of certain species or plant parts, which affects how populations of each species in the community interact. Grazing pressure, for example, is often a key factor preventing a particular plant species from dominating an ecosystem through competitive exclusion and thereby reducing diversity and complexity (Figure 19.4). When grazing patterns change—due, for example, to removal of native grazers, changes in herbivore populations, or introduction of nonnative herbivores—shifts in plant species dominance inevitably occur.

FIGURE 19.4 Cows improving woodland understory in southern Spain. Animals are moved through the system at key times to manage herbaceous cover, promote tree development, and produce animal products.

An example of the important role herbivores play in community dynamics is provided by ecosystems dominated by introduced species. In many parts of the world, invasive nonnative plant species have established dominance in association with introduced nonnative grazing animals, causing changes in the native ecosystems that can persist even after the exotic herbivores are removed (Colvin and Gliessman 2000). Conversely, invasion by nonnative plants can become problematic because of the absence of herbivores able to control the aliens through consumption.

An awareness of how animals, especially larger herbivores, function as part of community dynamics and the other ecosystem processes discussed earlier can guide us as we consider how livestock may be integrated into crop production. As heterotrophic consumers of plants (and in some cases arthropod and molluscan pests), livestock animals can play a role in managing species interactions (Chapter 16), increasing agroecosystem diversity and resilience (Chapter 17), taking advantage of successional processes (Chapter 18), and maximizing the efficiency of energy capture and use (Chapter 20).

COEVOLUTION OF LIVESTOCK ANIMALS AND AGRICULTURE

In the earliest human cultures, people made a living off the land as hunters and gatherers, exploiting both the animals and the plants available in the ecosystems around them. Therefore, it is not surprising that as some human societies developed economies that could support larger populations and ensure more reliable food supplies, they domesticated animals at about the same time as they domesticated plants.

Domestication was a coevolutionary process in two senses. First, as discussed in Chapter 15, domesticated species changed in concert with human cultures, each becoming dependent on the other. Second, the domestication of plants—that is, the development of agriculture—proceeded in parallel with, and often directly connected with, the domestication of animals and the development of grazing and pasture systems.

The vastly different environments and ecosystems around the world offered very different opportunities for, and placed different constraints upon, the development of more settled socioeconomic modes based on domestication of wild species. Some environments were too cold and arid to support any kind of agriculture, but offered native ungulates suitable for domestication. Other environments were conducive to both agriculture and the raising of livestock. Of the prehistoric human cultures inclined to develop toward agricultural societies, some created animal-based systems and others crop-based systems. In some cases the two were directly coupled.

However, while there are many examples of systems relying almost exclusively on domesticated animals, there are very few crop-based systems that lack domesticated animals entirely. In this sense, animals are truly a hallmark of agriculture.

Wherever animals were domesticated, they became an integral part of human societies, receiving both care and respect. In this way the mutualistic sense of "co-evolution" was carried through. The raising of livestock is often called **animal husbandry**, and in the older meaning of the term *husbandry*, the concept of caretaking is clear. Husbandry is defined in Webster's 1913 dictionary as "care of domestic affairs; economy; domestic management; thrift." Thus, "animal husbandry" links the stewardship of domestic animals with the welfare of humans and their households.

Grazing and Pasture Systems

First we'll examine the development of systems based on the domestication of grazing herbivores. This strand of agricultural evolution resulted in animal-only systems that survive to this day, but it also played a direct role in the evolution of integrated systems employing both plants and animals.

As explained in Chapter 15, humans transitioned from observant hunter–gatherers, to careful managers of wild populations, to caretakers of livestock domesticates. During this process, animals became dependent on humans for protection, feed, and reproduction, and humans came to depend on animals for a range of services and products.

Depending on local environmental constraints and the availability of native mammals and birds suitable for domestication, various types of food production systems incorporating animals were developed by human societies. These systems evolved over time in different ways, but overall it is possible to describe a general process of coevolution in which the animals became more thoroughly domesticated, humans intensified their management practices, and the plant species eaten by the animals developed more desirable characteristics in response to management.

The earliest form of animal husbandry was pastoral nomadism, in which humans accompanied animals as they made their way across the landscape in search of feed and water (Koocheki and Gliessman 2005). This mode of life commonly developed in areas with relatively extreme, semiarid environments, where the animals that existed in the wild state, such as the wild relatives of sheep and goats, were preadapted to subsisting on sparse vegetative cover. Pastoral nomadism still exists in some very arid and mountainous lands, where it is doubtful that human communities would be able to survive without their herds of domestic animals. In regions where crop agriculture would be extremely difficult or even impossible, at least without considerable technological intervention, these animals are able to forage for scarce resources and turn vegetation that humans cannot consume directly into harvestable animal products. As the caretakers of these systems, humans must respect the limits of the carrying capacity of the landscape for grazing, understand the seasonal and regional variations in resource availability, and develop social structures around the needs of their animals. There are examples of well-managed present-day nomadic systems that date back to the early times of animal domestication, with some of the most notable in the arid regions of the Middle East (Figure 19.5).

In parts of the world with more rainfall and more access to water resources, pastoral nomadism evolved into a type of managed grazing. People established permanent settlements, and animals were taken out for periods of time to forage on well-defined grazing areas. Good husbandry evolved into not just caretaking the animals, but also maintaining the health of the range lands. As discussed in Chapter 10, fire was most likely one of the earliest tools used for pasture and range improvement in these systems. They proved to be sustainable when the human managers, using natural ecosystems as the benchmark, developed and maintained a thorough knowledge of vegetative structure, species composition, forage quality, and other indicators of healthy range or forage lands.

Managed grazing systems exist today in most parts of the world, in arid to humid rainfall regimes, from warm to

FIGURE 19.5 Sheep being herded by pastoralists in a nomadic system in the Negev Desert of Israel. Rainfall in this region rarely exceeds 30 mm per year, too little for crop agriculture.

cold climates, and across most soil types and conditions, in ecosystems that include natural grasslands, shrublands with forage and grasses, savannahs or open woodlands with trees interspersed in grassland, or forests with understory vegetation appropriate for animal consumption (Hodgson and Illius 1996). When they are well managed and the type and number of animals is appropriate to the vegetation, managed grazing systems are sustainable alternatives to the CAFOs used to produce much of the animal-derived food in the industrial food system.

Ultimately, the coevolution of the human–livestock relationship reached another stage, in which humans planted and managed pasture species for improved feed quality and quantity. The transition from managing natural grazing ecosystems to the direct sowing of edible forage and pasture species probably occurred hand in hand with the domestication of livestock that were capable of pulling cultivation implements and producing manures that could be applied as soil improving amendments. Obviously a parallel coevolution was taking place as well on the plant side of the equation, as grain size, forage quality, and growth vigor all increased. Grasses, grains, and legumes all became part of the pasture mix, each providing complementary nutrition for livestock, and balanced nutrient inputs to the soil. In places where there was an extended time of the year when the planted pasture would not grow, such as during a rainless summer or cold winter, systems developed whereby the pasture biomass was harvested, dried, and stored for feed to be used during the time of scarcity, at which time the animals were often kept in confinement.

Such pasture systems are still very common today all over the world and, like managed grazing systems, they can be highly sustainable means of producing animal-based food and fiber products. Many agricultural universities and colleges have entire departments and programs devoted to the study of pasture design, management, and improvement, especially where animal production systems are most prevalent.

MIXED CROP–LIVESTOCK SYSTEMS

While the coevolution of animals and forage plants was taking place, humans in some parts of the world were also developing crops for their own consumption. Animals were nearly always part of this crop development, since they provided the cultivation and transport power, as well as manures for fertilization of crops, and played a part in the diversification of farm landscapes that must have come about as humans balanced the needs of themselves, their animals, and the environment upon which both depended.

Early agricultural societies all employed domesticated animals to some extent. Ancient cultures in the Indus Valley domesticated the chicken. The cultures of Southeast Asia raised fowl and water buffalo. In Mesopotamia, cattle, sheep, and goats were important (Figure 19.6). Even in the New World, where domesticable wild species were less abundant, domesticated animals such as the turkey and hairless dog played important roles in agricultural societies. The Ancestral Puebloans of the American Southwest, for example, grew corn, beans, and squash, but raised domesticated turkeys for feathers, emergency food, and fertilizer.

The degree of integration of plants and animals varied in early agricultural systems. In some societies crop production systems developed alongside livestock pasture systems; in other cases, food derived from animal domesticates supplemented a crop-based system. Either way, the pattern was set for integrated crop–livestock systems to develop along with the major centers of human civilization.

These integrated systems involved a diverse mixture of different activities, managed together as a working whole to

FIGURE 19.6 Domesticated sheep in ancient Mesopotamia. Domesticated animals, such as the sheep depicted on this fragment of a stone carving in The Louvre, were important in the early form of agriculture practiced in the "fertile crescent."

take advantage of the ecological complementarity of each component, or enterprise. In many temperate parts of the world with adequate rainfall, including the Middle East, Europe, northern Africa, and southern Asia, integrated systems reached a level of considerable complexity. In early modern Europe, for example, a typical integrated farm had pasture for harvestable feed or forage (annual and perennial), crops (annuals and perennials), animal grazing areas (with some possible improvement in plant species used as forage), corrals, forest or woodlot, often some sort of wetland, stream or well, and places for human habitation and activity, along with rotations and fallows involving multiple combinations of each component.

This style of integrated farm—and the associated cultural values of animal husbandry—was imported to the United States, where it became the model system. Until the beginning of the twentieth century, most farms in the United States showed this integration of multiple enterprises. Integrated farms still exist today, but they are greatly outnumbered by specialized and industrial-scale operations that completely separate livestock and crop production.

The disintegration of livestock and crops came about with the widespread introduction of specialized machinery, fertilizers, and pesticides following World War II, but specialization in US agriculture began many decades before that (Gregson 1996). In order to respond to uniform market signals and distant markets, farmers began to rely on production inputs that had the effect of standardizing both growing conditions and response to management and climate. Diversity seemed to be less necessary, and farms began to simplify. Ready access to effective and cheap chemical fertilizers encouraged the perception that farmers no longer had to depend on biological nitrogen fixation and nutrient recycling through livestock to maintain soil health. Government support programs and academic research institutions further promoted the value of specialization, and by the end of the 1980s, the separation of livestock and crops was fairly complete (Gregson 1996).

Yet, as we saw in Chapter 1, the problems associated with the disassociation of livestock and crops—and the concomitant growth of large-scale confinement systems for livestock and monoculture for crops—have come back to haunt us (Nierenberg 2005). Now that sustainability is a primary goal of agriculture, and the costs of the inputs that promoted specialization in the first place are rising faster than the value of the crops they produce, the idea of integrating crops and livestock has gained prominence once again.

Grazing and pasture-based animal production systems have also gained attention for their potential to contribute to a sustainable food system. Although all the food (and other products, such as wool) produced in such systems comes from a trophic level higher than that of primary producers, it can be produced virtually without external inputs. Because they have digestive systems adapted to break down cellulose and other complex plant biomass that is indigestible by humans (see Chapter 13), the grazing and browsing animals used in these systems become a means for humans to access food calories that ultimately come from inedible plants. Moreover, well-managed grazing of rangelands in many parts of the world (such as in the semiarid southwestern United States) can help conserve biodiversity by replicating the ecological functions once performed by wild, native ungulates.

INTEGRATED FARMING SYSTEMS

An **integrated farm** is one in which livestock are incorporated into farm operations "specifically to capture positive synergies among enterprises—to perform tasks and supply services to other enterprises—not just as a marketable commodity" (Clark 2004). In this definition, "enterprise" refers to any focus or purpose of the farm system, from saleable products to weed management to soil health.

The positive synergies that arise from integrating animals into agroecosystems come about in large part because of the ecological complementarity of livestock animals and crop and forage plants. Plants feed animals, and animal excrement provides, in concentrated form, the nutrients plants require. Thus, an integrated system—as opposed to one that is merely diversified—harnesses this complementarity to move energy and nutrients between the crop component and the animal component. When animals are integrated into agroecosystems in this way, more of the ecosystem processes operating in natural systems can be incorporated into the functioning of the agroecosystem, increasing its resilience and sustainability.

EXAMPLES OF INTEGRATED SYSTEMS

The basic concept of integrating the raising of animals and the growing of crops in the same agroecosystem finds a variety of expressions around the world. The livestock component can include cattle, sheep, goats, pigs, rabbits, horses, oxen, yaks, water buffalo, poultry, waterfowl, fish, shellfish, bees, silkworms, or a variety of other species that can provide food, fiber, work, manure, ecosystem services, or some combination of these. The crop component can include grains, pulses, oilseeds, grazed forages, vegetables, potatoes, fruit or nut trees, fruit vines, and other food crops. Given these options, the possibilities for integration are nearly endless. Four of the most important types of systems are described in the following.

Crop Rotations with a Grazed Forage Phase

The most widespread and widely adaptable method of integrating livestock animals into cropping systems is the grazed forage rotation. The specifics of the practice vary greatly, but its essence is to rotate a field between crops grown for human consumption (often grains) and a forage crop grazed by livestock. A variation on this theme is to grow the forage crop without grazing and then harvest it as feed for confined livestock animals. The grazed forage rotation was once very common all over the world, with the type of livestock, forage species, crop species, and timing of the rotation all adapted to local conditions.

As has been discussed elsewhere in this text, crop rotations in general have many benefits for overall agroecosystem sustainability. Weed growth (Chapter 14), agroecosystem diversity (Chapter 17), and water availability (Chapter 9) are just a few factors that are positively affected. When an animal component is included, both the options for rotational sequences and the potential benefits of the rotation are increased.

Agropastoral Systems

In some mountainous areas of the world, particularly in Pakistan, India, China, Nepal, and Bhutan, the most common traditional agricultural system is agropastoral in nature. Crop production in warmer valleys is combined with the grazing of livestock animals on highland pastures during the summer. Usually the livestock provide the major source of income and food. Despite the spatial segregation in summer, integration occurs in the use of animal manure for fertilizer and the growing of forage crops for winter animal feed.

Livestock in Agroforestry Systems

An agroforestry system, as discussed in Chapter 18, is a system that integrates trees with crops, animals, or both. When the focus is on the tree–animal combination it is referred to as a **silvopastoral** system, and when all three (crops, animals, and trees) are integrated, the term **agrosilvopastoral** system is used (Figure 19.7).

The practice of silvopastoral agroforestry is best known in the tropics, where trees can mitigate the impacts of heavy rainfall, nutrient leaching, and intense solar gain. Some the most common silvopastoral agroecosystems involve the use of trees as an overstory above either natural or improved pasture (Buck et al. 1999). Typically, forest is cleared and specific trees are left to form the shade over the pasture, and often some additional tree species of ecological or economic value are planted as well, in patterns that ensure good tree development. The management of the animals in livestock agroforestry systems is key, because it must meet the needs of the trees—and the crops, if they are present—and the animals at the same time.

FIGURE 19.7 A simple silvopastoral type of agroforestry system in Puerto Viejo, Costa Rica. The leguminous tree *Gliricidia sepium*, used as a living fence, is pruned three to four times per year, and the cattle eat the protein-rich prunings as a complement to their diet of pasture grasses.

CASE STUDY: SPAIN'S *DEHESA* SYSTEM

In mountainous regions of southern Europe, especially in the region of Andalusia, Spain, there exists a traditional agrosilvopastoral system that integrates livestock, crops, native herbaceous vegetation, and oak forest. Known in Spain as *dehesa*, this integrated system shows the level of complexity and stability that can be achieved by combining careful management of domestic grazing animals and limited crop agriculture in the context of the natural landscape (Sevilla-Guzmán 1999).

The term *dehesa* was originally used to refer to parcels of land that were located at the margin of a community's common grazing areas, meant to be used by specific community members for the pasturing and resting of the animals used for meeting the farm labor needs of the community. Today, the term describes the management system practiced on the forested lands surrounding communities, which were *dehesa* in the older sense. These areas are vegetated by an open oak forest of several *Quercus* species, with an herbaceous understory that germinates with the first rains of the Mediterranean fall, grows through the winter into spring, and is dry during the rainless summer.

The basis of the *dehesa* system is rotational and mixed grazing by the traditional race of Iberian pig (Figure 19.8), sheep, and occasional horses in the open oak forest. In addition, the people of the community gather firewood and some cork from the forest, as well as a vast number of native plant species for use as food, medicine, and spices. In open areas with better soils they grow small plots of forage grasses or legumes. More recently, cattle have been added to the mix of grazers (see Figure 19.4), and native wildlife species are hunted for sport.

The key aspect of the *dehesa* is the maintenance of the oak forest ecosystem. This is only possible with the rational and careful integration of the animal component. Sheep, cattle, and horses graze the natural herbaceous cover during the winter and spring, after which time they are either sold, moved to lowland areas with better pasture, or kept in limited numbers on stored forage. The Iberian pig brood stock and the current year's offspring are kept in large pens under oaks where they are able to move freely, and are fed grain from the small production areas. In the late summer when the acorns begin to fall from the trees, the young pigs are released from the pens and allowed to range freely and feed on the acorns. In a period of less than 3 months, the pigs gain more than 50% of their weight on the acorn diet, producing flesh used for the unique and highly sought-after ham they are famous for (*jamón ibérico*). Cattle prefer the green herbaceous growth

FIGURE 19.8 Iberian pigs. This locally adapted breed is the most important animal component of the *dehesa* system in Spain.

of the winter months, and the sheep are able to do well on the green biomass of winter as well as dry plant material that persists into the summer.

The *dehesa* represents an example of the sustainable use of resources in a marginal environment. It is sustainable only because its management is based on optimizing the natural productivity of the landscape through careful management of livestock, not on maximizing yields. Its base is diversification, complementarity of plants and animals, extensive rather than intensive use of the fragile natural resources of the oak forest, local animal breeds, and management knowledge built up over centuries.

Competition from factory-farmed pork, the desire for higher returns per unit area of land, and the movement of rural people to the cities, however, all put pressure on the this remarkable system. An agroecological understanding of its value is needed to preserve it into the future.

Both trees (see Chapter 18) and livestock animals can have many positive impacts on an agroecosystem, so when the two are combined many components of sustainability can be brought together. The journal *Agroforestry Systems* contains many examples of research on animal-oriented agroforestry systems that demonstrate many characteristics of ecological sustainability and provide many economic and social benefits as well.

Aquaculture and Crop Production

A variety of systems in use around the world incorporate the raising of either waterfowl or aquatic species such as fish or shellfish with crop production. As one might expect, these systems are most common in areas with abundant moisture, where wetlands would predominate in the absence of agriculture.

Integrated rice and duck farming is practiced in parts of Japan and China (Furuno 2001). Weeds and insects are consumed by the ducks, manure from the ducks is returned to fertilize the rice, and humans harvest both ducks and rice at the end of the crop cycle (Figure 19.9). The movement of the ducks agitates the water and induces stronger rice stems and more resistance to lodging from wind and rain (Zhang et al. 2013). When the aquatic fern *Azolla*, with its nitrogen-fixing algal mutualist, is added to the system, fertility is maintained and yields improved. Similar results are achieved with the integrated fish and rice systems of southern China (Guo and Bradshaw 1991; Xie et al. 2011). By allowing fish to occupy the irrigation channels and flooded rice paddies during the cropping season, nutrients are captured that might otherwise be lost from the system, especially in systems where the fish are algae feeders and the algae thrive on nutrients in the water. Even when part of the rice paddy is removed from rice production in order to dig ponds that allow for year-round presence of the fish, the ecological and economic benefits more than compensate.

Fish can be such an agroecologically and economically beneficial part of an integrated cropping system that some

FIGURE 19.9 Ducks being used to graze out weeds and scavenge dropped seed in a rice paddy near Nanjing, China. Waste matter is being converted into a resource in the form of animal products and manure.

systems have developed that combine fish, crops, and livestock. In parts of Asia, for example, systems exist that integrate fish, silkworms, mulberries, pigs, sugarcane, vegetables, and grass in intensively managed wetlands. In some localities, farmers are adding an aquaculture component to an already-integrated crop–livestock system. Livestock manure is used to stimulate the growth of algae or plankton, which are consumed by the fish. Waste from the fish can then serve as a nutrient source for the crops, and the fish themselves are a marketable product.

Integrated crop–aquaculture systems offer a clear contrast to intensive, industrial-scale, single-species aquaculture systems (see the Special Topic on Aquaculture). In many respects, these systems are not much different from the livestock confinement systems used for cattle, pigs, and poultry. Feed—different from what the animals consume in the wild—is often grown a large distance from the place of animal production, antibiotics and growth stimulants are often employed, and waste food and excrement contaminate the water.

Beneficial Roles of Animals on an Integrated Farm

As they pursue their ecological role, mimicking the herbivores in natural systems, livestock animals transform the energy and matter contained in plant biomass into three agroecologically useful streams, as shown in Figure 19.10. The first stream, animal biomass, has value as food, fiber, fertilizer, and raw material. The second stream is the biological cultural energy represented by the ability of livestock to do work. Draft animals, which once performed all the work on farms that human’s didn’t do, are the obvious workers among the many types of livestock, but sheep, goats, chickens, ducks, and other animals can also perform valuable “work” in the form of vegetation and weed management and pest control. The third stream, manure, is rich in plant nutrients and provides soil microorganisms with a key source of energy for their roles in the system.

Both the “products” of animal herbivory—animal biomass, work, and manure—and the “process” of herbivory itself combine to provide the farmer with an array of potential on-farm benefits. These benefits are discussed separately as follows, in the context of actual farm practices. The benefits are interrelated and overlapping, but by pulling them apart conceptually it is easier to see how various forms of integration can be combined to further the overall goal of establishing mutualistic synergies that improve agroecosystem structure and function and lessen the dependence on purchased external inputs. Table 19.1 summarizes many of the benefits of integration by comparing the conditions of an integrated system to those of a comparable nonintegrated crop-based system.

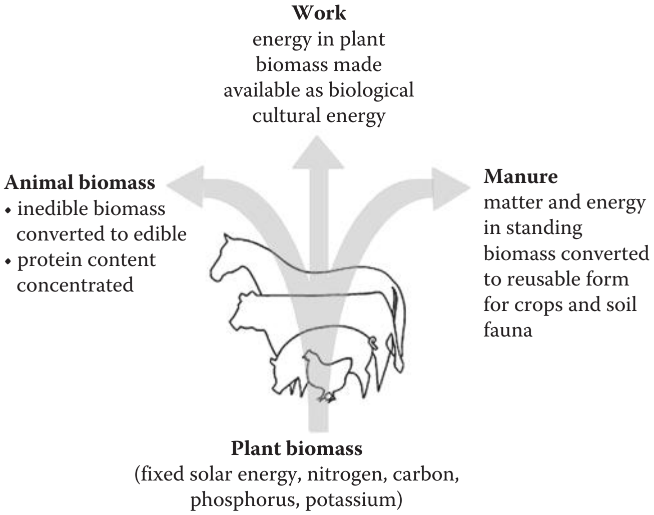


FIGURE 19.10 The transformer role of livestock. Animals transform plant biomass into useful forms of energy and matter.

Producing Protein-Rich Food and Other Products

Animal biomass is important as food, both for subsistence and for market. Whether in the form of milk, meat, or eggs, it contains a much higher proportion of protein than plant biomass. Moreover, most livestock animals are able to obtain nutrition from types of plant biomass that humans can’t eat—crop waste, food waste, and plant tissues containing mostly cellulose—and convert it into various forms of animal biomass that humans can eat.

Animal biomass has many other economically valuable uses, of course. Sheep produce wool and waterfowl feathers; and at the end of their lives animals yield bones and other by-products that can be used for a variety of purposes.

Putting Crop Residue and By-Products to Use

Since animals are able to consume much of the biomass left over after harvest, as well as many of the by-products from agricultural processing, using such biomass as animal feed is an important way to produce harvestable animal products and convert a potential waste into recyclable nutrients at the same time. Maize, millet, wheat, oat, and barley straw serve as supplemental feed for a range of animals in many

TABLE 19.1
Benefits of Integrating Livestock into a Crop Production Agroecosystem

Aspect of Integrated System	Ecological Effects	Agricultural Benefits
Including grazed forages in crop rotation, especially perennial species	Higher diversity Greater soil microbial activity Maintenance of soil coverage Less frequent disturbance; pioneer (weedy) species not encouraged Provision of habitat for natural pest control agents	Soil organic matter allowed to increase Soil not exposed to erosion Reduction in weed pressure Improved performance of subsequent crops Elimination or reduction of need for biocides Better retention of soil nutrients
Feeding marketed livestock on feedstuffs produced in the same system	Cyclical (vs. linear) nutrient flows Less nutrient export	Reduction in dependence on purchased inputs Enterprise diversification Opportunities for productive use of crop wastes
Using livestock manure as a nutrient source instead of inorganic fertilizer	Improvement of soil structure Higher soil biodiversity and microbial activity Better nitrogen cycling	Reduction in dependence on purchased inputs Improvement of soil organic matter content Higher crop yields
Using livestock for vegetation and weed management	Mimics natural system role of herbivores	Elimination or reduction of need for biocides Reduction in manual human labor

agroecosystems around the world, with the greatest energy efficiency achieved when the site of straw production is as close as possible to the consuming animals. Allowing the animals to directly graze the straw remaining in the field is probably the most efficient method, although straw can be cut and hauled to a storage area in order to feed the animals when they are confined.

In California, where intensive vegetable production is so common, many crops produce residues that are used to supplement animal grazing or forage, such as culled Brussels sprouts, waste tomatoes, and carrot pulp after juice extraction. Pigs are excellent transformers of food and crop waste in many rural small-farm systems in the developing world. Since the animals in this case are not actually in the fields where the vegetable crops are raised, the manure the animals produce must be returned to the crop fields.

Returning Nutrients to the Soil in Manure and Compost

Plants contain nutrients they have taken up from the soil, and through their consumption in plant biomass, digestion, and deposition as manure, the nutrients are cycled back to the soil. Depending on the farming system, the manure can be collected, composted, and applied at any location on the farm where it is needed most. Returning manure to the soil is an important way to put both nutrients and organic matter back into the soil ecosystem (see Chapter 8), as well as to reduce the need to import these materials from outside the farm operation.

The ecological and economic challenges of trying to import to cropping systems the massive amounts of manure and urine produced in large-scale livestock confinement systems have already been discussed in Chapter 1. Integrated livestock–cropping systems—in which forage is grown on the farm, fields are rotated between grazed forage and crops, and crop residues are incorporated into animal feed—can greatly increase the efficiency of manure and compost management. A study carried out in Denmark (Dalgaard et al. 2002) showed that a farm converted to mixed dairy and pig production, using an array of grain crops for harvest and grass and legume forage species for animal feed, could obtain total self-sufficiency in animal fodder while reducing nitrogen contamination of local groundwater systems to very low levels as compared to conventional systems and organic livestock operations more dependent on imported feed.

Improving Soil Health

The key component of a healthy soil is soil organic matter. Many factors, organisms, and interactions drive organic matter quantity and quality, with soil health manifested in tilth, structure, water holding capacity, and resistance to both compaction and erosion. Long-term cultivation generally leads to the breakdown of soil organic matter, with accompanying degradation of the indicators of soil health. However, bringing livestock into the cropping system in the form of a rotated grazed forage not only reduces the need for cultivation, it also adds nutrient- and energy-rich organic matter. Soil microbial activity increases, soil structure improves, and nutrient retention and availability favor better crop development. In some regions, especially the midwestern areas of the United States and Canada, the inclusion of a perennial forage in cropping system rotations, with its accompanying respite from the negative impacts of tillage and restoration of soil health parameters, can easily justify the reduction in emphasis on cash grain crops (Clark 2004).

Providing Work

Fueled by the matter and energy in the plant biomass they consume, animals are able to provide work in the form of cultivation and transport. This was discussed earlier, but it is important to note that the work performed by animals is a form of biological cultural energy. As such, it helps the farmer achieve more favorable ratios of energy input to energy output and reduce purchased energy inputs (see Chapter 20). The use of draft animals may seem anachronistic in today's world, but the rising cost of fossil-fuel-derived energy makes it an increasingly attractive option. A different kind of "work" is provided by honeybees—when kept on the farm to produce honey as a marketable product, they also pollinate crops or fruit trees.

Managing Vegetation and Controlling Weeds

Weed management appears to be a particularly important reason why farmers include forages in their crop rotations. In a farmer survey conducted in Canada, it was found that more than 80% of the 235 farmers contacted reported reduction in weed pressure following forages (Entz et al. 1995). Many observed good control of several of the most problematic weeds such as wild oat (*Avena fatua* L.), Canada thistle (*Cirsium arvense* L.), wild mustard (*Sinapis arvensis* L.), and green foxtail (*Setaria viridis* [L.] Beauv.).

Grazing animals can be used in other ways for landscape and vegetation management. Goats are used for poison oak (*Toxicodendron diversilobum*) control in many places of coastal California, or for weed suppression in crop systems at the end of harvest. Sheep are known to have been used for weed control in crops like corn before the advent of modern herbicides in parts of the corn belt of the United States, and chickens are renowned for their ability to cultivate the soil, manage pests, and control weeds in home garden and small-scale cropping systems. Managed appropriately, cattle, sheep, and goats can be used to graze out undesirable species during reforestation, on young Christmas tree farms, and on rangelands. Obviously the preference that most grazing livestock have for herbaceous rather than woody vegetation would be a key factor in the preferential removal of herb pressure in plantations of young trees or in regenerating forests following disturbance. The use of grazing livestock for vegetation management has strong resemblance to the impacts of natural grazing in places such as the midwestern prairies of North America and the Serengeti Plain mentioned earlier in this chapter.

Increasing Subsequent Crop Yields in Rotations

One of the many benefits of including a grazed forage in crop rotations is that higher yields may be obtained from the crops planted after the forage. This effect is due to the other positive impacts of the grazed forage period: less soil disturbance, increased soil organic matter, and weed control. In the Canadian farmer survey noted earlier, over two-thirds of the surveyed farmers reported higher yields in the grain crops that were planted following the forage rotation (Entz et al. 1995).

Providing Ecosystem Services

From an ecosystem perspective, animals on the agricultural landscape can provide many services beyond food production. Many of the benefits listed earlier contribute to various larger-scale ecological processes:

- **Carbon sequestration.** Livestock animals are a part of putting cover back on the land, as trees in silvopastoral systems or as perennial forage crops, two of the few known ways to produce a net increase in soil organic carbon, potentially making a contribution to reducing levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
- **Erosion control.** As integral parts of a grazed forage rotation, animals help improve the quality of vegetative cover, a crucial tool in soil erosion control.
- **Maintenance of watershed health.** The same factors that help in erosion control also promote the watershed processes of infiltration, percolation, and water retention discussed in Chapter 9.
- **Biodiversity protection.** The integration of animals back into the agricultural landscape—especially small livestock and locally adapted species and races—promotes the conservation of agrobiodiversity. In addition, to the extent that animals provide other environmental services and lessen the negative off-farm impacts of agriculture, they enhance and protect biodiversity and the entire landscape.

SOCIAL AND ECONOMIC BENEFITS OF INTEGRATION

Up to this point we have focused mostly on the ecological benefits of mixed livestock–crop systems. As we have seen in many other cases, practices that have ecological benefits often have economic and social benefits as well, and livestock–crop integration is a good case in point. Many economic and social benefits, of course, are implicit in the aforementioned points made: increasing crop yields, improving soil health, and reducing costly purchased inputs all have direct positive impacts on the farmer's bottom line. But two socioeconomic benefits of integration deserve discussion on their own.

Diversifying Enterprises and Reducing Economic Vulnerability

One of the original reasons why animals and crops were raised together on farms was that this mixing allowed a greater diversity of food types and agricultural products to be produced. This diversification had a simple economic logic: it increased economic security by spreading the risk of failure among more enterprises. While this was based on a self-sufficiency situation long gone in most parts of the world today, the same logic still applies in the context of producing food as a commodity. Raising animals in addition to crops provides the farmer with additional marketable products, whether they be eggs, milk, wool, honey, silk, lambs, or beef cattle. Depending on local market conditions, these animal-based enterprises can provide a valuable income stream and protect against crop failures and market fluctuations (Schierea et al. 2002).

Further, the various enterprises that may be based on an integrated farm are often ideal for marketing on a local or regional basis. By selling products at local stores, restaurants, and farmers' markets, and through food cooperatives and community-supported agriculture organizations, the money that would otherwise go to distributors, wholesalers, transporters, and brokers goes to the farmer instead. We will discuss the importance of such localized food networks in more detail in Chapter 25.

Alleviating Poverty in Developing Countries

Mixed crop–livestock systems are ideally suited to help alleviate poverty in developing countries, the underlying cause of high infant mortality, chronic hunger, food insecurity, resource degradation, and the high societal costs that result from these problems. Integrated crop–livestock systems can be operated profitably on a small scale, comprise a multiplicity of income-producing activities, and require few off-farm inputs and relatively small capital investment; for these reasons they are effective and realistic ways of creating greater economic security for many people in developing countries (LEISA 2005) (Figure 19.11).

The animal portion of the system itself represents much of the economic value to poor farmers. A livestock animal is a living bank. It acts as a storehouse of capital, an investment in future productivity, and an insurance against crop production risks. Where diets tend to be protein and calorie deficient, livestock animals supply vital protein-rich food. In addition, since women often play an important role in animal husbandry activities, agricultural systems that incorporate livestock animals can promote gender equality, both socially and economically.

In many developing countries, mixed crop–livestock systems are already primary economic activities in rural areas, but these systems operate inefficiently, without taking advantage of all the potential synergies, and as a result they don't realize their full potential for economic return. This is the case in the Indian state of Chhattisgarh, for example, where a study determined that several different alternative modes of structuring the typical smallholder agroecosystem could result in significant improvement of the socioeconomic status of the tribal farmers (Ramrao et al. 2005). In every case, the alternative system involved diversification and increase of the animal component and tighter integration of all system components.

FIGURE 19.11 An agroforesty system in Tonga integrating cattle and coconut palms. The palms provide coconut fruit, copra, and construction materials, and the cattle provide meat and milk. Systems such as this, combining agriculture, animal husbandry, and forestry, are especially appropriate for smallholders in developing countries. (Photo by Molly Wilson.)

TABLE 19.2
Comparison of Three Livestock Production Systems in Ecological and Social Terms

	Degree of Plant–Animal Integration	Need for External Inputs	Potential for Social Equity
Mixed crop–livestock systems	High	Low; system partially closed	High potential for poverty alleviation, reduction of risk, and gender equality
Extensive grazing systems	High	Low; system partially closed	Variable, depending on scale
Industrial confinement systems	Low	High; system open	Low

Table 19.2 compares mixed crop–livestock systems, grazing systems, and industrial confinement systems in terms of three important characteristics. It demonstrates the high correlation between crop–livestock integration, ecological qualities, and potential for achieving social and economic equity.

LIVESTOCK AND FOOD-SYSTEM SUSTAINABILITY

Integrating livestock and crop production carries with it a wide variety of benefits to farms, farmers, developing countries, the agricultural landscape, and the environment in general, as the preceding section clearly demonstrates. It offers means of reversing many of the trends currently undermining the ecological and social-system foundations of agriculture. Increasing crop–livestock integration, therefore, is a key element of moving toward greater sustainability of the global food system. But in doing so we face a huge challenge, because the momentum of change is in the other direction.

To better understand this challenge, we need to look at livestock production generally, in the context of the whole food system. This gets us into issues that go beyond farm-level integration of livestock and crops. It is not the intention of this chapter to delve into these issues in any detail, but noting them briefly here will prepare the ground for their further discussion in Section VI.

ELEMENTS OF A MORE SUSTAINABLE ANIMAL PROTEIN ECONOMY

A thorough examination of the role of animals in the global food system would find serious problems at every level, from production to consumption. Livestock are raised in energetically wasteful and ecologically damaging ways; the products derived from them reach the consumers only after traveling long distances; and at the consumer end, high demand for these products drives the whole system. To move toward a more sustainable animal protein economy, change must occur at the three levels of production, distribution, and consumption.

Production

Throughout, this chapter has supported the idea that producing meat, milk, and eggs in integrated farming systems is more sustainable than producing the same products in specialized, single-purpose, industrial systems. But it is unrealistic to expect all the animal protein in human diets worldwide to come from such systems. Therefore, it is important to mention two universally applicable principles for the more sustainable production of animal protein:

- Energetically speaking, animals vary in the efficiency with which they convert plant food into animal protein. Producing chicken flesh, chicken eggs, and bovine milk are three of the most efficient ways to convert plant biomass into animal protein. Sustainability, therefore, depends on shifting the focus of animal production toward chicken flesh, eggs, and milk and away from the flesh of cattle.
- There is a significant difference between feeding beef and dairy cattle processed grain and feeding them plant biomass that humans can't eat. The former is an extremely inefficient use of arable land and requires a much larger fossil-fuel subsidy. In a sustainable food system, therefore, all ruminants used for meat or milk production would be range fed. Similarly, all hogs would be fed mostly on food and crop wastes.

Consumption

The growth of CAFOs, and the disintegration of livestock and crop production generally, is driven largely by a rapidly increasing demand for meat and other animal products worldwide. People in developed countries are today eating more meat than they ever did historically. At the same time, people in developing countries are trying to match the prodigious meat consumption of their developed-country counterparts.

While it is beyond the scope of this chapter to address this issue, we must be aware that the trend toward more meat-intensive diets may be the single most serious barrier to creating a more sustainable food system. There is no question, therefore, that per-capita meat consumption must be reduced. At the same time, the meat that is eaten must be produced in a way that minimizes its negative impacts. This means eating less beef and pork and relying more on poultry, milk, and eggs. It means preferring meat from animals fed in integrated and pasture systems over meat from animals raised in CAFOs.

Distribution

In the present food system, food commodities are typically transported over long distances before they are finally consumed, using large amounts of fossil fuels and ensuring that most of each consumer dollar goes to processors, distributors, brokers, wholesalers and other "middlemen" instead of to the farmer. For alternatives to this distribution system—more localized food networks—to become stronger and more prevalent, there must be tighter geographic and economic connections between the producers of animal products and the consumers of those products.

Production of livestock on integrated farms is well suited to this transformation. Such production is necessarily smaller scale than production in CAFOs. High-volume, centralized CAFO production goes hand in hand with a high-volume, centralized processing and distribution system designed to distribute eggs and meat and dairy products to a national and even global market. Correspondingly, the low-volume, geographically dispersed production from individual integrated farms fits best with a more local processing and distribution system (Figure 19.12).

CHALLENGING SPECIALIZATION IN AGRICULTURE

Not so long ago, the concept of specialization was unknown to farmers. Integration and enterprise diversification were the underlying principles of farm operation. As we lost this approach to food production, our communities lost their local food distribution systems and most of their family farms, and consumers lost the organic connection with both the people

FIGURE 19.12 Locally produced eggs being sold by the grower at a farmer's market in Santa Cruz, CA. Eggs are among the most energy efficient of all animal products, so the consumer buying them at a farmers' market is supporting a more sustainable food system in a variety of ways.

SPECIAL TOPIC: AQUACULTURE

Given that most of the food humans consume comes from agricultural production, and has for a long time, harvesting wild fish from oceans, lakes, and streams can be seen as a holdover from prehistory, when all humans were hunter–gatherers. But if fishing is a holdover, it's an extremely important one. Worldwide in 2009, people ate an average of about 18.5 kg of fish per person, about half of which was wild caught (FAOSTAT 2013). In many countries in central Africa, south Asia, and Oceana, wild-caught fish and shellfish contribute more than a third of the total animal protein intake. Capture fisheries, therefore, play a crucial role in the world food system.

But capture fisheries, in general, are in decline around the world. Although the total catch of wild fish globally has remained relatively stable for about the last 20 years (FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture 2012), this aggregate figure masks many worrisome trends. More and more fisheries worldwide are classified as overexploited, and many, like that of Atlantic cod, have collapsed. More than half of fisheries worldwide are considered fully exploited, which means they are on the edge of being overfished (FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture 2012). Only an increase in the volume of fish caught in inland fisheries (mostly in Asia) has prevented the total worldwide wild fish harvest from declining.

While the global catch of wild-caught fish has remained at approximately the same level from year to year for some time, consumption of fish has increased rapidly worldwide. Since 1961, the supply of food derived from fish has increased an average of 3.2% per year. This increase has nearly doubled the average per-capita consumption of fish during this time (FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture 2012).

Where are all the extra fish coming from, if not from oceans, lakes, and rivers? They are produced by aquaculture, the "farming" of fish. Since the 1980s, aquaculture has grown very rapidly, filling the widening gap between the demand for fish and the supply of wild fish. The contribution of aquaculture to fish production for human consumption increased from 9% in 1980 to 47% in 2010 (FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture 2012). Projections vary somewhat, but experts agree that by 2018 the bulk of the fish consumed worldwide will be coming from fish farms.

Aquaculture is practiced in many forms. The basic requirement is that the fish be confined in some way. When farmed fish are raised in ponds or tanks, they require a steady input of freshwater to provide adequate oxygen and to flush waste. To eliminate the need for this "irrigation" water, many fish farmers raise the fish in cages placed in rivers, estuaries, nearshore areas, or the open ocean, where natural water flows or tidal action provides the needed water movement. An important factor is how the fish are fed. Some farmed species, including many shellfish and carp, don't require feeding by their human keepers because they are filter feeders, able to remove algae, plankton, or detritus from the water by straining or filtering it. To some extent, the farming of filter-feeding species (which accounts for about 30% of aquaculture production) blurs the distinction between wild food and cultivated food.

Most farmed species, however, require external feed sources. Mostly, this food consists of low-value, wild-caught fish that are cooked, pressed, dried, and ground into fish meal. Corn, soybean, and other agricultural products, however, are becoming increasingly common components of aquaculture feedstocks. The farming of high-value fish that need to be fed large quantities of other fish—salmon are good examples—closely resembles the factory farming of cattle and swine.

Overall, aquaculture is having significant negative impacts. In addition to taking up quantities of grain that could be fed to people and helping to deplete stocks of wild fish, aquaculture is destroying many coastal environments. Vast areas of mangrove forests, mudflats, salt marshes, and eelgrass beds have been converted to aquaculture farms. These farms produce nitrogenous wastes that foul coastal waters, and they can no longer perform the environmental services carried out by the natural systems they replaced, which include water purification, erosion and storm-surge protection, and serving as nurseries for a diversity of marine species (including, sometimes, the very species being raised in the farms). Further, in capturing fry in the wild to raise, fish farms take an enormous toll on marine populations (Roberts 2012). Many other concerns surround aquaculture, including genetic contamination of wild fish stocks by escaped, genetically engineered fish, and high vulnerability to disease outbreaks and the disruptions of climate change.

Despite its significant drawbacks, aquaculture is here to stay. Indeed, it is possible to argue that aquaculture must be part of the effort to develop sustainable food systems. Fish are highly nutritious and healthful, and if we can continue to rely on fish and shellfish for a large proportion of our food, it reduces the pressure on terrestrial agroecosystems to feed our growing population. Small-scale aquaculture systems, such as small ponds or catchments, are especially accessible to smallholders, and can go a long way toward improving food security.

The reason that aquaculture must be part of the solution is that the future of wild fisheries is very clouded. Overfishing and habitat-destroying fishing practices like bottom trawling have, for many fish species, created conditions under which population recovery is impossible in the near term (Sale 2011). The increasing warming and acidity of the ocean are likely to impact fish populations, both directly (in the case of shellfish) and by affecting nursery habitats such as coral reefs and the planktonic basis of marine food chains. Many fisheries continue to be overexploited pushing them closer to collapse, and increasing demand for fish ensures that pressures to overharvest will continue.

For aquaculture to continue to take up the slack caused by the decline of capture fisheries, and to do so without harming wild fish populations and aquatic and coastal marine habitats, it must change. Much in the same way that agroecosystems must be made to function on the basis of ecological principles, aquaculture systems must be designed to complement and work in concert with surrounding natural ecosystems. Many examples of sustainable aquaculture systems already exist. Basic strategies include focusing more on filter-feeding species and those than can eat algae, limiting the scale and geographic extent of fish farms, raising fish and crustaceans at lower densities, and integrating aquaculture with terrestrial and wetland agroecosystems (Figure 19.13).

FIGURE 19.13 An aquaculture pond for raising tilapia in Nacajuca, Tabasco, Mexico. In this area of high rainfall and a high water table, aquaculture is an excellent option of producing large quantities of protein, while at the same time providing a good source of income for local smallholder farmers. Crops are grown on the adjacent platforms built up during the construction of the ponds. This is a good example of sustainable aquaculture.

who produced their food and the animals from which much of it came. Today, with livestock animals sequestered into CAFOs, fed with grains produced half a continent away, and their carcasses, eggs, and milk transported hundreds and thousands of miles to market, it's not surprising that the typical consumer gives no thought to what it took to get the steak to his or her table.

As we have seen elsewhere in this book, specialization in agriculture is ill designed to meet the multiple needs of society for abundant, healthy food, produced in ecologically sound ways that provide sustainable livelihoods. Reintegration of livestock and crops helps reverse the trend toward specialization and economic concentration in agriculture, pointing the way toward more local food distribution networks, viability for smaller-scale, family-run farms, and more self-contained, closed-loop agroecosystems that don't rely so strongly on purchased inputs.

Reintegrating livestock and crop production really strikes at the heart of what's not sustainable in conventional agriculture. For this reason, supporting the integration of livestock and crops—in the marketplace, at research institutions, and in the public policy arena—can go a long way toward making change happen. Such advocacy underlines the need for integration while increasing awareness of the huge social and environmental costs of specialization and concentration.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What changes would consumers need to make in their diets in order to promote the reintegration of animals into farming systems?
2. Can vegetarianism and integrated livestock–crop production systems be combined?
3. What are some of the primary indicators of sustainability most appropriate for the analysis of integrated farming systems?
4. How can we reconcile production needs with the ethical treatment of animals?

INTERNET RESOURCES

American Forage and Grassland Council
www.afgc.org

American Grassfed Association
www.americangrassfed.org

Center for Integrated Agricultural Systems, University of Wisconsin–Madison

www.cias.wisc.edu

Dedicated to the study of the relationships between farming practices, farm profitability, the environment, and rural vitality.

Eat Wild

www.eatwild.com

Information on pasture-based farming; lists farmers and ranchers who raise livestock on pasture and sell directly to consumers.

Heifer International

www.heifer.org

A nonprofit organization that helps communities in rural areas around the world integrates appropriate livestock technology, self-reliance, and sustainable development.

National Grazing Lands Coalition

www.glci.org

Technical assistance for privately owned grazing lands and programs to increase awareness of the importance of grazing land resources.

National Sustainable Agriculture Information Service, livestock section

attra.ncat.org/attra-pub/livestock/livestock.html

A project of the National Center for Appropriate Technology (NCAT).

Proceedings of the International Symposium on Silvopastoral Systems and Second Congress on Agroforestry and Livestock Production in Latin America

www.fao.org/WAIRDOCS/LEAD/X6109E/x6109e00.htm

Research focusing on the theme of silvopastoral systems for restoration of degraded tropical pasture ecosystems.

RECOMMENDED READING

Cheeke, P. R. 2003. *Contemporary Issues in Animal Agriculture*, 3rd edn. Interstate Publishers, Inc.: Danville, IL.

Covers a wide range of ethical, environmental, and health issues related to animal agriculture.

de Haan, C., H. Steinfeld, and H. Blackburn. 1997. *Livestock and the Environment: Finding a Balance*. FAO/World Bank/USAID: Rome, Italy.

An international assessment of the negative impacts of livestock production systems on the environment and an exploration on how to overcome them.

Furuno, T. 2001. *The Power of Duck*. Tagari Publications: Sisters Creek, Tasmania, Victoria, Australia.

A very readable and applicable example of how one animal in particular has played a critical role in sustainable agroecosystem design and management.

Hauter, W. 2012. *Foodopoly: The Battle Over the Future of Food and Farming in America*. The New Press: New York.

An insightful investigation into the control of food production by a handful of large corporations, with several chapters on how this is manifest in the meat industry.

Hodgson, J. and A. W. Illius. 1996. *The Ecology and Management of Grazing Systems*. CAB International: Wallingford, U.K.

A unique look at our understanding and management of land resources used by grazing animals, combining perspectives from ecology, plant science, and animal science.

Holecheck, J. L., R. D. Pieper, and C. H. Herbel. 2010. *Range Management: Principles and Practices*, 6th edn. Prentice Hall: Upper Saddle River, NJ.

The most up-to-date source of information on range management, with its strongest emphasis on the management of grazing itself. It also presents comprehensive information on highly relevant issues such as range animal behavior, economics, energy, and multiple-use environments.

Little, D. C. and P. Edwards. 2003. *Integrated Livestock–Fish Farming Systems.* FAO: Rome, Italy.

Describes the dynamic set of practices that constitutes integrated fish–livestock farming systems in Asia.

Nierenberg, D. 2005. *Happier Meals: Rethinking the Global Meat Industry*. WorldWatch Paper 171. WorldWatch Institute: Washington, DC.

A concise examination of the damaging effects of industrial animal agriculture, or factory farming, as well as proposals for alternative ways that farmers, processors, and consumers can help ensure that meat is made better for people, the environment, and the animals themselves.

20 Energetics of Agroecosystems

Energy is the lifeblood of ecosystems and of the biosphere as a whole. At the most fundamental level, what ecosystems do is capture and transform energy.

Energy is constantly flowing through ecosystems in one direction. It enters as solar energy and is converted by photosynthesizing organisms (plants and algae) into potential energy, which is stored in the chemical bonds of organic molecules, or biomass. Whenever this potential energy is harvested by organisms to do work (e.g., grow, move, reproduce), much of it is transformed into heat energy that is no longer available for further work or transformation—it is lost from the ecosystem.

Agriculture, in essence, is the human manipulation of the capture and flow of energy in ecosystems. Humans use agroecosystems to convert solar energy into particular forms of biomass—forms that can be used as food, feed, fiber, and fuel.

All agroecosystems—from the simple, localized plantings and harvests of the earliest agriculture to the intensively altered agroecosystems of today—require an input of energy from their human stewards in addition to that provided by the sun. This input is necessary in part because of the heavy removal of energy from agroecosystems in the form of harvested material. But it is also necessary because an agroecosystem must to some extent deviate from, and be in opposition to, natural processes. Humans must intervene in a variety of ways—manage noncrop plants and herbivores, irrigate, cultivate soil, and so on—and doing so requires work.

The agricultural “modernization” of the last several decades has been largely a process of putting ever greater amounts of energy into agriculture in order to increase yields. But most of this additional energy input comes directly or indirectly from nonrenewable fossil fuels. Moreover, the return on the energy investment in industrial agriculture is not very favorable: for many crops, we invest more energy than we get back as food energy. Emissions from this process have also contributed to climate change. Our energy-intensive form of agriculture, therefore, cannot be sustained into the future without fundamental changes.

ENERGY AND THE LAWS OF THERMODYNAMICS

An examination of the energy flows and inputs in agriculture requires a basic understanding of energy and the physical laws that govern it. First of all, what is energy? Energy is most commonly defined as the ability to do work. Work occurs when a force acts over some distance. When energy is actually doing work it is called kinetic energy. There is kinetic energy, for example, in a swinging hoe and a moving plow, and also in the light waves coming from the sun. Another form of energy is potential energy, which is energy at rest yet capable of doing work. When kinetic energy is doing work, some of it can be stored as potential energy. The energy in the chemical bonds of biomass is a form of potential energy.

In the physical world and in ecosystems, energy is constantly moving from one place to another and changing forms. Two laws of thermodynamics describe how this occurs. According to the first law of thermodynamics, energy is neither created nor destroyed regardless of what transfers or transformations occur. Energy changes from one form to another as it moves from one place to another or is used to do work, and all of it can be accounted for. For example, the heat energy and light energy created by the burning of wood (plus the potential energy of the remaining products) is equal to the potential energy of the unburned wood and the oxygen consumed during the burning.

The second law of thermodynamics states that when energy is transferred or transformed, part of the energy is converted to a form that cannot be passed on any further and is not available to do work. This degraded form of energy is heat, which is simply the disorganized movement of molecules. The second law of thermodynamics means that there is always a tendency toward greater disorder, or entropy. To counter entropy—to create order, in other words—energy must be expended.

The operation of the second law can be clearly seen in a natural ecosystem: as energy is transferred from one organism to another in the form of food, a large part of that energy is degraded to heat through metabolic activity, with a net increase in entropy. In another sense, biological systems don’t appear to conform to the second law because they are able to create order out of disorder. They are only able to do this, however, because of the constant input of energy from outside the system in the form of solar energy.

Analysis of energy flows in any system requires measuring energy use. Many units are available for this purpose. In this chapter, we will use kilocalories (kcal) as the preferred unit because it is best oriented to linking human nutrition with energy inputs in food production. Other units and their equivalents are listed in Table 20.1.

TABLE 20.1
Units of Energy Measure

Unit	Definition	Equivalents
Calorie (cal)	The amount of heat necessary to raise 1 g (1 mL) of water 1°C at 15°C	0.001 kcal 4.187 J
Kilocalorie (kcal)	The amount of heat needed to raise 1 kg (l L) of water 1°C at 15°C	1000 cal 4187 J 3.968 Btu
British thermal unit (Btu)	The amount of heat needed to raise 1 lb of water 1°F	252 cal 0.252 kcal
Joule (J)	The amount of work done in moving an object a distance of 1 m against a force of 1 N	0.252 cal 0.000252 kcal

CAPTURE OF SOLAR ENERGY

The starting point in the flow of energy through ecosystems and agroecosystems is the sun. The energy emitted by the sun is captured by plants and converted to stored chemical energy through the photosynthetic process discussed in Chapters 3 and 4. The energy accumulated by plants through photosynthesis is called **primary production** because it is the first and most basic form of energy storage in an ecosystem. Energy left after the respiration needed to maintain plants is net primary production (NPP) and remains as stored biomass. Through agriculture, we concentrate this stored energy in biomass that can be harvested and utilized, either by consuming it directly or by feeding it to animals that we can either consume or use to do work for us.

Plants vary in how efficiently they can capture solar energy and convert it to stored biomass. This variation is the result of differences in plant morphology (e.g., leaf area), photosynthetic efficiency, and physiology. It also depends on the conditions under which the plant is grown. Agricultural plants are some of the most efficient plants, but even in their case the efficiency of their conversion of sunlight to biomass rarely exceeds 1% (a 1% efficiency means that 1% of the solar energy reaching the plant is converted to biomass).

Corn, considered one of the most productive food and feed crops per unit of area of land, can produce as much as 15,000 kg/ha/season of dry biomass, divided equally between grain and stover. This biomass represents about 0.5% of the solar energy reaching the corn field during the year (or about 1% of the sunlight reaching the field during the growing season). A potato crop that yields 40,000 kg/ha of fresh tubers (the equivalent of 7,000 kg/ha of dry matter) has a conversion efficiency of about 0.4%. Wheat, with a grain yield of 2700 kg/ha and a dry matter yield of 6750 kg/ha, has about a 0.2% conversion efficiency. The conversion efficiency of sugarcane in tropical areas—about 4.0%—is one of the highest known.

Even though these efficiencies are relatively low, they are still several times greater than the average conversion efficiency of mature natural vegetation, which is estimated to be about 0.1% (Pimentel 2012). We must also take into consideration the fact that little of the biomass in natural vegetation is available for human consumption, whereas a large portion of the stored energy in agricultural species is consumable (Figure 20.1).

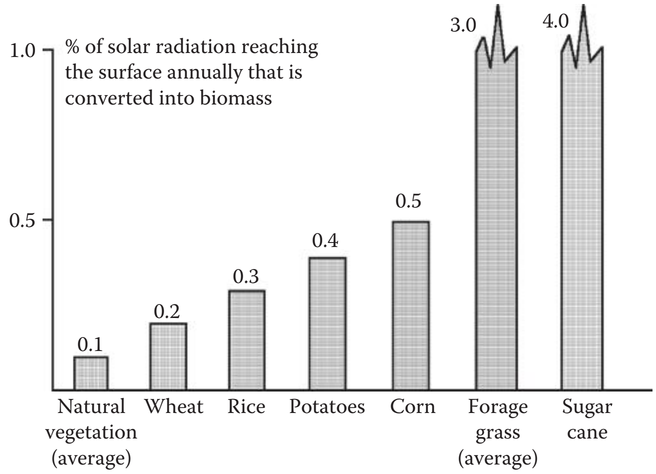


FIGURE 20.1 Efficiency of solar energy-to-biomass conversion. (Data from Pimentel, D. et al., *Bioscience*, 28, 376, 1978; Ludlow, M.M., *Aust. J. Plant Physiol.*, 12, 557, 1985; Pimentel, D., W. Dahzhongh, and M. Giampietro. Technological change in energy use in U.S. agricultural production. In S.R. Gliessman [ed.], *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*. Springer-Verlag: New York, pp. 302–321, 1990.)

Since much of the food consumed in developed countries is not plant biomass but animal biomass, we should also examine the efficiency of the conversion from plant-matter energy to meat, milk, and eggs. The production of animal biomass from plant biomass is inefficient because animals lose so much metabolic energy to maintenance and respiration.

Analysis of this conversion is normally done in terms of the energy content of the protein in the animal biomass, since meat, milk, and eggs are produced mainly for their protein. Feedlot or confined livestock need 20–120 units of plant food energy to produce each unit of protein energy, depending on the animal and the production system. This is equivalent to an efficiency of 0.8% at the low end and 5% at the high end. If these conversion efficiencies are combined with those for the production of the animals' feed, the inefficiency of animal production systems becomes evident. As an example, the plant products fed to feedlot cattle contain about 0.5% of the solar energy that reached the plants, and the protein in the consumed meat of the cattle contains 0.8% of the energy that was in the feed, yielding an overall efficiency of only 0.004% (Figure 20.2).

Open-range livestock must be considered somewhat differently, since they can graze on land that might not be suitable for other forms of agriculture, and consume forage directly from a natural ecosystem or low energy-requiring pasture systems. They can transform the energy contained in biomass that humans cannot consume directly.

FIGURE 20.2 **Dairy cows fed on concentrated diets to increase milk production.** Corn silage, pelletized alfalfa, and other supplements increase the energy cost of producing dairy products.

ENERGY INPUTS IN FOOD PRODUCTION

Although all the energy in the food we consume comes originally from the sun, additional energy is needed to produce the food in the context of an agroecosystem. This additional energy comes in the form of human labor, animal labor, and the work done by machines. Energy is also required to produce the machines, tools, seed, and fertilizer, to provide irrigation, to process the food, and to transport it to market. We must examine all these energy inputs to understand the energy costs of agriculture and to develop a basis for more sustainable use of energy in agriculture.

It is helpful, first of all, to distinguish between the different types of energy inputs in agriculture. The primary distinction is between energy inputs from solar radiation, called **ecological energy inputs**, and those derived from human sources, called **cultural energy inputs**. Cultural energy inputs can be further divided into biological inputs and industrial inputs. Biological inputs come directly from organisms and include human labor, animal labor, and manure; industrial inputs of energy are derived from fossil fuels, radioactive fission, and geothermal and hydrological sources (Figure 20.3).

It is important to note that even though we are referring to all these sources of energy as "inputs," cultural energy of either form can be derived from sources within a particular agroecosystem, making it not an input at all in the sense that we have been using the term. Such "internal inputs" of energy include the labor of farm residents, the manure of on-farm animals, and energy from on-farm windmills or wind-driven turbines.

CULTURAL ENERGY INPUTS AND HARVEST OUTPUT

From the standpoint of sustainability, the key aspect of energy flow in agroecosystems is how cultural energy is used to direct the conversion of ecological energy to biomass. The greater the modification of natural processes that humans try to force on the environment in the production of food, the greater the amount of cultural energy required. Energy is needed to maintain a low-diversity system, to limit interference, and to modify the physical and chemical conditions of the system in order to maintain optimal growth and development of the crop organisms.

Larger inputs of cultural energy enable higher productivity. However, there is not a one-to-one relationship between the two. When the cultural energy input is very high, the "return" on the "investment" of the extra cultural energy is often minimal. Since the output of an agroecosystem can be measured in terms of energy, we can evaluate the efficiency of energy use in the agroecosystem with a simple ratio: the amount of energy contained in the harvested biomass compared to the amount of cultural energy required to produce that biomass. Across all the world's agroecosystems, this ratio varies from one in which much more energy comes out

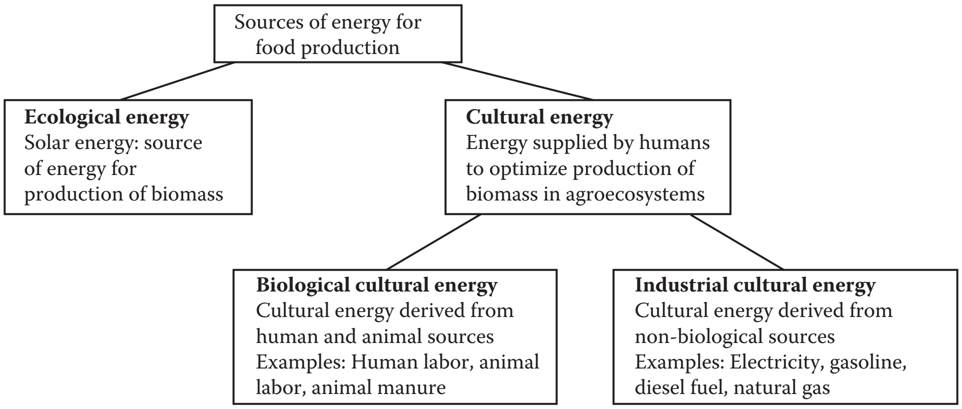


FIGURE 20.3 **Types of energy inputs in agriculture.** Biological cultural energy and industrial cultural energy can either come from outside a particular agroecosystem (in which case it is a form of external human input) or be derived from sources with the system.

than is put in to one in which the energy inputs are larger than the energy output.

Nonmechanized agroecosystems (e.g., pastoralism or shifting cultivation) that use only biological cultural energy in the form of human labor are able to realize returns that vary from 5 to nearly 40 cal of food energy for each calorie of cultural energy invested. Permanent farming systems using draft animals have a higher input of cultural energy, but because this greater energy investment enables higher yields, such systems still have favorable returns on their investment of cultural energy.

In mechanized agroecosystems, however, very large inputs of industrial cultural energy replace most of the biological cultural energy, enabling high levels of yield but greatly reducing energy use efficiency. In the production of grains such as corn, wheat and rice, these agroecosystems can yield 1–3 cal of food energy per calorie of cultural energy. In mechanized fruit and vegetable production, the energy return is at best slightly greater than the energy investment, and in most cases it is smaller (Pimentel and Pimentel 2008). For production of animal food, the ratio is in most cases even less favorable. Beef production in the United States, for example, requires about 5 cal of cultural energy for each calorie obtained, and pork requires as much as 10 cal (Pimentel and Pimentel 2008).

Since animal foods are valued more for protein content than total energy content, we should also consider the energy efficiency of their production in terms of the energy in the protein of these foods compared to the energy in the feed consumed by the animals. In these terms, each calorie of protein in milk, pork, and feedlot beef requires between 30 and 80 cal of energy to produce. By comparison, a calorie of plant protein can be produced with as little as 3 cal of cultural energy (in the case of protein from grains). Even the production of concentrated plant protein (e.g., tofu from soybeans) takes no more than 20 cal of energy for each calorie of protein.

The data presented in Figure 20.4 reinforce our claim that the cultural energy requirement in agriculture is closely related to the level of modification of natural ecosystem processes. The costs are small when humans leave the basic structure of the ecosystem intact. When certain minor modifications are made that increase the abundance of a specific crop species of interest, more cultural energy is required, but

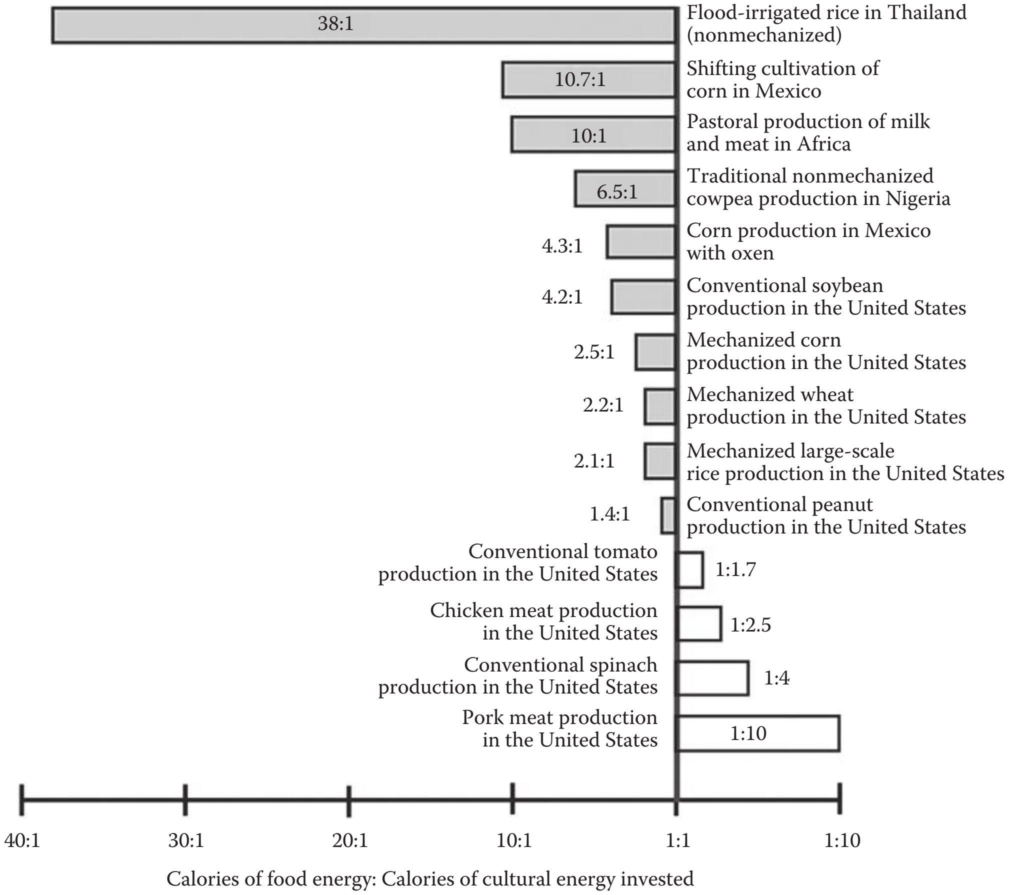


FIGURE 20.4 Comparison of the returns on energy investment for various agroecosystems. Bars extending to the left indicate systems in which the realized output is greater than the input; bars extending to the right indicate systems in which the energy input is greater than the energy value of the resulting food. (Data from Cox, G.W. and Atkins, M.D., *Agricultural Ecology*, W. H. Freeman and Company, San Francisco, CA, 1979; Pimentel, D. et al., *Int. Comm. Agric. Eng. Ejournal* 1, 1-32, (cigr-ejournal.tamu.edu), 1998, accessed August 24, 2014. Pimentel, D. and Pimentel, M., *Food, Energy, and Society*, 3rd edn., CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2008.)

FIGURE 20.5 Coffee grown under the shade of native trees in Veracruz, Mexico. In this agroecosystem, coffee is substituted for understory species without major alteration of the upper canopy of native trees. Because the natural ecosystem is altered so little, only small inputs of cultural energy are required to maintain the productivity of the system.

the return is still favorable (Figure 20.5). But when a complex natural ecosystem is replaced by a crop monoculture with a life form very different from that of the native species—as is the case with irrigated cotton in the former arid scrublands of the western San Joaquin Valley of California—cultural energy costs rise steeply. When the goal is to also increase the level of solar energy capture (productivity) above that shown by the previous natural system, the levels of cultural energy required can be very high (Figure 20.5).

Figure 20.6 offers another perspective on the relative energy costs and energy benefits of different types of agroecosystems. Although using a large amount of cultural energy enables industrial agroecosystems to be more productive than others, such systems are not realizing a good return on their energy investment. Food production that is more energy efficient is possible if we decrease inputs of industrial cultural energy, increase the investment of biological cultural energy, and change how industrial cultural energy is used.

USE OF BIOLOGICAL CULTURAL ENERGY

Biological cultural energy is any energy input with a biological source under human control—this includes human labor, the labor of human-directed animals and their by-products, and any human-directed biological activity or by-product. Some of the different forms of biological cultural energy, with their approximate energy values, are presented in Table 20.2.

Biological cultural energy is renewable in that it derives from food energy, the ultimate source of which is solar energy. Biological cultural energy is also efficient in facilitating the production of harvestable biomass. As we saw earlier, agroecosystems that rely mainly on biological cultural energy are able to obtain the most favorable ratios of energy output to input.

Human labor has been the key cultural energy input to agriculture ever since its beginning, and in many parts of the world today it continues to be the primary energy input, along with animal labor. In shifting cultivation systems, for example, human labor is practically the only form of energy added other than the energy captured through photosynthesis. These systems' high ratios of food energy

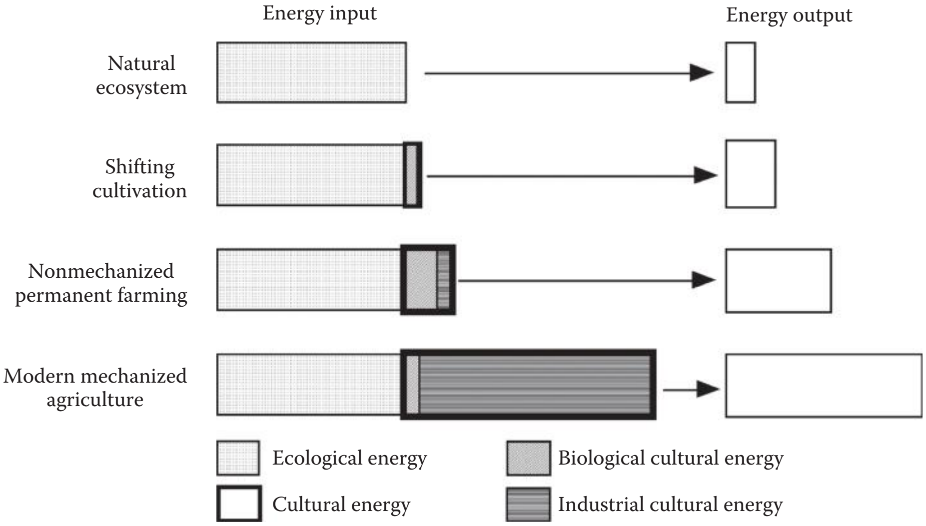


FIGURE 20.6 Approximate relative size of energy inputs and outputs in four types of systems. The actual size of the ecological energy input for each system is much larger than shown. Note that for modern mechanized agriculture, the total energy output is smaller than the input of cultural energy; this disparity is often more extreme than shown.

TABLE 20.2
Energy Content of Several Types of Biological Cultural Energy Inputs to Agriculture

Input Type	Energy Value
Human labor, heavy (clearing with a machete)	400–500 kcal/ha
Human labor, light (driving a tractor)	175–200 kcal/ha
Large draft animal labor	2400 kcal/ha
Locally produced seed	4000 kcal/kg
Cow manure	1611 kcal/kg
Pig manure	2403 kcal/kg
Commercial compost	2000 kcal/kg
Biogas slurry	1730 kcal/kg

Sources: Data from Cox, G.W. and Atkins, M.D., *Agricultural Ecology*, W. H. Freeman and Company, San Francisco, CA, 1979; Zhengfang, L., Energetic and ecological analysis of farming systems in Jiangsu Province, China, Presented at the *10th International Conference of the International Federation of Organic Agriculture Movements* (*IFOAM*), Lincoln University, Lincoln, New Zealand, December 9–16, 1994; Pimentel, D. and Pimentel, M., *Food, Energy, and Society*, 3rd edn., CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2008.

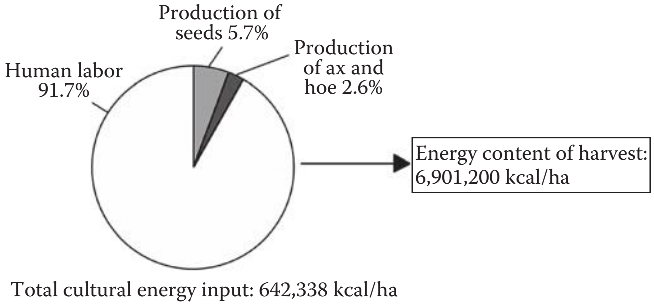


FIGURE 20.7 Cultural energy inputs to a traditional shifting cultivation corn crop in Mexico. The ratio of the food energy output to the cultural energy input for this system is 10.7:1. Only the axe and hoe (used for clearing and seed planting) required an input of industrial cultural energy. (Data from Pimentel, D. and Pimentel, M., *Food, Energy, and Society*, 3rd edn., CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2008.)

produced to cultural energy invested, ranging from 10:1 to 40:1, are a reflection of how efficiently human labor can direct the conversion of solar energy into harvestable material (Rappaport 1971; Pimentel and Pimentel 2008). As an example, the energy budget for a traditional shifting cultivation or swidden corn crop in Mexico is shown in Figure 20.7.

Many other types of traditional, nonmechanized food production systems, where biological cultural energy is the primary input, realize a very favorable return on their investment of cultural energy. In pastoral agroecosystems, in which herding and animal care are the main human activities, and animals gain their food energy from natural vegetation, the ratios of food energy produced to cultural energy invested range from 3:1 to 10:1. Even intensive, nonmechanized farming systems maintain a positive energy budget. Paddy rice production systems in parts of Southeast Asia, for example, are able to gain up to 38 cal of food energy for every calorie of cultural energy invested.

The energy value of the human labor in these systems is calculated by determining how many food calories a person burns while working. Although this technique provides good baseline data, it does not take into account a variety of other factors. One could also consider the energy required to grow the food that is metabolized while working, and the energy needed to provide for all the other basic needs of the human workers when they aren't working. Such additions would increase the energy value of human labor. On the other hand, people's basic needs must be provided for whether or not their labor serves as an energy input in agriculture, and they need food even when at rest. On this basis, one could reduce the energy cost of human labor by considering only the extra food energy needed to perform agricultural work.

In many agroecosystems that rely mainly on biological cultural energy, animals play an important role in cultivating the soil, transporting materials, converting biomass into manure, and producing protein-rich foods such as milk and meat. Animal use increased considerably in agriculture when the transition from shifting cultivation to permanent agriculture and domestication began to occur (Figure 20.8).

Although the use of animal labor increases the total biological cultural energy input and lowers the ratio of harvested energy to invested energy to the neighborhood of 3:1, it allows for permanent instead of shifting agriculture, increases the area that can be planted, produces manures for enriching the soil, and allows for the harvest of meat, milk, and animal products. In addition, animals consume biomass that cannot be consumed directly by humans, which lowers their relative energy cost. An example of the energy efficiency of corn production using animal traction is presented in Figure 20.9.

FIGURE 20.8 Oxen-drawn plow cultivating a field for corn planting near Cuenca, Ecuador. Most of the energy in this system is from renewable local sources.

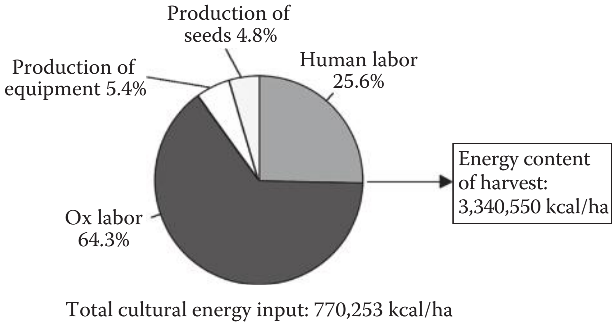


FIGURE 20.9 Cultural energy inputs into a traditional corn production system using animal labor. The ratio of the food energy output to the cultural energy input for this system is 4.34:1. The energy in the covercrop and fallow plants that were incorporated into the soil is not included in the calculations. Animal manures returned to the soil are included in the energy input from the oxen. (Data from Cox, G.W. and Atkins, M.D., *Agricultural Ecology*, Freeman, San Francisco, CA, 1979; Pimentel, D. and Pimentel, M., *Food, Energy, and Society*, 3rd edn., CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2008.)

Biological cultural energy is an important component of sustainable agriculture. Energy inputs from humans and their animals are generally renewable, providing energy that helps transform a greater proportion of solar energy into harvestable food energy. The use of human and animal labor takes advantage of the first law of thermodynamics by altering natural ecosystem processes in ways that concentrate energy in useful products, but still obeys the second law by always returning to ecological inputs of energy from the sun in order to maintain the agroecosystem over the long term. When doing an energetic analysis of biological cultural energy, it must be remembered that this form of energy is more than an economic cost for agriculture—it is an integral part of a sustainable production process.

USE OF INDUSTRIAL CULTURAL ENERGY

Once agriculture began to mechanize, the use of energy from industrial cultural sources increased dramatically. Mechanization and industrial cultural energy greatly increased productivity, but they also changed the nature of agricultural production. Human and animal labor were displaced, and farming became tied to fossil-fuel production and consumption.

Present-day industrial agroecosystems have come to rely heavily on industrial cultural energy inputs. Corn production in the United States is a good example of an agroecosystem where almost all of the energy inputs to the system come from industrial sources. Figure 20.10 shows the total energy inputs per hectare in corn production, and how this energy is distributed among the various input types. Biological cultural energy in the form of human labor is a minimal part of this system.

The changes that have occurred since World War II in the way cultural energy is used to produce corn are a good example of how energy use has changed in agriculture in general. Between 1945 and 1983, corn yields in the United States increased threefold, but energy inputs increased more than fivefold. In 1945, the estimated ratio of energy output to energy input in corn was between 3.5:1 and 5.5:1. By 1975,

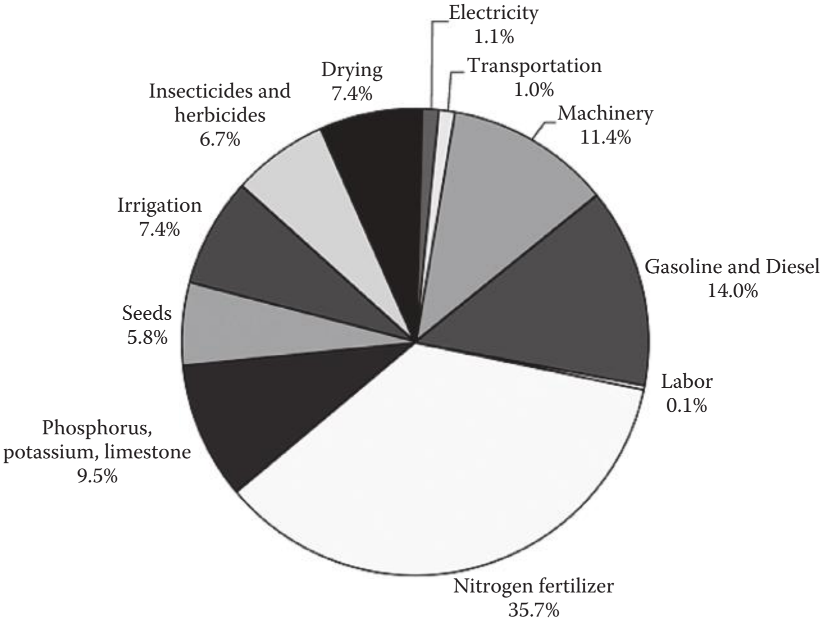


FIGURE 20.10 Components of the 10,535,650 kcal/ha of cultural energy used for corn production in the United States. Total grain yield averages 7500 kg/ha and the kcal output-to-input ratio is 2.5:1. (Data from Pimentel, D. and Wen, D., Technological changes in energy use in U.S. agricultural production, in: Carrol, C.R., Vandermeer, J.H., and Rosset, P.M. (eds.), *Agroecology*, McGraw Hill, New York, 1990, pp. 147–164.)

this ratio had declined to between 3.2:1 and 4.1:1, and in the early 1990s, it stood at 2.53:1 (Pimentel and Pimentel 2008). During the last decade, this ratio of return has probably remained about the same, with the continued intensification of inputs to agriculture balanced by tailoring of inputs to measured crop needs ("precision agriculture").

Energetically speaking, industrial cultural energy is of a higher quality than both solar energy and biological cultural energy. It is more concentrated—calorie for calorie, it has a greater capacity for doing work than solar energy or biological cultural energy. One kcal of energy in the form of fossil fuel, for example, is able to do about 2000 times as much work as 1 kcal of solar radiation.

But even though industrial cultural energy is generally of very high quality in terms of the work it can do, each form of this energy varies in the amount of energy that was required to give it this higher-quality state. A kilocalorie of electricity, for example, can do four times the work of a kilocalorie of petroleum fuel, but much more energy was expended to create the electricity. As the laws of thermodynamics tell us, humans must expend energy in order to concentrate energy, and no new energy can be created in the process. So we are as much concerned with the absolute amount of work that can be done by each kilocalorie of a certain form of energy as we are with the total amount of energy that is expended to transform it into that energy form. To compare industrial cultural energy inputs in these terms, we can calculate their energy costs. Table 20.3 presents a range of energy costs for some commonly used industrial energy inputs.

Industrial cultural energy is used either directly or indirectly in agriculture. Direct use occurs when industrial cultural energy is used to power tractors and transport vehicles, run processing machinery and irrigation pumps, and heat and cool greenhouses. Indirect energy use occurs when industrial cultural energy is used off the farm to produce the machinery, vehicles, chemical inputs, and other goods and services that are then employed in the farming operation. This energy is sometimes referred to as embodied energy, or *emergy*, in order to emphasize the energy costs that are often overlooked when we calculate the direct energy consumed in a farming system (Odum 1996). In the typical industrial farming system, about one-third of energy use is direct, and two-thirds is indirect.

TABLE 20.3
Approximate Energy Costs of Commonly Used Industrial Cultural Inputs

Machinery (average for trucks and tractors)	18,000 kcal/kg
Gasoline (including refining and shipping)	16,500 kcal/L
Diesel (including refining and shipping)	11,450 kcal/L
LP gas (including refining and shipping)	7,700 kcal/L
Electricity (including generation and transmission)	3,100 kcal/kW h
Nitrogen (as ammonium nitrate)	14,700 kcal/kg
Phosphorus (as triple superphosphate)	3,000 kcal/kg
Potassium (as potash)	1,860 kcal/kg
Lime (including mining and processing)	295 kcal/kg
Insecticides (including manufacturing)	85,680 kcal/kg
Herbicides (including manufacturing)	111,070 kcal/kg

Source: Data from Fluck, R.C. (ed.), *Energy in Farm Production*, Energy in World Agriculture, Vol. 6, Elsevier, Amsterdam, the Netherlands, 1992.

The production of fertilizers—especially nitrogen fertilizer—accounts for the great majority of indirect energy use in agriculture. Nearly one-third of *all* the energy used in modern agriculture is consumed in the production of nitrogen fertilizer. This energy cost is high because nitrogen fertilizer is used so intensively and because a large amount of energy is required to produce it. In corn production, for example, about 152 kg/ha of N fertilizer is applied to the field, which represents 30% of the total energy input per hectare (Pimentel and Pimentel 2008). This energy input could be reduced greatly by using manures, biological nitrogen fixation, and recycling.

Another 15% of indirect energy use occurs in the production of pesticides. When formulation, packaging, and transport to the farm are included, the energy cost is somewhat higher. Although newer pesticides are usually applied in smaller quantities than those common a few decades ago, they are typically higher in energy content.

Most of the industrial cultural energy inputs in agriculture, both direct and indirect, come from fossil fuels or are dependent on fossil fuels for their manufacture. Other sources of industrial energy play a very small role in agriculture overall, even though they may be significant on a local basis. An analysis of the energy budget for corn production in the Midwestern United States showed that more than 90% of the industrial energy inputs came from fossil fuels, and less than 1% of the total energy needed for production came from renewable biological cultural energy in the form of labor (Pimentel and Wen 1990). When crop production depends so fully on fossil fuels, anything that affects the cost or availability of such energy can have dramatic impacts on agriculture.

Current trends indicate that fossil-fuel use in agriculture will continue to increase to meet growing production needs (Pimentel and Pimentel 2008), resulting in more rapid depletion of world petroleum reserves, greater contribution to carbon emissions and climate change, and competition with other uses for fossil fuels.

TOWARD SUSTAINABLE USE OF ENERGY IN AGROECOSYSTEMS

Examining conventional agriculture through the lens of energy reveals a critical source of unsustainability. Industrial agriculture is today using more energy to produce, process, transport, and market food than the food itself contains, and most of this invested energy comes from sources with a finite supply. We have come to depend on fossil fuels to produce our food, yet fossil fuels will not always be available in abundant supply, and they will not always be relatively cheap in dollar terms. Moreover, dependence on fossil-fuel use in agriculture is linked with virtually every other source of unsustainability in our food production systems.

PROBLEMS WITH INTENSIVE FOSSIL FUEL USE

Growing levels of energy inputs to agriculture have played an important role in increasing yield levels in many of the world's agricultural ecosystems over the past several decades. However, as described earlier, most of these energy inputs come from industrial sources, and most are based on the use of fossil fuels. If the strategy for meeting the food demands of the growing population of the world continues to depend on these sources, the consequences will continue to undermine the ecological foundations of agriculture, increase economic risk, and cause social problems.

Most directly, fossil-fuel use in agriculture will continue to represent a large share of the world's total carbon emissions, contributing significantly to the increase in greenhouse gases in the atmosphere and helping to drive climate change. Other problems with agriculture's dependence on fossil fuels are more indirect, a result of how the energy intensiveness of fossil fuel enables the food system to function. As has been noted throughout the chapters of this book, when ecological processes are ignored, environmental degradation begins to appear in the agroecosystem. The use of intensive cultural energy inputs is what has permitted us to ignore ecological processes. The application of inorganic fertilizers masks declines in soil fertility; pesticides contribute to and hide declines in agricultural biodiversity.

However, the consequences of ignoring ecological processes are now becoming more evident. At the farm level, a shift to heavy mechanization and high use of fossil-fuel-derived chemical inputs have led to problems of organic matter loss, nutrient leaching, soil degradation, and increased soil erosion. Water supplies have become polluted, and excessive pumping of the groundwater has led to exhaustion of aquifers and accompanying water shortages. Pests and diseases have developed resistance to inundative use of pesticides, and pesticides have contaminated both farm environments and natural ecosystems, causing health problems for farmers and farmworkers and destroying populations of beneficial insects and microorganisms.

Off the farm, the wind and water erosion of soil associated with mechanized agriculture has had negative impacts on other systems, especially downstream. A recent work on gaseous emissions from nitrogenous fertilizers (N_2O and NO) has shown that the addition of these materials to the atmosphere is beginning to impact the global nitrogen cycle, further damage the ozone layer, and exacerbate climate change (Fields 2004). The simplification of farming systems, which always accompanies high industrial energy inputs to agriculture, is causing greater loss of regional biodiversity.

From an economic and social perspective, the problems with excessive dependence on fossil-fuel energy in agriculture go much beyond the issue of the efficiency of return on investment for the energy that is used. Dependence on fossil-fuel use means greater vulnerability to changes in the price and supply of petroleum. As was seen in the oil crisis of 1973, and then periodically since then, petroleum prices can suddenly rise, increasing the costs of agricultural production. With fossil-fuel consumption continuing to rise worldwide, the risks to fossil-fuel-based agriculture become even greater. The problem will become even more critical as developing countries are forced to intensify their own agricultural output to meet the growing demand for food.

A final problem with fossil-fuel-based agriculture is that it is linked to a certain kind of agricultural development: it enables large-scale, mechanized agriculture, which all over the world is displacing traditional agriculture and thus forcing migration to cities, disrupting cultural ties, and undermining self-reliance.

FUTURE ENERGY DIRECTIONS

Clearly, sustainable food production depends to a large extent on more efficient use of energy, as well as less reliance on industrial cultural energy inputs and fossil fuels in particular. As suggested in this chapter, a key to more sustainable use of energy in agriculture is expanding the use of biological cultural energy. Biological inputs are not only renewable, they have the advantages of being locally available and locally controlled, environmentally benign, and able to contribute to the ecological soundness of agroecosystems. Also important is the conversion to alternative energy sources and appropriate technologies that lessen dependence on fossil fuel.

Many agroecosystems currently in use point the way toward the future. The typical organic farming system, in which animals and legumes replace some of the fossil-fuel-derived inputs, consumes 28%–32% less energy than an equivalent industrial/conventional system (Pimentel et al. 2005). A Danish study found that a grass–clover integrated organic dairy farm was able to reduce total energy use 37.5% over its conventional counterpart, and systems using legume rotations in organic cereals and row crops reduced total energy use by 81.5% and 75% respectively, compared to conventional systems (Dalgaard et al. 2001; Dalgaard 2013).

Many of the ecologically based options and approaches presented throughout this book relate directly to improving energy efficiency. They suggest a number of strategies for fashioning food production systems that use energy in a more sustainable manner:

1. Reduce the use of industrial cultural energy, especially nonrenewable or contaminating sources such as fossil fuels.
    a. Use minimum or reduced-tillage systems that require less mechanized cultivation.
    b. Employ practices that reduce water use and water loss in order to reduce the amount of energy expended for irrigation.

   c. Use appropriate crop rotations and associations that stimulate recovery from the disturbance caused by each cropping cycle without the need for artificial inputs.
   d. Develop renewable, energy-efficient industrial cultural sources and uses of energy to replace fossil fuels and their uses.
   e. Develop on-farm sources of industrial cultural energy (e.g., photovoltaic electricity, wind energy, small-scale hydropower, biofuels) where possible.
   f. Use industrial cultural energy more efficiently by reducing waste and making more appropriate matches between the energy's quality and its use.
   g. Reduce the consumption of animal products overall, and for the animal products that are consumed, rely more on livestock that are range or grass fed or raised on agricultural plant biomass that would otherwise be waste.
   h. Reduce energy use in the agricultural sector by regionalizing production, and putting consumers and producers more directly in contact both seasonally and geographically.
2. Increase the use of biological cultural energy.
   a. View human energy as an integral part of energy flow in agriculture rather than as an economic cost that must be reduced or eliminated.
   b. Return harvested nutrients to the farmland from which they came.
   c. Make more extensive use of manures and plant by-products to maintain soil fertility and quality.
   d. Design and implement integrated livestock and crop systems that harness the ability of livestock to supply work, recycle nutrients on the farm, and provide other ecosystem services (see Chapter 19).
   e. Increase the local and on-farm use of agricultural products in order to lessen the energy costs of long-distance transport.
   f. Expand the use of biological control and integrated pest management.
   g. Encourage the presence of mycorrhizal relationships in the roots of crops in order to lessen the need for external inputs.
3. Design agroecosystems in which biological and ecological relationships provide more of the nutrient and biomass inputs and population-regulating processes, and that therefore require lower levels of cultural energy inputs.
   a. Make greater use of nitrogen-fixing crops, green manures, and fallows.
   b. Make greater use of biological pest management through covercropping, intercropping, encouragement of beneficials, well-designed livestock integration, etc.
   c. Introduce crops that are appropriate or adapted to the local environment rather than trying to alter the environment to meet the needs of the crop.
   d. Incorporate windbreaks, hedgerows, and noncrop areas into cropping systems for habitat and microclimate management.
   e. Design agroecosystems using local natural ecosystems as a model.
   f. Maximize the use of successional development in the cropping system (e.g., through agroforestry) in order to maintain better agroecosystem regeneration capacity.
   g. Diversify rather than simplify farming systems.
4. Emphasize agroecosystem design and management approaches that store carbon in biomass or soil organic matter in order to make agriculture a net sink for carbon, and, hence, a force for counteracting climate change.
5. Develop energy-related indicators of sustainability that incorporate the parallel goals of efficiency, productivity, and renewability (see Chapter 23).

Too often we hear the argument that without the continued intensive use of fossil fuels, agriculture will not be able to meet the growing demand for food around the globe. Although this point of view highlights the main challenge we will face in the coming decades, it ignores both the seriousness of the problems caused by our present methods of food production and the very real and practical alternatives that exist and that can be developed if research is directed toward whole-system analysis of agroecosystems.

Nor can we rely on biofuel substitutes for fossil fuels. The current push to develop biofuels has considerable risk because biofuel production diverts biomass and food products away from direct human consumption and use in agriculture (Hunt et al. 2006). Moreover, biofuels rarely have a positive energy balance. For example, producing 1000 L of ethanol requires 8.3 million kcal of energy (much of it from fossil fuels) but that same 1000 L of ethanol has an energy value of only 5.0 million kcal (Pimentel et al. 1998). Although biofuels have their place in developing more sustainable agroecosystems, they are not the easy solution that some claim.

The rapid increase in energy use in agriculture during the twentieth century radically changed the nature of farming. With an understanding of energy as an ecological factor in agriculture, and its use and flow as an emergent quality of the entire agroecosystem, better means of evaluating current practices can be developed, contributing at the same time to the development of practices and policies that establish a more sustainable basis for the world's food production systems in the twenty-first century. The longer it takes to develop alternative, ecologically sound energy use and conversion systems, the more vulnerable our current energy-dependent systems will become.

CASE STUDY: SUNSHINE FARM PROJECT

Before the mid-1900s, many farms ran mostly on sunlight. They used crop rotations and farm-produced manure to maintain soil fertility, and work was done by draft horses and people fed by on-farm production. With these farms of 100 years ago in mind, Marty Bender at the Land Institute set out in the early 1990s to create a modern farm that could provide its own fuel and fertility. The result was the Sunshine Farm, a 10-year-long demonstration project consisting of 50 acres of conventional crops and 100 acres of prairie pasture grazed by cattle near Salina, Kansas.

As the farm took shape, it showed many similarities to farms of the early 1900s and before. Livestock and crops were integrated, draft horses performed work, a variety of crops were grown, and at any one time about 40% of the cropland was planted in legumes. Unlike a farmer in the 1920s, however, Bender had at his disposal some newer renewable energy technologies.

He had a 4.5 kW photovoltaic array installed to provide for all of the farm's electricity needs, which included running the workshop tools, charging the electric fencing, running the water pumps, heating the chick brooders, and providing electricity for the farmhouse. A pair of Percheron draft horses and a biodiesel tractor provided motive power for field operations. Bender planted about one-quarter of the farm's cropland in soybeans and sunflowers to provide the raw material for the tractor's biodiesel fuel; however, since on-farm processing was not feasible, the oilseed was sold to a local cooperative, and an equivalent amount of biodiesel fuel purchased.

The livestock side of the farm's commercial enterprises consisted of a beef cattle operation, along with poultry raised to produce eggs and broilers. About three-fourths of the feed for these animals (and the draft horses) was produced on the farm. On the crop side, wheat was grown for sale, and excess oilseed meal was also sold. The major components of the farm operation are listed in Table 20.4.

Energy accounting was a crucial facet of the Sunshine Farm project. Bender and colleagues carefully measured the weight of every farm input and output, using energy factors published in the academic literature to derive equivalent energy values. These data were painstakingly entered into a database, and used to generate energy budgets for the farm as a whole and for its constituent enterprises. These budgets included both direct and indirect energy costs.

The energy accounting showed that over the course of the demonstration, about 90% of the farm's energy needs—not counting the energy embodied in capital outlays and human labor—were supplied by on-farm inputs. The remaining 10% was the energy embodied in purchased seed and feed, and in the phosphorus and potassium removed in the marketed crops (Bender 2002; Baum et al. 2009).

The Sunshine Farm project served many purposes. Primarily, it demonstrated that farming operations can come close to attaining energy self-sufficiency without sacrificing yields. It showed that many traditional farming practices—rotations, green manuring, livestock integration, crop diversity, and use of draft animals—can be essential components of energy-efficient agroecosystems, and that modern alternative energy technologies can also play an important role. In addition, it showed that increasing the energy self-sufficiency of individual farms is not the only means of reducing agriculture's dependence on fossil fuels. Farms may also need to be integrated into a local renewable energy economy, as the Sunshine Farm did in growing oilseed but leaving biodiesel fuel production to a larger-scale cooperative, and in tying its photovoltaic array into the local power grid.

TABLE 20.4
Components of the Sunshine Farm, with Their Energy Sources and Functions

Energy Source	Component	Function
Grain produced on the farm, plus some purchased feed	Draft horses	Field operations
Sunlight	4.5 kW photovoltaic array	Electricity for workshop tools, water pumping, electric fencing, chick brooding
Purchased biodiesel from local cooperative, with raw material contribution from the farm	Biodiesel tractor	Field operations
Grain produced on the farm, plus some purchased feed	Texas longhorn beef cattle	Marketing
Grain produced on the farm, plus some purchased feed	Poultry	Marketing (eggs and broilers)
Primary production, animal manure	Grain crops	Marketing (wheat) and animal feed (alfalfa, sorghum, oats)
Primary production, animal manure	Oilseed crops	Biodiesel production (pressed oil) and animal feed (leftover meal)
Primary production	Leguminous crops	Nitrogen fixation, forage, animal feed

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. How do biological cultural energy inputs and industrial cultural energy inputs differ with respect to ecological impacts?
2. What are some of the types of industrial cultural energy inputs to agriculture that can come from renewable sources?
3. How can we use renewable energy sources to replace nonrenewable sources, yet still meet the increasing demand for food?
4. What roles can animals play in improving the efficiency and effectiveness of energy concentration and transfer in agroecosystems?
5. What is your definition of sustainable energy use in agriculture?
6. How has the use of fossil fuels masked the environmental costs of industrial agriculture?
7. How has our "faith in technology" influenced the development of ecologically based, sustainable sources of energy for agriculture?
8. What are some of the limitations to "growing" energy crops on the farms where the energy will be used?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Alternative Fuels Data Center
www.eere.energy.gov/afdc
A vast collection of information on alternative fuels and the vehicles that use them.

Land Institute
www.landinstitute.org
A nonprofit research and education organization that promotes natural systems agriculture, in which nature is the model for reconnecting people, land, and community.

National Sustainable Agriculture Information Service: Energy in Agriculture
www.attra.ncat.org/energy.html
This private, nonprofit organization helps people by championing small-scale, local, and sustainable solutions to reduce poverty, promote healthy communities, and protect natural resources.

Resilience
www.resilience.org
An information source for building sustainable and resilient communities, with a section focused on energy use and independence.

United States Energy Information Administration
www.eia.gov
An extensive source of information on all energy sources and uses in the United States, including alternative and renewable energy.

Windustry: Wind Farmers Network
www.windustry.org
A nonprofit organization working to create an understanding of wind energy opportunities for rural economic benefit.

RECOMMENDED READING

El Bassam, N., P. Maegaard, and M. Schlichting. 2012. *Distributed Renewable Energies for Off-Grid Communities: Strategies and Technologies toward Achieving Sustainability in Energy Generation and Supply*. Newnes: Boston, MA.
For the more than two billion people in the world who do not have access to modern electric systems, and for those who want to disconnect, this book is a wealth of information on alternative energy systems.

Fluck, R. C. (ed.). 1992. *Energy in Farm Production*. Energy in World Agriculture, Vol. 6. Elsevier: Amsterdam, the Netherlands.
Still the most comprehensive review of the basic principles of energy use in agriculture; includes data on energy use efficiency and potential alternative energy sources.

Odum, H. T. 1983. *Systems Ecology: An Introduction*. Wiley: New York.
A key work on the systems view in ecology that analyzes how energy flows through natural ecosystems and examines how this knowledge can be linked to the sustainability of human-managed systems.

Outlaw, J. L., K. J. Collins, and J. A. Duffield. 2005. *Agriculture as a Producer and Consumer of Energy.* CABI Publishing: Wallingford, U.K.
An examination of agriculture's role as a producer and consumer of energy, including recent research on issues related to efficiency, alternative fuels, and environmental impact.

Pimentel, D. (ed.). 2008. *Global Economic and Environmental Aspects of Biofuels.* CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.
An important book that addresses the key environmental and economic issues associated with the production of biofuels, with a clear message that it will not be a viable alternative to fossil fuels if it continues to displace food production and impact the environment.

Pimentel, D. and M. Pimentel (eds.). 2008. *Food, Energy, and Society*, 2nd edn. University Press of Colorado: Niwot, CO.
A review of the problems inherent in an agriculture that is dependent on nonrenewable sources of energy and the complex issues involved in developing alternatives.

van Ierland, E. C. and A. O. Lansink (eds.). 2002. *Economics of Sustainable Energy in Agriculture.* Springer: Berlin, Germany.
A collection of case studies on energy efficiency improvement and the use of biomass for more sustainable agricultural systems.

21 Landscape Diversity

Since the beginning of agriculture, humans have been altering and displacing naturally occurring terrestrial ecosystems across the face of the earth, largely for the purpose of creating agroecosystems. Not long ago in human history, when all agriculture was traditional and small scale, agroecosystems were interspersed as small patches across the larger natural landscape. Managed habitats maintained the integrity of natural ecosystems while diversifying the landscape. Today, in contrast, agricultural land uses predominate, making natural habitats the patches that are dispersed over much of the earth's land surface. The ongoing process of converting land to agricultural production has had a dramatic and usually negative impact on the diversity of organisms and the integrity of ecological processes, and it has contributed significantly to climate change (Figure 21.1).

Although other forms of human exploitation of the environment, such as urbanization and mining, have also contributed to large-scale habitat modification and the loss of biodiversity and ecosystem function, agricultural production—including grazing and timber production—bears much of the responsibility for causing environmental changes at the biosphere scale that threaten the world's life-support systems.

One of the major goals of developing sustainable food systems is to reverse this legacy of destruction and neglect, to conserve biotic resources and protect environmental quality. Indeed, this goal is built into our definition of agricultural sustainability. More sustainable agroecosystems—more diverse, relying less on external inputs and intensive modification of the environment—will, by their very nature, be more environmentally friendly.

A variety of important design and management principles come to light when we focus on the relationships between agroecosystems, natural ecosystems, and the biosphere as a whole. In particular, we find that crops and farms can benefit as much as natural ecosystems when we design and manage agroecosystems with natural habitats, native species, and regional ecological processes in mind. We also find that when designing and managing agroecosystems in this way, they emit much less carbon than most food production systems do today and can even come close to sequestering as much carbon as intact natural systems.

Carrying out agricultural production so that it works with, rather than against, natural ecosystem processes is necessary not just for the sake of the natural environmental itself, but for the long-term welfare of human society. We depend on healthy, functioning ecosystems to moderate weather extremes, cycle nutrients, protect riverbanks from erosion, filter our drinking water, detoxify our wastewater, generate new soil, pollinate crops, reduce the impacts of droughts and floods, sequester carbon, and provide us with a variety of other **ecosystem services**. By replacing most of the earth's natural environments with systems managed for food, fiber, and timber production, we have seriously threatened the foundations of these ecosystem services. From a sustainability perspective, therefore, we must design and manage agroecosystems so that they (1) conserve remaining natural environments, ecosystems, and biodiversity, and (2) function as providers of ecosystem services themselves (Figure 21.1).

AGRICULTURAL LANDSCAPE

Developing agroecosystems that protect and enhance biotic diversity and ecological processes—and in turn derive benefits from the natural environment—requires a shift of perspective to the regional, or landscape level. So first we will examine the basic aspects of the agricultural landscape.

Agricultural development within a formerly natural environment tends to result in a heterogeneous mosaic of varying types of habitat patches spread across the landscape. The bulk of the land may be intensely managed and frequently disturbed for the purposes of agricultural production, but certain parts (wetlands, riparian corridors, hillocks) may be left in a relatively natural condition, and other parts (borders between fields, areas around buildings, roadsides, strips between fields and adjacent natural areas) may occasionally be disturbed but not intensely managed. In addition, natural ecosystems may surround or border areas in which agricultural production dominates (Figure 21.2).

Although the level of human influence on the land varies on a continuum from intense disturbance and management to relatively pristine wildness, we can divide this continuum into three sections to derive three basic kinds of components of the agricultural landscape:

1. *Areas of agricultural production.* Intensely managed and regularly disturbed, these areas are usually made up mainly of nonnative, domesticated plant species.
2. *Areas of moderate or reduced human influence.* This intermediate category includes pasture land, forests managed for timber production, hedgerows and other border areas, and agroforestry systems. These areas are typically made up of some mixture of native and nonnative plant species and are able to serve as habitat for many native animal species.

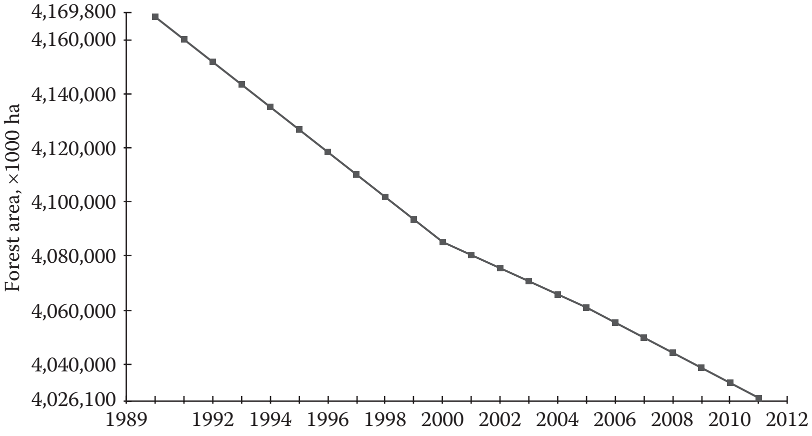


FIGURE 21.1 Decline in the area of land worldwide covered by forest. Forest ecosystems, which sequester more carbon than other ecosystems and support tremendous biological diversity, have been in steady decline since the beginnings of agriculture thousands of years ago. Other types of natural ecosystems, including woodlands, scrublands, and grasslands, have experienced similar contraction, and these trends are likely to continue. (Data from FAOSTAT, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Statistics Database. http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html. Dates of access range from January 1, 2014 to March 30, 2014.)

FIGURE 21.2 A diverse agricultural landscape near Nanjing, China. Natural ecosystems interface with a variety of human land-use activities in an agricultural setting.

3. *Natural areas*. These areas retain some resemblance of the original ecosystem structure and species composition naturally present in the location, although they may be small in size, contain some nonnative species, and be subject to some human disturbance.

These three landscape components, in various combinations and arrangements, form the mosaic pattern of the typical agricultural landscape.

LANDSCAPE PATTERNS

Within the landscape mosaic, there are three common, recognizable patterns in how the three components are arranged in relation to each other: (1) a natural area and an area managed for agricultural production are separated by an area of moderate or reduced human influence; (2) natural areas form strips, corridors, or patches within an area of agricultural production; and (3) areas of moderate or reduced human influence are dispersed within an area of agricultural production. These three patterns, illustrated in Figure 21.3, can be combined and arranged in many different ways.

An important variable in the mosaic patterning of the agricultural landscape is its degree of heterogeneity or diversity. Landscapes are relatively homogenous when areas of agricultural production predominate, unbroken by patches

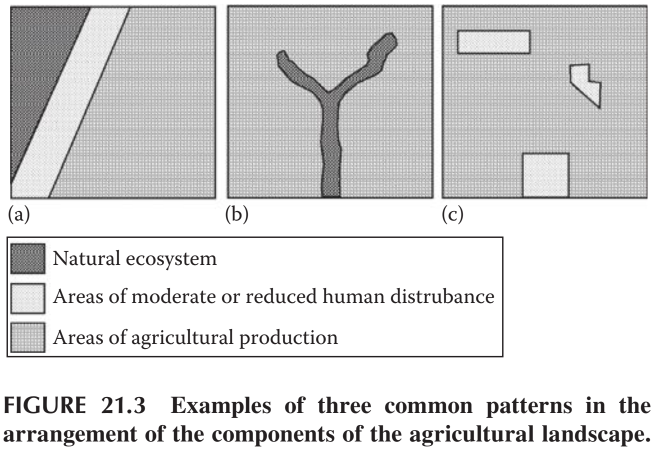


FIGURE 21.3 Examples of three common patterns in the arrangement of the components of the agricultural landscape. A natural ecosystem and an agroecosystem can be separated by an area of intermediate human influence (a); a natural ecosystem can form a corridor, strip, or patch within an agroecosystem (b); and areas of less intense human management can be dispersed within a larger area of agricultural production (c).

or strips of the other two kinds of landscape components. Heterogeneous landscapes, in contrast, have an abundance of noncrop and natural patches.

The heterogeneity of the agricultural landscape varies greatly by region. In some parts of the world (e.g., the Midwestern United States), the heavy use of agricultural chemicals, herbicides, mechanical technology, narrow genetic lines, and irrigation over large areas has made the landscape relatively homogenous. In such areas, the agricultural landscape is made up mostly of large areas of single-crop agricultural production. In other areas (e.g., the Jiangsu Province of the Yangtze in China or many shade-grown coffee regions of Central America and Mexico), the use of traditional farming practices with minimal industrial inputs has resulted in a varied, highly heterogeneous landscape—possibly even more heterogeneous than would exist naturally.

The typical agricultural landscape, because of its mosaic makeup, is ecologically a fragmented environment. Each patch is a fragment isolated from other similar patches by some other type of ecologically dissimilar community. On the one hand, this fragmentation can have negative effects on populations restricted to a particular type of habitat. On the other hand, a fragmented, heterogeneous landscape has high gamma diversity. As we will explore in the next section, effective management at the level of the landscape involves enhancing gamma diversity and taking advantage of its benefits, while at the same time mitigating the possible negative consequences of habitat fragmentation.

ANALYZING THE LANDSCAPE

At the landscape level, the movement of organisms and substances between habitat patches becomes a critical factor in the maintenance of overall ecological processes. Also important is the interaction of organisms and physical processes located in different habitat patches. What happens in one area of the landscape can have an impact on other areas. The study of these factors, and how they are shaped by the spatial patterning of the landscape, is known as **landscape ecology**. Because it helps us understand how the different parts of the landscape mosaic are formed and how they interact, landscape ecology provides a good basis for management of the agricultural landscape (Turner et al. 2001; Odum and Barrett 2005).

Three important tools of landscape ecology are aerial photography, satellite imagery, and geographic information system (GIS) analysis. Using these tools, present landscape patterns can be contrasted with those that were observed in the past. The changes that have occurred can then be correlated with farming systems data to understand the role of agroecosystems in maintaining the stability and sustainability of landscape systems, which provides a basis for designing management schemes that take into account all landscape elements (Ellis 2011).

Any form of historical data on landscape patterns can be useful in analyzing the agricultural landscape. Census data, such as that from the US Census of Agriculture, can be particularly important in determining the types of crops that have been grown in a region and where they were grown. These data can be given quantifiable values when combined with aerial photographs, allowing the analyst to determine the number of landscape elements present at different times (e.g., crop fields, pastures, riparian corridors, forest patches). When these data are subjected to GIS analysis, they can become a dynamic way of visualizing the patterns and relationships of landscape structure through time.

For example, the GIS images in Figure 21.4 show changes that have occurred over several decades in an agricultural region of Guangdong Province in China. As this region underwent a shift from a primarily agricultural economy to a more industrialized economy, agricultural land underwent significant change. Through a combination of forest recovery, planted forestry, and the development of orchard crops, woody vegetation recovered, and in many formerly agricultural lands, built structures increased. As the images

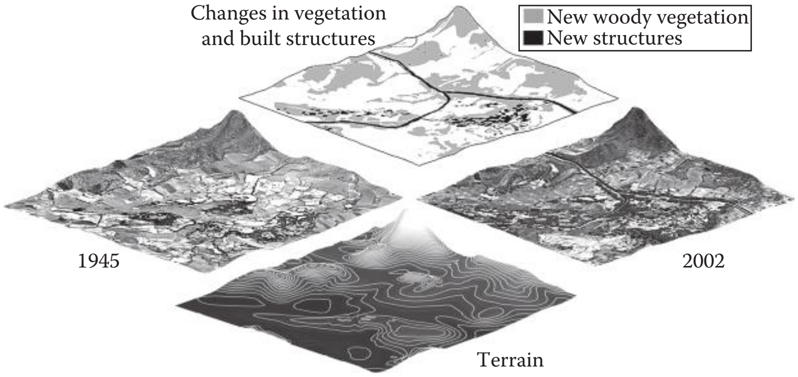


FIGURE 21.4 GIS analysis of a 1 km2 area in western Guangdong Province, China (Dianbai County) showing changes in the agricultural landscape over time. In the transition from a traditional to a more industrialized economy, built structures increased, much agricultural land was abandoned, and woody vegetation—previously been burned and harvested for fuel—recovered in formerly agricultural areas and in the hills. (Images and data courtesy of Erle C. Ellis see www.ecotope.org for more information.)

in Figure 21.4 indicate, multiple layers of data that vary in content and time can be integrated to understand the drivers and consequences of changes such as these.

Knowledge of the farming practices that have been used in the past in any particular landscape, combined with knowledge of how different components of the landscape interact, makes it possible to understand how farming practices impact the nonfarm elements of a landscape, and vice versa. Soil erosion rates, fertilizer inputs, pesticide applications, irrigation, crop types and diversity, and other practices and processes can be understood in terms of landscape patterns. Based on this knowledge, recommendations for change in either cropping patterns or farming practices can be made, and decisions on agroecosystem design can move beyond the farm and into the larger landscape context.

MANAGEMENT AT THE LEVEL OF THE LANDSCAPE

When agroecosystem management is carried out at the level of the larger agricultural landscape, the antagonism that so often exists between the interests of natural ecosystems and those of managed production systems can be replaced by a relationship of mutual benefit. Natural and seminatural ecosystem patches included in the landscape can become a resource for agroecosystems, and agroecosystems can begin to assume a positive rather than negative role in preserving the integrity of natural ecosystems.

The concept of landscape-level management does not necessarily mean coordinated management among the many different stakeholders in an agricultural area (different farmers, governmental agencies, conservation interests, etc.). Its essence is the inclusion of natural ecosystems and local biodiversity in management decisions and land-use planning. Thus, landscape-level management can be implemented by an individual farmer who has direct control over only a small part of the agricultural landscape of a region.

The implementation of landscape-level management has two guiding principles:

1. Diversify the agricultural landscape by increasing the density, size, abundance, and variety of noncrop habitat patches, and by creating more connections between them. These patches can vary in their level of disturbance and “naturalness”; what they share in common is the ability to be sites where natural ecological processes can occur and where native or beneficial plant and animal species can find suitable habitat.
2. Manage cropping areas to reduce their negative impacts on the natural environment and maximize their value as habitat for native species. This means eliminating or reducing the use of pesticides, inorganic fertilizer, and irrigation, and finding alternatives to farming practices that interfere with ecosystem processes, such as frequent tilling, leaving fields without soil cover for long periods, planting large-scale monocultures, and mowing or spraying roadsides and ditches.

The latter principle goes hand in hand with everything discussed in this text up to this point. Reducing nonfarm inputs, relying on biological controls, diversifying cropping systems, and allowing successional processes to proceed further all these practices contribute to creating more environmentally friendly agroecosystems. Assuming this agroecologically based management, we will focus first on the first principle—diversifying the agricultural landscape—and then later in the section explore the ways that the alternative management described in the second principle can enhance the ability of the landscape to provide environmental services.

The noncrop habitat patches in a diverse agricultural landscape can interact with areas of agricultural production in a variety of ways. An area of noncrop habitat adjacent to a crop field, for example, can harbor populations of a native parasitic wasp species that can move into the field and parasitize a pest; it can also serve as a source of soil microorganisms for recolonization of agricultural lands after practices antagonistic to their presence are halted. A riparian corridor vegetated by native plant species provides an example of a more complex relationship: the corridor can filter out dissolved fertilizer nutrients leaching from crop fields, promote the presence of beneficial species, and allow the movement of native animal species into and through the agricultural components of the landscape.

As can be seen in these examples, landscape-level diversification offers benefits to both native species and agroecosystems. When diversification is carefully planned and managed, these benefits can be maximized, and the possible negative effects minimized. Effective landscape-level management is thus an important part of achieving sustainability.

ON-FARM DIVERSIFICATION

The farmer can actively encourage and maintain the presence of native species on the intensively managed areas of the farm by establishing and protecting appropriate habitats (Jackson and Jackson 2002; Pisani Gareau et al. 2013). These habitats can be within the farm fields, between fields, along roadways, in ditches, along property lines, or at the boundary separating farm fields from housing areas. The habitats can be permanent strips or blocks planted to diverse noncrop perennials, or temporary patches within the farm fields. Methods of creating such habitats include the following:

- Plant a covercrop that grows during the winter months. The crop may provide critical food or cover for a range of animal species, especially ground-nesting birds.
- Leave strips of unharvested crops such as corn or wheat; these can provide resources for native animal species.

CASE STUDY: LANDSCAPE DIVERSITY IN TLAXCALA, MEXICO

In Tlaxcala, Mexico, rain comes in periodic heavy bursts capable of causing severe erosion. In addition, many local farmers must grow their food on steep, erosion-prone slopes. To deal with this situation, they cultivate hillside terrace systems that not only prevent soil erosion, but also effectively conserve rainfall–runoff and provide the basis for exceptional landscape diversity. These systems, which make use of water- and sediment-trapping catchment basins called *cajetes*, have enabled traditional farmers in this region to maintain the integrity and fertility of the soil for centuries without relying on imported, commercially produced inputs such as fertilizers (Mountjoy and Gliessman 1988).

The high degree of landscape diversity in the Tlaxcala terrace systems comes from having a large amount of permanent border space between cultivated terraces covered in natural vegetation. The border areas occupy the edges of the terraces, above and below the *cajetes*. They are vegetated with a highly diverse mixture of perennials, trees, and weeds, achieved by allowing natural succession to occur. The plants in the borders help cycle nutrients, prevent erosion, and provide habitat for beneficial organisms. Wild relatives of the crop plants often flourish in the border areas also, providing a potential source of gene flow that may help the crops maintain their hardiness and resistance.

Because the terraces are long and narrow, no crop plant is ever more than 6.5 m from a field border. Approximately 30% of the farming landscape is made up of border vegetation, while at any one time about 60% or less of the land is being farmed and 10% or more left fallow. By all measures, these hillside systems are very diverse, and designed to take full advantage of all that landscape-level diversity has to offer (Figure 21.5).

FIGURE 21.5 Borders of native perennials and trees alongside cultivated terraces in, Tlaxcala, Mexico. Strips of mostly natural vegetation are prominent and ecologically important components of the agricultural landscape in this hilly farming region. Note the animals grazing the border edge and cornstalks stacked for future use as feed.

- Where erosion control is necessary on a farm, plant grassed waterways to enhance diversity and achieve important environmental protection goals.
- On terraced hillsides, plant perennial grasses or shrubs on the walls separating the terraces.
- Plant perennials on land that is marginal or susceptible to erosion, or restore this land to a more natural state by allowing natural succession of native species.
- Restore poorly drained or semipermanent wetland sites on the farm to natural wetlands.
- Retain or plant native trees in and around fields as nesting, perch, and hunting sites for native birds.
- Provide artificial perches for native raptors, and bird boxes for other potentially beneficial bird species.

In a highly modified agricultural landscape where very little if any of the natural habitat is left, all of these kinds of measures can be important for restoring the landscape's biodiversity and its ability to provide ecosystem services.

FARM BORDERS AND EDGES

Where relatively extensive nonfarmed natural ecosystems exist around and within the agricultural landscape, the shared boundary, or interface, between these areas and those managed for agricultural production takes on important ecological significance. This is especially true in regions where considerable topographic, geologic, and microclimatic variability existed before agricultural conversion. Depending on management history, these borders and edges can be abrupt and sharply defined or broad and ill defined. When there is a gradual transition between a crop area and natural vegetation (as occurs, e.g., between a shade-tree-covered cacao plantation and the surrounding natural forest), an **ecotone** is created. Such transitional zones are often recognized as distinct habitats of their own, able to support unique mixtures of species. In many situations they are made up of successional species from both the natural ecosystem and the manipulated agroecosystem.

Creating Benefits for the Agroecosystem

Edges that are ecotonal in nature, even if they are relatively narrow, can play important roles in an agricultural landscape. Since the environmental conditions existing within the edge are transitional between the farm habitat and the natural habitat, species from both can occur there together, along with other species that actually prefer the intermediate conditions. Very often the variety and density of life is greatest in the habitat of the edge or ecotone, a phenomenon that has been called the **edge effect**. Edge effect is influenced by the amount of edge available, with length, width, and degree of contrast between adjoining habitats all being determining factors.

Benefits of the edge habitat for cropping systems are becoming more well known. In a thorough review of the topic of the influence of adjacent habitats on insect populations in crop fields, Altieri and Nicholls (2004b) suggest that edges are important habitats for the propagation and protection of a wide range of natural biological control agents of agricultural pest organisms. Some beneficial organisms are not attracted to or able to survive long in the disturbed environment of the crop field, especially those where pesticides are applied; they choose instead to move back and forth from the edge to the farm fields, using the fields mainly for feeding or egg laying. Other beneficials depend on alternate hosts in the edge system to survive times when the agricultural fields do not have populations of their primary host, such as during a dry season or when the crop is not present. The habitat value of edges extends belowground into the soil environment; because the soil of the edge area is less disturbed, it may serve as a refuge for valuable soil biota. As we learn more about the conditions needed in edge areas to ensure diverse and effective populations of beneficial organisms, actual management of these transitional areas can become part of the landscape management process (Figure 21.6).

The management of edges will depend in part on determining their appropriate spatial relationship with farmed areas. What is the ideal proportion of edge habitat area to crop area? How close to the edge habitat does a crop plant need to be for it to benefit from edge-dependent beneficials? Can intermediate habitats such as flowering plant corridors effectively extend edges into a crop area? Such issues will need to be addressed to optimize benefits for the agroecosystem and to enhance regional biodiversity.

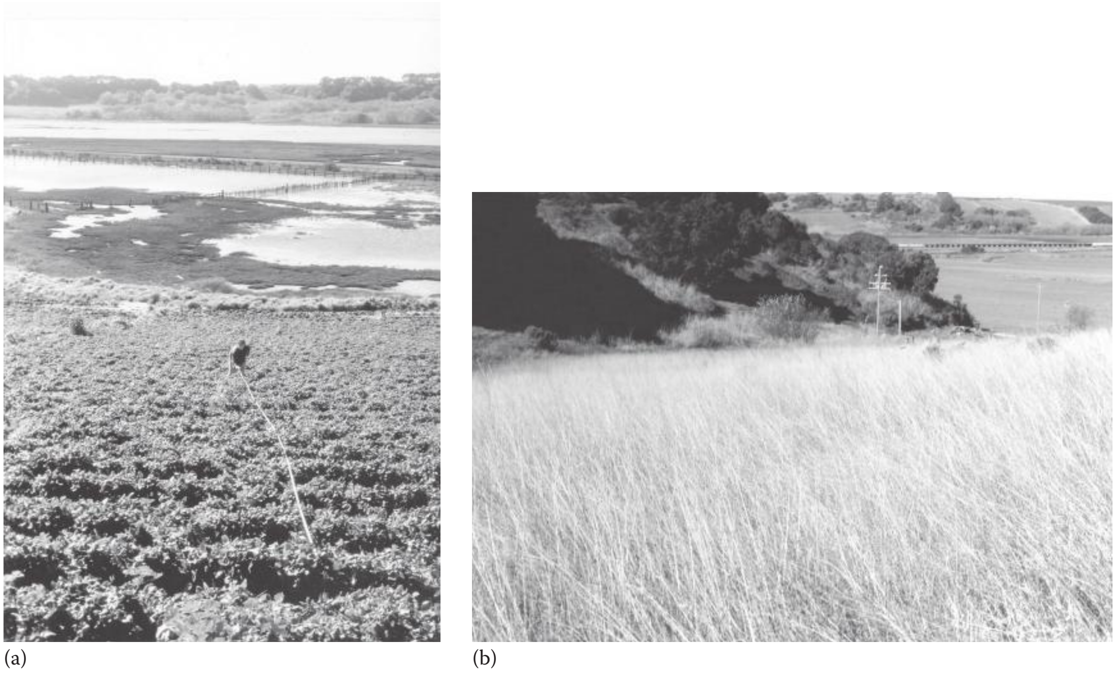
FIGURE 21.6 A second-growth edge habitat at Finca Loma Linda, Coto Brus, Costa Rica. Low, diverse vegetation at the forest edge can serve as habitat for beneficial organisms who, once established there, can move out into the crops.

Protecting Adjacent Natural Ecosystems

If we shift our perspective to the health of the natural ecosystems on the other side of the edge from the farm fields, the edge can be seen to function as a **buffer zone** that protects the natural system from the potential negative impacts of farming, forestry, or grazing. As a buffer, the edge modifies the wind flow, moisture levels, temperature, and solar radiation characteristic of the farm field so that these environmental conditions do not have as great an impact on the adjacent natural ecosystem (Laurance et al. 2002). This modification is especially important for species that live in the understory of forest vegetation; an abrupt edge might allow wind, heat, and stronger light to penetrate into the forest and disrupt species composition.

Buffer zones can serve other important roles as well. For example, they can prevent fire from moving from the open habitat of the cropping system into the natural ecosystem. Such protection is especially important in areas where fire is used to burn slash left from shifting cultivation practices.

Studies on the central coast of California have demonstrated how buffer zones can effectively mitigate the impacts of agriculture on the adjacent natural environment (Los Huertos 1999; Rein et al. 2007). At and around the study site, hills with highly erosion- and leaching-prone soils slope down to fingers of a wetland estuary. Strawberries are typically planted right down to the edge of the wetland. Erosion rates in excess of 150 tons/ha of soil occur in wet years. In addition, nitrates are leached into the estuary by rainfall and irrigation water, and phosphates and pesticide residues



(a) (b)

FIGURE 21.7 A native perennial grass buffer strip between strawberry fields and a wetland estuary, Elkhorn Slough, CA. When strawberries are planted to the edge of the estuary (a), the estuary is impacted by erosion and leaching. The perennial grass buffer (b) mitigates these impacts while restoring native species diversity to the region.

that are adhered to eroded soil particles move into the estuary as well, contributing to the degradation of the wetland ecosystem (Soil Conservation Service 1984). In an attempt to prevent these negative impacts, a buffer zone was planted between the intensively farmed strawberry fields and the estuary. Because coastal grass and scrubland occupied the farmed sites originally, native perennial grasses were planted in dense strips varying from 20 to 50 m wide. Once established, the grass cover effectively trapped sediments and took up soluble nutrients, limiting both erosion and the flow of nitrates, phosphates, and pesticides into the estuary. The buffer zone also served as a potential reservoir of beneficial insects for the farm fields (Figure 21.7).

Buffer zones have become very important parts of ecologically based development (ecodevelopment) projects in many parts of the rural world (Bennett and Mulongoy 2006). In regions where forests are being encroached upon by farming and grazing systems that replace the natural ecosystems with agricultural activities, buffer zones can protect the forest from further incursions yet provide an area where human activities can occur. Traditional land-use activities, including nonextractive forestry, understory cropping, agroforestry, and collection of native plant or animal material, are permitted in the buffer zone as long as the structure of the forest in the buffer is retained and the adjacent forest is protected. In an ideal situation, the forest ecosystem is preserved, limited economic activity goes on in the buffer, and intensive agricultural activities take place in adjacent cleared areas. The success of such programs has been limited due to a range of social, economic, and political reasons (Naughton-Treves and Salafsky 2004; Mehring and Stoll-Kleemann 2011), but the concept holds promise as an important way of integrating the goals of sustainable agriculture and biodiversity conservation.

The Ecology of Patchiness

The patchiness of the agricultural landscape has a profound influence on the ecological processes occurring throughout the landscape. Similar habitat patches are isolated from each other, yet gamma diversity is potentially high. In such a context, the size and shape of patches, and the distance between them, are important factors determining biodiversity at the landscape level.

When highly modified agricultural lands separate natural ecosystem patches, the patches are ecologically analogous to islands. Following the theory of island biogeography presented in Chapter 17, agricultural "oceans" can block or selectively block—that is, *filter*—the movement of different plant and animal species between the natural islands. Thus, a population of a particular species existing in one patch may be isolated from other populations; unless frequent interchange of individuals can occur between patches, each subpopulation can become subject to either genetic isolation or extirpation.

Because natural ecosystem patches provide refugia for agriculturally beneficial organisms and can provide various other environmental services, there is considerable advantage in determining the optimum density, abundance, and configuration of natural ecosystem patches in relation to areas of agricultural production. Corridors linking habitat patches may be necessary for facilitating movement of beneficial organisms across the landscape. A certain width of edge may provide the optimal edge effect without creating pest problems for both natural and agricultural systems. Promoters of integrated pest management often claim that successful pest management without the use of pesticides will require regional- or landscape-level management programs that strive to take advantage of both the isolating mechanisms and facilitating mechanisms of a patchy environment (Collinge 2009). Ecologists are being called upon to apply their knowledge of ecological processes in natural ecosystems to solving such problems (Kareiva and Marvier 2011).

AGRICULTURAL LANDSCAPE AS A PROVIDER OF ECOSYSTEM SERVICES

When the agricultural landscape is viewed as an integrated whole, combining all of the nonfarmed and farmed areas in a region, it can be managed so that it functions as an integrated ecosystem and provides environmental services in much the same way that natural ecosystems would provide alone. The agroecological knowledge and practices described in Sections III and IV of this book provide much of the theoretical and practical basis of this management.

Environmental services are the many "goods" and services provided by natural ecosystems that are essential for human survival and welfare and the global biosphere (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment 2003; Wratten et al. 2013). Until recently, we have tended to take them for granted because they are perceived as free and abundant. Ecosystem services that are particularly important for sustainable agroecosystem function include nutrient cycling, biological control of pests and diseases, erosion control and sediment retention, water regulation, and maintenance of the genetic diversity essential for successful crop and animal breeding. Outside of the direct agroecosystem context, ecosystem services are important at a global scale. They regulate the gaseous composition of the atmosphere (especially through sequestration of CO_2), create and maintain biodiversity, affect climate and weather, and maintain watershed function. Table 21.1 provides a list of ecosystem services important in an agroecosystem context, each paired with the ecological processes responsible for it.

A natural ecosystem provides ecosystem services when its biochemical, biophysical, and biological processes are functioning in a healthy manner, allowing it to be biologically productive (Swift et al. 2004). The same principle holds for agroecosystems. If an agroecosystem is to be a provider of ecosystem services it must be designed and managed so that its diversity, stability, and complexity approach that of a natural ecosystem. In other words, increasing agroecosystem diversity (Chapter 17) and allowing greater successional development (Chapter 18) are the bases for creating an agricultural landscape that can attain its potential for full ecosystem function.

Diversification of agroecosystems, as we know, comes about through multiple cropping, rotations, fallows, mulching, minimum tillage, and livestock integration, and successional development can be achieved through agroforestry, more extensive use of perennials, and the creation of successional mosaics. And when diverse, successionally developed agroecosystems are managed in concert with the noncrop components of the landscape through the practices discussed earlier in this chapter, the ecological processes of nutrient cycling, population regulation, and energy exchange are integrated across the whole landscape, ensuring the robust functioning from which ecosystem services arise.

When we use ecologically based management practices to enhance the ability of agroecosystems to provide ecosystem services, we are clearly working toward the goal of agricultural sustainability at the same time. But it is only when we expand our thinking to the landscape level that sustainability and ecosystem services converge with the conservation of biodiversity (Swift et al. 2004; Scherr 2007; Perfecto et al. 2009; Wratten et al. 2013).

TABLE 21.1
Ecosystem Services and the Ecosystem Processes That Provide Them, in an Agroecosystem Setting

Ecosystem Services	Responsible Ecosystem Processes
Production of food	Primary production, herbivore consumption, pollination
Production of fiber and latex	Primary production, secondary metabolism
Production of pharmaceuticals	Secondary metabolism
Production of agrochemicals	Secondary metabolism
Nutrient cycling	Herbivore consumption, predation, decomposition, mineralization, other elemental transformations
Regulation of water flow and storage, flood control	Soil organic matter synthesis, physical and biological soil processes, plant growth above- and belowground
Regulation of soil and sediment movement, erosion control	Soil organic matter synthesis, physical and biological soil processes, plant growth above- and belowground
Regulation of biological populations	Plant secondary metabolism, pollination, herbivory, parasitism, microsymbiosis, predation
Water and soil purification	Metabolism, decomposition, elemental transformations
Regulation of atmospheric composition and climate	Photosynthesis, metabolism, and primary production

Sources: Modified from Swift, M.J. et al., *Agric. Ecosyst. Environ.*, 104, 113, 2004; Wratten, S. et al., *Ecosystem Services in Agricultural and Urban Landscapes*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 2013.

LANDSCAPE MULTIFUNCTIONALITY

When a landscape is made up of patches of relatively natural systems and agroecosystems that are managed both to produce food and to enhance and protect biodiversity, it can be considered a **multifunctional landscape**. This integrative concept—the logical result of extending the agroecological principle of diversity to the landscape level—recognizes the critical value of biodiversity and ecosystem services and acknowledges that humans have already permanently altered much of the face of the earth.

From the standpoint of sustainability, landscape multifunctionality cannot be limited to rural and agricultural landscapes. The basic principle of integrating human uses of land with the needs of natural systems and nonhuman organisms so that mutual benefit is maximized must be extended to all anthropogenic landscapes, including urbanized areas. It is not enough to focus on the sustainability of agricultural production in its relationship to natural systems; we must also include the land dedicated to the most intensive human uses—habitation, transportation, energy production, and manufacturing—and be concerned about its interface and connections with the agricultural landscape. If a major reason for the lack of sustainability in our current food system is the extreme spatial separation of the consumers of food and the land on which their food is produced, then a more sustainable system needs to focus on the spatial layout of the human presence on the earth and its relationship to food production. The implications of this broader consideration of landscape multifunctionality will be discussed in the final chapter.

AGRICULTURE, LAND USE, AND SUSTAINABILITY

As mentioned at the beginning of this chapter, agricultural development has fundamentally changed the relationship between human culture and the natural environment. More than 50% of the earth's terrestrial surface is now devoted to agriculture (cropland and pasture), making agriculture the primary agent of anthropogenic change and biodiversity loss on the planet. But while agriculture bears much of the responsibility for endangering the integrity of the planet's life-support systems, it is also positioned to be the focal point for efforts to protect those very systems and to mitigate the effects of other human activities (such as fossil-fuel use) on biosphere-level processes. The central role of agriculture in shaping humankind's impact on the biosphere is a result of both the large proportion of land under some kind of agricultural management and the fact that agriculturalists are the actors responsible for managing this land (Lovell et al. 2010). On their actions hinge the possibility not only of a sustainable food system, but also of a sustainable human presence on the planet.

On an earth with a cultural landscape, efforts to preserve our remaining biodiversity and the ecosystem services provided by ecological processes can no longer be focused primarily on the small areas of land that are still wild (Perfecto et al. 2009). Managed lands, particularly those that are agricultural, have an enormous untapped potential for supporting a diversity of native species and providing ecosystem services, thus contributing to conservation of global biodiversity and ensuring that nutrient cycling, pollination, water purification, and other essential processes still operate. This chapter has discussed many of the ways in which agricultural landscapes can be managed so as to further these goals. It has not delved into two closely related, broader topics that figure critically in sustainability: (1) the role that agriculture can play in mitigating climate change through carbon sequestration and (2) the geographic and land-use facets of building a food system that is far more sustainable and ecosystem friendly than what exists today, which we mentioned earlier in the context of landscape multifunctionality. These topics will be touched on briefly in Chapter 26.

Ultimately, the solutions to even these broader issues rest on the foundation provided by the core agroecological principle of working in concert with, rather than in opposition to, the ecological processes in nature. By managing anthropogenic landscapes from the point of view of biodiversity conservation as well as food production, all organisms can benefit in the long term, including humans. Learning how to manage in this way will require wise application of agroecological principles, as well as collaboration between conservation biologists, agricultural researchers, farmers, rural sociologists, land-use planners, urban planners, and others, and new directions in research.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What are some of the possible ways that organisms typical of natural ecosystems can contribute to the sustainability of agroecosystems?
2. What principal changes must occur in the way present-day conventional agroecosystems are managed in order for them to contribute to the conservation of biodiversity as well as to satisfy human needs for food production?
3. Why is the biodiversity of smaller, less obvious organisms in ecosystems, such as fungi and insects, of potentially greater importance to sustainability than that of the larger, more obvious mammals and birds?
4. Why are the small-scale, integrated farming systems of traditional farmers in a better position to provide important ecosystem services than large-scale conventional systems?
5. What kind of criteria should be used to determine which species in the agricultural landscape are the most important to preserve and enhance?
6. How is the landscape perspective important in sustainable agriculture management?

INTERNET RESOURCES

The Ecotope Mapping Working Group
www.ecotope.org
The site of the landscape agroecologist Erle Ellis, demonstrating the exciting integration of landscape ecology, biogeochemistry, global change, and sustainable ecosystem management.

Communicating Ecosystem Services
www.esa.org/ecoservices/
A joint project of the Ecological Society of America and the Union of Concerned Scientists. Provides scientists with tools for more effectively communicating the concept of ecosystem services.

International Association of Landscape Ecology
www.landscape-ecology.org
Valuable information on research, conferences, publications, and links related to landscape ecology.

The Sustainable Sites Initiative
www.sustainablesites.org
An interdisciplinary program to create voluntary national guidelines and performance benchmarks for sustainable land design, construction, and maintenance practices.

RECOMMENDED READING

Bernhardsen, T. 2007. *Geographic Information Systems: An Introduction.* 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
A comprehensive overview of GISs, covering theory, applications, and basic techniques.

Büchs, W. (ed.) 2003. *Biotic Indicators for Biodiversity and Sustainable Agriculture.* Elsevier: Amsterdam, the Netherlands.
A comprehensive compilation of research papers from different regions of the world focusing on the interactions between agriculture and biodiversity.

Buck, L. E., J. P. Lassoie, and E. C. M. Fernandes. 1999. *Agroforestry in Sustainable Agricultural Systems*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC/Lewis Publishers: Boca Raton, FL.
A broad introduction to the environmental and social conditions that affect the roles and performance of trees in field- and forest-based agricultural production systems.

Coulson, R. N. and M. D. Tchakerian. 2010. *Basic Landscape Ecology*. KEL Partners: College Station, TX.
An introductory textbook in the field of landscape ecology, with a review of its ecological foundations and practical applications.

Gaston, K. J. and J. I. Spicer. 2004. *Biodiversity: An Introduction.* 2nd edn. Blackwell Science: Malden, MA.
An overview of what biodiversity is, its relevance to humanity, and issues related to its conservation.

Hilty, J. A., W. Z. Lidicker, Jr., and A. M. Merenlender. 2006. *Corridor Ecology: The Science and Practice of Linking Landscapes for Biodiversity Conservation*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
Draws on conservation science and practical experience to develop, maintain, and improve the connectivity of high biodiversity areas in landscapes.

Hunter, M. L. and J. P. Gibbs. 2009. *Fundamentals of Conservation Biology*. 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
A comprehensive text of conservation biology, focusing on what can be done to maintain biodiversity through management of ecosystems and populations.

Kareiva, P. and M. Marvier. 2011. *Conservation Science: Balancing the Needs of People and Nature*. Roberts and Company Publishers: Greenwood Village, CO.
An introduction to the scientific foundations of conservation that also highlights strategies to better connect its practice with the needs and priorities of a growing human population. Ideal for students interested in developing a background for work with public or private conservation organizations.

Leopold, A. 1933. *Game Management*. Scribner: New York.
A classic text on the important role of edge effects in maintaining the abundance of certain species of wildlife in a heterogeneous landscape.

Loreau, M., S. Naeem, and P. Inchausti. 2002. *Biodiversity and Ecosystem Functioning: Synthesis and Perspectives.* Oxford University Press: New York.
A comprehensive and critical overview of recent empirical and theoretical research on the relationship between biodiversity and ecosystem function.

Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. 2003. *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: A Framework for Assessment*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
A comprehensive and interdisciplinary analysis of the function, value, and importance of global ecosystem services, by a distinguished panel of international researchers.

Perfecto, I., J. Vandermeer, and A. Wright. 2009. *Nature's Matrix: Linking Agriculture, Conservation, and Food Sovereignty*. Earthscan: London, U.K.
A call to link nature and agriculture into a matrix of interacting systems and to include the social movements of rural people who live in and manage these areas for their own food needs.

Scherr, S. J. 2007. *Farming with Nature: The Science and Practice of Ecoagriculture*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
A presentation of "ecoagriculture" as the design and management of agricultural landscapes for not only producing crops but also supporting biodiversity and promoting ecosystem health.

Schroth, G., G. A. B. da Fonseca, C. A. Harvey, C. Gascon, J. L. Vasconcelos, and A.-M. N. Izac. 2004. *Agroforestry and Biodiversity Conservation in Tropical Landscapes*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
A very thorough review of the role of agroforestry practices in helping promote biodiversity conservation in human-dominated landscapes of the tropical world.

Thrupp, L. A. 1997. *Linking Biodiversity and Agriculture: Challenges and Opportunities for Sustainable Food Security.* World Resources Institute: Washington, DC.
A critical analysis of how to integrate biodiversity conservation and agricultural production, taking into account social, economic, and ecological parameters.

Wratten, S., H. Sandhu, R. Cullen, and R. Costanza. 2013. *Ecosystem Services in Agricultural and Urban Landscapes*. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
This book explores the value and role that ecosystem services play in managed environments.

Section V

The Transition to Sustainability

The appearance of the so-called Brundtland Report (WCED 1987) in the late 1980s marked the emergence of sustainability as an issue of central concern in agriculture, rural development, natural resource use, and indeed every human endeavor. Since that time, a growing community of researchers and practitioners has made significant progress in developing useful systems for implementing and measuring sustainability, particularly in agriculture.

Although it has effectively lead the effort, the scientific community must still develop a much better understanding of what sustainability actually entails, so that the agenda for change is clear and actionable. A new field known as *sustainability science* has emerged that may help us meet this challenge (Komiyama and Takeuchi 2006; Kates 2011).

From the perspective of sustainability science, food systems are so complex that many fields of inquiry must come together in understanding how to push their interdependent components toward more sustainable results. Understanding this complexity—and using it as the basis for change—is the goal of the remaining chapters of this text.

In this section, we begin the exploration of the sustainability challenge at a practical, farm-level scale. In Chapter 22, Converting to Ecologically Based Management, we examine the issues surrounding farmers' efforts to convert to more sustainable practices. This down-to-earth process is one of the necessary foundations for the broader and deeper *conversion* of the entire food system that is the focus on Section VI. Then, in Chapter 23, Indicators of Sustainability, we explore what it means to actually measure progress towards sustainable function, with the focus again at the practical level of the individual farm.

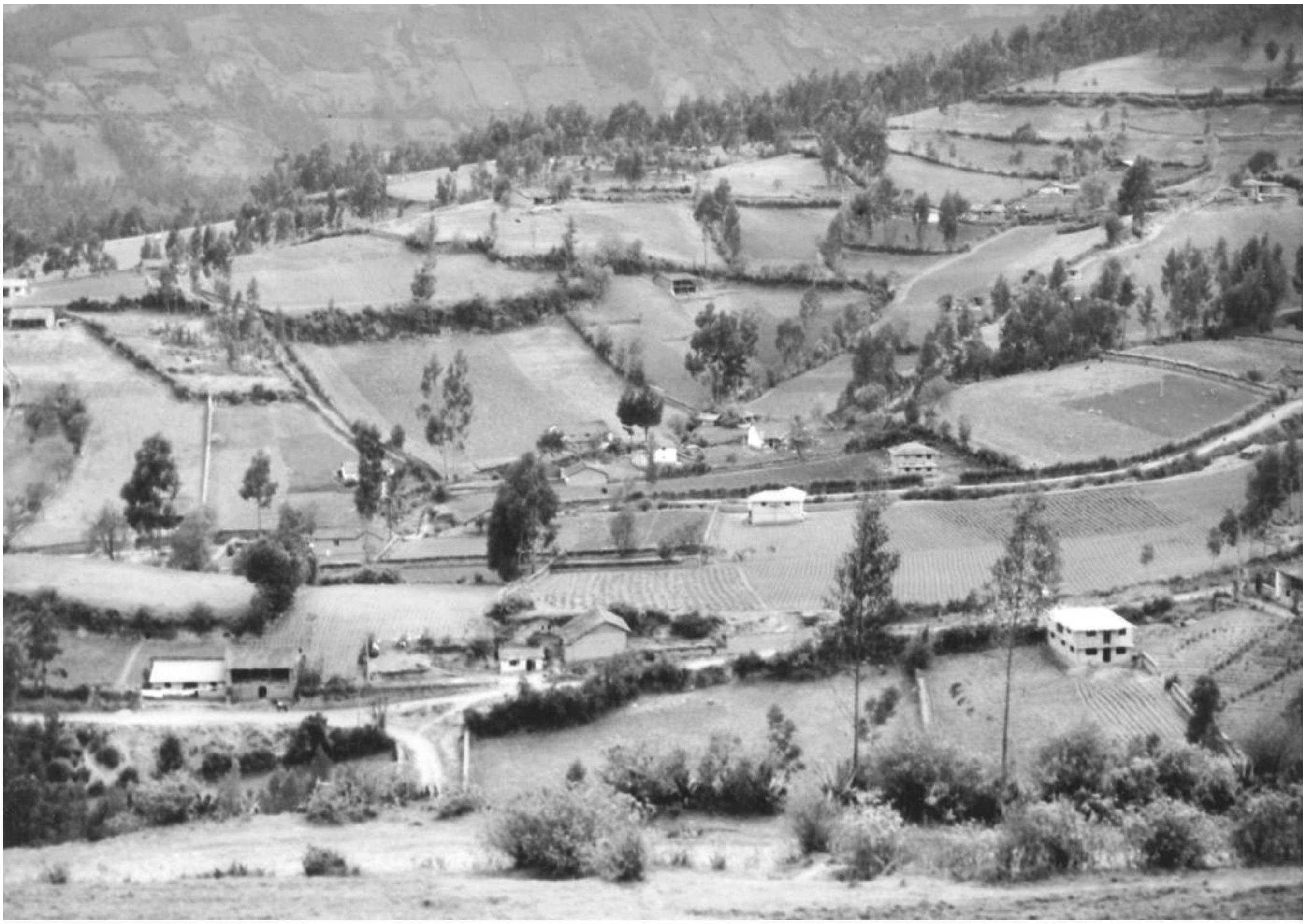


FIGURE S.5 An agricultural landscape in the mountains north of Quito, Ecuador. This landscape shows many of the components of sustainability, including crop rotations, soil management techniques, diversity in and around fields, and equitable distribution of land, water, and local resources.

22 Converting to Ecologically Based Management

Farmers have a reputation for being innovators and experimenters, willingly adopting new practices when they perceive that some benefit will be gained. Over the past 50–60 years, innovation in agriculture has been driven mainly by an emphasis on high yields and farm profit, resulting in not only remarkable returns but also an array of negative environmental and social side effects. Despite the continuation of strong pressure to focus on the bottom line, however, many farmers are choosing to make the transition to practices that are more environmentally sound and have the potential for contributing to long-term sustainability for agriculture. Others are starting agricultural enterprises from scratch that incorporate a variety of ecologically informed approaches. Both types of efforts represent "conversion" in the broad sense.

The remarkable growth of organic, alternative, and ecological agriculture in developed countries during the past several decades indicates that a transformation in the way we grow food is already underway. Between 1997 and 2013, the number of acres of organic cropland in the United States more than quadrupled, reaching 2.3 million. During this time, consumer demand for organic products has risen between 10% and 20% annually (USDA 2013). The total value of production from certified cropland is estimated at more than $32 million for 2013, with the value of production from certified organic pasture and rangeland having reached about $24 million per year. Clearly, a more sustainable approach to growing food, one that challenges conventional agricultural wisdom, is gaining ground both culturally and economically.

The conversion to ecologically based management is grounded in the principles discussed in the preceding chapters. In this chapter, we discuss how those principles can come into play in the actual process of changing the way food is grown. Farmers engaged in the conversion process know, through intuition, experience, and knowledge, what is *un*sustainable and what is, at the very least, *more* sustainable. Nevertheless, there is a clear need to study the process in more detail. This chapter makes a contribution toward that goal by proposing a protocol for converting industrial/conventional systems into more sustainable systems. Determining what constitutes sustainability itself is the topic of Chapter 23.

FACTORS PROMOTING CONVERSION

Agriculture is always evolving and adopting new practices. In the twentieth century, agriculture responded to a complex of economic and technological pressures that led to the development of the highly specialized and purchased-input-dependent systems that dominate agriculture today. Yield-increasing technologies, farm support programs, and research developments helped push agriculture toward fewer larger farms. But some years ago, many farmers began to transition into what today we call "alternative agriculture" (National Research Council 1989; Gliessman and Rosemeyer 2010). The adoption of alternative practices has since accelerated, with several factors encouraging farmers to question industrial and conventional practices and manage agroecosystems in more sustainable ways:

- The cost of energy has risen dramatically and continues to rise.
- Crops produced with industrial or conventional practices have low profit margins.
- New ecological practices with demonstrated potential for success have been and are being developed.
- Environmental awareness and food quality consciousness among consumers, producers, and regulators are increasing.
- There are new and stronger markets for alternatively grown and processed farm products.
- Farmers sense increasing cultural support for the adoption of ecological-based methods and recognize that consumers and community members across the political spectrum can support the values of conservation, self-sufficiency, autonomy, and responsibility that underlie alternative agriculture.
- There are increasing numbers of "role models"—farmers who have successfully converted to sustainable/ecological methods.

Despite the fact that farmers often suffer a reduction in both yield and profit in the first or second year of the transition period, most of those who persist eventually realize both economic and ecological benefits from having made the conversion. Much of the success of the transition depends on a farmer's ability to adjust the economics of the farm operation to a new set of input and management costs and different market systems and prices.

GUIDING PRINCIPLES FOR CONVERSION

The conversion process can be complex, requiring changes in field practices, day-to-day management of the farming operation, planning, marketing, and philosophy. The following

FIGURE 22.1 The experimental farm at the CASFS, UC Santa Cruz, CA. Innovative research on the design and management of sustainable agroecosystems is carried out at this unique facility.

principles can serve as general guidelines for navigating the overall transformation:

- Shift from through-flow nutrient management to a nutrient recycling model, with increased dependence on natural processes such as biological nitrogen fixation and mycorrhizal relationships.
- Use renewable sources of energy instead of nonrenewable sources.
- Eliminate the use of nonrenewable off-farm human inputs that have the potential to harm the environment or the health of farmers, farmworkers, or consumers.
- When materials must be added to the system, use naturally occurring materials instead of synthetic, manufactured inputs.
- Manage pests, diseases, and weeds instead of "controlling" them.
- Reestablish the biological relationships that can occur naturally on the farm instead of reducing and simplifying them.
- Make more appropriate matches between cropping patterns and the productive potential and physical limitations of the farm landscape.
- Use a strategy of adapting the biological and genetic potential of agricultural plant and animal species to the ecological conditions of the farm rather than modifying the farm to meet the needs of the crops and animals.
- Value most highly the overall health of the agroecosystem rather than the outcome of a particular crop system or season.
- Emphasize conservation of soil, water, energy, and biological resources.
- Incorporate the idea of long-term sustainability into overall agroecosystem design and management.

The integration of these principles creates a synergism of interactions and relationships on the farm that eventually leads to the development of the properties of sustainable agroecosystems that will be discussed in more detail in the next chapter. Emphasis on particular principles will vary, but all of them can contribute greatly to the conversion process. We should not be satisfied with an approach to conversion that only replaces industrial/conventional inputs and practices with environmentally benign alternatives; nor should we be satisfied with an approach dictated solely by market demands, or one that doesn't take into account the economic and social health of agricultural communities. Conversion must be part of ensuring long-term food security for everyone in all parts of the world.

LEVELS OF CONVERSION

For many farmers, rapid conversion to sustainable agroecosystem design and practice is neither possible nor practical. As a result, many conversion efforts proceed in slower steps toward the ultimate goal of sustainability, or are simply focused on developing food production systems that are somewhat more environmentally sound. From the observed range of conversion efforts, three distinct levels of conversion at the farm scale have been discerned (MacRae et al. 1990; Gliessman 2004). Two additional levels that go beyond the farm scale are proposed here. The first three levels help us describe the steps that farmers actually take in converting from industrial or conventional agroecosystems, and all five levels taken together can serve as a map outlining a stepwise, evolutionary conversion process for the entire global food system

Level 1: Increase the efficiency of industrial/conventional practices in order to reduce the use and consumption of costly, scarce, or environmentally damaging inputs.

The goal of this approach is to use inputs more efficiently so that fewer inputs will be needed and the negative impacts of their use will be reduced as well. This approach has been the primary emphasis of much conventional agricultural research, through which numerous agricultural technologies and practices have been developed. Examples include optimal crop spacing and density, improved machinery, pest monitoring for improved pesticide application, improved timing of operations, and precision farming for optimal fertilizer and water placement. Although these kinds of efforts reduce the negative impacts of conventional agriculture, they do not help break its dependence on external human inputs.

Level 2: Substitute alternative practices for industrial/conventional inputs and practices.

The goal at this level of conversion is to replace resource-intensive and environment-degrading products and practices with those that are more environmentally benign. Organic farming and biological agriculture research have emphasized such an approach (Figure 22.2). Examples of alternative practices include the use of nitrogen-fixing

FIGURE 22.2 An on-farm study of a Level 2 conversion process with strawberries on the central coast of California. Conventional and organic practices are simultaneously compared for at least 3 years.

covercrops and rotations to replace synthetic nitrogen fertilizers, the use of biological control agents rather than pesticides, and the shift to reduced or minimal tillage. At this level, the basic agroecosystem structure is not greatly altered, hence many of the same problems that occur in industrial and conventional systems also occur in those with input substitution.

Level 3: Redesign the agroecosystem so that it functions on the basis of a new set of ecological processes.

At this level, fundamental changes in overall system design eliminate the root causes of many of the problems that still exist at Levels 1 and 2. Thus rather than finding sounder ways of solving problems, the problems are prevented from arising in the first place. Whole-system conversion studies allow for an understanding of yield-limiting factors in the context of agroecosystem structure and function. Problems are recognized, and thereby prevented, by internal site- and time-specific design and management approaches, instead of by the application of external inputs. An example is the diversification of farm structure and management through the use of rotations, multiple cropping, and agroforestry.

Level 4: Reestablish a more direct connection between those who grow the food and those who consume it.

Conversion occurs within a cultural and economic context, and that context must support conversion to more sustainable practices. At a local level, this means consumers value locally grown food and support with their food dollars the farmers who are striving to move through conversion Levels 1–3. This support turns into a kind of "food citizenship" (see Chapter 25) and becomes a force for food-system change. The more this transformation occurs in communities around the world, the closer we move toward building the new culture and economy of sustainability that is the prerequisite for reaching Level 5.

Level 5: On the foundation created by the sustainable farm-scale agroecosystems of Level 3 and the sustainable food relationships of Level 4, build a new global food system, based on equity, participation, and justice, that is not only sustainable but also helps restore and protect earth's life-support systems.

Unlike Levels 1–4, Level 5 entails change that is global in scope and reaches so deeply into the nature of human civilization that it transcends the concept of "conversion." Nevertheless, the path to Level 5 necessarily passes through the farm-scale, down-to-earth conversion process that we are focusing on in this chapter and the next. We will explore what transitioning to Level 5 might involve in the final section of this text.

In terms of research, agronomists and other agricultural researchers have done a good job of working on the transition from Level 1 to Level 2, and research on the transition to Level 3 has been underway for some time. Work on the ethics and economics of food-system sustainability that are involved in Levels 4 and 5, however, has only just begun (Freyfogle 2001; Berry 2009; Jackson 2011). Agroecology provides the basis for the type of research that is needed. And eventually it will help us find answers to larger, more abstract questions, such as what sustainability is and how we will know we have achieved it.

CASE STUDY: CONVERSION OF A STRAWBERRY PRODUCTION SYSTEM

The central coast of California, with its Mediterranean climate, is an important strawberry-growing region. On approximately 15,366 acres, Monterey and Santa Cruz counties together produced more than $976 million worth of strawberries in 2012, about half of the total California crop. Strawberry production here, as in many other locales, is highly dependent on expensive, energy-intensive, and environmentally harmful off-farm inputs.

For almost 30 years, the Agroecology Research Group at the University of California (UC), Santa Cruz, CA has been carrying out a multifaceted research project centered on studying the process of converting these industrial/conventional strawberry production systems into more sustainable agroecosystems. This project provides evidence that even systems strongly invested in industrial/conventional practices can be changed; it also exemplifies the difficulties and barriers inherent in conversion. The year-by-year evolution of the strawberry conversion research project is outlined in Table 22.1.

TABLE 22.1
Chronology of Strawberry Conversion Research Activities[a]

Date	Activity or Milestone	Conversion Level
1986	Contact with first farmer in transition.	Levels 1 and 2
1987–1990	On-farm comparative conversion study.	Level 2
1990	First conversion publication, *California Agriculture* 44: 4–7.	Level 2
1990–1995	Refinement of organic management.	Level 2
1995–1999	Rotations and crop diversification.	Initial Level 3
1996	Second conversion publication, *California Agriculture* 50: 24–31.	Level 2
1997–1999	Alternatives to MeBr research projects.	Level 2
1998	Biological Agriculture Systems in Strawberries (BASIS) work group established.	Levels 2 and 3
1999	Soil health/crop rotation study initiated.	Levels 2 and 3
2000–2006	Strawberry agroecosystem health study.	Levels 2 and 3
2002–2003	Pathogen study, funded by the North American Strawberry Growers Association (NASGA).	Levels 2 and 3
2001–2005	Poster/oral presentations at American Society of Agronomy meetings.	Level 3
2003–2006	Alfalfa trap crop project.	Level 3
2004	Organic strawberry production short course.	Levels 2 and 3
2004–2008	USDA–Organic Research Initiative project: integrated network for organic vegetable and strawberry production.	Levels 2–4
2004	Partner grower establishes an on-farm farm stand selling value-added products such as pies, shortcake, and jams, as a complement to his farmers' market and direct sales.	Level 4
2005–2006	Local organic strawberries in UC Santa Cruz dining halls.	Level 4
2006	California Strawberry Commission and NASGA fund organic rotation system research.	Level 3
2007	Research begins on ASD as an alternative to MeBr fumigation that will allow a shorter rotation period.	Levels 2 and 3
2011	USDA–Organic Research Initiative project: support for expanded ASD research on local farms.	Levels 2 and 3
2014	Crop rotation and biofumigation study published, *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* 38(5): 21 pp. (2014).	Levels 2 and 3
2014	Food Justice Certification awarded to partner grower.	Level 5

[a] Carried out by the Agroecology Research Group at UC Santa Cruz, CA.

The present system of industrial/conventional strawberry production in California can be traced back to the early 1960s, when the soil fumigant methyl bromide (MeBr) was introduced. Until that time, growers treated strawberries as a perennial crop, with each field requiring rotation out of strawberries for several years. Use of methyl bromide allowed growers to manage strawberries as an annual crop, planted year after year on the same piece of land. In the system used since the 1960s, strawberry plants are removed each year following the end of the season in late summer or early fall, and then the soil is cultivated and fumigated before being replanted with new plants for the next season. Intensive systems of drip irrigation, plastic mulch, and soil manipulation are required (Figure 22.3).

Level 1 Conversion

The first efforts related to conversion, carried out before the involvement of the Agroecology Research Group, were focused as much on increasing yields and profitability as on changing the nature of the production system. Extensive research was carried out to discover more effective ways of controlling pests and diseases so that inputs could be reduced and their environmental impacts lessened. For example, different miticides for control of the common pest two-spotted spider mite (*Tetranychus urticae*) were tested with the goal of overcoming the problems of evolving mite resistance to the pesticides, negative impacts on nontarget organisms, pollution of groundwater, persistent residues on harvested berries, and health impacts for farmworkers (Sances 1982).

Level 2 Conversion

In the early 1980s, as interest in organic food became a potential market force in agriculture and issues of pesticide safety and environmental quality came to the fore, farmers began to respond. It was in this environment that researchers at UC Santa Cruz and a local farmer formed a partnership for conversion. In 1987, this partnership became a comparative

FIGURE 22.3 Industrial/conventional strawberry field fumigated with methyl bromide near Watsonville, CA. Vaporized MeBr is held under the plastic for several days. Conversion to organic management involves replacing this very toxic and expensive chemical with a variety of alternative inputs and practices.

strawberry conversion research project. For 3 years, strawberries were grown in plots using conventional inputs and management side by side with strawberries grown under organic management. In the organic plots, each conventional input or practice was substituted with an organic equivalent. For example, rather than control the two-spotted spider mite with a miticide, beneficial predator mites (*Phytoseiulus persimilis*) were released into the organic plots. Over the 3-year conversion period population levels of the two-spotted spider mite were monitored, releases of the predator carried out, and responses quantified. By the end of the third year of the study, ideal rates and release amounts for the predator—now the norm for the industry—had been worked out (Gliessman et al. 1996).

After the 3-year comparison study, researchers continued to observe changes and the farmer continued to make adjustments in his input use and practices. This was especially true in regard to soilborne diseases. After a few years of organic management, diseases such as *Verticillium dahliae*, a source of root rot, began to occur with greater frequency. The response was to intensify research on input substitution. Initial experiments with mustard biofumigation took place, adjustments in organic fertility management occurred, and mycorrhizal soil inoculants were tested. But the agroecosystem was still basically a monoculture of strawberries, and problems with disease increased.

Anaerobic soil disinfestation (ASD) is a way of substituting for MeBr fumigation. With this technique, different sources of organic matter, from broccoli crop residue to mustard seed cake, are incorporated into the soil, which is then flooded with water and covered with an impermeable plastic tarp. The combination of anaerobic conditions and the release of the breakdown products of the organic matter fulfill the same function as MeBr, but the materials are accepted by organic certification standards (Shennan et al. 2010). The big question is if this substitution will continue to allow monoculture organic strawberries to be produced, or if it will be necessary to develop creative ways to combine the practice with diversification at Level 3.

Level 3 Conversion

Based on the concept that ecosystem stability comes about through the dynamic interaction of all the component parts of the system, the researchers and farmer conceived of ways to design resistance to the problems created by the simplified monoculture. The farmer realized he needed to partially return to the traditional practice of crop rotations that had been used before the appearance of MeBr. The researchers used their knowledge of ecological interactions to redesign the strawberry agroecosystem so that diversity and complexity could help make the rotations more effective, and in some cases, shorter. Testing of these ideas is making considerable progress. For example, mustard covercrops were tested for their ability to allelopathically reduce weeds and diseases through the release of toxic natural compounds. Broccoli has been shown to be very important as a rotation crop since it is not a host for the *Verticillium* disease organism, and broccoli

FIGURE 22.4 Alfalfa rows used as a trap crop for pests and refugia for beneficials in a strawberry agroecosystem. Such field-scale diversification is an example of a Level 3 conversion.

residues incorporated into the soil release biofumigants that reduce the presence of disease organisms (Muramoto et al. 2005, 2014). Other crops that are not hosts for the disease, such as spinach, peas, and artichokes, have also been successfully used in rotation with strawberries.

Rather than rely on biopesticides, which still have to be purchased outside the system and released, the researchers and farmer have undertaken redesign approaches intended to incorporate natural control agents into the system, keeping them present and active on a continuous basis. For example, they tested the idea that refugia for the *P. persimilis* predator mite could be provided, either on remnant strawberry plants or trap crop rows around the fields. Perhaps the most novel redesign idea is the introduction of rows of alfalfa into the strawberry fields as trap crops for the western tarnished plant bug (*Lygus hesperus*). The pest can cause serious deformation of the strawberry fruit, and because it is a generalist pest, it is very difficult to control through input substitution. By replacing every 25th row in a strawberry field with a row of alfalfa (approximately 3% of the field), and then concentrating control strategies on that row (vacuuming, biopesticide application), it was possible to reduce *Lygus* damage to acceptable levels (Swezey et al. 2013). The ability of these alfalfa rows to also function as reservoirs of beneficial insects for better natural pest control has been tested as well, with field sampling showing an abundance of natural enemies occurring in the alfalfa strips. A selective endoparasitoid (*Peristenus relictus*) from Spain has been successfully introduced into the strips, where it now breeds and helps in biological control by parasitizing nymphs of the western tarnished plant bug (Sweezy et al. 2014) (Figure 22.4).

Level 4 Conversion

Consumers have become a very important force in the conversion of agroecosystems to more sustainable design and management. The fourth level of conversion made its debut when students at UC Santa Cruz campus convinced the campus dining service managers to begin integrating local, organic, and fair-trade items—including organic strawberries—into the meal service. There are other indicators that a culture of sustainability is beginning to take shape. Consumers are increasing the demand for organic produce, allowing organic farming to become increasingly important. In the two central coast counties, where so many strawberries are grown, there were a total of 35,630 organic-certified acres in 2012, more than 7 times the organic acreage recorded in 1997. The total farm gate revenue from organic farming in these counties was $247.7 million in 2012, representing a dramatic increase of more than 2000% from 1997 (Monterey County Agricultural Commissioner 2013; Santa Cruz County Agricultural Commissioner 2013). A parallel increase in organic strawberry production occurred over this same time period, as can be seen in Table 22.2.

Level 5 Conversion

Despite these positive trends, several sustainability issues are connected with this dramatic growth in strawberry production that can be resolved only at Level 5 of the conversion process. For example, soil erosion and nutrient leaching have

TABLE 22.2
Changes in Organic Strawberry Production in California, 1997–2011[a]

Year	Area in Organic Production (Acres[b])	Gross Declared Value ($ in Millions)	Number of Organic Producers
1997	134	n/a	n/a
1998	244	2.5	82
1999	805	8.7	99
2000	545	9.7	119
2001	756	9.3	113
2002	1278	12.5	105
2003	1290	24.6	99
2004	1382	28.4	n/a
2005–2010	n/a	n/a	n/a
2011	1638	63.5	95

Sources: California Department of Food and Agriculture, California Organic Program (www.cdfa.ca.gov/is/i_%26_c/organic.html); United States Department of Agriculture, Department of Agricultural Statistics.

[a] Data from the California Department of Food and Agriculture (CDFA) available only for 1997–2004; most recent data only available through 2011 from USDA.

[b] Acreage may tend to be an overestimate since it may also include fallow or unplanted land set aside for future plantings.

been observed in organic strawberries planted over a large area. What might be called *"Level 5 thinking"* should include consideration of such issues, as part of a concern for the health of the entire system. More complex social issues are also the focus of some initial efforts to begin the conversion to Level 5. As can be seen in Table 22.2, the number of organic strawberry producers has declined since 2000, even as the acreage planted has increased. In addition, since organic strawberries usually require more labor, issues of worker health, safety, and pay equity must be also considered. The farmer partner with the Agroecology Research Group is one of the only organic strawberry growers who years ago was willing to sign a contract with the United Farm Workers (UFW) union, guaranteeing wage, health, and vacation benefits. His is also one of the first farms to achieve what is called Food Justice Certification (www.agriculturaljusticeproject.org) because of the ways he has integrated social justice into his farming practices and his relationships with his workers. His whole-system approach to farming is an important example of steps that can be taken to make the conversion to Level 5. The next important step needed is for researchers to move beyond Levels 2 and 3 and link their work to the transformative changes needed at Levels 4 and 5.

EVALUATING THE CONVERSION EFFORT

Initially, the conversion to ecologically based agroecosystem management results in an array of ecological changes in the system (Gliessman 2004; Gliessman and Rosemeyer 2010). As the use of synthetic agrochemicals is reduced or eliminated, and nutrients and biomass are recycled within the system, agroecosystem structure and function change as well. A range of processes and relationships are transformed, beginning with aspects of basic soil structure, organic matter content, and diversity and activity of soil biota. Eventually major changes also occur in the activity of and relationships among weed, insect, and disease populations and in the balance between beneficial and pest organisms. Ultimately, nutrient dynamics and cycling, energy use efficiency, and overall system productivity are impacted. Measuring and monitoring these changes during the conversion period help the farmer evaluate the success of the conversion process and respond with adaptive management. This kind of evaluation also provides a framework for determining the requirements for sustainability and helps convince a larger segment of the agricultural community that conversion to more sustainable practices is possible and economically feasible.

For a researcher, the study of the process of conversion begins with identifying a study site. This should be a functioning, on-farm, commercial crop production unit whose owner–operator wishes to convert to a recognized alternative type of management, such as certified organic agriculture, and wants to participate in the design and management of the farm system during the conversion process (Gliessman 2002b, 2004). Such a "farmer-first" approach is

CASE STUDY: CONVERSION TO ORGANIC APPLE PRODUCTION

Although organically managed agroecosystems may not be completely sustainable, they emphasize more sustainable practices than do industrial-style and conventional systems. Farmers considering converting to organic production, however, are concerned with more than just the ecological merits of certified organic agriculture. They want to know about the economic consequences of conversion—if they can support their families on the profits from an organic farming operation.

In recognition of such practical concerns, researchers study the conversion process and compare the economic viability of industrial/conventional and organic management. In one such study, a team of researchers from the Center for Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems (CASFS) at UC Santa Cruz, CA analyzed the transition from Level 1 conventional to Level 2 organic management of Granny Smith apples at a farm in Watsonville, CA (Swezey et al. 1994). The team monitored the ecological parameters of the transition, including nutrient content of the plants, weed species and abundance, pest damage, and the life cycle of the codling moth, the apple's primary pest. This careful monitoring allowed the team to adjust their management strategies as needed. These strategies included applying organic soil amendments and disrupting the mating cycle of the codling moth through the use of pheromone dispensers that confuse the moths.

The team also tracked economic costs and income over the study period. The organic system used 10% more labor than the conventional system, due to practices such as hand thinning of the apple fruit while immature, and the cost of materials was 17% higher than in the conventional system. However, the organic system produced a higher yield in terms of apple quantity and total apple mass. Overall, the organic system also yielded a higher economic return, due both to the higher harvest yield and to the higher price obtained on the market for premium organic apples.

This study demonstrates the organic production of apples can be profitable, even though the transition from industrial/conventional to certified organic takes careful planning and can be labor intensive. Similar studies have refined Level 2 conversion methods, leading to the publication of the first Organic Apple Production Manual for California (Swezey et al. 2002). The only Level 3 components of conversion mentioned in the manual are the use of permanent between-row legume and grass covercrops. The long-term sustainability of organic apple agroecosystems still needs to be addressed (Figure 22.5).

FIGURE 22.5 **Fuji apples on semidwarf rootstock under conversion to organic management, Corralitos, CA.**

considered essential in the search for viable farming practices that eventually have the best chance of being adopted by other farmers.

The amount of time needed to complete the conversion process depends greatly on the type of crop or crops being farmed, the local ecological conditions where the farm is located, and the prior history of management and input use. For short-term annual crops, the time frame might be as short as 3 years, and for perennial crops and animal systems, the time period is probably at least 5 years or longer.

The study of the conversion process involves several levels of data collection and analysis:

1. Examine the changes in ecological factors and processes over time through monitoring and sampling.
2. Observe how yields change with changing practices, inputs, designs, and management.
3. Understand the changes in energy use, labor, and profitability that accompany the aforementioned changes.
4. Based on accumulated observations, identify key indicators of sustainability and continue to monitor them well into the future.
5. Identify indicators that are "farmer friendly" and can be adapted to on-farm, farmer-based monitoring programs, but that are linked to our understanding of ecological sustainability.

Each season, research results, site-specific ecological factors, farmer skill and knowledge, and new techniques and practices can all be examined to determine if any modifications in management practices need to be made to overcome any identified yield-limiting factors. Ecological components of the sustainability of the system become identifiable at this time, and eventually can be combined with an analysis of economic sustainability as well.

The ultimate success of the conversion process will depend on changes in the attitudes, values, choices, and ethics of everyone in the food system. As these changes become manifest, a new culture of sustainability will emerge, encouraging the research and innovation that will move us beyond the mere substitution of inputs and practices to the redesigning of agroecosystems and to the transformation of the entire food system.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. What are some of the forces that are undercutting the long-term ecological sustainability of many traditional farming systems, and how might these forces be counteracted?
2. If you were to take over managing a farm in your community that has a long history of industrial-style or conventional management, what are some of the changes you would make first in order to begin the process of moving the farm to sustainable management?
3. How much time do you think is necessary for converting a farm from nonsustainable to sustainable management? What variables might influence the length of the conversion period?
4. What are some of the incentives that might be provided for farmers who are considering converting their farms to ecologically based management?
5. From an ecological perspective, why is the substitution level of conversion not enough?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center
www.nal.usda.gov/afsic
An excellent source of information on alternative farming systems and practices, designed especially for farmers.

National Sustainable Agriculture Information Service
www.attra.org
A rich source of information designed to help small-scale and rural farmers and farm communities.

Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education (SARE)
www.sare.org
A good place to find research results about the transition to sustainable agriculture.

RECOMMENDED READINGS

Filson, G. C. (ed.). 2004. *Intensive Agriculture and Sustainability: A Farming Systems Analysis.* University of British Columbia Press: Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada.
A farming systems analysis for the issues associated with sustainable agriculture, including interactions between social, economic, and ecological indicators of sustainability.

Francis, C. A., C. Butler-Flora, and L. D. King (eds.). 1990. *Sustainable Agriculture in Temperate Zones*. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
An in-depth examination of approaches to sustainability in temperate agricultural systems.

Gliessman, S. R. (ed.). 1990. *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture.* Series in Ecological Studies #78. Springer Verlag: New York.
An edited volume on the research approaches in the field of agroecology and sustainability.

Gliessman, S. R. and M. E. Rosemeyer (eds.). 2010. *The Conversion to Sustainable Agriculture: Principles, Processes, and Practices*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.
A collection of case studies that demonstrate the theory, processes, and practical steps needed to make the transition to sustainability in agriculture using an agroecological approach.

National Research Council. 1989. *Alternative Agriculture*. National Academy Press: Washington, DC.
An excellent review of the roots of the alternative agriculture movement in the United States, its motivations and its future.

National Research Council. 2010. *Toward Sustainable Systems in the 21st Century*. Committee on Twenty-First Century Systems Agriculture. National Academies Press: Washington, DC.
Using the same framework as the groundbreaking study released in 1989, this report assesses the scientific evidence for the strengths and weaknesses of different production, marketing, and policy approaches for improving and reducing the costs and unintended consequences of industrial agriculture. It discusses the principles underlying alternative farming systems and practices that could improve sustainability.

Röling, N. G. and M. A. E. Wagemakers. 2000. *Facilitating Sustainable Agriculture: Participatory Learning and Adaptive Management in Times of Environmental Uncertainty.* Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
Analyzes the implications of adopting sustainable agricultural practices, both at the farm and the landscape scale, with a focus on social aspects.

23 Indicators of Sustainability

What is a sustainable agroecosystem? In Chapter 1 we answered this question by saying that a sustainable agroecosystem is one that maintains the resource base upon which it depends, relies on a minimum of artificial inputs from outside the farm system, manages pests and diseases through internal regulating mechanisms, and is able to recover from the disturbances caused by cultivation and harvest.

Although highly valuable, this is only a definition of a sustainable agroecosystem—and a broad and formal one at that. It is a different matter to point to an actually existing agroecosystem and identify it as sustainable or not and determine why, or to specify exactly how to build a sustainable system in a particular bioregion and sociocultural context. Generating the knowledge and expertise for doing so is one of the main tasks facing the science of agroecology today, and is the subject to which this chapter is devoted.

Ultimately, sustainability is a test of time: an agroecosystem that has continued to be productive and support local livelihoods for a long period of time without degrading its resource base—either locally or elsewhere—can be said to be sustainable. But just what constitutes "a long period of time" How is it determined if degradation of resources has occurred? What tells us that all the components of the system are healthy and viable? How well integrated are the social and ecological components of sustainability? And how can a sustainable system be designed when the proof of its sustainability remains always in the future?

Despite these challenges, we need to determine what sustainability entails. In short, the task is to identify parameters of sustainability—specific characteristics of agroecosystems that play key parts in agroecosystem function—and to determine at what level or condition, and for how long, these parameters must be maintained for sustainable function to occur. Through this process, we can identify what we will call indicators of sustainability—agroecosystem-specific conditions necessary for and indicative of sustainability. With such knowledge it will be possible to predict whether or not a particular agroecosystem can be sustained over the long term, and to design agroecosystems that have the best chance of proving to be sustainable. This knowledge will also help us work to change the external forces that have kept most agroecosystems from being sustainable in the first place—a key part of transforming the entire food system.

LEARNING FROM EXISTING SUSTAINABLE SYSTEMS

The process of identifying the elements of sustainability begins with two kinds of existing systems: natural ecosystems and traditional agroecosystems. Both have stood the test of time in terms of maintaining productivity over long periods, and each offers a different kind of knowledge foundation. Natural ecosystems provide important reference points, or benchmarks, for understanding the ecological basis of sustainability; traditional agroecosystems offer abundant examples of actually sustainable agricultural practices as well as insights into how social systems—cultural, political, and economic—fit into the sustainability equation. Based on the knowledge gained from these systems, agroecological research can devise principles, practices, and designs that can be applied in converting unsustainable industrial agroecosystems into sustainable ones.

NATURAL ECOSYSTEMS AS REFERENCE POINTS

As discussed in Chapter 2, natural ecosystems and industrial agroecosystems are very different. The latter are generally more productive but far less diverse than the former. And unlike natural systems, industrial agroecosystems are far from self-sustaining. Their productivity can be maintained only with large additional inputs of energy and materials from external, human-produced sources; otherwise they quickly degrade to a much less productive level. In every respect, these two types of systems are at opposite ends of a spectrum.

The key to sustainability is to find a compromise between the two—a system that models the structure and function of natural ecosystems yet yields a harvest for human use. Such a system is manipulated to a high degree by humans for human ends, and is therefore not *self*-sustaining, but relies on natural processes for maintenance of its productivity. Its resemblance to natural systems allows the system to sustain, over the long term, human appropriation of its biomass without large subsidies of industrial cultural energy and without detrimental effects on the surrounding environment.

Table 23.1 compares these three types of systems in terms of several ecological criteria. As the terms in the table indicate, sustainable agroecosystems model the high diversity, resilience, and autonomy of natural ecosystems. Compared to industrial systems, they may have somewhat lower and

TABLE 23.1
Properties of Natural Ecosystems, Sustainable Agroecosystems, and Industrial Agroecosystems

	Natural Ecosystems	Sustainable Agroecosystems[a]	Industrial Agroecosystems[a]
Production (yield)	Low	Low to high	High
Productivity (process)	Medium	Medium/high	Low/medium
Diversity	High	Medium	Low
Resilience	High	Medium	Low
Output stability	Medium	Low to high	High
Flexibility	High	Medium	Low
Human displacement of ecological processes	Low	Medium	High
Reliance on external human inputs	Low	Medium	High
Autonomy	High	High	Low
Interdependence	High	High	Low
Sustainability	High	High	Low

Sources: Modified from Altieri, M.A., *Agroecology: The Science of Sustainable Agriculture*, 2nd edn., Westview Press, Boulder, CO, 1995b; Gliessman, S.R. (ed.), *Agroecosystem Sustainability: Developing Practical Strategies*, Advances in Agroecology, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2001; Odum, E.P. and Barrett, G.W., *Fundamentals of Ecology*, 5th edn., Thomson Brooks/Cole, Belmont, CA, 2005; Rosemeyer, M., What do we know about the conversion process? Yields, economics, ecological processes, and social issues, in: Gliessman, S.R. and Rosemeyer, M.E. (eds.), *The Conversion to Sustainable Agriculture: Principles, Processes, and Practices*, Advances in Agroecology Series, CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2010, pp. 15–48.

[a] Properties given for these systems are most applicable to the farm scale and for the short- to medium-term time frame.

more variable yields, a reflection of the variation that occurs from year to year in nature. These lower yields, however, are usually more than offset by the advantage gained in reduced dependence on external inputs and an accompanying reduction in adverse environmental impacts.

From this comparison we can derive a general principle: *the greater the structural and functional similarity of an agroecosystem to the natural ecosystems in its biogeographic region, the greater the likelihood that the agroecosystem will be sustainable*. If this principle holds true, then observable and measurable values for a range of natural ecosystem processes, structures, and rates can provide threshold values, or benchmarks, that describe or delineate the ecological potential for the design and management of agroecosystems in a particular area. It is the task of research to determine how close an agroecosystem needs to be for these benchmark values to be sustainable (Gliessman 2001).

TRADITIONAL AGROECOSYSTEMS AS EXAMPLES OF SUSTAINABLE FUNCTION

Throughout much of the rural world today, traditional agricultural practices and knowledge continue to form the basis for much of the primary food production. What distinguishes traditional and indigenous production systems from industrial systems is that the former developed primarily in times or places where inputs other than human labor and local resources were not available, or where alternatives have been found that reduce, eliminate, or replace the energy- and technology-intensive human inputs common to much of present-day industrial agriculture. The knowledge embodied in traditional systems reflects experience gained from past generations, yet continues to develop in the present as the ecological and cultural environments of the people involved go through the continual process of adaptation and change (Wilken 1988; González Jácome and Del Amo Rodriguez 1999; González Jácome 2011) (Figure 23.1).

Many traditional farming systems can allow for the satisfaction of local needs while also contributing to food demands on the regional or national level. Production takes place in ways that focus more on the long-term sustainability of the system, rather than solely on maximizing yield and profit. Traditional agroecosystems have been in use for a long time, and during that time have gone through many changes

FIGURE 23.1 An example of the highly productive traditional corn-based agroecosystem of upland central Mexico. This system, often integrating trees and crops, has flourished for hundreds of years.

and adaptations. The fact that they still are in use is strong evidence for a social and ecological stability that modern, mechanized systems could well envy (Klee 1980).

Studies of traditional agroecosystems can contribute greatly to the development of ecologically sound management practices. Indeed, our understanding of sustainability in ecological terms comes mainly from knowledge generated from such study (Koohafkan and Altieri 2010).

What are the characteristics of traditional agroecosystems that make them sustainable? Despite the diversity of these agroecosystems across the globe, we can begin to answer this question by examining what most traditional systems have in common. Traditional agroecosystems

- Do not depend on external, purchased inputs
- Make extensive use of locally available and renewable resources
- Emphasize the recycling of nutrients
- Have beneficial or minimal negative impacts on both the on- and off-farm environment
- Are adapted to or tolerant of local conditions, rather than dependent on massive alteration or control of the environment
- Are able to take advantage of the full range of microenvironmental variation within the cropping system, farm, and region
- Maximize yield without sacrificing the long-term productive capacity of the entire system and the ability of humans to use its resources optimally
- Maintain spatial and temporal diversity and continuity
- Conserve biological and cultural diversity
- Rely on local crop varieties and often incorporate wild plants and animals
- Use production to meet local needs first
- Are relatively independent of external economic factors
- Are built on the knowledge and culture of local inhabitants

Traditional practices cannot be transplanted directly into regions of the world where agriculture has already been “modernized”, nor can industrial agriculture be converted to fit the traditional mold exactly. Nevertheless, traditional practices and agroecosystems hold important lessons for how modern sustainable agroecosystems should be designed. A sustainable system need not have all these outlined characteristics, but it must be designed so that all the functions of these characteristics are retained.

If we are to use traditional agroecosystems as a model for designing modern sustainable systems, we must understand the traditional agroecosystems at all levels of their organization, from the individual crop plants or animals in the field to the food production region or beyond. The examples of traditional practices and methods presented throughout this book provide an important starting point for the process of understanding how ecological sustainability is achieved.

Traditional agroecosystems can also provide important lessons about the role that social systems play in sustainability. For an agroecosystem to be sustainable, the cultural and economic systems in which its human participants are embedded must support and encourage sustainable practices and not create pressures that undermine them. The importance of this connection is revealed when formerly sustainable traditional systems undergo changes that make them unsustainable or environmentally destructive. In every case, the underlying cause is some kind of social, cultural, or economic pressure. For example, it is a common occurrence for traditional farmers to shorten fallow periods or increase their herds of grazing animals in response to higher rents or other economic pressures and to have these changes cause soil erosion or reduction in soil fertility. We will devote more attention to the link between social systems and sustainability in Section VI.

It is essential that traditional agroecosystems be recognized as examples of sophisticated, applied ecological knowledge. Otherwise, the so-called modernization process in agriculture will continue to destroy the time-tested knowledge they embody—knowledge that should serve as a starting point for the conversion to the more sustainable agroecosystems of the future.

DEFINING AND MEASURING AGRICULTURAL SUSTAINABILITY

If we are concerned about maintaining the productivity of our food production systems over the long term, we need to be able to distinguish between systems that remain temporarily productive because of their high levels of inputs or external subsidies, and those that can remain productive indefinitely. This involves being able to *predict* where a system is headed—how its productivity will change in the future. We can do this through analysis of agroecosystem processes and conditions in the present.

A central question involves how a system’s ecological parameters are changing over time. Are the ecological foundations of system productivity being maintained or enhanced, or are they being degraded in some way? An agroecosystem that will someday become unproductive gives us numerous hints of its future condition. Despite continuing to give acceptable yields, its underlying foundation is being destroyed. Its topsoil may be gradually eroding year by year; salts may be accumulating; the diversity of its soil biota may be declining. Inputs of fertilizers and pesticides may mask these signs of degradation, but they are there nonetheless for the farmer or agroecological researcher to detect. In contrast, a sustainable agroecosystem will show no signs of underlying degradation. Its topsoil depth will hold steady or increase; the diversity of its soil biota will remain consistently high.

Equally important is the question of the maintenance of farmer, farm family, and farm community livelihoods. Are the elements of social health and welfare being maintained so that farm families are able to enjoy a dignified, healthy life with opportunities for education, personal growth, and food security? Even if economic returns hold steady in a region, individual farmers may have to leave farming, children may be taken out of school to work on the farm, or local opportunities for employment may be reduced. Reducing the number of crops to meet market requirements or hiring undocumented labor at lower salaries and benefits may mask these signs, and an integrated analysis is necessary to detect them. A sustainable agroecosystem will show health and happiness in all segments of the social fabric of the food system.

In practice, distinguishing between systems that are degrading their foundations and those that are not is not as straightforward as it may seem. A multitude of ecological and social parameters, all interacting, determine sustainability—considering each one independently or relying on only a few may prove misleading. Moreover, some parameters are more critical than others, and gains in one area may compensate for losses in another. A challenge for agroecological research is to learn how the parameters interact and to determine their relative importance (Gliessman 1990, 1995, 2001; Giampietro 2004).

In addition, analysis of agroecosystem sustainability or unsustainability can be applied in a variety of ways. Researchers or farmers may want to do any of the following, alone or in combination:

- Provide evidence of unsustainability on an individual farm in order to motivate changes in the practices on that farm.
- Provide evidence of the unsustainability of industrial/conventional practices or systems more generally to argue for changes in agricultural policy or societal values regarding agriculture.
- Predict how long a system can remain productive.
- Prescribe specific ways of averting productive collapse short of complete redesign of the agroecosystem.
- Prescribe ways of converting to a sustainable path through complete agroecosystem redesign.
- Develop supportive and equitable social relationships throughout the system.
- Suggest ways of restoring or regenerating a degraded agroecosystem.

Although these applications of sustainability analysis overlap, each represents a different focus and requires a different kind of research approach.

ASSESSMENT OF SOIL HEALTH

In Chapters 8 and 9, we discussed the many ways that farmers can manage soil factors. Depending on a farmer's skill and experience, this management can lead to improvement, degradation, or maintenance of the soil conditions needed to maintain both production and the qualities that promote it.

The overall picture of the condition of the soil—the soil's fitness to support crop growth without degradation—is called **soil health**. This term is frequently used interchangeably with *soil quality*, although the two terms are often defined somewhat differently. The methods that soil scientists have developed to determine soil quality are usually fairly technical, costly, and laboratory based. They tell us a great deal about the potential of any particular soil for farming or the impacts of various farming, practices on the soil, but they are impractical for farmers to use regularly. Farmers prefer to describe soil health subjectively and qualitatively, using words related to how the soil looks, feels, and smells. In this way they are able to assess characteristics such as ease of cultivation, water-holding capacity, organic matter content, and potential for weed growth. Soil scientists have been able to correlate these subjective determinations with their quantitative analysis of soil quality, and they have developed scorecards for assessing soil health on this basis (Magdoff and van Es 2009).

Table 23.2 offers a fairly comprehensive set of soil health indicators that can be tested easily on the farm. Most are

TABLE 23.2
Indicators of Soil Health

Indicator	Best Time to Test	Healthy Condition
Earthworm presence	Spring or fall, when soil is moist	Greater than 10 worms/ft^3; many castings and holes in tilled clods.
Color of organic matter	When soil is moist	Topsoil distinctly darker than subsoil.
Presence of plant residues	Anytime	Residue apparent on most of soil surface.
Condition of plant roots	Late spring or during rapid growth	Roots extensively branched, white, extended into subsoil.
Degree of subsurface compaction	Before tillage or after harvest	A stiff wire goes in easily to 2× plow depth.
Soil tilth or friability	When soil is moist	Soil crumbles easily, feels spongy when walked on.
Signs of erosion	After heavy rainfall	No gullies or rills; runoff from fields is clear.
Water-holding capacity	After rainfall during growing season	Soil holds moisture well more than a week w/o signs of drought stress.
Degree of water infiltration	After rainfall	No ponding or runoff; soil surface does not remain excessively wet.
pH	At same time each year	Near neutral and appropriate for crop.
Nutrient-holding capacity	At same time each year	N, P, and K trending up, but not into *very high* zone.

Source: Adapted from Magdoff, F. and J. van Es. Sustainable Agriculture Network, *Building Soils for Better Crops*. 2nd ed.,Washington D.C. 2000.

qualitative; only the last two require any testing equipment beyond a stiff wire and a shovel.

PRODUCTIVITY INDEX

One important aspect of sustainability analysis is to use a more holistic basis for analyzing an agroecosystem's most basic process—the production of biomass. Industrial agriculture is concerned with this process in terms of yield. How the harvest output, or **production**, is created is not important as long as the production is as high as possible. For sustainable agroecosystems, however, measurement of production alone is not adequate because the goal is sustainable production. Attention must be paid to the *processes* that enable production. This means focusing on **productivity**—the set of processes and structures actively chosen and maintained by the farmer to produce the harvest.

From an ecological perspective, productivity is a process in ecosystems that involves the capture of light energy and its transformation into biomass. Ultimately, it is this biomass that supports the processes of sustainable production. In a sustainable agroecosystem, therefore, the goal is to optimize the process of productivity so as to ensure the highest yield possible without causing environmental degradation, rather than to strive for maximum yields at all costs. If the processes of productivity are ecologically sound, sustainable production will follow.

One way of quantifying productivity is to measure the amount of biomass invested in the harvested product in relation to the total amount of standing biomass present in the rest of the system. This is done through the use of the **productivity index** *(PI)*, represented by the following formula:

$$\textit{Productivity index (PI)} = \frac{\textit{Total biomass accumulated in the system}}{\textit{Net primary productivity (NPP)}}$$

The PI provides a way of measuring the potential for an agroecosystem to sustainably produce a harvestable yield. It can be a valuable tool in both the design and the evaluation of sustainable agroecosystems. A PI value can be used as an indicator of sustainability if we assume that there is a positive correlation between the return of biomass to an agroecosystem and the system's ability to provide harvestable yield.

The value of the PI will vary between a low of 1 for the most extractive annual cropping system, to a high of about 50 in some natural ecosystems, especially ecosystems in the early stages of succession. The higher the PI of a system, the greater its ability to maintain a certain harvest output. For an intensive annual cropping system, the threshold value for sustainability is 2. At this level, the amount of biomass returned to the system each season is equal to what is removed as yield, which is the same as saying that half of the biomass produced during the season is harvested, and half returned to the system.

Net primary productivity (NPP) does not vary much between system types (it ranges from 0 to 30 tons/ha/year); what really varies from system to system is standing biomass (it ranges between 0 and 800 tons/ha). When a larger portion of NPP is allowed to accumulate as biomass or standing crop, the PI increases and so does the ability to harvest biomass without compromising sustainable system functioning. One way of increasing the standing biomass of the system is to combine annuals and perennials in some alternating pattern in time and space (Figure 23.2).

FIGURE 23.2 The traditional Chinese home garden agroecosystem, with pond, paddy, and vegetable beds. The continual return of all forms of organic matter to the agroecosystem maintains a high PI.

To be able to apply the PI in the most useful manner, we must find answers to a number of questions: How can higher ratios be sustained over time? How is the ratio of the return of biomass to the amount of biomass harvested connected to the process of productivity? What is the relationship between standing crop or biomass in an agroecosystem, and the ability to remove biomass as harvest or yield?

ECOLOGICAL CONDITIONS OF SUSTAINABLE FUNCTION

The ecological framework that has been described in this book provides us with a set of ecological parameters that can be studied and monitored over time to assess movement toward or away from sustainability. These parameters include such things as species diversity, organic matter content of the soil, and topsoil depth. For each parameter, agroecological theory suggests a general type of condition or quality that is necessary for sustainable functioning of the system—such as high diversity, high organic matter content, and thick topsoil. The specific rates, levels, values, and statuses of these parameters that together indicate a condition of sustainability, however, will vary for each agroecosystem because of differences in farm type, resources used, local climate, and other site-specific variables. Each system, therefore, must be studied separately to generate sets of system-specific indicators of sustainability.

The parameters listed in Table 23.3 provide a framework for research focusing on what is required for sustainable function of an agroecosystem from an ecological perspective.

TABLE 23.3
Ecological Parameters Related to Agroecosystem Sustainability

1. Characteristics of the soil resource
   Over the long term
   a. Soil depth, especially that of the topsoil and the organic horizon
   b. Percent of organic matter content in the topsoil and its quality
   c. Bulk density and other measures of compaction in the plow zone
   d. Water infiltration and percolation rates
   e. Salinity and mineral levels
   f. Cation exchange capacity and pH
   g. Ratios of nutrient levels, particularly C/N
   Over the short term
   h. Annual erosion rates
   i. Efficiency of nutrient uptake
   j. Availability and sources of essential nutrients
2. Hydrogeological factors
   On-farm water use efficiency
   a. Infiltration rates of irrigation water or precipitation
   b. Soil moisture-holding capacity
   c. Rates of erosional losses
   d. Amount of waterlogging, especially in the root zone
   e. Drainage effectiveness
   f. Distribution of soil moisture in relation to plant needs
   Surface water flow
   g. Sedimentation of watercourses and nearby wetlands
   h. Agrochemical levels and transport
   i. Surface erosion rates and gully formation
   j. Effectiveness of conservation systems in reducing non-point-source pollution
   Groundwater quality
   k. Water movement downward into the soil profile
   l. Leaching of nutrients, especially nitrates
   m. Leaching of pesticides and other contaminants
3. Biotic factors
   In the soil
   a. Total microbial biomass in the soil
   b. Rates of biomass turnover
   c. Diversity of soil microorganisms
   d. Nutrient cycling rates in relation to microbial activity
   e. Amounts of nutrients or biomass stored in different agroecosystem pools
   f. Balance of beneficial to pathogenic microorganisms
   g. Rhizosphere structure and function
   Above the soil
   h. Diversity and abundance of pest populations
   i. Degree of resistance to pesticides
   j. Diversity and abundance of natural enemies and beneficials
   k. Niche diversity and overlap
   l. Durability of control strategies
   m. Diversity and abundance of native plants and animals
4. Ecosystem-level characteristics
   a. Annual production output
   b. Components of the productivity process
   c. Diversity: structural, functional, vertical, horizontal, temporal
   d. Stability and resistance to change
   e. Resilience and recovery from disturbance
   f. Intensity and origins of external inputs
   g. Sources of energy and efficiency of use
   h. Nutrient cycling efficiency and rates
   i. Population growth rates
   j. Community complexity and interactions

Explanations of the role of each parameter in a sustainable system are not provided here. The reader is referred to Chapters 3 through 17 in which each factor is discussed for more detail on its importance and how it might be measured.

Social Conditions of Sustainable Function

Agriculture has been overly focused on the narrow economic goals of raising yields and increasing the returns on investments. When we use the criteria of sustainability, it is clear that the quality of life for the people involved in agriculture must also be taken into account, observed, and monitored over time. Social health, like soil health, is a composite picture of many factors, or parameters. These parameters include physical health and emotional well-being for individuals, and equity, participation, social function, and democratic expression for the family and community.

For each parameter, we can integrate agroecological concepts and social theory grounded in rural sociology to arrive at a general condition that reflects social health. For individuals, we can measure such factors as educational attainment, incidence of drug and alcohol abuse, and overall physical health. For families and communities, we can assess characteristics such as changes in the number of farms in the area, average income per farm, number of farm-related businesses, and level of participation in farmer networks. As for ecological parameters, social parameters have specific rates, levels, values, and relations that together indicate a condition of sustainability; however, due to the great differences in culture, history, relationships, and belief systems, these indicators are more subjective and location specific. Since the evaluator of sustainability cannot put his or her values on the people or communities being evaluated, participatory approaches to measurement are important (Bacon 2005).

Some important social and economic parameters related to agroecosystem and regional food-system sustainability are listed in Table 23.4. This is not an exhaustive list. The social framework for sustainability is discussed in more detail in Section VI, and the reader is referred to the section Recommended Readings for more depth and information.

RESEARCH ON SUSTAINABILITY

Research on the sustainability of agroecosystems has grown considerably since the 1990s (Gliessman 2001; Turner et al. 2003; Zhen and Routray 2003; Astier et al. 2008; Firth et al. 2008; Bohlen and Swain 2009; Ellsworth and Feenstra 2010). The principles on which sustainability can be built are well established (and have been discussed in detail in this text), and recent work in the field has generated much of the more detailed knowledge needed to apply these principles to the design of sustainable systems and the global conversion of agriculture to sustainability.

Much more research still needs to be done because the resources and efforts of agricultural research have long been concentrated on other concerns. Research has focused on maximizing production, studying the component parts of systems, evaluating results based primarily on short-term economic return, answering questions involving immediate production problems, and serving the immediate needs and demands of agriculture as an independent industry (Pretty 2002; Roberts 2008). The result has been the development of a high-yielding, industrial agriculture that is experiencing great difficulty responding to concerns about environmental quality, resource conservation, food safety, the quality of rural life, and the sustainability of agriculture itself.

TABLE 23.4
Socioeconomic Parameters Related to Agroecosystem Sustainability

1. Ecological economics (farm profitability)
    a. Per unit production costs and returns
    b. Rate of investment in tangible assets and conservation
    c. Debt loads and interest rates
    d. Variance of economic returns over time
    e. Reliance on subsidized inputs or price supports
    f. Relative net return to ecologically based practices and investments
    g. Off-farm externalities and costs that result from farming practices
    h. Income stability and farming practice diversity
    i. Level of reinvestment in local economies
2. The social and cultural environment
    a. Equitability of return to farmer, farm laborer, and consumer
    b. Autonomy and dependence on external forces
    c. Degree of self-sufficiency and use of local resources
    d. Social justice, especially cross-cultural and intergenerational
    e. Equitability of involvement in the production process
    f. Reproducibility of the farming culture
    g. Extent of age, race, and gender empowerment
    h. Stability of social organization and activity of social networking
    i. Degree of sharing of agrarian values
    j. Effectiveness of local decision-making processes

In recent years, however, the emphasis in agriculture has begun to shift from maximizing yields and profit over the short term to valuing the ability to sustain productivity over the long term. Reflecting this shift, the number of university programs, nonprofit organizations, and development projects with a sustainability focus has grown substantially. There has also been a remarkable emergence of a range of certification programs around the world, from organic to environmentally friendly to fairly traded to food justice certified. The need to fully understand the indicator concept and how to apply it has become a high priority.

Using an Agroecological Framework

The emerging agroecological approach permits research to apply an integrated system-level framework concerned with management for the long term (Gliessman 2001; Rickerl and Francis 2004; Bohlen and House 2009). Agroecological research studies the environmental background of the agroecosystem, as well as the complex of processes involved in the maintenance of long-term productivity. It establishes the ecological basis of sustainability in terms of resource use and conservation, including soil, water, genetic resources, and air quality. Then it examines the interactions between the many organisms of the agroecosystem, beginning with interactions at the individual species level and culminating at the ecosystem level as the dynamics of the entire system are revealed.

The ecological concepts and principles on which agroecology is based establish a holistic perspective for the design and management of sustainable agricultural systems. The application of ecological methods is essential for determining (1) if a particular agricultural practice, input, or management decision is sustainable, and (2) what the ecological basis is for the functioning of the chosen management strategy over the long term.

The holistic perspective of agroecology means that instead of focusing research on very limited problems or single variables in a production system, these problems or variables are studied as part of a larger unit. There is little doubt that certain problems require research specialization. But in agroecological studies any necessary narrow focus is placed in the context of the larger system. Impacts that are felt outside of the production unit as a result of a particular management strategy (e.g., a reduction in local biodiversity) can be part of agroecological analysis. This broadening of the research context extends to the social realm as well—the final step in agroecological research is to understand ecological sustainability in the context of social and economic systems.

Quantification of Sustainability

For agroecological research to contribute to making agriculture more sustainable, it must establish a framework for measuring and quantifying sustainability (Liverman et al. 1988; Gliessman 2001; Ellsworth and Feenstra 2010). We need to be able to assess a particular system to determine how far from sustainability it is, which of its aspects are least sustainable, exactly how its sustainability is being undermined, and how it can be changed to move it toward sustainable functioning. And once a system is designed with the intent of being sustainable, we need to be able to monitor it to determine if sustainable functioning has been achieved.

The methodological tools for accomplishing this task can be borrowed from the science of ecology. Ecology has a well-developed set of methodologies for the quantification of ecosystem characteristics such as nutrient cycling, energy flow, population dynamics, species interactions, and habitat modification. Using these tools, agroecosystem characteristics—and how they are impacted by humans—can be studied from a level as specific as that of an individual species to a level as broad as that of the global environment.

We can also borrow methodological tools from rural and environmental sociologists who have developed a set of methodologies for evaluation of societal characteristics such as access to economic resources, social networks, political or economic status, and empowerment. Using these tools, broader agroecosystem characteristics—and how they are affected by political and economic structures and relationships—can be studied from a level as specific as a household to a level as broad as that of global markets and free trade agreements.

One approach is to analyze specific agroecosystems or food-system issues to quantify at what level a particular ecological or social parameter or set of parameters must be at for sustainable function to occur. Many researchers are doing work in this area, and some of their results are presented in Table 23.5. Even though the results are given individually, it is important to remember that such results must be used and interpreted in the context of the whole system and the complex of interacting factors of which they are only a part.

Another kind of approach is to begin with the whole system. Some researchers, for example, have been working on developing methods for determining the probability of an agroecosystem being sustainable over the long term (Hansen and Jones 1996; Vilain 2003). Using a systems framework for measuring the carrying capacity of a particular landscape, they apply a methodology for integrating the rates of change of a range of parameters of sustainability and determine how quickly change is taking place toward or away from a specific goal. Such an analysis is limited by the difficulty of choosing which parameters to integrate into the model, but has the potential for becoming a tool allowing us to predict if a system will be able to continue indefinitely or not.

Comparative analysis of multiple farms or farming systems is yet another means of assessing sustainability. Comparing a broad range of ecological and economic factors derived from the simultaneous study of contrasting farming systems over several years, especially when industrial and alternative practices are involved, will show factor differentiation through time (e.g., Gliessman et al. 1996). Correlating factor levels with crop performance can give indications of sustainability.

Survey instruments such as interviews and questionnaires can also be applied to multiple farms and farmers, with a set of parameters of sustainability being used to gain a bigger picture of the relationship between farm performance and farmer practice. For example, Pretty et al. (2003) carried out a survey of over 208 agroecologically based projects and initiatives in 52 developing countries involving almost 9 million farmers on 28.9 million hectares of land in Africa, Asia, and Latin America. By using the promoted agroecologically based practices, yields were increased by 48%–93% per hectare. The surveys were able to correlate these yield increases over several years with one of four mechanisms: (1) intensification of a single component of a farm system; (2) addition of a new productive element to a farm system; (3) better use of water and land to increase cropping intensity; or (4) introduction of new agroecological elements into farm systems and new locally appropriate crop varieties and animal breeds. The surveys allowed the farmers to tell their

TABLE 23.5
Selected Quantifiable Parameters and Their Approximate Minimum Values for Sustainable Function of Specific Agroecosystems or Food Systems

Parameter	Minimum Level for Sustainability	Agroecosystem	Source
Soil organic matter content	2.9%	Strawberries in California	Gliessman et al. (1996)
Spores of the disease verticillium wilt	Less than one spore per 100 g of soil	Strawberries and vegetables in California	Koike and Subbarao (2000)
Input/harvest loss ratio for each macronutrient	Net positive balance over time	Mixed arable crops in Costa Rica	Jansen et al. (1995)
Biocide use index[a]	Maintain at a level <15	Mixed arable crops in Costa Rica	Jansen et al. (1995)
Ecosystem biophysical capital[b]	GPP − NPP < 1	Variable	Giampietro (2004)
Plant species diversity	Shannon index > 5.0	Perennial pasture	Risser (1995)
Ratio of renewable energy input to total energy input	Should approach 1	Mixed crops, forage, and animals in Central Italy	Tellarini and Caporali (2000)
Ratio of net energy output to total external input[c]	Maintain as far above 1 as possible	Mixed crops, forage, and animals in Central Italy	Tellarini and Caporali (2000)
Female participation in farm activities	Full acknowledgment of roles and activities	Small-scale traditional farms in NW Ethiopia	Tsegaye (1997)
Ratio of cost of all local inputs to cost of total inputs[d]	As close to 1 as possible	Mixed field crops in Bangladesh	Rasul and Thapa (2003)
Levels of food insecurity in an urban community	Percentage of food insecure not increasing with time	Consumers in the urban area of San Diego, CA	Ellsworth and Feenstra (2010)

[a] Index based on several factors, including use rates, toxicity, and area sprayed; values above 50 are considered indicative of excessive biocide use.

[b] Defined as the capture of adequate solar energy to sustain cycles of matter in an ecosystem.

[c] An indicator of productivity.

[d] An indicator of input self-sufficiency.

own stories of their experiments in sustainability, and give us a set of field-tested indicators.

Another valuable foundation for doing sustainability analysis of farming systems takes advantage of multiple, diverse, and often dispersed data sets that are connected to agriculture in a given region. For example, the New Mainstream Project of the Roots of Change in California assembled an immense data set for current California food systems. Information that ranged from water use, number of farms, farm gate production values, number of farmers' markets, and pesticide use was gathered from multiple agencies and organizations connected to agriculture and food issues. Data sets for some factors came from many years of data gathering and have considerable quantitative validity. They were used to project forward into the future the kinds of changes that might be needed to offset negative trends, or to promote more sustainable activities, practices, or policies. These data sets, however, were limited in two ways: they were focused on the current food system, not the one we want to move toward, and they were not very well integrated and able to give a full view of how the component parts of a sustainable food system might be assembled.

An approach that can begin to overcome this problem and better integrate the separate parameters of sustainability is the MESMIS system for evaluating natural resource management systems, developed by Masera and others in Mexico (Masera and Lopéz-Ridaura 2000). Indicators are chosen, ideal values for each are determined, and two or more systems are analyzed to determine how close, in percentage terms, each aspect of the system comes to the ideal value set for its indicator. The result is an "amoeba" diagram, or radar graph, like the one shown in Figure 23.3. The assumption is that the greater the percentage of the optimal area covered by an amoeba the higher the level of sustainability of the agroecosystem it represents. Areas of relative strength and weakness can thereby be compared. This system can be used to show how close each indicator is to a theoretically ideal value, offering a measure of progress toward sustainable function. Both qualitative and quantitative measures can be used. In addition, when applied in a participatory action research setting, the farm community is a partner in selecting the galaxy of indicators that are of greatest concern or most interest for the comparison. The results are highly variable in terms of which factors are chosen to make the multiple axes, but this method enables a simple, yet comprehensive comparison of the systems being evaluated.

An advanced and complex analysis of indicators of agroecosystem sustainability has been developed by Giampietro (2004). He employs all of the methodologies described throughout this chapter, and then some, to create what he calls multi-scale integrated analysis. This methodology

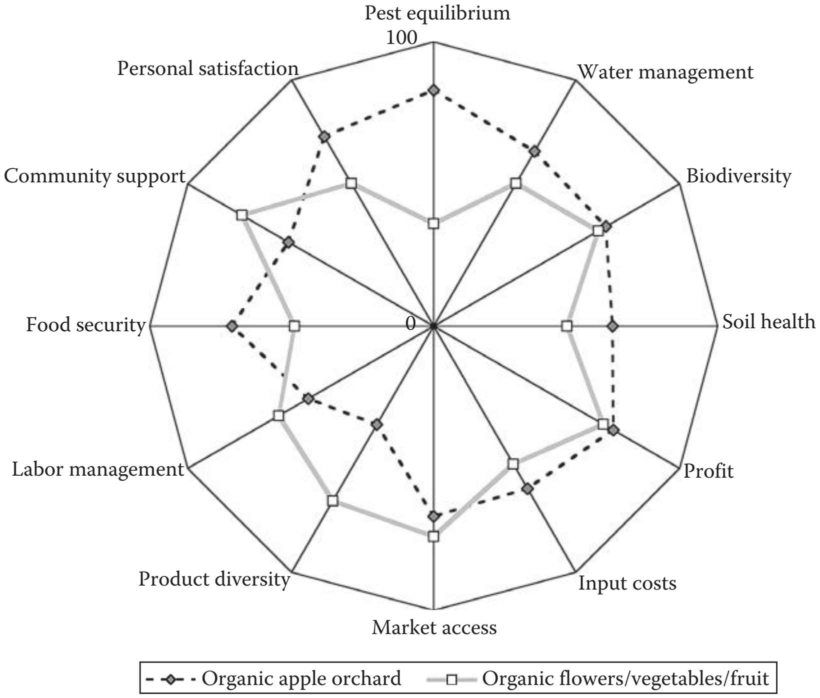


FIGURE 23.3 An amoeba-type diagram comparing the sustainability of two organic farms in Santa Cruz County, CA. A combination of ecological, economic, and social indicators was used in the analysis.

applies complex system theory, integrates diverse components that cut across the ecological and social realms, and takes into account change through time over different scales. The results are layered with multiple scales of uncertainty, change, location, and cultural preference. Overall, this methodology calls attention to the need to move beyond the reductionist tendency of looking at single factors affecting sustainability.

The growing number of research studies on sustainability indicators, along with the increasing number of certification programs oriented toward giving consumers a better basis for making choices in the market place, has fostered some attempts to tackle the very difficult task of standardizing the components of sustainability. The members of the Leonardo Academy, who promote themselves as "the sustainability experts", have been leading a several-year project to develop a single certification standard for agricultural products in the US market place (see section Internet Resources). At the global level, a nonprofit connected to the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization called the Committee on Sustainability Assessment (COSA) has been engaged in developing global standards of sustainability. COSA has developed several hundred indicators that cover ecological, economic, and social components of food systems from around the world. They have a primary focus on informing policy decisions in the sustainable development work of the United Nations (see section Internet Resources). For any of these large efforts to be successful and have a positive impact on food-system change, it will be essential to integrate research, practice, and social needs for change.

MOVING TO A LARGER CONTEXT

One of the weaknesses of conventional agricultural research is the way in which the narrowness of its focus on production problems has ignored the social and economic impacts of agricultural modernization. Agroecological research cannot make the same mistake. In addition to paying greater attention to the ecological foundation upon which agriculture ultimately depends, agroecological research must understand agriculture within its social and economic context. Understanding agroecosystems as social–ecological systems will permit the evaluation of such qualities of agroecosystems as the long-term effects of different input/output strategies, the importance of the human element to production, and the relationship between economic and ecological components of sustainable agroecosystem management. Developing this knowledge becomes an important part of moving beyond the level of the farm and the farm community to the food system as a whole and beginning to take the steps necessary to transform this system into one that works toward the goal of sustainability, broadly defined.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. In the context of sustainability, what are the differences between the concepts of ecosystem persistence (or resistance) and ecosystem resilience?
2. Describe a characteristic or component of a traditional farming system that would find widespread

CASE STUDY: SUSTAINABILITY IN A CHINESE VILLAGE AGROECOSYSTEM

Although it is often easy to identify processes that are degrading a system, it is much more difficult to determine what processes are necessary for sustainable productivity. Because the term "sustainable" describes a managed system that will maintain productivity over an indefinite period of time, it is difficult to find indicators of sustainability that can be measured over the short term.

One way to look for these indicators is to study systems that have a track record, systems that have sustained constant production of food for human consumption over a long period of time without degrading their ecological foundations. Many types of traditional agriculture around the world meet this requirement, but their relevance for the study of ecological sustainability is limited because their yields are much lower than those of modern systems. This is not so for village agroecosystems in the Tai Lake region of China, located in the Yangtze River Delta. Sustained high yields under intensive human management have been documented in this area for more than nine centuries. The suitability of these systems for study of sustainability attracted researcher Erle Ellis in the 1990s.

Since traditional management practices have now in part been supplanted by modern practices, Ellis looked at the history of the region's agriculture, examining a multitude of factors, including landscape features, climate, soils, and human management practices. In order to elucidate the ecological mechanisms underlying the sustainability of the area's agriculture, Ellis studied the cycling of nutrients at the level of an entire village. This scale of study allowed him to compensate for the variability that exists between the practices of individual farmers and the variability of the landscape, and thereby draw more accurate conclusions. It also enabled him to discern overall processes that might be invisible at the field level.

With evidence suggesting that nitrogen was the limiting factor in traditional Chinese agroecosystems, Ellis made the cycling and management of this nutrient the focus of his research. He identified the specific practices and natural processes in the system that historically maintained adequate levels of soil nitrogen in the absence of inputs of inorganic fertilizer.

Ellis identified several aspects of traditional management practices that he believes were essential in maintaining nitrogen fertility (Ellis and Wang 1997). One of the most important of these was the use of natural inputs, such as sediments from local waterways. Biological nitrogen fixation also played a significant role. A third factor, perhaps the most important, was the thorough recycling of organic matter. Nearly all organic wastes—including human excrement—were recycled in the village system, by either being returned to the fields directly or composted and then returned. Another important contributor to sustainability was the integration of animals to create a cyclical nutrient flow: farmers raised pigs specifically for their manure, and a portion of the animals' diet was food and agricultural waste.

Although these practices continue, they have been largely replaced by the application of inorganic fertilizers. This change, initiated in the 1960s, has made nitrogen a problematic source of pollution instead of a limiting nutrient. Although the use of inorganic inputs has boosted productivity even higher, feeding an ever-growing population, this change in management makes the continued sustainability of the region's agricultural systems an open question.

application in modern farming systems if sustainability were a primary goal.

3. How might cultural preferences for different kinds of foods affect the choice of appropriate indicators of sustainability?
4. Describe how, as an agroecosystem moves toward sustainability, some components might stay the same while others might change.
5. What is the role of the consumer as an indicator of sustainability?
6. Why are ecological indicators generally easier to measure than social indicators?

INTERNET RESOURCES

The COSA Sustainability Assessment
www.sustainablecommodities.org/cosa
The COSA is a nonprofit consortium of institutions developing and applying an independent measurement tool for evaluating the environmental, economic, and social indicators of sustainability for agricultural practices worldwide. It is closely aligned with the United Nations International Institute for Sustainable Development and the UN Conference for Trade and Development, and has a primary focus on public- and private-sector decision makers working in sustainable development and agriculture.

The Leonardo Academy
www.leonardoacademy.org
A nonprofit organization facilitating the development of US sustainability standards, with the plan to link scientific knowledge on indicators with a standardized certification program designed to reduce consumer uncertainty in the face of the plethora of certifications on the market.

Scientific Committee on Problems of the Environment
www.scopenvironment.org
An interdisciplinary group of social and natural scientists addressing current environmental programs, including the development and use of social and ecological indicators.

Sustainable Measures
www.sustainablemeasures.com
A website on indicators of sustainable community: ways to measure how well a community is meeting the needs and expectations of its present and future members.

Sustainability Science
www.hks.harvard.edu/centers/mrcbg/programs/sustsci
This is a site created by an interdisciplinary, multi-institution group engaged in the development and application of the emerging field of sustainability science.

RECOMMENDED READINGS

Bohlen, P. J. and G. House (eds.). 2009. *Sustainable Agroecosystem Management: Integrating Ecology, Economics, and Society*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.
A collection of case studies and approaches to agroecosystem management that emphasizes whole-system productivity, diversification, multifunctionality, and alternatives to purely technological attempts to solve food system problems.

Filson, G. C. (ed.). 2004. *Intensive Agriculture and Sustainability: A Farming Systems Analysis*. University of British Columbia Press: Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada.
A farming systems analysis for the issues associated with sustainable agriculture, including interactions between social, economic, and ecological indicators of sustainability.

Fish, R., S. Seymour, C. Watkins, and M. Steven. 2008. *Sustainable Farmland Management: Transdisciplinary Approaches*. CABI Publishers: Oxford, U.K.
An examination of the relationship between sustainability and farmland management, considering multifunctionality, systems thinking, information exchange, and ethics.

Flora, C. (ed.). 2001. *Interactions between Agroecosystems and Rural Communities*. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.
A book addressing the relationship between sustainable agriculture and the human communities that depend on it, with temperate and tropical examples.

Francis, C. A., C. Butler-Flora, and L. D. King. (eds.). 1990. *Sustainable Agriculture in Temperate Zones*. John Wiley & Sons: New York.
An in-depth examination of approaches to sustainability in temperate agricultural systems.

Giampietro, M. 2004. *Multi-Scale Integrated Analysis of Agroecosystems*. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.
A challenging look at the need for a holistic approach to the study of agroecosystem sustainability, employing multicriteria analysis and systems theory.

Gliessman, S. R. (ed.). 2001. *Agroecosystem Sustainability: Towards Practical Strategies*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.
An exploration of the ecological foundation of agroecosystem sustainability, with case studies that provide practical ways to increase, improve, and assess the integration of the social and ecological parameters needed in sustainability analysis.

Ikerd, J. E. 2008. *Crisis and Opportunity: Sustainability in American Agriculture*. Bison Books/University of Nebraska Press: Lincoln, NE.
An engaging outline of the consequences of agricultural industrialization, followed by details of the methods that can restore economic viability, ecological soundness, and social responsibility to our agricultural system and thus ensure sustainable agriculture as the foundation of a sustainable food system and a sustainable society.

Mason, J. 2003. *Sustainable Agriculture*, 2nd edn. Landlinks Press: Collingwood, Victoria, Australia.
A volume addressing some of the critical issues facing sustainable agriculture today, from an Australian perspective.

Pound, B., S. Snapp, S. McDougall, and A. Braun (eds.). 2003. *Managing Natural Resources for Sustainable Livelihoods: Uniting Science and Participation*. Earthscan: London, U.K.
A volume demonstrating the need participatory research approaches for natural resource management, which are based on the needs and knowledge of local people.

Uphoff, N. (ed.). 2001. *Agroecological Innovations: Increasing Food Production with Participatory Development*. Earthscan: London, U.K.
A presentation of 12 case studies that demonstrate agroecology's potential to produce food in a socially and environmentally viable way.

Section VI

Bringing about a Sustainable World Food System

Broadly considered, the farm-scale conversion process discussed in detail in Section V is the necessary foundation of the much larger *conversion* that must occur for the world food system to become sustainable. Venturing beyond farms, we encounter economic systems of varying scales, political institutions, values and beliefs, patterns of behavior, social structures, and the like. Although these aspects of human society are all outside the traditional purview of agronomy and even of much agroecological consideration, they form the context within which agroecology must operate if it hopes to move the food system toward sustainability. In terms of the levels of conversion described in Chapter 22, they make up the territory we are concerned with in pushing forward levels 4 and 5 of the conversion process.

This section divides this very large subject into three parts. Chapter 24, Agriculture, Society, and Agroecology, uses a political-economic perspective to investigate the economic structures underlying the world food system, understand the beliefs that give these structures legitimacy, and tie the concept of power to corporate dominance of the food system. Chapter 25, Community and Culture in the Remaking of the Food System, looks at the ways in which the food system has increasingly separated the growers of food from its eaters, showing how sustainability depends on bringing the two back together. Chapter 26, From Sustainable Agroecosystems to a Sustainable Food System, attempts to integrate much of what comes before by looking at the progress that's been made at all the levels of the conversion process and considering how we might continue to build the strength of the emerging alternative food system until it makes the current system obsolete.

FIGURE S.6 A diverse mix of agricultural products from local growers, as delivered weekly to eaters through the Jaén Ecological Association in southern Spain. The association is organized and managed by socially conscious consumers who seek fresh, safe, local organic products and want to show solidarity with local growers and processors who face growing pressure from global markets.

24 Agriculture, Society, and Agroecology

In Chapter 1, we described the many serious harms to the environment, to society, and to the foundations of agricultural productivity that are part of the price we pay for the prodigious productivity of the system of industrial agriculture that dominates much of the world today. Among these many harms, industrial agriculture drains ancient aquifers, depletes soils that have been built up over millennia, reduces biodiversity, adds huge volumes of greenhouse gases to the atmosphere, damages the natural systems that provide us with critical ecosystem services, and puts the control of food production in the hands of fewer and fewer people.

In the chapters following Chapter 1, this book has built up, layer by layer, the principles, strategies, and methods that constitute an approach to producing food that is very different from that of industrial agriculture. These chapters have all rested on the assumption that industrial agriculture is unsustainable over the long term, has unacceptable costs in the present, and does in fact need to be replaced by systems resting on an agroecological foundation.

Evidence accumulated since the rise of agroecological thinking, practice, and research in the 1980s indicates that this alternative approach to agriculture is indeed far more sustainable than the industrial approach, much less damaging to the planet's life-support system, and more consistent with efforts to alleviate the misery endured by world's poorest people (e.g., IAASTD 2009; IFAD 2013). Research also supports the contention that the agroecological approach to agriculture is more than capable of producing enough food to feed the world's population, not just now but into the foreseeable future (Badgley and Perfecto 2007; Badgley et al. 2007).

Since the ultimate purpose of presenting the foundations of agroecology in this book is to facilitate the transition to a more sustainable world food system, we must now—after focusing on the transition to sustainability in the previous section—turn to examining the actual status of the transition. Considering all that we know about the two systems, and assuming that people would want to choose the option with the brightest future, we might expect the more sustainable methods of the agroecological approach to be gaining ground and slowly replacing those of industrial agriculture. Such a trend is evident on a local basis in developed countries, but overall, globally, the opposite is occurring. Not only are the practices known to be unsustainable not being curtailed or replaced generally, they are being embraced with what seems like increasing enthusiasm. The area of land planted to genetically modified crops is expanding dramatically, as noted in Chapter 15. Small-scale production is declining around the world instead of growing. Nearly everywhere that it hasn't already happened, monocultures are replacing diverse polycultures, rather than the other way around. Farmers all over the world are turning to practices that make them more dependent on external inputs, not less. There are encouraging counterexamples in each of these areas, but in these and many other ways, the world food system as a whole is becoming ever more dependent on, and dominated by, the technology-intensive, capital-intensive, industrial-based methods described in Chapter 1 (Figure 24.1).

Why does human society as a whole seem intent on pursuing the path of industrial agriculture, even though it has demonstrably dire consequences in the long run? Posed this question, many people in the agricultural policy arena would give an answer something like this: GMOs, monoculture, large-scale production, and the other facets of industrial agriculture are becoming increasingly dominant because they increase agricultural productivity, and *not* using them would cause dire consequences in the form of food shortages and hunger. Very simply, they would say, the practices of industrial agriculture allow farmers to grow more food—and growing food is, after all, the whole point of agriculture.

This answer satisfies many, but it shouldn't satisfy those who have read Chapter 1. First, it doesn't address the many seriously negative consequences—and threats to future productivity—known to be associated with the practices of industrial agriculture. Second, it doesn't acknowledge the existence of other, more sustainable means of increasing productivity and ensuring food security.

But recognizing the basic flaws of the "double-down-on-industrial-agriculture-to-feed-the-world" argument doesn't get us any closer to resolving the original quandary. Not only is the world as a whole taking a course in food production that is ultimately self-destructive, but a large number of people think that this is precisely the course the world *should* be taking. Clearly, something is going on that merits closer examination—and that something, we suggest, is related to beliefs, political commitments, economic interests, and the ways people interpret ideas and facts. To understand these factors, we must take a step back, look beyond agriculture itself, and examine the broader context within which agriculture operates; that is, we must look at markets, economic structures, government policies, politics, the struggles that occur between groups with different levels of power, and the conceptual frameworks people use to understand these things—all of which is included under the rubric of *society*. In taking this approach, we can begin to see that there are very strong social and economic reasons

FIGURE 24.1 Genetically modified corn growing in large-scale monoculture in Iowa. Unsustainable practices such as genetic engineering and input-intensive monoculture are becoming more widespread, defended by many as necessary for meeting the growing demand for food. (Photo courtesy of Paula R. Westerman.)

why human societies are moving in a seemingly irrational direction with regard to agriculture and why there is such widespread commitment to continuing in this direction.

We began to explore the relationship between agriculture and society in Chapter 2. In that chapter, we examined agroecosystems as human-managed ecosystems that respond to human needs and goals. Then we explored how, by scaling up the most concrete form of agroecosystem—the crop field or individual farm—we can conceptualize successive agroecosystem levels ranging through the region and the rural–urban landscape to the single, interconnected global food system. By taking into account all the manifestly social activities of producing, distributing, and consuming food, the agroecosystem concept puts agriculture in a social context.

But this is only the beginning of where we need to go, because the relationship between agriculture and society embodied in the agroecosystem concept is mostly formal. That is to say, the concept helps us understand that agriculture and society depend on each other and influence each other, but it doesn't provide us with the tools we need to examine the content of that interdependence and how it is related to people's beliefs and assumptions.

The key to acquiring these tools is to move beyond the natural-science framework within which agroecology was originally established and access some of the insights of the social sciences. That's the core purpose of this chapter. It is grounded in the idea that the ecological concepts on which agroecology is based, while absolutely necessary for comprehending the many nature–society interconnections in the food system, are insufficient for understanding phenomena unique to the social world that ultimately control the sustainability of the food system. In addition to ecological concepts, we also need analytical tools that pay attention to beliefs, values, and assumptions and how they are shaped by—and help to reinforce—the structures of social, political, and economic life. By incorporating these tools into the analytical approach and research agenda of agroecology, we can gain some understanding of why the food system continues on its destructive trajectory; this understanding, in turn, generates the realization that food-system change will not come about if agroecologists are content to merely design sustainable alternative agroecosystems. They must also advocate and work for fundamental change in the entire food system—including the beliefs and assumptions that form its social foundation—and work to manifest this change on the ground in partnership with those who actually work the land and consume the food it produces.

AGRICULTURE, NARROWLY CONCEIVED

Human beings understand the complex world they inhabit through simpler, more concrete things and relationships that are easier to understand. We take such things as face-to-face interactions, families, and stories of individual struggle and use them as metaphors, analogies, and models that allow us to make sense of hard-to-fathom abstractions like class structure, racism, and the national economy. The tangible and the immediate, in other words, offer frameworks on which we can hang more abstract ideas. For example, to understand the enormously complex world of economic activity, we use as a model the one-on-one interaction between an individual shopkeeper and his or her customers. Through this simple model, we can more easily understand complex phenomena such as supply and demand, even as they apply to national-level economies and international trade.

While helpful—and probably even essential—for comprehending the social world, models like this one have important limitations. Idealized and based on what happens at the simplest levels of social organization, their features are never fully parallel to those of social processes operating at the societal level, which have properties (much like ecosystems) that can exist only at those more complex levels. Moreover, these models often contain particular biases that end up shaping our conceptions when they are extended by analogy to higher social levels.

Such is the case with the models humans (in developed countries, at least) use to understand agriculture in its relationship to society. The basic model here is like that of the aforementioned shopkeeper–customer relationship: there's a farmer who grows food and there are those who come directly to the farmer to buy his or her food. The farmer's customers have certain needs and desires for food, which are thought of as "demand", and the farmer has certain amounts and kinds of food, which are conceived of as "supply". Supply and demand thus interact and affect each other: greater demand for a certain food induces the farmer to grow more of that food.

Extended by analogy to larger scales, this model forms the basis through which people understand the entire food-producing enterprise we call "agriculture". It influences the way most people—from food consumers to high-level policy makers—think about agriculture, and thus any issue related

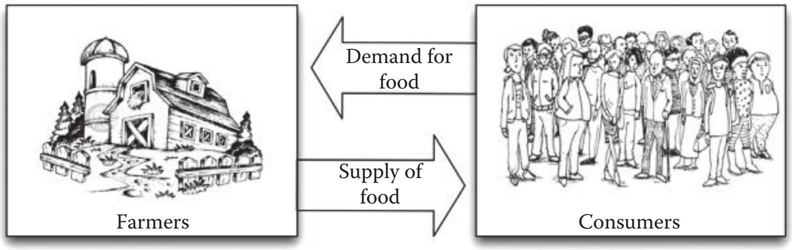


FIGURE 24.2 A conceptual model of the food system. In addition to vastly oversimplifying the food system, it encourages people to make certain assumptions about how the system works.

to food and food production, including hunger, food distribution, and the production methods used on farms. In this conception, agriculture is like one giant farm, the people who eat food (i.e., all people) are grouped together as "consumers," and the two are linked by supply and demand, just like the individual farmer and his customer. Demand from the consumer side influences what and how much farmers in the agriculture sphere grow and produce, and this makes up the supply of food—in a region, a nation, or the world as a whole. This model is illustrated in Figure 24.2.

It is easy to see how this model oversimplifies the food system as it was described in Chapter 2. Agriculture is walled off from all of the various physical factors of production: biodiversity, natural system processes and their ecological services, the supply of land and irrigation water, soil and soil quality, inputs like phosphorus and nitrogen, energy sources, climate, and so on. The people who work in the agricultural sector are all placed on an equal footing as "farmers", ignoring the fact that many are struggling smallholders or landless tenant farmers and others are huge transnational corporations with billions in annual revenue. The eaters of food are treated as a single monolithic block, erasing the inequalities that leave millions without food security. The huge apparatus that exists between the people who grow food and those who consume it—consisting of processors, brokers, distributors, manufacturers, wholesalers, and retailers—is overlooked entirely, as is the large proportion of food that is wasted along the way. The ability of agribusiness interests on the agriculture side to shape consumer demand through advertising and other means is completely left out as well. Perhaps most importantly, food production in this model is reduced to a merely technical problem in a purely economic context: to meet consumers' demand for food, farmers develop and use the methods that produce the most food for the least cost. Thought of in this way, farming methods are hidden inside the "black box" of agriculture; they are not the concern of anyone outside the agricultural enterprise.

If this simple economic model provides your conceptual framework for understanding agriculture, you are not apt to see much of a problem with the way agriculture operates in the world today. As long as agriculture (the one big farm) is meeting the overall demand for food from the world's food consumers, everything is OK. If you are aware of problems like hunger, soil erosion, and the polluting effects of agricultural runoff, you are likely to see them as unintended side effects, as essentially technical problems subject to technical solutions. If there is hunger in the world and the world's population is growing, that simply means that farmers must grow more food, and the technologies that enable the growing of more food, like GMOs, must therefore be used more extensively.

As the foregoing description suggests, there are many indicators that a particular writer or thinker is working from this model. If a writer says that food is grown by "farmers" (and the writer is not referring specifically to small-scale or family farms), then he or she may be making the erroneous assumption, embedded in the model, that all food production happens in the context of something resembling a family farm. If the writer is concerned primarily about "productivity" or "yield" and is ignoring the ecological and social impacts of industrial production methods, then the oversimple economic model may be clouding the writer's ability to see all the relevant aspects of agriculture.

It takes only a cursory survey of the news media and a sampling of the opinions of agricultural policy makers and experts to recognize that the model of agriculture portrayed in Figure 24.2 has enormous influence. It is the source of many of the taken-for-granted assumptions that underlie much of the public discussion of agriculture, hunger, population growth, and land use. Only with this model shaping public discourse, for example, could the 2013 World Food Prize be awarded to three individuals with key roles in developing GMO crops. Even those who are concerned about the negative environmental and social impacts of industrial agriculture find it hard to break free from the limits this model places on their thinking.

POLITICAL ECONOMY AND ECOLOGY OF FOOD SYSTEMS

A more complete model of agriculture's place in society, one that doesn't lead to systematic biases and blind spots, has, first of all, all the characteristics of the food-system model discussed in Chapter 2. That is, it includes social structures such as markets and government policies, recognizes that market mechanisms and price play important roles in how food is actually distributed among people, accounts for the diversity and complexity of production processes and the fact that much of agricultural production consists of nonfood industrial crops, and understands how agricultural production depends on and interacts with natural systems and the environment.

But to fully account for the role agriculture plays in the lives of actual human beings around the world, a better model must also take into account—and help explain the causes of—the inequities that exist in every aspect of the global food system. It must look at and understand differences in wealth between countries and regions, differences in access to food between classes of people, and differences among people in their ability to own land, have control over their life circumstances, and effect changes in the food system itself.

All of these aspects of inequality are wrapped up in the concept of *power*, one of the key concepts of the social sciences. A basic definition of power is that it is the overall ability to influence the behavior of others. But this simple definition, which conceives of power as an attribute of the individual, misses some of the key features of power as we are employing the term here. Power is a function of one's position relative to societal and cultural structures—most especially the divisions that exist along the lines of class, race, and gender—which means that power at the individual level depends on wealth, status, group membership, and access to knowledge. To the extent these things are passed on from generation to generation, power tends not to be redistributed. Also, and very importantly, power exists at a level beyond that of the individual: it is wielded by groups, corporations, governments, and nations as much as by individuals.

In the context of agriculture, a useful definition of individual power is the relative ability to control the circumstances and destiny of one's life, which is in turn critically dependent on access to and control of the resources (land, seeds, water, others' labor, etc.) needed to provide for one's needs, not the least important of which is food. By this gauge, billions of people around the world essentially have no power whatsoever, whereas a small minority—we can call them the elite—have so much power that it is difficult to even compare the two (Figure 24.3).

FIGURE 24.3 High-input, mechanized potato fields in rich bottomland near Quito, Ecuador (left), and peasant farming plots on resource-limited hilly land nearby (right). Participants in the global food system often have vastly different levels of power.

The unequal distribution of power within and between societies is arguably the most important factor shaping people's daily lives and experiences (Domhoff 2013). Likewise, the expression and maintenance of power are probably the most important determinants of the ways societies operate (Mills and Wolfe 2000). For these reasons, looking at issues of power is extraordinarily important for understanding anything humans do, including growing food. Many sociologists and political scientists, among others, accept this conclusion almost as an axiom; those who study agriculture and make the policies that govern it have, for a variety of reasons, been slower to embrace it.

Issues of power are *political* in the broad sense of the term. They go beyond the narrow sense of electoral politics and the contests of political parties. Big-picture politics has to do with recognizing the unequal distribution of power and taking action to challenge it. This kind of politics often exists outside the arenas of government, law, and policy, and it can take many forms.

A central message of this chapter is that agroecology needs to see the food system from the standpoint of the distribution of power—among farmers, among the eaters of food, and among all the many other components of the system. That is, this chapter encourages students of agroecology to view the food system through a political lens. When you do this, one key feature of the food system stands out right away: most of the power is held by the wealthier nations, agrofood corporations, those who run and own these corporations, and those who own large tracts of land (Holt-Gimenez and Patel 2009; Hauter 2012). As we will see, the failure to take power and power differences into account is related very directly to beliefs that lead to support of the current system of industrial agriculture.

CORPORATE CONTROL OF THE FOOD SYSTEM

Although we tend to think of our food as being produced by "farmers"—a word that conjures up images of small family farms—the bulk of the food consumed in the developed world is inseparable from a global system dominated by a relative handful of large corporations, commonly referred to as agribusiness. Their control extends to every level of food production and distribution: supply of the factors of production (seeds, agrochemicals, fertilizers, farm machinery, etc.), ownership of land, production of feed for livestock, livestock production, production of most major crops, food processing and transportation, wholesale distribution, and retail sales. In this vast system, food is treated as a **commodity**—an item valued for its ability to generate wealth for those who own agribusiness corporations and their various forms of capital. Because of its scope, the corporate-dominated food system tends to draw all food into its gravitational field—that is, it acts to **commodify** food in general, to turn all food into a commodity. Even when food is produced on a farm that could still be accurately termed a "small family farm", the owner of that farm will likely find it difficult to keep his or her corn or broccoli or hogs from being caught up in the

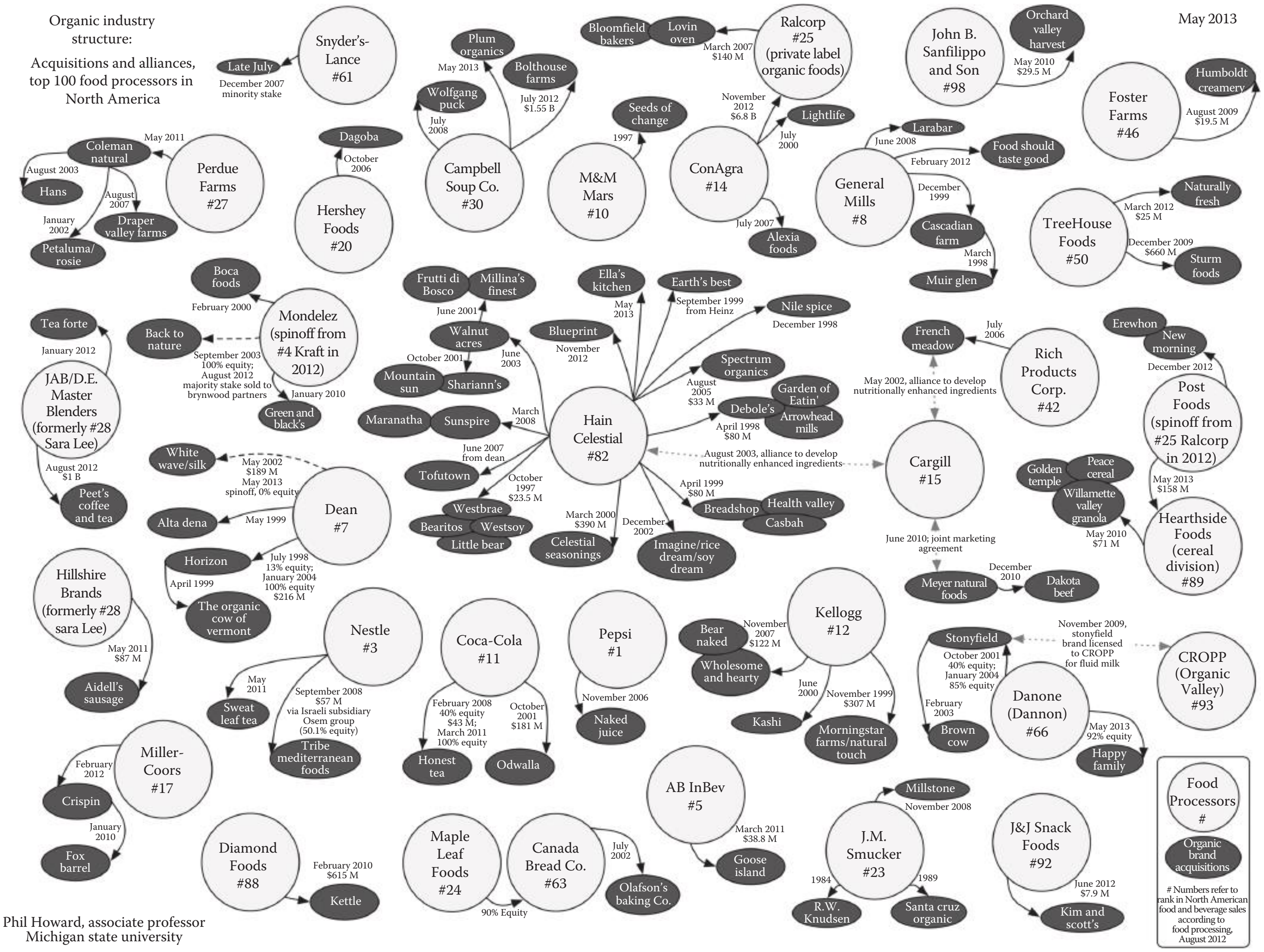


FIGURE 24.4 Corporate ownership of organic food brands in North America. Most of the organic food brands are owned by larger agrofood corporations. Including all the brands owned by this relative handful of corporations would require a page many times this size. (Graphic by Philip H. Howard, Michigan State University, East Lansing, MI.)

corporate-dominated, commodity-oriented network of food processing, distribution, and sales.

In most of the countries of the world, it is difficult as a consumer to avoid supporting these corporate food giants. Many of the companies that sell food products labeled as "organic," "biological," "natural," and "ecological," for example, are actually owned by larger transnational corporations (see Figure 24.4).

But why does it matter that ownership of farmland, seeds, fertilizer, food processing facilities, and transportation and distribution networks is in the hands of corporations? What does this have to do with power and inequality? The most direct answer to this question is that agrofood corporations control enormous amounts of wealth and own much of the physical and financial infrastructure of agricultural production, and this is both a cause and a consequence of holding enormous *power* relative to other actors in the food system. Nestlé, for example, which operates in wholesale and retail food markets worldwide, has annual revenues of about $122 billion, which is more than the gross national products of many of the countries in the world. United States-based Archer Daniels Midland (ADM), with annual revenue in excess of $90 billion, dominates food processing, manufacturing, and distribution. It too, controls more wealth than exists in some individual countries.

The enormous wealth of agrofood corporations translates into considerable power to shape the food system according to their needs and self-interests. They can influence government legislation, set prices artificially high, shape consumer behavior, negotiate favorable terms for expansion through buyouts, and contain threats to their dominance.

Although corporations' role in the global food system is so dominant that some researchers have described the current system as a "corporate food regime" (McMichael 2009; Hauter 2012), corporations are not alone in exercising control over food production, distribution, and consumption. They enlist as allies all sorts of other institutions, even those ostensibly outside the profit-making realm. According to McMichael (2009), a leading proponent of the food regime idea, the other institutions that make up the current corporate food regime include government ministries, global agricultural institutions, land grant universities, think tanks, and big philanthropic foundations. All with a stake in maintaining the dominance of the corporate food regime, these institutions act in concert with agrofood corporations to enforce unwritten "rules" about how the food system should function. They also promote a certain way of perceiving agriculture—one that supports the status quo of industrial methods and corporate control and is distinctly nonpolitical.

RELATIONSHIPS OF POWER IN AGRICULTURE KEPT OUT OF THE SPOTLIGHT

There is a general reluctance (or inability) among many scholars, planners, policy makers, officials, commentators, and people in general to see food and food production in terms of power, wealth concentration, and inequality. This widespread refusal to see agriculture in the "deeply political" way discussed earlier puts a great many important issues off limits—not just for discussion but for construction *as* issues. In other words, the prevailing nonpolitical orientation toward agriculture tends to keep certain issues out of our consciousness entirely—in particular the wealth and power of agrofood corporations and the very unequal distribution of power in the whole food system.

It is true that food issues in general do become "political" at times. Citizens and their elected officials argue about whether foods derived from GMO crops should be labeled or not, for example. In another good example, periodically the US Congress wrangles over the size of the subsidies provided for in the annual agricultural appropriations bill, and this receives some attention in the news media. But issues like these are nearly always discussed in the public arena in narrow terms that leave the fundamental issues unchallenged. The size of producer subsidies in the United States is important, of course, but the existence of the subsidies is rarely questioned, and members of Congress don't generally discuss the role of the subsidies in encouraging consolidation in commodity production and pushing out small farmers. Similarly, in the GMO labeling debate (Figure 24.5), the proponents of labeling push the labels as ways of protecting consumers from the hypothesized (and in some cases probably nonexistent) health risks of GMO foods instead of using the issue as a way of showing citizens how the use of most current GMO crops increases corporate control over food production and locks farmers into an unsustainable cycle of pest control escalation.

FIGURE 24.5 Slogans from campaigns to require labeling of GMO foods. Although their focus on consumer protection makes their goals realistic, such campaigns often fail to point out the relationships between GMOs, corporate control of agriculture, and unsustainability. In this way, they fail to enter a deeper level of political debate that might call into question more fundamental aspects of the food system.

If we exclude the narrowly political treatment of food-related issues and look for evidence of more deeply political engagement with food-system issues, we find little of it—at least in developed countries where the majority of citizens have good food security. Deeply political orientations exist everywhere, of course, but what controls the parameters of public debate are the orientations of the mainstream—the bulk of citizens and those among them who shape policy and manage economies—and in general the mainstream view in many countries is to think of and treat food and food production in a nonpolitical way.

Consider that symbol of food convenience that becomes ubiquitous in the United States and much of the developed world: the hamburger. When you want a hamburger, what factors cross your mind? If you are like most people you probably don't consider where the cattle from which the meat was derived were raised, or what they ate. You probably don't wonder who owns the land on which they were raised, or who owns the land on which their feed was grown, or who owns the facility in which the grain for their feed was processed. You probably don't care how the money you pay for the hamburger is distributed among the many people involved in getting the hamburger into your hands, from the server at the restaurant to the owner of the meat-processing plant. Even further from your mind is your role, as consumer, in putting smaller ranching operations out of business or fattening the profits of the drug company providing the grower with antibiotics. No, if you are like most people, you think mostly about the price, taste, serving size, and the reputation and image of the outlet selling the burger. If health and diet issues are a concern, you might care if the beef is grass fed or not—although that's not likely a choice anyway. In short, in buying a hamburger you are acting as a consumer, and food consumption—for most people with the money to buy a hamburger—is a nonpolitical act.

And food consumption, remember, is the most direct way in which people interact with the food system. If the consumption of food is not viewed in political terms, it's not likely that the food system in general will be seen this way either.

To understand why the food system and its industrial agriculture basis are so resistant to critique, and why they receive so much implicit and explicit support from policy makers, governments, and businesses, we can begin by returning to the model of agriculture depicted in Figure 24.2. There is nothing remotely political—that is, nothing related to or suggestive of an unequal distribution of power—in this model. Consumers and "farmers" are on an equal footing; all "farmers" are characterized as friendly smallholders. But the absence of any power-mediated relationships is not the only failing of this model. It misleads people into thinking that by exercising choice in their expression of “demand”, they have a certain kind of power. But this power is trivial compared to the kind of power we have been discussing. By highlighting this trivial power of consumer choice, the model hides the kind of power that really matters.

How did an oversimple model of agriculture’s function in society come to have so much influence over agricultural policy and development, and even over the way that the public in general perceives the food system? Why, in other words, is food nonpolitical?

Containing Threats to Corporate Control of the Food System

If citizens in developed countries were fully aware of how corporate control shapes the nature of the food system—and therefore their lives and potentially those of their grandchildren—they might not be particularly happy. A clear picture of the concentration of wealth and ownership in the hands of top agrofood executives, an understanding of the extent to which the wealth and power of these individuals is dependent on the practices of industrial agriculture, and knowledge of the ways in which treating food as a commodity puts the health of people and the environment at risk— all would generate concern, resentment, and anger. People would question the fairness, ethics, and legitimacy of a system that disempowers large numbers of people and puts at risk the future productivity of the world’s agricultural lands in order to generate wealth in the present for a relative few. Since mass protests against agrofood corporations and popular movements to completely reshape the food system are limited and sporadic, it is reasonable to conclude that the requisite amounts of knowledge and awareness are not present. Why?

One way to answer this question is to invoke the currency of the simple economic model of agriculture depicted in Figure 24.2, but that just begs the question of why this model is so pervasive in the first place. To answer this deeper question, we have to introduce the often-contentious term **ideology**. An ideological system is a set of beliefs and taken-for-granted assumptions about the way the world works. A variety of ideological systems exist in the world, but most—including the one that protects the status quo of the food system—share the characteristic of coming into being to stabilize a society or social arrangement based on a very unequal distribution of power and wealth.

A society with a particularly skewed distribution of power, where a powerful minority benefits at the expense of a relatively powerless majority, is inherently unstable. The powerless have every reason to resist this arrangement and rebel. Knowing this, the powerful are careful to take steps to protect their advantage. Throughout history, this has often taken the form of securing a monopoly on the use of force. Monarchs, ruling classes, ruling parties, and dominant institutions have typically employed armies, special guards, and secret police to make it clear to their subjects, vassals, or citizens that any attempt to alter or question the distribution of power would be met with violence–force.

But sustaining the threat of violence is not the only way that powerful groups maintain their power. Nearly every powerful regime that has existed in the world has also built around itself a protective shell consisting of ideas and beliefs. These ideas and beliefs *legitimize* the regime’s power by convincing those subject to that power that the regime is doing what is necessary to restore or maintain a divinely dictated order, to repel external threats, or to see to the needs of the people. Ultimately, legitimizing ideas and beliefs are more powerful than armies and police forces, and easier and less costly to maintain. When a system of legitimizing ideas and beliefs has taken hold in a society, it gives the order imposed by those in power a natural and taken-for-granted character—that is, people begin to find it difficult to imagine any alternatives or mount any fundamental critique or opposition. Because of the effectiveness of legitimizing beliefs and taken-for-granted assumptions, powerful groups in more recent times—particularly in democratic societies—have been able to dispense altogether with coercion based on the threat of force and to maintain their positions of power entirely through ideas and beliefs.

Although we can look back at regimes, empires, and dictators in the past—or at current regimes vilified by the societies in which we live—and see their legitimizing belief systems as “ideology” or their more explicit efforts at inculcating these beliefs as “propaganda”, it is not so easy to look at our own societies and recognize that similar things are going on. The basic reason for this should be obvious: as members of our societies, we are necessarily immersed in our society’s belief systems, and these beliefs, by definition, don’t advertise themselves *as* beliefs, but rather as taken-for-granted descriptions of reality.

For this reason, it won’t necessarily ring true for you that our own corporate-dominated food system is insulated from criticism and protected from threats by an ideology. But that is a succinct and accurate way of describing the situation. The ideological system surrounding the corporate-dominated food system focuses our attention on the trivial “power” involved in consumers choosing food products, obscures the ways in which real power differences in the food system reinforce highly unequal outcomes in society, and convinces us that yield is all that matters in the realm of food production. In other words, it systematically limits the terms of any debate about the growing of food. The corporate actors in the food system can’t be criticized because the ideological framework associates them with all the positives of the system and dissociates them from the negatives; the social and environmental harms of industrial agriculture are framed as mere side effects rather than as inevitable consequences of a fundamentally flawed approach to agriculture. Perhaps most powerfully, the ideological system surrounding the food system convinces people that they have a stake in the survival and smooth functioning of the system—if you want that hamburger, you’d better not rock the boat.

If an ideological system surrounds and protects the food system, then an even broader ideological system must exist at the level of the larger economic and political order in which the food system is embedded, with the two reinforcing each other. This larger ideological system, which legitimizes free-market capitalism, hinges on the widely held belief that the self-interested pursuit of profit in free markets insures both economic progress and the distribution of its benefits among all people. In the food system, this belief has the corollary that free markets, private ownership, and profit seeking are what make all of the benefits of the current food system possible, namely abundance, diversity, and choice. Even though these are bedrock assumptions for many, they are ideological because they require that one ignore a very consequential facet of reality. Although the self-interested pursuit of profit in free markets is indeed responsible for much of what we think of as "progress," it is also the mainspring—to limit the list to the food system alone—of the industrial approach to agriculture and the concentration of power in the hands of agribusiness. Acknowledging both the positive and negative consequences of free-market capitalism—which might help undermine faith in the legitimacy of the corporate-dominated food system—is difficult when the ideology of the free market is strong and widespread in society.

One of the reasons why many people are uncomfortable with the notion of ideology existing in their own societies (or affecting their own thinking) is that they think of ideology as something that it is imposed deliberately on others by people conscious of what they are doing. For the most part, however, this is not how ideologies work. Those in positions of power, who benefit the most from the ideologies that legitimize their power, often accept the elements of those ideologies as unquestioningly as anyone. They are not cynically trying to convince others of something they know is false or misleading; they sincerely believe they are doing what's right and even working to make the world a better place. Moreover, the ideas and beliefs that make up an ideological system cannot generally be dismissed as being merely "false." Most contain some degree of truth; that is, in fact, what makes them so powerful. It's only when they articulate with all the other elements of the ideological system that ideas and beliefs gain the ability to obscure certain realities and make a particular structure of social arrangements seem natural and inevitable. Thus, ideologies must be understood as all encompassing and largely invisible—integrated belief systems that have powerful effects precisely because people aren't aware of using them to guide their thinking and perception.

FIGURE 24.6 The illusion of choice on the cereal shelf. Despite the large number of cereal types and brands, the primary ingredients are sugar and a few basic grains. The ideological system surrounding the food system leads consumers to celebrate this choice as a form of power and to ignore the consequences of corporate actors holding much of the real power in the food system.

An example of an ideological construction may serve to illustrate these ideas. The transnational agrofood corporation ADM identifies itself as "a vital link between farmers and consumers." On its face, the statement is truthful—the company focuses on processing raw agricultural products and then distributing them, so it is accurate to think of it as a "link" between farmers and consumers. Further, there is no doubt that the top executives at ADM take this description of their company's role as an element of faith and are proud of it. And yet, this statement is irrefutably ideological: it obscures the fact in serving as this link in the way it does, ADM insures that billions of the dollars consumers spend on food every year go not to the farmers but to the company's owners and stockholders. It also obscures the fact that in the process of becoming this "vital link" since its incorporation in 1923, ADM has done more to promote the commodification of agriculture than perhaps any other single entity in the world (Hauter 2012).

Because ideologies aren't belief systems imposed on the gullible masses by those who know better, but are more accurately described as systems that condition everyone's thinking, it is not quite right to say that those with power create ideologies and use them to maintain their power. However, it can't be denied that in the global food system, the powerful benefit hugely from an ideology that makes the current system seem to be the best of all possible worlds. It is also true that those with power are the ones who do the work of promoting, distributing, maintaining and strengthening the elements of this legitimizing ideology through advertising and public relations, and through the educational, funding, governing, and media efforts of the aforementioned allies. Given these realities about the way ideology functions in the food system, it is not unreasonable to say that agrofood corporations and others with the most power have a clear stake in maintaining the food system's ideology—which is essentially the same thing as saying they have a stake in keeping food and agriculture nonpolitical. They may not always do this consciously, but they do it, because it is in line with their interests.

Link between Inequality and Unsustainability

You might be wondering why this chapter has been focusing so much on beliefs, inequality in human societies, and the relationship between the two. Why should we, as agroecologists, be concerned with these issues? Inequality is unquestionably a social evil when it is manifested as food insecurity, short life expectancy, and low quality of life for billions, but what does it have to do with sustainability? This question needs to be answered directly before we begin to explore, for the field of agroecology, the implications of power and ideology in agriculture.

We've actually touched on the answer to this question throughout this chapter in linking the "power structure" and corporate control of agriculture to the industrial practices discussed in Chapter 1. Because of these links, inequality in agriculture goes hand in hand with its unsustainability.

In many ways, inequality is a direct cause of some aspects of the food system's unsustainability. Dispossessed from their land, for example, the rural poor are more likely to pursue environmentally destructive practices on marginal land to survive (e.g., González de Molin 2013). In addition, the flip side of this poverty—the relative affluence of urban consumers in developed and emerging economies—is a precondition and cause of food overconsumption and waste. But the more significant link is that social harms like hunger and poverty and environmental harms like greenhouse gas emissions and soil degradation arise from the same ultimate causes. The practices that maintain and exacerbate inequality in agriculture (proprietary technologies, intensification, monoculture, etc.) and the economic structures under which these practices exist are the very same things that most broaden agriculture's negative ecological footprint.

One can also argue that the social consequences of the continued dominance of the corporate food regime in agriculture are as unsustainable as its ecological consequences. Growing numbers of people who formerly engaged in small-scale and subsistence agriculture in the rural parts of the world are being displaced from their land as corporations (and, in the case of China, states) apply the priorities dictated by the market dynamics of the food system; these people are ending up unemployed or poorly employed in urban centers, often worse off than they were before (Holt-Gimenez and Patel 2009) (Figure 24.7). Such a trend cannot continue without consequences for social stability, especially with continued population growth. Together, therefore, the social and ecological harms arising from the global food system lead the system toward a future when its unsustainability threatens to become manifest.

Underlying all these relationships is a fundamental aspect of the food system: it prioritizes the accumulation of wealth over the satisfaction of food needs. Every part of the system, from farmworkers and growers to global corporations, participates in a process of extracting value from plants, soil, human labor, machines, and fossil-fuel energy and siphoning it upward to shareholders and owners. In this system, profit making is an imperative, overshadowing everything else, including maintaining the long-term health of the soil, providing wholesome food, and treating farm laborers fairly.

Maximizing the generation of wealth entails certain goals and methods. Just as in manufacturing—the model for industrial agriculture—the highest possible profit comes from reducing labor costs, controlling sources of raw materials, externalizing environmental and social costs, making production as efficient as possible, and keeping prices high. From these goals and methods come the practices of industrial agriculture, which produce both social and ecological harms, as detailed in Chapter 1. As long as the economic logic of the food system demands that wealth be accumulated and concentrated upward, the model of industrial agriculture will persist as the most rational and efficient means for allowing this to happen. And as long as industrial agriculture dominates the food system, the world's poorest people and the planet's life-support systems will continue to bear the brunt of its costs—with the consequences eventually extending to everyone.

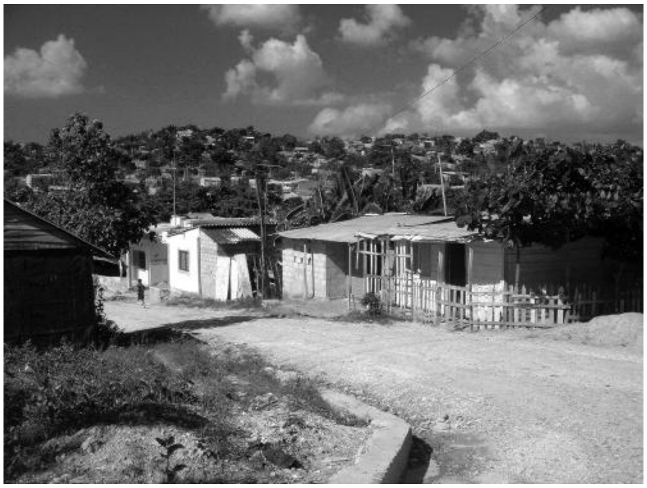


FIGURE 24.7 **A settlement of displaced people on the urban fringe of Cartagena, Colombia.** As the large-scale, mechanized systems of industrial agriculture replace traditional rural systems in the developing world, there are both social and ecological costs. The social costs include growing urban poverty, as former peasants are displaced from their land by the expansion of industrial agricultural systems and move to urban centers with inadequate employment opportunities. (Photo courtesy of Roseann Cohen).

BROADENING THE AGROECOLOGICAL PERSPECTIVE

Recall the question that opened this chapter: why is human society pursuing an unsustainable path in agriculture? Now we are in a position to better answer this question. The answer has a number of interrelated parts:

- The unsustainability of the current food system derives in large part from a central dynamic of the system: it is organized around the pursuit of private profit and the passing-off of costs onto societies and natural systems (the "public" sphere).
- As a system that prioritizes profit seeking and wealth accumulation, the food system disproportionately benefits a relative minority of people:

those who own land, control the means of production and distribution, and own the corporations that dominate the system.

- If everyone recognized these key aspects of the food system—that it generates inequality, concentrates power and wealth, and degrades the natural systems on which food production depends—then the food system would not be seen as legitimate.
- In part because those with the most power have a huge stake in the way the system functions, a system of beliefs and ideas—an ideology—has grown around the food system and hidden from view the aspects that would cause people to question its legitimacy.
- The food system's ideology works to legitimate the food system, making it seem inevitable and natural and systematically limiting the kinds of thinking that could coalesce into a serious challenge to its dominance.

Putting these parts together, we can see why the food system continues on its present trajectory even though agroecologists and those in allied fields have pointed out—and supported with solid evidence—that this trajectory will lead to a future no one wants. As long as the ideological system that legitimizes the food system remains unchallenged, and as long as the food system can continue to generate the profits that sustain it and deliver the surface-level benefits on which its ideological system depends, then it will continue on its current path.

This conclusion has clear implications for agroecology as a field. If agroecology hopes to elicit fundamental change in the food system, it must do more than point out the unsustainable nature of the system in ecological terms or design more sustainable techniques—it must challenge the ideological system that protects the corporate food regime and it must take issue with the concentration of power and the unequal distribution of wealth that lie at the heart of the way the food system operates (Holt-Gimenez and Patel 2009; González de Molin 2013).

DELEGITIMIZING THE GLOBAL FOOD SYSTEM

As argued earlier, a system of beliefs and assumptions—an ideological system—insulates the corporate-dominated food system from challenges. It does this primarily by making corporate control of the food system and the practices of industrial agriculture seem entirely legitimate—that is, right, proper, and necessary for promoting the common good. If there is any chance of altering the direction in which the food system is heading, it lies in calling into question the beliefs and assumptions of the ideological system that protect the food system and its status quo. In this way, the food system can be delegitimized and understood as a threat to the future. A direct way of poking holes in the food system's ideology is to challenge the taken-for-granted assumptions that make up its substance. These assumptions include the following:

- It does not matter who produces our food, or how they do it, as long as there is enough of it.
- Yield is the only variable to consider when looking at the satisfaction of food needs.
- Food shortages around the world are the result of inefficient and incomplete application of modern agricultural techniques and of western-style markets.
- Eliminating hunger requires an increase in agricultural productivity.
- The more urban dwellers in the world the better, because their consumption drives economic growth.
- Working directly to produce food—getting one's hands dirty in the soil—is a form of drudgery from which all people should be liberated.
- Competition in our market-based economy insures that food will be produced in the most efficient way possible, lowering prices and increasing supply.
- Consumer demand and the market drive everything that food producers do—and rightly so.
- Most problems in the agricultural sphere have technical solutions.

Challenging assumptions like these happens at two levels. The first is personal and internal: you need to recognize that a particular assumption is an assumption and not a description of reality, that it limits your thinking, that it describes reality imperfectly, and that it is part of a larger ideological system that limits your thinking. The second level is external and expressly political: disputing the assumption in the public sphere, convincing others that it hides relationships of power that should be laid bare, articulating what those relationships of power actually are, and consciously changing the kind of role you play in the food system. Some of the resources listed in the Internet Resources and Recommended Readings section can be helpful at both of these levels.

Challenging an ideological system is always difficult. Those who hold the beliefs being challenged will resist, for obvious reasons, any overturning of their worldview, and they will likely claim you are guilty of hubris for assuming you have clear vision and they don't. But taking a critical perspective with respect to the ideological system that supports industrial agriculture is not the same as claiming you are outside that system and immune from its effects. Nor does it mean that you have managed to free yourself from other ideological systems as well. What it does entail is an awareness of ideologies and how they "work"—the systematic ways they influence people's thinking (including your own) and the roles they play in supporting systems based on relationships of power.

CHANGING THE FOOD SYSTEM

A deeply political analysis of the food system and an understanding of the ideology that protects it are necessary for changing the system, but they are not sufficient. Once we understand the fundamental issues, we have a better idea of what needs to change, but we don't have tools and strategies for effecting those changes. For this reason, political analysis and critique must be joined by political, social, and economic actions. This entails a considerable broadening of agroecology's goals and perspective, an expansion that makes it a *social movement* in addition to an academic field or discipline.

Working for concrete changes in society and in the food system may be slow and incremental, but it has the important effect of supporting the effort to delegitimize the current world food system, its corporate control and its reliance on industrial agricultural practices. As real alternatives are created—or even just proposed and advocated for—people can more readily see the flaws in the current system and recognize that the food system as a whole could be structured otherwise.

Working out the strategies and goals that agroecology should adopt as a social movement focused on changing the food system is a large topic. We will explore this topic in more depth in the next two chapters. Some of the basic elements of a social-movement approach in agroecology are the following:

- **Rely on farmer-generated agroecological knowledge.** Understand how this knowledge is a necessary part of developing more sustainable food systems that provide alternatives to the industrial agriculture paradigm (Altieri 2004; Altieri and Toledo 2011; Gliessman 2013; Martinez-Torres and Rosset 2014).
- **Embrace a transdisciplinary approach.** Engage with and integrate various disciplines and knowledge systems (including indigenous and traditional ones) to emphasize practical problem solving (Wilken 1988; Altieri 2004; Fish et al. 2008; Francis et al. 2008; Méndez et al. 2013).
- **Integrate research and action.** Involve a diversity of stakeholders as active participants in an iterative process in which practical research informs social-change efforts and those efforts lead to new knowledge, which inspires more research, and so on (Bacon et al. 2005; Eksvärd et al. 2009; Méndez et al. 2013).
- **Build tomorrow's food system today, in microcosm.** Through community-supported agriculture and other means, create local food networks that revitalize farming as a livelihood and bring consumers and farmers closer together (see Chapter 25).
- **Increase public awareness of food politics.** Encourage people to overcome the consumer sensibility and become food citizens who are aware of the political, economic, and social consequences of every act of consumption (see Chapter 25).
- **Foster a food justice movement.** Through a clear understanding of the need for change, the current alternative food movement can become a force for resistance and food justice for everyone (Borras et al. 2008; Goodman et al. 2011).

A disquieting consequence of understanding the depth of the food system's embeddedness in extraordinarily resilient social and economic structures is the recognition that changing the food system in any fundamental way will be very difficult. Changing the food system is a big order because at a fundamental level it means changing the way human beings relate to nature, land, resources, the earth's biota, and each other. But these relationships need to change anyway if humanity is going to successfully confront the challenges posed by climate change, widespread ecological collapse, and population growth. In this sense, agroecology is part of a larger movement aimed at insuring long-term human survival.

Avoiding Cooptation

The corporate-dominated food system has a tremendous capacity for defusing and absorbing demands for change. It does this through a process of cooptation, in which the demands are met on a superficial level, satisfying enough people to take the wind out of the movement's sails without affecting the more fundamental characteristics of the regime. The organic food movement is a good example (Guthman 2004). Although the movement from which it originated may remain a source of serious challenges, the "corporate regime" has turned the demand for organically grown food into an issue of personal health and choice, directing all the movement's energy into those arenas and away from the more fundamental demand that food be grown at a smaller scale with fewer inputs of any kind. A direct sign of this cooptation is that most organic growers, distributors, and processors have been bought up by larger agrofood corporations so that organic food can become just one more option among consumers' choices (Howard 2009; see Figure 24.4). This satisfies most consumers without changing the system in a truly fundamental way. Although the food is produced in accordance with the rules of organic labeling, it has nevertheless been brought into the orbit of industrial production: it is large scale, intensive, mostly lacking in diversity, and dependent on inputs (Figure 24.8).

The power of a deeply political critique of the food system is that it can avoid cooptation. A deeply political critique, by definition, focuses on the fundamental characteristics of the system—the concentration of wealth, the unequal distribution of power, and the social and ecological costs of the profit-making imperative—which cannot be modified without a transformation of the whole system. Demands for healthier food, or food produced without pesticides, can be accommodated by the corporate food regime; demands for returning food production to those who live on and understand the land cannot. The latter type of demand retains its power to challenge the corporate food regime itself. It activates an alternative paradigm, a different standpoint from which the ideological cloak of the food system is seen for what it is, and from which an alternative future can be imagined.

FIGURE 24.8 A very large acreage in the Cuyama Valley (Santa Barbara County, CA) planted with organic carrots and managed through input substitution. This crop satisfies the legal requirements of "organic", but it is produced in accordance with the basic methods of industrial agriculture.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. The so-called "Green Revolution" led to new agricultural technologies and significant crop yields in some sectors of agriculture, but the number of hungry people in the world today is larger than ever. Why did the green revolution not solve the problem of hunger?
2. In his book of essays *What Are People For?* (1990), Wendell Berry wrote the following: "Eating is an agricultural act…. There is, then, a politics of food that, like any politics, involves our freedom. We still (sometimes) remember that we cannot be free if our minds and voices are controlled by someone else. But we have neglected to understand that we cannot be free if our food and its sources are controlled by someone else. The condition of the passive consumer of food is not a democratic condition. One reason to eat responsibly is to live free." What is Berry saying here, and what do you think about it?
3. Agroecologists have as much to learn from farmers as they do from science. What sorts of insights about how to make the food system more sustainable might farmers have that would be difficult to gain purely from scientific research?
4. Describe an example of "food democracy" in action. It could be something you've experienced firsthand (e.g., a local election) or something you've read about. What is the democratic essence of your example? To what extent did the example politicize agriculture in the deep sense described in this chapter?
5. Paradigm shifts are said to require major ideological change. In order for food justice to be a part of the paradigm shift in food systems, what kinds of changes in ideology need to occur?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Civil Eats
www.civileats.com
Civil Eats is a daily news source for critical thought about the American food system. It publishes stories that shift the conversation around sustainable agriculture in an effort to build economically and socially just communities.

Food Democracy Now!
www.fooddemocracynow.org
A grassroots movement of more than 650,000 farmers and citizens dedicated to building a sustainable food system that protects our natural environment, sustains farmers and nourishes families through the organization of both online campaigns and in-person actions across the country.

Food First/Institute for Food and Development Policy
www.foodfirst.org
The *Institute for Food and Development Policy/Food First* analyzes the root causes of global hunger, poverty, and ecological degradation and develops solutions in partnership with movements working for social change.

Food Politics by Marion Nestle
www.foodpolitics.com
The blog site for Dr. Marion Nestle, one of the world's leaders in linking nutrition and health. Her research focuses on how science and society influence dietary advice and practice.

Global Development and Environment Institute at Tufts University, Medford, MA
www.ase.tufts.edu/gdea
An academic research center that emphasizes ecological health and the correlation between social and economic well-being. Recent work has focused on what is required to promote socially and environmentally just and sustainable development.

Organic Consumers Association
www.organicconsumers.org
Through this website, the OCA publishes a weekly newsletter ("Organic Bytes") aimed at educating consumers about issues of health, justice, and sustainability in the food system, and how being an organic consumer can motivate change.

Union of Concerned Scientists
www.ucsusa.org/food_and_agriculture/
A direct link to the food and agriculture programs of this important organization. UCS is a leader in efforts to transform US agriculture in a sustainable and healthy direction. Their expert analysis provides a scientifically grounded perspective that helps shape better food policy.

RECOMMENDED READINGS

Elton, S. 2013. *Consumed: Food for a Finite Planet*. The University of Chicago Press: Chicago, IL.

An in-depth exploration of the corporate takeover of the soil and the seeds of our food system that is balanced with a powerfully hopeful set of stories of how we can replace the industrial food system with something that makes sense for the planet and its people.

Gottlieb, R. and A. Joshi. 2010. *Food Justice*. MIT Press: Cambridge, MA.

An important contribution to the food policy literature that describes in detail why the current food system is unjust to everyone from farmworkers to food eaters, and the political action needed to bring justice, fairness, and real health to all communities.

Hauter, W. 2012. Foodopoly: *The Battle over the Future of Food and Farming in America*. The New Press: New York.

A compelling account by a food activist of how our food systems have been captured by corporate agribusiness, the food crisis this has generated, what we can do about it, and the urgency for effective action.

Patel, R. 2008. *Stuffed and Starved: The Hidden Battle for the World Food System*. Melville House: New York.

A penetrating exposé of the power struggles going on in world food systems, with a focus on tracing the development of the current social and economic injustices that have been created.

25 Community and Culture in the Remaking of the Food System

In his book *Radical Agriculture*, published in 1976, Rich Merrill wrote about the need to "get culture back into agriculture" (Merrill 1976). His was an early voice calling attention to the negative effects of a process that had already been under way for decades: the transformation of agriculture into agribusiness.

Merrill was playing with the dual meaning of *culture*, substituting the meaning having to do with the tilling of the soil with the meaning we have in mind when we use the phrase *human culture*. In this latter sense, culture is an integrated system of human knowledge, belief, and behavior. So Merrill was essentially warning us that agriculture was being drained of its humanity—that the values, behaviors, and social relationships that once supported a stewardship orientation to farmland were falling away.

Now, four decades later, Merrill's plea is as relevant as ever. The agribusiness model, with its drive toward industrialization of food production, has been remarkably successful by many measures, but it has completely changed the social and economic relationships surrounding the production and consumption of food. In reducing farmers to sources of farm products, farmworkers to labor costs, and the purchasers and eaters of food to consumers, it has ensured that the real people who populate our food systems will interact only through the medium of money, in a system organized to meet the demands of capital and little else.

Agriculture hasn't lost its grounding in human culture, as one reading of Merrill's statement might suggest; the problem is that the new beliefs, behavior, and relationships that have grown up in developed countries around the production and consumption of food have become major obstacles to sustainability, as well as being threats to public health. Consumers have no idea where the food they eat comes from or how their choices affect agroecosystems, the environment, and farmers and farmworkers. "Eating is an agricultural act," according to Wendell Berry, but consumers eat as if they are only satisfying their hunger—or, perhaps, asserting their social status or compensating for other fundamental needs not being well met. On the production side, farmers are increasingly at the mercy of a system that separates them from consumers and leaves them little choice but to play by agribusiness rules, often at the expense of their values.

In order to be sustainable, agriculture needs a "culture" surrounding it that promotes sustainable practices rather than helping to destroy them. To put this kind of culture back into agriculture, we need to reestablish the connections between farm and table, form human relationships around food that are more than economic, and promote values in relation to food consumption that look beyond narrow self-interest. This is one of the major challenges that define the social-change aspect of agroecology.

WIDENING GULF BETWEEN GROWING AND EATING

Thousands of years ago, when human cultures depended primarily on hunting and gathering, people's relationship with food was more direct, immediate, and personal than we can possibly appreciate today. Eating was necessarily grounded directly in the local environment, and each individual knew precisely where every morsel of food came from and how it came to be food—indeed, if you hadn't gathered or trapped or killed the food yourself, someone you knew had done so. The knowledge and technologies involved in food getting were the very foundation of culture.

With the advent of agriculture, the human relationship with food began to change. Most agricultural societies developed some specialization of labor: a portion of the population could grow sufficient food to feed the rest, "freeing" some people to engage in other tasks. This was the first step in the separation between the production of food and its consumption, but for millennia the dissociation was not extreme. Every member of a society knew generally where his or her food came from, was likely to acquire it directly from the person who produced it, understood how local weather affected the food supply, and so on. Food was necessarily local and expressed the uniqueness of each place. Since different foods were domesticated in different parts of the world (see Chapter 15), there arose remarkable diversity in diets, consumption patterns, and cuisines (Figure 25.1).

As agricultural societies became ever more complex and urban, and trade between regions more extensive, the geographic, ecological, economic, and social distance between growing and eating grew much wider. Once shipbuilding technology and navigation advanced far enough to allow oceans to be crossed, domesticated species spread rapidly beyond the confines of their areas of origin. Maize and potatoes came to the Old World, rice and wheat to the New. Sweet potatoes spread through the warmer parts of Asia. At the same time, trade in grain, pulses, fiber, leather, sugar, tobacco, and other agricultural products grew rapidly. As the universe of what was available to eat expanded for many people, cultures grew less distinct in their diets, and in the quantities and qualities of the foods they consumed. At the same time, an often complex distribution apparatus increasingly insinuated itself between the grower and the eater. Food items passed

FIGURE 25.1 A traditional Maya home garden in José Maria Morelos, Quintana Roo, Mexico. A wide array of subsistence crops are grown in such gardens, including fruits, vegetables, kitchen herbs, medicinal plants, and even small livestock such as chickens, ducks, and local breeds of pigs. Growing and raising food for one's own family and community was once a commonplace around the world; now, with more and more people living in cities and rural populations increasingly caught up in production for distant markets, subsistence agriculture has become the exception rather than the rule.

from trader to broker to merchant in their lengthening journey from field to table, their prices and social meaning determined by the impersonal forces of the market.

This process has continued to the present day to produce the corporate-dominated global food system described in the previous chapter. Increasingly, food has become a commodity, bought and sold on a market that is increasingly global in scope. At the same time, the number of linkages between the grower of the food and the person who consumes it has increased over time, widening the social as well as the geographic distance between them. Because of these dynamics, we have reached a point where the act of eating, for a large number of people in the world, is completely divorced from the basic agricultural act of growing the food. This situation is attractive on the surface—the world's more affluent people get to enjoy an amazing cornucopia of foodstuffs at relatively low prices and without dirtying their hands in the soil—but it comes with a variety of consequences. Most notably, it stands as one of the most significant barriers to sustainability.

GLOBAL SUPERMARKET

From the standpoint of food choice and availability, consumers in much of the world have never had it better. Raw materials are purchased from farmers at low prices, converted into an incredible array of processed, packaged, and preserved food items that hardly resemble the products they were made from, and distributed all over the world. Consumers, for their part, avidly embrace the ready availability of food that is convenient and pleasing to the palate. As the world population becomes increasingly urban and many people gain more disposable income, they want to eat more meat and fish, and more of the wide array of processed, convenience, and fast-food items now on the market. The global food system is happy to oblige, especially since the foods for which demand is growing are also those with the highest profit margins.

But a global food system designed to accommodate and encourage demand for diverse, palate-pleasing, convenient food brings with it a variety of negative consequences for consumers:

- *Food is less fresh.* Because much of the food we eat must travel a long distance to get to us, it is not particularly fresh. Even produce, shipped rapidly by air or truck, often under refrigeration, is often picked before it's ripe.
- *Food is less nutritious.* When surviving transport and storage is the major consideration, the breeding (or genetic engineering) process that produces the seeds is likely to have sacrificed taste and nutritive content. In addition, food that must survive long-distance transport and storage is subjected to a variety of processes—overcooking, drying, freezing, vacuum packing, pasteurization, and irradiation—that tends to remove its nutrients.
- *Food is less healthy.* Packaged and processed foods have added preservatives and a variety of other added ingredients—such as salt, sugar, and fats—that are linked to obesity, cancer, and other health problems. Most produce contains detectable levels of pesticides.
- *Food is standardized and homogenized.* Regional and cultural differences in cuisine and diet are slowly disappearing with the homogenization of the food supply. Fast-food chains insure that a burger purchased in Tokyo is virtually identical to one bought in Chicago. Related to this is the loss of place-based identity. The regional foods that define the places we live in are either being lost or overly hyped as marketing tools.
- *Food is emptied of meaning.* When food consumption is completely detached from the processes that got it to our tables, when we lose all connection with the people who grow our food and with all the biological and social facts of the food's existence, eating is stripped of much of the context and meaning it has had since the long-ago origins of the human species.

ISOLATED CONSUMERS

A large number of consumers in developed and developing countries alike accept the trade-offs of the global supermarket without much thought—if they are even aware that trade-offs exist. They eat without knowing where their food comes from or how it is grown, without any conception of how their choices encourage the degrading of the natural resource base and with little awareness of how their eating leads to health problems and shortened life spans.

Consumers' inability to understand these connections springs in part from their status as mere consumers. Isolated from the production and distribution process, consumers are also isolated from the information and knowledge that might allow them to become more conscious of the workings of the food system and the negative impacts their diets and food choices have on the environment and on their own bodies. In its place, they are surrounded by advertising that fetishizes eating as a lifestyle, glorifies consumer choice, and obscures the commodification that is involved in putting food products before them. Agribusiness corporations spend huge sums manipulating consumer tastes and behaviors in a variety of ways, taking advantage of hardwired human desires for fatty foods and sweets and the often-frenetic lifestyles adopted by those chasing after higher status and living standards. The result is twofold: an obsession with food as a product and with the act of consumption, and a systematic erasure of food's origin and path to the supermarket shelf (Figure 25.2).

One consequence of consumer isolation is a shift away from eating as the satisfaction of nutritional needs. Immersed in a cultural context that makes eating a matter of pleasure and presents them with palate-pleasing foods high in fat, salt, and sugar, many people consume far more calories than they need. Given this reality, it is no wonder that obesity has become a problem, along with the associated health problems of Type 2 diabetes, heart disease, and stroke. In 2010, 35.7% of the population in the United States over 20 years was obese, another 6.3% extremely obese, and at least 33% overweight (Fryar et al. 2012). These statistics represent what is nearly a doubling of obesity rates since the late 1980s, which parallels what has occurred in the world as a whole (WHO 2013). Although increasingly sedentary lifestyles are partly to blame, a major reason for the increase in obesity is an increase in consumption of sugar- and fat-laden, energy-dense, processed foods.

FIGURE 25.2 Shopper in a typical supermarket. The consumer has many food choices, but the only information conveyed by the labels is price. Origin, conditions of production, date of harvest, the farmer's share of the profit, and other facts remain unknown.

MARGINALIZED FARMERS

One would think that with the development of diverse and dynamic market structures for food and changes in diets, farmers would be enjoying a time of plenty. But farmers themselves are increasingly being left behind as the agricultural sector changes, unable to share in its fortunes. Although some individual farmers are doing very well indeed, most are facing daunting challenges. Globally, the trend is toward larger and larger farming operations operated under the dictates of the industrial food system, with shrinking roles for farmers traditionally conceived of as stewards of the land.

The marginalization of farming has serious social and demographic consequences for rural communities. As we saw in Chapter 1, rural farm communities are in decline around the world. Once thriving assemblages of people from all walks of life, livelihoods, and outlooks, today they are increasingly aging and depopulating. In the United States, less than 1% of the population is made up of full-time farmers, and of those, farmers over 65 years old outnumber those under 35 years by nearly seven to one (USDA 2007). In many developing countries, farmers and their families are leaving rural areas and their farms in alarming numbers, forced out by increasingly untenable circumstances or attracted to opportunities, imagined or real, in cities.

Of course, the declining number of farmers does not mean that there has been a decline in the importance of the farm sector. The world still has to eat, and there are 70 million more mouths to feed each year. What allows current world agriculture to produce greater amounts of food with declining involvement by farmers is farm modernization. Simply put, this is the substitution of tractors for people. To produce copious quantities of food, industrial-scale operations require business managers, technicians, and often low-wage farmworkers, not farmers.

In the developing world, the movement of people from countryside to city and the concomitant rise in the size of farming operations had a later start than it did in the United States and Europe. This is why many countries in the world still have very substantial rural populations and why half of the world's people still depend on farming for their livelihoods. In some parts of the world, such as much of South Asia, over 70% of the people are farmers, and in these regions, agriculture accounts in many places for half of the total economic activity (FAO 2013b). Because they can offset the growing dependence on imported food, rural populations in developing countries hold the greatest hope for improving conditions of food security on a long-term sustainable basis.

CONCENTRATION AND INTEGRATION IN THE AGRICULTURAL SECTOR

Farmers have always had to contend with unfavorable weather, voracious pests, and unpredictable markets for their crops. But the rise of industrial agriculture has introduced additional threats that are often even more difficult to overcome. Increasingly, the capture of food production and agricultural capital by agribusiness puts smaller-scale farmers into positions in which they are at a distinct disadvantage.

Recall the discussion in Chapter 1 about how most of the consumer food dollar goes to the processing, shipping, and marketing side of the food system, leaving farmers with less than 16¢ of every food dollar spent. This by itself is a major reason for the decline of the farming occupation—as a basic economic reality it leaves farmers with little option but to "get big or get out." But the more than 84% share of the consumer food dollar going to the processing, packaging, shipping, and marketing middlemen indicates just how much our food system has changed (this share was well under 50% in 1919) and how thoroughly it is now stacked against the small-scale farmer.

With much of the profit in the "marketing" segment of agriculture, it's no surprise that most of the processing, brokerage, shipping, packaging, and marketing functions are performed by transnational corporations and the firms they own or control. Further, these large corporations have taken full advantage of vertical integration—each owns firms at every link in the food-system chain, from seeds to shipping to processing to distribution to marketing. Over time, there has been a tendency for the overall number of these firms to decrease. This economic concentration, combined with vertical integration, allows a relative handful of agribusiness corporations to dominate the agricultural sector of most nations' economies (see Table 25.1).

The farmer, therefore, faces a virtual agricultural oligopoly. For example, consider a typical corn farmer in the US Midwest buying seed for next year's crop. That farmer has little choice of what seed to buy and who to buy it from, because he or she is confronted with a system where the only buyer of corn in the region is a large transnational corporation that is in partnership with another large corporation that provides seeds for the only variety of corn that the buyer will purchase. The bank that provides the production loan most likely is part of the same transnational's portfolio, and will probably have the same requirements of which seed variety to use, and recommend very highly or even require that the farmer use fertilizers and pesticides from sources the transnational also owns or controls. Once the farmer has grown the corn, and does not want to sell to the transnational at the fixed price, he or she could choose to feed the corn to hogs for sale at auction. But the transnational will be there bidding on the hogs as well. And finally, if the farmer gives up and decides to plant a crop other than corn, he or she will find that there are very few if any other crops that are not controlled by the system of food "cartels" (Halweil 2004).

There is little room for small-scale or family farmers in a system in which the farmers' product is a commodity in a global market controlled by vertically integrated transnationals. Therefore, such farmers are increasingly forced to sell out. Their land is eagerly bought up by developers, or by the larger-scale farmers who have learned to adapt to the system.

TABLE 25.1
Examples of Concentration in the Agricultural Sector

Product or Activity	Proportion of All Firms	What These Firms Control
All seeds	Top 6 firms	60% of commercial seed market
Vegetable seeds	5 firms	75% of global market
Cereal grains	2 firms (Archer Daniels Midland and Cargill)	75%–80% of world trade
Flour	3 largest millers	55% of the US market
Coffee	4 largest firms	50% of world trade
Tea	3 firms	80% of global distribution
Cocoa and pineapples	A few multinationals	90% of world trade
Beer	2 firms	75% of the US market
Wine	6 firms	64% of the US market
Soft drinks	3 firms	89% of the US market
Bananas	A few multinationals	80% of world trade
Sugar	A few multinationals	60% of world trade
Chickens (broilers)	1 firm	60% of purchases in Central America
	4 firms	59% of the US market
Turkeys	4 firms	51% of the US market
Beef	4 firms	85% of packing in the United States
Milk	Top 4 firms	43% of global processing
Animal feed	3 firms	Majority of global production
Food retailing	Top 4 grocery chains	36% of US sales
Pesticides	10 firms	82% of world market

Sources: Adapted from Halweil, B., *Eat Here: Reclaiming Homegrown Pleasures in a Global Supermarket*, A WorldWatch Book, Norton, New York, 2004, p. 47; Hendrickson, M. and Heffernan, W., Concentration of Agricultural Markets, 2007, Department of Rural Sociology, University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, http://www.foodcircles.missouri.edu/07contable.pdf (visited February 1, 2014), 2007; Ward, C.E., *Choices* 25(2), 1–14, 2010; Howard, P.H., Phillip H. Howard homepage, https://www.msu.edu/~howardp/index.html (visited February 1, 2014), 2014.

One common way of "adapting" to the system is to grow under contract for the larger and larger corporations formed by the mergers and consolidations that are common in the marketplace. The USDA Economic Research Service, using data from the Agricultural Census of 2007, found that more than 40% of American agricultural output is produced under contract, including 68% of hogs and 90% of poultry (O'Donoghue et al. 2011). This does not include contracts that farmers must sign to plant genetically engineered seeds (see Chapter 15). When the control of the food system becomes so centralized, the farmer is essentially reduced to a hired hand in a commodity chain. We end up with large-scale farms managed by distant corporations interested in extracting the maximum output at the minimum cost.

In developing countries, farmers are increasingly affected by the double impacts of cheap, heavily subsidized imports of foods from outside of their traditional local markets, coupled with exclusion from opportunities to sell their products

FIGURE 25.3 A monoculture of pineapples growing near Buenos Aires, Costa Rica, in an area once covered by tropical rain forest. Fruit will be exported through a vertically integrated commodity chain, where a transnational owns or controls most of the steps from the field to the table.

for export to distant markets. With weak local market systems and little support from national agricultural research or extension, small farmers have little incentive or opportunity to maintain viable livelihoods from farming. The paradox inherent in this situation is that the largest percentage of the approximately 850 million hungry people in the world are from rural and farming communities. With the added pressure of producing for markets when they can, and then receiving an unfair return for their efforts, they are pressured to plant even more of the cash crops in order to try to bring in more income. Land and crops that would otherwise be used for local consumption and markets are abandoned, and if prices for their export crops plummet, as they often do, they are left with few options (Figure 25.3).

Consequences for Sustainability

The food system just described—in which food is grown in large-scale agroecosystems as a commodity in a global market for consumers completely isolated from the production process—has an enormous bearing on sustainability. All the unsustainable on-the-ground practices of present-day industrial agriculture described in Chapter 1—monoculture, intensive tillage, reliance on external inputs, planting of hybrid and genetically engineered seeds, and so on—exist in part because of how well they serve this food system. When food is a mere commodity and the only goal of its production is extraction of profit, unsustainable practices flourish. Farms grow larger, industrial methods of production dominate, and more sustainable smaller-scale, traditional, and agroecologically based practices are marginalized.

As a result, what were once self-regulating systems for transforming solar energy, moving nutrients, balancing member populations, and maintaining a dynamic equilibrium through time have become management-intensive systems dependent on nonrenewable fossil-fuel energy, synthetic chemical fertilizer inputs, and external population-regulating practices. According to conventional wisdom, agricultural modernization and larger-scale farming improves the efficiency of the food system—bigger farms can produce more at lower economic costs; production and equipment costs can be spread over greater area, inputs purchased at bulk rates, and loans negotiated at lower interest. Such advantages are indeed increasingly important as agriculture becomes more capital intensive. However, as we have seen throughout this book, most of the ecological elements of sustainability on farms are lost or compromised as the scale becomes too large.

Small-scale farmers are the best stewards of the natural resource base upon which their farms function; they are the only ones with extensive knowledge of local soils, weather, land races, noncrop plants, pollinators, local sources of soil amendments, ecosystem characteristics, and community needs. If the ecological costs of industrial-scale farming are taken into account, it turns out that for many crops actual production costs are lower when the crops are grown on relatively smaller farms. But because this kind of cost accounting is not part of the industrial system, small-scale farmers lose out. When they leave their farms, their knowledge and stewardship values go with them.

While sustainability takes its most direct hit from the simple decline in the number of small-scale, family farms, that decline in numbers also has indirect effects. When the economies of rural communities decline, their social fabric begins to unravel as well. This unraveling has been documented in the powerful writings of many authors (e.g., Wendell Berry, Gene Logsdon, Donald Worster, Wes Jackson). When a way of life is restricted to merely making a living, many of the reasons for being and doing are lost. When a person feels like he or she is nothing more than a link in a commodity chain, and less a member of a vibrant, interactive, and healthy community, the indicators of decline appear. Poverty, crime, high school dropout rates, spousal and child abuse, mental stress, and substance abuse—all signs of social dysfunction—soon approach levels similar to those of crowded urban areas. The consequences are ecological as much as they are social, affecting the farmers, their communities, and the landscapes in which they live. When farmers no longer have the incentive, desire, or ability to be good stewards of the land, ecological degradation is an inevitable outcome.

EATING SUSTAINABLY

Although consumers in general are isolated from the growing of food, largely ignorant about how the food system functions, and mostly unaware of the extent to which advertising shapes their eating and food-buying choices, they are not hapless pawns of the industrial food system. Consumers, as eaters of food, can act independently and choose to eat differently, in ways that break out of the mold established by the industrial food system. This is becoming increasingly easy and increasingly common as information about the ecological and health effects of mainstream diets becomes more widespread and as practical alternatives to participation in the industrial food system develop and spread.

Changing how we eat is a key part of transforming the food system into one that is more sustainable and more equitable. This is true in two distinct but related ways. First, the earth simply cannot support nine billion people all trying to eat like affluent Americans do. In fact, it can't even come close to doing this, which makes sustainable eating an ecological imperative. Second, sustainable eating habits have a feedback effect on the food system: they put pressure on the food system to change, and they allow and support the growth of more sustainable alternatives. In this sense, eating sustainably is a kind of grassroots way of provoking food-system change.

DIETARY TRENDS

For many decades, consumers in developed countries have had unsustainable diets. Eating large amounts of animal-derived food, processed food, and food traveling long distances from farm to table, they support the many practices of industrial agriculture described in Chapter 1, which entail enormous fossil-fuel-based energy subsidies, use of valuable land for growing livestock feed, commodity-scale production, overuse of precious water resources, and pollution of the environment. Not surprisingly, people in developing countries aspire to having similar diets. As the reach of the globalized food system expands, capturing the markets and imaginations of consumers around the world, and as incomes rise among an increasingly urbanized middle class in developing countries, dietary patterns all over the world are becoming increasingly unsustainable. The biggest change has been a large increase in consumption of meat, oils, fish, eggs, and dairy products in places where they had been limited before. In China, for example, total meat consumption more than doubled (from 25.7 to 58.3 kg/capita/year) between 1990 and 2009 and milk consumption increased by a factor of 6 during the same period (from 5.9 to 29.8 kg/capita/year) (FAOSTAT 2014) (Figure 25.4). Although consumption of foods with the highest ecological costs is no longer increasing significantly in developed countries (and in some cases is declining), the huge size of the populations in developing countries that are likely to achieve middle-class living standards in the near future means that global consumption of, and demand for, these foods is going to increase, possibly dramatically.

The biggest culprits in increasing the ecological costs of diets worldwide are meat and dairy. As was described in Chapter 1, animal-based diets require an animal-based production system. The industrial model of CAFOs, with animals being fed with energy- and protein-rich grains that are produced in large monocultures at a long distance from where they are fed to the animals, has led to soil erosion, increased herbicide use, a rise in proprietary GMO seed, a loss of farmers and an increase in individual farm size, increases in carbon emissions, and massive problems of animal waste management. In developing countries with increasing demand for meat and milk, transnational corporations either establish CAFOs in those countries, with a dependence on imported feed and genetic stock, or former production systems focused on production of food for direct human consumption are reoriented to feed animals, and the countries become dependent on imported foods such as basic grains, vegetable oils, and other goods. Even small-scale animal systems in developing countries, under pressure from the shift to animal diets, sacrifice the integration that was discussed in Chapter 19.

LOWERING THE PER CAPITA "FOODPRINT"

To lower the environmental and social impacts of our food choices, we must think about the food-system implications of how we eat, and change anything that negatively impacts sustainability. The foods with the highest environmental costs—the largest ecological "foodprint"—are those transported long distances, grown in monocultures, grown in

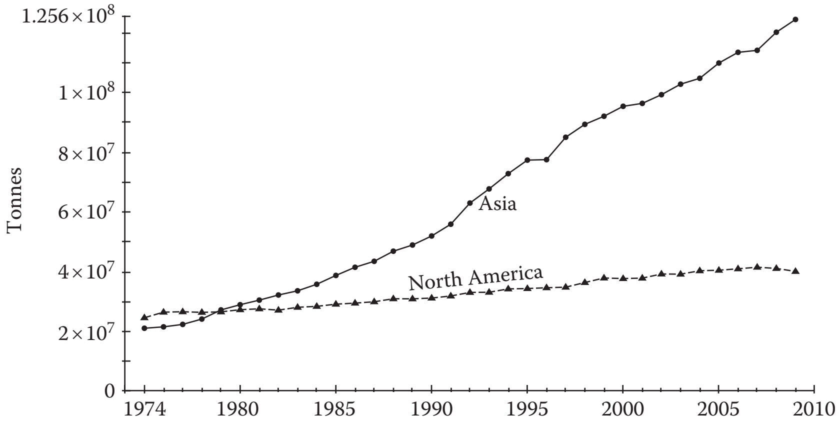


FIGURE 25.4 Annual quantity of meat produced for food in Asia and North America, 1975–2009. In per-capita terms, consumption of meat in North America is among the highest in the world (117.6 kg/capita/year in 2009) and that in Asia still lags far behind (30.8 kg/capita/year), but the steep rise in meat production and consumption in Asia points to a rapidly changing dietary landscape. (Data from FAOSTAT, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Statistics database, http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html, Dates of access range from January 1, 2014 to March 30, 2014.)

high-input systems, and made from animals or animal products. With some foods, such as fish, other parameters come into play, such as overfishing or unhealthy farm-raised systems, but these are the basic ones. As a consumer, it can be difficult to evaluate the extent to which a particular food item expresses these characteristics. Food labels generally do not provide adequate information. Moreover, many certification programs, such as “certified organic” in the United States, do not guarantee that food bearing their labels has a substantially smaller ecological footprint than conventionally grown counterparts. “Organic” food in the United States for example, can be grown in high-input monocultures. Food choices become easier if one follows a few principles that crosscut the ecological factors involved in food production:

- *Eat lower on the food chain*. Emphasize plant foods over animal foods. Increasing the percentage of food consumed that involves fruits, vegetables, seeds, nuts, and grains promotes the most efficient use of agricultural land; as an additional benefit, it insures adequate intake of the protein, antioxidants, fiber, omega-3 fatty acids, and vitamins needed for health.
- *Eat real food*. Avoid highly processed foods with the empty calories of fats and sugars, and the overuse of salt. Return to food that is fresh, grown using the agroecologically based practices and principles presented in this book, and from the hands of the farmer as much as possible.
- *Eat local*. Eating food grown and raised in the region in which you live helps to reconnect food producers and food eaters in a social relationship that reaches back to the land, reduces carbon emissions and promotes sustainable farming practices, and eliminates intermediaries in the market place, which recirculates money in the local economy, distributing rather than concentrating profits.
- *Eat seasonal*. Food that is grown out of season, either in climate controlled installations like heated greenhouses or shipped long distances from overseas production sites, requires immense fossil-fuel subsidies and most often is not as healthy as eating the same food grown in season. Long-distance production systems are usually strictly controlled by corporate agriculture, and when located in the global South, they too often exploit the farmers and workers who grow the food. Bringing back the art of food preservation for out of season consumption can also once again be an option.

Michael Pollan summed it up well in his book *In Defense of Food: An Eater’s Manifesto* (Pollan 2008). He advised, “Eat food. Not too much. Mostly plants.” Sustainable eating is ethical (because it protects the systems that sustain life), agroecological (because it is based on ecological principles), and in the consumer’s self-interest (because it promotes good health).

As noted earlier, there is increasing support, both culturally and economically, for sustainable eating in most developed countries. By participating in the alternative food networks (AFNs) described later in this chapter, consumers in developed countries are aware of making choices that are simultaneously more ethical, more beneficial to their own health and well-being, and consistent with their social status. For many people in the world, however, the situation is rather different. In developing countries, the rising demand for meat, dairy, and imported luxury foods is inextricably linked to the broad desire for higher standards of living. For the growing numbers of middle-class people in countries such as China, India, Malaysia, Brazil, and Mexico, the ability to eat more animal-derived foods is one of the explicit goals of striving for better lives. Encouraging these people to go back to eating traditionally because it is more ecologically sound is much like asking them to return to the impoverished and disempowered conditions from which they are rising—or at least that’s how they are likely to interpret the suggestion. Similarly, the poorest people in developed countries, the urban underclass, often cannot *afford* to eat more sustainably. Unable to grow their own food, without access to farmers’ markets and the like in their communities, and lacking the financial resources to pay the premium for sustainably grown food anyway, they consume the relatively cheap, processed and packaged food available to them. Enjoining people in such circumstances to eat more sustainably can be seen as insensitive and out of touch.

The preceding analysis indicates that we will not create a more sustainable food system simply by advocating that consumers change their behavior around food. Diet patterns are complex products of the interactions between history, social class, culturally determined values, the dynamics of the global market, and many other factors. They are bound up, too, with the corporate-dominated food system. Although the changes in eating habits we are seeing among relatively affluent people in developed countries are a hopeful sign—and a necessary part—of change, the key challenge lies in making sustainable eating something that everyone feels is desirable and everyone experiences as possible.

Food Citizenship

In our discussion of natural ecosystems in Chapter 2, a consumer was defined as an organism that ingests other organisms (or their parts or products) to obtain nutrients and food energy. Economics texts define the consumer as one who acquires goods or services, or simply a buyer. Neither of these definitions is adequate for describing the role that a human buyer and eater of food must play in a sustainable food system.

We need a different concept, one that points to the “consumer” as informed, responsible, and engaged. The term **food citizen** does the job well. According to Jennifer Wilkins, food citizenship is “the practice of engaging in food-related behaviors that support, rather than threaten, the development of a democratic, socially and economically just, and environmentally sustainable food system" (Wilkins 2005).

People can practice food citizenship in many ways. In addition to being very intentional with one's daily food buying in the ways discussed earlier, food citizenship can involve other actions that send signals for the need for change. One such action is requesting local or sustainably grown produce at mainstream markets and restaurants. Sometimes simply asking questions about where and how items were produced can have an effect. Other important actions include engaging in public policy development from the local to the global level, working to create a culture of sustainability, and educating others about how the present food system works to encourage unsustainable practices, consumer alienation, and agrarian decline.

There are many challenges we face in being truly good food citizens. First, the current corporate-controlled food system offers few food options that meet the criteria of local and sustainable. Secondly, current federal policy promotes a narrow range of commodities, and this has resulted in an abundance of cheap food components, rather than health or sustainability of the land or the people connected to that land. Third, institutional food-buying policies at all levels, from local to federal, make the purchase of local or sustainable food products more difficult than it should be. Fourth, we still lack a critical analysis of how health and nutrition systems have been impacted by current food market consolidation and policy. These barriers only emphasize the need for change at all levels.

Improving Public Health along with Sustainability

Because foods with the highest ecological costs—meat, dairy products, and processed foods high in sugar and fat—are also generally those with the most negative effects on people's health, any effort to curb consumption of these foods on the grounds of sustainability can also be an effort to improve public health. As we noted earlier, many relatively affluent consumers in developed countries—those who might self-consciously see themselves as "food citizens"—are generally aware that certain foods have both ecological harms and negative health impacts, or at least have access to the information that would bring such knowledge. In developing countries, the connections are much harder to make, for a variety of reasons.

As higher standards of living reach many people in developing countries, diets inevitably change, shifting away from traditional foods and toward increased amounts of meat, dairy, and other foods with high health and environmental costs. In many areas of the global South, one outcome of this shift is a tendency for the effects on body weight and other indicators of human health to be bimodal. Those groups with the highest levels of food insecurity show all the signs of malnutrition, with lower weight, height, and other indicators of poor nutrition. Often these people have abandoned subsistence production in favor of growing food, such as coffee, for export, but their cash income is insufficient to cover their needs for purchased food. At the other extreme are people with indicators of obesity and a high incidence of Type 2 diabetes; typically these people have been more successful in the cash economy and have enough money to buy processed and junk food high in fats, salts, and sugars that provide empty calories and poor nutrition. The effects may be different, but they are really two sides of the same coin.

In many of those developing countries in which increasing integration with the global food system is having negative consequences for public health in the form of both malnutrition and obesity, it may be possible to mitigate the health problems and improve sustainability at the same time by revitalizing traditional farming systems and the traditional foods and diets that go with them. These systems have yet to be wholly abandoned, and their associated food culture is still part of the people's heritage. Thus a renewed emphasis on healthy eating and local cuisine is a practical possibility. Mexico serves as a good example. Here, advertising, urbanization, and an emphasis on the most calories for the least cost have moved people away from the traditional cuisine of corn, beans, chiles, and all of the local spices and condiments that accompany them. Even the traditional *tortilla* has changed due to the heavy infiltration of industrially produced and processed corn flour. But a growing awareness in Mexico of the rapid increase in dietary-related diseases such as obesity and Type 2 diabetes (Mexico is ranked number 1 after the United States with the most obese and overweight people) has engendered a local response to the problem (Astudillo 2014). A national strategy has now been in place for several years to educate the populace about the problem of obesity and to promote a return to healthy eating, and awareness is growing. A new tax on sugary drinks and junk food approved by the National Congress has drawn international attention to the issue. There are also local movements to preserve the cultivation of traditional varieties of corn and the hand crafting of the tortilla as part of local eating (Figure 25.5).

BRINGING FARMERS AND CONSUMERS BACK TOGETHER

As we have seen, strong interests have taken over the space between the farmers in the field and the eaters around the table. The dissolution of this relationship has been one of the root causes of the trend away from sustainable practices and relationships and away from healthy and sustainable eating. It follows, then, that reestablishing a closer relationship between farmers and consumers is an important part of building a path back toward sustainability. If farmers have alternatives to the agribusiness model and the food-system oligopoly, they can remain on the land and farm profitably using the best, most sustainable practices. If consumers are in touch with the food production process, they are aware of how their choices and behaviors affect the growing of food, the environment, the working of the food system, and their own health. The growing of food is as much a set of social and ecological relationships as it is farming, and

FIGURE 25.5 A visitor being shown how to make traditional *nacatamales* at the community of La Pita, northern Nicaragua. Locally grown varieties of corn are used to make special tamales with fresh vegetables, herbs, and chiles.

reestablishing the vital connection between the people on the farm and the people at the table is a critical step toward reaching back to the land, outward to the people, and forward to sustainability.

Elements of an Alternative Food System

Bringing consumers and farmers back together is really the same thing as creating an alternative food system. In such a system (1) food production and consumption has a bioregional basis; (2) the food supply chain has a minimum number of links; (3) farmers, consumers, retailers, distributors, and other actors exist in the context of an interdependent community and have the opportunity for establishing real relationships; (4) opportunities exist for the exchange of knowledge and information among all those who participate in the food system; and (5) the benefits and burdens of the alternative food system are shared equally by all participants. These aspects of an alternative food system are closely interrelated. Although they are likely to exist together, they are distinct enough that we will discuss them separately.

Agricultural Bioregionalism

It can be said that as the physical distance between the people who grow food and the people who eat it grows, the chance for the exploitation of both grows as well. An important way to ensure that this exploitation does not happen is to bring "localness" back into agriculture.

Localness depends on physical proximity. When the people who consume food are not far from the people who produce it, that food system is local. Local food systems are identified with a place and contribute to the environmental, social, economic, and cultural development of the communities in that place (Figure 25.6).

FIGURE 25.6 An area in rural Germany, near Witzenhausen, that has retained a bioregional agriculture. The residents of the town can eat food grown nearby.

When the people living in a particular area or region eat mostly food that's grown or raised locally they shift the focus of their diets. Food that can't be grown locally is not eliminated from what they eat, but its role is reduced in favor of more local food. In temperate climates, this also implies eating what it is in season and relying more on traditional food-caching techniques such as root cellaring, as well as food preservation and storage techniques such as drying and canning. Although this means "giving up" some of the choice and convenience we have come to expect in the global supermarket, it brings many benefits, including renewed connection to place.

The concept of the *watershed*—an area drained by a single interconnected network of streams—plays a role in discussions of bioregionalism generally. In the context of agricultural bioregionalism, it makes sense to use the parallel concept of the **foodshed**, which can be defined as a geographically limited sphere of land, people, and businesses tied together by food relationships.

Many benefits can be derived from a food system in which foodsheds are the primary functional units. From an ecological perspective, growing and consuming food locally reduces the amount of fossil-fuel energy needed to transport food to the consumer. Less energy need be expended to process or store food once it is harvested since food can be consumed sooner following harvest. Food waste can be more easily returned to the farm, promoting nutrient cycling and reducing the dependence on outside nutrient inputs. Diversity at the level of the farm and the level of the landscape (Chapter 23) are more easily supported, creating a healthy integration of urbanized areas, working landscapes, and natural ecosystems.

Economically, local economies thrive on local food systems. Money spent on locally grown food can generate nearly twice as much income for the local economy as money spent on food from afar (Shuman 2006, 2012). Money recirculates within the community rather than being siphoned off by distant companies. All sectors of the community benefit from this local flow: local farmers, local businesses, local service agencies, and even local schools and hospitals. Bioregionally based agriculture, therefore, is the key element in any effort to rebuild and restore economically and socially distressed rural communities and regions.

Shorter Food Supply Chains

One of the problematic aspects of the present global food system is the large number of "links" in the chain between the farmer and consumer. These often include brokers, processors, distributors, transporters, packagers, wholesalers, and retailers. The greater the number of links, the more disconnected the farmer and consumer, the greater the amount of the consumer food dollar siphoned away from the farmer, and the greater the demand for food production to be large scale and driven solely by production criteria.

A more sustainable alternative food system requires food supply chains with fewer links. The importance of **short food supply chains** (SFSCs) has been recognized in the area of rural development (Renting et al. 2003), and the concept is gaining attention as a component of food-system sustainability.

The shortest food supply chain is not even a chain because it has no links at all: consumption of food by the same person, family, or group who grew it. Although growing one's own food is often rejected as impractical, it is practiced to a surprising extent all over the world, even in urban settings. From cities in China to towns all over Europe, the backyard or rooftop kitchen garden is an important source of food. Community gardens—providing gardening plots for those without access to land—are common in cities around the world, and are becoming increasingly popular in the United States and Western Europe.

The next shortest food supply chain, of course, is provided by a direct relationship between a farmer and a consumer. These face-to-face chains occur with farmers' markets, box schemes, roadside sales, farm stores, pick-your-own farms, and the like (Figure 25.7).

Traditional food-retailing arrangements can incorporate shorter food supply chains, too, particularly when restricted to a local foodshed. Supermarkets, food stores, restaurants, and institutions can purchase a large portion of their food direct from local growers. This adds only one link between farmer and consumer. Even if a distributor or other wholesaler is involved, the links are still fewer than those that exist in the global food system, and the distance the food travels is greatly reduced.

Finally, direct or nearly direct farmer–consumer commerce can occur over greater distances, facilitated by present-day communication technology and the transportation infrastructure. Through direct-purchase cooperatives, e-commerce, and subscription plans, consumers can buy high-value products, such as coffee, directly from the farmers who grow them. Even though the products may travel long distances, the long food supply chain of the global food system is effectively short circuited.

FIGURE 25.7 A rural farmer's association selling organic produce at a market in Porto Alegre, Brazil. More than a dozen farmers own a truck together, and take turns going to the market with their pooled products.

Food-Based Community

The impersonal global food system has inexorably diminished the role of food as a cohesive force in the creation and maintenance of communities. Because food is the most fundamental human need, humans have always come together to ensure food supplies. Throughout our biological and cultural evolution, the need to cooperate in the procurement, production, storage, distribution, and protection of food has caused humans to form hunting bands, villages, towns, cities, and societies. The religious ideas, ways of life, values and mores that have held these social formations together have always—until recently in human history—been grounded to a great extent in food.

Restoring the fundamental role of food as a bonding force for community is beneficial not just for communities, but for the food system as well. When the production, distribution, and consumption of food occurs in a community context, in which people have interdependent relationships, factors that cause imbalance in the system are more readily apparent and more easily adjusted or repaired. It becomes a community concern—something that has a potential effect on everyone—if farmland is being lost to development, if soil erosion is causing productivity declines, if too much food-related money is leaving the community, and if farmers are getting economically squeezed.

Democratic Information Exchange

In separating farmers and consumers, the global food system has also fundamentally changed the nature of information exchange and communication among the actors in the system. The information that flows through the present system is mostly controlled and mediated by the corporate interests that receive up to 84% of the consumer dollar. These interests want consumers to know as little as possible about the origins, nutritive content, processing, and economic circumstances of the food they eat, and to be concerned as much as possible with the fetishized aspects of food consumption—how it fits into diet fads, how it is more convenient, and how it helps form one's image and identity. What consumers "want" is thus manipulated to a great extent by the food supply oligopoly, and this information filters down to farmers as impersonal economic imperatives.

In political terms, democracy is dependent on the free flow of information and open communication. For a democracy to function effectively as the "will of the people," the people must have full access to knowledge about alternatives, possible consequences, the lessons of the past, and so on. In contrast, coercive political systems always rely in part on restricting the flow of information and shaping what gets to count as truth and knowledge. Food systems work the same way. An alternative food system that empowers the eating public and the people who actually grow food—a *food democracy*—requires a free flow of undistorted, unfiltered information and channels of communication among the people in different parts of the system. Democratic information exchange becomes the basis for active, engaged consumers who understand the significance of their choices.

Shared Cost Burdens and Benefits

In the democratic food system described above, the making of alternative food systems involves the development of a comprehensive "food ethic" in which every member of the food system is treated fairly and receives full recognition and reward for what he or she does. This especially applies to such people as the smallholder farmers and their families in a developing country growing an export crop to send to consumers in developed countries, to poor consumers without the financial resources to acquire enough adequate and healthy food to maintain a healthy diet, and the low-paid workers on all farms, including farms billed as organic and sustainable, who too often are migrants without access to a living wage, health care, or other necessary benefits. Meeting the needs of all of these elements of the food system, and any others where injustice or lack of fairness is obvious, is what is termed **food justice**.

As defined by Robert Gottlieb and Anapama Joshi, a food justice framework "ensures that the benefits and risks of how food is grown and processed, transported, distributed, and consumed are shared equitably" (Gottlieb and Joshi 2010). Food justice recognizes the voices and faces of the food system that have for too long been taken for granted or ignored, even with today's understanding of the need for food-system change (Allen 2004; Gray 2014). Along with promoting local food systems, healthy diets, alternative food systems, and social change, we must also be concerned with the injustices that pervade the food system. As long as agribusiness controls the food system, farmworkers will be considered a cost of production that must be reduced or even eliminated in order to lower costs. Campesino or peasant farmers and their families will not be high on the list of priorities in a globalized food market where food sales and profits are the primary focus. Nor will the needs of resource-limited eaters in inner cities where large supermarkets have been closed and "food deserts" created because the sales potential of these places are too low. The need for food justice is a guiding principle in the Level 4 transition process as food systems are transformed for sustainability.

BUILDING ALTERNATIVE FOOD NETWORKS

Farmers, consumer cooperatives, neighborhood associations, groups advocating sustainable development, green entrepreneurs, and others have been quietly building the foundations of a more sustainable and just food system for decades. Making use of different combinations of the five elements discussed earlier, they have set up farmers' markets, farm stores, direct-marketing schemes, food hubs, and many other types of businesses, programs, and institutions that give farmers and consumers alternatives to the global food system.

These AFNs are diverse, varying in size, scope, and intent. What they share is a desire to bring many of the missing elements of sustainability back to our food system. They provide real-world, working models of a different, decentralized approach to the ecology and economy of food, thereby helping to create a new culture of sustainability.

Like life forms, AFNs have "evolved" along different paths to exploit different niches. There are abundant niches in the local or regional context. These have been filled by farmers' markets, community-supported agriculture schemes, other types of direct-marketing arrangements, local-food-focused restaurants, and so on. These AFNs are generally able to incorporate all five elements of alternative food systems at once: they operate in a strictly local context, create short food supply chains, build food-based community, allow for democratic information exchange, and promote food justice. Many of them are based on face-to-face contact between consumers and producers.

But localness has its limitations. Not all farm products can be grown or produced in every farm community around the world. Climate, soils, geography, and local culture can all restrict what can be grown or raised in a certain area. Coffee, cocoa, vanilla, and mangos, for example, can only be produced in the tropics, and then only in specific parts of the tropics. Cranberries and olive oil can only be produced in temperate regions and then only in specific parts of the temperate zone. Even if they are committed to "eating locally" consumers will always want to have some available food products that are out of season or impossible to grow locally. Creating a way for consumers to purchase such products, outside of the current global food system, has been the goal of various other types of AFNs. These "extended networks" typically connect consumers and producers more directly, often through the Internet, greatly shortening the supply chain that would otherwise be involved, and at the same time promoting the democratic flow of information.

Table 25.2 lists a variety of AFNs and indicates for each type how it makes use of the five elements of alternative food systems. Some of the more important of these AFN types are discussed in more detail in the following.

TABLE 25.2
Types of Alternative Food Networks and Their Relative Contributions to the Five Elements of Sustainable Food Systems

	Encompassed within a Locality	Shortens Food Supply Chain	Builds Food-Based Community	Promotes Democratic Flow of Information	Promotes Sharing of Burdens and Benefits
Farmers' markets Farmers sell their products directly to consumers	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pick your own Consumers do their own harvest on the farm	✓	✓	✓	✓	*
Farm stores On-farm store for direct sale, open all year	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Community supported agriculture Subscription sales to consumers and groups	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Box schemes Farmer prepares a box on order for consumer	✓	✓	*	*	*
Consumer cooperatives Centralized food buying by consumers	*	✓	✓	✓	*
Local-food restaurants Promotion of local food by restaurants	✓	✓	✓	*	*
Dedicated retailers Shops that sell local or regional products	✓	✓	✓	*	*
Food hubs Networks that create a local food institution	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Catering for institutions Using local and regional products in food service	✓	✓	*	*	
Mail order sales Long-distance purchase from farmer		✓	*	✓	
eCommerce Direct purchase through online mechanisms		✓	*	✓	✓

Notes: ✓, primary importance; *, secondary importance or potential.

Farmers' Markets

At a farmer's market, farmers, growers, or producers from a specific local area are present in person to sell their own produce directly to the public. All products sold are certified to be grown, reared, caught, brewed, pickled, baked, smoked, gathered, or processed by the seller. In the direct sale of their produce to consumers, farmers can take back some of the profits captured by the agribusiness supply chain. Perhaps even more importantly, long-term personal relationships between the farmer and consumer can develop that ultimately keep bringing the consumer back to that farmer. The public can be confident in the origins of the food, ask questions, and stay close to the source of production. The producers get valuable feedback from customers. The absence of middlemen can also mean lower prices to the consumer. Case studies from places as diverse as Costa Rica, the United Kingdom, and the United States show that a basket of produce purchased at a farmers' market often costs less than the same products purchased commercially (Halweil 2004).

Over the past two decades, interest in farmers' markets has soared. The number of registered farmers' markets in the United States has grown by an order of magnitude in 30 years, from about 300 in the mid-1970s to more than 8144 at the end of 2013 (USDA 2014). The city of Santa Cruz, CA, with a current population of about 65,000 people, started its first certified farmers' market in 1976. Today there is at least one market open every day in some part of the city, and on some days more than one, with many of them operating on a year-round basis. Most towns in surrounding communities outside the city limits now have their own markets as well. In the United Kingdom, a national organization provides support, representation, education, and certification for more than 550 markets (FARMA 2014). In a food system defined by standardization, mass distribution, and economies of scale, farmers' markets seem to be ideally suited for smaller-scale and beginning farmers. These farmers have the opportunity to begin by marketing relatively small amounts of produce and experimenting with new crops and products, even when they have limited access to economic resources.

Community Supported Agriculture

Compared to the farmers' market model, which is actually an ancient form of direct farmer distribution, community-supported agriculture (CSA) is a much newer innovation.

FIGURE 25.8 Customers pick up their weekly CSA box. Subscribers receive a box of fresh produce directly from the farmer during the growing season. (Photo courtesy of Martha Brown.)

As the name implies, the social and economic bonds associated with the CSA model differ greatly from those in the global food system.

In basic terms, a CSA consists of a community of individuals who pledge support to a farm operation so that the farmland becomes, either directly or indirectly, the community's farm, with the growers and consumers providing mutual support and sharing the risks and benefits of food production. Typically, members or "shareholders" of the farm pledge to either pay a regular subscription cost through the season, or pay in advance to cover the anticipated costs of the farm operation and farmer's salary. In return, members receive a weekly box or basket share in the farm's bounty throughout the growing season (Figure 25.8).

Everyone benefits: the grower receives better prices for his or her crops, gains some financial security, and is relieved of much of the burden of marketing. Consumers receive produce that is fresher, tastier, harvested at the peak of ripeness, and also not fumigated, refrigerated, or packaged.

Beyond the obvious economic benefits of dealing directly with the customer, the CSA arrangement allows the farmer to receive working capital when it is most needed, reducing the need for bank loans and improving cash flow. The farmer also has a secure market for in-season produce and extra yields that might occur. In addition, it is not the farmer alone who takes on the risks of farming, which may include poor harvests due to unfavorable weather or pests.

While many CSA arrangements do not build in face-to-face contact between the farmer and the consumer, all CSAs create abundant opportunity for the democratic flow of information. The farmer, for example, can include educational information sheets and recipes along with the produce, and members can provide feedback about produce quality and preferences. Some CSAs provide the option of actually working on the farm and getting to know farmworkers. Even when members do not participate directly in production, however, their connection to the land and the production process is concrete and meaningful.

Many CSAs donate shares to needy families, soup kitchens, and food banks, or offer sliding-scale memberships so that their clientele are not just those with more resources. Each CSA is structured to meet the needs of the participants, so many types exist, with variation in the level of financial commitment and active participation by the shareholders, financing, land ownership, payment plans, and food distribution systems (Imhoff 2001).

Most CSAs offer a diversity of vegetables, fruits, and herbs in season; some provide a full array of farm produce, including eggs, meat, milk, baked goods, and even firewood. Some farms team up with others in somewhat milder climatic zones nearby so that members receive goods on a more nearly year-round basis. There is excellent opportunity for the design and management of the farm to reflect this diversity, providing opportunity and impetus for the application of the agroecological concepts and principles presented throughout this book.

The number of CSA operations in the United States has grown rapidly. The first recognized CSA began in 1985, and by the agricultural census of 2007, there were more than 12,500 (USDA 2014). In the United Kingdom, CSA-type arrangements have mushroomed in the past two decades (FARMA 2014).

Extended Networks

Alternatives to the global food system need not be restricted to local networks. An alternative food network that extends beyond an agricultural bioregion can still create shorter food supply chains, allow for democratic information exchange, and even—in a virtual sense—promote food-based community. Such extended networks take advantage of the communication and distribution infrastructures to allow consumer and producer (or the producer's representative) to transact their exchange directly despite their physical separation.

In extended AFNs, the product matters. It would make no sense, practically or environmentally, for an extended network to deal in a product such as lettuce. The best products for extended networks have no locally produced alternatives, are not rapidly perishable, have a high value, and can be shipped easily. Examples include chocolate, spices, and coffee.

Coffee is the prime example of such a product. It is the second most valuable commodity traded globally after oil. It is grown in one part of the world, and primarily consumed in another, distant from the site of production. This distance has allowed the coffee trade to develop into of one of the most exploitative food chains known, with several transnational corporations controlling the roasting, sale, and distribution of the coffee produced by more than 25 million mostly small-scale growers. The early years of the past decade saw coffee prices paid to the farmer reach their lowest levels in history, while prices paid by consumers climbed higher. Exploitation is occurring on both ends of the food chain (Méndez et al. 2006).

Two types of extended networks have developed around the goal of providing coffee to consumers in developed countries without contributing to the exploitation of coffee growers in developing countries. In one type, the consumer purchases coffee directly from a cooperative of growers, with the transaction facilitated by a nonprofit organization. An example is provided by the coffee subscription program employed by the Community Agroecology Network (CAN).

In the second type of extended network, traditional retail channels are used, but links are eliminated from the distribution chain, and growers are guaranteed a much higher rate of return than they would get selling their coffee in the mainstream commodity market. An example is the range of different certification programs for organic and fairly traded labels of coffee for sale in many US food stores and online.

Both types of networks can provide consumers with knowledge about the circumstances of the production and distribution of the product and how it contrasts with that of the global food system. CAN, for example, sends subscribers a regular newsletter with information about the growers, their community, and their cooperative and news about the global coffee economy and development projects in the communities that are supported by the choice to buy their coffee. In this way, consumers are educated about the importance of their choices, and are connected with the growers, their families, and their community. In addition to providing growers with a decent wage, AFNs focused on the coffee trade empower growers to use sustainable, low-external-input practices, such as growing coffee plants under the shade of the modified rainforest canopy.

CASE STUDY: COMMUNITY AGROECOLOGY NETWORK

The Community Agroecology Network (CAN) directly links farm communities in Central America and Mexico with educators, students, and consumers in North America. By reducing the links in the coffee supply chain to the minimum, CAN is able to provide the farmers who grow the coffee with a much higher rate of return than they could get in the conventional coffee market. This fairer economic return supports farmers' efforts to grow their coffee using more ecologically benign methods, and it promotes sustainable livelihoods and economic development in the producer communities. In addition, CAN collaborates with Latin American partner organizations to create alternative local markets for farmers so the farm families can diversify what they grow and have income year round (Figure 25.9).

CAN originated in 2002 in discussions among six researchers who had more than 65 collective years of experience working with communities and farmer groups in Latin America. Concerned about the environmental and social impacts of the deepening coffee crisis, they explored ways of supporting the coffee-growing communities where they had developed long-term relationships. Today CAN collaborates on projects in eight regions of Mesoamerica with a goal of creating "a global economy where people, healthy food systems, and the environment come first." The name Community Agroecology Network was chosen because each word describes an important feature of the organization and its mission:

FIGURE 25.9 Youth leaders participate in a workshop linking nutrition and local food as part of a collaboration between CAN and the Augusto Cesar Sandino Union of Cooperatives in San Ramon, Matagalpa, Nicaragua. Together they work with their communities to develop local markets for healthy, locally produced foods.

- **Community.** The organization strives to improve the social and economic health of the producer communities in regions where CAN has affiliated researchers working long term. CAN partners with farmers and their families, farmer cooperatives, women's organizations, nonprofit organizations, and universities to help them implement their vision of integrating sustainable livelihoods and conservation practices. In the United States, CAN works with universities, alternative trade organizations, and coffee roasters to build a membership network linking people interested in more conscientious consumption and direct connections with Latin American farming communities.
- **Agroecology.** Through research and education, CAN promotes an agroecologically based approach to growing coffee as well as food for the farm family's own use and for sale at local markets. Farmers in the producer communities can apply agroecological principles that protect watersheds, soils, biodiversity, and the health of their communities. A direct link is established between an improved economic return and protection of environmental resources, while providing food security and sovereignty for their communities.
- **Network.** CAN works to form networks and alliances among university students and youth leaders, researchers, and consumers, and within producer communities, among different producer communities, and between consumers and producers. Local networks in the producer communities are based on face-to-face interaction. The broader network established among consumers and producers relies on new media for communication as well as educational opportunities for developing direct intercultural relationships. Through this latter network, the coffee drinker gains an understanding of the individuals and the ecosystems that produce his or her coffee, and farmers learn about the people drinking their coffee. Together they can forge relationships of mutual concern and commitment to sustainability.

CAN is part of a growing movement that is "thinking locally and acting globally" by creating awareness internationally between producers in Latin America and consumers in the United States and bringing them together in AFNs through cups of coffee, intercultural exchanges, and diversifying local food production. To find out about CAN's work and how university students participate visit www.canunite.org.

Promoting Local Food

Farmers' markets and CSA form the basis of an alternative local food system, but they are not likely to replace the traditional distribution and retail system. For this reason, it is important to change this system from within and have it concentrate as much as possible on local food. In any particular agricultural bioregion, many food retailers, restaurant owners, and managers of institutions serving food may be open to purchasing more of their food from local farmers, dairies, breweries, wineries, and other producers. In doing so, they may be able to reduce costs, increase their customer base, and stimulate the local economy. A small but growing number of restaurants and retailers in the United States and Europe have demonstrated the economic viability of serving or selling food that is almost entirely local in origin.

A coordinated campaign promoting local food can gain the support of chambers of commerce, business organizations, merchant's associations, farm bureaus, and the like. It can consist of any of the following elements:

- Farmers form cooperative arrangements for creating a regional identity in stores or markets, possibly expanding the wine-based French concept of *terroir* to food in general.
- Local stores or restaurants offer products that reflect farmer practice or regional production, communicating the uniqueness or special focus of local production systems.
- Local producers and the regional food identity are promoted at special events such as fairs and farmers' markets.
- A common local-identity label is developed for local food products, to help inform consumer choice and promote the local food identity at the same time.
- The produce at food stores and supermarkets is labeled with its origin, whether it is local or not.
- Thematic tours of local farms and producers are arranged for both local residents and tourists.
- A community-based, community-funded, and community-managed food hub is created that integrates all of the aforementioned elements (see The Food Commons section).

Facilitating Informed Consumer Choice

The face-to-face contact between consumers and farmers at farm stands and farmers' markets is an ideal occasion for sharing of understanding, farming practices, consumer desires, mutual needs and beliefs, and so on. In AFNs without opportunities for one-on-one communication, the major issue—in terms of democratic flow of information—is consumer education. The consumer needs to have available the information that will allow him or her to make informed choices. This is equally important outside of AFNs, where it helps to challenge the abuses of the industrial food system and the alienation of the consumer.

FIGURE 25.10 Fairly traded chocolate on a market shelf. The fair-trade certification tells consumers that the farmers who grew the cacao received fair compensation for their labor. (Photo courtesy of Eric Engles.)

Various means of facilitating informed consumer choice have been developed by consumer groups, organizations of farmers, extended alternative networks, and governments. In a bioregional context, labels of origin can help consumers distinguish local from nonlocal food and become more aware of the difference. In the global food market, certification labels have become an important means of educating consumers. The US government's certified organic label, and the fairly traded certification mentioned earlier are two examples. The simple existence of such labels raises consciousness of the fact that consumer choices matter (Figure 25.10).

BUILDING THE FOUNDATION FOR CHANGE

This chapter has demonstrated that the culture surrounding agriculture and food matters a great deal when it comes to moving the food system in a more sustainable direction. When people are conscious enough about the effects of their food choices to call themselves food citizens instead of consumers, when opportunities exist for people to interact more directly with those who grow their food, when farmers seeking to grow food more sustainably are supported in their efforts, and when there is a basis for communities to care deeply about how land is used, we are building a strong foundation for transforming the food system and making it more sustainable and more just.

It is important to recognize, however, that this foundation, however vital it may seem to those participating in it, is only part of the story. There is still the corporate-dominated food system described in the previous chapter, growing in strength as it expands into agricultural communities in every corner of the earth, supported by an economic system that even those who advocate for sustainability buy in to without always being conscious of it. To have some idea of how a nascent alternative food system might change the course of the larger food system—away from commodification of food, input intensification, top-down technology-dependent solutions and the like and toward sustainability—it is helpful to have a theoretical framework for understanding how "systems" function in society, whether they are big, powerful, and abstract like the industrial food system or more down to earth like AFNs.

Recall, as discussed in Chapter 24, the ideological system that has grown up around food and agriculture. This system shapes how the typical consumer behaves in relation to food, limits the scope of what he or she understands about how food comes to be, and distracts consumer's attention away from the transfer of wealth from land and workers to corporations that is the basis of food-system dynamics. This ally of corporate dominance can be understood as creating the "isolated consumer" discussed in this chapter and driving the increasing separation between consumers and farmers. By keeping food nonpolitical and making people into mere consumers of food, food-system ideology serves the ends of agribusiness, shaping the commodified culture that this chapter has identified as one of the strongest barriers to sustainability. To generalize this relationship, the global food system can be understood as having two complementary parts—an *economic* structure of private ownership, capital accumulation, and industrial production practices, and a *cultural* system of values, perspectives, ideas, psychologies, and motivations. Both parts are necessary for the existence of the whole, and each works to reinforce the other.

In this context, it is possible to see farmers' markets, CSAs, food hubs, farm stores, local food restaurants, and other elements of AFNs as the economic facets of an alternative food system and the communities, relationships, and expanded consciousness that support them and develop from them as the cultural facets. The two facets have a mutually reinforcing relationship just like the two parts of the industrial food system. If food-system change consists of the alternative food system expanding and displacing the industrial one, then it is clear that the cultural and economic facets of the alternative system must be considered in tandem, with a focus on how each can reinforce and help grow the other. This can help build the "foundation for change" referred to in the title of this section.

Building the foundation for change in the form of sustainable diets and AFNs is one challenge in promoting food-system transformation; the other, more significant, one is using this foundation to challenge the considerable power of the industrial food system and its strong economic and cultural hold on people all over the world. Because of this power, the scale of changes needed in our food system is daunting. A great deal of change has occurred since Rich Merrill's *Radical Agriculture* appeared in 1976, to be sure. Many of the ecological concepts and approaches to farming that he proposed in his chapter "Toward a Self-Sustaining Agriculture" appear in this textbook, and are being implemented broadly by farmers and researchers alike. But most of this change has been—following the distinctions made in Chapter 22—at the

CASE STUDY: THE FOOD COMMONS

> You never change things by fighting the existing reality. To change something, build a new model that makes the existing model obsolete.
>
> **Buckminster Fuller**

Those seeking to create and develop AFNs—farmers, would-be farmers, local food entrepreneurs, and consumers—face many obstacles in realizing their objectives. Because they are outside of the mainstream food system, they typically lack adequate financial resources, suitable land and infrastructure, business supports, training opportunities, and the like. The Food Commons (www.thefoodcommons.org) is seeking to change this reality by building a model for organizing, financing, and running locally based AFNs.

The Food Commons model has three main parts:

1. A **Food Commons Trust** owns and develops the physical assets needed to produce, process, and market local food products. Its mission is to lease land, buildings, and other facilities to small farms and food businesses at affordable rates so as to create opportunities for those who would otherwise lack the start-up resources.
2. A **Food Commons Financing Arm**, or bank, provides low-interest loans to farmers and small business owners who want to launch or expand their operations. This component is especially important in communities lacking financial institutions that understand the needs of small-scale food businesses.
3. A **Regional Food Hub** coordinates the complex logistics of meshing together the many components of an alternative food network. Depending on the unique needs of the region, it may provide basic business services, marketing expertise, technical assistance, vocational training, and other services. It also does educational and outreach work in the community, informing consumers and promoting the network's values of shared prosperity and food-system sustainability.

The idea is that this three-part model can be replicated in various communities around the United States, creating thriving AFNs where none have existed before and where many residents stand to benefit greatly from greater access to healthy food, fulfilling jobs, and entrepreneurial opportunities.

The cities of Fresno, CA, Los Angeles, CA, and Atlanta, GA have prototype FCs in development. In all of these locations, many of the resources needed to establish the trust and the hub are already in the hands of the municipal governments. Abandoned or repossessed urban and urban fringe lands, buildings, factories, stores, and processing facilities are being mobilized to form the basic infrastructure for producing, processing, and aggregating food, distributing food to the community, and linking local producers and processers to the network of eaters throughout the community. The City Council of Fresno has come out in support of the FC in their city, and is working closely with the FC Board to link local growers, processors, distributors, and consumers in a new alternative food network. The challenges of putting together the human and financial resources needed to launch such an enterprise are formidable, but the vision of the local foodshed provides a framework within which this model can unfold.

Advocates of this new foodshed structure also have the goal of connecting regional food networks to each other in a cooperative national federation that coordinates exchanges of information and appropriate trade relationships. Although the Food Commons organization is very clear that its goal is to build an alternative to the industrial food system, not to replace it, the network of regional alternative systems can be seen as a tentative and nascent form of the kind of sustainable food system that may someday replace the homogenized, one-size-fits-all global food system that we have today. In other words, by establishing strong AFNs at Level 4 in the conversion process, as the Food Commons intends to do, we may prepare the ground for the broader transformation to Level 5.

second and third levels of the transition process, and is too restricted to the farm and the farmer. Meanwhile, the separation between the eater and the farmer continues to grow, agriculture becomes more capital intensive, consolidation puts it under the control of fewer people, and the injustices remain. To reach the fourth and fifth levels in the transition process, more radical change—involving the entire food system—is required. It is with this focus that we move into the final chapter of the book.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. When you go to your local supermarket, how much information is available on who grew the food, how it was grown, and how far away it originated?
2. What are the cultural differences in food preferences around the world, and how are these being changed by advertising and the Internet?
3. Food quality is a complex subject. What are some of the components of food quality that extend beyond

nutritional aspects and incorporate more of the components of food-system sustainability?

4. What part of the food that you eat every day could you grow yourself?
5. How many farmers' markets are there in your community?
6. How many farmers do you know?
7. If you were to change your diet in order to reflect the "culture of sustainability," what would you add or remove from what you eat now?
8. Why is the labeling of food that contains GMOs only part of the solution?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Agricultural Marketing Service, Farmers Market Site
www.ams.usda.gov/farmersmarkets
A valuable source of information about the growing network of farmers' markets in the United States.

Alternative Farming Systems Information Center, CSA section
www.nal.usda.gov/afsic/csa
A CSA information resource that helps the consumer find a nearby CSA and learn what CSAs are and how they work. Provides links to other alternative farming systems information.

Community Agroecology Network
www.canunite.org
A source of information about the opportunities for developing sustainable relationships and AFNs that link consumers in the North with producers in the South, while creating opportunities for local food security and opportunity within rural communities in Mexico and Central America.

Food Routes
www.foodroutes.org
Information, resources and market opportunities for the food and farming community, community-based nonprofits, the food-concerned public, policy makers and the media.

Local Harvest
www.localharvest.org
A remarkable site that links the conscious consumer to a nationwide network of alternative food and farm products, including farmers markets, CSAs, farms, grocery stores, restaurants, and even an online store.

National Agricultural Statistics Service
www.nass.usde.gov
Access to an extensive database about agriculture.

Old Dog Documentaries
www.olddogdocumentaries.com
An organization that uses its documentary film skills to provoke grassroots solutions to some of societies most pressing problems, including food and environmental issues.

The National Farmers' Retail and Markets Association
www.farma.org
A guide to the expanding network of certified farmers markets in the United Kingdom, and the work of the National Farmers' Retail and Markets Association in fostering the link between farmers and consumers.

RECOMMENDED READING

Alkon, A. H. and J. Agyeman. 2011. *Cultivating Food Justice: Race, Class, and Sustainability*. MIT Press: Cambridge, MA.
An engaging review of the roots of injustice in food systems and the necessary steps toward food justice for all.

Cribb, J. 2010. *The Coming Famine: The Global Food Crisis and What We Can Do About It*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.
A far-ranging view of the impeding food crisis, and an attempt at a balanced view of how to avoid it.

Elton, S. 2013. *Consumed: Food for a Finite Planet*. University of Chicago Press: Chicago, IL.
An engaging look at the challenges facing food system in the very near future, and examples that provide a hopeful vision for the changes needed to create sustainable alternatives.

Freyfogle, E. T. (ed.). 2001. *The New Agrarianism: Land, Culture, and the Community of Life*. Island Press: Washington, DC.
A gathering of powerful writings by well-known authors in the field of food and the environment that shows how there is a groundswell of change in the direction of strengthening our roots in the land, while bringing greater health to families, neighborhoods, and communities in rural as well as urban places.

Gottlieb, R. and A. Joshi. 2010. *Food Justice*. The MIT Press: Cambridge, MA.
Covers the history of food injustices and describes the movement to change the system, addressing along the way the increasing disconnect between food and culture resulting from the industrialization of the food system.

Halweil, B. 2004. *Eat Here: Reclaiming Homegrown Pleasures in a Global Supermarket.* A WorldWatch Book. Norton: New York.
A highly engaging account of where our food comes from, why food-system change is needed, and what the alternatives are.

Henderson, E. and R. Van En. 1999. *Sharing the Harvest: A Guide to Community Supported Agriculture*. Chelsea Green Publishing: White River Junction, VT.
An informative guide to the history, development, implementation, and benefits of CSA.

Méndez, V. E., C. Bacon, S. R. Gliessman, D. Goodman, and J. Fox (eds.). 2006. *Confronting the Coffee Crisis: Sustaining Livelihoods and Ecosystems in Mexico and Central America*. MIT Press: Boston, MA.
A probing look at the impact of commodity chains on rural communities in the global South, and alternative steps that can be taken by consumers and consumer organizations in the global North.

Menzel, P. and F. D'Aluisio. 2005. *Hungry Planet: What the World Eats*. Ten Speed Press: Berkeley, CA.
A beautiful photographic essay of what families eat from around the world, placed in an important context of cultural diversity and the impacts of the global market place on food and diets.

Merrill, R. (ed.). 1976. *Radical Agriculture*. Harper Colophon Books. Harper & Row Publishers: New York.

A thought-provoking analysis of the problems as well as a presentation of visionary solutions for moving toward a self-sustaining agriculture, written before most of us were promoting sustainability.

Pollan, M. 2008. *In Defense of Food: An Eater's Manifesto*. The Penguin Press: London, U.K.

A convincing argument for what to eat in order to promote ecologically sound, nutritionally healthy, and sustainable food systems.

Riebel, L. 2011. *The Green Foodprint. Food Choices for Healthy People and a Healthy Planet*. CreateSpace Independent Publishing Platform: Seattle, WA.

A practical guide that helps readers navigate the new world of sustainable food.

26 From Sustainable Agroecosystems to a Sustainable Food System

In the previous chapter, we focused on the need to reconnect the two most important parts of the food system: those who grow the food and those who eat it. As localized alternative food networks spring up around the world and grow in size and influence, the global food system begins to be transformed in the direction of sustainability. But this phenomenon by itself, while an important driver of change, represents only part of what needs to happen. Ultimately what is needed is a paradigm shift—a fundamental revolution in thinking, values, ethics, and belief systems, and in the social and economic organization of human societies. Food-system sustainability will be attained only with a parallel transformation in the way that the human species occupies planet earth.

This scale of change is what was described in Chapter 22 as Level 5 of the conversion process. As described in that chapter, the essence of Level 5 is to "build a new global food system, based on equity, participation, and justice, that is not only sustainable but also helps restore and protect Earth's life-support systems."

Some might say that it is too much to ask of agroecology to integrate such a broad social-change agenda into what we do as agroecologists. But as we have argued in several chapters of this text, ecological sustainability cannot be isolated from the broader context in which food systems exist. If agroecology limits its attention to the narrow realm of crop production and is satisfied being an alternative to agronomy (which often operates as the scientific arm of the industrial food system), it drastically constrains its ability to move agriculture and the food system in the direction of sustainability. Encompassing conversion Levels 4 and 5 into the mission of agroecology is a natural extension of the whole-system, long-term, ecology-based approach that is at the heart of the field—and on this extension may hinge the very fate of the planet.

PROGRESS TOWARD SUSTAINABILITY

Since the 1990s, there has been a very significant increase in agroecologically based agriculture, which is variously termed organic, biological, or ecological. Between 1999 and 2010 the area of land devoted to certified organic agriculture increased threefold to 37 million hectares. There are 12.1 million hectares of such farmland in Oceania (which includes Australia, New Zealand, and Pacific Island nations), 10 million hectares in Europe, and 8.4 million hectares in Latin America. In the United States, sales of certified organic food reached $31.5 billion in 2011.

The conversion to agroecological production, especially in developed countries, has taken place mostly at Level 2, with some occurring at Level 3, and it has been focused at the farm scale. In developing countries, where the majority of population growth today is concentrated, movements promoting sustainable food production have become increasingly important, in part because farmers in these countries have very limited access to the resources that would allow large-scale input substitution to occur. Agriculture in what is referred to as the "Global South" is often far more labor intensive and occurs on a much smaller scale than in industrial countries, so it is not surprising that approximately 80% of the 1.6 million certified organic farmers in the world live in the developing world. Further, noncertified agroecologically based agriculture is practiced by millions of indigenous people, peasants, and small family farms involved in subsistence and local market-oriented production in developing countries. Interestingly, most of these small-scale organic farmers have made major steps toward Level 3 redesign of their production systems, and many are making good progress toward linking with consumer groups at Level 4 (Figure 26.1).

As reviewed in the previous chapter, the increase in consumer demand for and interest in sustainably grown food has driven the recent progress in conversion to Level 4 in many parts of the world. A very strong local food and farming movement has promoted considerable growth in farmers' markets, various forms of community-supported agriculture, and direct-marketing schemes that link the grower and the eater more closely. In the United States alone, where the first formal CSA appeared in 1985, there are now many thousands of registered CSA schemes. Some of them represent diverse groups of farmers, offer consumers both fresh and processed products, allow online ordering, and provide consumers with descriptions of the farmers, their farming practices, and the elements of sustainability of their operations. The food-system knowledge that has been generated as a result of such relationships has become an important incentive for the initiation of some changes at Level 5. Much similar change taking place in developing countries is aligned with the local food and food sovereignty movements that are gaining strength in many parts of the world.

Despite all of this progress, and the remarkable increase in Level 4 alternative food-system networks, the total percentage of global food production and consumption accounted for by these networks is in the low single digits. Further, the industrial food system has blunted much of the potential impact of these changes by co-opting organic food and even adopting the language of the "slow" and "local" food movements in its advertising. This means that the alternative food

FIGURE 26.1 An organic coffee farm in San Ramon, Nicaragua. The farm is diversified beyond coffee for the export market, including fruit trees, shade, firewood, native forest species, and other useful species. Note the contrast with the organic carrot monoculture in Figure 24.9.

system is just that—on the outside of the mainstream, with limited impact in moving the entire food system to Level 5 and bringing about broader change in society.

What needs to be done differently? How much further does the alternative food movement have to go? How can agroecology strengthen the movement? We will begin to answer these questions in the following as we explore in more detail what is needed for food-system sustainability and what sustainable food systems will look like.

ATTAINING SUSTAINABILITY

In Chapter 1 we listed some of the "elements of a sustainable food system" as a way of putting the unsustainable practices of industrial agriculture into sharper contrast. Now that we've explored the agroecological foundations of sustainability, along with some aspects of the social systems within which the food system exists, we can revisit the question "what would a sustainable food system look like?" and formulate answers with fuller meaning. This look at what sustainability entails will provide a clearer vision of the goals we want to achieve for food systems and highlight the barriers and challenges we face in reaching those goals.

Requirements for Food-System Sustainability

Agroecologists and others working to build a sustainable food system will inevitably disagree about what constitutes sustainability; they will have different ideas about the most ideal forms for organizing sustainable food production and distribution; and they will differ on how best to accelerate the transformation to sustainable future. These differences come about because of the expected diversity in values, foundational assumptions, and worldviews that exist even among those who share basic goals. Although this diversity of opinion is healthy, it is also helpful to have a reference point that's not so subject to dispute. One such a reference point is provided by the **carrying capacity** of the biosphere. In ecology, carrying capacity is usually defined as the population size that can be supported by an ecosystem without destroying that ecosystem; when dealing with human beings and whole biosphere, however, it is more meaningful to replace "population size" with "the overall ecological impact of the species" because individual human beings' impacts on the environment can vary so widely.

The ultimate reason why our present food system is unsustainable is that it causes the human species to exceed the carrying capacity of the biosphere. In this broadest of contexts, then, a *sustainable* food system is one that, in contrast, allows the human species to live within the carrying capacity of the biosphere.

The concept of the **ecological footprint**, developed in 1990 by Mathis Wackernagel and William Rees at the University of British Columbia, has become a widely recognized means of measuring the ecological demands that an individual, a city, a region, or a country—or all of humanity—places on the biosphere. It entails making estimates of the resource use, energy use, and pollution that goes along with everything human beings do in the course of living. These estimates are rough, of course, but there is broad consensus that human society as a whole is currently impacting the biosphere at a level clearly exceeding its carrying capacity. The current estimate is that the human species is impacting the biosphere at a level that would require 1.5 earths in order to be sustainable (Global Footprint Network 2014). By 2030, humanity is expected to reach the point where it is using the equivalent of *two whole earths* to support itself—and that projection is based on conservative estimates of increasing impacts.

Every day that human society and its food system exceed the earth's carrying capacity, our impacts undermine the ability of the biosphere to support us. We are borrowing from the earth's ecological bank account, which is not infinite. At some point, the ecological systems that support life on the planet—allow food to be grown, recycle our wastes, provide us with water, energy, fiber, and raw materials—will begin to break down. Our debt will come due. The most basic benchmark for sustainability, then, is an overall ecological footprint for humanity that does not exceed the carrying capacity—or what is sometimes called the *biocapacity*—of the earth. Based on this benchmark, we must lower our ecological footprint by at least 33%—or more, if it rises beyond 1.5 earths in the meantime.

Although humanity's ecological impact comes from every form of resource use and every kind of waste emission, agriculture contributes to it the most. Agriculture uses more water and more land than any other human activity, emits a large proportion of total greenhouse gas emissions, and releases large amounts of ecosystem-damaging substances such as nitrogen and phosphorus into the environment. Add to this the ecological impacts of the ways we process, distribute, and consume food, and it becomes clear that the food-related portion of a person's or city's or country's ecological footprint—its “foodprint”—is proportional to its total ecological footprint.

So if humanity’s ecological footprint is at present about 50% greater than what is sustainable, then so is our foodprint. The previous chapters have already expressed what is entailed in responding to this basic threat to our existence—fundamental changes in how food is produced along with dramatic reductions in the impacts of consumption—but now we have a rough quantification of the goal: a reduction of 33% in the ecological impacts of the food system.

To reduce the total foodprint of the human species by at least a third, the average per-person foodprint must be reduced by an equal amount. That’s simple math. Since the foodprints of people around the world vary considerably, this means that those with the largest foodprints must reduce their ecological impacts by a much larger proportion than those with smaller foodprints. Indeed, from an ethical standpoint, those with the smallest foodprints must be allowed to *increase* them to reach at least minimal levels of food security (Figure 26.2).

It will be impossible, of course, for all human beings to have equally low foodprints, but the necessary level of reduction cannot be achieved unless the current broad range is dramatically narrowed. Measures of ecological footprints for different countries, which roughly correspond to their foodprints, provide some indication of how far those in affluent countries would have to go to bring their foodprints reasonably close to what can be sustained by the earth’s biocapacity. The average ecological footprint of a person living in the United States, for example, is estimated to be well over *four times* the sustainable level for the world, whereas the average person in Ghana, Armenia, or Chad has an impact that’s approximately equal to average global biocapacity (Global Footprint Network 2014).

It’s important to recognize that this examination of ecological footprints provides an *ecological* argument for greater equality. The extreme inequality that exists today in access to food resources, both between countries and within them, is incompatible with the goal of sustainability. Greater equity in relation to food—one of the basic principles of food sustainability that this text has put forward—is therefore an ecological imperative in addition to being an ethical necessity.

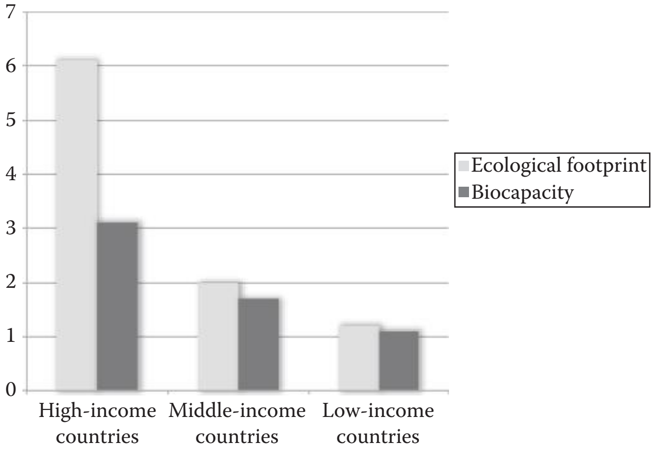


FIGURE 26.2 World ecological footprint compared to biocapacity, grouped by country income category, expressed in global hectares per person. These data were calculated for 2007. The global average biocapacity for 2007 was 1.8 global hectares per person. (From Global Footprint Network, National Footprint Accounts, 2010.)

VISION OF FOOD-SYSTEM SUSTAINABILITY

What kind of food system will allow humanity to reduce its overall ecological impact, and its foodprint, by 33% or more? This is the question that must guide any vision of future sustainability for agriculture and the larger food system. When a reference point such as this is applied to the problem, the depth and extent of the changes that will be needed become clearer. It will not be sufficient to merely stem the anticipated increases in human impact on the biosphere—we much achieve significant *reductions* in that impact, even as the number of people contributing to that impact continues to grow. Just modifying business-as-usual approaches is not going to work, because it is business as usual that’s the cause of the problem.

Given this reality, we can develop a few basic premises on which to base a vision of a sustainable food system:

Everything is on the table. The changes that are required are so fundamental that no culture, human institution, or social structure can remain off-limits to sustainability-based transformation. This includes systems of governance and political organization, economies, and institutions that shape and caretake values and ethics.

Sustainability in the food system cannot be isolated from overall sustainability. How we feed ourselves is so basic to our existence that it can’t be separated from the other things we do. Further, the biosphere doesn’t distinguish between food-related impacts and those from other human activities.

Greater equality is paramount. As noted earlier, inequality—in wealth, power, consumption, and access to food—is antithetical to sustainability.

We have to kick our addiction to growth. The need for growth that’s at the core of all the world’s economic systems is fundamentally incompatible with reducing humanity’s ecological footprint. Growth is driven by consumption, and consumption is what generates the ecological impacts that we need to reduce.

With these premises in mind, we can apply the filter of an agroecological worldview and propose that a sustainable food system must display the following features:

- The system for organizing trade and productive activity in which the food system is embedded (the economic system) is based on the principles of equal exchange, fairness, and access. It does not need growth or capital accumulation to function, and it has no place for greed.
- The food system is organized as a commons, in which there is an even and relatively equal distribution of the benefits and costs of food production

among the entire community, from the seed and soil to the table and back again. The lure of privatized profit is replaced by the desire to promote the public good.

- Both the food system and the larger society support, and in fact demand, a full, transparent, and equitable accounting of all ecological costs. The negative consequences of productive and consumptive behavior are taken into account, borne equally, and mitigated so they are not absorbed by the environment or by less-powerful populations.
- The geography of the food system is designed to allow people to live much closer to where their food is grown, processed, and prepared. Localness, freshness, access, and direct relationships between growers and eaters are valued elements.
- Industrial cultural energy use in agriculture is replaced by biological cultural energy, particularly its human form. The work people do in producing food is valued and rewarded appropriately and fairly. A much greater proportion of the population participates directly in food production.
- Diets are based on real nutritional needs and support health and well-being rather than corporate profit margins. Empty-calorie foods are unknown, and the foods with the highest ecological costs—particularly those derived from animals—are treated as luxuries to be eaten sparingly. The meat that is consumed is produced in integrated crop–livestock systems or sustainably managed grazing or pasture systems.
- It is universally recognized that every individual has, alone or in community with others, the right to sufficient and culturally acceptable food that is produced and consumed sustainably.
- Agricultural production is handled predominantly by diverse, small-holder farms integrated into a multifunctional landscape that provides both food and environmental services. Large-scale monocultures dependent on external inputs and focused on yield maximization have disappeared.
- The food system is carbon neutral: production systems mitigate climate change by returning carbon to the soil and sequestering it in living biomass.
- Rural communities are healthy and dynamic and meet their own needs while providing food and environmental services for others. They are well integrated with regional centers of denser population.
- Communities at the grassroots level—including women, children, seniors, and the poor—are empowered to direct and govern their own affairs, rather than having decisions made for them by economic and political powers at the top.

This vision of food-system sustainability constitutes a possible goal, or end point, of the transition to Level 5. There is no guarantee that realizing all these features will result in humanity limiting its ecological impact to the carrying capacity of the biosphere, but creating a food system with these features will go a long way toward insuring the future of the planet and our species.

FIGURE 26.3 A small-scale, pasture-raised meat chicken operation on the central coast of California. Organic feed is supplemented by insects, seeds, and grass, the animals are raised under relatively stress-free conditions, and the plot can be used for crop production after the animals are moved. Systems such as this are compatible with many of the fundamental features of the sustainable food system of the future.

DIFFICULT ROAD AHEAD

As noted earlier, tremendous progress has been made in moving toward the vision outlined in the previous discussion. It is significant that many of the elements of this vision will not sound particularly far-fetched to many readers, and that many of them are already being realized at a small and local scale around the world. We must recognize, however, that the barriers to change are enormous and that there are many important factors largely beyond our control that will constrain our choices and raise the bar for sustainability.

Facing the Ecological and Demographic Realities

Humans have transformed the face of the earth with agriculture, the harvest of trees for building materials and fuel and fiber, mining, urban development, and construction of transportation and energy infrastructure. We have increased the level of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere to levels unseen in hundreds of thousands of years. We have allowed aggressive weeds, invertebrates, disease organisms, and other pests to spread widely beyond former barriers, disrupting ecosystems everywhere. We have overfished the oceans, destroying fisheries that once provided many with a large proportion of their food. We have leaked, dumped, and poured tremendous quantities of toxic and environmentally disruptive substances into the water, air, and soil, making many of them virtually ubiquitous. The cumulative effect of all this human impact is environmental change on a geologic scale. In the scant period of a few thousand years, the human species has become a planet-changing force, leading many scientists to argue that we have entered a new geologic age, which they call the **Anthropocene**.

The defining aspect of the Anthropocene is that human activity has become a major driver of biosphere change. The frightening part is that we have only a limited grasp of the new dynamics that we have set in motion. We do know, however, that we have unleashed changes that are going to move in a particular direction for the foreseeable future no matter what we do. A major driver of these changes is the accumulation of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere, which will warm the planet and affect climates globally for centuries even if we drastically reduce the burning of fossil fuels tomorrow.

Some of the most consequential of the changes in the biosphere wrought by human activity are listed below. We no longer have the ability to prevent these changes from occurring; we have some control, however, over the magnitude of each change and its rate of progression.

- Supplies of freshwater—for both agriculture and general human use—will diminish in most parts of the world, catastrophically so in some places. This is a result of overdrafting of underground aquifers, pollution of many surface waters and aquifers, a general reduction in the amount of snow falling in the world's mountain ranges, and a reduction in rainfall in some arid and semiarid locations.
- Biodiversity will continue to decline, and rates of extinction and extirpation may accelerate. Many natural systems have already become more fragile, and the loss of more species will only increase their vulnerability. As these systems lose biodiversity and become more simplified, their ecosystem services are in danger of being lost. The loss of species is irreversible.
- Much agricultural land will be lost to sea level rise, salinization, drought, and desertification as freshwater resources are stretched thin and the climate warms.
- Much less protein will be available from wild-caught fish because many fisheries will collapse, victims of overfishing and vast ecological changes brought about by the acidification and warming of the oceans.
- Exploitable supplies of critical food-system resources, such as phosphorus, will diminish, and the resulting increases in their price and availability will combine to limit access to fewer and fewer of those who need them.
- Climate change will make agriculture an increasingly risky enterprise in many parts of the world, increasing the rate of crop failures, reducing yields, and possibly causing the abandonment of some agricultural land.

The combined effects of these essentially irreversible trends are sobering. At a time when we are increasing humanity's overall ecological footprint, these changes are reducing the biosphere's biocapacity, further widening the gap between our footprint and the earth's ability to absorb it. And the wider the gap gets, the more biocapacity is reduced.

And then there's the problem of population growth. Based on projections for the global human population put forward by the United Nations, the number of people on the earth will rise from close to seven billion in 2010 to just over nine billion by 2050 (United Nations 2010). Most of this rise will probably occur in the developing world. In general, two billion more people means a significant increase in the ecological footprint of the human species, which greatly complicates the goal of reducing that footprint. Not only does population increase continually reset the potential footprint at a higher level, but it also means that the required per-capita reduction increases substantially.

A further problem is that population growth in developing countries is combined with rising incomes, which means an increasing demand for more processed, animal-derived, and higher-value foods—precisely those with the highest ecological impacts. So as the number of human beings in the world increases, so too does the per-capita impact of each one.

CONSEQUENCES OF CONTINUING ON THE CURRENT PATH IN AGRICULTURE

If the previous discussion seems to point to a clouded future, consider what our world will look like if we continue on the current food-system trajectory, directed by the needs of industrial agriculture and a growth-dependent economy. As described in detail in Chapter 1, the practices of industrial agriculture are characterized most centrally by high ecological impacts: emission of large amounts of greenhouse gases, pollution of the environment by animal manures and agricultural chemicals, soil loss, use of large volumes of freshwater for irrigation, erosion of agrobiodiversity, reduction and degradation of natural systems and loss of their ecosystem services, and so on. There is no doubt that humanity's overall ecological footprint will continue to broaden as long as industrial agriculture remains dominant. Further, the capitalist economic system in which industrial agriculture operates insures that there will be continuing pressure on the consumption side of the food system to increase per-capita foodprints. Growth and capital accumulation, which drive the system, come from increases in consumption, so we can be assured that the system and its many allies will push more consumption.

It is difficult to predict the shorter-term consequences of continuing on the trajectory on which industrial agriculture is taking us. While it is clear that the ecological impacts of the current food system, if not curtailed significantly, will eventually cause catastrophic collapse of the natural systems that are the foundation of agricultural productivity, we have very little idea how long it will take before that collapse begins to

FIGURE 26.4 A monoculture oil palm plantation near Golfito, Costa Rica. Cropland is being displaced to feed the demand for biofuels. This is one of the ways that industrial agriculture expands the ecological footprint of the food system.

occur, how quickly it will ramify through the biosphere, and just how catastrophic it will be.

There are many reasons, however, to believe that continuing on the current path will not precipitate any period of extreme crisis in the near term, perhaps not for decades. As noted in the chapter *Genetic Resources in Agroecosystems* (Chapter 15), industrial agriculture shows an ability to mitigate the short-term consequences of its practices: the negative effects of a particular technology are temporarily "corrected" with a new technology, allowing the cycle to continue. For its part, the biosphere seems to be remarkably resilient, able to continue functioning in a relatively normal way even as its foundations are severely weakened. And human societies seem fairly resilient as well, showing an ability to defuse protests by the poor and hungry, to weather short-term food crises and droughts, and to respond to pressures with reforms that maintain their stability.

In the absence of any actual extreme crisis, supporters of industrial agriculture are likely to continue to be successful in using the *threat* of crisis to justify the use of any and all technological fixes, including increased use of fertilizers, genetically modified seeds, and a focus on market and biofuel crops. As we noted in Chapter 24, the dominant narrative is that feeding the growing number of people in the world requires an even a stronger emphasis on the yield-increasing practices and approaches of industrial agriculture (Conway 2012). Until this viewpoint is discredited, industrial agriculture will have the justification it needs to continue its dominance in the food system.

The absence of an impending crisis should not lull us into complacency, however. Combined with the irreversible changes that humans have already unleashed on the biosphere, continuing on the trajectory of industrial agriculture is sure to lead to calamity. It's only a matter of time. If we allow it to happen, a particularly unwelcome kind of solution may be forced on us: widespread famine, war, and violence leading to rapid depopulation.

Nobody wants this grim picture of the future to become a reality. But the forces in control of our food systems don't see that they are helping to hasten the arrival of such a future.

The sooner we reverse course in our food systems, the better. With every day that passes, the problems and impacts previously described only worsen. The longer we wait to put the multiple levels of conversion fully into motion, the less control we have over our fate.

HOPE AND ACTION FOR CHANGE

This text has assumed throughout that fundamental change in the food system is both necessary and possible. It has advocated that the field of agroecology adopt an active social-change orientation, based on the assumption that realizing the goal of a more just and more equitable food system is realistic. These assumptions persist even in the face of the daunting challenges and realities just discussed.

One reason for having confidence in our ability to create a sustainable food system is the success experienced in putting into practice some of the basic principles underlying agroecology's commitment to farmer collaboration and social change. Through the process of participatory action research (PAR), for example, agroecologists around the world have undertaken food-system research and development projects that link research, participation, and action for food system change in a reflective and iterative process, creating an effective alternative to the current top-down approach of research and extension (see the Special Topic feature Participatory Action Research).

SPECIAL TOPIC: PARTICIPATORY ACTION RESEARCH

Inherently interdisciplinary, agroecology is most effective when it links the multiple players from all of the resource sectors in the food system through collaborative research and education (Uphoff 2002; Guzmán-Casado and Alonso-Mielgo 2008; Snapp and Pound 2008). When this collaborative approach is linked with action for change, a process develops that has been called PAR. PAR is an iterative, ongoing process of reflection, action, and research that seeks to provide a place for all voices in the food system to be heard, especially those that have been traditionally excluded from the research and development process—small farmers, consumers, farm laborers, and women and children. These marginalized populations are engaged in the process not just through consultation, but also through direct participation (Eksvärd et al. 2009).

Participative collaboration begins early in a PAR or education project. Partners interact through a mutual dialogue to arrive at a common agreement that meets most of the partners' needs, abilities, and interests. This dialogue allows for the development of a shared understanding of the project's goals, challenges, and benefits. But the dialogue is also linked to action and practice; for farmers, this may mean major changes in the design and management of their farms. For food consumers, it may mean major changes in purchasing patterns, food choices, and the understanding of how food gets from the farm to the table. Each time an action for change is taken, things can shift, and the long-term relationship that partners have developed allows for follow-up exchange, new activities, and future change.

Agroecological principles—whether they are explicitly recognized as such or not—are being applied everyday on small- and medium-scale farms that are purposely growing food outside the system of industrial agriculture. These operations provide a fertile ground for future change in both farm-level practices and the socioeconomic context in which they exist. By linking these forms of practice with agroecological science through participatory relationships, a very *practical* kind of agroecology emerges. A feedback between practice and science is developed, where farmers help define the problems that need to be solved, test the solutions, and experiment with the innovative alternatives that must replace the industrial model.

An example of how PAR can integrate farmer knowledge into research and outreach exists in the collaborative work of an interdisciplinary group of graduate students and professors at the University of California at Santa Cruz. Working with NGO researchers from multiple disciplines on a participatory project involving coffee communities in Mexico and Central America, this group conducts research resulting in academic publications (e.g., Bacon et al. 2005) and helps organize direct actions in the communities (Figure 26.5). Another example of PAR comes from Andalusia, Spain, where researchers, professors, and extensionists associated with the graduate program in agroecology of the Institute of Sociology and Campesino Studies (*ISEC* in Spanish) at the University of Cordoba have developed a focus on the needs of small farmers, cooperatives, and consumers in southern Spain (Sevilla-Guzmán 2006; Cuellar-Padilla and Calle-Callado 2011). Other similar relationships between farming communities and agroecologists have promoted a strong agroecology component in social movements throughout Latin America, such as the Landless Peasant Movement in Brazil (*MST* in Portuguese) and La Via Campesina (Altieri and Toledo 2011).

In many ways, PAR mirrors the basic principles underlying the agroecological approach. The emphasis on diversity and whole systems in agroecology is reflected in the effort to bring together diverse voices and knowledge systems and to democratize research, education, and social-change processes. The long-term time perspective that is so important in the agroecological approach is reflected in PAR's emphasis on forming long-term relationships and in the cyclical/iterative nature of the PAR process.

FIGURE 26.5 People engaged in a participatory nutrition workshop with locally grown foods in San Ramón, Nicaragua. Cooking with local recipes and foods can replace the processed empty calories produced by the industrial food system.

TABLE 26.1
Levels of Conversion: From Industrial Agriculture to a Sustainable World Food System

		Role of Agroecology's Three Aspects		
Level	**Scale**	**Ecological Research**	**Farmer Practice and Collaboration**	**Social Change**
1. Increase efficiency of industrial practices	Farm	**Primary**	**Important** Lowers costs and lessens environmental impacts	**Minor**
2. Substitute alternative practices and inputs	Farm	**Primary**	**Important** Supports shift to alternative practices	**Minor**
3. Redesign whole agroecosystems	Farm, region	**Primary** Develops indicators of sustainability	**Important** Builds true sustainability at the farm scale	**Important** Builds enterprise viability and societal support
4. Reestablish connection between growers and eaters, develop alternative food networks	Local, regional, national	**Supportive** Interdisciplinary research provides evidence for need for change and viability of alternatives	**Important** Forms direct and supportive relationships	**Primary** Economies restructured; values and behaviors changed
5. Rebuild the global food system so that it is sustainable and equitable for all	World	**Supportive** Transdisciplinary research promotes the change process and monitors sustainability	**Important** Offers the practical basis for the paradigm shift	**Primary** World systems fundamentally transformed

An even more important reason for believing that a sustainable food system is within reach is the potential power of the model of grassroots change embodied in Levels 4 and 5 of the conversion process. Progress at Levels 1–3 of the conversion process expands the basis for Level 4 alternative food networks. Alternative food networks grow in number and increase their strength and visibility, giving more and more consumers the opportunity to participate in them. More and more people thus have the experience of buying healthy food directly from the person who grows it. By connecting in this way, buyers develop relationships with growers, learn of the ecological soundness of the farming practices that are used, and become aware of how the industrial food system puts profits ahead of people and the environment yet doesn't have to pay the costs of ecological degradation or social injustice. These experiences provide the motivation to participate in changing the current system by supporting sustainable alternatives, and they form the expanding basis for change at Level 5, where basic belief, value, and ethical systems change. The expanding awareness that's part of this process then extends to other facets of environmental and social relationships, bringing about a paradigm shift focused on reducing our ecological footprint, recognizing limits to growth, and living sustainably.

In this model, change at any one level makes possible change at the next level, which feeds back to support further change at the first level, which in turn supports more change at the next level. The overall effect, therefore, can be powerfully synergistic. We are already seeing this synergism in the rapid expansion and replication of alternative food networks around the world. As these alternatives to the industrial food system increase in number, they begin to link together, forming networks of networks with even greater influence over the actions and beliefs of consumers and eaters around the world. At some point, the alternative system will make the industrial, corporate-controlled food system obsolete. People will become more fully aware of the harms caused by the industrial food system and abandon it, choosing to participate instead in the alternative system that's been growing up around them and has already proven to support a more equitable, just, and sustainable society. In this way, the kind of action for change recommended in this text could propel a rapidly unfolding, crisis-free transition to sustainability.

The ways in which the levels of conversion work together to transform the food system are outlined in Table 26.1.

We acknowledge that this model of change could be based on overly optimistic assumptions. We are not recommending that readers adopt it as an article of faith. The whole-system approach at the heart of agroecology argues for serious consideration of the challenges discussed earlier in this chapter. Climate change and the power of the industrial food paradigm could lead readers to conclude that humanity is most likely headed toward ecological Armageddon, that sustainability in any form is still very far off in the future, or that humanity will achieve a sustainable presence on the planet only after prolonged and intense crisis. These are all reasonable conclusions based on our present state of knowledge.

But beliefs about the future should not control what we do in the present. If they do, the "prophecy" becomes self-fulfilling. So, even if it seems that a sustainable food system is not in the offing, it's still essential to behave *as if it is* and to work toward that goal. This stance was expressed in terms of hope by Vaclav Havel: "Hope is not the conviction that something will turn out well but the certainty that something makes sense regardless of how it turns out."

Beyond the philosophical realm, there are important practical reasons for agroecologists and others who support the goal of sustainability to build alternative food systems, to increase awareness of food-justice issues, and to challenge the ideology supporting industrial agriculture, despite any doubts about what the future may hold:

- Alternative food networks and increased attention to food-justice issues make a real difference in people's lives in the present. They create jobs with living wages, make opportunities for entrepreneurial development, strengthen local economies, and provide people with healthy food.
- Any progress made in moving toward sustainability, however limited, is a positive step toward reducing humanity's ecological footprint and slowing the damage being done to the biosphere.
- If the status quo holds for a long time and the transition to a fundamentally different, sustainable food system is in fact triggered by crisis, the existence of functioning alternatives may help the transition occur with greater rapidity and less disruption.

If it comes as a surprise to many of us that humanity has been able to wield the power to nearly destroy our seemingly limitless planet, then perhaps we will be equally surprised by our power to heal it and realize the potential inherent in our species' unique combination of intelligence and compassion. We won't know until we try.

FIGURE 26.6 A diverse organic vegetable field at the ALBA training center near Salinas, CA. Farmworkers are given access to land, equipment, market access, and training to become independent organic farmers in ways that combine all levels in the conversion process.

Agroecological knowledge exists in farming systems around the world. New knowledge is being generated every time a seed is planted. Linking this knowledge to the paradigm shift going on in food systems promotes the social changes that can become a movement for the new alternative food-system paradigm. This movement brings sustainability to the environment upon which we depend, prosperity to the relocalized economies that it fosters, and equity and access to the society of which we are all part of. We each have the responsibility to make the necessary changes. It is hoped that the agroecological vision presented in this book will provide the basis for much of this transformation.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT

1. How does this well-known quote from Margaret Mead relate to the movement for food-system sustainability? "Never doubt that a small group of thoughtful, committed citizens can change the world; indeed, it's the only thing that ever has."
2. What are some of the ethical, social, personal, and faith-based issues that complicate the search for solutions to the "population problem?"
3. What are some of the characteristics of the food-system paradigm shifts going on in your own community? How could you become more involved in them?
4. Small-holder, traditional, indigenous, and local food systems are often looked to as examples of sustainable agroecosystem alternatives. How do such systems demonstrate the idea of "going forward by going backward?"
5. If you wanted to eat lower on the food chain, how would you have to change your current eating habits? How might this have positive impacts on how food systems are designed and managed?

INTERNET RESOURCES

Food Tank: The Food Think Tank
www.foodtank.com
An independent voice seeking sustainable solutions for our broken food system, with up-to-date resources, examples, and options for our most pressing environmental and social problems.

Global Footprint Network
www.footprintnetwork.org
A nonprofit organization working to ensure a sustainable future where all people have the opportunity to live satisfying lives within the means of one planet. Their work aims to accelerate the use of the ecological footprint methodology to measure human impact on earth so we can make informed choices and changes for the future.

Personal Footprint

www.footprintnetwork.org/en/index.php/GFN/page/personal_footprint/

A questionnaire-based calculator, created by the Global Footprint Network, for estimating an individual's ecological footprint. Your footprint is presented in terms of the number of planets it would take to support humanity if everyone lived like you.

Population Connection

www.populationconnection.org

A US-based grassroots organization that advocates for population stabilization, family planning, and access to contraception for all who want it.

Vital Signs Online

www.vitalsigns.worldwatch.org

A very up-to-date source of information that provides business leaders, policymakers, and engaged citizens with the latest data and analysis they need to understand critical global trends. It has excellent data in the area of food and agriculture.

World Population Balance

www.worldpopulationbalance.org

An organization that grapples with the issues of overpopulation, population control, and the need for a smaller, truly sustainable population.

RECOMMENDED READING

Hamilton, L. 2009. *Deeply Rooted: Unconventional Farmers in the Age of Agribusiness*. Counterpoint: Berkeley, CA.

Profiles of three unconventional farmers whose stories provide hope that the seeds of change in our food systems already exist in small farmers like these.

Pollan, M. 2008. *In Defense of Food: An Eater's Manifesto*. The Penguin Press: New York.

A strong statement of how and why the alternative food movement must stand up to the dominant industrial food industry.

Reed, M. 2010. *Rebels for the Soil: The Rise of the Global Organic Food and Farming Movement*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

An engaging historical account of how the organic movement has fostered and organized alternatives to the dominant industrial model of agriculture.

Wittman, H., A. A. Desmarais, and N. Weibe (eds.). 2010. *Food Sovereignty: Reconnecting Food, Nature, and Community*. Food First Books: Oakland, CA.

A look at the historical rise of the industrial food system, its negative impacts, and the social movements that are planting the seeds of a revolution of change that could fundamentally alter our relationship with food—and with each other.

Glossary

Abiotic factor: A nonliving component of the environment, such as soil, nutrients, light, fire, or moisture.

Adaptation: (1) Any aspect of an organism or its parts that is of value in allowing the organism to withstand the conditions of the environment. (2) The evolutionary process by which a species' genome and phenotypic characteristics change over time in response to changes in the environment.

Agrobiodiversity: The component of biodiversity related to food and agriculture production. The term encompasses diversity within species, among species, within agroecosystems, within regions, and in the world food system as a whole.

Agroecology: The science of applying ecological concepts and principles to the design and management of sustainable food systems.

Agroecosystem: An agricultural system understood as an ecosystem.

Agrofood system: An alternative term for *food system*.

Agroforestry: The practice of including trees in crop or animal production agroecosystems.

Agrosilvopastoral system: An agroecosystem combining trees, livestock grazing, and crops.

Allelopathy: An interference interaction in which a plant releases into the environment a compound that inhibits or stimulates the growth or development of other plants.

Alluvium: Soil that has been transported to its present location by water flow.

Alpha diversity: The variety of species in a particular location in one community or agroecosystem.

Alternative food network: A business, a program, or an institution that promotes a more sustainable relationship between the growing of food and its consumption.

Amensalism: An interorganism interaction in which one organism negatively impacts another organism without receiving any direct benefit itself.

Animal husbandry: The practice of breeding and caring for livestock animals such as goats, cattle, sheep, and camels.

Anthropocene: A not-yet-formalized term for the current geologic epoch, during which the most significant impacts on earth's ecosystems and lithosphere have been wrought by the human species.

Autotroph: An organism that satisfies its need for organic food molecules by using the energy of the sun, or of the oxidation of inorganic substances, to convert inorganic molecules into organic molecules.

Beta diversity: The difference in the assemblage of species from one location or habitat to another nearby location or habitat, or from one part of an agroecosystem to another.

Biogeochemical cycle: The manner in which the atoms of an element critical to life (such as carbon, nitrogen, or phosphorus) move from the bodies of living organisms to the physical environment and back again.

Biological control: The use of natural enemies for the control of pests.

Biomass: The mass of all the organic matter in a given system at a given point in time.

Bioregionalism: Integration of human activities within the ecological limits of a landscape.

Biotic factor: An aspect of the environment related to organisms or their interactions.

Boundary layer: A layer of air saturated with water vapor (from transpiration) that forms next to a leaf surface when there is no air movement.

Buffer zone: A less intensively managed and less disturbed area at the margins of an agroecosystem that protects the adjacent natural system from the potential negative impacts of agricultural activities and management.

Bulk density: The mass of soil per unit of volume.

Capillary water: The water that fills the micropores of the soil and is held to soil particles with a force between 0.3 and 31 bars of suction. Much of this water (that portion held to particles with less than 15 bars of suction) is readily available to plant roots.

Carbon dioxide compensation point: The concentration of carbon dioxide in a plant's chloroplasts below which the amount of photosynthate produced fails to compensate for the amount of photosynthate used in respiration.

Carbon fixation: The part of the photosynthetic process in which carbon atoms are extracted from atmospheric carbon dioxide and used to make simple organic compounds that eventually become glucose.

Carbon footprint: The amount of carbon released into the atmosphere as a result of providing for all of the needs and consumption of an individual, organization, state, or population over a period time.

Carbon partitioning: The manner in which a plant allocates to different plant parts the photosynthate it produces.

Carbon sequestration: Capturing or locking up of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere in terrestrial or marine sinks (e.g., soil, trees, animals, microorganisms).

Carrying capacity: The population size that can be supported by an ecosystem without causing that ecosystem to degrade.

Catabatic warming: The process that occurs when a large air mass expands after having been forced over a mountain range and becomes warmer and dryer as a result of the expansion.

Cation exchange capacity: A measurement of a soil's ability to bind positively charged ions (cations), which include many important nutrients.

Climax: In classical ecological theory, the end point of the successional process; today, we refer instead to the stage of maturity reached when successional development shifts to dynamic change around an equilibrium point.

Clone: An individual produced asexually from the tissues, cells, or genome of another individual. A clone is genetically identical to the individual from which it was derived.

Cold air drainage: The flow of cold air down a slope at night, when reradiation of heat (and therefore cooling of air) occurs more rapidly at higher elevations.

Colluvium: Soil that has been transported to its present location by the actions of gravity.

Commensalism: An interorganism interaction in which one organism is aided by the interaction and the other is neither benefited nor harmed.

Community: All the organisms living together in a particular location.

Compensating factor: A factor of the environment that overcomes, eliminates, or modifies the impact of another factor.

Competition: An interaction in which two organisms remove from the environment a limited resource that both require, and both organisms are harmed in the process. Competition can occur between members of the same species and between members of different species.

Consumer: Ecologically, an organism that ingests other organisms (or their parts or products) to obtain its food energy. Agroecologically, a person who obtains food or food products from a farmer for his or her sustenance.

Continental influence: The climatic effect of being distant from the moderating effects of a large body of water.

Coriolis effect: The deflection of air currents in atmospheric circulation cells due to the rotation of the earth.

Cross-pollination: The fertilization of a flower by pollen from the flower of another individual of the same species.

CSA: Community-supported agriculture. A subscription arrangement in which a farm regularly delivers its products to a central pickup point, or directly to the consumer.

Cultural energy inputs: Forms of energy used in agricultural production that come from sources controlled or provided by humans.

Cytosterility: A genetically controlled condition of male sterility in the breeding line of a self-pollinating crop variety. A breeding line with cytosterility is used as the seed-producing parental line in the production of hybrid seed.

Dark reactions: The processes of photosynthesis that do not require light; specifically, the carbon-fixing and sugar-synthesizing processes of the Calvin cycle.

Decomposer: A fungal or bacterial organism that obtains its nutrients and food energy by breaking down dead organic and fecal matter and absorbing some of its nutrient content.

Density dependent: Directly linked to population density. This term is usually used to describe growth-limiting feedback mechanisms in a population of organisms.

Density independent: Not directly linked to population density. This term is usually used to describe growth-limiting feedback mechanisms in a population of organisms.

Detritivore: An organism that feeds on dead organic and fecal matter.

Dew point: The temperature at which relative humidity reaches 100% and water vapor is able to condense into water droplets. The dew point varies depending on the absolute water vapor content of the air.

Directed selection: The process of controlling genetic change in domesticated plants through manipulation of the plants' environment and their breeding process.

Disturbance: An event or short-term process that alters a community or ecosystem by changing the relative population levels of at least some of the component species.

Diversity: (1) The number or variety of species in a location, community, ecosystem, or agroecosystem. (2) The degree of heterogeneity of the biotic components of an ecosystem or agroecosystem (see *Ecological diversity*).

Domestication: The process of altering, through directed selection, the genetic makeup of a species so as to increase the species' usefulness to humans.

Dominant species: The species with the greatest impact on both the biotic and abiotic components of its community.

Dust mulch: A layer of loose soil at the surface that prevents evaporative moisture loss from the soil below because capillary connections between the underlying soil and the surface have been broken, usually by some form of cultivation.

Dry farming: The practice of conserving natural rainfall so as to facilitate farming without irrigation in a normally dry environment or season.

Dynamic equilibrium: A condition characterized by an overall balance in the processes of change in an ecosystem, made possible by the system's resiliency, and resulting in relative stability of structure and function despite constant change and small-scale disturbance.

Easily available water: That portion of water held in the soil that can be readily absorbed by plant roots—usually capillary water between 0.3 and 15 bars of suction.

Ecological diversity: The degree of heterogeneity of an ecosystem's or agroecosystem's species makeup, genetic potential, vertical spatial structure, horizontal spatial structure, trophic structure, ecological functioning, and change over time.

Ecological energy inputs: Forms of energy used in agricultural production that come directly from the sun.

Ecological footprint: The amount of land and water area a human population uses to produce the resource it consumes, to accommodate its buildings and roads, and to absorb its waste emissions.

Ecological niche: An organism's place and function in the environment, defined by its utilization of resources.

Ecosystem: A functional system of complementary relations between living organisms and their environment within a certain physical area.

Ecosystem services: The processes by which the environment produces essential resources, such as clean water and air, that we often take for granted.

Ecotone: A zone of gradual transition between two distinct ecosystems, communities, or habitats.

Ecotype: A population of a species that differs genetically from other populations of the same species because local conditions have selected for certain unique physiological or morphological characteristics.

Edge effect: The phenomenon of an edge community, or ecotone, having greater ecological diversity than the neighboring communities.

Emergent property: A characteristic of a system that derives from the interaction of its parts and is not observable or inherent in the parts considered separately.

Environmental complex: The composite of all the individual factors of the environment acting and interacting in concert.

Environmental resistance: The genetically based ability of an organism to withstand stresses, threats, or limiting factors in the environment.

Eolian soil: Soil that has been transported to its current location by the actions of wind (*aeolian* is an acceptable alternative spelling).

Epiphyll: A plant that uses the leaf of another plant for support but that draws no nutrients from the host plant.

Epiphyte: A plant that uses the trunk or stem of another plant for support, but that draws no nutrients from the host plant.

Eutrophication: Nutrient enrichment of water that leads to algal blooms, disruption of food webs, and in the worst cases, complete eradication of life through deoxygenation.

Evapotranspiration: All forms of evaporation of liquid water from the earth's surface, including the evaporation of bodies of water and soil moisture and the evaporation from leaf surfaces that occurs as part of transpiration.

Externalized cost: In economic terms, a negative consequence that is put outside (made external to) the system being considered. Conventional agriculture has many externalized costs, including degradation of ecological resources, hazards to human health, and disintegration of social systems. Every externalized cost involves privatizing a gain and socializing its associated costs.

Facilitation: The ability of multiple species to accommodate each other in a common environment to the extent that they facilitate each other's existence.

Field capacity: The amount of water the soil can hold once gravitational water has drained away; this water is mostly capillary water held to soil particles with at least 0.3 bars of suction.

Food citizen: A consumer who makes food decisions that support a democratic, economically just, and environmentally sustainable food system.

Food democracy: A food system in which consumers are empowered to make informed choices and farmers can make a living using sustainable practices.

Food security: Access to sufficient food of appropriate diversity for a healthy diet.

Foodshed: A geographically limited sphere of land, people, and businesses tied together by food relationships.

Food system: The interconnected meta-system of agroecosystems, their economic, social, cultural, and technological support systems, and systems of food distribution and consumption.

Generalist: A species that tolerates a broad range of environmental conditions; a generalist has a broad ecological niche.

Genetic engineering: Transfer, by biotechnological methods, of genetic material from one organism to another. See *Transgenic*.

Genetic erosion: The loss of genetic diversity in domesticated organisms that has resulted from human reliance on a few genetically uniform varieties of food crop plants and animals.

Genetic vulnerability: The susceptibility of genetically uniform crops to damage or destruction caused by outbreaks of a disease or pest or unusually poor weather conditions or climatic change.

Genomics: The study of genomes.

Genotype: An organism's genetic information, considered as a whole.

GEO: A genetically engineered organism.

Glacial soil: Soil that has been transported to its current location by the movement of glaciers.

Gravitational water: That portion of water in the soil not held strongly enough by adhesion to soil particles to resist the downward pull of gravity.

Green manure: Organic matter added to the soil when a covercrop (often leguminous) is tilled in.

Gross primary productivity: The rate of conversion of solar energy into biomass in an ecosystem.

Habitat: The particular environment, characterized by a specific set of environmental conditions, in which a given species occurs.

Hardening: Subjecting a seedling or plant to cooler temperatures in order to increase its resistance to more extreme cold.

Herbivore: An animal that feeds exclusively or mainly on plants. Herbivores convert plant biomass into animal biomass.

Heterosis: The production of an exceptionally vigorous and/or productive hybrid progeny from a directed cross between two pure-breeding plant lines.

Heterotroph: An organism that consumes other organisms to meet its energy needs.

Horizons: Visually distinguishable layers in the soil profile.

Horizontal resistance: The ability of a crop variety to resist generally the threats posed by all possible diseases, pests, and environmental changes, based on the variety's possession of a variety of resistant traits accumulated through population-level breeding and ongoing directed selection at all levels. Contrasted to *vertical resistance*, the ability of a variety to resist a specific pathogen or pest.

Humification: The decomposition or metabolization of organic material in the soil.

Humus: The fraction of organic matter in the soil resulting from decomposition and mineralization of organic material.

Hybrid vigor: The production of an exceptionally vigorous and/or productive hybrid progeny from a directed cross between two pure-breeding plant lines. A synonym for *heterosis*.

Hydration: The addition of water molecules to a mineral's chemical structure.

Hydrological cycle: The process encompassing the evaporation of water from the earth's surface, its condensation in the atmosphere, and its return to the surface through precipitation.

Hydrolysis: Replacement of cations in the structure of a silicate mineral with hydrogen ions, resulting in the decomposition of the mineral.

Hydroxide clay: A mineral component of the soil without definite crystalline structure composed of hydrated iron and aluminum oxides.

Hygroscopic water: The moisture that is held the most tightly to soil particles, usually with more than 31 bars of suction; it can remain in soil after oven drying.

Ideology: A system of ideas and perspectives that shapes the perception of reality and tends to legitimize an economic or political system.

Importance value: A measure of a species' presence in an ecosystem or community—such as number of individuals, biomass, or productivity—that can be used to determine the species' contribution to the diversity of the system.

Insolation: Exposure to sunlight, or, more technically, the rate of solar radiation received per unit area.

Integrated farm: A farm on which livestock animals and crop plants are combined to take advantage of the synergisms that arise from this combination.

Integrated pest management: The use of a variety of methods and approaches to manage pests and diseases, with a goal of eliminating pesticide use.

Intermediate disturbance hypothesis: The theory that diversity and productivity in natural ecosystems are highest when moderate disturbance occurs periodically but not too frequently.

Interspecific competition: Competition for resources among individuals of different species.

Intraspecific competition: Competition for resources among individuals of the same species.

Inversion: The sandwiching of a layer of warm air between two layers of cold air in a valley.

***K*-strategist:** A species that lives in conditions where mortality is density dependent; a typical *K*-strategist has a relatively long life span and invests a relatively large amount of energy in each of the few offspring it produces.

Landrace: A locally adapted strain of a species bred through traditional methods of directed selection.

Landscape ecology: The study of environmental factors and interactions at a scale that encompasses more than one ecosystem at a time.

Leaf area index: A measure of leaf cover above a certain area of ground, given by the ratio of total leaf surface area to ground surface area.

Light compensation point: The level of light intensity needed for a plant to produce an amount of photosynthate equal to the amount it uses for respiration.

Light reactions: The components of photosynthesis in which light energy is converted into chemical energy in the form of ATP and NADPH.

Limiting nutrient: A nutrient not present in the soil in sufficient quantity to support optimal plant growth.

Living mulch: A covercrop that is interplanted with the primary crop(s) during the growing season.

Lodging: The flattening of a crop plant or crop stand by strong wind, usually involving uprooting or stem breakage.

Macronutrient: A nutrient plants need in large quantities; the macronutrients include carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, sulfur, and water.

Maritime influence: The moderating effect of a nearby large body of water, such as an ocean, on the weather and climate of an area.

Mass selection: The traditional method of directed selection, in which seed is collected from those individuals in a population that show one or more desirable traits and then used for planting the next crop.

Microclimate: The environmental conditions in the immediate vicinity of an organism.

Micronutrient: A nutrient necessary for plant survival but needed in relatively small quantities.

Mineralization: The process by which organic residues in the soil are broken down to release mineral nutrients that can be utilized by plants.

Mountain wind: The downslope movement of air at night that occurs as the upper slopes of a mountain cool more rapidly than those below.

Multifunctionality: The ability of agroecosystems to perform a variety of functions in addition to food and fiber production, including land conservation, maintenance of landscape structure, biodiversity conservation, environmental services, economic viability, and social good.

Mutualism: An interaction in which two organisms impact each other positively; neither is as successful in the absence of the interaction.

Mycorrhizae: Symbiotic fungal connections with plant roots through which a fungal organism provides water and nutrients to a plant and the plant provides sugars to the fungi.

Natural selection: The process by which adaptive traits increase in frequency in a population due to the differential reproductive success of the individuals that possess the traits.

Net primary productivity: The difference between the rate of conversion of solar energy into biomass in an ecosystem and the rate at which energy is used to maintain the producers of the system.

Niche amplitude: The size or range of one or more of the dimensions of the multidimensional space encompassed by a particular species' niche. The niche amplitude of a generalist species is larger than that of a specialist species.

Niche breadth: Essentially a synonym for *niche amplitude*.

Niche diversity: Differences in the resource-use patterns of similar species that allow them to coexist successfully in the same environment.

Niche: See *Ecological niche*.

Open pollination: The natural dispersal of pollen among all the members of a cross-pollinating crop population, resulting in the maximum degree of genetic mixing and diversity.

Organism: An individual of a species.

Overyielding: The production of a yield by an intercrop that is larger than the yield produced by planting the component crops in monoculture on an equivalent area of land.

Oxidation: The loss of electrons from an atom that accompanies the change from a reduced to an oxidized state.

Parasite: An organism that uses another organism for food and thus harms the other organism.

Parasitism: An interaction in which one organism feeds on another organism, harming (but generally not killing) it.

Parasitoid: A parasite that feeds on predators or other parasites.

Patchiness: A measurement of the diversity of successional stages present in a specific area.

Patchy landscape: A landscape with a diversity of successional stages or habitat types.

Pedosphere: The biogeophysical zone on the surface of terrestrial land masses that integrates the hydrosphere, the atmosphere, the lithosphere, and the biosphere; also called *the soil*.

Percolation: Water movement through the soil due to the pull of gravity.

Permanent wilting point: The level of soil moisture below which a plant wilts and is unable to recover.

Phenotype: The physical expression of the genotype; an organism's physical characteristics.

Photoperiod: The total number of hours of daylight.

Photorespiration: The energetically wasteful substitution of oxygen for carbon dioxide in the dark reactions of photosynthesis, which occurs when plant stomata close and carbon dioxide concentration declines.

Photosynthate: The simple-sugar end products of photosynthesis.

Polyploid: Having three or more times the haploid number of chromosomes.

Population: A group of individuals of the same species that live in the same geographic region.

Potential niche: The maximum possible distribution of a species in the environment.

Predation: An interaction in which one organism kills and consumes another.

Predator: An animal that consumes other animals to satisfy its nutritive requirements.

Prescribed burn: A fire set and controlled by humans to achieve some management objective, such as improving pasture in grazing systems.

Prevailing winds: The general wind patterns characteristic of broad latitudinal belts on the earth's surface.

Primary production: The amount of light energy converted into plant biomass in a system.

Primary succession: Ecological succession on a site that was not previously occupied by living organisms.

Producer: An organism that converts solar energy into biomass.

Production: Harvest output or yield.

Productivity index: A measure of the amount of biomass invested in the harvested product in relation to the total amount of standing biomass present in the rest of the system.

Productivity: The ecological processes and structures in an agroecosystem that enable production.

Protocooperation: An interaction in which both organisms are benefited if the interaction occurs, but neither are harmed if it does not occur.

***r*-strategist:** A species that exists in relatively harsh environmental conditions and whose mortality is generally determined by density-independent factors; an *r*-strategist allocates more energy to reproduction than to growth.

Rainfed agroecosystem: A farming system in which crop water needs are met by natural precipitation.

Realized niche: The actual distribution of an organism in the environment (compare with *potential niche*).

Regolith: The layer or mantle of unconsolidated material (soil and mineral subsoil) between the soil surface and the solid bedrock of the earth below.

Relative humidity: The ratio of the actual water content of the air to the amount of water the air is capable of holding at a particular temperature.

Relative rate of light transmission: The percentage of the total incident light at the canopy of a system that reaches the ground.

Residual soil: Soil formed at its current location.

Resilience: In agriculture, the degree to which a system is able to respond acceptably to climatic change and other forms of stress and perturbation.

Response: A physiological change in a plant that is induced by an outside, usually environmental, condition.

Rhizobia: Nitrogen-fixing soil microorganisms that form mutualistic root interactions with plants (primarily legumes).

Safe site: A specific location that provides the environmental conditions necessary for seed germination and initial growth of the seedling.

Salinization: The process of salt buildup in soils, associated with high evaporation following irrigation and salt deposition at the soil surface.

Saltation: The transport of small soil particles just above the soil surface by wind.

Saturation point: The level of light intensity at which photosynthetic pigments are completely stimulated and unable to make use of additional light.

Secondary succession: Succession on a site that was previously occupied by living organisms but that has undergone severe disturbance.

Seed bank: The total seed presence in the soil.

Self-pollination: The fertilization of the egg of a plant by its own pollen.

Shannon index: A measure of the species diversity of an ecosystem based on information theory.

Short food supply chain: A route from production of a food product to consumption by the consumer that requires a minimum number of steps.

Silicate clay: A soil component made up primarily of microscopic aluminum silicate plates.

Silvopastoral system: An agroecosystem that combines trees and livestock grazing.

Simpson index: A measure of the species diversity of an ecosystem based on the concept of dominance.

Slope wind: Air movement caused by the different heating and cooling rates of mountain slopes and valleys.

Soil creep: The movement of large soil particles along the soil surface by wind.

Soil health: The overall picture of the soil's ability to support crop growth without degradation.

Soil profile: The set of observable horizontal layers in a vertical cross section of soil.

Soil solution: The liquid phase of the soil, made up of water and its dissolved solutes.

Solution: The process by which soluble minerals in the regolith are dissolved into water.

Specialist: A species with a narrow range of environmental tolerance.

Species evenness: The degree of heterogeneity in the spatial distribution of species in a community or ecosystem.

Species richness: The number of different species in a community or ecosystem.

Standing crop: The total biomass of plants in an ecosystem at a specific point in time.

Stomata: The openings on a leaf surface through which gases enter and leave the internal leaf environment.

Succession: The process by which one community gives way to another.

Successional mosaic: A patchwork of habitats or areas in different stages of succession.

Sustainable intensification: Increases in the productivity of agricultural land achieved through the integration of all components of the food system. Agroecology is the tool for this integration.

Symbiosis: A relationship between different organisms that live in direct contact.

Synthetic variety: A crop or horticultural variety produced through the cross-pollination of a limited number of parents that cross well and have certain desirable traits.

Tilth: The combination of the characteristics of soil crumb structure, porosity, and ease of tillage.

Transgenic: A descriptive term applied to organisms developed by transferring genes from one organism to another.

Transpiration: The evaporation of water through the stomata of a plant, which causes a flow of water from the soil through the plant and into the atmosphere.

Transported soil: Soil that has been moved to its current location by environmental forces.

Trophic level: A location in the hierarchy of feeding relationships within an ecosystem.

Trophic structure: The organization of feeding and energy-transfer relationships that determine the path of energy flow through a community or ecosystem.

Valley wind: Air movement that occurs when the heating of a valley causes warm air to rise up adjacent mountain slopes.

Vernalization: The process in which a seed is subjected to a period of cold, causing changes that allow germination to occur.

Water of hydration: Water that is chemically bound to soil particles.

Watershed: A portion of the landscape draining to a single point.

References

Allen, P. A. 2004. *Together at the Table: Sustainability and Sustenance in the American Agrifood System*. The Pennsylvania State University Press: University Park, PA.

Allison, J. 1983. An ecological analysis of home gardens (*huertos familiares*) in two Mexican villages. MA thesis. University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Altieri, M. A. 1983. *Agroecology*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.

Altieri, M. A. 1994. *Biodiversity and Pest Management in Agroecosystems*. Food Products Press: New York.

Altieri, M. A. 1995a. Cover cropping and mulching. In M. A. Altieri (ed.) *Agroecology: The Science of Sustainable Agriculture*, 2nd edn. Westview Press: Boulder, CO, pp. 219–232.

Altieri, M. A. 1995b. *Agroecology: The Science of Sustainable Agriculture*, 2nd edn. Westview Press: Boulder, CO.

Altieri, M. A. 2002. Agroecology: The science of natural resource management for poor farmers in marginal environments. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 93: 1–24.

Altieri, M. A. 2004. Linking ecologists and traditional farmers in the search for sustainable agriculture. *Frontiers in Ecology and Environment* 2(1): 35–42.

Altieri, M. A. and L. C. Merrick. 1987. In situ conservation of crop genetic resources through maintenance of traditional farming systems. *Economic Botany* 41: 86–96.

Altieri, M. A. and C. I. Nicholls. 2004a. An agroecological basis for designing diversified cropping systems in the tropics. In D. Clements and A. Shrestha (eds.) *New Dimensions in Agroecology*. Food Products Press/The Haworth Press: New York.

Altieri, M. A. and C. I. Nicholls. 2004b. *Biodiversity and Pest Management in Agroecosystems*, 2nd edn. Howarth Press: Binghamton, New York.

Altieri, M. A. and V. M. Toledo. 2011. The agroecological revolution in Latin America: Rescuing nature, ensuring food sovereignty and empowering peasants. *Journal of Peasant Studies* 38: 587–612.

Amador, M. F. 1980. Comportamiento de tres especies (Maiz, Frijol, Calabaza) en policultivos en la Chontalpa, Tabasco, Mexico. Tesis Profesional, CSAT: Cardenas, Mexico.

Amador, M. F. and S. R. Gliessman. 1990. An ecological approach to reducing external inputs through the use of intercropping. In S. R. Gliessman (ed.) *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*. Springer-Verlag: New York, pp. 146–159.

American Farmland Trust. 2007. *Paving Paradise: A New Perspective on California Farmland Conversion*. American Farmland Trust: Washington, DC.

Anaya, A. L., L. Ramos, R. Cruz, J. G. Hernandez, and V. Nava. 1987. Perspectives on allelopathy in Mexican traditional agroecosystems: A case study in Tlaxcala. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 13: 2083–2102.

Andersen, M. K., H. Hauggaard-Nielsen, P. Ambus, and E. S. Jensen. 2004. Biomass production, symbiotic nitrogen fixation and inorganic N use in dual and tri component annual intercrops. *Plant and Soil* 266(1–2): 273–287.

Andow, D. A. 1991. Vegetational diversity and arthropod population responses. *Annual Review of Entomology* 36: 561–586.

Anseeuw, W., L. A. Wiley, L. Cotula, and M. Taylor. 2012. *Land Rights and the Rush for Land: Findings of the Global Commercial Pressures on Land Research Project*. International Land Coalition: Rome, Italy.

Aoki, M., A. Gilbert, A. Hull, M. Karlberg, and M. MacDonald. 1989. Multi-variable ecological analysis in a broccoli–lettuce intercrop. Unpublished data compiled for Environmental Studies 130. University of California: Santa Cruz, CA.

Arnold, A. E., L. C. Mejia, D. Kyllo, E. I. Rojas, Z. Maynard, N. Robbins, and E. A. Herre. 2010. Fungal endophytes limit pathogen damage in a tropical tree. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 100: 15649–15654.

Arshad, M. and S. L. Ranumukhaarachichi. 2012. Effects of legume type, planting pattern, and time of establishment on growth and yield of sweet sorghum/legume intercropping. *Australian Journal of Crop Science* 6: 1265–1274.

Astier, M., O. R. Masera, and Y. Galván-Miyoshi (eds.). 2008. *Evaluación de Sustentabilidad: un Enfoque Dinámico y Multidimensional.* Mundiprensa: Mexico, D.F., Mexico.

Astudillo, O. 2014. Country in focus: Mexico’s obesity problem. *The Lancet, Diabetes and Endocrinology* 2: 15–16. doi:10.1016/S2213-8587(13)70160-8.

Azzi, G. 1956. *Agricultural Ecology*. Constable Press: London, U.K.

Bacon, C. 2005. Confronting the coffee crisis: Can fair trade, organic and specialty coffees reduce small-scale farmer vulnerability in northern Nicaragua? *World Development* 33(3): 497–511.

Bacon, C., V. E. Méndez, and M. Brown. 2005. Participatory action-research and support for community development and conservation: Examples from shade coffee landscapes in Nicaragua and El Salvador. Center for Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems Research Brief 6, University of California: Santa Cruz, CA.

Badgley, C., J. Moghtader, E. Quintero, E. Zakem, M. J. Chappell, K. Aviles-Vazquez, A. Samulon, and I. Perfecto. 2007. Organic agriculture and the global food supply. *Renewable Agriculture and Food Systems* 22(2): 86–108.

Badgley, C. and I. Perfecto. 2007. Can organic agriculture feed the world? *Renewable Agriculture and Food Systems* 22(2): 80–86.

Bailey, R. 2011. *Growing a Better Future: Food Justice in a Resource-Constrained World*. Oxfam International: Oxford, U.K.

Bais, H. P., R. Vepachedu, S. Gilroy, R. M. Callaway, and J. M. Vivanco. 2003. Allelopathy and exotic plant invasion: From molecules and genes to species interactions. *Science* 301: 1377–1380.

Baldwin, C. S. 1988. The influence of field windbreaks on vegetable and specialty crops. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 22/23: 191–203.

Baldwin, C. S. and Johnston. 1984. *Windbreaks on the Farm*. Report #527. Publications of the Ontario Ministry of Agriculture and Food Provision: Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.

Barnes, J. P., A. R. Putnam, and B. A. Burke. 1986. Allelopathic activity of rye (*Secale cereale* L.). In A. R. Putnam and C. S. Tang (eds.) *The Science of Allelopathy*. John Wiley & Sons: New York, pp. 271–286.

Batish, D. R., H. P. Singh, R. K. Kohli, and S. Kaur. 2001. Crop allelopathy and its role in ecological agriculture. In R. K. Kohli, H. P. Singh, and D. R. Batish (eds.) *Allelopathy in Agroecosystems*. Food Products Press (imprint of The Howarth Press): New York, pp. 121–161.

Baum, A. W., T. Patzek, M. Bender, S. Renich, and W. Jackson. 2009. The visible, sustainable farm: A comprehensive energy analysis of a midwestern farm. *Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences* 28: 218–239.

Bazzaz, F. A. 1996. *Plants in Changing Environments: Linking Physiological, Population, and Community Ecology.* Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.

Bellow, J. G. and P. K. R. Nair. 2003. Comparing common methods for assessing understory light availability in shaded-perennial agroforestry systems. *Agricultural and Forest Meteorology* 114(3–4): 197–211.

Benbrook, C. M. 2012. Impacts of genetically engineered crops on pesticide use in the U.S.—The first sixteen years. *Environmental Sciences Europe* 24: 24.

Bender, M. 2002. Energy in agriculture: Lessons from the Sunshine farm project. The Land Institute: Salina, KS. www.landinstitute.org/vnews/display.v/ART/2002/09/24/3dbeba6338ac3?in_archive=1 (accessed March 29, 2006).

Bennett, G. and K. J. Mulongoy. 2006. Review of experience with ecological networks, corridors and buffer zones. Secretariat of the Convention on Biological Diversity: Montreal, Quebec, Canada. Technical Series No. 23.

Bensin, B. M. 1930. Possibilities for international cooperation in agroecology investigation. *International Review of Agriculture. Monthly Bulletin of Agricultural Science and Practice* 21: 277–284.

Berkes, F., J. Colding, and C. Folke. 2000. Rediscovery of traditional ecological knowledge as adaptive management. *Ecological Applications* 10(5): 1251–1262.

Berry, W. 1990. The pleasures of eating. In W. Berry (ed.) *What Are People For?* Counterpoint: Berkeley, CA.

Berry, W. 2009. *Bringing It to the Table: On Farming and Food*. Counterpoint: Berkeley, CA.

Bethlenfalvay, G. J., M. G. Reyes-Solis, S. B. Camel, and R. Ferrera-Cerrato. 1991. Nutrient transfer between the root zones of soybean and maize plants connected by a common mycorrhizal inoculum. *Physiologia Plantarum* 82: 423–432.

Bilbro, J. D. and D. W. Fryrear. 1988. Annual herbaceous windbarriers for protecting crops and soils and managing snowfall. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 22/23: 149–161.

Billings, W. D. 1952. The environmental complex in relation to plant growth and distribution. *Quarterly Review of Biology* 27: 251–265.

Blank, S. C., K. Jetter, C. M. Wick, and J. F. Williams. 1993. Incorporating rice straw into soil may become disposal option for farmers. *California Agriculture* 47: 8–12.

Bohlen, P. J. and G. House (eds.). 2009. *Sustainable Agroecosystem Management: Integrating Ecology, Economics, and Society*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

Bohlen, P. J. and H. M. Swain. 2009. Conceptual model for integrating ecological and economic sustainability in agroecosystems: An example from subtropical grazing lands. In P. J. Gohlen and G. House (eds.) *Sustainable Agroecosystem Management: Integrating Ecology, Economics, and Society*. Advances in Agroecology Series, CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

Booth, B. D., S. D. Murphy, and C. J. Swanton. 2010. *Invasive Plant Ecology in Natural and Agricultural Systems*. CABI: Oxfordshire, U.K.

Borras Jr., S. M., M. Edelman, and C. Kay. 2008. *Transnational Agrarian Movements: Confronting Globalization*. Wiley-Blackwell: Oxford, U.K.

Boucher, D. and J. Espinosa. 1982. Cropping systems and growth and nodulation responses of beans to nitrogen in Tabasco, Mexico. *Tropical Agriculture* 59: 279–282.

Boucher, D. H. 1985. The idea of mutualism, past and future. In D. H. Boucher (ed.) *The Biology of Mutualism*. Oxford University Press: New York, pp. 1–28.

Brady, N. C. and R. R. Weil. 1996. *The Nature and Properties of Soils*, 11th edn. Prentice Hall: Upper Saddle River, NJ.

Brandle, J. R. and D. L. Hintz. 1988. Special issue: Windbreak Technology. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 22/23: 1–598.

Brandle, J. R., L. Hodges, and X. H. Zhou. 2004. Windbreaks in North American agricultural systems. *Agroforestry Systems* 61(1): 65–78.

Briske, D. D. 1996. Strategies of plant survival in grazed systems: A functional interpretation. In J. Hodgson and A. W. Illius (eds.) *The Ecology and Management of Grazing Systems*. CAB International: Wallingford, U.K., pp. 37–67.

Brito, L. and M. S. Smith. 2012. State of the planet declaration. *Summary of the Proceedings of the Planet Under Pressure Conference*, 26–29 March, London, U.K., pp. 1–10.

Brookfield, H. 2001. *Exploring Agrobiodiversity*. Columbia University Press: New York.

Brooks, A. M. 2008. Allelopathy in rye (*Secale cereale*). PhD thesis in Crop Science. North Carolina State University, Raleigh, NC. Unpublished. 134pp. Available at http://repository.lib.ncsu.edu/ir/bitstream/1840.16/595/1/etd.pdf. Accessed March 1, 2014.

Brush, S. B. 1995. *In-situ* conservation of landraces in centers of crop diversity. *Crop Science* 35(2): 346–354.

Brush, S. B. 2004. *Farmer's Bounty: Locating Diversity in the Contemporary World*. Yale University Press: New Haven, CT.

Bruun, H. H. 2000. Patterns of species richness in dry grassland patches in an agricultural landscape. *Ecography* 23(6): 641–650.

Buck, L. E., J. P. Lassoie, and E. C. M. Fernandes (eds.). 1999. *Agroforestry in Sustainable Agricultural Systems*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Lewis Publishers: Boca Raton, FL.

Buzby, J. C., H. F. Wells, and J. Hyman. 2014. The estimated amount, value, and calories of postharvest food losses at the retail and consumer levels in the United States. Economic Information Bulletin No. (EIB-121), February 2014, 39pp.

California Department of Food and Agriculture. 2004. County organic crop value and acreage reports. www.cdfa.ca.gov/is/fveqc/organic.htm. Accessed March 1, 2014.

Candiani, V. 2014. *Dreaming of Dry Land: Environmental Transformation in Colonial Mexico City*. Stanford University Press: Redwood City, CA.

Cardoso, E., M. A. Norgueira, and S. M. G. Ferraz. 2007. Biological N^2 fixation and mineral N in common bean–maize intercropping or sole cropping in Southeastern Brazil. *Experimental Agriculture* 43: 319–330.

Carlquist, S. 1965. *Island Life*. The Natural History Press: Garden City, New York.

Cassidy, E. S., P. S. West, J. S. Gerber, and J. A. Foley. 2013. Redefining agricultural yields: From tonnes to people nourished per hectare. *Environmental Research Letters* 8: 1–8.

Cassman, K. G. 1994. *Breaking the Yield Barrier: Proceedings of a Workshop on Rice Yield Potential in Favorable Environments*. International Rice Research Institute, Los Baños, Philippines, 1–138.

Cassman, K. G., A. Dobermann, D. T. Walters, and H. Yang. 2003. Meeting cereal demand while protecting natural resources and improving environmental quality. *Annual Review of Environment and Resources* 28: 315–358.

Castillo-Caamal, J. B., J. A. Caamal-Maldonado, J. J. Jiménez-Osornio, F. Bautista-Zuniga, M. J. Amaya-Castro y R. Rodríguez-Carrillo. 2010. Evaluación de tres leguminosas como coberturas asociadas con maíz en el trópico subhúmedo. *Agronomía Mesoamericana* 21(1): 39–50.

Centers for Disease Control (CDC). 2013. Fourth national report on human exposure to environmental chemicals. Updated tables. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, US Department of Health and Human Services: Washington, DC.

Cerdán, C. R., M. C. Rebolledo, G. Soto, B. Rapidel, and F. L. Sinclair. 2012. Local knowledge of impacts of tree cover on ecosystem services in smallholder coffee production systems. *Agricultural Systems* 110: 119–130.

CGIAR Program on Climate, Agriculture, and Food Security. 2013. Big facts. http://ccafs.cgiar.org/bigfacts (accessed December 12, 2012 to December 12, 2013).

Chacón, J. C. and S. R. Gliessman. 1982. Use of the "non-weed" concept in traditional tropical agroecosystems of southeastern Mexico. *Agro-Ecosystems* 8: 1–11.

Chapin III, F. S., P. M. Vitousek, and K. Van Cleve. 1986. The nature of nutrient limitation in plant communities. *American Naturalist* 127: 48–58.

Cheeke, T. E., D. C. Coleman, D. H. Wall (eds.). 2012. *Microbial Ecology in Sustainable Agroecosystems*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

Cheema, Z. A., M. Farooq, and A. Wahid (eds.). 2013. *Allelopathy: Current Trends and Future Applications*. Springer: Berlin, Germany.

Chen, Y., M. De Nobili, and T. Aviad. 2004. Stimulatory effects of humic substances on plant growth. In F. Magdoff and R. R. Weil (eds.) *Soil Organic Matter in Sustainable Agriculture*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL, pp. 103–129.

Chen, Y., J. R. Ruberson, and D. M. Olsen. 2008. Nitrogen fertilization rate affects feeding, larval performance, and oviposition preference of the beet armyworm, *Spodoptera exigua*, on cotton. *Entomologia Experimentalis et Applicata* 126: 244–255.

Chou, C. H. 1990. The role of allelopathy in agroecosystems: Studies from tropical Taiwan. In S. R. Gliessman (ed.) *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*. Springer-Verlag: New York, pp. 104–121.

Clabby, C. 2010. Does peak phosphorus loom? Scientists make the case that easily accessible supplies of an essential element are being depleted. *American Scientist* 98(4): 291.

Clark, E. A. 2004. Benefits of re-integrating livestock and forages in crop production systems. In D. Clements and A. Shrestha (eds.) *New Dimensions in Agroecology*. Food Products Press: Binghamton, New York, pp. 405–436.

Clements, D. and A. Shrestha (eds.). 2004. *New Dimensions in Agroecology*. Food Products Press: New York.

Coleman, D. C., M. D. Hunter, P. F. Hendrix, D. A. Crossley Jr., S. Arce-Flores, B. Simmons, and K. Wickings. 2009. Long-term consequences of biological and biogeochemical changes in the horseshoe bend long-term agroecosystem project. In P. J. Bohlen and G. House (eds.) *Sustainable Agroecosystem Management: Integrating Ecology, Economics, and Society.* CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL, pp. 195–209.

Collinge, S. K. 2009. *Ecology of Fragmented Landscapes.* Johns Hopkins University Press: Baltimore, MD.

Colvin, W. I. and S. R. Gliessman. 2000. Fennel (*Foeniculum vulgare*) management and native species enhancement on Santa Cruz Island, California. *Proceedings of the Fifth California Islands Symposium,* March 29–April 1, 1999. U.S. Department of the Interior, Minerals Management Service, Pacific OCS Region, OCS Study, MMS 99-0038, New Orleans, LA, pp. 184–189.

Colvin, W. I. and S. R. Gliessman. 2011. Effects of fennel (*Foeniculum vulgare* L.) interference on germination of introduced and native plant species. *Allelopathy Journal* 28(1): 41–52.

Colwell, R. and D. Futuyma. 1971. On the measurement of niche breadth and overlap. *Ecology* 52: 567–576.

Connell, J. H. 1978. Diversity in tropical rain forests and coral reefs. *Science* 199: 1302–1310.

Connell, J. H. and R. O. Slayter. 1977. Mechanisms of succession in natural communities and their role in community stability and organization. *American Naturalist* 111: 1119–1144.

Conway, G. 2012. *One Billion Hungry: Can We Feed the World?* Comstock Publishing Associates: Ithaca, New York.

Conway, M. and L. Liston (ed.). 1990. *The Weather Handbook*. Conway Data: Atlanta, GA.

Coombes, D. S. and N. W. Sotherton. 1986. The dispersal and distribution of polyphagous predatory Coleoptera in cereals. *Annals of Applied Biology* 108: 461–474.

Corbett, A. and R. E. Plant. 1993. Role of movement in the response of natural enemies to agroecosystem diversification: A theoretical evaluation. *Environmental Entomology* 22: 519–531.

Cox, C. M., K. A. Garrett, and W. W. Bockus. 2004. Meeting the challenge of disease management in perennial grain cropping systems. *Renewable Agriculture and Food Systems* 20: 15–24.

Cox, G. W. and M. D. Atkins. 1979. *Agricultural Ecology*. Freeman: San Francisco, CA.

Cox, T. S., D. L. Van Tassel, C. M. Cox, and L. R. DeHaan. 2010. Progress in breeding perennial grains. *Crop and Pasture Science* 61: 1–9.

Crews, T. E. 2013. Ecology study, polycultures are taking root. 2013 annual report. The Land Institute: Salina, KS, pp. 4–6.

Cromack, K., R. E. Miller, O. T. Helgerson, R. B. Smith, and H. W. Anderson. 1999. Soil carbon and nutrients in a coastal Oregon Douglas-fir plantation with red alder. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 63(1): 232–239.

Cuellar-Padilla, M. and A. Calle-Collado. 2011. Can we find solutions with people? Participatory action research with small organic producers in Andalusia. *Journal of Rural Studies* 27: 372–383.

Culman, S. W., S. T. DuPont, J. D. Glover, D. H. Buckley, G. W. Fick, H. Ferris, and T. E. Crews. 2010. Long-term impacts of high-input annual cropping and unfertilized perennial grass production on soil properties and belowground food webs in Kansas, USA. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 137: 13–24.

Culman, S. W., S. S. Snapp, M. Ollenburger, B. Basso, and L. R. DeHaan. 2013. Soil and water quality rapidly responds to the perennial grain kernza wheatgrass. *Agronomy Journal* 105: 735–744.

Cunningham, A. B. 2001. *Applied Ethnobotany: People, Wild Plant Use and Conservation*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

Daily, G. C. 1995. Restoring value to the world's degraded lands. *Science* 269: 350–354.

Dalgaard, T. 2013. Energy balance comparisons of organic and conventional farming systems and potentials for the mitigation of fossil resource use. Nordic Association of Agricultural Scientists AJF Report 9, pp. 19–22.

Dalgaard, R., N. Halberg, and J. R. Porter. 2001. A model for fossil energy use in Danish agriculture used to compare organic and conventional farming. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 87: 51–65.

Dalgaard, T., T. Heidmann, and L. Mogensen. 2002. Potential N-losses in three scenarios for organic farming in a local area of Denmark. *European Journal of Agronomy* 16: 207–217.

Daubenmire, R. F. 1974. *Plants and Environment*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Davis, J. H. C., J. N. Woolley, and R. A. Moreno. 1986. Multiple cropping with legumes and starchy roots. In C. A. Francis (ed.) *Multiple Cropping Systems*. MacMillan: New York, pp. 133–160.

Debano, F., D. G. Neary, and P. S. Folliott. 1998. *Fire: Its Effect on Soil and Other Ecosystem Resources*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.: New York.

Del Angel-Perez, A. L. and M. A. Mendoza. 2004. Totonac homegardens and natural resources in Veracruz, Mexico. *Agriculture and Human Values* 21(4): 329–346.

Dell, J. D. and F. R. Ward. 1971. Logging residues on Douglas-fir region clearcuts: Weights and volumes. Report 115: 1–10. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service: Washington, DC.

Denevan, W. M. and C. Padoch. 1987. *Swidden-Fallow Agroforestry in the Peruvian Amazon*. New York Botanical Gardens: Bronx, New York.

Denys, C. and T. Tscharntke. 2002. Plant-insect communities and predator-prey ratios in field margin strips, adjacent crop fields, and fallows. *Oecologia* 130(2): 315–324.

De Schutter, O. 2011. Agroecology and the right to food. Report presented at the 16th Session of the United Nations Human Rights Council [A/HRC/16/49] March 8, 2011.

Devictor, V., J. Clavel, R. Julliard, S. Lavergne, D. Mouillot, W. Thuiller, P. Venail, S. Villéger, and N. Mouquet. 2010. Defining and measuring ecological specialization. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 47: 15–25.

Dewey, K. G. 1979. Agricultural development: Impact on diet and nutrition. *Ecology of Food and Nutrition* 8: 247–253.

Dharmasena, K. H. and M. Wijeratne. 1996. Analysis of nutritional contribution of homegardening. *Tropenlandwirt* 97(2): 149–158.

Domhoff, G. W. 2013. *Who Rules America? The Triumph of the Corporate Rich*, 7th edn. McGraw Hill: New York.

Douglass, G. (ed.). 1984. *Agricultural Sustainability in a Changing World Order*. Westview Press: Boulder, CO.

Duke, S. O. 2010. Allelopathy: Current status of research and future of the discipline: A commentary. *Allelopathy Journal* 25: 17–30.

Eigenbrode, S. D. 2011. Host plant resistance and conservation of genetic diversity. In E. B. Radcliffe, W. D. Hutchison, and R. E. Cancelado (eds.) *Radcliffe's IPM World Textbook*. University of Minnesota: St. Paul, MN, 988–994. http://ipmworld.umn.edu (visited February 5, 2014).

Eksvärd, K., L. Salomonsson, C. Francis, N. Sriskandarajah, K. Svanäng, G. Lieblein, J. Björklund, and U. Geber. 2009. Participatory approaches and stakeholder involvement in sustainable agriculture research. In P. J. Bohlen and G. House (eds.) *Sustainable Agroecosystem Management: Integrating Ecology, Economics, and Society*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL (Chapter 16).

Ellingson, L. J., J. B. Kauffman, D. L. Cummings, R. L. Sanford, and V. J. Jaramillo. 2000. Soil N dynamics associated with deforestation, biomass burning, and pasture conversion in a Mexican tropical dry forest. *Forest Ecology and Management* 137(1–3): 41–51.

Ellis, E. C. 2004. Long-term ecological changes in the densely populated rural landscapes of China. In R. S. DeFries, G. P. Asner, and R. A. Houghton (eds.) *Ecosystems and Land Use Change*. Geophysical Monograph Series, Vol. 153. American Geophysical Union: Washington, DC, pp. 303–320.

Ellis, E. C. 2011. Anthropogenic transformation of the terrestrial biosphere. *Proceedings of the Royal Society A: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Science* 369(1938): 1010–1035.

Ellis, E. C. and S. M. Wang. 1997. Sustainable traditional agriculture in the Tai Lake region of China. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 61: 177–193.

Ellsworth, S. and G. Feenstra. 2010. Assessing the San Diego county food system: Indicators for a more food secure future. UC Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program and The Sustainability Institute, University of California: Davis, CA.

El Titi, A. 2002. *Soil Tillage in Agroecosystems*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

Elton, C. 1927. *Animal Ecology*. Sidgwick and Jackson: London, U.K.

Entz, M. H., W. J. Bullied, and F. Katepa-Mupondwa. 1995. Rotational benefits of forage crops in Canadian prairie cropping systems. *Journal of Production Agriculture* 8: 521–529.

Espinosa, J. 1984. The allelopathic effects of red root pigweed (*Amaranthus retroflexus*) and lambsquarters (*Chenopodium album*) on growth and nodulation of beans (*Phasoleus vulgaris*). MA thesis, Biology. University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Etherington, J. R. 1995. *Environment and Plant Ecology*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Evenari, M. 1982. *The Negev: The Challenge of a Desert*. Harvard University Press: Cambridge, U.K.

Ewel, J. 1999. Natural systems as models for the design of sustainable systems of land use. *Agroforestry System*s 45: 1–21.

Ewel, J., C. Berish, B. Brown, N. Price, and J. Raich. 1981. Slash and burn impacts on a Costa Rican wet forest site. *Ecology* 62: 816–829.

Ewel, J., F. Benedict, C. Berish, B. Brown, S. R. Gliessman, M. Amador, R. Bermudez, A. Martinez, R. Miranda, and N. Price. 1982. Leaf area, light transmission, roots and leaf damage in nine tropical plant communities. *Agro-Ecosystems* 7: 305–326.

Ewert, D. and S. Gliessman. 1972. Regeneration under a tree in the tropical wet forest, Osa Peninsula. Field problem report, Tropical Biology Course Book. Organization for Tropical Studies, Durham, NC, pp. 306–310.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 1998. *Special Report: Biodiversity for Food and Agriculture: Farm Animal Genetic Resources*. FAO: Rome, Italy.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2007. *The State of the World's Animal Genetic Resources for Food and Agriculture.* FAO: Rome, Italy.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2010. *The Second Report on the State of the World's Plant Genetic Resources for Food and Agriculture*. FAO: Rome, Italy.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2011. *State of the World's Land and Water Resources for Food and Agriculture*. FAO: Rome, Italy.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2013a. *Food Wastage Footprint: Impacts on Natural Resources, Summary Report*. FAO: Rome, Italy.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2013b. *The State of Food Insecurity in the World: The Multiple Dimensions of Food Security*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations: Rome, Italy.

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations). 2014. The international treaty on plant genetic resources for food and agriculture. www.planttreaty.org (visited February 5, 2014).

FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture Department. 2012. *The State of World Fisheries and Aquaculture, 2012*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations: Rome, Italy.

FAOSTAT. 2012. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Statistics Database. http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html (Dates of access range from August 31, 2012 to December 31, 2012).

FAOSTAT. 2013. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Statistics Database. http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html (Dates of access range from January 1, 2013 to December 31, 2013).

FAOSTAT. 2014. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Statistics Database. http://faostat3.fao.org/home/index.html (Dates of access range from January 1, 2014 to March 30, 2014).

FARMA. 2014. The National Farmers' Retail & Markets Association. Farma.org.uk (visited February 1, 2014).

Farrell, J. 1990. The influence of trees in selected agroecosystems in Mexico. In S. R. Gliessman (ed.) *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*. Springer-Verlag: New York, pp. 169–183.

Federoff, N. V., D. S. Battisti, R. N. Beachy, P. J. M. Cooper, D. A. Fischhoff, C. N. Hodges, V. C. Knauf et al. 2010. Radically rethinking agriculture for the 21st century. *Science* 327: 833–834.

Fields, S. 2004. Global nitrogen: Cycling out of control. *Environmental Health Perspectives* 112: 556–563.

Finegan, B. 1996. Pattern and process in neotropical secondary rain forests: The first 100 years of succession. *Trends in Ecology and Evolution* 11(3): 119–124.

Firth, C., I. Milla, and P. Harris. 2008. The use of indicators to assess the sustainability of farms converting to organic production. In R. Fish, S. Seymour, C. Watkins, and M. Steven (eds.) *Sustainable Farmland Management: Transdisciplinary Approaches*. CABI International: Oxford, U.K, pp. 194–202.

Fish, R., S. Seymour, C. Watkins, and M. Steven (eds.). 2008. *Sustainable Farmland Management: Transdisciplinary Approaches*. CABI International: Oxford, U.K.

Fitter, A. 2003. Making allelopathy respectable. *Science* 301: 1337–1338.

Flietner, D. 1985. Don Ignacio's home garden. In R. Jaffe and S. R. Gliessman (eds.) *Proceedings of OTS Course 85-4*. San Jose, Costa Rica, pp. 57–67.

Fowler, C. and P. Mooney. 1990. *Shattering: Food, Politics, and the Loss of Genetic Diversity*. University of Arizona Press: Tucson, AZ.

Francis, C., G. Lieblein, S. Gliessman, T. A. Breland, N. Creamer, R. Harwood, L. Salomonsson et al. 2003. Agroecology: The ecology of food systems. *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture* 22: 99–118.

Francis, C. A. (ed.). 1986. *Multiple Cropping Systems*. MacMillan: New York.

Francis, C. A., G. Lieblein, T. A. Breland, L. Salomonsson, U. Geber, N. Sriskandarajah, and V. Langer. 2008. Transdisciplinary research for a sustainable agriculture and food sector. *Agronomy Journal* 100(3): 771–776.

Freyfogle, E. T. 2001. *The New Agrarianism: Land, Culture, and the Community of Life*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

Fryar, C. D., M. D. Carroll, and C. L. Ogden. 2012. Prevalence of overweight, obesity, and extreme obesity among adults: United States, trends 1960–1962 through 2009–2010. Division of Health and Nutrition Examination Surveys, Centers for Disease Control.

Fujiyoshi, P. 1997. Ecological aspects of interference by squash in a corn/squash intercropping agroecosystem. Unpublished data from PhD thesis in Biology, in progress. University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Fujiyoshi, P., S. R. Gliessman, and J. H. Langenheim. 2002. Inhibitory potential of compounds released from squash (*Cucurbita* spp.) under natural conditions. *Allelopathy Journal* 9(1): 1–8.

Fujiyoshi, P. T., S. R. Gliessman, and J. H. Langenheim. 2007. Factors in the suppression of weeds by squash interplanted in corn. *Weed Biology and Management* 7(2): 105–114.

Furuno, T. 2001. *The Power of Duck*. Tagari Publications: Tasmania, Australia.

Gajic, D. and G. Nikocevic. 1973. Chemical allelopathic effect of *Agrostemma githago* upon wheat. *Fragmenta Herbologica Jugoslavica* 18: 1–6.

Garcia-Espinosa, R. 2010. *Agroecología y Enfermedades de la Raiz en Cultivos Agrícolas*. Editorial del Colegio de Postgraduados: Montecillos, Mexico.

Gardner, G. and B. Halweil. 2000. Overfed and underfed: The global epidemic of malnutrition. Worldwatch paper #150.

Gause, G. F. 1934. *The Struggle for Existence*. Williams and Wilkins: Baltimore, MD.

Geary, K. 2012. *Our Land, Our Lives: Time Out on the Global Land Rush*. Oxfam Briefing Note, October 2012. Oxfam GB: Oxford, U.K.

Giampietro, M. 2004. *Multi-Scale Integrated Analysis of Agroecosystems*. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.

Gilliom, R. and P. Hamilton. 2006. Pesticides in the Nation's streams and ground water, 1992–2001—A summary. U.S. Geological Survey, Sacramento, CA.

Gliessman, S. R. 1978a. Sustained yield agriculture in the humid lowland tropics. *INTECOL Newsletter* 7: 1.

Gliessman, S. R. 1978b. Memorias del Seminario Regional sobre la Agricultura Agricola Tradicional. CSAT: Cardenas, Mexico.

Gliessman, S. R. 1978c. Unpublished research report. Colegio Superior de Agricultura Tropical: Cardenas, Mexico.

Gliessman, S. R. 1978d. The establishment of bracken following fire in tropical habitats. *American Fern Journal* 68: 41–44.

Gliessman, S. R. 1979. Allelopathy in crop/weed interactions in the humid tropics. In A. Amador (ed.) *Memoirs of Seminar Series of Ecology*. Colegio Superior de Agricultura Tropical: Cardenas, Mexico, pp. 1–8.

Gliessman, S. R. 1982. Nitrogen cycling in several traditional agroecosystems in the humid tropical lowlands of southeastern Mexico. *Plant and Soil* 67: 105–117.

Gliessman, S. R. 1983. Allelopathic interactions in crop–weed mixtures: Applications for weed management. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 9: 991–999.

Gliessman, S. R. 1987. Species interactions and community ecology in low external-input agriculture. *American Journal of Alternative Agriculture* 11: 160–165.

Gliessman, S. R. 1988. Allelopathic effects of crops on weeds. Unpublished manuscript. University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Gliessman, S. R. 1989. Allelopathy and agricultural sustainability. In C. H. Chou and G. R. Waller (eds.) *Phytochemical Ecology: Allelochemicals, Mycotoxins and Insect Pheromones and Allomones*. Institute of Botany: Taipei, Taiwan, pp. 69–80.

Gliessman, S. R. (ed.). 1990. *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*. Springer-Verlag: New York.

Gliessman, S. R. 1992a. Agroecology in the tropics: Achieving a balance between land use and preservation. *Environmental Management* 16: 681–689.

Gliessman, S. R. 1992b. Unpublished data. Agroecology Program, University of California, Santa Barbara, CA.

Gliessman, S. R. 1995. Sustainable agriculture: An agroecological perspective. In J. S. Andrews and I. C. Tommerup (eds.) *Advances in Plant Pathology* 11: 45–56.

Gliessman, S. R. 1998. *Agroecology: Ecological Processes in Sustainable Agriculture.* Sleeping Bear Press: Ann Arbor, MI.

Gliessman, S. R. (ed.). 2001. *Agroecosystem Sustainability: Developing Practical Strategies*. Advances in Agroecology. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.

Gliessman, S. R. 2002a. Allelopathy and agroecology. In Inderjit and A. U. Mallik (eds.) *Chemical Ecology of Plants: Allelopathy in Aquatic and Terrestrial Ecosystems*. Birkhauser Verlag: Basel, Switzerland, pp. 173–185.

Gliessman, S. R. 2002b. Making the conversion to sustainable agroecosystems: Getting from here to there with agroecology. *California Certified Organic Farmers Newsletter* 19(3): 6–8.

Gliessman, S. R. 2004. Integrating agroecological processes into cropping systems research. *Journal of Crop Improvement* 11: 61–80.

Gliessman, S. R. 2009. Signs of change. *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture* 33(5): 1–2.

Gliessman, S. R. 2013. Agroecology: Growing the roots of resistance. In V. E. Mendéz, C. M. Bacon, and R. Cohen (eds.) Agroecology and the transformation of agri-food systems: Transdisciplinary and participatory perspectives. Special issue, *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* 37: 19–31.

Gliessman, S. R. and R. Garcia-Espinosa. 1982. A green manure crop for the lowland tropics. In National Research Council (ed.) *Tropical Legumes: Resources for the Future*. National Academy of Science: Washington, DC.

Gliessman, S. R., R. Garcia-Espinosa, and M. F. Amador. 1981. The ecological basis for the application of traditional agricultural technology in the management of tropical agroecosystems. *Agro-Ecosystems* 7: 173–185.

Gliessman, S. R. and M. E. Rosemeyer. 2010. *The Conversion to Sustainable Agriculture: Principles, Processes, and Practices*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

Gliessman, S. R., M. R. Werner, S. Sweezy, E. Caswell, J. Cochran, and F. Rosado-May. 1996. Conversion to organic strawberry management changes ecological processes. *California Agriculture* 50: 24–31.

Global Footprint Network. 2014. World Footprint: Do we fit on the planet? http://www.footprintnetwork.org/en/index.php/GFN/page/world_footprint (accessed March 20, 2014).

González de Molin, M. 2013. Agroecology and politics. How to get sustainability? About the necessity for a political agroecology. *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* 37: 1–15.

González Jácome, A. 1985. Home gardens in Central Mexico. In I. S. Farrington (ed.) *Prehistoric Intensive Agriculture in the Tropics*. BAR: Oxford, U.K.

González Jácome, A. 1986. Agroecologia del Suroeste de Tlaxcala, Historia y Sociedad en Tlaxcala. Gobierno del Estado de Tlaxcala: Tlaxcala, Mexico, pp. 201–220.

González Jácome, A. 2011. Historias Varias: Un Viaje en el Tiempo con los Agricultore Mexicanos. Universidad Iberoamericana: Mexico, D.F., Mexico.

González Jácome, A. and S. Del Amo Rodriguez (eds.). 1999. *Agricultura y Sociedad en México: Diversidad, Enfoques, Estudios de Caso*. Plaza y Valdes Editores: Mexico, D.F., Mexico.

Goodland, R. and J. Anhang. 2009. Livestock and climate change: What if the key factors in climate change were pigs, chickens, and cows? *World Watch*, November/December 2009. Worldwatch Institute, Washington, DC.

Goodman, D., M. E. DuPuis, and M. K. Goodman. 2011. *Alternative Food Networks: Knowledge, Practice, and Politics*. Routledge: London, U.K.

Gordon, A. M. and S. M. Newman. 1997. *Temperate Agroforestry Systems.* CABI Publishing: London, U.K.

Gottlieb, R. and A. Joshi. 2010. *Food Justice*. The MIT Press: Cambridge, MA.

Gray, M. 2014. *Labor and the Locavore: The Making of a Comprehensive Food Ethic*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.

Gregson, M. E. 1996. Long-term trends in agricultural specialization in the United States: Some preliminary results. *Agricultural History* 70: 90–101.

Grime, J. P. 1977. Evidence for the existence of three primary strategies in plants and its relevance to ecological and evolutionary theory. *American Naturalist* 111: 1169–1194.

Grinnell, J. 1924. Geography and evolution. *Ecology* 5: 225–229.

Grinnell, J. 1928. Presence and absence of animals. *University of California Chronicles* 30: 429–450.

Groom, M. J., G. K. Meffe, and R. J. Carroll. 2006. *Principles of Conservation Biology*. Sinaur Associates: Sunderland, MA (Chapter 7).

Grossman, E. 2013. Declining bee populations pose a threat to global agriculture. Yale environment 360 report. April 13, 2013. http://e360.yale.edu/feature/declining_bee_populations_pose_a_threat_to_global_agriculture/2645/ (visited January 30, 2014).

Guo, J. Y. and A. D. Bradshaw. 1991. The flow of nutrients and energy through a Chinese farming system. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 30: 86–94.

Gurr, G. M., S. D. Wratten, and W. E. Snyder, with D. Read (eds.). 2012. *Biodiversity and Insect Pests: Key Issues for Sustainable Management*. Wiley-Blackwell: New York.

Guthman, J. 2004. *Agrarian Dreams: The Paradox of Organic Farming in California*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.

Guyot, G. 1989. Les effets aérodynamiques et microclimatiques des brise-vent et des amenagements régionaux. In W. S. Reifsnyder and T. O. Darnhofer (eds.) *Meteorology and Agroforestry*. ICRAF: Nairobi, Kenya, pp. 485–520.

Guzmán-Casado, G. and A. M. Alonso-Mielgo. 2008. La investigación participativa en agroecologia: una herramienta para el desarrollo sustentable. *Ecosistemas* (Spain) 16: 24–36.

Guzmán-Casado, G., M. González de Molina, and E. Sevilla-Guzmán (eds.). 1999. *Introducción a la Agroecología como Desarrollo Rural Sostenible.* Ediciones Mundi-Prensa: Madrid, Spain.

Hall, S. J. G. and J. Ruane. 1993. Livestock breeds and their conservation: A global overview. *Conservation Biology* 7: 815–825.

Halweil, B. 2004. *Eat Here: Reclaiming Homegrown Pleasures in a Global Supermarket.* A WorldWatch Book. Norton: New York.

Hansen, J. W. and J. W. Jones. 1996. A systems framework for characterizing farm sustainability. *Agricultural Systems* 51: 185–201.

Hanson, H. C. 1939. Ecology in agriculture. *Ecology* 20: 111–117.

Haramoto, E. R. and E. R. Gallandt. 2004. Brassica cover cropping for weed management: A review. *Renewable Agriculture and Food Systems* 19: 187–198.

Hardison, J. R. 1976. Fire and flame for plant disease control. *Annual Review of Phytopathology* 14: 355–379.

Harper, J. L. 1974. The need for a focus on agro-ecosystems. *Agroecosystems* 1: 1–12.

Harper, J. L. l977. *Population Biology of Plants*. Academic Press: London, U.K.

Hart, R. D. 1979. *Agroecosistemas: Conceptos Basicos*. CIAT: Turrialba, Costa Rica.

Hartwig, N. L. and H. U. Ammon. 2002. Cover crops and living mulches. *Weed Science* 50: 688–699.

Hauggaard-Nielsen, H. and E. S. Jensen. 2005. Facilitative root interactions in intercrops. *Plant and Soil* 274(1–2): 237–250.

Hauter, W. 2012. *Foodopoly: The Battle over the Future of Food and Farming in America*. The New Press: New York.

Hendrickson, M. and W. Heffernan. 2007. Concentration of Agricultural Markets, 2007. Department of Rural Sociology, University of Missouri. http://www.foodcircles.missouri.edu/07contable.pdf (visited February 1, 14).

Hernandez Xolocotzi, E. (ed.). 1977. *Agroecosistemas de México: Contribucciones a la Enseñanza, Investigación, y Divulgación Agrícola*. Colegio de Postgraduados: Chapingo, Mexico.

Hisyam, A., M. Anwar, and Suharto. 1979. Social and Cultural Aspects of Homegardens. Presented at the *Fifth International Symposium of Tropical Ecology*, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, 45–55.

Hitchings, R. 2009. Compost: The effect on nutrients, soil health and crop production. Institute of Organic Training and Advice (IOTA). *Results of Organic Research: Technical Bulletin* 5: 1–7.

Hodgson, J. and A. W. Illius (eds.). 1996. *The Ecology and Management of Grazing Systems*. CAB International: Wallingford, U.K., pp. 247–272.

Holt-Gimenez, E. and R. Patel. 2009. *Food Rebellions: Crisis and the Hunger for Justice*. Food First Books: Oakland, CA.

Howard, P. H. 2009. Consolidation in the North American organic food processing sector, 1997 to 2007. *International Journal of Sociology of Agriculture and Food* 16(1): 13–30.

Howard, P. H. 2014. Phillip H. Howard homepage. https://www.msu.edu/~howardp/index.html (visited February 1, 14).

Hubbard, K. 2008. *A Guide to Genetically Modified Alfalfa*. Western Organization of Resource Councils: Billings, MT.

Hunt, S. C., J. L. Sawin, and P. Stair. 2006. Cultivating renewable alternatives to oil. In L. Starke (ed.) *State of the World 2006*. Worldwatch Institute/W.N. Norton & Co.: New York.

Hutchinson, G. E. 1957. Concluding remarks. Population studies: Animal ecology and demography. Presented at the *Cold Spring Harbor Symposium on Quantitative Biology*, New York, 415–427.

Illic, P. 1989. Plastic tunnels for early vegetable production: Are they for you? Family Farm Series. pp. 1–12. Small Farm Center, University of California Cooperative Extension: Davis, CA.

Imhoff, D. 2001. Linking tables to farms. In E. R. Freyfogle (ed.) *The New Agrarianism: Land, Culture, and the Community of Life*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

Innis, Q. 1997. *Intercropping and the Scientific Basis of Traditional Agriculture*. Intermediate Technology Development Group: London, U.K.

INTECOL. 1976. *Report on an International Programme for Analysis of Agro-Ecosystems*. International Association for Ecology: Athens, GA.

International Assessment of Agricultural Knowledge, Science, and Technology for Development (IAASTD). 2009. *Agriculture at the Crossroads: The Global Report.* Island Press: Washington, DC.

International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD). 2013. *Smallholders, Food Security, and the Environment*. IFAD/UNEP: Rome, Italy.

Jackson, D. L. and L. L. Jackson. 2002. *The Farm as Natural Habitat: Reconnecting Food Systems with Ecosystems*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

Jackson, W. 2011. *Nature as Measure: The Selected Essays of Wes Jackson*. Counterpoint: Berkeley, CA.

James, C. 2012. Global status of Commercialized Biotech/GM Crops: 2012 (Brief #44). International Service for the Acquisition of Agri-biotech Applications, Ithaca, New York.

Jansen, D. M., J. J. Stoorvogel, and R. A. Schipper. 1995. Using sustainability indicators in agricultural land use analysis: An example from Costa Rica. *Netherlands Journal of Agricultural Science* 43: 61–82.

Janzen, D. H. 1973. Tropical agroecosystems. *Science* 182: 1212–1219.

Jimenez-Osornio, J. J. and V. M. Rorive (eds.). 1999. *Los Camellones y Chinampas Tropicales*. Ediciones de la Universidad Autonoma de Yucatan: Merida, Mexico.

Joern, A. 2005. Disturbance by fire frequency and bison grazing modulate grasshopper assemblages in tallgrass prairie. *Ecology* 86(4): 861–873.

Jordan, C. 1985. *Nutrient Cycling in Tropical Forests*. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Joshi, L., P. K. Shrestha, C. Moss, and F. L. Sinclair. 2004. Locally derived knowledge of soil fertility and its emerging role in integrated natural resource management. In M. van Noordwijk, G. Cadish, and C. K. Ong (eds.) *Below-Ground Interactions in Tropical Agroecosystems: Concepts and Models with Multiple Plant Components*. CABI Publishing: Cambridge, MA, pp. 17–40.

Kanokkanjana, K. and S. Garivait. 2013. Alternative rice straw management practices to reduce field open burning in Thailand. *International Journal of Environmental Science and Development* 4: 119–123.

Kareiva, P. and M. Marvier. 2011. *Conservation Science: Balancing the Needs of People and Nature*. Roberts and Company Publishers: Greenwood Village, CO.

Kates, R. W. 2011. What kind of a science is sustainability science? *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 108 (49, 99): 19449–19450.

Kehlenbeck, K. and B. L. Maass. 2005. Crop diversity and classification of homegardens in Central Sulawesi, Indonesia. *Agroforestry Systems* 63(1): 53–62.

Kettler, J. S. 1996. Fallow enrichment of a traditional slash/mulch system in southern Costa Rica: Comparisons of biomass production and crop yield. *Agroforestry Systems* 35: 165–176.

Kimbrell, A. 2002. *The Fatal Harvest Reader*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

Klages, K. H. W. 1942. *Ecological Crop Geography*. MacMillan: New York.

Klee, G. 1980. *World Systems of Traditional Resource Management*. Halstead: New York.

KMPG International. 2012. *Expect the Unexpected: Building Business Value in a Changing World*. KMPG International Cooperative: Amstelveen, the Netherlands.

Koike, S. and Subbarao, K. V. 2000. Broccoli residues can control Verticillium wilt of cauliflower. *California Agriculture* 54: 30–33.

Koizumi, H., Y. Usami, and M. Satoh. 1992. Energy flow, carbon dynamics, and fertility in three double-cropping agroecosystems in Japan. In M. Shiyomi, E. Yano, H. Koizumi, D. A. Andow, and N. Hokyo (eds.) *Ecological Processes in Agro-Ecosystems*. National Institute of Agro-Environmental Sciences: Tukaba, Japan, pp. 157–188.

Komiyama, H. and K. Takeuchi. 2006. Sustainability science: Building a new discipline. *Sustainability Science* 1: 1–6.

Koocheki, A. and S. R. Gliessman. 2005. Pastoral nomadism: A sustainable system for grazing land management in arid areas. *Journal of Sustainable Agriculture* 25: 113–131.

Koocheki, A., M. Nassiri, S. R. Gliessman, and A. Zarea. 2006. Agrobiodiversity of field crops in Iran. Unpublished manuscript.

Koohafkan, P. and M. A. Altieri. 2010. *Globally Important Agricultural Heritage Systems: A Legacy for the Future*. UN-FAO: Rome, Italy.

Kort, J. 1988. Benefits of windbreaks to field and forage crops. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 22/23: 165–190.

Kotschi, J. 2010. Reconciling agriculture with biodiversity and innovations in plant breeding. *Gaia—Ecological Perspectives for Science and Society* 19: 20–24.

Koziell, I. and J. Saunders. 2001. *Living Off Biodiversity: Exploring Livelihoods and Biodiversity Issues in Natural Resources Management*. IIED: London, U.K.

Kumar, B. M. and P. K. R. Nair. 2004. The enigma of tropical homegardens. *Agroforestry Systems* 61(1): 135–152.

Kumar, S. 2013. *The Looming Threat of Water Scarcity*. Vital Signs Online, World Watch Institute: Washington, DC. www.worldwatch.org/looming-threat-water-scarcity-0 (accessed December 12, 2013).

Kuminoff, N., V. Alvin, D. Sokolow, and D. A. Sumner. 2001. Farmland conversion: Perceptions and realities. AIC Issues Brief #16. University of California Agricultural Issues Center: Davis, CA.

Laing, D. R., P. G. Jones, and J. H. C. Davis. 1984. Common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.). In P. R. Goldsworthy and N. M. Fisher (eds.) *The Physiology of Tropical Field Crops*. Wiley & Sons: Chichester, U.K., pp. 305–351.

Lal, R., E. Regnier, D. J. Exkert, W. M. Edwards, and R. Hammond. 1991. Expectations of cover crops for sustainable agriculture. In W. L. Hargrove (ed.) *Cover Crops for Clean Water*. Soil and Water Conservation Society: Ankeny, IA, pp. 1–14.

Landis, D. A., F. D. Menalled, A. C. Costamagna, and T. K. Wilkinson. 2005. Manipulating plant resources to enhance beneficial arthropods in agricultural landscapes. *Weed Science* 53(6): 902–908.

Larcher, W. 1980. *Physiological Plant Ecology*. Springer-Verlag: New York.

Laurance, W. F., T. E. Lovejoy, H. L. Vasconcelos, E. M. Bruna, R. K. Didham, P. C. Stouffer, C. Gascon, R. O. Bierregaard, S. G. Laurance, and E. Sampaio. 2002. Ecosystem decay of Amazonian forest fragments: A 22-year investigation. *Conservation Biology* 16: 605–618.

Leather, G. R. and F. A. Einhellig. 1986. Bioassays in the study of allelopathy. In A. R. Putnam and C. S. Tang (eds.) *The Science of Allelopathy*. John Wiley & Sons: New York, pp. 133–146.

Leicach, S. R., D. A. Sampietro, and S. S. Narwal. 2009. *Allelochemicals: Role in Plant Environment Interactions*. Studium Press: New Delhi, India.

LEISA (Low External Input and Sustainable Agriculture). 2005. Special Issue: Small animals in focus. 21(3): 1–125.

Letourneau, D. K. 1986. Associational resistance in squash monoculture and polycultures in tropical Mexico. *Environmental Entomology* 15: 285–292.

Levins, R. 1968. *Evolution in Changing Environments*. Princeton University Press: Princeton, NJ.

Liste, H.-H. and J. White. 2008. Plant hydraulic lift of soil water: Implications for crop production and land restoration. *Plant and Soil*: 313(1–2): 1–17.

Lithourgidis, A. S., C. S. Dordas, C. S. Damalas, and D. N. Vlachostergios. 2011. Annual intercrops: An alternative pathway for sustainable agriculture. *Australian Journal of Crop Science* 5: 396–410.

Liverman, D. M., M. E. Hanson, B. J. Brown, and J. R. W. Merideth. 1988. Global sustainability: Towards measurement. *Environmental Management* 12: 133–143.

Loomis, R. S. and D. J. Connor. 1992. *Crop Ecology: Productivity and Management in Agricultural Systems*. Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.

Los Huertos, M. 1999. Nitrogen dynamics in vegetated buffer strips between estaurine wetlands and rowcrops on the central coast of California. PhD dissertation. Environmental Studies, University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Loucks, O. L. 1977. Emergence of research on agro-ecosystems. *Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics* 8: 173–192.

Lovell, S. T., S. DeSantis, C. A. Nathan, M. B. Olsen, V. E. Mendez, H. I. Kominami, D. L. Erickson, K. S. Morris, and W. B. Morris. 2010. Integrating agroecology and landscape multifunctionality in Vermont: An evolving framework to evaluate the design of agroecosystems. *Agricultural Systems* 103: 327–341.

Lowrance, R., B. R. Stinner, and G. J. House. 1984. *Agricultural Ecosystems: Unifying Concepts*. Wiley: New York.

Ludlow, M. M. 1985. Photosynthesis and dry matter production in C3 legumes and C4 grasses. *Australian Journal of Plant Physiology* 12: 557–572.

Lyon, T. L., H. O. Buckman, and N. C. Brady. 1952. *The Nature and Properties of Soils,* 5th edn. MacMillan: New York.

MacArthur, R. H. 1962. Generalized theorems of natural selection. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 43: 1893–1897.

MacArthur, R. H. and E. O. Wilson. 1967. *The Theory of Island Biogeography*. Princeton University Press: Princeton, NJ.

MacDonald, M. 2012. Food security and equity in a climate-constrained world. In *State of the World 2012: Moving Toward Sustainable Prosperity*. Worldwatch Institute/Island Press: Washington, DC (Chapter 14), pp. 161–168.

MacRae, R. J., S. B. Hill, G. R. Mehuys, and J. Henning. 1990. Farm-scale agronomic and economic conversion from conventional to sustainable agriculture. *Advances in Agronomy* 43: 155–198.

Magdoff, F. and H. van Es. 2000. *Building Soils for Better Crops*, 3rd edn. Sustainable Agriculture Network: Washington, DC.

Magdoff, F. and R. R. Weil. 2004. *Soil Organic Matter in Sustainable Agriculture*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.

Maingi, J. M., C. A. Shisanya, N. M. Gitonga and B. Hornetz. 2001. Nitrogen fixation by common bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris* L.) in pure and mixed stands in semi-arid south-east Kenya. *European Journal of Agronomy* 14(1): 1–12.

Major, J., C. R. Clement, and A. DiTommaso. 2005. Influence of market orientation on food plant diversity of farms located on Amazonian Dark Earth in the region of Manaus, Amazonas, Brazil. *Economic Botany* 59(1): 77–86.

Mamolos, A. P. and K. L. Kalburtji. 2001. Significance of allelopathy in crop rotation. In R. K Kohli, H. P. Singh, and D. R. Batish (eds.) *Allelopathy in Agroecosystems*. Food Products Press (imprint of The Howarth Press): New York, pp. 197–218.

Marks, R. and R. Knuffke. 1998. *America's Animal Factories: How States Fail to Prevent Pollution from Livestock Waste*. Natural Resources Defense Council: New York.

Marshall, E. J. P., V. K. Brown, N. D. Boatman, P. J. W. Lutman, G. R. Squire, and L. K. Ward. 2003. The role of weeds in supporting biological diversity within crop fields. *Weed Research* 43: 77–89.

Martinez-Torres, M. E. and P. Rosset. 2014. Diálogo de saberes in La Vía Campesina: Food sovereignty and agroecology. *The Journal of Peasant Studies*. 37(1): 149–175.

Mascaro, J., I. Perfecto, O. Barros, D. H. Boucher, I. G. de la Cerda, J. Ruiz, and J. Vandermeer. 2005. Aboveground biomass accumulation in a tropical wet forest in Nicaragua following a catastrophic hurricane disturbance. *Biotropica* 37(4): 600–608.

Masera, O. and S. López-Ridaura. 2000. *Sustentabilidad y Sistemas Campesinos*. Mundi-Prensa México: Mexico, D.F., Mexico.

Mauseth, J. D. 2013. *Botany: An Introduction to Plant Biology*, 5th edn. Jones and Bartlett Learning: Burlington, MA.

McMichael, P. 2009. A food regime genealogy. *The Journal of Peasant Studies* 36(1): 139–169.

McNaughton, K. G. 1988. Effects of windbreaks on turbulent transport and microclimate. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 22/23: 17–39.

McNaughton, S. J. 1985. Ecology of a grazing ecosystem: The Serengeti. *Ecological Monographs* 55: 259–294.

McNaughton, S. J. 1990. Mineral nutrition and seasonal movements of African migratory ungulates. *Nature* 345: 613–615.

Mehring, M. and S. Stoll-Kleemann. 2011. How effective is the buffer zone? Linking institutional processes with satellite images from a case study in the Lore Lindu Forest Biosphere Reserve, Indonesia. *Ecology and Society* 16(4): 3–12.

Méndez, V. E. 2000. An assessment of tropical homegardens as examples of local sustainable agroforestry systems. In S. R. Gliessman (ed.) *Agroecosystem Sustainability: Developing Practical Strategies*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL, pp. 51–66.

Méndez, V. E., C. Bacon, S. R. Gliessman, D. Goodman, and J. Fox (eds.). 2006. *Confronting the Coffee Crisis: Sustaining Livelihoods and Ecosystems in Mexico and Central America*. MIT Press: Boston, MA.

Méndez, V. E., C. M. Bacon, and R. Cohen. 2013. Agroecology as a transdisciplinary, participatory, and action-oriented approach. *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* 37: 1–16.

Méndez, V. E., R. Lok, and E. Somarriba. 2001. Interdisciplinary analysis of homegardens in Nicaragua: Micro-zonation, plant use and socioeconomic importance. *Agroforestry Systems* 51(2): 85–96.

Merrill, R. (ed.). 1976. *Radical Agriculture*. Harper and Row, Publishers: New York.

Mikhail, M. 2012. Growing a sustainable future. In *State of the World 2012: Moving Toward Sustainable Prosperity*. Worldwatch Institute/Island Press: Washington, DC (Chapter 13), pp. 153–160.

Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. 2003. *Ecosystems and Human Well-Being: A Framework for Assessment*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

Mills, C. W. and A. Wolfe (contributor). 2000. *The Power Elite*. Oxford University Press: Cary, NC.

Minchin, F. R., R. J. Summerfield, A. R. J. Eaglesham, and K. A. Stewart. 1978. Effects of short-term waterlogging on growth and yield of cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata*). *Journal of Agricultural Science* 90: 355–366.

Mohler, C. L. and K. A. Stoner. 2009. Guidelines for intercropping. In *Crop Rotation on Organic Farms: A Planning Manual.* Mohler, C. L. and S. E. Johnson (Eds.) NRAES-177, pp. 95–100.

Monterey County Agricultural Commissioner. 2013. Monterey county crop report. 2012. Monterey County Agricultural Commissioner's Office: Salinas, CA.

Montgomery, D. R. 2007. Soil erosion and agricultural sustainability. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 104: 13268–13272.

Monteith, J. L. 1973. *Principles of Environmental Physics*. Edward Arnold, Ltd.: London, U.K.

Mountjoy, D. C. and S. R. Gliessman. 1988. Traditional management of a hillside agroecosystem in Tlaxcala, Mexico: An ecologically-based maintenance system. *American Journal of Alternative Agriculture* 3: 3–10.

Mousavi, S. R. and H. Eskandari. 2011. A general overview on intercropping and its advantages in sustainable agriculture. *Journal of Applied Environmental and Biological Sciences* 1: 482–486.

Muller, C. H. 1974. Allelopathy in the environmental complex. In B. R. Strain and W. D. Billings (eds.) *Vegetation and Environment*, Part VI. W. Junk B. V. Publisher: The Hague, the Netherlands, pp. 73–85.

Muramoto, J., S. R. Gliessman, S. T. Koike, C. Shennan, C. T. Bull, K. Klonsky, and S. Swezey. 2014. Integrated biological and cultural practices can reduce crop rotation period of organic strawberries. *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* 38: 603–631.

Muramoto, J., S. R. Gliessman, S. T. Koike, C. Shennan, D. Schmida, R. Stephens, and S. Swezey. 2005. Maintaining agroecosystem health in an organic strawberry/vegetable rotation system. www.agroecology.org/people/joji/research/elkhorn_4.htm. Accessed March 1, 2014.

Murray, M. G. and A. W. Illius. 1996. Multispecies grazing in the Serengeti. In J. Hodgson and A. W. Illius (eds.) *The Ecology and Management of Grazing Systems*. CAB International: Wallingford, U.K., pp. 247–272.

Nabhan, G. P. 2002. *Enduring Seeds: Native American Agriculture and Wild Plant Conservation*. University of Arizona Press: Tucson, AZ.

Nair, P. K. R. 1983. Tree integration on farmlands for sustained productivity of small holdings. In W. Lockeretz (ed.) *Environmentally Sound Agriculture*. Praeger: New York, pp. 333–350.

Nair, P. K. R. 1984. *Soil Productivity Aspects of Agroforestry: Science and Practice in Agroforestry*. International Council for Research in Agroforestry (ICRAF): Nairobi, Kenya.

Nair, P. K. R. 2001. Do tropical homegardens elude science, or is it the other way around? *Agroforestry Systems* 53(2): 239–245.

National Research Council. 1989. *Alternative Agriculture*. National Academy Press: Washington, DC.

Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). 2010. Soil erosion on cropland: 2007 Natural Resources Survey. Washington, DC. www.nrcs.usda.gov/Internet/FSE_DOCUMENTS/nrcs143_012269.pdf (accessed January 9, 2014).

Naughton-Treves, L. and N. Salafsky. 2004. Wildlife conservation in agroforestry buffer zones: Opportunities and conflict. In G. Schroth, G. A. B. da Fonseca, C. A. Harvey, C. Gascon, H. L. Vasconcelos, and A. M. N. Izac (eds.) *Agroforestry and Biodiversity Conservation in Tropical Landscapes*. Island Press: Washington, DC, pp. 319–345.

Naylor, R. E. L. l984. Seed ecology. *Advances in Research and Technology of Seeds* 9: 61–93.

Nentwig, W. 1998. Weedy plant species and their beneficial arthropods: Potential for manipulation in field crops. In: C. H. Pickett and R. L. Bugg (eds.) *Enhancing Biological Control: Habitat Management to Promote Natural Enemies of Agricultural Pests.* UC Press: Berkeley, CA, pp. 49–72.

Nevo, E. 1998. Genetic diversity in wild cereals: Regional and local studies and their bearing on conservation ex situ and *in situ*. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 45(4): 355–370.

Nicholls, C., M. Parrella, and M. A. Altieri. 2000. Establishing a plant corridor to enhance beneficial insect biodiversity in an organic vineyard. *Organic Farming Research Foundation Information Bulletin*. Winter 2000, number 7: 7–9.

Nicholls, C. I. and M. A. Altieri. 2013. Plant biodiversity enhances bees and other insect pollinators in agroecosystems. A review. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development* 33: 257–274.

Nierenberg, D. 2005. *Happier Meals: Rethinking the Global Meat Industry*. WorldWatch Paper 171. WorldWatch Institute: Washington, DC.

Nierenberg, D. and B. Halweil. 2004. Cultivating food security. In *State of the World 2004*. Worldwatch Institute/W.W. Norton and Co.: Washington, DC (Chapter 4), pp. 68–85.

Nordstrom, K. F. and S. Hotta. 2004. Wind erosion from cropland in the USA: A review of problems, solutions, and prospects. *Geoderma* 121(3–4): 157–167.

Norris, R. F. and M. Kogan. 2005. Ecology of interaction between weeds and arthropods. *Annual Review of Entomolog*y 50: 479–503.

Norton, R. L. 1988. Windbreaks: Benefits to orchard and vineyard crops. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 22/23: 205–213.

Nye, P. H. and D. J. Greenland. 1960. *The Soil Under Shifting Cultivation*. Commonwealth Bureau of Soils: Harpenden, U.K.

O'Donoghue, E., J. MacDonald, U. Vasavada, and P. Sullivan. 2011. Changing farming practices accompany major shifts in farm structure. http://www.ers.usda.gov/amber-waves/2011-december/changing-farming-practices.aspx#.Uu3XM_YnvSM (accessed February 1, 2014).

Odum, E. P. 1969. The strategy of ecosystem development. *Science* 164: 262–270.

Odum, E. P. 1971. *Fundamentals of Ecology*. W. B. Saunders: Philadelphia, PA.

Odum, E. P. 1993. *Ecology and Our Endangered Life-Support Systems*. Sinauer Associates Incorporated: Sunderland, MA.

Odum, E. P. and G. W. Barrett. 2005. *Fundamentals of Ecology*, 5th edn. Thomson Brooks/Cole: Belmont, CA.

Odum, H. T. 1996. *Environmental Accounting: EMERGY and Environmental Decision Making*. Wiley: New York.

Oerke, E. C. 2006. Crop losses to pests. *Journal of Agricultural Sciences* 144: 31–43.

Ong, C. K., R. M. Kho, and K. Onnesstraat. 2004. Ecological interactions in multispecies agroecosystems: Concepts and rules. In M. van Noordwijk, G. Cadish, C. K. Ong (eds.) *Below-ground Interactions in Tropical Agroecosystems: Concepts and Models with Multiple Plant Components*. CABI Publishing: Cambridge, MA, pp. 1–16.

Organic Trade Association. 2011. Manure facts. http://www.ota.com/organic/foodsafety/manure.html (accessed January 9, 2014).

Papadakis, J. 1938. *Compendium of Crop Ecology*. Ediciones Cientificas Americanas, Buenos Aires, Argentina.

Park, S., P. Croteau, K. Boering, D. Etheridge, D. Ferretti, P. Fraser, K.-R. Kim et al. 2012. Trends and seasonal cycles in the isotopic composition of nitrous oxide since 1940. *Nature Geoscience* 5(4): 261–265.

Patel, R. 2008. *Stuffed and Starved: The Hidden Battle for the World Food System*. Melville House: New York.

Paulus, J. 1994. Ecological aspects of orchard floor management in apple agroecosystems of the central California coast. PhD dissertation. University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Pearce, F. 2006. *When the Rivers Run Dry: The Defining Crisis of the Twenty-first Century*. Beacon Press: Boston, MA.

Perfecto, I., J. Vandermeeer, and A. Wright. 2009. *Nature's Matrix: Linking Agriculture, Conservation, and Food Sovereignty*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

Pianka, E. R. 1970. On *r*- and *K*-selection. *American Naturalist* 104: 592–597.

Pianka, E. R. 1978. *Evolutionary Ecology*, 2nd edn. Harper and Row: New York.

Pianka, E. R. 2000. *Evolutionary Biology*, 6th edn. Benjamin Cummings: San Francisco, CA.

Pickett, S. T. A. and P. White (eds.). 1985. *The Ecology of Natural Disturbances and Patch Dynamics*. Academic Press: Orlando, FL.

Pimentel, D. 2005. Environmental and economic costs of the application of pesticides, primarily in the United States. *Environment, Development and Sustainability* 7: 229–252.

Pimentel, D. (ed.). 2012. *Global Economic and Environmental Aspects of Biofuels*. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

Pimentel, D., P. Hepperly, J. Hanson, D, Douds, and R. Seidel. 2005. Environmental, energetic, and economic comparisons of organic and conventional farming systems. *BioScience* 55: 573–582.

Pimentel, D., D. Nafus, W. Vergara, D. Papaj, L. Jaconetta, M. Wulfe, L. Olsvig, K. French, M. Loye, and E. Mendoza. 1978. Biological solar energy conversion and U.S. energy policy. *Bioscience* 28: 376–382.

Pimentel, D. and M. Pimentel. 2003. Sustainability of meat-based and plant-based diets and the environment. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition* 78: 3.

Pimentel, D. and M. Pimentel. 2008. *Food, Energy, and Society*, 3rd edn. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

Pimentel, D., M. Pimentel, and M. Karpenstein-Machan. 1998. Energy use in agriculture: An overview. *International Commission of Agricultural Engineering Ejournal* 98: 1–32. (cigr-ejournal.tamu.edu), accessed August 24, 2014.

Pimentel, D., W. Dahzhongh, and M. Giampietro. 1990. Technological change in energy use in U.S. agricultural production. In S.R. Gliessman (ed.), *Agroecology: Researching the Ecological Basis for Sustainable Agriculture*. Springer-Verlag: New York, pp. 302–321.

Pimentel, D. and D. Wen. 1990. Technological changes in energy use in U.S. agricultural production. In C. R. Carrol, J. H. Vandermeer, and P. M. Rosset (eds.) *Agroecology*. McGraw Hill: New York, pp. 147–164.

Pinchinat, A. M., J. Soria, and R. Bazan. 1976. Multiple cropping in tropical America. In R. I. Papendick, P. A. Sanchez, and G. B. Triplett (eds.) *Multiple Cropping*. American Society of Agronomy: Madison, WI, pp. 51–62.

Pisani Gareau, T., D. K. Letourneau, and C. Shennan. 2013. Relative densities of natural enemy and pest insects in California hedgerows. *Environmental Entomology* 42: 688–702.

Pisani Gareau, T. and C. Shennan. 2010. Can Hedgerows attract beneficial insects and improve pest control? A Study of Hedgerows on central coast farms. UCSC Center for Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems: Santa Cruz, CA. Research Brief #13, pp. 1–8.

Pokhrel, Y. U., N. Hanasaki, P. J.-F. Yeh, T. J. Yamada, S. Kanae, and T. Oki. 2012. Model estimates of sea-level change due to anthropogenic impacts on terrestrial water storage. *Nature Geoscience* 5: 389–392.

Pollan, M. 2008. *In Defense of Food: An Eater's Manifesto*. The Penguin Press: London, U.K.

Postel, S. L. 2010. Water: Adapting to a new normal. In R. Heinbern and D. Lerch (eds.) *The Post Carbon Reader: Managing the 21st Century's Sustainability Crises*. Watershed Media/University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.

Postel, S. and A. Vickers. 2004. Boosting water productivity. In *State of the World 2004*. Worldwatch Institute/W.W. Norton and Co.: Washington, DC (Chapter 3), pp. 46–65.

Pretty, J. 2002. *Agri-Culture: Reconnecting People, Land and Nature*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

Pretty, J. (ed.). 2005. *The Earthscan Reader in Sustainable Agriculture*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

Pretty J., J. I. L. Morison, and R. E. Hine. 2003. Reducing food poverty by increasing agricultural sustainability in developing countries. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 95: 217–234.

Price, P. W. 1976. Colonization of crops by arthropods: Non-equilibrium communities in soybean fields. *Environmental Entomology* 5: 605–611.

Price, P. W. 1997. *Insect Ecology*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.: New York.

Pryke, J. S. and M. J. Samways. 2012. Importance of using many taxa and having adequate controls for monitoring impacts of fire for arthropod conservation. *Journal of Insect Conservation* 16: 177–185.

Putnam, A. R. and L. A. Weston. 1986. Adverse impacts of allelopathy in agricultural systems. In A. R. Putnam and C. S. Tang (eds.) *The Science of Allelopathy*. John Wiley & Sons: New York, pp. 43–56.

Pyne, S. J. 2012. *Fire: Nature and Culture*. Reaktion Books: London, U.K.

Qualset, C. and H. Shands. 2005. *Safeguarding the Future of U.S. Agriculture: The Need to Conserve Threatened Collections of Crop Diversity Worldwide*. University of California, Division of Agriculture and Natural Resources, Genetic Resources Conservation Program: Davis, CA.

Radosevich, S., J. Holt, and C. Ghersa. 2007. *Ecology of Weeds and Invasive Plants: Relationship to Agriculture and Natural Resource Management*, 3rd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Radosevich, S. R., J. S. Holt, and C. Ghersa. 1997. *Weed Ecology: Implications for Vegetation Management*, 2nd edn. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Raison, R. J. 1979. Modification of the soil environment by vegetation fires, with particular reference to nitrogen transformations: A review. *Plant and Soil* 51: 73–108.

Ramrao, W. Y., S. P. Tiwari, and P. Singh. 2005. Crop-livestock integrated farming system for augmenting socio-economic status of smallholder tribal farmers of Chhattisgarh in Central India. *Livestock Research for Rural Development.* Volume 17, Art. #90. Retrieved from http://www.cipav.org.co/lrrd/lrrd17/8/ramr17090.htm (November 4, 2005).

Rappaport, R. A. 1971. The flow of energy in an agricultural society. *Scientific American* 224: 117–132.

Rasul, G. and G. B. Thapa. 2003. Sustainability analysis of ecological and conventional agricultural systems in Bangladesh. *World Development* 31(10): 1721–1741.

Reganold, J. P., L. F. Elliot, and Y. L. Unger. 1987. Long-term effects of organic and conventional farming on soil erosion. *Nature* 330: 370–372.

Reifsnyder, W. S. and T. O. Darnhofer. 1989. *Meteorology and Agroforestry*. International Centre for Research in Agroforestry: Nairobi, Kenya.

Rein, F., M. Los Huertos, K. D. Holl, and J. H. Langenheim. 2007. Restoring native grasses as vegetative buffers in a coastal California agricultural landscape. *Madroño* 54: 249–257.

Ren Sen, Z., A. U. Mallick, and L. Shi Ming (eds.). 2008. *Allelopathy in Sustainable Agriculture and Forestry*. Springer: New York.

Renting, H., R. K. Mardsen, and J. Banks. 2003. Understanding alternative food networks: Exploring the role of short food supply chains in rural development. *Environment and Planning* 35: 393–411.

Reznick D., M. J. Bryant, and F. Bashey. 2002. r-and K-selection revisited: The role of population regulation in life-history evolution. *Ecology* 83(6): 1509–1520.

Rice, E. L. 1984. *Allelopathy*, 2nd edn. Academic Press: Orlando, FL.

Rickerl, D. and C. Francis (eds.). 2004. Agroecosystems analysis. *Agronomy Monograph.* No. 43. America Society of Agronomy: Madison, WI.

Risch, S. 1980. The population dynamics of several herbivorous beetles in a tropical agroecosystem: The effect of intercropping corn, beans, and squash in Costa Rica. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 17: 593–612.

Risser, P. G. 1995. Indicators of grassland sustainability: A first approximation. In M. Munasinghe and W. Shearer (eds.) *Defining and Measuring Sustainability: The Biophysical Foundations*. World Bank: Washington, DC, pp. 310–319.

Roberts, C. 2012. *The Ocean of Life: The Fate of Man and the Sea*. Viking Press: New York.

Roberts, P. 2008. *The End of Food*. Houghton Mifflin: New York.

Robinson, R. A. 1996. *Return to Resistance: Breeding Crops to Reduce Pesticide Dependence*. AgAccess: Davis, CA.

Rodale Institute. 2012. The farming systems trail: Celebrating 30 years. Kutztown, PA. http://rodaleinstitute.org/our-work/farming-systems-trial/farming-systems-trial-30-year-report/ (PDF downloaded January 9, 2013).

Rosemeyer, M. 2010. What do we know about the conversion process? Yields, economics, ecological processes, and social issues. In S. R. Gliessman and M. E. Rosemeyer (eds.) *The Conversion to Sustainable Agriculture: Principles, Processes, and Practices*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL, pp. 15–48.

Rosemeyer, M., N. Viaene, H. Swartz, and J. Kettler. 2000. The effect of slash/mulch and alley-cropping bean production systems on soil microbiota in the tropics. *Applied Soil Ecology* 15: 49–59.

Ruiz-Rosado, O. 1984. Effects of weed borders on the dynamics of insect communities in a cauliflower agroecosystem. MA thesis. University of California, Santa Cruz, CA.

Russell, W. M. S. 1968. The slash-and-burn technique. *Natural History* 78: 58–65.

Sahagian, D. 2000. Global physical effects of anthropogenic hydrological alterations: Sea level and water redistribution. *Global and Planetary Change* 25(1–2): 39–48.

Sale, P. 2011. *Our Dying Planet: An Ecologist's View of the Crisis We Face*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.

Salick, J. and L. C. Merrick. 1990. Use and maintenance of genetic resources: Crops and their wild relatives. In C. R. Carroll, J. H. Vandermeer, and P. M. Rosset (eds.) *Agroecology*. McGraw-Hill: New York, pp. 517–548.

Sances, F. 1982. Spider mites can reduce strawberry yields. *California Agriculture* 36: 6–9.

Sanchez, P. A. 1976. *Properties and Management of Soils in the Tropics*. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Santa Cruz County Agricultural Commissioner. 2013. Santa Cruz County crop report 2012. Santa Cruz County Agricultural Commissioner's Office: Watsonville, CA.

Santalla, M., J. M. Amurrio, A. P. Rodino, and A. M. de Ron. 2001. Variation in traits affecting nodulation of common bean under intercropping with maize and sole cropping. *Euphytica* 122(2): 243–255.

Schafer, K., M. Reeves, S. Spitzer, and S. Kegley. 2004. *Chemical Trespass: Chemicals in Our Bodies and Corporate Accountability*. Pesticide Action Network North America: Oakland, CA.

Scherr, S. J. 2007. *Farming with Nature: The Science and Practice of Ecoagriculture*. Island Press: Washington, DC.

Schierea, J. B., M. N. M. Ibrahim, and H. van Keulenc. 2002. The role of livestock for sustainability in mixed farming: Criteria and scenario studies under varying resource allocations. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 90(2): 139–153.

Seiter, S. and W. P. Horwath. 2004. Strategies for managing soil organic matter to supply plant nutrients. In F. Magdoff and R. R. Weil (eds.) *Soil Organic Matter in Sustainable Agriculture*. Advances in Agroecology Series. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL, pp. 269–293.

Seubert, C. E., P. A. Sanchez, and C. Valverde. 1977. Effects of land clearing methods on soil properties of an ulltisol and crop performance in the Amazon jungle of Peru. *Tropical Agriculture* (Trinidad) 54: 434–437.

Sevilla-Guzmán, E. 1999. Introducción. In Instituto de Sociología y Estudios Campesinos (ed.) *Dicen los Ganaderos: Taller para el cuidado del la dehesa*. Sociedad Cooperativa Andaluza Corpedroches: Seville, Spain.

Sevilla-Guzmán, E. 2006. *De la Sociología Rural a la Agroecología*. Icaria Editorial: Barcelona, Spain.

Seyedeh, D. H., A. Kashani, F. Paknejad, H. Jafary, M. J. Al-Ahmadi, M. R. Tookalloo, and J. Lamei. 2010. Evaluation of hairy vetch (*Vicia villosa* Roth) in pure and mixed cropping with barley (*Hordeum vulgare* L.) to determine the best combination of legume and cereal for forage production. *American Journal of Agricultural and Biological Sciences* 5: 169–176.

Shen, L., J. Xiong, and W. Lin. 2008. Rice allelopathy research in China. In R. U. Zeng, A. U. Mallik, and S. M. Luo (eds.) *Allelopathy in Sustainable Agriculture and Forestry*. Springer: New York, pp. 215–234.

Shennan, C., J. Muramoto, S. Koike, M. Bolda, O. Daugovish, M. Mochizuki, E. Rosskopf, N. Kokalis-Burelle, and D. Butler. 2010. Optimizing anaerobic soil disinfestation for strawberry production in California. *Proceedings of the Annual International Research Conference on Methyl Bromide Alternatives and Emissions Reductions*, Orlando, FL, pp. 23.1–23.4.

Shuman, M. 2006. *The Small-Mart Revolution: How Local Businesses are Beating the Global Competition*. Berrett-Koehler Publishers: San Francisco, CA.

Shuman, M. 2012. *Local Dollars, Local Sense*: *A Community Resilence Guide*. Chelsea Green: White River Junction, VT.

Simberloff, D. S. and E. O. Wilson. 1969. Experimental zoogeography of islands: The colonization of empty islands. *Ecology* 50: 278–296.

Sinclair, T. R. 2012. Is transpiration efficiency a viable plant trait in breeding for crop improvement? *Functional Plant Biology* 39: 359–365.

Singh, R. P., D. P. Hodson, J. Huerta-Espino, Y. Lin, S. Bhavani, P. Njau, S. Herrera-Poessel, P. K. Singh, S. Singh, and V. Govindan. 2011. The emergence of Ug99 races of the Stem Rust Fungus is a threat to world wheat production. *Annual Review of Phytopathology* 49: 465–481.

Smith, J. and J. Leys. 2009. Identification of areas within Australia for reducing soil loss by wind erosion. Commonwealth of Australia, Bureau of Rural Sciences: Canberra, Australian Capital Territory, Australia. http://nrmonline.nrm.gov.au/catalog/mql:2246. Accessed March 1, 2014.

Snapp, S. and B. Pound. 2008. *Agricultural Systems: Agroecology and Rural Innovation for Development*. Academic Press: Amsterdam, the Netherlands.

Soil Conservation Service. 1984. Strawberry Hills target area: Watershed area study report, Monterey County, CA. USDA, River Basin Planning Staff, Soil Conservation Service.

Stern, W. R. and C. M. Donald. 1961. Light relationships in grass/clover swards. *Australian Journal of Agricultural Research* 13: 599–614.

Stigter, K. (ed.). 2010. *Applied Agrometeorology*. Springer: New York.

Stockdale, E. A. and C. A. Watson. 2012. Managing soil biota to deliver ecosystem services. Natural England Commissioned Report #100.

Sullivan, P. 2003. *Overview of Cover Crops and Green Manures*. ATTRA—National Sustainable Agriculture Information Service: Fayetteville, AK.

Swezey, S. L. 2004. Trap-cropping the western tarnished plant bug, *Lygus hesperus* Knight, in California organic strawberries. *Proceedings of California Organic Production and Farming in the New Millennium: A Research Symposium*, July 15, 2004. UC Berkeley, CA, 58–66.

Swezey, S. L., D. J. Nieto, J. R. Hagler, C. H. Pickett, J. A. Bryer, and S. A. Machtley. 2013. Dispersion, distribution, and movement of *Lygus* spp. (Hemiptera: Miridae) in trap-cropped organic strawberries. *Environmental Entomology* 42(4): 770–778.

Swezey, S. L., C. H. Pickett, D. J. Nieto, J. A. Bryer, and C. S. Slay. 2014. Chemical, biological and physical control of *Lygus* spp. nymphs in managed alfalfa trap crops. (in preparation).

Swezey, S. L., J. Rider, M. W. Werner, M. Buchanan, J. Allison, and S. R. Gliessman. 1994. Granny Smith conversions to organic show early success. *California Agriculture* 48: 36–44.

Swezey, S. L., P. Vossen, J. Caprile, and W. Bentley. 2002. *Organic Apple Production Manual*. Publication 3403. University of California, Agriculture and Natural Resources: Oakland, CA.

Swift, M. J., A. M. N. Izac, and M. van Noordwijk. 2004. Biodiversity and ecosystem services in agricultural landscapes—Are we asking the right questions*? Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 104: 113–134.

Tansley, A. G. 1935. The use and abuse of vegetational concepts and terms. *Ecology* 16: 284–307.

Tellarini, V. and F. Caporali. 2000. An input/output methodology to evaluate farms as sustainable agroecosystems: An application of indicators to farms in Central Italy. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 77: 111–123.

Theunissen, J. and H. van Duden. 1980. Effects of intercropping with *Spergula arvensis* on pests of Brussels sprouts. *Entomologia Experimentalis et Applicata* 27: 260–268.

Thomas, M. B., S. D. Wratter, and N. W. Sotherton. 1991. Creation of “island” habitats in farmland to manipulate populations of biological arthropods, predator densities, and emigration. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 28: 906–917.

Thompson, Jr., E. 2009. *California Agricultural Land Loss & Conservation: The Basic Facts*. American Farmland Trust: Washington, DC.

Tibke, G. 1988. Basic principles of wind erosion control. *Agriculture, Ecosystems and Environment* 22/23: 103–122.

Tischler, W. 1965. *Agrarökologie*. Fischer Verlag: Jena, Germany.

Treschow, M. 1970. *Environment and Plant Response.* McGraw-Hill: New York.

Tsegaye, B. 1997. The significance of biodiversity for sustaining agriculture and the role of women in the traditional sector: The Ethiopian experience. *Agriculture, Ecosystems, and Environment* 62: 215–227.

Tsubo, M., S. Walker, and E. Makhala. 2001. Comparisons of radiation use efficiency of mono-/inter-cropping systems with different row orientations. *Field Crops Research* 71: 17–29.

Turner, B. L., R. E. Kasperson, P. A. Matson, J. J. McCarthy, R. W. Corell, L. Christensen, N. Eckley et al. 2003. A framework for vulnerability analysis in sustainability science. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 100(14): 8074–8079.

Turner, M. G., R. H. Gardner, and R. V. O’Neill. 2001. *Landscape Ecology in Theory and Practice: Pattern and Process.* Springer-Verlag: New York.

Tuxill, J. and G. P. Nabhan. 2001. *People, Plants and Protected Areas: A Guide to in situ Management*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

Ullstrup, A. J. 1972. The impact of the southern corn leaf blight epidemics of 1970–1971. *Annual Review of Phytopathology* 10: 37–50.

Unger, P. W. 1994. *Managing Agricultural Residues*. CRC Press: Boca Raton, FL.

United Nations. 2010. World population prospects: The 2010 revision, highlights. Population Division of the Department of Economic and Social Affairs of the United Nations Secretariat: New York.

UN Water. 2012. http://www.unwater.org/statistics_use.html (accessed August 20, 2012).

Uphoff, N. (ed.). 2002. *Agroecological Innovations: Increasing Food Production with Participatory Development*. Earthscan: London, U.K.

Uphoff, N., A. S. Ball, E. Fernandes, H. Herren, O. Husson, M. Laing, C. Palm, J. Pretty, P. Sanchez, N. Sanginga, and J. Thies (eds.). 2006. *Biological Approaches to Sustainable Soil Systems*. CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group: Boca Raton, FL.

U.S. Census Bureau database. 2004. www.census.gov (accessed January 2005).

USDA (United States Department of Agriculture). 2002. Census of agriculture. Washington, DC.

USDA (United States Department of Agriculture). 2003. Organic agriculture: Gaining ground. February 2003 issue of *Amber Waves*. USDA Economic Research Service: Washington, DC. www.ers.usda.gov/AmberWaves/Feb03/Findings/Organic Agriculture.htm. Accessed March 1, 2014.

USDA (United States Department of Agriculture). 2007. Census of agriculture. Washington, DC.

USDA (United States Department of Agriculture). 2013. Growth patterns in the US organic industry. October 2013 issue of *Amber Waves*. USDA Economic Research Service: Washington, DC. www.ers.usde.gov/amber-waves/2013-october/growth-patterns-in-the-us-organic-industry (accessed March 5, 2014).

USDA (United States Department of Agriculture). 2014. Agricultural marketing service website. Farmers markets and local food marketing. Washington, DC. http://www.ams.usda.gov/AMSv1.0/ams (visited February 2, 2014).

USDA Economic Research Service. 2014. Food Value Facts in the US. Washington, DC. http://www.ers.usda.gov/data-products/food-dollar-series/quick-facts.aspx#.UssWVf2e0vk (accessed January 6, 2014).

U.S. EPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency). 2012. Pesticides section. http://www.epa.gov/opp00001/pestsales/07pestsales/usage2007.htm#3_1 (accessed December 4, 2012).

Valdéz, A. and W. Foster. 2012. Net food-importing developing countries: Who they are, and policy options for global price volatility. International Center for Trade and Sustainable Development. Issue paper no. 43.

Van der Pijl, L. 1972. *Principles of Dispersal in Higher Plants*. Springer-Verlag: Berlin, Germany.

van Noordwijk, M., G. Cadish, C. K. Ong (eds.). 2004. *Below-Ground Interactions in Tropical Agroecosystems: Concepts and Models with Multiple Plant Components*. CABI Publishing: Cambridge, MA.

Van Tassel, D. and L. R. DeHaan. 2013. Wild plants to the rescue. *American Scientist* 101: 218–225.

Van Tassel, D. L., L. R. DeHaan, and T. S. Cox. 2010. Missing domesticated plant forms: Can artificial selection fill the gap? *Evolutionary Applications* 3: 434–452.

Van Tuijl, W. 1993. Improving water use in agriculture: Experiences in the Middle East and North Africa. Report # 201. World Bank: Washington, DC.

Vandermeer, J. 1989. *The Ecology of Intercropping.* Cambridge University Press: New York.

Vandermeer, J., I. G. de la Cerda, D. Boucher, I. Perfecto, and J. Ruiz. 2000. Hurricane disturbance and tropical tree species diversity. *Science* 290(5492): 788–791.

Vandermeer, J. H. 2011. *The Ecology of Agroecosystems*. Jones and Bartlett Publishers: Sudbury, MA.

Verkerk, R. H. J., S. R. Leather, and D. J. Wright. 1998. The potential for manipulating crop-pest–natural enemy interactions for improved insect pest management *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 88(5): 493–501.

Vilain, L. 2003. *La Méthode IDEA: Indicateurs de Durabilité des Exploitations Agricoles–Guide d’Utilisation*. Educagri éditions: Dijon, France.

Volder, A. and J. Franco. 2013. Evaluating functional diversity in an organic intercropping system. Sustainable Agriculture Research and Education Program Final Report. Accessed at http://mysare.sare.org/mySARE/ProjectReport.aspx?do=viewRept&pn=GS11-108&y=2013&t=1. Accessed March 1, 2014.

Waldon, H. 1994. Resilience, equilibrium, and sustainability in three ecosystems. Ph.D. dissertation, University of California, Santa Cruz.

Walker, L. R., J. Walker, and R. J. Hobbs (eds.). 2007. *Linking Restoration and Ecological Succession*. Springer: New York.

Ward, C. E. 2010. Assessing competition in the US Beef packing industry. *Choices* 25(2): 1–19.

Weiner, J. 1990. Plant population ecology in agriculture. In C. R. Carroll, J. H. Vandermeer, and P. M. Rossett (eds.) *Agroecology*. McGraw Hill: New York, pp. 235–262.

Went, F. 1944. Thermoperiodicity in growth and fruiting of the tomato. *American Journal of Botany* 31: 135–150.

Wezel, A., S. Bellon, T. Doré, C. Francis, D. Vallod, and C. David. 2009. Agroecology as a science, a movement and a practice: A review. *Agronomy for Sustainable Development* 29(4): 503–515.

Whittaker, R. H. 1975. *Communities and Ecosystems*, 2nd edn. MacMillan: New York.

Whitworth, J. 2011. Hessian fly fall activity on wheat. Kansas State University Extension e-Updates 318: Manhattan, KS, pp. 1–3. http://www.agronomy.ksu.edu/doc3743.ashx (accessed January 10, 2014).

Wiersum, K. F. 1981. Introduction to the agroforestry concept. In Wiersum, K. F. (ed.) *Viewpoints in Agroforestry*. Agricultural University of Wageningen: Wageningen, the Netherlands.

Wilken, G. C. 1969. Drained-field agriculture: An intensive farming system in Tlaxcala, Mexico. *The Geographical Review* 59: 215–241.

Wilken, G. C. 1988. *Good Farmers: Traditional Agricultural Resource Management in Mexico and Central America*. University of California Press: Berkeley, CA.

Wilkins, J. L. 2005. Eating right here: Moving from consumer to food citizen. *Agriculture and Human Values* 22: 269–273.

Willey, R. W. 1981. A scientific approach to intercropping research. *Proceedings, International Workshop on Intercropping*. ICRISAT: Bangalore, India, pp. 4–14.

Willis, R. J. 1985. The historical bases of the concept of allelopathy. *Journal of the History of Biology* 18(1): 71–102.

Wilsie, C. P. 1962. *Crop Adaptation and Distribution*. Freeman: San Francisco, CA.

Wilson, E. O. 1992. *The Diversity of Life*. W. W. Norton and Co.: New York.

Wilson, E. O. 2002. *The Future of Life*. Random House: New York.

Woodgate, G., B. Ambrose-Oji, R. Fernandez Durán, G. Guzmán, and E. Sevilla Guzmán. 2005. Alternative food and agriculture networks: An agroecological perspective on responses to economic globalizations and the 'new' agrarian question. In M. R. Redclift and G. Woodgate (eds.) *New Developments in Environmental Sociology*. Edward Elgar Publishing: Chetanham, U.K., pp. 586–612.

World Congress on Conservation Agriculture. 2005. Congress Proceedings. www.ecaf.org/English/Congress.htm (accessed January 7, 2005).

WHO (World Health Organization). 2013. Media centre: Obesity and overweight. http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs311/en/ (visited February 1, 2014).

Wratten, S., H. Sandhu, R. Cullen, and R. Costanza. 2013. *Ecosystem Services in Agricultural and Urban Landscapes*. John Wiley & Sons: New York.

Wu, M., M. Quirindongo, J. Sass, and A. Wetzler. 2010. *Still Poisoning the Well: Atrazine Continues to Contaminate Surface Water and Drinking Water in the United States.* Natural Resources Defense Council: Washington, DC.

Xie, J., L. Hu, J. Tang, X. Wu, N. Li, Y. Yuan, H. Yang, J. Zhang, S. Luo, and X. Chen. 2011. Ecological mechanisms underlying the sustainability of the agricultural heritage rice–fish co-culture system. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 108: 1381–1387.

Young, A. 1989. The environmental basis of agroforestry. In W. S. Reifsnyder and T. O. Darnhofer (eds.) *Meteorology and Agroforestry*. International Council for Research in Agroforestry: Nairobi, Kenya, pp. 29–48.

Zelitch, I. 1971. *Photosynthesis, Photorespiration, and Plant Productivity*. Academic Press: New York.

Zerbe, L. 2011. USDA to OK genetically modified alfalfa; Goodbye organic dairy, honey, and grass fed beef? *Rodale News* January 11, 2011.

Zhang, J. E., G. M. Quan, Z. X. Huang, S. M. Luo, and Y. Ouyang. 2013. Evidence of duck-activity-induced anatomical structure change and lodging resistance of rice plant. *Agroecology and Sustainable Food Systems* 37: 97–984.

Zhao, X., H. Xu, P. Zhang, and Y. Bai. 2013. Distribution of soil moisture and salinity in shelterbelts and its relationship with groundwater level in extreme arid area, northwest of China. *Water and Environment Journal* 27: 453–461.

Zhen, L. and J. K. Routray. 2003. Operational indicators for measuring agricultural sustainability in developing countries. *Environmental Management* 32: 34–46.

Zhengfang, L. 1994. Energetic and ecological analysis of farming systems in Jiangsu Province, China. Presented at the *10th International Conference of the International Federation of Organic Agriculture Movements* (*IFOAM*), Lincoln University, Lincoln, New Zealand, 142–143, December 9–16.

Zukalová, H. and J. Vašák. 2002. The role and effects of glucosinolates—A review. *Vrostlinna Vyroba Agriculture* 48: 175–180.

Agriculture

Third Edition

Agroecology

The Ecology of Sustainable Food Systems

Praise for the Second Edition:

"It is clear, insightful, well illustrated, and referenced, and the 21 chapters contain many useful case studies. It deserves to be in every library, and is a pleasure to read. This is a valuable manual, and vital for all concerned with learning and teaching in agricultural courses. It deserves to be widely used."

—Jules Pretty OBE, *Experimental Agriculture*, Vol. 43 (4), 2007

"The author clearly is an authority in the field of agroecology and teaches on the subject. ... Agronomists and biologists, as well as general scholars and people interested in sustainability as an attitude or life style will learn about how to put principles into (cropping and whole food chain) practice. All in all: a good read!"

—Patrick Van Damme, University of Gent, *Economic Botany*, 63 (4), 2009

From the Foreword:

"Gliessman is about science, purpose, and moral action. Here, he has painstakingly, joyously, fully, and generously laid out his understanding from a lifetime of effort on these fronts. Flip the page. It is now your turn to take this on."

—Ricardo J. Salvador, Director and Senior Scientist, Food and Environment Program, Union of Concerned Scientists, Washington, DC

See What's New in the Third Edition:

- Chapters on animal production and social change in food systems
- Updated case studies, references, websites, and new research
- Emphasis on how climate change impacts agriculture
- Greater focus on health issues related to food

Written by an expert with more than 40 years of experience, **Agroecology: The Ecology of Sustainable Food Systems, Third Edition** provides the essential foundation for understanding sustainability in all of its components: agricultural, ecological, economic, social, cultural, and even political. It presents a case for food system change and why the current industrial model is not sustainable. It begins with a strong ecological foundation for farming practices and ends with all of us thinking about the critical importance of transitioning to a new paradigm for food and agriculture, and what this means for our future.

K14240

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
an **informa** business
www.crcpress.com

6000 Broken Sound Parkway, NW
Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487
711 Third Avenue
New York, NY 10017
2 Park Square, Milton Park
Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN, UK

ISBN: 978-1-4398-9561-0
90000
9 781439 895610